FUNDAMENTALS OF POWDER DIFFRACTION AND STRUCTURAL CHARACTERIZATION OF MATERIALS

Comment

Cover illustration, created by Peter Zavalij, follows the content of the book. The illustration is inspired by Salvador Dali's painting "The Metamorphosis of Narcissus" where Narcissus [polycrystalline $(Au,Ni)Sn_4$, courtesy Lubov Zavalij] falls in love with his own reflection (diffraction pattern of LaB_6 collected on a Bruker Smart Apex CCD), transforms into an egg (reciprocal lattice), and then into a flower (crystal structure of $Mn_{7-x}(OH)_3(VO_4)_4$ in a physical space), which bears his name.

FUNDAMENTALS OF POWDER DIFFRACTION AND STRUCTURAL CHARACTERIZATION OF MATERIALS

by

Vitalij K. Pecharsky
Department of Materials Science and Engineering,
Ames Laboratory of the U.S. Department of Energy
Iowa State University
Ames, IA, U.S.A.

Peter Y. Zavalij
Department of Chemistry and Institute for Materials Research
State University of New York at Binghamton
Binghamton, NY U.S.A.

Springer

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Pecharsky, Vitalij K.
Fundamentals of powder diffraction and structural characterization of materials / by Vitalij K.
Pecharsky, Peter Y. Zavalij
p. cm
ISBN 0-387-24147-7 (Soft Cover) E-ISBN 0-387-2456-7
1. X-rays—Diffraction—Measurement. 2. Powders—Optical properties—Measurement. 3.
X-ray crystallography. I. Zavalij, Peter Y. II. Title

QC482.D5P43 2005
548'.83—dc22

2005042474

Printed on acid-free paper

First softcover printing, 2005

Printed in the United States of America.

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 SPIN 11365341

springeronline.com

Dedication

This book is dedicated to our parents, some of whom did not live to see it published

Contents

Preface

Without a doubt, crystals such as diamonds, emeralds and rubies, whose beauty has been exposed by jewelry-makers for centuries, are enjoyable for everybody through their perfect shapes and astonishing range of colors. Far fewer people take pleasure in the internal harmony – atomic structure – which defines shape and other properties of crystals but remains invisible to the naked eye. Ordered atomic structures are present in a variety of common materials, e.g. metals, sand, rocks or ice, in addition to the easily recognizable precious stones. The former usually consist of many tiny crystals and therefore, are called polycrystals, for example metals and ice, or powders, such as sand and snow. Besides external shapes and internal structures, the beauty of crystals can be appreciated from an infinite number of distinct diffraction patterns they form upon interaction with certain types of waves, e.g. x-rays. Similarly, the beauty of the sea is largely defined by a continuously changing but distinctive patterns formed by waves on the water's surface.

Diffraction patterns from powders are recorded as numerical functions of a single independent variable, the Bragg angle, and they are striking in their fundamental simplicity. Yet, a well-executed experiment encompasses an extraordinarily rich variety of structural information, which is encoded in a material- and instrument-specific distribution of the intensity of coherently scattered monochromatic waves whose wavelengths are commensurate with lattice spacing. The utility of the powder diffraction method – one of the most essential tools in the structural characterization of materials – has been tested for over 90 years of successful use in both academia and industry. A broad range of general-purpose and specialized powder diffractometers are commonly available today, and just about every research project that

involves polycrystalline solids inevitably begins with collecting a powder diffraction pattern. The pattern is then examined to establish or verify phase composition, purity, and the structure of the newly prepared material. In fact, at least a basic identification by employing powder diffraction data as a fingerprint of a substance, coupled with search-and-match among hundreds of thousands of known powder diffraction patterns stored in various databases, is an unwritten mandate for every serious work that involves crystalline matter.

Throughout the long history of the technique, its emphasis underwent several evolutionary and revolutionary transformations. Remarkably, none of the new developments have taken away nor diminished the value of earlier applications of the powder diffraction method; on the contrary, they enhanced and made them more precise and dependable. A noteworthy example is phase identification from powder diffraction data, which dates back to the late 1930's (Hanawalt, Rinn, and Frevel). Over the years, this application evolved into the Powder Diffraction File™ containing reliable patterns of some 300,000 crystalline materials in a readily searchable database format (Powder Diffraction File is maintained and distributed by the International Centre for Diffraction Data, http://www.icdd.com).

As it often happens in science and engineering, certain innovations may go unnoticed for some time but when a critical mass is reached or exceeded, they stimulate unprecedented growth and expansion, never thought possible in the past. Both the significance and applications of the powder diffraction method have been drastically affected by several directly related as well as seemingly unrelated developments that have occurred in the recent past. First was the widespread transition from analogue (x-ray film) to digital (point, line and area detectors) recording of scattered intensity, which resulted in the improved precision and resolution of the data. Second was the groundbreaking work by Rietveld, Young and many others, who showed that full profile powder diffraction data may be directly employed in structure refinement and solution. Third was the availability of personal computers, which not only function as instrument controllers, but also provide much needed and readily available computing power. Computers thus enable the processing of large arrays of data collected in an average powder diffraction experiment. Fourth was the invention and rapid evolution of the internet, which puts a variety of excellent, thoroughly tested computer codes at everyone's fingertips, thanks to visionary efforts of many bright and dedicated crystallographers.

Collectively, these major developments resulted in the revolutionary changes and opened new horizons for the powder diffraction technique. Not so long ago, if you wanted to establish the crystal structure of a material at the atomic resolution, virtually the only reliable choice was to grow an

appropriate quality single crystal. Only then could one proceed with the collection of diffraction data from the crystal followed by a suitable data processing to solve the structure and refine relevant structural parameters. A common misconception among the majority of crystallographers was that powder diffraction has a well-defined niche, which is limited to phase identification and precise determination of unit cell dimensions. In the last decade, the playing field has changed dramatically, and the *ab initio* structure determination from powder diffraction data is now reality. This raises the bar and offers no excuse for those who sidestep the opportunity to establish details of the distribution of atoms in the crystal lattice of every polycrystalline material, whose properties are under examination. Indeed, accurate structural knowledge obtained from polycrystals is now within reach. We believe that it will eventually lead to a much better understanding of structure-property relationships, which are critical for future advancements in materials science, chemistry, physics, natural sciences and engineering.

Before a brief summary recounting about the subject of this book, we are obliged to mention that our work was not conducted in vacuum. Excellent texts describing the powder diffraction method have been written, published and used by the generations of professors teaching the subject and by the generations of students learning the trade in the past. Traditional applications of the technique have been exceptionally well covered by Klug and Alexander (1954), Azaroff and Buerger (1958), Lipson and Steeple (1970), Cullity (1956 and 1978), Jenkins and Snyder (1996), and Cullity and Stock (2001). There has never been a lack of reports describing the modern capabilities of powder diffraction, and they remain abundant in technical literature (Journal of Applied Crystallography, Acta Crystallographica, Powder Diffraction, Rigaku Journal, and others). A collective monograph, dedicated entirely to the Rietveld method, was edited by Young and published in 1993. A second collection of reviews, describing the state of the art in structure determination from powder diffraction data, appeared in 2002 and it was edited by David, Shankland, McCusker, and Baerlocher. These two outstanding and highly professional monographs are a part of the multiple-volume series sponsored by the International Union of Crystallography, and are solid indicators that the powder diffraction method has been indeed transformed into a powerful and precise, yet readily accessible, structure determination tool. We highly recommend all of the books mentioned in this paragraph as additional reading to everyone, although the older editions are out of print.

Our primary motivation for this work was the absence of a suitable text that can be used by both the undergraduate and graduate students interested in pursuing in-depth knowledge and gaining practical experience in the

application of the powder diffraction method to structure solution and refinement. Here, we place emphasis on powder diffraction data collected using conventional x-ray sources and general-purpose powder diffractometers, which remain primary tools for thousands of researchers and students in their daily experimental work. Brilliant synchrotron and powerful neutron sources, which are currently available or coming online around the world, are only briefly mentioned. Both may, and often do provide unique experimental data, which are out of reach for conventional powder diffraction especially when high pressure, high and low temperature, and other extreme environments are of concern. The truth, however, is that the beam time is precious, and both synchrotron and neutron sources are unlikely to become available to everyone on a daily basis. Furthermore, diffraction fundamentals remain the same, regardless of the nature of the employed radiation and the brilliance of the source.

This book has spawned from our affection and lasting involvement with the technique, which began long ago in a different country, when both of us were working our way through the undergraduate and then graduate programs in Inorganic Chemistry at L'viv State University, one of the oldest and finest institutions of higher education in the Ukraine. As we moved along, powder diffraction has always remained on top of our research and teaching engagements. The major emphasis of our research is to obtain a better understanding of the structure-property relationships of crystalline materials, and both of us teach graduate-level powder diffraction courses at our respective departments – Materials Science and Engineering at Iowa State University and Chemistry at the State University of New York (SUNY) at Binghamton. Even before we started talking about this book, we were unanimous in our goals: the syllabi of two different courses were independently designed to be useful for any background, including materials science, solid state chemistry, physics, mineralogy, and literally any other area of science and engineering, where structural information at the atomic resolution is in demand. This philosophy, we hope, resulted in a text that requires no prior knowledge of the subject. Readers are expected to have a general scientific and mathematical background of the order of the first two years of a typical liberal arts and sciences or engineering college.

The book is divided into seven chapters. The **first chapter** deals with essential concepts of crystallographic symmetry, which are intended to facilitate both the understanding and appreciation of crystal structures. This chapter will also prepare the reader for the realization of the capabilities and limitations of the powder diffraction method. It begins with the well-established notions of the three-dimensional periodicity of crystal lattices and conventional crystallographic symmetry. It ends with a brief introduction to the relatively young subject – the symmetry of aperiodic

crystals. Properties and interactions of symmetry elements, including examination of both point and space groups, the concept of reciprocal space, which is employed to represent diffraction from crystalline solids, and the formal algebraic treatment of crystallographic symmetry are introduced and discussed to the extent needed in the context of the book.

The **second chapter** is dedicated to properties and sources of radiation suitable for powder diffraction analysis, and gives an overview of the kinematical theory of diffraction along with its consequences in structure determination. Here, readers learn that the diffraction pattern of a crystal is a transformation of an ordered atomic structure into a reciprocal space rather than a direct image of the former. Diffraction from crystalline matter, specifically from polycrystalline materials is described as a function of crystal symmetry, atomic structure and conditions of the experiment. The chapter ends with a general introduction to numerical techniques enabling the restoration of the three-dimensional distribution of atoms in a lattice by the transformation of the diffraction pattern back into direct space.

The **third chapter** begins with a brief historical overview describing the powder diffraction method and explains the principles, similarities, and differences among the variety of powder diffractometers available today. Since ionizing radiation and highly penetrating and energetic particles are employed in powder diffraction, safety is always a primary concern. Basic safety issues are concisely spelled out using policies and procedures established at the US DOE's Ames Laboratory as a practical example. Sample preparation and proper selection of experimental conditions are exceedingly important in the successful implementation of the technique. Therefore, the remainder of this chapter is dedicated to a variety of issues associated with specimen preparation, data collection, and analysis of most common systematic errors that have an impact on every powder diffraction experiment.

Beginning from **chapter four**, key issues that arise during the interpretation of powder diffraction data, eventually leading to structure determination, are considered in detail and illustrated by a variety of practical examples. This chapter describes preliminary processing of experimental data, which is critical in both qualitative and quantitative phase analyses. In addition to a brief overview of phase identification techniques and quantitative analysis, readers will learn how to determine both the integrated intensities and angles of the observed Bragg peaks with the highest achievable precision.

Chapter five deals with the first major hurdle, which is encountered in powder diffraction analysis: unavoidably, the determination of any crystal structure starts from finding the shape, symmetry, and dimensions of the unit cell of the crystal lattice. In powder diffraction, finding the true unit cell

from first principles may present considerable difficulty because experimental data are a one-dimensional projection of the three-dimensional reciprocal lattice. This chapter, therefore, introduces the reader to a variety of numerical techniques that result in the determination of precise unit cell dimensions. The theoretical background is followed by multiple practical examples with varying complexity.

Chapter six is dedicated to the solution of materials' structures, i.e. here we learn how to find the distribution of atoms in the unit cell and create a complete or partial model of the crystal structure. The problem is generally far from trivial and many structure solution cases in powder diffraction remain unique. Although structure determination from powder data is not a wide open and straight highway, knowing where to enter, how to proceed, and where and when to exit is equally vital. Hence, in this chapter both direct and reciprocal space approaches and some practical applications of the theory of kinematical diffraction to solving crystal structures from powder data will be explained and broadly illustrated. Practical examples start from simple, nearly transparent cases and end with quite complex inorganic structures.

The solution of a crystal structure is considered complete only when multiple profile variables and crystallographic parameters of a model have been fully refined against the observed powder diffraction data. Thus, the last, **seventh chapter** of this book describes the refinement technique, most commonly employed today, which is based on the idea suggested in the middle 1960's by Rietveld. Successful practical use of the Rietveld method, though directly related to the quality of powder diffraction data (the higher the quality, the more reliable the outcome), largely depends on the experience and the ability of the user to properly select a sequence in which various groups of parameters are refined. In this chapter, we introduce the basic theory of Rietveld's approach, followed by a series of hands-on examples that demonstrate refinement of crystal structures with various degrees of completeness and complexity, models of which were partially or completely built in chapter six.

The book is supplemented by an **electronic volume** – compact disk – containing powder diffraction data collected from a variety of materials that are used as examples and in the problems offered at the end of every chapter. In addition, electronic versions of some 330 illustrations found throughout the book are also on the CD. Electronic illustrations, which we hope will be useful to both instructors and students because electronic figures are in color, are located in a separate folder /Figures on the CD. Three additional folders, /Problems, /Examples and /Solutions contain experimental data, which are required for solving problems, as self-exercises, and our solutions of the problems, respectively. The disk is organized as a web page, which makes it

easy to navigate. All web links, found in the book, are included on the CD and can be followed by simply clicking on them. Every link is current as of January 2003. The compact disk is accessible using both Mac's and PC's, and potential incompatibility problems have been avoided by using portable document, HTML, and ASCII formats.

Many people have helped in a variety of ways in making this book. Our appreciation and respect goes to all authors of books, monographs, research articles, websites and computer programs cited and used as examples throughout this text. We are indebted to our colleagues, Professor Karl Gschneidner, Jr. from Iowa State University, Professor Scott R.J. Oliver from SUNY at Binghamton, Professor Alexander Tishin from Moscow State University, Dr. Aaron Holm from Iowa State University, and Dr. Alexandra (Sasha) Pecharsky from Iowa State University, who read the entire manuscript and whose helpful advice and friendly criticism made this book better. It also underwent a common sense test thanks to Lubov Zavalij and Vitalij Pecharsky, Jr. Some of the experimental data and samples used as the examples have been provided by Dr. Lev Akselrud from L'viv State University, Dr. Oksana Zaharko from Paul Scherrer Institute, Dr. Iver Anderson, Dr. Matthew Kramer, and Dr. John Snyder (all from Ames Laboratory, Iowa State University), and we are grateful to all of them for their willingness to share the results of their unpublished work. Special thanks are in order to Professor Karl Gschneidner, Jr. (Iowa State University) and Professor M. Stanley Whittingham (SUNY at Binghamton), whose perpetual attention and encouragement during our work on this book have been invaluable. Finally yet importantly, we extend our gratitude to our spouses, Alexandra (Sasha) Pecharsky and Lubov Zavalij, and to our children, Vitalij Pecharsky, Jr., Nadya Pecharsky, Christina Zavalij, Solomia Zavalij, and Marta Zavalij, who handled our virtual absence for countless evenings and weekends with exceptional patience and understanding.

Vitalij K. Pecharsky
Ames, Iowa
January 2003

Peter Y. Zavalij
Binghamton, New York
January 2003

Chapter 1

FUNDAMENTALS OF CRYSTALLINE STATE

1.1 Introduction

The concepts of crystalline state and symmetry are just about synonymous today, although the general sense of symmetry is much older than the idea of symmetrical arrangement of atoms in the structures of crystalline solids. Following Webster's dictionary,[1] symmetry is the "beauty of form arising from balanced proportions", and to be symmetrical is to have the "correspondence in size, shape and relative position or parts on opposite sides of a dividing line or median plane or about a center or axis".

Humans constantly deal with symmetry, often without even noticing its significance in daily life. For instance, our exposure to symmetry begins every morning with a glimpse in a mirror, and it ends every night when we fall asleep in a bed with balanced proportions. In addition to the fact that intuitive perception of symmetry is familiar to almost everyone, it has multiple applications in science and engineering. A much more comprehensive and formal description of symmetry, when compared to that found in dictionaries is, therefore, necessary.

In this chapter, we consider basic concepts of crystallographic symmetry, which are essential to the understanding of how atoms and molecules are arranged in space and how they form crystalline solids. Furthermore, the detailed knowledge of crystallographic symmetry is important to appreciate both the capabilities and limitations of powder diffraction techniques when they are applied to the characterization of the crystal structure of solids. We begin with the well-established notions of the three-dimensional periodicity

[1] Webster's Seventh New Collegiate Dictionary, G. & C. Merriam Company Publishers, Springfield, MA, USA (1963).

of crystal lattices and conventional crystallographic symmetry, and consider the properties and interactions of both finite and infinite symmetry elements, including an examination of both point and space groups.[1] In addition to the direct crystallographic space, i.e. the physical space which is used to represent crystal structures, we will also describe the so-called reciprocal space, which is used to represent diffraction from crystalline solids.

The entirely formal algebraic treatment of crystallographic symmetry, which is usually omitted in most texts, will be introduced and briefly discussed since both the modern crystallography and powder diffraction are for the most part computerized. Furthermore, the algebraic description of crystallographic symmetry makes the subject complete. The chapter ends with a brief introduction to a non-conventional crystallographic symmetry, which has been a poignant subject in crystallography since the discovery of perfectly ordered but clearly aperiodic crystals.

Without a doubt, it is impossible to include each and every detail about crystallographic symmetry in this chapter, which is a part of the book about powder diffraction. We hope, however, that after the main concepts introduced here are understood, the reader will be ready to take on a much more comprehensive description of crystallographic symmetry, e.g. that found in the International Tables for Crystallography.[2]

1.2 Crystalline state

Matter usually exists in one of the three basic states: gaseous, liquid, or solid. At fixed temperature and pressure, only one of the states is typically stable for any given substance, except for certain combinations of these thermodynamic variables, where two or all three states may co-exist in equilibrium. By decreasing temperature and/or increasing pressure, a gas may be condensed into a liquid and then into a solid, although in some cases gas $\leftrightarrow$ solid transitions occur without formation of a liquid phase. The most

[1] Finite symmetry elements and point groups are employed to describe relationships among parts of finite objects, such as geometrical figures or shapes of natural or synthetic crystals. Finite and infinite symmetry elements combined and space groups establish symmetrical relationships among components of infinite objects, e.g. two-dimensional wall patterns or three-dimensional arrangements of atoms or molecules in structures of crystals. Although the division of symmetry elements on finite and infinite is not in common use, we will employ this terminology both for convenience and to emphasize the nature of the objects (finite and infinite, respectively) they describe. Finite elements are also known as non-translational, and the infinite ones as translational symmetry.

[2] International Tables for Crystallography, vol. A, Fifth revised edition, Theo Hahn, Ed. (2002); vol. B, Second edition, U. Shmueli, Ed. (2001); vol. C, Second edition, A.J.C. Wilson and E. Prince, Eds. (1999). All volumes are published for the International Union of Crystallography by Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston/Dordrecht/London.

fundamental differences between gases, liquids and solids are summarized in *Table 1.1*.

Gases are formed by weakly interacting, nearly isolated particles – atoms or molecules. Interatomic or intermolecular distances continuously change and as a result, gases have no fixed shape or volume and gaseous matter occupies all available space. As far as macroscopic properties of a gas are concerned, they remain identical in any direction because its structure, more precisely, the absence of long- or short-range order, is isotropic.

When attraction among atoms or molecules becomes strong enough to keep them in the immediate vicinity of each other, gas condenses into a liquid. Since chemical bonding between particles in a liquid remains relatively weak, thermal energy is sufficient to continuously move molecules around and away from their nearest neighbors. When a molecule in a liquid is removed from the assembly of nearest neighbors, another molecule immediately occupies its place, thus preserving only short-range order. Hence, particles in a liquid are not linked together permanently, and liquids have specific volume but no fixed shape. Structures of liquids and, therefore, their properties remain isotropic on a macroscopic scale.

When attractive forces among particles become so strong that they cannot easily move away from one another, matter becomes solid. Solids have both shape and volume. Although particles in a solid can be distributed randomly in space, an ordered and repetitive pattern is more likely, as it corresponds to a lower energy state when compared with a random spatial distribution of strongly interacting atoms or molecules. The appearance of long-range order brings about structural anisotropy and macroscopic properties of crystalline solids become directionally dependent, i.e. anisotropic.[1] It is important to recognize that not all solids are crystalline or ordered. For example, glass has both shape and volume but it also has a high degree of disorder, and therefore, is classified as an amorphous solid. Lack of long-range order makes macroscopic properties of amorphous solids isotropic.

Table 1.1. Basic characteristics of the three states of matter.

State of matter	Fixed volume	Fixed shape	Order	Properties
Gas	No	No	None	Isotropic[a]
Liquid	Yes	No	Short-range[b]	Isotropic
Solid (amorphous)	Yes	Yes	Short-range[b]	Isotropic
Solid (crystalline)	Yes	Yes	Long-range[b]	Anisotropic[c]

[a] A system has same properties in all directions.

[b] Short-range order is over a few atoms. Long-range order extends over ~10^3 to ~10^{20} atoms.

[c] A system has different properties in different directions.

[1] This statement is true for single crystals, where atomic-scale anisotropy is preserved on a macroscopic scale. Properties of polycrystals, i.e. solids that consist of a large number of randomly oriented single crystalline grains, remain isotropic.

One of the most distinct properties of the crystalline state is, therefore, the presence of long-range order, or in other words, a regular and in the simplest case periodic repetition of atoms or molecules in space. In theory, periodic crystals are infinite, but in practice, their periodicity extends over a distance from $\sim 10^3$ to $\sim 10^{20}$ atomic or molecular dimensions, which occurs because any crystal necessarily has a number of defects and may contain impurities without losing its crystallinity. Furthermore, a crystal is always finite regardless of its size.

Since our surroundings are three-dimensional, we tend to assume that crystals are formed by periodic arrangements of atoms or molecules in three dimensions. However, many crystals are periodic only in two, or even in one dimension, and some do not have periodic structure at all, e.g. solids with incommensurately modulated structures, certain polymers, and quasicrystals. Materials may assume states that are intermediate between those of a crystalline solid and a liquid, and they are called liquid crystals. Hence, in real crystals, periodicity and/or order extends over a shorter or longer range, which is a function of the nature of the material and conditions under which it was crystallized. Structures of real crystals, e.g. imperfections, distortions, defects and impurities, are subjects of separate disciplines, and symmetry concepts considered below assume an ideal crystal[1] with perfect periodicity.[2]

1.3 Crystal lattice and crystal structure

Periodic structure of an ideal crystal is best described by a lattice. In a lattice, all elementary parallelepipeds, i.e. unit cells, are equal in their shape and content. If the distribution of atoms in one unit cell is known, the whole crystal can be constructed by simply propagating (translating or shifting) this unit cell along one, two or three directions independently. An example of a simple two-dimensional lattice is shown in *Figure 1.1*. Each unit cell, one of which is shaded, is the parallelogram delineated by solid lines, and every unit cell contains one hypothetical molecule that consists of three atoms: one large, one medium, and one small. The structure of this molecule, including bond lengths and bond angle, remains identical throughout the whole lattice.

[1] Diffraction by an ideal mosaic crystal is best described by a kinematical theory of diffraction, whereas diffraction by an ideal crystal is dynamical and can be described by a much more complex theory of dynamical diffraction. The latter is used in electron diffraction, where kinematical theory does not apply. X-ray diffraction by an ideal mosaic crystal is kinematical, and therefore, this relatively simple theory is used in this book. The word "mosaic" describes a crystal that consists of many small, ideally ordered blocks, which are slightly misaligned with respect to one another. "Ideal mosaic" means that all blocks have the same size and degree of misalignment with respect to other mosaic blocks.

[2] Most of this chapter is dedicated to conventional crystallographic symmetry, where three-dimensional periodicity is implicitly assumed.

In general, the origin of the lattice and the origin of the unit cell can be chosen arbitrarily. In *Figure 1.2*, an alternative with the origin in the middle of the medium size atom is shown using dash-dotted lines. It is worth noting that both the shape and content of the unit cell remain the same as in *Figure 1.1*.

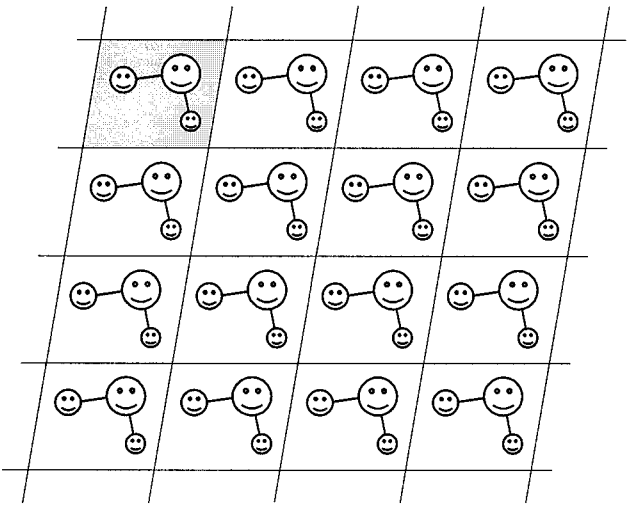


Figure 1.1. Illustration of a two-dimensional lattice with one unit cell shaded.

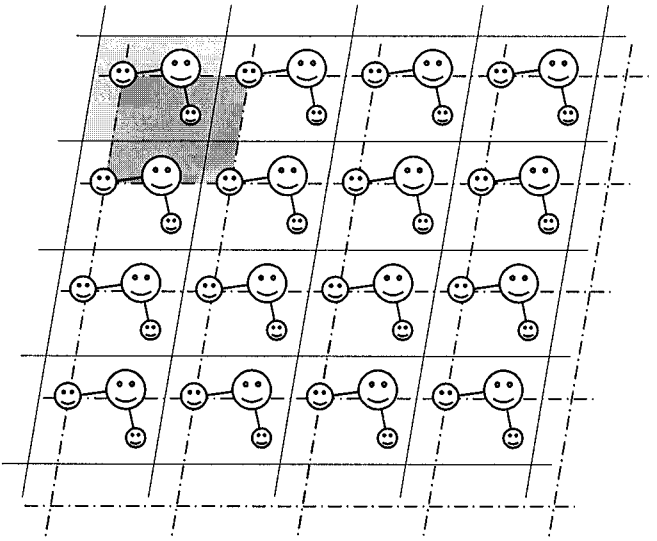


Figure 1.2. Illustration of an arbitrary origin of a lattice. The original and the alternative lattices are shown using solid and dash-dotted lines, respectively. The unit cells (shaded) have identical shapes.

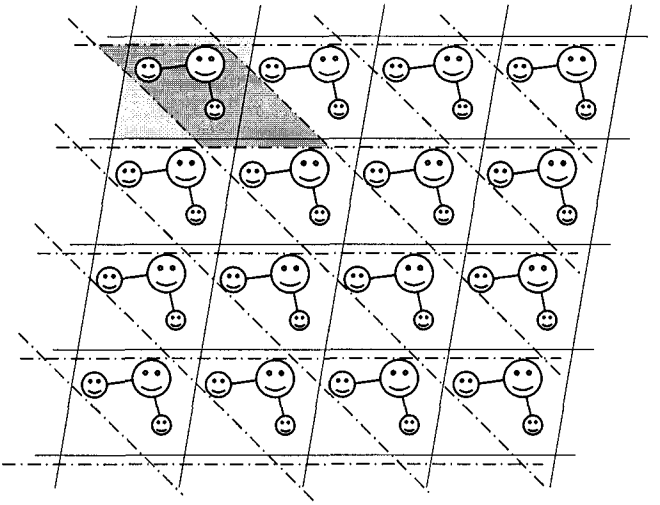


Figure 1.3. Illustration of an arbitrary unit cell of a lattice. The original and the alternative lattices are shown using solid and dash-dotted lines, respectively. The unit cells (shaded) have different shapes but their areas (volumes in three dimensions) remain identical.

The lattice itself, including the shape of the unit cell, may be chosen in an infinite number of ways. As an example, a second alternative lattice with a different unit cell is shown in *Figure 1.3*. Both the origin of the lattice and the shape of the unit cell have been changed when compared to *Figure 1.1*, but the content of the unit cell has not – it encloses the same molecule.

1.3.1 Shape of the unit cell

To fully describe a three-dimensional lattice or its building block – the unit cell – a total of three non-coplanar vectors are required. These vectors (**a**, **b**, **c**) coincide with the three independent edges of the elementary parallelepiped, as shown schematically in *Figure 1.4*.

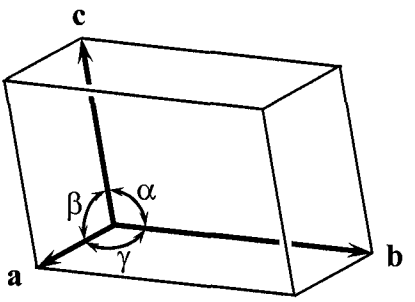


Figure 1.4. Unit cell in three dimensions.

Therefore, any point in a three-dimensional lattice can be described by a vector, **q**, defined in Eq. 1.1, where u, v, and w are integer numbers

$$\mathbf{q} = u\mathbf{a} + v\mathbf{b} + w\mathbf{c} \tag{1.1}$$

The three basis vectors (**a**, **b**, **c**) and all derived vectors (**q**) represent translations in the lattice. They translate the unit cell, including every atom and/or molecule located inside the unit cell, in three dimensions, thus filling the entire space of a crystal. The unit cell can be completely described by specifying a total of six scalar quantities, which are called the unit cell dimensions or lattice parameters. These are (see also *Figure 1.4*):

$a, b, c, \alpha, \beta, \gamma$

The first three parameters (a, b and c) represent the lengths of the unit cell edges, and the last three (α, β and γ) represent the angles between them. Thus, α is the angle between **b** and **c**, β is the angle between **a** and **c**, and γ is the angle between **a** and **b**.

Unit cell dimensions are usually quoted in angströms (Å, where 1 Å = 10^{-10} m = 10^{-8} cm), nanometers (nm, 1 nm = 10^{-9} m), or picometers (pm, 1 pm = 10^{-12} m) for the lengths of the unit cell edges, and in degrees (°) for the angles between basis vectors. To differentiate between basis vectors (**a**, **b**, **c**), which appear in bold, the lengths of the unit cell edges (a, b, c) always appear in italic.

1.3.2 Content of the unit cell

To completely describe the crystal structure, it is not enough to characterize only the geometry of the unit cell. One also needs to establish the distribution of atoms in the unit cell and in the lattice. The latter is done simply by translating each point in space using Eq. 1.1. Hence, the three non-coplanar vectors **a**, **b** and **c** form a basis of the coordinate system with three non-coplanar axes X, Y and Z, which is called the crystallographic coordinate system or the crystallographic basis. The coordinates of a point inside the unit cell, i.e. the coordinate triplets x, y, z, are expressed in fractions of the unit cell edge lengths and they vary from 0 to 1 along the corresponding vectors (**a**, **b** or **c**). Thus, the coordinates of the origin of the unit cell are always 0, 0, 0 ($x = 0$, $y = 0$ and $z = 0$), and for the ends of X-, Y-, and Z-axes, they are 1, 0, 0; 0, 1, 0 and 0, 0, 1, respectively. Again, using capital italic X, Y and Z, we will always refer to crystallographic axes coinciding with **a**, **b** and **c**, respectively, while small italic x, y and z will be used to specify the corresponding fractional coordinates along X, Y and Z.

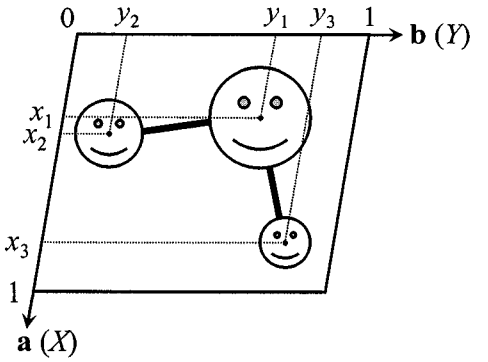


Figure 1.5. Illustration of the content of the unit cell. The coordinates of the center of each atom are given as doublets, i.e. x_1, y_1; x_2, y_2 and x_3, y_3. In three dimensions, they become triplets, i.e. x_i, y_i, z_i.

An example of the unit cell in two dimensions and its content in terms of coordinates of all atoms is shown in *Figure 1.5*. Here, the three atoms ("large", "medium", and "small") have coordinates x_1, y_1; x_2, y_2 and x_3, y_3, respectively. Strictly speaking, the content of the unit cell should be described by specifying other relevant atomic parameters in addition to the position of each atom in the unit cell. These include types of atoms (i.e. their chemical symbols or sequential numbers in a periodic table instead of "big", "medium" and "small"), site occupancy and individual displacement parameters. All of these terms will be defined and explained later in this book.

1.3.3 Asymmetric part of the unit cell

It is important to realize that the case shown in *Figure 1.5* is rarely observed in reality. Usually, unit cell contains more than one molecule or a group of atoms that are converted into each other by simple geometrical transformations, which are called symmetry operations. There may be as many as 192 transformations total in some highly symmetric unit cells. One example is shown in *Figure 1.6*, where each unit cell contains two molecules that are converted into one another by 180° rotation around imaginary lines, which are perpendicular to the plane of the figure. The location of one of these lines (rotation axes) is indicated using small filled ellipse. The original molecule, chosen arbitrary, is white, while the derived molecule is shaded.

The independent part of the unit cell (e.g. the upper right half of the unit cell separated by a dash-dotted line and shaded in *Figure 1.6*) is called the asymmetric unit. It is the only part of the unit cell, for which the specification of atomic positions and other atomic parameters are required.

The entire content of the unit cell can be established from its asymmetric unit using the combination of symmetry operations present in the unit cell. Here, this operation is a rotation by 180° around the line perpendicular to the plane of the projection at the center of the unit cell. It is worth noting that the rotation axis shown in the upper left corner of *Figure 1.6* is not the only axis present in this crystal lattice – identical axes are found at the beginning and in the middle of every unit cell edge as shown in one of the neighboring cells.[1]

Symmetry operations, therefore, can be visualized by means of certain symmetry elements represented by various graphical objects. There are four so-called simple symmetry elements: a point to visualize inversion, a line for rotation, a plane for reflection and the already mentioned translation is also a simple symmetry element, which can be visualized as a vector. Simple symmetry elements may be combined with one another producing complex symmetry elements that include roto-inversion axes, screw axes and glide planes.

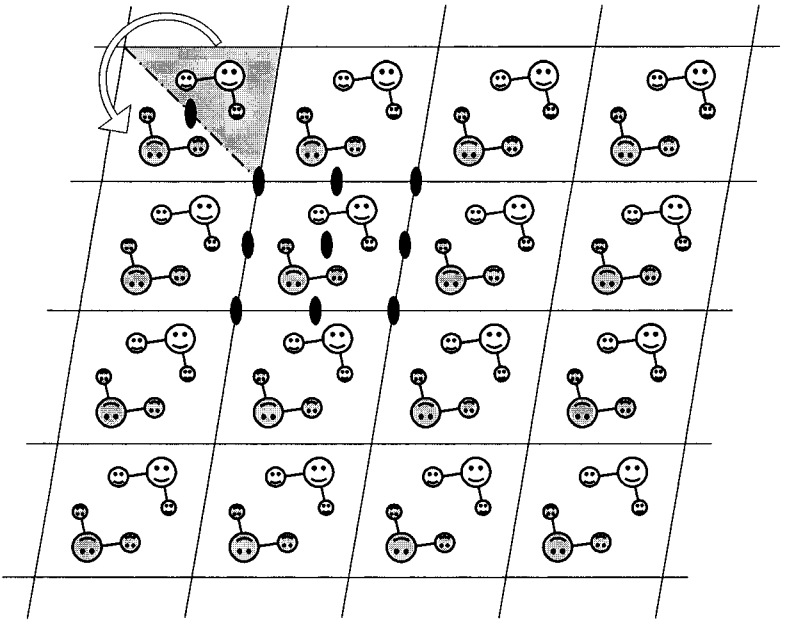


Figure 1.6. Asymmetric unit (shaded) containing an independent molecule, which is clear. Shaded molecules are related to clear molecules in each unit cell *via* rotation by 180° around the lines perpendicular to the plane of the projection at the center of each unit cell. All rotation axes are shown in a neighboring cell.

[1] The appearance of additional rotation axes in each unit cell is the result of the simultaneous presence of both rotational and translational symmetry, which interact with one another (see sections 1.6 and 1.13.3, below).

1.4 Symmetry operations and symmetry elements

From the beginning, it is important to acknowledge that a symmetry operation is not the same as a symmetry element. The difference between the two can be defined as follows: a symmetry operation performs a certain symmetrical transformation and yields only one additional object, e.g. an atom or a molecule, which is symmetrically equivalent to the original. On the other hand, a symmetry element is a graphical or geometrical representation of one or more symmetry operations, such as a mirror reflection in a plane, a rotation about an axis, or an inversion through a point. A much more comprehensive description of the term "symmetry element" exceeds the scope of this book.[1]

Without the presence of translations, a single crystallographic symmetry element may yield a total from one to six objects symmetrically equivalent to one another. For example, a rotation by 60° around an axis is a symmetry operation, whereas the six-fold rotation axis is a symmetry element which contains six rotational symmetry operations: by 60°, 120°, 180°, 240°, 300° and 360° about the same axis. The latter is the same as rotation by 0° or any multiple of 360°. As a result, the six-fold rotation axis produces a total of six symmetrically equivalent objects counting the original. Note that the 360° rotation yields an object identical to the original and literally converts the object into itself. Hence, symmetry elements are used in visual description of symmetry operations, while symmetry operations are invaluable in the algebraic or mathematical representation of crystallographic symmetry, e.g. in computing.

Four simple symmetry operations – rotation, inversion, reflection and translation – are visualized in *Figure 1.7*. Their association with the corresponding geometrical objects and symmetry elements is summarized in *Table 1.2*.

Complex symmetry elements are shown in *Table 1.3*. There are three new complex symmetry elements, which are listed in *italics* in this table:

[1] It may be found in: P.M. de Wolff, Y. Billiet, J.D.H. Donnay, W. Fischer, R.B. Galiulin, A.M. Glazer, Marjorie Senechal, D.P. Schoemaker, H. Wondratchek, Th. Hahn, A.J.C. Wilson, and S.C. Abrahams, Definition of symmetry elements in space groups and point groups. Report of the International Union of Crystallography *ad-hoc* committee on the nomenclature in symmetry, Acta Cryst. **A45**, 494 (1989); P.M. de Wolff, Y. Billiet, J.D.H. Donnay, W. Fischer, R.B. Galiulin, A.M. Glazer, Th. Hahn, Marjorie Senechal, D.P. Schoemaker, H. Wondratchek, A.J.C. Wilson, and S.C. Abrahams, Symbols for symmetry elements and symmetry operations. Final report of the International Union of Crystallography *ad-hoc* committee on the nomenclature in symmetry, Acta Cryst. **A48**, 727 (1992); H.D. Flack, H. Wondratchek, Th. Hahn, and S.C. Abrahams, Symmetry elements in space groups and point groups. Addenda to two IUCr reports on the nomenclature in symmetry, Acta Cryst. **A56**, 96 (2000).

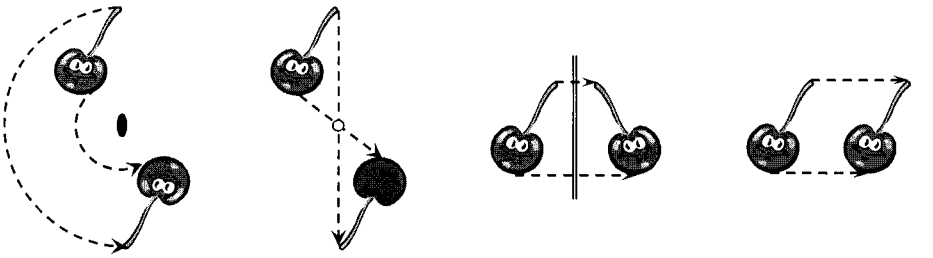


Figure 1.7. Simple symmetry operations. From left to right: rotation, inversion, reflection and translation.

Table 1.2. Simple symmetry operations and conforming symmetry elements.

Symmetry operation	Geometrical representation	Symmetry element
Rotation	Axis (line)	Rotation axis
Inversion	Point (center)	Center of inversion
Reflection	Plane	Mirror plane
Translation	Vector	Translation vector

Table 1.3. Complex symmetry elements.

	Rotation	Inversion	Reflection	Translation
Rotation	-	*Roto-inversion axis*[a]	No[b]	*Screw axis*
Inversion	-	-	No[b]	No[b]
Reflection	-	-	-	*Glide plane*
Translation	-	-	-	-

[a] The prefix "roto" is nearly always omitted and these axes are called "inversion axes".
[b] No new complex symmetry element is formed as a result of this combination.

1. Roto-inversion axis (usually called inversion axis), which includes simultaneous rotation and inversion.[1]
2. Screw axis, which includes simultaneous rotation and translation.
3. Glide plane, which combines reflection and translation.

Symmetry operations and elements are sometimes classified by the way they transform an object as proper and improper. An improper symmetry operation inverts an object in a way that may be imaged by comparing right and left hands: the right hand is an inverted image of the left hand, and if you have ever tried to put a right-handed leather glove on your left hand, you know that it is quite difficult unless the glove has been turned inside out. The inverted object is called an enantiomorph of the direct object and *vice versa*. Thus, symmetry operations and elements that involve inversion or reflection, including when they are present in complex symmetry elements, are

[1] Alternatively, roto-reflection axes combining simultaneous rotation and reflection may be used, however, each of them is identical in its action to one of the roto-inversion axis.

improper. They are: center of inversion, inversion axes, mirror plane, and glide planes. On the contrary, proper symmetry elements include only operations that do not invert an object, such as rotation and translation. They are rotation axes, screw axes and translation vectors. As is seen in *Figure 1.7* both the rotation and translation, which are proper symmetry operations, change the position of the object without inversion, whereas both the inversion and reflection, i.e. improper symmetry operations, invert the object in addition to changing its location.

Another classification is based on the presence or absence of translation in a symmetry element or operation. Symmetry elements containing a translational component, such as a simple translation, screw axis or glide plane, produce infinite numbers of symmetrically equivalent objects, and therefore, these are called infinite symmetry elements. For example, the lattice is infinite because of the presence of translations. All other symmetry elements that do not contain translations always produce a finite number of objects and they are called finite symmetry elements. Center of inversion, mirror plane, rotation and roto-inversion axes are all finite symmetry elements. Finite symmetry elements and operations are used to describe the symmetry of finite objects, e.g. molecules, clusters, polyhedra, crystal forms, unit cell shape, and any non-crystallographic finite objects, for example, the human body. Both finite and infinite symmetry elements are necessary to describe the symmetry of infinite or continuous structures, such as a crystal structure, two-dimensional wall patterns, and others. We will begin the detailed analysis of crystallographic symmetry from simpler finite symmetry elements, followed by the consideration of more complex infinite symmetry elements.

1.5 Finite symmetry elements

Symbols of finite crystallographic symmetry elements and their graphical representations are listed in *Table 1.4*. The full name of a symmetry element is formed by adding "N-fold" to the words "rotation axis" or "inversion axis". The numeral N generally corresponds to the total number of objects generated by the element,[1] and it is also known as the order or the multiplicity of the symmetry element. Orders of axes are found in columns two and four in *Table 1.4*, for example, a three-fold rotation axis or a four-fold inversion axis.

Note that the one-fold inversion axis and the two-fold inversion axis are identical in their action to the center of inversion and the mirror plane,

[1] Except for the center of inversion, which results in two objects, and three-fold inversion axis, which produces six symmetrically equivalent objects. See section 1.20.4 for an algebraic definition of the order of a symmetry element.

respectively. Both the center of inversion and mirror plane are commonly used in crystallography mostly because they are described by simple geometrical elements: point or plane, respectively. The center of inversion is also often called the "center of symmetry".

Furthermore, as we will see in sections 1.5.3 and 1.5.5, below, transformations performed by the three-fold inversion and the six-fold inversion axes can be represented by two independent simple symmetry elements. In the case of the three-fold inversion axis, $\bar{3}$, these are the three-fold rotation axis and the center of inversion acting independently, and in the case of the six-fold inversion axis, $\bar{6}$, the two independent symmetry elements are the mirror plane and the three-fold rotation axis perpendicular to the plane, as denoted in *Table 1.4*. The remaining four-fold inversion axis, $\bar{4}$, is a unique symmetry element (section 1.5.4), which cannot be represented by any pair of independently acting symmetry elements.

Table 1.4. Symbols of finite crystallographic symmetry elements.

Rotation angle	Rotation axes		Roto-inversion axes	
	International symbol	Graphical symbol[a]	International symbol	Graphical symbol[a]
360°	1	none	$\bar{1}$[b]	
180°	2		$\bar{2} = m$[c]	 or
120°	3		$\bar{3} = 3 + \bar{1}$	
90°	4		$\bar{4}$	
60°	6		$\bar{6} = 3 + m\perp 3$	

[a] When the symmetry element is perpendicular to the plane of the projection.
[b] Identical to the center of inversion.
[c] Identical to the mirror plane.

Numerals in the international symbols of the center of inversion and all inversion axes are conventionally marked with the bar on top and not with the dash or the minus sign in front of the numeral (see *Table 1.4*). The dash preceding the numeral, however, is more convenient to use in computing for the input of symmetry data, for example, -1, -3, -4, and -6.

The columns labeled "Graphical symbol" in *Table 1.4* correspond to graphical representation of symmetry elements when they are perpendicular to the plane of the projection. Other orientations of rotation and inversion axes are conventionally indicated using the same symbols to designate the order of the axis with properly oriented lines, as shown in *Figure 1.8*.

Figure 1.8. From left to right: horizontal two-fold rotation axis (top) and its alternative symbol (bottom), diagonal three-fold inversion axis inclined to the plane of the projection, horizontal four-fold rotation axis, horizontal, and diagonal mirror planes. Horizontal or vertical lines are commonly used to indicate axes located in the plane of the projection, and diagonal lines are used to indicate axes, which form an angle other than the right or zero angles with the plane of the projection.

Horizontal and diagonal mirror planes are normally labeled using bold lines as shown in *Figure 1.8* or using double lines in stereographic projections (see section 1.9, below).

When we began our discussion of crystallographic symmetry, we used a happy face and a cherry to illustrate simple concepts of symmetry. These objects are inconvenient to use with complex symmetry elements. On the other hand, the commonly used empty circles with or without a comma inside to indicate enantiomorphous objects, e.g. as in the International Tables for Crystallography,[1] are not intuitive. For example, both inversion and reflection look quite similar. Therefore, we will use a trigonal pyramid, shown in *Figure 1.9*. This figure shows two pyramids, one with its apex facing upwards, where lines connect the visible apex with the base corners, and another with its apex facing downwards, which has no visible lines. Additionally, the pyramid with its apex down is shaded to accentuate the enantiomorphism of the two pyramids.

To review symmetry elements in detail we have to find out more about rotational symmetry, since both the center of inversion and mirror plane can be represented as rotation plus inversion (see *Table 1.4*). The important properties of rotational symmetry are the direction of the axis and the rotation angle. It is almost intuitive that the rotation angle (φ) can only be an integer fraction (1/N) of a full turn (360°), otherwise it can be substituted by a different rotation angle that is an integer fraction of the full turn, or it will result in the infinite or non-crystallographic rotational symmetry. Hence,

$$\varphi = \frac{360^\circ}{N} \tag{1.2}$$

[1] International Tables for Crystallography, vol. A, Fifth revised edition, Theo Hahn, Ed., Published for the International Union of Crystallography by Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston/Dordrecht/London (2002)

Figure 1.9. Trigonal pyramid with its apex up (left) and down (right) relative to the plane of the paper. Shading is used to emphasize enantiomorphous objects.

By comparing Eq. 1.2 with *Table 1.4*, it is easy to see that N, which is the order of the axis, is also the number of elementary rotations required to accomplish a full turn around the axis. In principle, N can be any integer number, e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8... However, in periodic crystals only few specific values are allowed for N due to the presence of translational symmetry. Only axes with N = 1, 2, 3, 4 or 6 are compatible with the periodic crystal lattice, i.e. with the presence of translational symmetry in three dimensions. Other orders, such as 5, 7 and higher will inevitably result in the loss of the conventional periodicity of the lattice, i.e. that defined by Eq. 1.1. The not so distant discoveries of five-fold and ten-fold rotational symmetry continue to intrigue scientists even today, since it is quite clear that it is impossible to build a periodic crystalline lattice in two dimensions exclusively from pentagons, as depicted in *Figure 1.10*. The situation shown in this figure may be rephrased as follows: "It is impossible to completely fill the area in two dimensions with pentagons without creating gaps".

It is worth noting that the structure in *Figure 1.10* not only looks ordered, but it is perfectly ordered. Moreover, in recent decades, many crystals with five-fold symmetry have been found and their structures have been determined. These crystals, however, do not have translational symmetry in three directions, which means that they do not have a finite unit cell and, therefore, they are called quasicrystals: quasi – because there is no translational symmetry, crystals – because they produce discrete, crystal-like diffraction patterns.

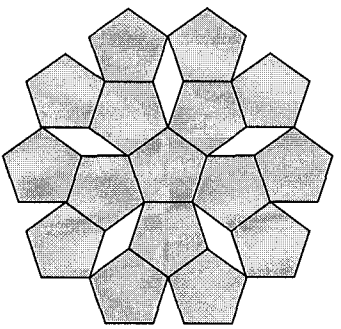


Figure 1.10. Filling the area with pentagons. White parallelograms represent voids in the two-dimensional pattern of pentagons.

1.5.1 One-fold rotation axis and center of inversion

The one-fold rotation axis, shown in *Figure 1.11* on the left, rotates an object by 360°, or in other words converts any object into itself, which is the same as if no symmetrical transformation had been performed. It is the only symmetry element, which does not generate additional objects except the original. One-fold rotation axis, also known as the "identity" or "unity" operation, is used in crystallography for logical completeness in the treatment of symmetry as will be shown later (see sections 1.6 and 1.7). Furthermore, a one-fold rotation axis is always present in any object or in any crystal structure.

The center of inversion (one-fold inversion axis) inverts an object through a point as shown in *Figure 1.11*, right. Thus, the clear pyramid with its apex up, which is the original object, is inverted through a point producing its symmetrical equivalent – the shaded pyramid with its apex down. The latter is converted back into the original clear pyramid after the inversion through the same point. The center of inversion, therefore, generates one additional object giving a total of two related objects.

1.5.2 Two-fold rotation axis and mirror plane

The two-fold rotation axis (*Figure 1.12*, left) simply rotates an object around the axis by 180° and 360°, and this symmetry element results in two objects that are symmetrically equivalent.

The mirror plane (two-fold inversion axis) reflects a clear pyramid in a plane to yield the shaded pyramid and *vice versa*, as shown in *Figure 1.12* on the right. The equivalent symmetry element, i.e. the two-fold inversion axis, rotates an object by 180° as shown by the dotted image of a pyramid with its apex down in *Figure 1.12*, right, but the simultaneous inversion through the point from this intermediate position results in the shaded pyramid. The mirror plane is used to describe this operation rather than the two-fold inversion axis because of its simplicity and a better graphical representation of the reflection operation versus the roto-inversion. The mirror plane also results in two symmetrically equivalent objects.

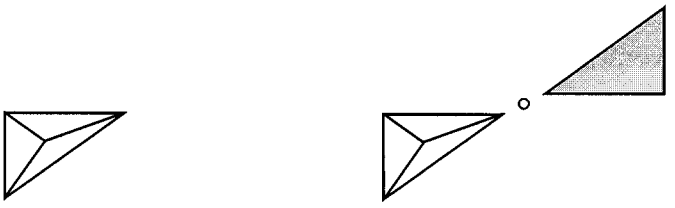


Figure 1.11. One-fold rotation axis (left) and center of inversion (right)

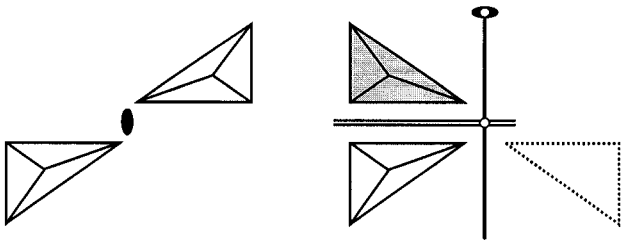


Figure 1.12. Two-fold rotation axis perpendicular to the plane of the projection (left) and mirror plane, also perpendicular to the plane of the projection (right). Also shown in the right is how the two-fold inversion axis located in the plane of the projection and perpendicular to the mirror plane yields the same mirror plane.

1.5.3 Three-fold rotation axis and three-fold inversion axis

The three-fold rotation axis (*Figure 1.13*, left) results in three symmetrically equivalent objects by rotating the original object around the axis by 120°, 240° and 360°. The three-fold inversion axis (*Figure 1.13*, right) produces six symmetrically equivalent objects. The original object, e.g. any of the three clear pyramids with apex up, is transformed as follows: it is rotated by 120° in any direction and then immediately inverted from this intermediate position in the center of inversion. These operations result in a shaded pyramid with its apex down in the position next to the original pyramid but in the direction opposite to the direction of rotation. By applying the same transformation to this shaded pyramid, the third symmetrically equivalent object would be a clear pyramid next to the shaded pyramid in the direction opposite to the direction of rotation. The transformations described above are carried out until the next obtained object repeats the original pyramid.

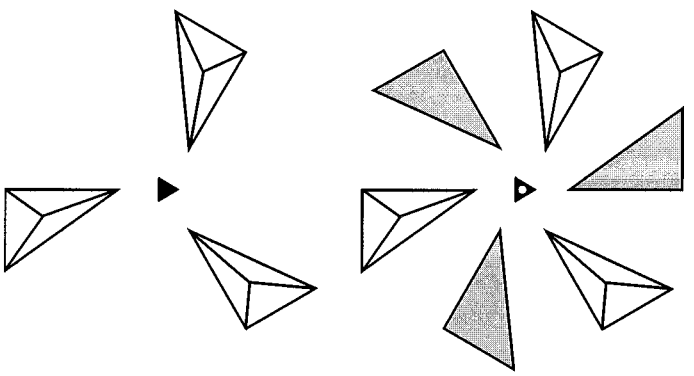


Figure 1.13. Three-fold rotation (left) and three-fold inversion (right) axes perpendicular to the plane of the projection.

It is easy to see that the six symmetrically equivalent objects are related to one another by both the simple three-fold rotation axis and the center of inversion. Hence, the three-fold inversion axis is not only the result of two simultaneous operations (3 and $\bar{1}$), but it is also the result of two independent operations. In other words, $\bar{3}$ is identical to 3 then $\bar{1}$.

1.5.4 Four-fold rotation axis and four-fold inversion axis

The four-fold rotation axis (*Figure 1.14*, left) results in four symmetrically equivalent objects by rotating the original object around the axis by 90°, 180°, 270° and 360°.

The four-fold inversion axis (*Figure 1.14*, right) also produces four symmetrically equivalent objects. The original object, e.g. any of the two clear pyramids with apex up, is rotated by 90° in any direction and then it is immediately inverted from this intermediate position through the center of inversion. This transformation results in a shaded pyramid with its apex down in the position next to the original pyramid but in the direction opposite to the direction of rotation. By applying the same transformation to this shaded pyramid, the third symmetrically equivalent object would be a clear pyramid next to the shaded pyramid in the direction opposite to the direction of rotation. The fourth object is obtained in the same fashion. Unlike in the case of the three-fold inversion axis (see above), this combination of four objects cannot be produced by applying the four-fold rotation axis and the center of inversion separately, and therefore, this is a unique symmetry element. As can be seen from *Figure 1.14*, both four-fold axes also contain a two-fold rotation axis (180° rotations) as a sub-element.

1.5.5 Six-fold rotation axis and six-fold inversion axis

The six-fold rotation axis (*Figure 1.15*, left) results in six symmetrically equivalent objects by rotating the original object around the axis by 60°, 120°, 180°, 240°, 300° and 360°.

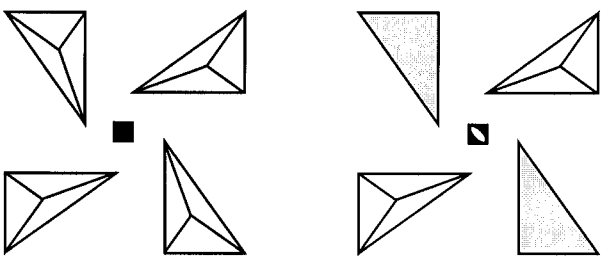


Figure 1.14. Four-fold rotation (left) and four-fold inversion (right) axes perpendicular to the plane of the projection.

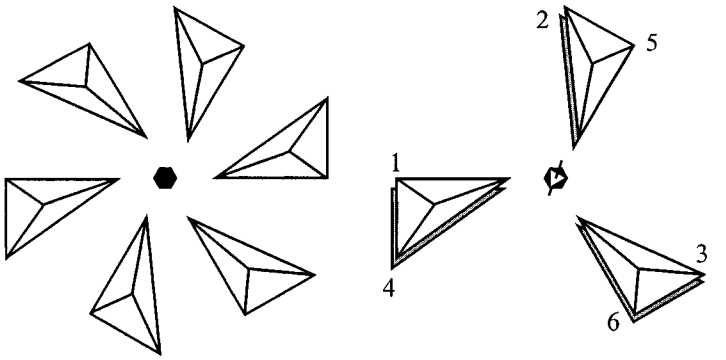


Figure 1.15. Six-fold rotation (left) and six-fold inversion (right) axes. The six-fold inversion axis is tilted by a few degrees away from the vertical to visualize all six symmetrically equivalent pyramids. The numbers next to the pyramids represent the original object (1), and the first generated object (2), etc. The odd numbers are for the pyramids with their apexes up.

The six-fold inversion axis (*Figure 1.15*, right) also produces six symmetrically equivalent objects. Similar to the three-fold inversion axis, this symmetry element can be represented by two independent simple symmetry elements: the first one is the three-fold rotation axis, which connects pyramids 1-3-5 and 2-4-6, and the second one is the mirror plane perpendicular to the three-fold rotation axis, which connects pyramids 1-4, 2-5, and 3-6. As an exercise, try to obtain all six symmetrically equivalent pyramids starting from the pyramid 1 as the original object by applying 60° rotations followed by immediate inversions. Keep in mind that objects are not retained in the intermediate positions because the six-fold rotation and inversion act simultaneously.

The six-fold rotation axis also contains one three-fold and one two-fold rotation axes, while the six-fold inversion axis contains a three-fold rotation and a two-fold inversion (mirror plane) axes as sub-elements. Thus, any N-fold symmetry axis with $N > 1$ always includes either rotation or inversion axes of lower order(s), which is(are) integer divisor(s) of N.

1.6 Interaction of symmetry elements

So far we have considered a total of 10 different crystallographic symmetry elements, some of which were combinations of two simple symmetry elements either acting simultaneously or consecutively. The majority of crystalline objects, e.g. crystals and molecules, have more than one symmetry element.

Symmetry elements and operations interact with one another producing new symmetry elements and symmetry operations, respectively. When applied to symmetry, an interaction means consecutive (and not

simultaneous, as in the case of complex symmetry elements) application of symmetry elements. The appearance of new symmetry operations can be shown by a simple deduction using the fact that a single symmetry operation produces only one new object:

- Assume that symmetry operation No. 1 converts object X into object X_1.
- Assume that another symmetry operation, No. 2, converts object X_1 into object X_2.
- Since object X_1 is symmetrically equivalent to object X, and object X_2 is symmetrically equivalent to object X_1, then objects X and X_2 should also be symmetrically equivalent.

The question is: what converts object X into object X_2? The only logical answer is: there should be an additional symmetry operation, No. 3, that converts object X into object X_2.

Consider the schematic shown in *Figure 1.16*, left and assume that initially we have only the two-fold rotation axis, 2, and the center of inversion, $\bar{1}$. Also assume that the center of inversion is located on the axis (if not, translational symmetry will result, see section 1.13, below).

Beginning with the pyramid A, as the original object, and after rotating it around the axis by 180° we obtain pyramid B, which is symmetrically equivalent to pyramid A. Since we also have the center of inversion, it converts pyramid A into pyramid D, and pyramid B into pyramid C. It is easy to see from *Figure 1.16* (right) that pyramid C is nothing else but the reflected image of pyramid A and *vice versa*, and pyramid D is the reflected copy of pyramid B. Remembering that these mirror reflection relationships between A and C, and B and D were not present from the beginning, we conclude that a new symmetry element – mirror plane, m, emerged as the result of the sequential application of two symmetry elements (2 then $\bar{1}$) to the original object.

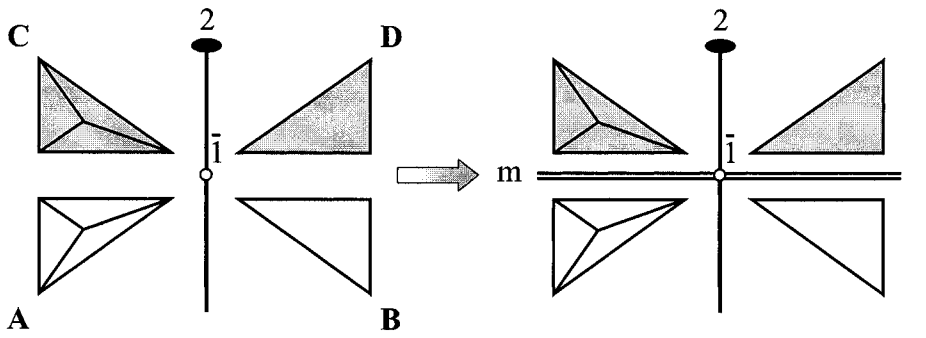


Figure 1.16. Schematic illustrating the interaction of symmetry elements. A two-fold rotation axis and a center of inversion located on the axis (left) result in a mirror plane perpendicular to the axis intersecting it at the center of inversion (right).

The mirror plane is, therefore, a derivative of the two-fold rotation axis and the center of inversion located on the axis. The derivative mirror plane is perpendicular to the axis and intersects the axis in a way that the center of inversion also belongs to the plane. If we start from the same pyramid A and apply the center of inversion first (this results in pyramid D) and the two-fold axis second (i.e. A $\rightarrow$ B and D $\rightarrow$ C), the resulting combination of four symmetrically equivalent objects and the derivative mirror plane remain the same.

This example not only explains how the two symmetry elements interact, but it also serves as an illustration to a broader conclusion deduced above: any two symmetry operations applied in sequence to the same object create a third symmetry operation, which applies to all symmetrically equivalent objects. Note, that if the second operation is the inverse of the first, then the resulting third operation is unity (the one-fold rotation axis, 1). For example, when a mirror plane, a center of inversion, or a two-fold rotation axis are applied twice, all result in a one-fold rotation axis.

The example considered in *Figure 1.16* can be also written in a form of an equation using the international notations of the corresponding symmetry elements (see *Table 1.4*):

$$2 \times \bar{1} \text{ (on 2)} = \bar{1} \text{ (on 2)} \times 2 = \text{m} (\perp 2 \text{ through } \bar{1}) \qquad (1.3)$$

where "×" designates the interaction between symmetry elements. The same example (*Figure 1.16*) can be considered starting from any two of the three symmetry elements. As a result, the following equations are also valid:

$$2 \times \text{m} (\perp 2) = \text{m} (\perp 2) \times 2 = \bar{1} \text{ (at m} \perp 2) \qquad (1.4)$$

$$\text{m} \times \bar{1} \text{ (on m)} = \bar{1} \text{ (on m)} \times \text{m} = 2 (\perp \text{m through } \bar{1}) \qquad (1.5)$$

1.6.1 Symmetry groups

As established above, the interaction between a pair of symmetry elements (or symmetry operations) results in another symmetry element (or symmetry operation). The former may be new or already present within a given combination of symmetrically equivalent objects. If no new symmetry element(s) appear, and when interactions between all pairs of the existing ones are examined, the generation of all symmetry elements is completed. The complete set of symmetry elements is called a symmetry group.

Table 1.5 illustrates the generation of a simple symmetry group using symmetry elements from *Figure 1.16*. The only difference is that in *Table*

1.5, a one-fold rotation axis has been added to the earlier considered two-fold rotation axis, center of inversion, and mirror plane for completeness. It is easy to see that no new symmetry elements appear when interactions between all four symmetry elements have been taken into account.

Table 1.5. Symmetry elements resulting from combinations of 1, $\bar{1}$, 2, and m.

Symmetry operation	**1**	$\bar{1}$	**2**	**m**
1	1	$\bar{1}$	2	m
$\bar{1}$	$\bar{1}$	1	m	2
2	2	m	1	$\bar{1}$
m	m	2	$\bar{1}$	1

Considering only finite symmetry elements and all valid combinations among them, a total of 32 crystallographic symmetry groups can be constructed. The 32 symmetry groups can be derived in a number of ways, one of which has been illustrated in *Table 1.5*, but this subject falls beyond the scope of this book. Nevertheless, the family of finite crystallographic symmetry groups, which are also known as the 32 point groups, is briefly discussed in section 1.10.

1.6.2 Generalization of interactions between finite symmetry elements

In the previous examples (*Figure 1.16* and *Table 1.5*), the two-fold rotation axis and the mirror plane are perpendicular to one another. However, in general, symmetry elements may intersect at various angles (ϕ). When crystallographic symmetry elements are of concern and since only one-, two-, three-, four- and six-fold rotation axes are allowed, only a few specific angles ϕ are possible. In most cases they are: 0° (e.g. when an axis belongs to a plane), 30°, 45°, 60° and 90°. The latter means that symmetry elements are mutually perpendicular. Furthermore, all symmetry elements should intersect along the same line or in one point, otherwise a translation and, therefore, an infinite symmetry results.

An example showing that multiple symmetry elements appear when a two-fold rotation axis intersects with a mirror plane at a 45° angle is shown in *Figure 1.17*. All eight pyramids can be obtained starting from a single pyramid by applying the two symmetry elements (i.e. the mirror plane and the two-fold rotation axis), first to the original pyramid and, second to the pyramids that appear as a result of symmetrical transformations. As an exercise try to obtain all eight pyramids beginning from a selected pyramid using only the mirror plane and the two-fold axis that are shown in *Figure*

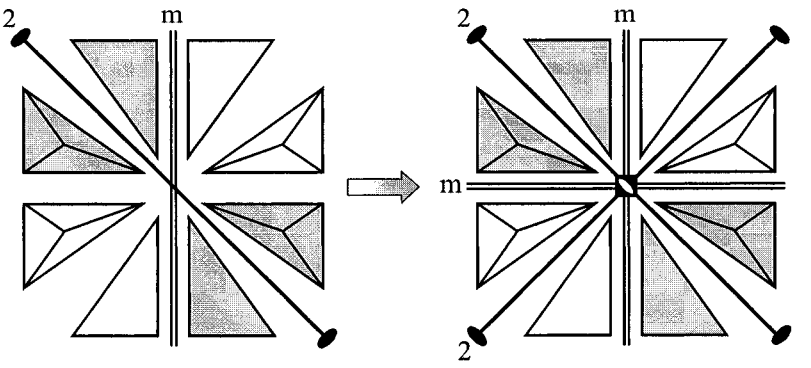


Figure 1.17. Mirror plane (m) and two-fold rotation axis (2) intersecting at 45° (left) result in additional symmetry elements: mirror plane, two-fold rotation axis and four-fold inversion axis (right).

1.17, left. Hints: select a pyramid (1), rotate it (2), reflect both (4), rotate all (6), and reflect all (8). Numbers in parenthesis indicate the total number of different pyramids that should be present in the figure after each symmetrical transformation.

So far we have enough evidence that when two symmetry elements interact, they result in additional symmetry element(s). Furthermore, when three symmetry elements interact, they will also produce derivative symmetry elements. For example, three mutually perpendicular mirror planes yield a center of inversion in a point, which is common for all three planes plus three two-fold rotation axes along the lines where any two planes intersect. However, all cases when more than two elements interact with one another can be reduced to the interaction of pairs. The most typical interactions of the pairs of symmetry elements and their results are shown in *Table 1.6.*

Table 1.6. Typical interactions between finite symmetry elements.

First element	Second element	Derived element (major)	Comments, examples
$\bar{1}$	N-fold axis	m for even N N-fold inversion axis for odd N	$\bar{2}$ = m $\bar{3}$
2	2 at ϕ = 30, 45, 60, or 90°	N-fold rotation axis, N = 180/ϕ	6, 4, 3, or 2 perpendicular to 1st and 2nd axes
m	m at ϕ = 30, 45, 60, or 90°	same as above	6, 4, 3, or 2-fold axis along the common line
m	2 at 90°	inversion center	$\bar{1}$ where m and 2 intersect

First element	Second element	Derived element (major)	Comments, examples
m	2 at $\phi = 30, 45, 60°$	N-fold inversion axis, $N = 180/(90-\phi)$	$\bar{3}$, $\bar{4}$ or $\bar{6}$ in m and perpendicular to 2
3 or $\bar{3}$	2, 4, or $\bar{4}$ at 54.74°; 3 or $\bar{3}$ at 70.53°	four intersecting 3 or $\bar{3}$ plus other symmetry elements	symmetry of cube or tetrahedron

1.7 Fundamentals of group theory

Since the interaction of two crystallographic symmetry elements results in a third crystallographic symmetry element, and the total number of them is finite, valid combinations of symmetry elements can be assembled into finite groups. As a result, mathematical theory of groups is fully applicable to crystallographic symmetry groups.

The definition of a group is quite simple: a group is a set of elements G_1, G_2, ..., G_N, ..., for which a binary combination law is defined and which together satisfy the four fundamental properties: closure, associativity, identity, and the inverse property. Binary combination law (see below) describes how any two elements of a group interact with one other. When a group contains a finite number of elements (N), it represents a finite group, and when the number of elements in a group is infinite then the group is infinite. All crystallographic groups composed from finite symmetry elements are finite, i.e. they contain a limited number of symmetry elements.

The four properties of a group, i.e. closure, associativity, identity, and inversion, can be defined as follows:

1. *Closure* requires that the combination of any two elements, which belong to a group, is also an element of the same group, i.e.

   $G_i \times G_j = G_k$.

   Note that here and below "×" designates a generic binary combination law, and not multiplication. For example, applied to symmetry groups the combination law (×) is the interaction of symmetry elements, in other words it is their sequential application, as has been described in section 1.6. For groups containing numerical elements, the combination law can be defined as addition or multiplication. Every group is always closed, even a group, which contains an infinite number of elements.
2. *Associativity* requires that the associative law is valid, i.e.

   $(G_i \times G_j) \times G_k = G_i \times (G_j \times G_k)$.

   As established before, the associative law holds for symmetry groups. Returning to the example in *Figure 1.16*, which includes the mirror plane, the two-fold rotation axis, the center of inversion and one-fold rotation axis (the latter symmetry element is not shown in the figure and

we did not discuss its presence explicitly, but it is always there), the resulting combination of symmetrically equivalent objects is the same regardless of the order in which these four symmetry elements are applied. Another example to consider is a group formed by numerical elements with addition as the combination law. For this group, the associative law always holds because the result of adding three numbers is always identical regardless of the order in which the sum was calculated.

3. *Identity* requires that there is one and only one element, E (unity), in a group, such that

   $E \times G_i = G_i \times E = G_i$.

   for every element of the group. Crystallographic symmetry groups have the identity element, which is the one-fold rotation axis – it always converts an object into itself and its interaction with any symmetry element produces the same symmetry element (e.g. see *Table 1.5*). Furthermore, this is the only symmetry element, which can be considered as unity. In a group formed by numerical elements with addition as the combination law, the unity element is 0, and if multiplication is chosen as the combination law, the unity element is 1.
4. *Inversion* requires that each element in a group has one and only one inverse element such that

   $G_i^{-1} \times G_i = G_i \times G_i^{-1} = E$.

   As far as symmetry groups are of concern, the inversion rule also holds since the inverse of any symmetry element is the same symmetry element applied twice, for example as in the case of the center of inversion, mirror plane and two-fold rotation axis, or the same rotation applied in the opposite direction, as in the case of any rotation axis of the third order or higher. In a numerical group with addition as the combination law, the inverse element would be the element which has the sign opposite to the selected element, i.e. $M + (-M) = (-M) + M = 0$ (unity), while when the combination law is multiplication, the inverse element is the inverse of the selected element, i.e. $MM^{-1} = M^{-1}M = 1$ (unity).

It may be useful to illustrate how the rules defined above can be used to establish whether or not a certain combination of elements forms a group. The first two examples are non-crystallographic, while the third represents a simple crystallographic group.

1. Consider an integer number 1 and multiplication as the combination law. Is this group closed? Yes, $1 \times 1 = 1$. Is the associative rule applicable? Yes, since $1 \times 1 = 1$ no matter in which order you multiply the two ones. Is there one and only one unity element? Yes, it is 1, since $1 \times 1 = 1$. Is there one and only one inverse element for each element of the group? Yes, because $1 \times 1 = 1$. Hence, this is a group. It is a finite group.

2. Consider all integer numbers (...-3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3...) with addition as the combination law. Is this group closed? Yes, since a sum of any two integers is also an integer. Is the associative rule applicable to this group? Yes, since the result of adding three integers is always identical regardless of the order in which they were added to one another. Is there one unity element? Yes, this group has one and only one unity element, 0, since adding 0 to any integer results in the same integer. Is there one and only one inverse element for any of the elements in the group? Yes, for any positive M, the inverse is –M; for any negative M, the inverse is M, since M + (–M) = (–M) + M = 0 (unity). Hence, this is a group. Since the number of elements in the group is infinite, this group is infinite.
3. Consider the combination of symmetry elements shown in *Figure 1.16*. The combination law here has been defined as interaction of symmetry elements (or their consecutive application to the object). The group contains the following symmetry elements: 1, $\bar{1}$, 2 and m. Associativity, identity, and inversion have been established above, when we were considering group rules. Is this group closed? Yes, as is shown in *Table 1.5*. Therefore, they form a group as well. This group is finite.

1.8 Crystal systems

As described above, the number of finite crystallographic symmetry elements is limited to a total of ten. These symmetry elements can intersect with one another only at certain angles, and the number of these angles is also limited (e.g. see *Table 1.6*). The limited number of symmetry elements and the ways in which they interact with each other leads to a limited number of the completed (i.e. closed) sets of symmetry elements – symmetry groups. When only finite crystallographic symmetry elements are considered, the symmetry groups are called point groups. The word "point" is used because symmetry elements in these groups have at least one common point and, as a result, they leave at least one point of an object unmoved.

The combination of crystallographic symmetry elements and their orientations with respect to one another in a group defines the crystallographic axes, i.e. establishes the coordinate system used in crystallography. Although in general a crystallographic coordinate system can be chosen arbitrarily (e.g. see *Figure 1.3*), to keep things simple and standard the axes are chosen with respect to the specific symmetry elements present in a group. Usually, the crystallographic axes are chosen to be parallel to rotation axes or perpendicular to mirror planes. This choice simplifies both the mathematical and geometrical descriptions of symmetry elements and, therefore, the symmetry of a crystal in general.

As a result, all possible three-dimensional crystallographic point groups have been divided into a total of seven crystal systems based on the presence of a specific symmetry element or specific combination of symmetry elements present in the point group symmetry. The seven crystal systems are listed in *Table 1.7*.

Table 1.7. Seven crystal systems and the corresponding characteristic symmetry elements.

Crystal system	Characteristic symmetry element or combination of symmetry elements
Triclinic	None or center of inversion (no axes other than one-fold rotation or one-fold inversion and no mirror planes)
Monoclinic	Unique two-fold axis and/or single mirror plane
Orthorhombic	Three mutually perpendicular two-fold axes, either rotation or inversion
Trigonal	Unique three-fold axis, either rotation or inversion
Tetragonal	Unique four-fold axis, either rotation or inversion
Hexagonal	Unique six-fold axis, either rotation or inversion
Cubic	Four three-fold axes, either rotation or inversion, along four body diagonals of a cube

1.9 Stereographic projections

All symmetry elements that belong to any of the three-dimensional point groups can be easily depicted in two dimensions by using the so-called stereographic projections. The visualization is achieved similar to projections of northern or southern hemispheres of the globe in geography. Stereographic projections are constructed as follows:

1. A sphere with a center that coincides with the point (if any) where all symmetry elements intersect (*Figure 1.18*, left) is created. If there is no such common point, then the selection of the center of the sphere is random as long as it is located on one of the characteristic symmetry elements (see *Table 1.7*).
2. This sphere is split by the equatorial plane into the upper and lower hemispheres.
3. The lines corresponding to the intersections of mirror planes and the points corresponding to the intersections of rotation axes with the upper ("northern") hemisphere are projected on the equatorial plane using the lower ("southern") pole as the point of view.
4. The projected lines and points are labeled using appropriate symbols (see *Table 1.4* and *Figure 1.8*).
5. The presence of the center of inversion, if any, is shown by adding letter *C* to the center of the projection.

Figure 1.18 (right) shows an arbitrary stereographic projection of the point group symmetry formed by the following symmetry elements: two-fold rotation axis, mirror plane and center of inversion (compare it with *Figure*

1.16, which shows the same symmetry elements without the stereographic projection). The presence of one-fold rotation axis is never indicated on the stereographic projection.

Arbitrary orientations are inconvenient because the same point group symmetry results in an infinite number of possible stereographic projections. Thus, *Figure 1.19* shows two different stereographic projections of the same point group symmetry with the horizontal (left) and vertical (right) orientations of the plane, both of which are standard.

Figure 1.20 (left) is an example of the stereographic projection of a tetragonal point group symmetry containing symmetry elements discussed previously (see *Figure 1.17*). *Figure 1.20* (right) shows the most complex cubic point group symmetry containing three mutually perpendicular four-fold rotation axes, four three-fold rotation axes located along the body diagonals of a cube, six two-fold rotation axes, nine mirror planes, and a center of inversion plus a one-fold rotation.

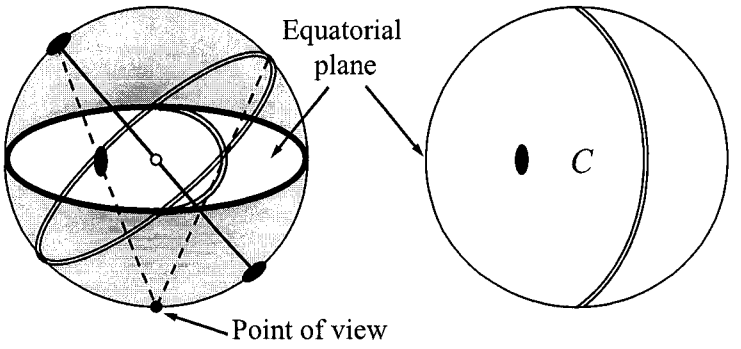


Figure 1.18. The schematic of how to construct a stereographic projection. The location of the center or inversion is indicated using letter *C* in the middle of the stereographic projection.

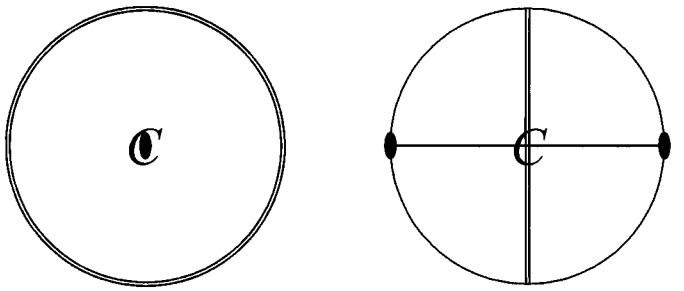


Figure 1.19. The two conventional stereographic projections of the point group symmetry containing a two-fold axis, mirror plane and center of inversion. The one-fold rotation is not shown.

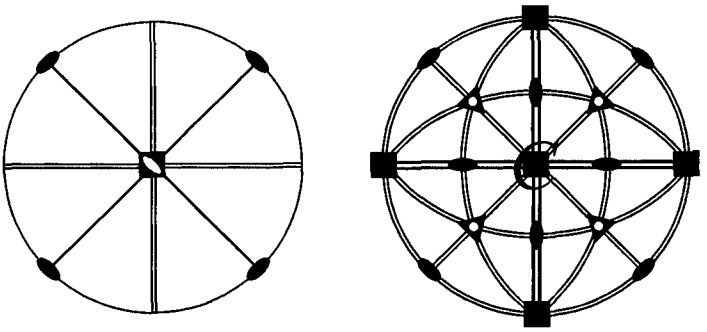


Figure 1.20. Examples of the stereographic projections with tetragonal (left) and cubic (right) symmetry.

More information about the stereographic projection can be found on the World Wide Web in the International Union of Crystallography (IUCr) teaching pamphlets[1] and in the International Tables for Crystallography, vol. A.

1.10 Crystallographic point groups

The total number of symmetry elements that form a crystallographic point group varies from one to as many as 24. However, there is no need to use each and every symmetry element that belongs to a group in order to uniquely define and completely describe any of the crystallographic groups. The symbol of the point group symmetry is constructed using the list of basic symmetry elements that is adequate to generate all derivative symmetry elements by applying the first property of the group (closure).

The orientation of each symmetry element with respect to the three major crystallographic axes is defined by its position in the sequence that forms the symbol of the point group symmetry. The complete list of all 32 point groups is found in *Table 1.8.*

The columns labeled "First", "Second" and "Third position" describe both the symmetry elements found in the appropriate position and their orientation. When the corresponding symmetry element is a rotation axis, it is parallel to the specified crystallographic direction but mirror planes are always perpendicular to the corresponding direction.[2] When the crystal system has a unique axis, e.g. 2 in the monoclinic crystal system, 4 in the

[1] E. J. W. Whittaker, The stereographic projection, http://www.us.iucr.org/iucr-top/comm/cteach/pamphlets/11/index.html.

[2] In fact, since a mirror plane can be represented by a two-fold inversion axis, this is the same as the latter parallel to the corresponding direction, see *Figure 1.12*, right.

tetragonal crystal system, and so on, and when there is a mirror plane that is perpendicular to the axis, this combination is always present in the point group symbol. The axis is listed first and the plane is listed second with the two symbols separated by a slash (/). According to *Table 1.8* the crystallographic point group shown in *Figure 1.19* is 2/m, and those in *Figure 1.20* are 4m2 (left) and m$\bar{3}$m (right), respectively.

Table 1.8. Symbols of crystallographic point groups.

Crystal	First position		Second position		Third position		Point
system	element	direction	element	direction	element	direction	group
Triclinic	1 or $\bar{1}$	any	none		none		1, $\bar{1}$
Mono-clinic	2, m or 2/m	*Y*	none		none		2, m, 2/m
Ortho-rhombic	2 or m	*X*	2 or m	*Y*	2 or m	*Z*	222, mm2, mmm
Tetragonal	4, $\bar{4}$ or 4/m	*Z*	none or 2 or m	*X*	none or 2 or m	base diagonal	4, $\bar{4}$, 4/m, 422, 4mm, $\bar{4}$2m, 4/mmm
Trigonal	3 or $\bar{3}$	*Z*	none or 2 or m	*X*	none		3, $\bar{3}$, 32, 3m, $\bar{3}$m
Hexagonal	6, $\bar{6}$ or 6/m	*Z*	none or 2 or m	*X*	none or 2 or m	base diagonal	6, $\bar{6}$, 6/m, 622, 6mm, $\bar{6}$2m, 6/mmm
Cubic	2, m, 4 or $\bar{4}$	*X*	3 or $\bar{3}$	body diagonal	none or 2 or m	face diagonal	23, m3, 432, $\bar{4}$3m, m$\bar{3}$m

The list of crystallographic point groups is not very logical, even when arranged according to the crystal systems as has been done in *Table 1.8*. Therefore, in *Table 1.9*, the 32 point groups are arranged according to their merohedry, or in other words, according to the presence of symmetry elements other than the major (or unique) axis.

Another classification of point groups is based on their action. Thus, centrosymmetric point groups, or groups containing a center of inversion are shown in *Table 1.9* in **bold**, while the groups containing only rotation operation(s) and, therefore, not changing the enantiomorph (all hands remain either left of right), are in *italic*. Point groups shown in shaded boxes do not have the inversion center, however, they change the enantiomorph (both left and right hands are present). An empty cell in the table means that the generated point group is already present in a different place in *Table 1.9*, sometimes in a different crystal system.

Table 1.9. Crystallographic point groups arranged according to their merohedry.

Crystal system	N[a]	$\bar{N}$[a]	N⊥m[b]	N⊥2[b]	N ‖ m	$\bar{N}$ ‖ m	N⊥m‖m
Triclinic	*1*	$\bar{1}$					
Monoclinic	*2*	m	**2/m**				
Orthorhombic				*222*	mm2		**mmm**
Tetragonal	*4*	$\bar{4}$	**4/m**	*422*	4mm	$\bar{4}$m2	**4/mmm**
Trigonal	*3*	$\bar{3}$		*32*	3m	$\bar{3}$**m**	
Hexagonal	*6*	$\bar{6}$	**6/m**	*622*	6mm	$\bar{6}$m2	**6/mmm**
Cubic	*23*		**m$\bar{3}$**	*432*		$\bar{4}$3m	**m$\bar{3}$m**

[a] N and $\bar{N}$ are major N-fold rotation and inversion axes, respectively.

[b] m and 2 are mirror plane and two-fold rotation axis, respectively, which are parallel (‖) or perpendicular (⊥) to the major axis.

1.11 Laue classes

Radiation and particles, i.e. x-rays, neutrons and electrons, interact with a crystal in a way that the resulting diffraction pattern is always centrosymmetric, regardless of whether an inversion center is present in the crystal or not. This leads to another classification of crystallographic point groups, called Laue[1] classes. The Laue class defines the symmetry of the diffraction pattern produced by a single crystal, and can be easily inferred from a point group by adding the center of inversion (see *Table 1.10*).

For example, all three monoclinic point groups, i.e. 2, m and 2/m will result in 2/m symmetry after adding the center of inversion. In other words, the 2, m and 2/m point groups belong to the Laue class 2/m, and any diffraction pattern obtained from any monoclinic structure will always have 2/m symmetry. The importance of this classification is easily appreciated from the fact that Laue classes, but not crystallographic point groups, are distinguishable from diffraction data, which is caused by the presence of the center of inversion. All Laue classes (a total of 11) listed in *Table 1.10* can be recognized from three-dimensional diffraction data when examining single crystals. However, conventional powder diffraction is fundamentally one-dimensional because the diffracted intensity is measured as a function of one variable (Bragg[2] angle), which results in six identifiable "powder" Laue classes.

[1] Max von Laue (1879-1960). German physicist who was the first to observe and explain the phenomenon of x-ray diffraction in 1912; Laue was awarded Nobel Prize in Physics in 1914 "for his discovery of the diffraction of x-rays by crystals". For more information about Laue see http://www.nobel.se/physics/laureates/1914/

[2] Sir William Henry Bragg (1862-1942). British physicist and mathematician who together with his son William Lawrence Bragg (1890-1971) founded x-ray diffraction science in 1913-1914. Both were awarded Nobel Prize in Physics in 1915 "for their services in the

Table 1.10. The 11 Laue classes.

Crystal system	Laue class	"Powder" Laue class	Point groups
Triclinic	$\bar{1}$	$\bar{1}$	1, $\bar{1}$
Monoclinic	2/m	2/m	2, m, 2/m
Orthorhombic	mmm	mmm	222, mm2, mmm
Tetragonal	4/m	4/mmm	4, $\bar{4}$, 4/m
	4/mmm	4/mmm	422, 4mm, $\bar{4}$m2, 4/mmm
Trigonal	$\bar{3}$	6/mmm	3, $\bar{3}$
	$\bar{3}$m	6/mmm	32, 3m, $\bar{3}$m
Hexagonal	6/m	6/mmm	6, $\bar{6}$, 6/m
	6/mmm	6/mmm	622, 6mm, $\bar{6}$m2, 6/mmm
Cubic	m$\bar{3}$	m$\bar{3}$m	23, m$\bar{3}$
	m$\bar{3}$m	m$\bar{3}$m	432, $\bar{4}$3m, m$\bar{3}$m

As seen in *Table 1.10*, there is one "powder" Laue class per crystal system, except for the trigonal and hexagonal crystal systems, which share the same "powder" Laue class, 6/mmm. In other words, not every Laue class can be established from a simple visual analysis of powder diffraction data. This occurs because certain diffraction peaks with potentially different intensities (the property which enables us to differentiate between Laue classes 4/m and 4/mmm; $\bar{3}$, $\bar{3}$m, 6/m and 6/mmm; m$\bar{3}$ and m$\bar{3}$m) completely overlap since they are observed at identical Bragg angles. Hence, only Laue classes that differ from one another in the shape of the unit cell (see *Table 1.11*, below), are *ab initio* discernible from powder diffraction data without complete structure determination.

1.12 Selection of a unit cell and Bravais lattices

The symmetry group of a lattice always has the highest symmetry in the conforming crystal system. Taking into account that trigonal and hexagonal crystal systems are usually described in the same type of the lattice, seven crystal systems can be grouped into six crystal families, which are identical to the six "powder" Laue classes. Different types of lattices, or in general crystal systems, are identified by the presence of specific symmetry elements and their relative orientation. Furthermore, lattice symmetry is always the same as the symmetry of the unit cell shape (except that the lattice has translational symmetry but the unit cell does not), which establishes unique relationships between the unit cell dimensions (a, b, c, α, β and γ) in each crystal family as shown in *Table 1.11*. Thus, *rule number one* for the proper

analysis of crystal structure by means of x-rays". See http://www.nobel.se/physics/laureates/1915/ for more details.

selection of the unit cell can be formulated as follows: symmetry of the unit cell should be identical to the symmetry of the lattice, excluding translations.

Table 1.11. Lattice symmetry and unit cell shapes.

Crystal family	Unit cell symmetry	Unit cell shape/parameters
Triclinic	$\bar{1}$	$a \neq b \neq c$; $\alpha \neq \beta \neq \gamma \neq 90°$
Monoclinic	2/m	$a \neq b \neq c$; $\alpha = \gamma = 90°$, $\beta \neq 90°$
Orthorhombic	mmm	$a \neq b \neq c$; $\alpha = \beta = \gamma = 90°$
Tetragonal	4/mmm	$a = b \neq c$; $\alpha = \beta = \gamma = 90°$
Hexagonal and Trigonal	6/mmm	$a = b \neq c$; $\alpha = \beta = 90°$, $\gamma = 120°$
Cubic	m$\bar{3}$m	$a = b = c$; $\alpha = \beta = \gamma = 90°$

We have already briefly mentioned that in general, the choice of the unit cell is not unique (e.g. see *Figure 1.3*). The uncertainty in the selection of the unit cell is further illustrated in *Figure 1.21*, where the unit cell in the same two-dimensional lattice has been chosen in four different ways.

The four unit cells shown in *Figure 1.21* have the same symmetry (a two-fold rotation axis, which is perpendicular to the plane of the projection and passes through the center of each unit cell), but they have different shapes and areas (volumes in three dimensions). Furthermore, the two unit cells located on top of *Figure 1.21* do not contain lattice points inside the unit cell, while each of the remaining two has an additional lattice point in the middle. We note that all unit cells depicted in *Figure 1.21* satisfy the rule for the monoclinic crystal system established in *Table 1.11*. It is quite obvious, that more unit cells can be selected in *Figure 1.21*, and an infinite number of choices is possible in the infinite lattice, all in agreement with *Table 1.11*.

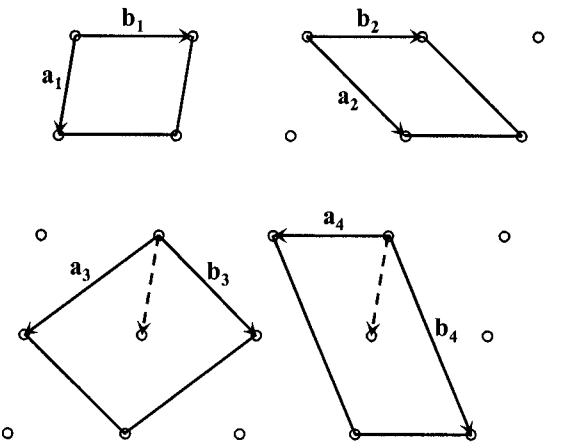


Figure 1.21. Four different ways to select a unit cell in the same two-dimensional lattice.

Without adopting certain conventions, different unit cell dimensions might and most definitely would be assigned to the same material based on preferences of different researchers. Therefore, long ago the following rules (*Table 1.12*) were established to designate a standard choice of the unit cell, dependent on the crystal system. This set of rules explains both the unit cell shape and relationships between the unit cell parameters listed in *Table 1.11* (i.e. rule number one), and can be considered as *rule number two* in the proper selection of the unit cell.

Table 1.12. Rules for selecting the unit cell in different crystal systems.

Crystal family	Standard unit cell choice	Alternative unit cell choice
Triclinic	Angles between crystallographic axes should be as close to 90° as possible but greater than or equal to 90°	Angle(s) less than or equal to 90° are allowed
Monoclinic	*Y*-axis is chosen parallel to the unique two-fold rotation axis (or perpendicular to the mirror plane) and angle β should be greater than but as close to 90° as possible	Same as the standard choice, but *Z*-axis in place of *Y*, and angle γ in place of β are allowed
Orthorhombic	Crystallographic axes are chosen parallel to the three mutually perpendicular two-fold rotation axes (or perpendicular to mirror planes)	None
Tetragonal	*Z*-axis is always parallel to the unique four-fold rotation (inversion) axis. *X*- and *Y*-axes form a 90° angle with the *Z*-axis and with each other	None
Hexagonal /Trigonal	*Z*-axis is always parallel to three- or six-fold rotation (inversion) axis. *X*- and *Y*-axes form a 90° angle with the *Z*-axis and a 120° angle with each other	In a trigonal symmetry,[1] three-fold axis is chosen along the body diagonal of the primitive unit cell, then $a = b = c$ and $\alpha = \beta = \gamma \neq 90°$
Cubic	Crystallographic axes are always parallel to the three mutually perpendicular two- or four-fold rotation axes, while the four three-fold rotation (inversion) axes are parallel to three body diagonals of a cube	None

Applying the rules established in *Table 1.12* to two of the four unit cells shown on top of *Figure 1.21*, the cell based on vectors $\mathbf{a}_1$ and $\mathbf{b}_1$ is the standard choice. The unit cell based on vectors $\mathbf{a}_2$ and $\mathbf{b}_2$ has the angle between the vectors much farther from 90° than the first one. The remaining

[1] Instead of a rhombohedrally-centered trigonal unit cell shown in *Figure 1.26*, below.

two cells contain additional lattice points in the middle. This type of the unit cell is called centered, while the unit cell without a point in the middle is primitive. In general, a primitive unit cell is preferred over a centered one, otherwise it is possible to select a unit cell with any number of points inside, and ultimately it can be made as large as the entire crystal. However, because rule number one requires that the unit cell has the same symmetry as the entire lattice except translational symmetry, it is not always possible to select a primitive unit cell, and then centered unit cells are used.

The *third rule* used to select a standard unit cell is the requirement of the minimum volume (or the minimum number of lattice points inside the unit cell). All things considered, the following unit cells are customarily used in crystallography.

- Primitive, i.e. non-centered unit cell. A primitive unit cell is shown schematically in *Figure 1.22*, and it contains one lattice point per unit cell (lattice points are located in eight corners of the parallelepiped, but each corner is shared by eight neighboring unit cells in three dimensions).
- Base-centered unit cell (*Figure 1.23*) contains additional lattice points in the middle of the two opposite faces (as indicated by the vector pointing towards the middle of the base and by the dotted diagonals on both faces). This unit cell contains two lattice points since each face is shared by two neighboring unit cells in three dimensions.

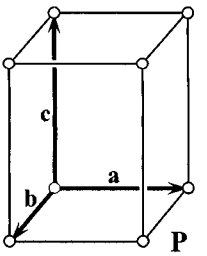


Figure 1.22. Primitive unit cell.

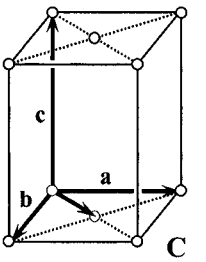


Figure 1.23. Base-centered unit cell.

- Body-centered unit cell (*Figure 1.24*) contains one additional lattice point in the middle of the body of the unit cell. Similar to a base-centered, the body-centered unit cell contains a total of two lattice points.
- Face-centered unit cell (*Figure 1.25*) contains three additional lattice points located in the middle of each face, which results in a total of four lattice points in a single face-centered unit cell.
- Rhombohedral unit cell (*Figure 1.26*) is a special unit cell that is allowed only in a trigonal crystal system. It contains two additional lattice points located at 1/3, 2/3, 2/3 and 2/3, 1/3, 1/3 as shown by the ends of the two vectors inside the unit cell, which results in a total of three lattice points per unit cell.

Since every unit cell in the crystal lattice is identical to all others, it is said that the lattice can be primitive or centered. We already mentioned (Eq. 1.1) that a crystallographic lattice is based on three non-coplanar translations (vectors), thus the presence of lattice centering introduces additional translations that are different from the three basis translations. Properties of various lattices are summarized in *Table 1.13* along with the international symbols adopted to differentiate between different lattice types. In a base-centered lattice, there are three different possibilities to select a pair of opposite faces, which is also reflected in *Table 1.13*.

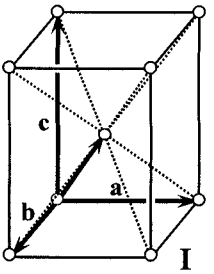


Figure 1.24. Body-centered unit cell.

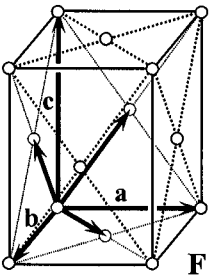


Figure 1.25. Face-centered unit cell.

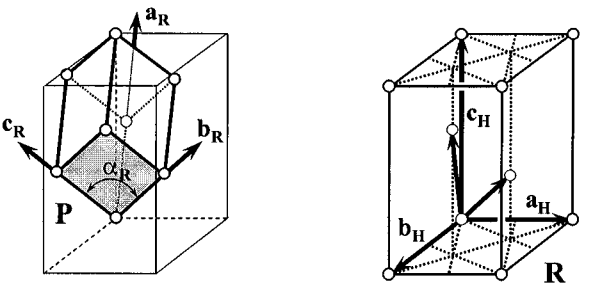


Figure 1.26. Primitive (left) and hexagonal rhombohedral (right) unit cells.

Table 1.13. Possible lattice centering.

Centering of the lattice	Lattice points per unit cell	International symbol	Lattice translation(s) due to centering
Primitive	1	P	None
Base-centered	2	A	1/2(**b**+**c**)
Base-centered	2	B	1/2(**a**+**c**)
Base-centered	2	C	1/2(**a**+**b**)
Body-centered	2	I	1/2(**a**+**b**+**c**)
Face-centered	4	F	1/2(**b**+**c**); 1/2(**a**+**c**); 1/2(**a**+**b**)
Rhombohedral	3	R	1/3**a**+2/3**b**+2/3**c**; 2/3**a**+1/3**b**+1/3**c**

The introduction of lattice centering makes the treatment of crystallographic symmetry much more elegant when compared to that where only primitive lattices are allowed. Considering six crystal families (*Table 1.12*) and five types of lattices (*Table 1.13*), where three base-centered lattices, which are different only by the orientation of the centered faces with respect to a fixed set of basis vectors are taken as one, it is possible to show that only 14 different types of unit cells are required to describe all lattices using conventional crystallographic symmetry. These are listed in *Table 1.14*, and they are known as Bravais lattices.[1]

Empty positions in *Table 1.14* exist because the corresponding lattices can be reduced to a lattice with different centering and a smaller unit cell (rule number three), or they do not satisfy rules number one or two. For example:

- In the triclinic crystal system, any of the centered lattices is reduced to a primitive lattice with the smaller volume of the unit cell (rule number three).
- In the monoclinic crystal system, the body-centered lattice can be converted into a base-centered lattice (C), which is standard. The face-

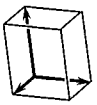
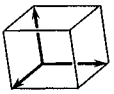
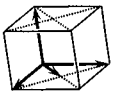
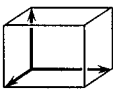
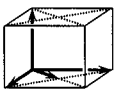
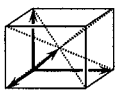
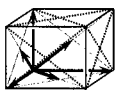
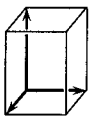
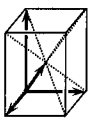
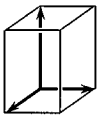
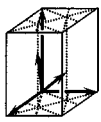
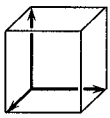
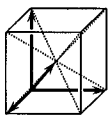
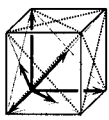
[1] Auguste Bravais (1811-1863). French crystallographer, who was the first to derive the 14 different lattices in 1848.

centered lattice is reduced to a base-centered lattice with half the volume of the unit cell (rule number three). Even though the base-centered lattice may be reduced to a primitive cell and further minimize the volume of the unit cell, this reduction is incompatible with rule number one since more complicated relationships between the unit cell parameters would result instead of the standard $\alpha = \gamma = 90^\circ$ and $\beta \neq 90^\circ$.

- In the tetragonal crystal system the base-centered lattice (C) is reduced to a primitive (P) one, whereas the face-centered lattice (F) is reduced to a body-centered (I) cell; both reductions result in half the volume of the corresponding unit cell (rule number three).

The latter example is illustrated in *Figure 1.27*, where a tetragonal face-centered lattice is reduced to a tetragonal body-centered lattice, which has the same symmetry but half the volume of the unit cell. The reduction is carried out using the transformations of basis vectors as shown in Eqs. 1.6 through 1.8.

Table 1.14. The 14 Bravais lattices.

Crystal system	P	C	I	F	R
Triclinic					
Monoclinic					
Orthorhombic					
Tetragonal					
Hexagonal Trigonal					
Cubic					

$$\mathbf{a}_I = 1/2(\mathbf{a}_F - \mathbf{b}_F) \tag{1.6}$$

$$\mathbf{b}_I = 1/2(\mathbf{a}_F + \mathbf{b}_F) \tag{1.7}$$

$$\mathbf{c}_I = \mathbf{c}_F \tag{1.8}$$

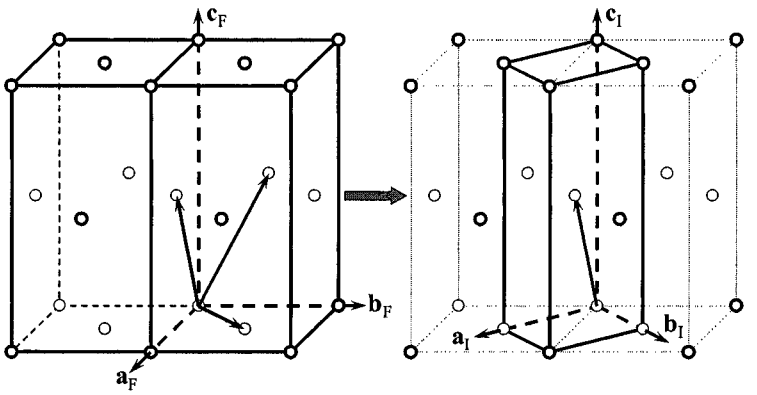


Figure 1.27. The reduction of the tetragonal face-centered lattice (left) to the tetragonal body-centered lattice with half the volume of the unit cell (right). Small circles indicate lattice points.

The relationships between the unit cell dimensions and unit cell volumes of the original face-centered (V_F) and the reduced body-centered (V_I) lattices are:

$$a_I = b_I = \frac{a_F}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{b_F}{\sqrt{2}}; \quad c_I = c_F \tag{1.9}$$

$$V_I = V_F/2 \tag{1.10}$$

1.13 Infinite symmetry elements

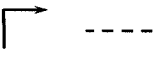
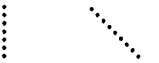
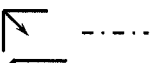
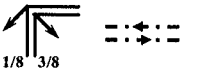
So far, our discussion of symmetry of the lattice was limited to lattice points and symmetry of the unit cell. The next step is to think about symmetry of the lattice including the contents of the unit cell. This immediately brings translational symmetry into consideration to reflect the periodic nature of crystal lattices, which are continuous or infinite object. As

a result, we need to introduce the so-called infinite or translational symmetry elements in addition to the familiar finite or non-translational symmetry elements, which can be present in a lattice as well. Translation or shift is a simple infinite symmetry element (see *Figure 1.7*). When acting simultaneously, translation and rotation result in screw axes; translation and reflection in a mirror plane produce glide planes (*Table 1.3*). Screw axes and glide planes are, therefore, complex infinite symmetry elements.

1.13.1 Glide planes

The combination of a mirror reflection plane with the corresponding translations that are always parallel to the plane, results in a total of five possible crystallographic glide planes.[1] The allowed translations are 1/2 or 1/4 of the length of the basis vector, parallel to which the shift (i.e. gliding) occurs. All possible glide planes are listed in *Table 1.15* together with their graphical symbols. Since each of the glide planes produces an infinite number of symmetrically equivalent objects from the original, the order of the plane indicates the number of symmetrically equivalent objects within the boundaries of one unit cell, and is also listed in *Table 1.15*.

Table 1.15. Crystallographic glide planes

Plane symbol	Order	Graphical symbol[a]	Translation vector
a	2		**a**/2
b	2		**b**/2
c	2		**c**/2
n	2		**d**/2[b]
d	4		**d**/4[b]

[a] Shown in the following coordinate system: 

[b] **d** is the diagonal vector, e.g. **d** = **a** + **b**, **d** = **a** - **b**, **d** = **a** + **b** + **c**, etc., which depends on the orientation of the plane with respect to crystallographic basis vectors.

Thus, there are three types of glide planes:

– Glide planes a, b and c, which after reflecting in the plane translate an object by 1/2 of the length of **a**, **b** and **c** basis vectors, respectively.

[1] A sixth glide plane, e, has been introduced by de Wolff *et al.* (see the footnote on page 10) to resolve ambiguities occurring in some space groups (see section 1.16). For example, space group Cmca, where the translation after the reflection in the a-plane occurs along **a** and **b**, is identical to Cmcb, but the group becomes unique, i.e. Cmce, using the e plane.

Because of this, for example, glide plane, a, can be perpendicular to either **b** or **c**, but it cannot be perpendicular to **a**. Similarly, glide plane, b, cannot be perpendicular to **b**, and glide plane, c, cannot be perpendicular to **c**. Since the translation is always by 1/2 of the corresponding basis vector, these planes produce two symmetrically equivalent objects within one full length of the corresponding basis vector (and within one unit cell), i.e. their order is 2.

- Glide plane n, which after reflecting in the plane translates an object by 1/2 of the length of the diagonal between the two basis vectors located in the plane parallel to n. For example, glide plane, n, perpendicular to **c** will translate an object by 1/2(**a** + **b**). Glide plane n, results in two symmetrically equivalent objects within the full length of the diagonal vector (and within one unit cell) and its order is 2.
- Glide planes d, which after reflecting in the plane translate an object by 1/4 of the length of the diagonal between the two basis vectors located in the plane parallel to d. These planes, also known as "diamond" planes since they are found in the diamond crystal structure, are always present in pairs parallel to one another, and translate along different diagonals. The length of the translation is 1/4, which results in a total of four symmetrically equivalent objects per unit cell.

The illustration of how glide planes b, c and n generate an infinite number of symmetrically equivalent objects is shown in *Figure 1.28.*

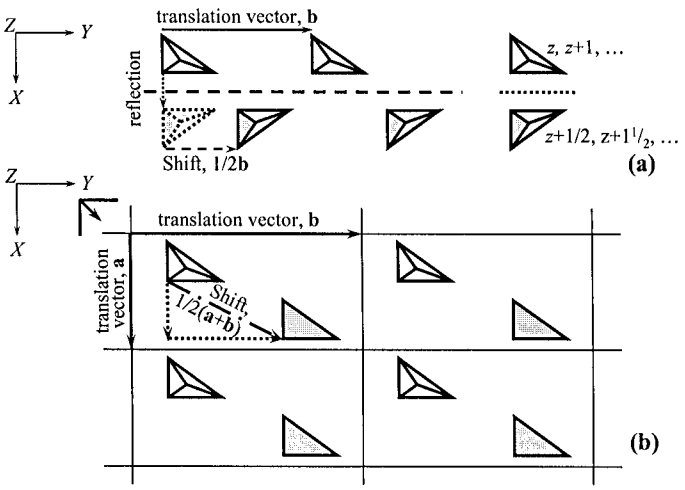


Figure 1.28. (a) - vertical glide plane b, perpendicular to **a** with a horizontal translation by 1/2 along **b** (left); vertical glide plane c, perpendicular to **a** with a vertical translation by 1/2 along **c** (right). (b) - horizontal glide plane n, perpendicular to **c** with a diagonal translation by 1/2(**a** + **b**) parallel to the **ab** plane. The dotted shaded pyramid in (a) indicates the intermediate position to which the first pyramid is reflected before it is translated along **b** and along the plane.

1.13.2 Screw axes

Screw axes perform a rotation simultaneously with a translation along the rotation axis. In other words, the rotation occurs around the axis, while the translation occurs parallel to the axis. Crystallographic screw axes include only two-, three-, four- and six-fold rotations due to the three-dimensional periodicity of the crystal lattice, which prohibits five-, seven- and higher-order rotations. Hence, the allowed rotation angles are the same as for both rotation and inversion axes (see Eq. 1.2).

Translations, t, along the axis are also limited to a few fixed values, which depend on the order of the axis, and are defined as $t = k/N$, where N is axis order, and k is an integer number between one and N-1. For instance, for the three-fold screw axis, $k = 1$ and 2, and the two possible translations are 1/3 and 2/3 of the length of the basis vector parallel to this axis, whereas for the two-fold axis, $k = 1$, and only 1/2 translation is allowed.

The symbol of the screw axis is constructed as N_k to identify both the order of the axis (N) and the length of the translation (k). Thus, the two three-fold screw axes have symbols 3_1 and 3_2, whereas the only possible two-fold screw axis is 2_1. The International symbols, both text and graphical, and the allowed translations for all crystallographic screw axes are found in *Table 1.16*.

Table 1.16. Crystallographic screw axes.

Axis order	Text symbol[a]	Graphical symbol[a]	Shift along the axis[b]
2	2_1	or	1/2
3	3_1, 3_2		1/3, 2/3
4	4_1, 4_2, 4_3		1/4, 2/4, 3/4
6	6_1, 6_2, 6_3, 6_4, 6_5		1/6, 2/6, 3/6, 4/6, 5/6

[a] Pairs of screw axes, in which the sums of the subscripts equal to the order of the axis are called enantiomorphous pairs since one is the mirror image of another. The latter is reflected in the graphical symbols of the corresponding pairs of the enantiomorphous axes. These are: 3_1 and 3_2; 4_1 and 4_3; 6_1 and 6_5; 6_2 and 6_4. Two enantiomorphous axes differ only by the direction of rotation or (which is the same) by the direction of translation.

[b] Given as a fraction of a full translation in a positive direction assuming counterclockwise rotation along the same axis.

Figure 1.29 illustrates how the two-fold screw axis generates an infinite number of symmetrically equivalent objects *via* rotations by 180° around the axis with the simultaneous translations along the axis by 1/2 of the length of the basis vector to which the axis is parallel.

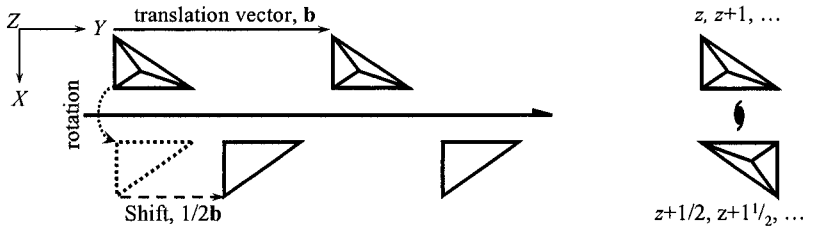


Figure 1.29. Horizontal (left) and vertical (right) two-fold screw axis, 2_1. The dotted pyramid indicates the intermediate position to which the first pyramid is rotated before it is translated along the axis.

1.13.3 Interaction of infinite symmetry elements

Infinite symmetry elements interact with one another and produce new symmetry elements, just as finite symmetry elements do. Moreover, the presence of the symmetry element with a translational component (screw axis or glide plane) assumes the presence of the full translation vector as seen in *Figure 1.28* and *Figure 1.29*. Unlike finite symmetry, symmetry elements in a continuous space (lattice) do not have to cross in one point, although they may have a common point or a line. For example, two planes can be parallel to one another. In this case, the resulting third symmetry element is a translation vector perpendicular to the planes with translation (t) twice the length of the interplanar distance (*d*) as illustrated in *Figure 1.30*.

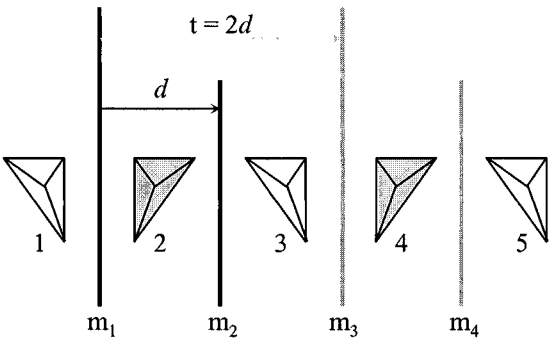


Figure 1.30. Example illustrating how two parallel mirror planes with the interplanar distance *d* result in the translation t = 2*d* perpendicular to both planes. Starting from planes m_1 and m_2 (black) and pyramid 1 we obtain pyramid 2 by reflecting 1 in m_1. Pyramids 3 and 4 are obtained by reflecting pyramids 2 and 1, respectively, in m_2. Thus, plane m_3 (grey) appears between pyramids 3 and 4. Pyramid 5 is obtained from pyramid 3 by reflecting it in m_1 and then resulting pyramid (not shown) in m_2, which leads to plane m_4 (grey), and so on. It is easy to see that pyramids 1, 3, 5, and so on, as well as pyramids 2, 4, and so on are symmetrically equivalent to one another *via* the action of the translation t = 2*d* (grey arrow).

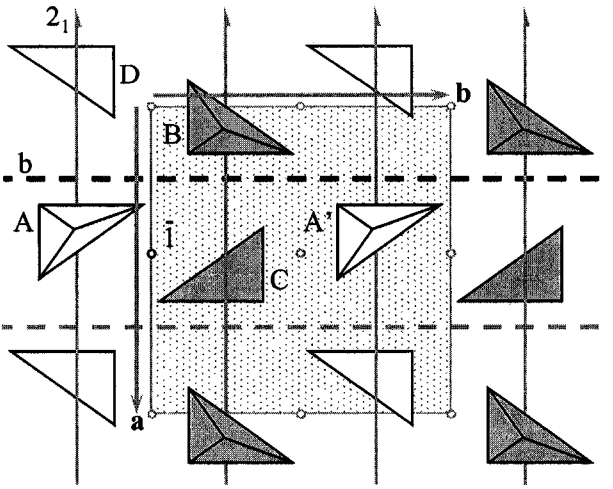


Figure 1.31. Example illustrating the result of interaction between the glide plane, b, and the center of inversion, $\bar{1}$. The original symmetry elements are black and the derivatives are grey.

Another example (*Figure 1.31*) illustrates the result of the interaction between glide plane, b, and center of inversion. We begin from the symmetry elements shown in black and marked in *Figure 1.31* as b and $\bar{1}$, and pyramid A. Note, that the two symmetry elements do not share a common point. Pyramid A is converted by the glide plane into B; B into A', and so on. The center of inversion converts A into C, and so on. All objects depicted in *Figure 1.31* can be obtained using the two original symmetry elements (keep in mind that although only 12 pyramids are shown in this figure, their number is in reality infinite). The derived symmetry element that converts B into C is the 2_1 screw axis. Additional derived symmetry elements are translation **b** that transforms A into A', translation **a**, other glide planes, screw axes, and centers of inversion, as marked in *Figure 1.31*. Thus, the infinite structure is produced and its unit cell is shaded in the figure. It is easy to see that in this infinite structure there are an infinite number of symmetry elements, even though we started with just two of them: the glide plane, b, and the center of inversion.

Note that only those symmetry elements which intersect the asymmetric part of the unit cell are independent, exactly in the same way as only those atoms that are found in the asymmetric part of the unit cell are independent (see *Figure 1.6*).[1] Once the locations of independent atoms and symmetry elements in the unit cell are known, the whole crystal can be easily

[1] Strict definition can be given as follows: two objects (atoms, molecules or symmetry elements) are symmetrically independent if there is no symmetry operation that converts one into another.

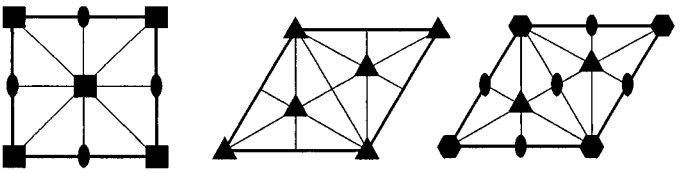


Figure 1.32. Characteristic distribution of the two-, three-, four-, and six-fold rotation axes parallel to the unique axis in the unit cell in tetragonal (left), trigonal (center), and hexagonal (right) crystal systems as the result of their interaction with lattice translations.

reconstructed. Symmetry elements interact with basis translations, which are symmetry elements themselves. Hence, the three non-coplanar vectors that form a three-dimensional lattice interact with symmetry elements and distribute them together with their "sub-elements" (e.g. a six-fold axis contains both two- and three-fold axes as its sub-elements) in the specific order in the unit cell and in the entire lattice.

The distribution of the inversion centers, two-fold axes and planes in the unit cell can be seen in the previous *Figure 1.31*: these symmetry elements are repeated along basis translation vectors every 1/2 of the full translation. This is true for triclinic, monoclinic, and orthorhombic crystal systems, i.e. crystal systems with low symmetry. Similar arrangements of symmetry elements in tetragonal, trigonal, and hexagonal crystal systems are shown for a primitive lattice in *Figure 1.32*, where only rotation axes perpendicular to the plane of the projection were taken into account. The distribution of other symmetry elements, including the infinite ones in primitive or centered lattices follows the same path, but types of axes and their order may be different.

The orientation and placement of crystallographic axes in a cubic crystal system is more complex and it is difficult to illustrate in a simple drawing. However, projections of rotation axes in cubic symmetry along the unit cell edges resemble tetragonal symmetry, while projections along the body diagonals of the cube resemble trigonal symmetry. The positions of symmetry elements (especially finite) in the unit cell are important since they are directly related to special site positions, which are discussed later in sections 1.17 and 1.18.

1.14 Crystallographic planes, directions and indices

The crystallographic plane is a geometrical concept (mathematical abstraction) introduced to illustrate the phenomenon of diffraction from ideal crystal lattices since algebraic equations that govern diffraction process are difficult to visualize. It is important to realize and remember that no "real"

crystallographic planes exist in real crystals. Furthermore, regardless of whether the crystallographic plane is referred to in singular or in plural, the reference is always made to a series, which consists of an infinite number of planes.

1.14.1 Indices of planes

Crystallographic planes are defined as a set (or family) of planes that intersect all lattice points. All planes in the same family are: (1) parallel to each other, and (2) equally spaced. The distance between neighboring planes is called the interplanar distance or *d*-spacing. The family of crystallographic planes is described using three integer indices *h*, *k*, and *l*, which are called crystallographic or Miller indices.[1] When referring to a plane, a triplet of Miller indices is always enclosed in parentheses: (*hkl*). Miller indices indicate that the planes that belong to the family (*hkl*) divide lattice vectors (unit cell edges) **a**, **b** and **c** into *h*, *k* and *l* equal parts, respectively. When the planes are parallel to the crystallographic axis, the corresponding Miller index is set to 0.

The meaning of the Miller indices can be better understood after considering *Figure 1.33* through *Figure 1.37*. In *Figure 1.33* both sets of planes are parallel to **b** and **c**. Hence, in both cases $k = l = 0$. The set of planes shown on the left divides **a** into one part, while the planes shown on the right, divide **a** into two equal parts. This results in the following Miller indices: (100) for the drawing on the left, and (200) for that on the right of *Figure 1.33*. It is obvious that the interplanar distance $d_{(200)}$ is 1/2 that of $d_{(100)}$, and the (200) family of crystallographic planes is considered as the second order of the (100) family. Following the same rules, the planes shown in *Figure 1.34* are parallel to **c** and divide both **a** and **b** in one part, which results in the (110) Miller indices for this family of crystallographic planes. Similarly, *Figure 1.35* illustrates the $(\bar{1}\bar{1}1)$ and *Figure 1.36* illustrates the (213) crystallographic planes.

Assuming that $\alpha = \beta = \gamma = 90°$, the interplanar distances for these examples of crystallographic planes are shown at the bottom of each figure. A general formula (Eq. 1.11) for the three orthogonal crystal systems (cubic, tetragonal and orthorhombic) illustrates dependence of the *d*-spacing on the Miller indices of the family and the lengths of the three unit cell edges.

$$\frac{1}{d_{hkl}} = \sqrt{\frac{h^2}{a^2} + \frac{k^2}{b^2} + \frac{l^2}{c^2}} \tag{1.11}$$

[1] In the hexagonal crystal system, a total of four Miller indices are sometimes used to designate a plane: (*hkil*), where $i = -(h + k)$. See *Figure 1.37* for details.

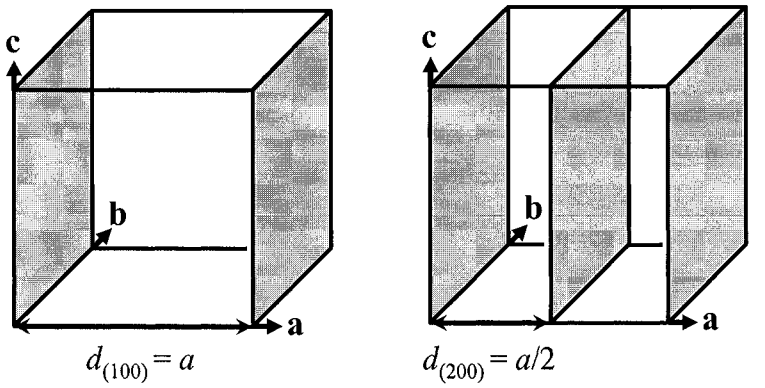


Figure 1.33. Families of (100) and (200) crystallographic planes.

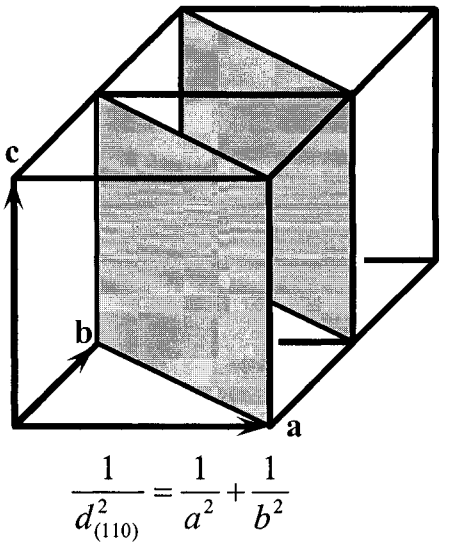


Figure 1.34. Family of (110) crystallographic planes.

The formula shown in Eq. 1.11 becomes more complicated for non-orthogonal crystal systems, i.e. hexagonal, monoclinic and especially triclinic, because inter-axial angles here are different from 90°, and should be included in the calculations. The complete description of the corresponding mathematical relationships will be given later in the book (Eqs. 2.29 to 2.37 in section 2.8.1).

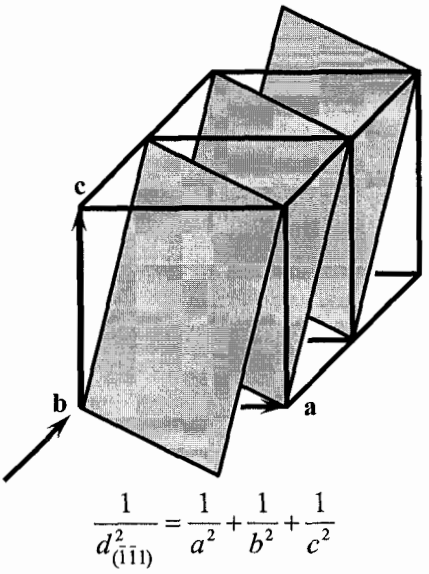


Figure 1.35. Family of $(\bar{1}\bar{1}1)$ crystallographic planes.

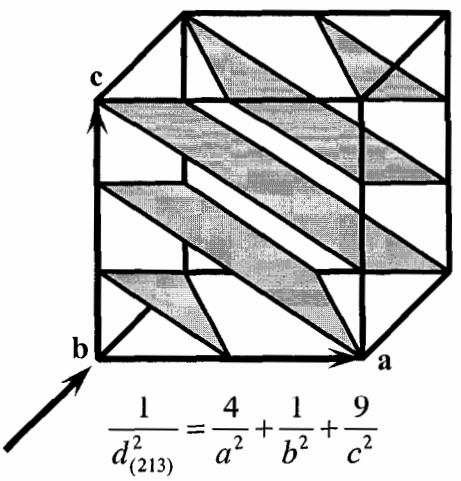


Figure 1.36. Family of (213) crystallographic planes.

In hexagonal and trigonal crystal systems, the fourth index is usually introduced to address the possibility of three similar choices in selecting the crystallographic basis as illustrated in *Figure 1.37*. In addition to the unit cell based on the vectors **a**, **b** and **c**, two other unit cells, based on the vectors **a**, -(**a** + **b**) and **c**, and -(**a** + **b**), **b** and **c** are possible due to the six-fold or the

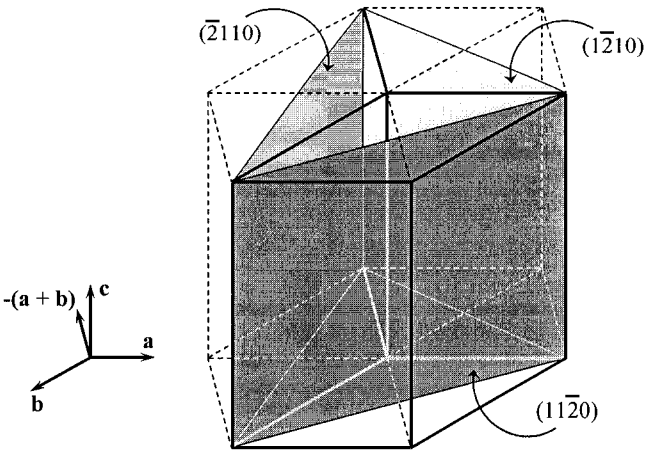


Figure 1.37. Three possibilities to select the crystallographic basis in hexagonal and trigonal crystal systems and the family of (11$\bar{2}$0) crystallographic planes in the hexagonal crystal system. Indices are shown in the unit cell based on the vectors **a**, **b** and **c**. Three additional symmetrically related families of planes have indices ($\bar{1}\bar{1}$20), ($\bar{1}$2$\bar{1}$0) and (2$\bar{1}\bar{1}$0) in the same basis and we leave their identification to the reader.

three-fold rotational symmetry parallel to **c**, respectively. Thus, if only three indices are employed to designate symmetrically related planes (e.g. the darkest-, the lightest- and the medium-shaded planes in *Figure 1.37*), these are (110), (1$\bar{2}$0) and ($\bar{2}$10) planes, respectively, defined in the lattice based on the unit vectors **a**, **b** and **c**. No apparent relationships are seen between the three planes designated using three indices. When the fourth index, i = -(h + k), is introduced, the three planes (*hkil*) are only different by a cyclic permutation of the first three indices, thus emphasizing symmetrical relationships existing between these families of crystallographic planes.

1.14.2 Lattice directions and indices

Directions in the crystal lattice are described using lines that pass through the origin of the lattice and are parallel to the direction of interest. Since the lattice is infinite, a line drawn in any direction from its origin will necessarily pass through the infinite number of lattice points. For example, the line traversing the origin and parallel to the body diagonal of the unit cell, passes through the points $\bar{n}\bar{n}\bar{n}$, ..., $\bar{2}\bar{2}\bar{2}$, $\bar{1}\bar{1}\bar{1}$, 000, 111, 222, ..., nnn. The crystallographic direction is therefore, indicated by referring to the coordinates (u, v and w, see Eq. 1.1) of the first point other than the origin, which the line intersects on its way from the origin. To differentiate between indices of the crystallographic planes, indices of the crystallographic directions are enclosed in square brackets [*uvw*], as shown in *Figure 1.38*.

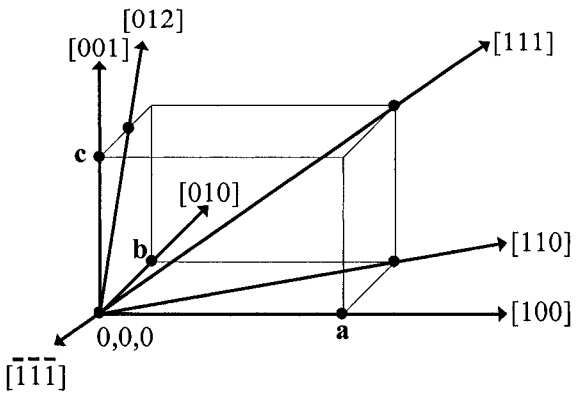


Figure 1.38. Selected crystallographic directions in the orthorhombic lattice.

1.15 Reciprocal lattice

The concept of a reciprocal lattice[1] was first introduced by Ewald[2] and it quickly became an important tool in the illustrating and understanding of both the diffraction geometry and relevant mathematical relationships. Let **a**, **b** and **c** be the elementary translations in a three-dimensional lattice (called here a direct lattice), as shown for example in *Figure 1.4*. A second lattice, reciprocal to the direct lattice, is defined by three elementary translations **a***, **b*** and **c***,[3] which simultaneously satisfy the following two conditions:

$$\mathbf{a}^*\cdot\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a}^*\cdot\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{b}^*\cdot\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{b}^*\cdot\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{c}^*\cdot\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{c}^*\cdot\mathbf{b} = 0 \qquad (1.12)$$

$$\mathbf{a}^*\cdot\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{b}^*\cdot\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{c}^*\cdot\mathbf{c} = 1 \qquad (1.13)$$

All products in Eqs. 1.12 and 1.13 are scalar (or dot) products. The dot product of the two vectors, $\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2$ is defined as a scalar quantity, which is equal to the product of the absolute values of the two vectors and the cosine of the angle α between them:

[1] For additional information see IUCr teaching pamphlets: A. Authier, The reciprocal lattice, http://www.iucr.org/iucr-top/comm/cteach/pamphlets/4/index.html and the International Tables for Crystallography, vol. A and vol. B.

[2] Peter Paul Ewald (1888-1985). German physicist, whose work [P.P. Ewald, Das reziproke Gitter in der Strukturtheorie, Z. Kristallogr. **56**, 129 (1921)] is considered a landmark in using reciprocal lattice in x-ray diffraction.

[3] Symbol with an asterisk always refers to a parameter of reciprocal lattice.

$$\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{v}_2 = v_1 v_2 \cos\alpha \tag{1.14}$$

Conversely, the vector (or cross) product of the same two vectors ($\mathbf{v}_1 \times \mathbf{v}_2$) is defined as a vector $\mathbf{v}_3$ in the direction perpendicular to the plane of $\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2$, whose magnitude is equal to the product of the absolute values of the two vectors and the sine of the angle α between them, or

$$|\mathbf{v}_1 \times \mathbf{v}_2| = v_3 = v_1 v_2 \sin\alpha \tag{1.15}$$

In other words, the length of the vector $\mathbf{v}_3$ is equal to the area of the parallelogram formed by the vectors $\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2$ (shaded in *Figure 1.39*), and its direction is perpendicular to the plane of the parallelogram.

Considering Eqs. 1.12 to 1.15, it is possible to show that the elementary translations in the reciprocal lattice are defined as

$$\mathbf{a}^* = \frac{\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}}{V}, \quad \mathbf{b}^* = \frac{\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{a}}{V}, \quad \mathbf{c}^* = \frac{\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}}{V} \tag{1.16}$$

and that the inverse relationships are also true, i.e.

$$\mathbf{a} = \frac{\mathbf{b}^* \times \mathbf{c}^*}{V^*}, \quad \mathbf{b} = \frac{\mathbf{c}^* \times \mathbf{a}^*}{V^*}, \quad \mathbf{c} = \frac{\mathbf{a}^* \times \mathbf{b}^*}{V^*} \tag{1.17}$$

In Eqs. 1.16 and 1.17, the two scalar quantities V and V^* are the volumes of the unit cell in the direct and reciprocal lattices, respectively. Hence, $\mathbf{a}^*$ is perpendicular to both $\mathbf{b}$ and $\mathbf{c}$; $\mathbf{b}^*$ is perpendicular to both $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{c}$; and $\mathbf{c}^*$ is perpendicular to both $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$. In terms of the interplanar distances, $\mathbf{d}^*$ is perpendicular to the corresponding crystallographic planes, and its length is inversely proportional to d, i.e.

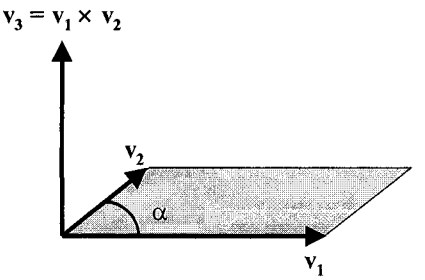


Figure 1.39. Vector (cross) product of two vectors. The orientation of $\mathbf{v}_3$ is determined using the right-hand rule: thumb of the right hand is aligned with $\mathbf{v}_1$, index finger with $\mathbf{v}_2$, then $\mathbf{v}_3$ is aligned with the middle finger. Tails of all vectors face the middle of the palm.

$$d^*_{hkl} = \frac{1}{d_{hkl}} \tag{1.18}$$

An important consequence of Eq. 1.18 is that a set, which consists of an infinite number of crystallographic planes in the direct lattice, is replaced by a single vector or by a point at the end of the vector in the reciprocal lattice.[1] Furthermore, Eqs. 1.16 and 1.17 can be simplified in the orthogonal crystal systems to

$$a^* = 1/a, \quad b^* = 1/b, \quad c^*=1/c \tag{1.19}$$

The two-dimensional example illustrating the relationships between the direct and reciprocal lattices (or spaces), which are used to represent crystal structures and diffraction patterns, respectively, is shown in *Figure 1.40*. An important property of the reciprocal lattice is that its symmetry is the same as the symmetry of the direct lattice. However, in the direct space atoms can be located anywhere in the unit cell, whereas diffraction peaks are represented only by the points of the reciprocal lattice, and the unit cells themselves are "empty" in the reciprocal space. Furthermore, the contents of every unit cell in the direct space is the same, but the intensity of diffraction peaks, which are conveniently represented using points in the reciprocal space, varies.

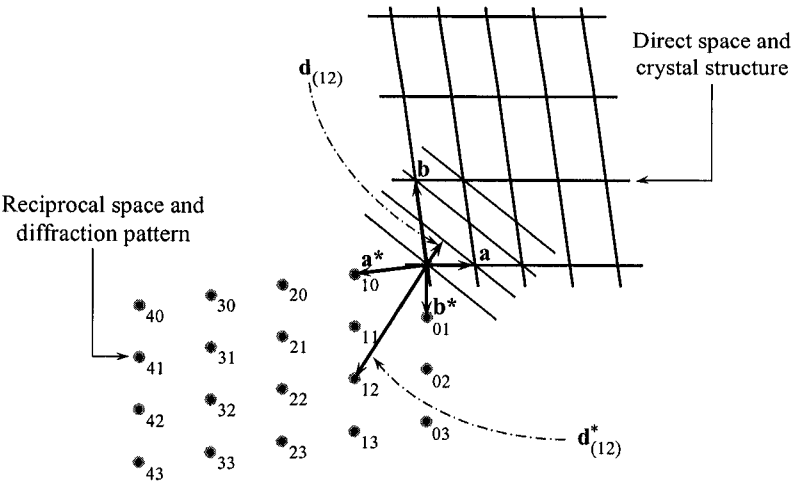


Figure 1.40. Example of converting crystallographic planes in the direct lattice into points in the reciprocal lattice. The corresponding Miller indices are shown near the points in the reciprocal lattice.

[1] Hence, any vector in a three-dimensional reciprocal lattice is determined as $\mathbf{d}^*_{hkl} = h\mathbf{a}^* + k\mathbf{b}^* + l\mathbf{c}^*$. Also see Eq. 2.35 and *Figure 2.40*.

1.16 Crystallographic space groups

Similar to finite symmetry elements, which can be combined in point groups (see section 1.10), various combinations of the same symmetry elements plus allowed translations, while obeying the rules described in section 1.7, result in the so-called crystallographic space groups. As follows from the differences in their names, symmetry elements in a space group are spread over the space of an infinite (continuous) object, contrary to point groups, where all symmetry elements have at least one common point. Therefore, each point of a continuous object can be moved in a periodic fashion through space by the action of symmetry elements that form a space group symmetry, whereas at least one point of the object remains unmoved by the action of symmetry elements that belong to a point group symmetry.

Given the limitations on the allowed rotations and translations (see sections 1.4 and 1.13), there is a total of 230 three-dimensional crystallographic space groups,[1] which were derived and systematized independently by Fedorov[2] and Schönflies.[3] A complete list of space groups is found in *Table 1.17*, where they are arranged according to seven crystal systems (see section 1.8) and 32 crystallographic point groups (see section 1.10).

1.16.1 Relationships between space and point groups

The symbols of 230 crystallographic space groups, which are found in *Table 1.17*, are known as short international or short Hermann-Mauguin symbols. They are based on the symbols of the corresponding point groups. The orientation of symmetry elements with respect to the three major crystallographic axes in a space group is the same as in the parent point group (see *Table 1.8*) and it depends on the position of the element in the symbol. The rules that govern space group symbolic are quite simple:

[1] When vector directions (e.g. magnetic moments) are included into consideration, the number of space groups increases dramatically. Thus, a total of 1651 dichromatic (or Shubnikov) symmetry groups are used to treat symmetry of magnetically ordered structures. See A.V. Shubnikov and V.A. Koptsik, Symmetry in science and art, Plenum Press (1974) for a brief description of color symmetry groups. A complete treatment of dichromatic groups is found in V.A. Koptsik, Shubnikov groups, Moscow University Press (1966).

[2] Evgraf Stepanovich Fedorov (1853-1919). Russian mineralogist and crystallographer who by applying the theory of finite groups to crystallography derived 230 space groups in 1891. Fedorov's last name is spelled as Fyodorov or Fedoroff in some references.

[3] Arthur Moritz Schönflies (1853-1928). German mathematician who derived 230 space groups independently of E.S. Fedorov in 1891. See http://www-gap.dcs.st-and.ac.uk/~history/Mathematicians/Schonflies.html for a brief biography.

Table 1.17. The 230 crystallographic space groups arranged according to seven crystal systems and 32 crystallographic point groups as they are listed in the International Tables for Crystallography, vol. A. The centrosymmetric groups are in **bold**, while the non-centrosymmetric groups that do not invert an object are in *italic*. The remaining are non-centrosymmetric groups that invert an object (contain inversion axis or mirror plane).

Crystal system (total number of space groups symmetry)	Point group	Space groups based on a given point group symmetry (the superscript indicates the space group number as adopted in the International Tables for Crystallography, vol. A)
Triclinic	*1*	*P1*[1]
(2)	$\bar{1}$	**P$\bar{1}$**[2]
Monoclinic	*2*	*P2*[3], *P2$_1$*[4], *C2*[5]
(13)	m	Pm[6], Pc[7], Cm[8], Cc[9]
	2/m	**P2/m**[10], **P2$_1$/m**[11], **C2/m**[12], **P2/c**[13], **P2$_1$/c**[14], **C2/c**[15]
Orthorhombic (59)	*222*	*P222*[16], *P222$_1$*[17], *P2$_1$2$_1$2*[18], *P2$_1$2$_1$2$_1$*[19], *C222$_1$*[20], *C222*[21], *F222*[22], *I222*[23], *I2$_1$2$_1$2$_1$*[24]
	mm2	Pmm2[25], Pmc2$_1$[26], Pcc2[27], Pma2[28], Pca2$_1$[29], Pnc2[30], Pmn2$_1$[31], Pba2[32], Pna2$_1$[33], Pnn2[34], Cmm2[35], Cmc2$_1$[36], Ccc2[37], Amm2[38], Abm2[39], Ama2[40], Aba2[41], Fmm2[42], Fdd2[43], Imm2[44], Iba2[45], Ima2[46]
	mmm	**Pmmm**[47], **Pnnn**[48], **Pccm**[49], **Pban**[50], **Pmma**[51], **Pnna**[52], **Pmna**[53], **Pcca**[54], **Pbam**[55], **Pccn**[56], **Pbcm**[57], **Pnnm**[58], **Pmmn**[59], **Pbcn**[60], **Pbca**[61], **Pnma**[62], **Cmcm**[63], **Cmca**[64], **Cmmm**[65], **Cccm**[66], **Cmma**[67], **Ccca**[68], **Fmmm**[69], **Fddd**[70], **Immm**[71], **Ibam**[72], **Ibca**[73], **Imma**[74]
Tetragonal	*4*	*P4*[75], *P4$_1$*[76], *P4$_2$*[77], *P4$_3$*[78], *I4*[79], *I4$_1$*[80]
(68)	$\bar{4}$	P$\bar{4}$[81], I$\bar{4}$[82]
	4/m	**P4/m**[83], **P4$_2$/m**[84], **P4/n**[85], **P4$_2$/n**[86], **I4/m**[87], **I4$_1$/a**[88]
	422	*P422*[89], *P42$_1$2*[90], *P4$_1$22*[91], *P4$_1$2$_1$2*[92], *P4$_2$22*[93], *P4$_2$2$_1$2*[94], *P4$_3$22*[95], *P4$_3$2$_1$2*[96], *I422*[97], *I4$_1$22*[98]
	4mm	P4mm[99], P4bm[100], P4$_2$cm[101], P4$_2$nm[102], P4cc[103], P4nc[104], P4$_2$mc[105], P4$_2$bc[106], I4mm[107], I4cm[108], I4$_1$md[109], I4$_1$cd[110]
	$\bar{4}$m2	P$\bar{4}$2m[111], P$\bar{4}$2c[112], P$\bar{4}$2$_1$m[113], P$\bar{4}$2$_1$c[114], P$\bar{4}$m2[115], P$\bar{4}$c2[116], P$\bar{4}$b2[117], P$\bar{4}$n2[118], I$\bar{4}$m2[119], I$\bar{4}$c2[120], I$\bar{4}$2m[121], I$\bar{4}$2d[122]
	4/mmm	**P4/mmm**[123], **P4/mcc**[124], **P4/nbm**[125], **P4/nnc**[126], **P4/mbm**[127], **P4/mnc**[128], **P4/nmm**[129], **P4/ncc**[130], **P4$_2$/mmc**[131], **P4$_2$/mcm**[132], **P4$_2$/nbc**[133], **P4$_2$/nnm**[134], **P4$_2$/mbc**[135], **P4$_2$/mnm**[136], **P4$_2$/nmc**[137], **P4$_2$/ncm**[138], **I4/mmm**[139], **I4/mcm**[140], **I4$_1$/amd**[141], **I4$_1$/acd**[142]
Trigonal	*3*	*P3*[143], *P3$_1$*[144], *P3$_2$*[145], *R3*[146]
(25)	$\bar{3}$	**P$\bar{3}$**[147], **R$\bar{3}$**[148]
	32	*P312*[149], *P321*[150], *P3$_1$12*[151], *P3$_1$21*[152], *P3$_2$12*[153], *P3$_2$21*[154], *R32*[155]

Crystal system (total number of space groups symmetry)	Point group	Space groups based on a given point group symmetry (the superscript indicates the space group number as adopted in the International Tables for Crystallography, vol. A)
	3m	P3m1[156], P31m[157], P3c1[158], P31c[159], R3m[160], R3c[161]
	$\bar{3}$m	**P$\bar{3}$1m[162], P$\bar{3}$1c[163], P$\bar{3}$m1[164], P$\bar{3}$c1[165], R$\bar{3}$m[166], R$\bar{3}$c[167]**
Hexagonal	*6*	*P6*[168], *P6$_1$*[169], *P6$_5$*[170], *P6$_2$*[171], *P6$_4$*[172], *P6$_3$*[173]
(27)	$\bar{6}$	P$\bar{6}$[174]
	6/m	**P6/m[175], P6$_3$/m[176]**
	622	*P622*[177], *P6$_1$22*[178], *P6$_5$22*[179], *P6$_2$22*[180], *P6$_4$22*[181], *P6$_3$22*[182]
	6mm	P6mm[183], P6cc[184], P6$_3$cm[185], P6$_3$mc[186]
	$\bar{6}$m2	P$\bar{6}$m2[187], P$\bar{6}$c2[188], P$\bar{6}$2m[189], P$\bar{6}$2c[190]
	6/mmm	**P6/mmm[191], P6/mcc[192], P6$_3$/mcm[193], P6$_3$/mmc[194]**
Cubic	*23*	*P23*[195], *F23*[196], *I23*[197], *P2$_1$3*[198], *I2$_1$3*[199]
(36)	**m$\bar{3}$**	**Pm$\bar{3}$[200], Pn$\bar{3}$[201], Fm$\bar{3}$[202], Fd$\bar{3}$[203], Im$\bar{3}$[204], Pa$\bar{3}$[205], Ia$\bar{3}$[206]**
	432	*P432*[207], *P4$_2$32*[208], *F432*[209], *F4$_1$32*[210], *I432*[211], *P4$_3$32*[212], *P4$_1$32*[213], *I4$_1$32*[214]
	$\bar{4}$3m	P$\bar{4}$3m[215], F$\bar{4}$3m[216], I$\bar{4}$3m[217], P$\bar{4}$3n[218], F$\bar{4}$3c[219], I$\bar{4}$3d[220]
	m$\bar{3}$m	**Pm$\bar{3}$m[221], Pn$\bar{3}$n[222], Pm$\bar{3}$n[223], Pn$\bar{3}$m[224], Fm$\bar{3}$m[225], Fm$\bar{3}$c[226], Fd$\bar{3}$m[227], Fd$\bar{3}$c[228], Im$\bar{3}$m[229], Ia$\bar{3}$d[230]**

- The international crystallographic space group symbols begin with a capital letter designating Bravais lattice, i.e. P, A, B, C, I, F or R (see *Table 1.13* and *Table 1.14*).
- The point group symbol, in which rotation axes and mirror planes can be substituted with allowed screw axes or glide planes, respectively, is added as the second part of the international space group symbol.
- In some cases, the second and the third symmetry elements of the point group can be switched, e.g. point group symmetry $\bar{4}$m2 produces two different space groups without introducing glide planes and/or screw axes in the space group symbol, i.e. P$\bar{4}$2m and P$\bar{4}$m2.

These rules not only reflect how the symbol of the space group symmetry is constructed, but they also establish one of the possible ways to derive all 230 crystallographic space groups:

- First, consider the Bravais lattices (see *Table 1.14*) and point groups (see *Table 1.8*) which are allowed in a given crystal system.
- Second, consider all permissible substitutions of mirror planes and/or rotation axes with glide planes and screw axes, respectively. In this step, it is essential to examine whether or not the substitution results in a new group or the resulting group can be reduced to the existing one by a permutation of the unit cell edges.

For example, think about the monoclinic point group m in the standard setting, where m is perpendicular to **b** (*Table 1.8*). According to *Table 1.14*, the following Bravais lattices are allowed in the monoclinic crystal system: P and C. There is only one finite symmetry element (mirror plane m) to be considered for replacement with glide planes (a, b, c, n and d):

- The first and obvious choice of the crystallographic space group is Pm.
- By replacing m with a, we obtain new space group, Pa.
- Replacing m with b is prohibited since the plane is perpendicular to **b**.
- By replacing m with c, we obtain space group Pc. This space group symmetry is identical to Pa, which is achieved by switching **a** and **c** because glide plane, a, translates a point by 1/2 of full translation along **a**, and glide plane, c, translates a point by 1/2 of full translation along **c**. Pc is a standard choice (see *Table 1.17*).
- By replacing m with n, we obtain space group Pn. This space group can be converted into Pc when the following transformation is applied to the unit cell vectors: $\mathbf{a}_{new} = -\mathbf{a}_{old}$, $\mathbf{b}_{new} = \mathbf{b}_{old}$, $\mathbf{c}_{new} = \mathbf{a}_{old} + \mathbf{c}_{old}$.
- Glide plane, d, is incompatible with the primitive Bravais lattice.
- By repeating the same process in combination with the base-centered lattice, C, two new space groups symmetry, Cm and Cc can be obtained.

Therefore, the following four monoclinic crystallographic space groups (Pm, Pc, Cm and Cc) result from a single monoclinic point group (m) after considering all possible translations in three dimensions.

1.16.2 Full international symbols of crystallographic space groups

The 230 crystallographic groups listed in *Table 1.17* are given in the so-called standard orientation (or setting), which includes proper selection of both the coordinate system and origin. However, there exist a number of publications in the scientific literature, where space group symbols are different from those provided in *Table 1.17*. Despite being different, these symbols refer to one of the same 230 crystallographic space groups but using a non-standard setting or even using a non-standard choice of the coordinate system. These ambiguities primarily occur because of the following:

1. The crystal structure was solved using a non-standard setting, since most of the modern crystallographic software enables minor deviations from the standard, and the results were published as they were obtained, without converting to a conventional orientation. It is worth noting that many, but not all technical journals allow certain deviations from crystallographic standards.
2. The crystal structure contains some specific molecules, blocks, layers, or chains of atoms or molecules, which may be easily visualized or represented using space group symmetry in a non-standard setting.

Deviations from the standard are most often observed in the monoclinic crystal system, because there are many different ways that result in a non-standard setting in this crystal system. This uncertainty is even reflected in the International Tables for Crystallography, where there are two different settings in the monoclinic crystal system. When the unique two-fold axis is parallel to **b** (i.e. to *Y*-axis), this setting is considered a standard choice, but when it is parallel to **c** (or to *Z*-axis), this is an allowed alternative setting. In addition, the unique two-fold axis can be chosen to be parallel to **a** (i.e. to *X*-axis), which is considered a non-standard setting.

To reflect or to emphasize a non-standard choice of space group symmetry, the so-called full international or full Hermann-Mauguin symbols can be used. In the full symbol, both the rotation axes parallel to the specific direction (see *Table 1.8*) and planes perpendicular to them (if any) are specified for each of the three positions. If the space group has no symmetry element parallel or perpendicular to a given direction, the symbol of the one-fold rotation axis is placed in the corresponding position. For example, $P12_1/a1$ and $P112_1/a$, both refer to the same space group symmetry where the orientation of the crystallographic axes, *Y* and *Z*, is switched. Full international symbols may also be used to designate space group symmetry in a standard setting, such as when the short notation Pmmm is replaced by the full Hermann-Mauguin notation P2/m2/m2/m. The full symbol in this case emphasizes the presence of the three mutually perpendicular two-fold axes and mirror planes that are parallel and perpendicular, respectively, to the three major crystallographic axes.

Thus, one of the most commonly observed in both natural and synthetic crystals, space group symmetry $P2_1/c$ (standard notation with the unique two-fold screw axis parallel to *Y*, and $\alpha = \gamma = 90°$ and $\beta \neq 90°$) can be listed as follows:

- $P2_1/b11$ and $P2_1/c11$, when the unique two-fold screw axis is chosen to be parallel to *X*. Both symbols represent non-standard settings of this group, in which $\alpha \neq 90°$.
- $P12_1/c1$ (or short $P2_1/c$, which is standard) and $P12_1/a1$ (or short $P2_1/a$, which is also standard except for the choice of the glide plane), when the unique two-fold screw axis is chosen to be parallel to *Y*.
- $P112_1/a$ and $P112_1/b$, when the unique two-fold screw axis is chosen to be parallel to *Z* (both represent alternative setting, where the unique two-fold screw axis is parallel to *Y*, and therefore, $\gamma \neq 90°$).
- $P2_1/n11$, $P12_1/n1$ (or short $P2_1/n$) or $P112_1/n$, when the unique two-fold screw axis is chosen to be parallel to *X*, *Y* or *Z*, respectively, but the selection of the diagonal glide plane, n, represents a deviation from the standard.

Since the selection of the crystallographic coordinate system is not unique, conventionally, a right-handed set[1] of basis vectors **a, b, c** is chosen in compliance with *Table 1.12* and in a way that the combination of symmetry elements in the space group is best visualized. The selection of the conventional origin is usually more complicated, but in general the origin of the coordinate system is selected at the center of inversion, if it is present, or at the point with the highest site symmetry, if there is no center of inversion in the group.

Additional information about each of the 230 three-dimensional crystallographic space groups can be found in the International Tables for Crystallography, vol. A. It includes their symbols, diagrams of all symmetry elements present in the group together with their orientation with respect to crystallographic axes, the origin of the coordinate system and more, for both the conventional and alternative (if any) settings. The format of the International Tables for Crystallography and some relevant issues are briefly discussed in the following section 1.17.

1.16.3 Visualization of space group symmetry in three dimensions

An excellent way to achieve a better understanding of both the infinite symmetry elements and how they are combined in crystallographic space groups is to use three-dimensional illustrations coupled with computer animation capabilities. For example, the crystal structure of the vanadium oxide layer in *tma*V_8O_{20} (*tma* is short for tetramethylammonium, $[N(CH_3)_4]^+$)[2] is shown as a still image in *Figure 1.41*, and it is also available as an electronic figure on the CD, which accompanies this book. The crystal structure is shown with the unit cell and its symmetry elements in the VRML (Virtual Reality Modeling Language) file format (**Figure 1.41.wrl**). The file may be displayed using a Web browser, which includes a VRML viewer as a plug-in. Standalone VRML viewers can be downloaded from the Web, e.g. from the Web3D repository (http://www.web3d.org/vrml/browpi.htm).

In addition to visualizing the crystal structure in three dimensions, using VRML enables one to move and rotate it. It is also possible to virtually "step inside" the lattice or the structure and to examine them from there. The pseudo three-dimensional drawing of the *tma*V_8O_{20} crystal structure on the CD was created using the General Structure Analysis System (GSAS),[3] and

[1] In a right-handed set the positive directions of basis vectors **a**, **b**, **c** are chosen from the middle of the palm of the right hand towards the ends of thumb, index and middle fingers, respectively.

[2] T. Chirayil, P.Y. Zavalij, M.S. Whittingham, Synthesis and characterization of a new vanadium oxide, *tma*V_8O_{20}, J. Mater. Chem. **7**, 2193 (1997).

[3] A.C. Larson and R.B. Von Dreele, General Structure Analysis System (GSAS), Los Alamos National Laboratory Report, LAUR 86-748 (2000).

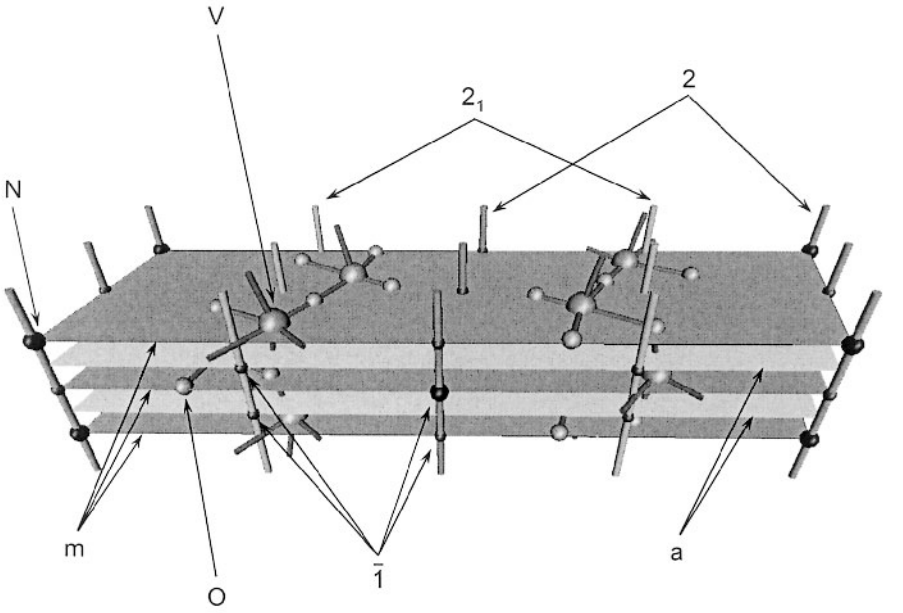


Figure 1.41. The three-dimensional view of the crystal structure of *tma*V_8O_{20} (vanadium oxide layers and nitrogen atoms from *tma* molecules) with added symmetry elements. The space group symmetry of the material is C2/m.

the symmetry elements were added later by manually editing the VRML file to visualize them.

The three-dimensional model of the *tma*V_8O_{20} crystal structure located on the CD (file **Figure 1.41.wrl**) uses the following color scheme:

- Two-fold rotation axes and mirror planes are shown in blue.
- Glide planes, a, and 2_1 screw axes are shown in yellow.
- Inversion centers are represented as small red spheres.
- The inversion center in the origin of coordinates (0, 0, 0), which is occupied by nitrogen atom is shown as a blue sphere.
- Vanadium and oxygen atoms are shown as pink and green spheres, respectively.

1.16.4 Space groups in nature

In conclusion of this section it may be interesting to note that not all of the 230 crystallographic space groups have been found in real crystalline materials. For example, space groups $P4_222$ and $P4_2cm$ are not found in the Inorganic Crystal Structure Database,[1] which at the time of writing this book

[1] The Inorganic Crystal Structure Database. FIZ Karlsruhe, Germany (2001).

contains crystallographic data about more than 64,000 inorganic compounds. The frequency of the occurrence of various space groups is far from uniform and it varies for different classes of materials.

Organic compounds mostly crystallize in the low symmetry crystal systems: 95% of the known organic crystal structures have orthorhombic or lower symmetry. In particular, ~76% of known organic crystal structures belong to only 5 space groups symmetry: $P2_1/c$ (29.2%), $P2_12_12_1$ (19.8%), $P\bar{1}$ (11.1%), $P2_1$ (10.9%), and C2/c (5.4%). Furthermore, only 12 space groups account for 87% of the organic compounds.[1] On the contrary, the majority of inorganic compounds crystallize in space groups with orthorhombic or higher symmetry. In order of decreasing frequency, they are as follows: $Fm\bar{3}m$, Pnma, $Fd\bar{3}m$, $P2_1/c$, $P6_3/mmc$, $Pm\bar{3}m$, $R\bar{3}m$, C2/m and C2/c. A total of 12 crystallographic space groups account for approximately 50% of structures of inorganic compounds.

1.17 International Tables for Crystallography

An example of how each of the 230 three-dimensional crystallographic space groups is listed in the International Tables for Crystallography[2] is shown in *Table 1.18*. Explanations of what information is found in different fields (the fields are numbered in the first column) follows.

There are 12 fields in *Table 1.18*; each of them contains the following information:

1. Headline. Provides the short international (Hermann-Mauguin) space group symmetry symbol (**Cmm2**) followed by the Schönflies symbol of the same space group ($\mathbf{C_{2V}^{11}}$, these symbols are not discussed in this book), the corresponding point group symmetry symbol (**mm2**) and the name of the crystal system (**Orthorhombic**).
2. Second headline. Includes the sequential number of the space group symmetry (**35**) followed by the full international (Hermann-Mauguin) symbol (**Cmm2**, since in this case the full symbol is the same as the short one) and Patterson symmetry (**Cmmm**). Although the Patterson function will be discussed in Chapter 2, it is worth noting that the Patterson symmetry is derived from the symmetry of the space group by replacing all screw axes and glide planes with the corresponding finite symmetry elements, and by adding a center of inversion, if it is not present in the space group.

[1] J. Donohue, Revised space-group frequencies for organic compounds, Acta Cryst. **A41**, 203 (1985).

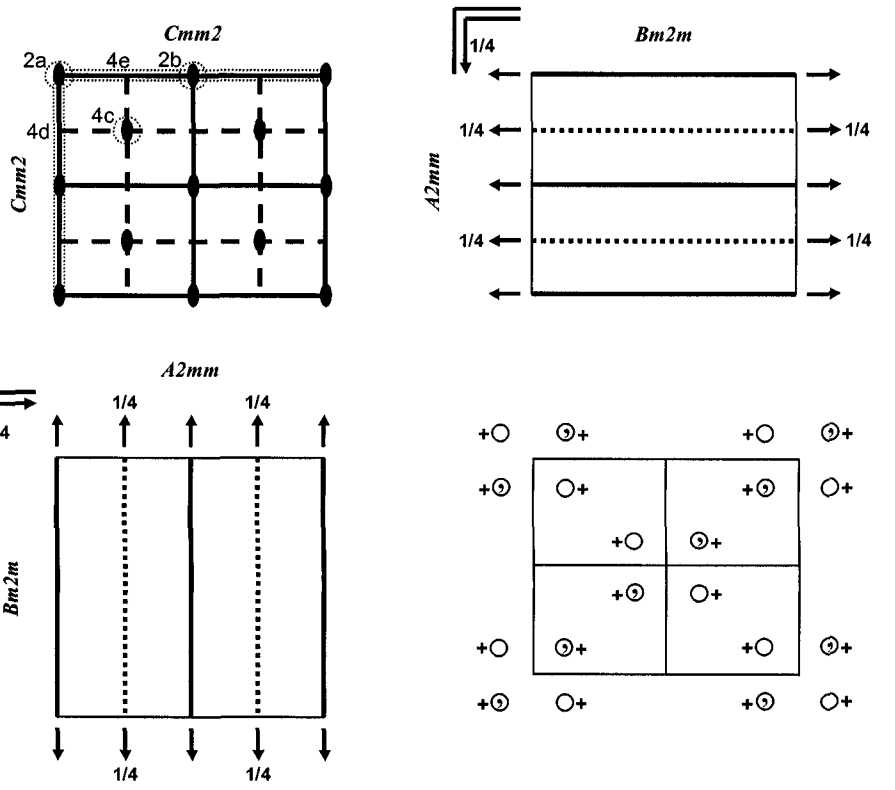
[2] Format varies in earlier editions of the International Tables for Crystallography; here we follow the format adopted in volume A since the 1983 edition.

Table 1.18. The space group symmetry Cmm2 as it is listed in the International Tables for Crystallography, vol. A.

(1) **Cmm2** C_{2V}^{11} **mm2** **Orthorhombic**

(2) **No. 35** **Cmm2** Patterson symmetry **Cmmm**

(3)



(4) **Origin** on *mm2*

(5) **Asymmetric unit** $0 \le x \le 1/4;\ 0 \le y \le 1/2;\ 0 \le z \le 1$

(6) **Symmetry operations**

For (0,0,0)+ set

(1) 1 (2) 2 0,0,*z* (3) *m* *x*,0,*z* (4) *m* 0,*y*,*z*

For (1/2,1/2,0)+ set

(1) *t*(1/2,1/2,0) (2) 2 1/4,1/4,*z* (3) *a* *x*,1/4,*z* (4) *b* 1/4,*y*,*z*

(7) **Generators selected** (1); *t*(1,0,0); *t*(0,1,0); *t*(0,0,1); *t*(1/2,1/2,0); (2); (3)

(8) **Positions**

Multiplicity, Wyckoff letter, Site symmetry	Coordinates (0,0,0)+ (1/2,1/2,0)+			Reflection conditions
8 *f* 1	(1) x, y, z	(2) $\bar{x}, \bar{y}, z$	(3) $x, \bar{y}, z$	*hkl*: $h+k=2n$ 0*kl*: $k=2n$ *h*0*l*: $h=2n$ *hk*0: $h+k=2n$ *h*00: $h=2n$ 0*k*0: $k=2n$
	(4) $\bar{x}, y, z$			
				Special: as above, plus
4 *e* *m*..	0, y, z	0, $\bar{y}, z$		no extra conditions
4 *d* .*m*.	x, 0, z	$\bar{x}$, 0, z		no extra conditions
4 *c* ..2	1/4, 1/4, z	1/4, 3/4, z		*hkl* : $h=2n$
2 *b* *mm2*	0, 1/2, z			no extra conditions
2 *a* *mm2*	0, 0, z			no extra conditions

(9) **Symmetry of special projections**

Along [001] c2mm	Along [100] p1m1	Along [010] p11m
a'=a b'=b	***a'*=1/2*b* *b'=c***	***a'=c b'*=1/2***a***
Origin at 0,0,*z*	Origin at *x*,0,0	Origin at 0,*y*,0

(10) **Maximal non-isomorphic subgroups**

I	[2]C112(P2)	(1;2)+
	[2]C1m1(Cm)	(1;3)+
	[2]Cm11(Cm)	(1;4)+
IIa	[2]Pmm2	1;2;3;4
	[2]Pba2	1;2;(3;4)+(1/2,1/2,0)
	[2]Pbm2(Pma2)	1;3;(2;4)+(1/2,1/2,0)
	[2]Pma2	1;4;(2;3)+(1/2,1/2,0)

IIb [2]Ccc2(**c'=2c**); [2]Cmc2_1(**c'=2c**); [2]Ccm2_1 (**c'=2c**)(Cmc2_1); [2]Imm2(**c'=2c**); [2]Iba2(**c'=2c**); [2]Ibm2(**c'=2c**)(Ima2); [2]Ima2(**c'=2c**)

(11) **Maximal isomorphic subgroups of lowest index**

IIc [3]Cmm2 (**a'=3a** or **b'=3b**); [2]Cmm2 (**c'=2c**)

(12) **Minimal non-isomorphic supergroups**

I [2]Cmmm; [2]Cmma; [2]P4mm; [2]P4bm; [2]P4_2cm; [2]P4_2nm; [2]P$\bar{4}$ 2m; [2]P$\bar{4}$ 2_1m; [3]P6mm

II [2]Fmm2; [2]Pmm2 (**2a'=a, 2b'=b**)

3. Space group symmetry diagrams are shown as one or several (up to 3) orthogonal projections along different unit cell axes. The projection direction is perpendicular to the plane of the figure. Projection directions, orientations of axes and selection of the origin of the coordinates are dependent on the crystal system, and a full description can be found in the International Tables for Crystallography, vol. A. The schematic for the orthorhombic crystal system is shown in *Figure 1.42*. If the horizontal symmetry element is elevated above the plane of the projection by a fraction of the translation along the projection direction other than 0 or 1/2, its elevation is shown as the corresponding fraction, i.e., 1/8, 1/4, and so on. An additional diagram shows symmetrically equivalent points (both inside and in the immediate vicinity of one unit cell) that are related to one another by the symmetry elements present in the orientation matching the first diagram.
4. Origin of the unit cell. It is given as the site symmetry and its location, if necessary. In the example shown in *Table 1.18* the origin of the unit cell is located on **mm2**, i.e. on the two-fold axis, which coincides with the line where the two perpendicular mirror planes intersect. In this example, the origin can be chosen arbitrarily on the *Z*-axis since there are no symmetry elements with a fixed *z*-coordinate in the space group Cmm2.

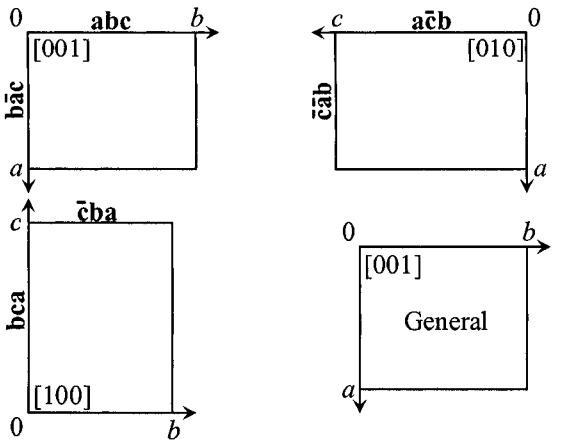


Figure 1.42. Schematic representation of orthorhombic space group symmetry diagrams showing the origin of coordinates (0), the labels of the axes (*a*, *b* and *c*) and the projection directions ([001], [010] and [100]). The box marked "General" is a general position diagram (see the description of fields No. 6 and 8, below). The triplets (**abc** and so on) indicate settings symbols that result in the corresponding space group symbols. Each settings symbol is obtained by a permutation of the unit cell axes, e.g. **cab** is the cyclic permutation of **abc**: **a'** = **c**, **b'** = **a**, **c'** = **b**. It should be noted that a space group symbol is invariant to the changes of the sign (direction) of the axes.

5. Asymmetric unit represents the fraction of the unit cell, which generally contains symmetrically inequivalent points. It is delineated by the elementary parallelepiped specified in terms of fractions of the corresponding unit cell edges (i.e. $\mathbf{0 \le x \le 1/4}$, $\mathbf{0 \le y \le 1/2}$ and $\mathbf{0 \le z \le 1}$) and (if necessary) by including supplementary restrictions, e.g. $x \le (1+y)/2$; $y \le x/2$ as in the space group $P\bar{3}m1$.
6. Symmetry operations. For each point with coordinates x, y, z in the general position, the symmetry operation which transforms this point into symmetrical equivalent is listed together with its sequential number. The term general position applies to any point in the unit cell that is not located on any of the finite symmetry elements present in the group. Symmetry operations in the non-primitive space groups are divided into sets. The sets are arranged based on the translation vector(s) corresponding to Bravais lattice centering, which are added to the coordinates of each point in the unit cell. The first set is always the **(0,0,0)+ set**, which represents the primitive basis that is enough to describe the same but primitive space group symmetry (in this case it is Pmm2). The second set in *Table 1.18* is **(1/2,1/2,0)+ set**, which accounts for the presence of the base-centered lattice, C. Each symmetry operation in addition to its sequential number (in parenthesis) lists the nature of the operation (*t* stands for translations) and its location. For example, ***t*(1/2,1/2,0)** stands for the translation of the point by 1/2 along both **a** (or *X*) and **b** (or *Y*); the notation ***a* (*x*, 1/4, *z*)** specifies glide plane, a, perpendicular to *Y* and intersecting *Y* at $y = 1/4$.
7. Generators selected specify the minimum set of symmetry operations, including translations that are needed to generate the space group symmetry. They begin with translations (the first three represent full translations along the three major crystallographic axes and the fourth is the translation reflecting the presence of the base-centered Bravais lattice, C) followed by the numbers of symmetry operations from the first set in the previous field. Hence, the space group Cmm2 can be generated by using symmetry operations No. 2 (the two-fold axis coinciding with *Z*) and No. 3 (the mirror plane perpendicular to *Y* and intersecting *Y* at $y = 0$) in addition to four translations.
8. Positions. This field contains standardized information about possible locations (or sites) that can accommodate points (or atoms) in the unit cell and corresponding reflection conditions. Reflection conditions show the limitations on the possible combinations of Miller indices that are imposed by the symmetry of the space group and these will be discussed in Chapter 2, sections 2.12.3 and 2.12.4. Each record in this field corresponds to one site and each site is listed starting with the multiplicity of the site position (integer numbers, **8**, **4**, **4**, ..., **2**) followed

by Wyckoff letter (**f**, **e**, **d**, ..., **a**), site symmetry (**1**, **m..**, **.m.**, ..., **mm2**), and coordinate triplets of the symmetrically equivalent atoms. The multiplicity of the site position is the total number of symmetrically equivalent atoms that will appear in one unit cell as the result of having an atom with the coordinates corresponding to any of the listed triplets. For example, the multiplicity of the second site (Wyckoff notation is e) is 4. The x-coordinate of any independent atom in this site is fixed at 0, while y- and z-coordinates may vary between 0 and 1. Assume that $y = 0.15$ and $z = 0.31$. The complete list of four symmetrically equivalent atoms in this position is obtained as follows. Atom1 $(0, y, z)$ plus (0, 0, 0): $x = 0, y = 0.15, z = 0.31$; Atom2 $(0, \bar{y}, z)$ plus (0, 0, 0): $x = 0, y = 0.85$,[1] $z = 0.31$; Atom3 $(0, y, z)$ plus (1/2, 1/2, 0): $x = 0.5, y = 0.65, z = 0.31$; Atom4 $(0, \bar{y}, z)$ plus (1/2, 1/2, 0): $x = 0.5, y = 0.35, z = 0.31$. Site positions in this field are arranged according to their multiplicities (from the highest to the lowest) and according to site symmetry (from the lowest to the highest). Wyckoff letters are assigned to site positions starting with "a" for the site with the lowest multiplicity and the highest symmetry. The coordinate triplets for the site with the highest multiplicity and the lowest symmetry (general position) are listed with the numbers of symmetry operations that generate this atom (as they appear in field 6).

9. Symmetry of special projections is usually given along X-, Y- and Z-axes, and in crystal systems with higher symmetry also along diagonals together with the axes and the origin of the projected unit cell. These projections correspond to two-dimensional crystallographic groups.

10-12. The closest subgroups and supergroups, their axes and other relevant information. The discussion of these fields goes beyond the scope of this book and the International Tables for Crystallography, vol. A should be consulted for further details.

1.18 Equivalent positions

As briefly mentioned in the previous section, equivalent positions (or sites) that are listed in the field No. 8 in *Table 1.18* for each crystallographic space group, represent sets of symmetrically equivalent points found in one unit cell. All equivalent points in one site are obtained from an initial point by applying all symmetry operations that are present in the unit cell. The fractional coordinates (coordinate triplet) of the initial (or independent) point are usually marked as x, y, z.

[1] Any negative coordinate (i.e. $y = -0.15$) may be converted into a positive coordinate by adding a full translation along the same axis, i.e. $y = -0.15 + 1 = 0.85$.

1.18.1 General and special equivalent positions

The equivalent position is called general when the initial point is not located on any of the finite symmetry elements (i.e. those that convert the point into itself), if they are present in the group. The general equivalent position has the highest multiplicity, and every one of the 230 space groups has only one general site. However, since the only limitation on the possible values of *x*, *y* and *z* in the coordinate triplet is imposed by geometrical constraints that prevent neighboring atoms from overlapping with one another, multiple sets of atoms occupying the general site with different coordinate triplets of independent atoms are possible in many crystal structures. An atom in the general equivalent position in any of the 230 three-dimensional space groups always has three positional degrees of freedom, i.e. each of the three coordinates may be changed independently.

When a point (or an atom) is placed on a finite symmetry element that converts the point into itself, the multiplicity of the site is reduced by an integer factor when compared to the multiplicity of the general site. Since different finite symmetry elements may be present in the same space group symmetry, the total number of different "non-general" sites (they are called special sites or special equivalent positions) may exceed one. Contrary to a general equivalent position, one, two or all three coordinates will be constrained in every atom occupying a special equivalent position.

Both the multiplicity and Wyckoff letter combined together, are often used as the name of the equivalent position. Sometimes when crystallographic data are published, the coordinates of all independent atoms are given in reference to equivalent positions they occupy. For example if in a hypothetical crystal structure nickel atoms occupy the site 4(c) in the space group Cmm2, they can be listed as "Ni in 4(c), z = 0.1102", which indicates that there are a total of four nickel atoms in the unit cell and one of them has the coordinates $x = 1/4$, $y = 1/4$, z = 0.1102. The coordinates of the remaining three nickel atoms are easily determined from the coordinates of all symmetrically equivalent points in the position 4(c), see *Table 1.18.*

1.18.2 Special sites with points located on mirror planes

The first example of a special position was considered above (see page 65), when we analyzed the coordinates of four symmetrically equivalent atoms located in the mirror plane in the space group Cmm2. Both this site and the corresponding mirror plane are marked as 4e in the first diagram in *Table 1.18.* A different special position on a different mirror plane in this space group symmetry is marked as 4d in the same figure. Two additional examples are found in *Figure 1.43.*

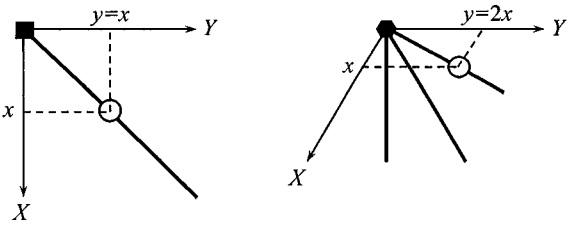


Figure 1.43. Constraints imposed on the coordinates of atoms located on diagonal mirror planes (thick solid lines) in tetragonal (left) and hexagonal (right) crystal systems.

In the tetragonal crystal system (*Figure 1.43*, left), diagonal mirror planes perpendicular to the *XY* plane are possible. When an atom is placed in the special position on this plane, its coordinates are restricted in a way that $y = x$ and z may assume any value. This relationship is usually emphasized by specifying the corresponding coordinate triplet as x, x, z. Similarly, in the hexagonal crystal system (*Figure 1.43*, right) multiple diagonal mirror planes perpendicular to the *XY* plane are possible. When an atom is placed in the special position on the mirror plane nearest to the *Y*-axis, its coordinates are restricted such that $y = 2x$ and z varies freely. The corresponding coordinate triplet becomes $x, 2x, z$. Considering the two remaining mirror planes and moving clockwise, the point that belongs to the next mirror plane will have coordinate triplet x, x, z (i.e. the same as in the case of the diagonal mirror plane in the tetragonal crystal system), and for the third mirror plane the triplet becomes $x, 1/2x, z$ (or $2x, x, z$).

Therefore, any atom in a special position where it belongs to a mirror plane has two positional degrees of freedom. Only two of the three coordinates vary independently, whereas the third is restricted to either a constant value [e.g. position 4(e) in the space group Cmm2] or it is constrained to be proportional to one of the two free coordinates (*Figure 1.43*). Similar to a general position, any special position on the mirror plane can accommodate many independent atoms provided they do not overlap.

1.18.3 Special sites with points located on rotation or inversion axes

Both the rotation and inversion axes can also be the source of special positions. Consider, for example, the site 2a (*Table 1.18*) where atoms are accommodated by the two-fold rotation axis that follows the line at which two mutually perpendicular mirror planes intersect. In this case two of the three coordinates in the triplet are fixed ($x = 0$ and $y = 0$), while the third coordinate (z) may assume any value. A similar special position is represented by the site 4c (*Table 1.18*), where the two-fold rotation axis is parallel to Z and coincides with the line at which two mutually perpendicular

glide planes (a and b) intersect. In this position the two coordinates (x and y) are fixed at $x = y = 1/4$ and z varies. Note that the multiplicities of these two sites (2a and 4c) are different, as they are defined by the total number of symmetrically equivalent points in the given space group symmetry.

Two-fold axes can also be parallel to face diagonal(s) in tetragonal, hexagonal and cubic crystal systems, and one example for a cubic crystal system is shown in *Figure 1.44*. The coordinates of a point (open circle) located on the two fold axis that coincides with the diagonal of a square face of the cube are constrained at x, x, 0. As we already know, there are four three-fold rotation or inversion axes coinciding with the body diagonals of the cube in the cubic crystal systems. Also shown in *Figure 1.44* is one of these three-fold rotation axes, where the coordinates of a point located in the special position defined by the orientation of this crystallographic axis (filled circle) will be constrained at x, x, x.

Therefore, the number of positional degrees of freedom is further reduced to only one independent coordinate in special positions where atoms are located on rotation or inversion crystallographic axes. Similar to both the general position and special sites on mirror planes, any special equivalent position on a rotation or inversion axis can accommodate many independent atoms (geometrical constraints are always applicable).

1.18.4 Special sites with points located on centers of inversion

Atoms can also reside on centers of inversion. Since there is no inversion center in the space group Cmm2, which was considered in *Table 1.18*, we turn our attention to the distribution of the centers of inversion in the unit cell that belongs to the triclinic space group symmetry P $\bar{1}$ (*Figure 1.45*).

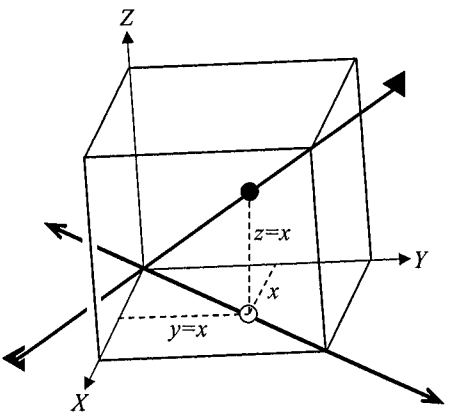


Figure 1.44. Constraints imposed on the coordinates of atoms located on the diagonal two-fold and three-fold rotation axes in cubic crystal system.

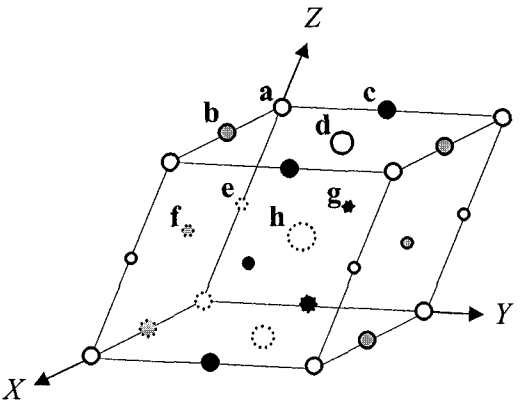


Figure 1.45. The distribution of the inversion centers in the triclinic space group symmetry $P\bar{1}$. Eight independent centers are labeled from "a" through "h". Inversion centers that are equivalent to one another are marked using symbols of the same size and shading. The "invisible" centers are drawn using dotted lines.

There are eight independent centers of inversion per unit cell in this group. They are labeled from "a" through "h". If an atom occupies the center marked as "a" in *Figure 1.45*, it has the coordinates 0, 0, 1. This triplet is the same as 0, 0, 0 since a point can always be shifted in any direction by a full translation. If the center of inversion marked as "h" is occupied, the coordinates of an atom in this special position are restricted to 1/2, 1/2, 1/2. The list can be continued, and it is easy to see that regardless of which of the available centers of inversion is occupied by an atom, all three coordinates of this atom are determined by the location of the center.

Thus, there are no positional degrees of freedom available to an atom occupying any special position created by the presence of the center of inversion. Furthermore, unlike in the cases when atoms are located on the mirror planes and rotation or inversion axes, only one atom can occupy any single special position on the center of inversion.

1.19 Symbolic description of symmetry operations

So far we used both geometrical and verbal tools to describe symmetry elements (e.g. plane, axis, center and translation) and operations (e.g. reflection, rotation, inversion and shift). This is quite convenient when the sole purpose of this description is to understand the concepts of symmetry. However, it becomes difficult and time consuming when these tools are used to work with symmetry, for example to generate all possible symmetry operations, e.g. to complete a group. Therefore, two other methods are usually employed:

- The first one is symbolic, and it is used to simplify written descriptions of symmetry.
- The second method is algebraic, and it is very convenient in manipulating symmetry.

We begin with the symbolic description of symmetry operations, which is based on the fact that the action of any symmetry operation or any combination of symmetry operations can be described by the coordinates of the resulting object(s). In this section we assume that the initial object has coordinates x, y, z.

1.19.1 Finite symmetry operations

Consider a mirror plane that is perpendicular to the Z-axis and intersects with this axis at the origin ($z = 0$). This plane will reflect objects leaving their x and y coordinates unchanged but the z coordinate of the initial object would be inverted and will become $-z$ after the reflection operation is performed. Therefore, the symbolic description of this mirror reflection operation is $x, y, -z$.

Another example to consider, are four symmetry operations in the point group symmetry 2/m as depicted in *Figure 1.46*.

The coordinates of four symmetrically equivalent points in *Figure 1.46* fully characterize all performed symmetry operations. Beginning from point A:

1. The one-fold rotation converts the object into itself (A → A), which results in x, y, z.
2. The center of symmetry inverts all three coordinates of the object in the point with coordinates 0, 0, 0 (A → D), which results in $-x, -y, -z$.

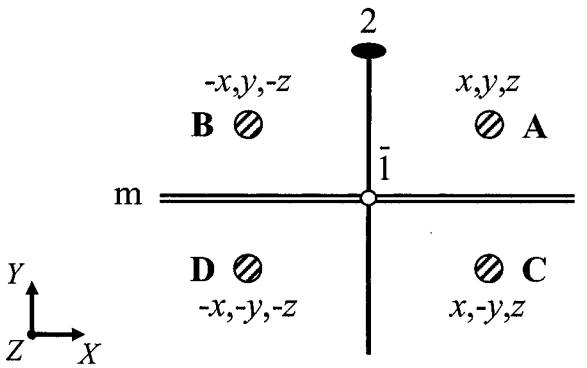


Figure 1.46. Symmetry elements and symbolic description of symmetry operations in the point group symmetry 2/m. Here, the origin of the coordinate system coincides with the center of inversion.

3. The mirror plane perpendicular to the *Y*-axis inverts *y* leaving *x* and *z* unchanged (A → C), which results in *x*, -*y*, *z*.
4. The two-fold rotation axis parallel to *Y* inverts both *x* and *z* leaving *y* unchanged (A → B), which results in -*x*, *y*, -*z*.

Therefore, zero, one, two or all three coordinates change their signs, but this only holds for symmetry elements of the first and second order when they are aligned with one of the three major crystallographic axes. Symmetry operations describing both diagonal symmetry elements and symmetry elements with higher order (i.e. three-, four- and six-fold rotations) may cause permutations and more complex relationships between the coordinates. For example:

- Reflection in the diagonal mirror plane may be symbolically described as *y*, *x*, *z*.
- Rotations around the six-fold rotation axis parallel to *Z* result in *x*-*y*, *x*, *z*; *y*, -*x*+*y*, *z*; -*x*, -*y*, *z*; -*x*+*y*, -*x*, *z*; and -*y*, *x*-*y*, *z*.[1]
- Symmetry operations due to the presence of the three-fold rotation axis along the body diagonal of a cube in the [111] direction are described by *z*, *x*, *y* and *y*, *z*, *x*.

1.19.2 Infinite symmetry operations

All examples considered above illustrate symmetry elements that traverse the origin of coordinates and do not have translations. When symmetry elements do not intersect the origin (0,0,0) or have translations (e.g. glide planes and screw axes), their symbolic description includes fractions of full translations along the corresponding crystallographic axes. For example:

- Reflection in the mirror plane perpendicular to *Z* that intersects the *Z*-axis at *z* = 0.25 is described as *x*, *y*, 1/2-*z* (or *x*, *y*, -*z*+1/2).
- Rotation around and corresponding translation along the two-fold screw axis, which coincides with *Y* results in -*x*, 1/2+*y*, -*z*.
- Reflection in the glide plane, n, perpendicular to *X* and intersecting *X* at *x* = 0.25 is described symbolically as 1/2-*x*, 1/2+*y*, 1/2+*z*.
- The non-primitive translation in the base-centered unit cell C yields *x*+1/2, *y*+1/2, *z*.

This description formalizes symmetry operations by using the coordinates of the resulting points and, therefore, it is broadly used to represent both symmetry operations and equivalent positions in the International Tables for Crystallography (see *Table 1.18*). The symbolic description of symmetry operations, however, is not formal enough to enable easy manipulations involving crystallographic symmetry operations.

[1] In a crystallographic basis where *X*- and *Y*-axes form a 120° angle between them, and *Z*-axis is perpendicular to both *X* and *Y*.

1.20 Algebraic treatment of symmetry operations

Earlier (see *Figure 1.7*) we established that there are four simple symmetry operations, namely: rotation, reflection, inversion and translation. Among the four, reflection in a mirror plane may be represented as a complex symmetry element – two-fold inversion axis – which includes simultaneous two-fold rotation and inversion. Therefore, in order to minimize the number of simple symmetry operations, we will begin with rotation, inversion and translation, noting that complex operations can be described as simultaneous applications of these three simple transformations.

Algebraic description of symmetry operations is based on the following simple notion. Consider a point in a three-dimensional coordinate system with any (not necessarily orthogonal) basis, which has coordinates x, y, z. This point can be conveniently represented by the coordinates of the end of the vector, which begins in the origin of the coordinates 0, 0, 0 and ends at x, y, z. Thus, one only needs to specify the coordinates of the end of this vector in order to fully characterize the location of the point. Any symmetrical transformation of the point, therefore, can be described by the change in either or both the orientation and the length of this vector.

1.20.1 Transformations of coordinates of a point

Consider point A with coordinates x, y, z in a Cartesian[1] basis XYZ. Also, consider point A' with coordinates x', y', z' in the same basis, which is obtained from point A by rotating it around Z by angle φ. It is worth noting that since orientations of rotation axes in crystallography are restricted, e.g. see *Table 1.8*, we may limit our analysis to rotations about one of the basis axes.

As shown in *Figure 1.47*, it is possible to select a different Cartesian basis, $X'Y'Z'$, which is related to the original basis, XYZ, by the identical rotation around Z and in which the coordinates of the point A' will be x, y, z, i.e. they are invariant to this transformation of coordinates. From the schematic shown in *Figure 1.47* it is easy to establish that the rotational relationships between the coordinate triplets x, y, z and x', y', z' in the original basis XYZ are given as

$$\begin{aligned} x' &= x\cos\varphi - y\sin\varphi \\ y' &= x\sin\varphi + y\cos\varphi \\ z' &= z \end{aligned} \qquad (1.20)$$

[1] Cartesian coordinate system (or basis) is the orthogonal system with $a = b = c = 1$ and $\alpha = \beta = \gamma = 90°$.

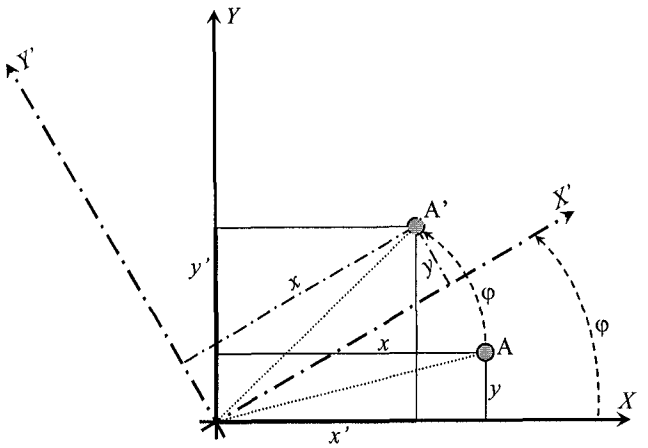


Figure 1.47. Cartesian bases XYZ and $X'Y'Z'$ (both Z and Z' are perpendicular to the plane of the projection) in which the coordinates of the point are invariant to the rotation around Z by angle φ.

Equations 1.20 are known as linear transformation of coordinates on the plane and they can be written in matrix notation as shown below:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \\ z' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos\varphi & -\sin\varphi & 0 \\ \sin\varphi & \cos\varphi & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.21}$$

When two points in the same Cartesian basis are related to one another *via* inversion through the origin of coordinates, then the coordinates of the inverted point are invariant with respect to a second Cartesian basis where the directions of all axes are reversed as shown in *Figure 1.48.*

Hence, the inversion through the origin of coordinates may be represented algebraically as

$$\begin{aligned} x' &= -x \\ y' &= -y \\ z' &= -z \end{aligned} \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \\ z' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.22}$$

When the two points are related to one another by roto-inversion, the resulting linear transformation is a combination of Eqs. 1.20 and 1.21 with Eq. 1.22:

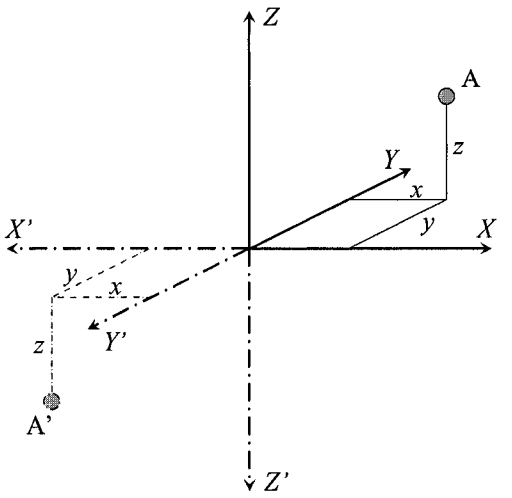


Figure 1.48. Cartesian bases XYZ and $X'Y'Z'$ in which the coordinates of the point are invariant to the inversion through the origin of coordinates.

$$\begin{aligned} x' &= -x\cos\varphi + y\sin\varphi \\ y' &= -x\sin\varphi - y\cos\varphi \\ z' &= -z \end{aligned} \tag{1.23}$$

and

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \\ z' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -\cos\varphi & \sin\varphi & 0 \\ -\sin\varphi & -\cos\varphi & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.24}$$

Matrices in Eqs. 1.21 and 1.24 are related to one another simply by changing the sign of each element of the corresponding matrix. Considering *Figure 1.47* and Eq. 1.21 it is easy to see that when a point is rotated around Y-axis, the corresponding transformation of coordinates is given by

$$\begin{aligned} x' &= x\cos\varphi - z\sin\varphi \\ y' &= y \\ z' &= x\sin\varphi + z\cos\varphi \end{aligned} \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \\ z' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos\varphi & 0 & -\sin\varphi \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \sin\varphi & 0 & \cos\varphi \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.25}$$

and for the rotation around X it becomes

$$\begin{aligned} x' &= x \\ y' &= y\cos\varphi - z\sin\varphi \\ z' &= y\sin\varphi + z\cos\varphi \end{aligned} \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \\ z' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \cos\varphi & -\sin\varphi \\ 0 & \sin\varphi & \cos\varphi \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.26}$$

A noteworthy property of matrices found in Eqs. 1.21, 1.22 and 1.24 to 1.26 is their unimodularity – the determinant of every matrix is equal to 1 or -1 for the rotation and inversion (or roto-inversion) operations, respectively, which is shown for the rotation around Z in Eq. 1.27.

$$\det\begin{pmatrix} \cos\varphi & -\sin\varphi & 0 \\ \sin\varphi & \cos\varphi & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \cos^2\varphi + \sin^2\varphi = 1 \tag{1.27}$$

Because of the restrictions imposed on the values of the rotation angles (see *Table 1.4*), sinφ and cosφ in Cartesian basis are 0, 1 or –1 for one, two and four-fold rotations, and they are $\pm 1/2$ or $\pm\sqrt{3}/2$ for three and six-fold rotations. However, when the same rotational transformations are considered in the appropriate crystallographic coordinate system,[1] all matrix elements become equal to 0, -1 or 1. This simplicity (and undeniably, beauty) of the matrix representation of symmetry operations is the result of restrictions imposed by the three-dimensional periodicity of crystal lattice. The presence of rotational symmetry of any other order (e.g. five-fold rotation) will result in the non-integer values of the elements of corresponding matrices in three dimensions.

When two points in the same Cartesian basis are related to one another by a translation, then the coordinates of the second point are invariant with respect to a different Cartesian basis, in which the orientations of the axes remain the same as in the first basis but its origin is shifted along the three non-coplanar vectors, $\mathbf{t}_x$, $\mathbf{t}_y$ and $\mathbf{t}_z$, as shown in *Figure 1.49*.

Thus, considering *Figure 1.49* the coordinates, x', y', z', of the point A' in the original basis *XYZ* are given as

$$\begin{aligned} x' &= x + t_x \\ y' &= y + t_y \\ z' &= z + t_z \end{aligned} \tag{1.28}$$

[1] The angles between *X*-, *Y*-, and *Z*-axes are identical to α, β, and γ in the corresponding crystal system (see *Table 1.11*).

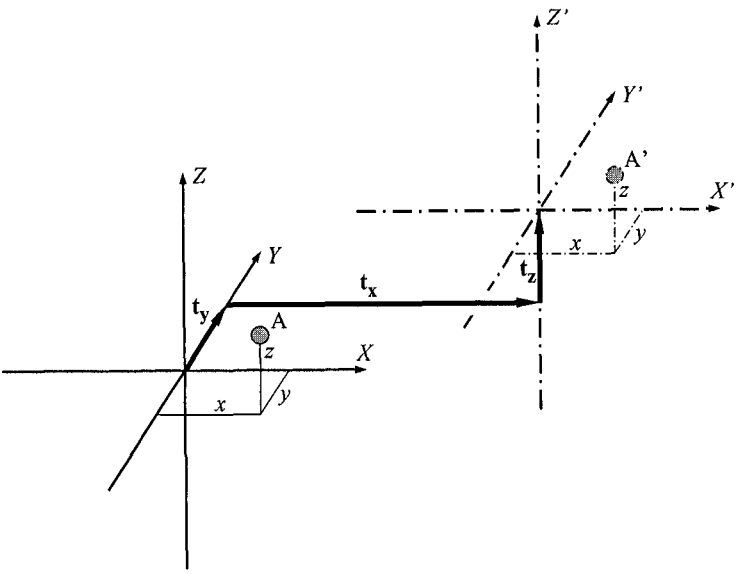


Figure 1.49. Cartesian bases *XYZ* and *X'Y'Z'* in which the coordinates of the point are invariant to translations along three non-coplanar vectors $\mathbf{t}_x$, $\mathbf{t}_y$ and $\mathbf{t}_z$.

or in matrix notation

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \\ z' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} t_x \\ t_y \\ t_z \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.29}$$

where t_x, t_y and t_z are the lengths of vectors $\mathbf{t}_x$, $\mathbf{t}_y$ and $\mathbf{t}_z$, respectively.

To generalize the results obtained in this section we now consider two points, A and A', with coordinates x, y, z and x', y', z', respectively, in the same Cartesian basis *XYZ*. An unrestricted transformation of A into A' can be carried out first, by applying the corresponding rotation (and/or inversion) and second, by applying the corresponding translational transformation of the coordinates. For example, assuming that rotation occurs around the *Z*-axis, and considering Eqs. 1.20, 1.21, 1.28 and 1.29, the relationships between x, y, z, and x', y', z' are given as follows

$$\begin{aligned} x' &= x\cos\varphi - y\sin\varphi + t_x \\ y' &= x\sin\varphi + y\cos\varphi + t_y \\ z' &= z + t_z \end{aligned} \tag{1.30}$$

or in matrix notation

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \\ z' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos\varphi & -\sin\varphi & 0 \\ \sin\varphi & \cos\varphi & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} t_x \\ t_y \\ t_z \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.31}$$

1.20.2 Rotational transformations of vectors

Any change in the orientation of a vector representing a point without changing the length and the position of the origin of the vector (see *Figure 1.50*) can be described as a new vector, which is a product of a specific square matrix and the original vector. As we established in the previous section (see Eqs. 1.21, 1.22 and 1.24 to 1.26), in three dimensions the matrix has three rows and three columns, the vector has three rows, and the resulting product is shown in general form in Eq. 1.32.

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \\ z' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} r_{11} & r_{12} & r_{13} \\ r_{21} & r_{22} & r_{23} \\ r_{31} & r_{32} & r_{33} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} r_{11}x + r_{12}y + r_{13}z \\ r_{21}x + r_{22}y + r_{23}z \\ r_{31}x + r_{32}y + r_{33}z \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.32}$$

Using the following notations

$$\mathbf{X} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{R} = \begin{pmatrix} r_{11} & r_{12} & r_{13} \\ r_{21} & r_{22} & r_{23} \\ r_{31} & r_{32} & r_{33} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{X'} = \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \\ z' \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.33}$$

equation 1.32 becomes

$$\mathbf{X'} = \mathbf{RX} \tag{1.34}$$

The matrix **R** is called rotation matrix since the changing of the orientation of the vector without altering its length and without moving its origin away from the origin of the coordinate system is achieved by various rotations of the vector, e.g. around a point, around an axis, or by reflecting it in a plane.

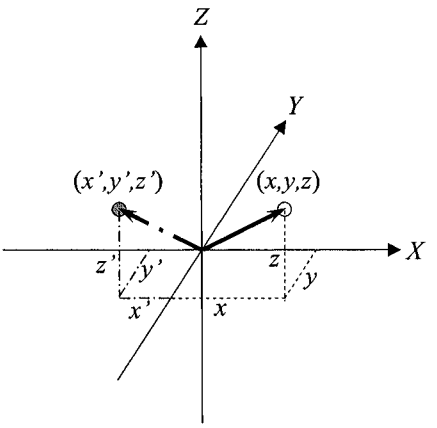


Figure 1.50. The point with the coordinates x, y, z represented by the vector (x, y, z) and the second (symmetrically equivalent) point with the coordinates x', y', z' represented by the vector (x', y', z'), which has the same length as the original vector (x, y, z).

1.20.3 Translational transformations of vectors

When only the change of the length of the vector is involved, it is usually much more convenient to move the origin of the coordinate system in a way that the length and the orientation of the new vector remain the same in the new basis as those of the original vector in the original basis (see *Figure 1.49*). This is achieved by translating the old origin of the coordinate system by (t_1, t_2, and t_3) along X, Y and Z, respectively, which is equivalent to adding two vectors as shown in Eq. 1.35.

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \\ z' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} t_1 \\ t_2 \\ t_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x+t_1 \\ y+t_2 \\ z+t_3 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.35}$$

Introducing the following notation in addition to Eq. 1.33

$$\mathbf{T} = \begin{pmatrix} t_1 \\ t_2 \\ t_3 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.36}$$

the short form of Eq. 1.35 becomes

$$\mathbf{X'} = \mathbf{X} + \mathbf{T} \tag{1.37}$$

1.20.4 Combined symmetrical transformations of vectors

Unrestricted transformations of a vector can, therefore, be represented using a sequence of matrix-vector transformations by first, evaluating the product of the rotation matrix and the original vector as shown in Eq. 1.32 and second, evaluating the sum of the obtained vector and the corresponding translation vector, as shown in Eq. 1.35. The combined unrestricted transformation is, therefore, represented in the expanded form using Eq. 1.38, or using the compact form as shown in Eq. 1.39.

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \\ z' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} r_{11} & r_{12} & r_{13} \\ r_{21} & r_{22} & r_{23} \\ r_{31} & r_{32} & r_{33} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} t_1 \\ t_2 \\ t_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} r_{11}x + r_{12}y + r_{13}z + t_1 \\ r_{21}x + r_{22}y + r_{23}z + t_2 \\ r_{31}x + r_{32}y + r_{33}z + t_3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.38)$$

$$\mathbf{X'} = \mathbf{RX} + \mathbf{T} \quad (1.39)$$

It is practically obvious that simultaneously or separately acting rotations (either proper or improper) and translations, which portray all finite and infinite symmetry elements, i.e. rotation, roto-inversion and screw axes, glide planes or simple translations can be described using the combined transformations of vectors as defined by Eqs. 1.38 and 1.39. When finite symmetry elements intersect with the origin of coordinates the respective translational part in Eqs. 1.38 and 1.39 is 0, 0, 0; and when the symmetry operation is a simple translation, the corresponding rotational part becomes unity, **E**, where

$$\mathbf{E} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.40)$$

At this point, the validity of Eqs. 1.38 and 1.39 has been established when rotations were performed around an axis intersecting the origin of coordinates. We now establish their validity in the general case by considering vector **X** and a symmetry operation that includes both the rotational part, **R**, and translational part, **t**. Assume that the symmetry operation is applied in a crystallographic basis where the rotation axis is shifted from the origin of coordinates by a vector $\Delta\mathbf{t}$.

First, we select a new basis in which the rotation axis intersects with the origin of coordinates. This is equivalent to changing the coordinates of the original vector from **X** to **x**, where

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{X} + \Delta\mathbf{t} \tag{1.41}$$

According to Eq. 1.39, the symmetry transformation in the new basis results in vector **x'**, where

$$\mathbf{x'} = \mathbf{Rx} + \mathbf{t} = \mathbf{R}(\mathbf{X} + \Delta\mathbf{t}) + \mathbf{t} = \mathbf{RX} + (\mathbf{R}\Delta\mathbf{t} + \mathbf{t}) \tag{1.42}$$

After switching back to the original basis by applying negative translation $-\Delta\mathbf{t}$ to the right hand part of Eq. 1.42 we obtain the coordinates of the symmetrically equivalent vector **X'** in the original basis as

$$\mathbf{X'} = \mathbf{RX} + (\mathbf{R}\Delta\mathbf{t} + \mathbf{t}) - \Delta\mathbf{t} = \mathbf{RX} + [(\mathbf{R} - \mathbf{E})\Delta\mathbf{t} + \mathbf{t}] \tag{1.43}$$

where **E** is unity matrix. Noting that $(\mathbf{R} - \mathbf{E})\Delta\mathbf{t} + \mathbf{t} = \mathbf{T}$, i.e. it is the translational part that reflects the shift of the rotation axis from the origin of coordinates in addition to the conventional translational part, **t**, Eq. 1.43 becomes identical to Eq. 1.39. Thus, equations 1.38 and 1.39 are valid for any crystallographic transformation in three dimensions.

It may be useful to briefly summarize the main properties of rotation transformation matrices, **R**, some of which were already mentioned above:

- In conventional crystallography matrix elements may accept only the following values:

$$\mathbf{R}_{ij} = 0,\ 1 \text{ or } -1 \tag{1.44}$$

- **R** is unimodular:

$$\det(\mathbf{R}) = 1 \text{ or } -1 \tag{1.45}$$

- The inverse rotation matrix is the same as the direct matrix, i.e. $\mathbf{R}^{-1} = \mathbf{R}$ when the rotation order is 1 or 2, otherwise $\mathbf{R}^{-1}$ represents rotation in the opposite direction.
- An order of an axis represented by the operation **R** can be determined in two steps:
  1. In the case of an inversion axis, when $\det(\mathbf{R'}) = -1$, the matrix should be converted to a simple rotation by multiplying its elements by -1:

$$\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{R'}\det(\mathbf{R'}) \tag{1.46}$$

2. The order of the axis (N) is determined from the number of multiplications of the matrix **R** by itself that are required to obtain the unity matrix, **E**:

$$\prod_{i=1}^{N} \mathbf{R} = \mathbf{E} \tag{1.47}$$

1.20.5 Augmented matrices

For convenience the 3 × 3 rotation matrix and the corresponding 3×1 translation vector may be combined into a single augmented matrix which has four rows and four columns. This matrix is shown in *Figure 1.51* together with the augmented vector to which the transformation is applied. The augmentation of the vector is required to ensure the compatibility with the matrix during their multiplication.

It is easy to verify that the product of the augmented matrix **A** and the augmented vector **V** results in the vector **V'**, which is the same as the vector **X'** (Eqs. 1.38 and 1.39) plus additional 1 as the fourth element of the vector as shown in Eq. 1.48. Therefore, instead of specifying rotational and translational parts separately, they can be combined into a single matrix:

$$\mathbf{V'} = \begin{pmatrix} r_{11} & r_{12} & r_{13} & t_1 \\ r_{21} & r_{22} & r_{23} & t_2 \\ r_{31} & r_{32} & r_{33} & t_3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} r_{11}x + r_{12}y + r_{13}z + t_1 \\ r_{21}x + r_{22}y + r_{23}z + t_2 \\ r_{31}x + r_{32}y + r_{33}z + t_3 \\ 0+0+0+1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.48}$$

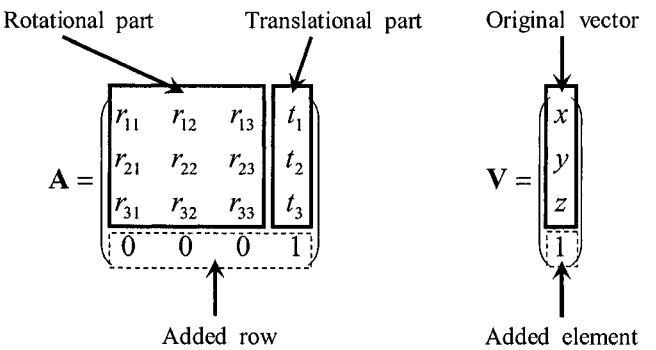


Figure 1.51. The augmented 4×4 matrix, which combines both the rotational and translational parts as indicated by thick boxes and the added row highlighted by the box drawn using dashed lines (left) and the corresponding modification of the original vector to ensure their compatibility in the matrix-vector multiplication (right).

1.20.6 Algebraic representation of crystallographic symmetry

Considering conventional crystallographic symmetry, the elements representing rotations, i.e. r_{ij}, are restricted to 1, 0, or -1, and the elements representing translations, i.e. t_i in Eq. 1.48, are restricted to ±1/2, ±1/3, ±1/4, ±1/6, ±1/8 including their integer multiples, and 0. In this way, all possible transformations of atoms by symmetry operations are represented by the multiplication of matrices and vectors.

Therefore, symmetrical transformations in the crystal are formalized as algebraic (matrix-vector) operations – an extremely important feature used in all crystallographic calculations in computer software. The partial list of symmetry elements along with the corresponding augmented matrices that are used to represent symmetry operations included in each symmetry element is provided in *Table 1.19* and *Table 1.20*. For a complete list, consult the International Tables for Crystallography, vol. A.

Table 1.19. Selected symmetry elements, their orientation and corresponding symmetry operations in the algebraic form as augmented matrices (see *Figure 1.51*).

Symmetry element and orientation	Transformed coordinates	First symmetry operation	Second symmetry operation	Third symmetry operation	Fourth symmetry operation
1 (any)	x, y, z	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	None	None	None
$\bar{1}$ at 0,0,0	x, y, z; $-x, -y, -z$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	None	None
$\bar{1}$ at ¼,¼,¼	x, y, z; ½-x,½-y,½-z	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 1/2 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	None	None
m $\perp X$ at $X = 0$	x, y, z; $-x, y, z$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	None	None

Symmetry element and orientation	Transformed coordinates	First symmetry operation	Second symmetry operation	Third symmetry operation	Fourth symmetry operation
m $\perp Y$ at $Y = 0$	x, y, z; $x, -y, z$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	None	None
m $\perp Z$ at $Z = 0$	x, y, z; $x, y, -z$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	None	None
m $\perp X$ at $X = 1/4$	x, y, z; $\frac{1}{2}-x, y, z$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	None	None
m $\perp X$ at $X = 1/2$	x, y, z; $1-x, y, z$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	None	None
b $\perp X$ at $X = 0$	x, y, z; $-x, \frac{1}{2}+y, z$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	None	None
b $\perp X$ at $X = 1/4$	x, y, z; $\frac{1}{2}-x, \frac{1}{2}+y, z$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	None	None
c $\perp X$ at $X = 0$	x, y, z; $-x, y, \frac{1}{2}+z$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	None	None
n $\perp X$ at $X = 0$	x, y, z; $-x, \frac{1}{2}+y, \frac{1}{2}+z$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	None	None

Symmetry element and orientation	Transformed coordinates	First symmetry operation	Second symmetry operation	Third symmetry operation	Fourth symmetry operation
$2 \parallel X$ through 0,0,0	x, y, z; $x, -y, -z$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	None	None
$2 \parallel Y$ through 0,0,0	x, y, z; $-x, y, -z$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	None	None
$2 \parallel Z$ through 0,0,0	x, y, z; $-x, -y, z$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	None	None
$2_1 \parallel X$ through 0,0,0	x, y, z; $\frac{1}{2}+x, -y, -z$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1/2 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	None	None
$3 \parallel Z$ through 0,0,0	x, y, z; $-y, x-y, z$; $y-x, -x, z$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	None
$3_1 \parallel Z$ through 0,0,0	x, y, z; $-y, x-y, 1/3+z$; $y-x, -x, 2/3+z$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1/3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2/3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	None
$4 \parallel Z$ through 0,0,0	x, y, z; $-y, x, z$; $-x, -y, z$; $y, -x, z$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$
$4_1 \parallel Z$ through 0,0,0	x, y, z; $-y, x, 1/4+z$; $-x, -y, 1/2+z$; $y, -x, 3/4+z$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1/4 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 3/4 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

Table 1.20. Selected symmetry elements in trigonal and hexagonal crystal systems, their orientation and corresponding symmetry operations in the algebraic form as augmented matrices (see *Figure 1.51*).

Symmetry element and orientation	6 ‖ Z through 0,0,0	$\bar{3}$ ‖ Z through 0,0,0	$\bar{6}$ ‖ Z through 0,0,0	6_1 ‖ Z through 0,0,0	6_3 ‖ Z through 0,0,0
First symmetry operation	x, y, z $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	x, y, z $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	x, y, z $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	x, y, z $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	x, y, z $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$
Second symmetry operation	$-y, x-y, z$ $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$-y, x-y, z$ $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$-y, x-y, z$ $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$-y, x-y, {}^1/_3+z$ $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1/3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$-y, x-y, z$ $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$
Third symmetry operation	$-x+y, -x, z$ $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$-x+y, -x, z$ $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$-x+y, -x, z$ $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$-x+y, -x, {}^2/_3+z$ $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2/3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$-x+y, -x, z$ $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$
Fourth symmetry operation	$-x, -y, z$ $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$-x, -y, -z$ $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$x, y, -z$ $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$-x, -y, {}^1/_2+z$ $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$-x, -y, {}^1/_2+z$ $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$
Fifth symmetry operation	$x-y, x, z$ $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$x-y, x, -z$ $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$-x+y, -x, -z$ $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$x-y, x, {}^1/_6+z$ $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1/6 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$x-y, x, {}^1/_2+z$ $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$
Sixth symmetry operation	$y, -x+y, z$ $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$y, -x+y, -z$ $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$-y, x-y, -z$ $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$y, -x+y, {}^5/_6+z$ $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 5/6 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$y, -x+y, {}^1/_2+z$ $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

Even though the column (*Table 1.19*) and the row (*Table 1.20*) labeled "First symmetry operation" seem redundant, their presence highlights the fact that each symmetry element contains one-fold rotation or unity operation. Furthermore, as easy to see from these tables, four-fold rotation axes also contain the two-fold symmetry operation (e.g. the third symmetry operation for 4 || *Z* is the same as the second symmetry operation for 2 || *Z*) and six fold rotation axes contain both three- and two-fold rotations (e.g. second and third symmetry operations for 6 || *Z* are identical to second and third for 3 || *Z*, while the fourth symmetry operation for 6 || *Z* is identical to the second for 2 || *Z*).

1.20.7 Interactions between symmetry operations

We now consider how the two interacting symmetry operations produce a third symmetry operation, similar to how it was described in section 1.6 but now in terms of their algebraic representation. Assume that two symmetry operations, which are given by the two augmented matrices $\mathbf{A}^1$ and $\mathbf{A}^2$, are applied in sequence to a point, coordinates of which are represented by the augmented vector **V**. Taking into account Eq. 1.48, but written in a short form, the first symmetry operation will result in the vector $\mathbf{V}^1$ given as

$$\mathbf{V}^1 = \mathbf{A}^1\mathbf{V} \tag{1.49}$$

The second symmetry operation applied to the vector $\mathbf{V}^1$ will result in the third vector, $\mathbf{V}^2$ as follows

$$\mathbf{V}^2 = \mathbf{A}^2\mathbf{V}^1 = \mathbf{A}^2(\mathbf{A}^1\,\mathbf{V}) \tag{1.50}$$

Recalling, that the associative law holds for symmetry operations and for symmetry groups (see sections 1.6 and 1.7), equation 1.50 can be rewritten as

$$\mathbf{V}^2 = (\mathbf{A}^2\mathbf{A}^1)\mathbf{V} \tag{1.51}$$

It follows from Eq. 1.51 and from our earlier consideration of interactions between symmetry elements, finding which symmetry operation appears as the result of consecutive application of any two symmetry operations is reduced to calculating the product of the corresponding augmented matrices. To illustrate how it is done in practice, consider *Figure 1.16* and assume that the two-fold axis is parallel to *Y*. The corresponding symmetry operations, $\mathbf{A}^1$ and $\mathbf{A}^2$, are (*Table 1.19*):

$$\mathbf{A}^1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } \mathbf{A}^2 = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.52}$$

The presence of the center of inversion introduces one additional symmetry operation, $\mathbf{A}^3$

$$\mathbf{A}^3 = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.53}$$

It is easy to see that the product of $\mathbf{A}^2$ and $\mathbf{A}^3$ is the fourth symmetry operation, $\mathbf{A}^4$, which is nothing else but the mirror reflection in the plane, which is perpendicular to *Y* and passes through the origin of coordinates:

$$\mathbf{A}^4 = \mathbf{A}^2\mathbf{A}^3 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.54}$$

All other products between the four matrices do not result in new symmetry operations, i.e.

$$\mathbf{A}^1\mathbf{A}^1=\mathbf{A}^1;\ \mathbf{A}^1\mathbf{A}^2=\mathbf{A}^2;\ \mathbf{A}^1\mathbf{A}^3=\mathbf{A}^3;\ \mathbf{A}^1\mathbf{A}^4=\mathbf{A}^4 \tag{1.55}$$

$$\mathbf{A}^2\mathbf{A}^2=\mathbf{A}^1;\ \mathbf{A}^2\mathbf{A}^3=\mathbf{A}^4;\ \mathbf{A}^2\mathbf{A}^4=\mathbf{A}^3 \tag{1.56}$$

$$\mathbf{A}^3\mathbf{A}^3=\mathbf{A}^1;\ \mathbf{A}^3\mathbf{A}^4=\mathbf{A}^2 \tag{1.57}$$

$$\mathbf{A}^4\mathbf{A}^4=\mathbf{A}^1 \tag{1.58}$$

By now we know quite well that this combination of symmetry operations corresponds to point group symmetry 2/m (also see *Figure 1.46*).

1.21 Non-conventional symmetry

Conventional crystallography was developed using the explicit assumption that crystalline objects maintain ideal periodicity in three dimensions. As a result, any ideal three-dimensional crystal structure can be described using a periodic lattice and one of the 230 crystallographic space groups (see section 1.16). The overwhelming majority of both naturally occurring and synthetic crystalline solids are indeed nearly ideal. Their diffraction patterns are perfectly periodic since Bragg peaks are only observed at the corresponding points of the reciprocal lattice, which reflects both the symmetry and three-dimensional periodicity of the crystal lattice. Long ago the first aperiodic crystal was reported,[1] and the apparent absence of the three-dimensional periodicity of diffraction patterns was later found in a number of materials. One of the most prominent examples is the 1984 discovery of the five-fold symmetry in the diffraction pattern of rapidly cooled $Al_{0.86}Mn_{0.14}$ alloy.[2] Supported by many experimental observations, several approaches to describe the symmetry of aperiodic structures have been developed and successfully used to establish the crystal structure of these unusual materials.

Probably the most fruitful method has been suggested by P.M. de Wolff[3] in which more than three physical dimensions are used to represent the crystal lattice and thus to restore its periodicity in the so-called superspace. Then the resulting aperiodic diffraction pattern is simply a projection of the crystal lattice, which is periodic in the superspace, upon the physical space, which is three-dimensional. The diffraction pattern of an aperiodic crystal usually contains a subset of strong (i.e. highly intense) diffraction peaks, which are called main peaks, and their indices are described using three integers corresponding to a standard three-dimensionally periodic crystal lattice. The subsets of the so-called satellite peaks are weaker and their indices include more than three integers to reflect the increased dimensionality of the superspace (see the footnote on page 401).

1.21.1 Commensurate modulation

Consider the simplest case, when the periodicity of the crystal lattice is perturbed in one dimension by periodic deviations of atoms from their ideal

[1] U. Dehlinger, Über die Verbreiterung der Debyelinien bei kaltbearbeiteten Metallen, Z. Kristallogr. **65**, 615 (1927).

[2] D. Shechtman, I. Blech, D. Gratias and J.W. Cahn, Metallic phase with long-range orientational order and no translational symmetry, Phys. Rev. Lett. **53**, 1951 (1984).

[3] P.M. de Wolff, The pseudo-symmetry of modulated crystal structures, Acta Cryst. **A30**, 777 (1974).

positions. As shown in *Figure 1.52*, the basis structure (the upper row of atoms, which is ideally periodic with the translation vector **a**) is perturbed (i.e. modulated) by a periodic function, with the period $\lambda = 1/q$, where q is the magnitude of the modulation vector, **q**, and $\mathbf{q} = \alpha\mathbf{a}^*$. The amplitude of the modulation function is A. The resulting modulated structure (the lower row of atoms in *Figure 1.52*) is obtained by shifting atoms from their ideal positions.[1] The period of the modulation function defines the directions, and its amplitude defines the extent of the shifts, as indicated by horizontal arrows.

When the value of α is rational, this results in a commensurate modulation. Upon further examination of *Figure 1.52* it is easy to see here that $\lambda = 8/3a$, i.e. $q = 3/8a^*$, and the modulation is commensurate ($\alpha = 3/8$). In principle, in the case of commensurate modulation, the "conventional" periodicity can be restored by selecting a much larger unit cell, which is often called a supercell. Considering the example shown in *Figure 1.52* the periodicity can be restored without introducing the modulation function by choosing the unit cell with $\mathbf{a}_{bottom} = 8\mathbf{a}_{top}$, where "bottom" and "top" refer to the locations of the one-dimensional structures in the figure. However, atoms which are symmetrically related due to the presence of the modulation function are no longer equivalent to one another in the enlarged unit cell,[1] and therefore, the correct description using commensurate modulation is usually preferred.

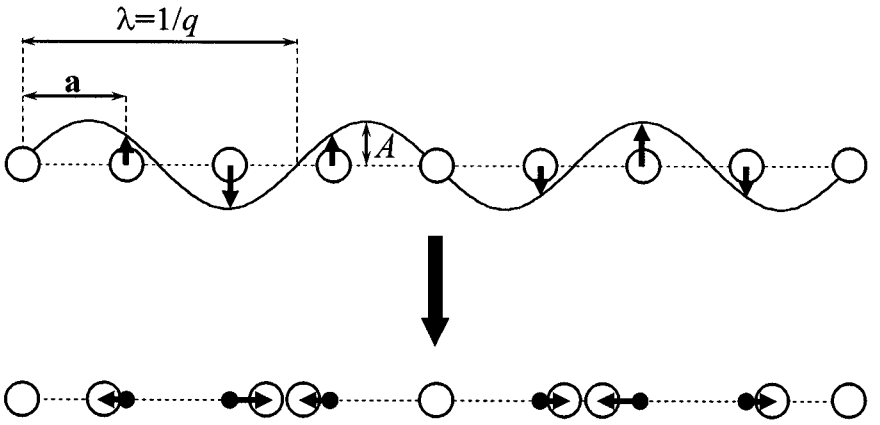


Figure 1.52. The ideally periodic one-dimensional structure, the corresponding modulation function with the period $\lambda = 1/q$, which is commensurate with **a**, and the amplitude A (top), and the resulting commensurately modulated structure (bottom).

[1] In the cases shown in *Figure 1.52* and *Figure 1.53*, the x-coordinate of each atom becomes $x^m = x + A\sin 2n\pi qa$, where x^m and x correspond to the modulated and conventional periodic structures, respectively, and $n = \ldots, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, \ldots$

1.21.2 Incommensurate modulation

As noted above, when α is irrational, the incommensurate modulation occurs, and this is shown schematically in *Figure 1.53*. The exact description of incommensurately modulated structure is impossible using only conventional crystallographic symmetry in the unit cell of any size smaller than the crystal. The periodicity of the structure can only be restored by using two different periodic functions. The first function is the conventional crystallographic translation, and the second one is the sinusoidal modulation function with certain period, which is incommensurate with the corresponding translation, and amplitude.

In addition to one-dimensional modulations considered above, both two- and three-dimensional modulations are possible. Furthermore, atomic parameters affected by modulations may be one or several of the following: positional (as shown in *Figure 1.52* and *Figure 1.53*), occupancy, thermal displacement, and orientation of magnetic moments. The latter, i.e. commensurately or incommensurately modulated orientations of magnetic moments are quite common in various magnetically ordered structures (e.g. pure lanthanide metals such as Er and Ho), and both the value of the modulation vector and the amplitude of the modulation function often vary with temperature.

Symmetry of modulated structures is represented algebraically by using rotation matrices and translational vectors in an N-dimensional superspace, where $N > 3$. Additional dimensions are needed to describe the symmetry of

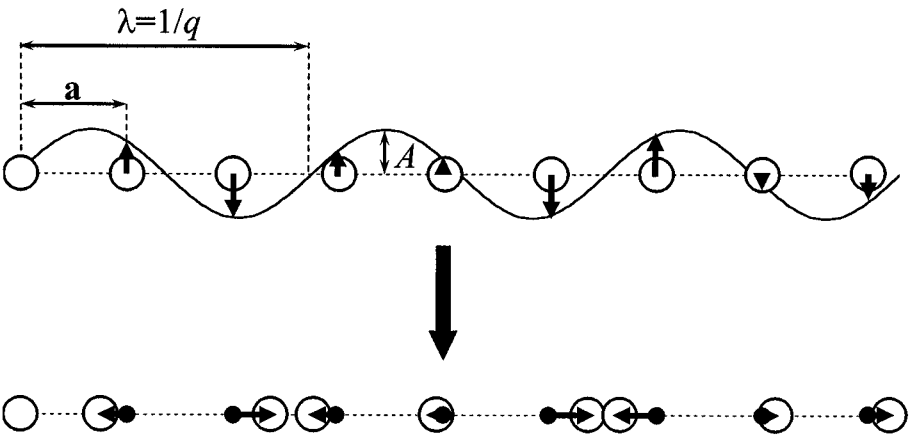


Figure 1.53. The ideally periodic one-dimensional structure, the corresponding modulation function with the period $\lambda = 1/q$, which is incommensurate with **a**, and the amplitude A (top), and the resulting incommensurately modulated structure (bottom).

the modulation functions. Thus, one-dimensional modulation is described in a four-dimensional superspace using 4×4 rotation matrices and 4×1 vectors (3 dimensions for a normal space plus one for the modulation function), while two- and three-dimensional modulations require 5×5 and 6×6 rotation matrices and 5×1 and 6×1 vectors, respectively.

1.21.3 Quasicrystals

The symmetry of quasicrystals can be represented by introducing a different perturbation function, which is based on the Fibonacci[1] numbers. An infinite Fibonacci sequence is derived from two numbers, 0 and 1, and is formed according to the following rule:

$$F_{n+2} = F_{n+1} + F_n \tag{1.59}$$

This results in the series of numbers

$$0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, \ldots \tag{1.60}$$

Assume that we have a sequence of words containing letters L (for long distance or fragment) and S (for short distance or fragment), which are constructed by replacing each letter in the previous word using the following substitution rule: letter S is replaced by letter L, while letter L is replaced by the word LS. Starting from L as the first word, the infinite sequence of words is obtained, and the first six members of this sequence are shown in *Figure 1.54*.

The frequency of occurrence of letters L and S in this sequence is represented in *Table 1.21*, and it is easy to recognize that they are identical to the consecutive members (F_{n+1} and F_n) of the Fibonacci series. The corresponding limit when the number of words, n, approaches infinity is the golden mean, τ

$$\tau = \lim_{n\to\infty}\left(\frac{F_{n+1}}{F_n}\right) = \frac{\sqrt{5}+1}{2} = 1.618... \tag{1.61}$$

[1] Leonardo Pisano Fibonacci (1170 – 1250). Medieval Italian mathematician who in 1202 wrote *Liber abaci* – "Book of the abacus" – in which he formulated the problem leading to the sequence of numbers 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55, ... (without the first term, i.e. without 0): "How many pairs of rabbits can be produced in a year from one pair of rabbits assuming that every month each pair produces one new pair of rabbits, which becomes productive one month after birth?"

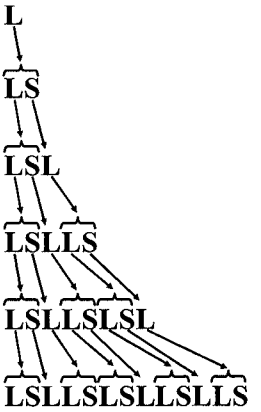


Figure 1.54. The sequence of words containing quasiperiodic sequences of letters L and S based on the following substitution rule: S → L, and L → LS.

The golden mean can also be represented as a continuous fraction, which contains only one number, 1, and therefore, it is sometimes referred to as the "most irrational" number.

$$\tau = \cfrac{1}{1+\cfrac{1}{1+\cfrac{1}{1+\ldots}}} \tag{1.62}$$

Table 1.21. The frequency of occurrence of letters L and S in the infinite series of words based on the substitution rule S → L, and L → LS.

n	Word	f_L	f_S
0	L	1	0
1	LS	1	1
2	LSL	2	1
3	LSLLS	3	2
4	LSLLSLSL	5	3
5	LSLLSLSLLSLLS	8	5
6	LSLLSLSLLSLLSLSLLSLSL	13	8
7	LSLLSLSLLSLLSLSLLSLSLLSLLSLSLLSLLS	21	13
…	…	…	…
		F_{n+1}	F_n

The perturbation (modulation) function used in the description of aperiodic structures is obtained by associating interatomic distances (or larger fragments in the crystal structure) with length ratio τ to 1 to letters L

and S and the resulting modulation function is no longer a sinusoidal wave, but is saw-tooth-like. It is worth noting that the periodicity in this simple one-dimensional case (*Figure 1.54* and *Table 1.21*) is absent but the order is perfect: as soon as the law has been established, the "structure" of the series, i.e. the location of S and L can be predicted at any point starting from the origin or any other known location.

Similar to modulated structures, symmetry of quasicrystals also can be described in space with more than three dimensions. For example, two-dimensional and three-dimensional quasiperiodicity can be described in five- and six-dimensional space, respectively, using 5×5 and 6×6 rotation matrices. Yet, the properties of these matrices (Eqs. 1.44 to 1.47) remain the same for both modulated structures and quasicrystals.

The more detailed description of the non-conventional symmetry goes beyond the scope of this book[1] as it has little use in powder diffraction, because even the three-dimensional diffraction from aperiodic crystals is quite complex. When the diffraction picture is projected along one dimension, its treatment becomes too complicated and the crystal structure of aperiodic crystals is rarely, if ever, completely studied by means of powder diffraction techniques beyond simple phase identification. Nevertheless, this section has been included here for completeness, and to give the reader a flavor of recent developments in crystallography.[2]

[1] A more complete description of de Wolff's approach to treatment of various types of aperiodic crystals can be found in the International Tables for Crystallography, vol. B, Second edition, U. Shmueli, Ed., Published for the International Union of Crystallography by Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston/Dordrecht/London (2001).

[2] The discovery of five-fold symmetry prompted the *ad*-interim Commission on Aperiodic Crystals of the International Union of Crystallography to change the definition of a crystal as a periodic three-dimensional arrangement of identical unit cells to the following: "...by 'crystal' we mean any solid having an essentially discrete diffraction diagram, and by 'aperiodic crystal' we mean any crystal in which three-dimensional lattice periodicity can be considered to be absent". International Union of Crystallography. Report of the Executive Committee for 1991, Acta Cryst. **A48**, 922 - 946 (1992).

1.22 Additional reading

1. C. Giacovazzo, H.L. Monaco, D. Viterbo, F. Scordari, G. Gilli, G. Zanotti, and M. Catti, Fundamentals of crystallography. IUCr texts on crystallography 7, Second Edition, Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (2002).
2. D. Schwarzenbach, Crystallography, John Wiley & Sons, New York (1996).
3. M.B. Boisen and G.V. Gibbs. Mathematical crystallography - an introduction to the mathematical foundations of crystallography. Reviews in mineralogy, Vol. 15 (revised). Washington, DC: The Mineralogical Society of America (1992).
4. D. Farmer, Groups and symmetry, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI (1995).
5. C. Hammond, The basics of crystallography and diffraction. IUCr texts on crystallography 3. Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (1997).
6. E. Prince, Mathematical techniques in crystallography and materials science. Second edition, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, Heidelberg, Germany (1992).
7. C. Janot, Quasicrystals. A primer, Clarendon Press, Oxford (1992).
8. IUCr Teaching Pamphlets: http://www.iucr.org/iucr-top/comm/cteach/pamphlets.html
9. International Tables for Crystallography, vol. A, Fifth revised edition, Theo Hahn, Ed., Published for the International Union of Crystallography by Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston/Dordrecht/London, (2002).
10. International Tables for Crystallography. Brief teaching edition of volume A, Fifth revised edition. Theo Han, Ed., Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston/Dordrecht/London (2002).

1.23 Problems

Answers to all problems are located in the file Chapter-1-Problems-Solutions.pdf on the CD accompanying this book.

1. Consider a two-dimensional lattice shown in *Figure 1.55*, left, which was discussed earlier in section 1.3. One half of the molecules in this lattice have been modified in a regular way so that their atoms now have sad faces, as shown in *Figure 1.55*, right. This may be a schematic illustrating the formation of a magnetically ordered structure, where happy and sad faces represent opposite directions of magnetic moments. Suggest the most probable unit cell in this new lattice assuming that the correct unit cell in the original lattice is shown by a shaded parallelogram.

2. Consider two mirror planes that intersect at $\phi = 90°$. Using geometrical representation of two planes establish which symmetry element(s) appear as the result of this combination of mirror planes. What is(are) the location(s) of new symmetry element(s)? Name point group symmetry formed by this combination of symmetry elements.

3. Consider two mirror planes that intersect at $\phi = 45°$. Using geometrical representation of two planes establish which symmetry element(s) appear as the result of this combination of mirror planes. What is(are) the location(s) of new symmetry element(s)? Name point group symmetry formed by this combination of symmetry elements.

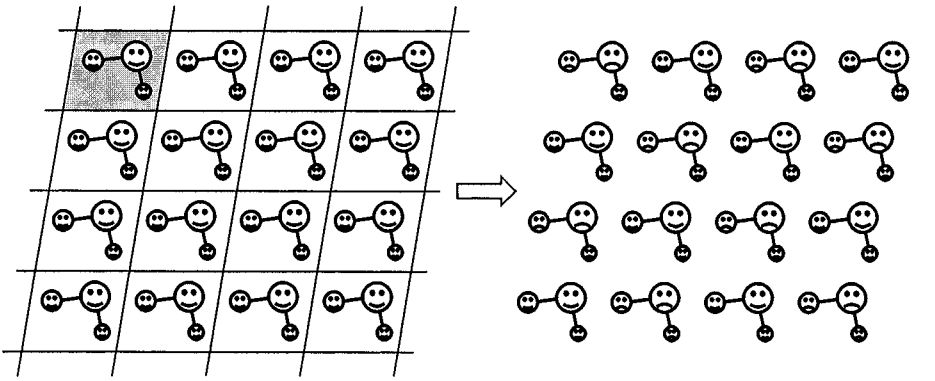


Figure 1.55. The original lattice containing indistinguishable molecules in which a proper unit cell is shaded (left) and a new lattice derived by switching 1/2 of atoms from happy to sad faces in a regular fashion.

4. Consider the following sequence of numbers: 1, 1/2, 1/3, 1/4, ..., 1/*N*, ... Is this a group assuming that the combination law is multiplication, division, addition or subtraction? If yes, identify the combination law in this group and establish whether this group is finite or infinite.

5. Consider the group created by three non-coplanar translations (vectors) using the combination law defined by Eq. 1.1. Which geometrical form can be chosen to illustrate this group? Is the group finite?

6. Determine both the crystal system and point group symmetry of a brick, which is shown schematically in *Figure 1.56* and in which $a \neq b \neq c$ and $\alpha = \beta = \gamma = 90°$?

7. Determine both the crystal system and point group symmetry of benzene molecule, C_6H_6?

8. Determine the point group symmetry of the octahedron. How many and which symmetry elements are present in this point group symmetry?

9. The following relationships between lattice parameters: $a \neq b \neq c$, $\alpha \neq \beta \neq 90$ or 120°, and $\gamma = 90°$ potentially define a "diclinic" crystal system (two angles $\neq 90°$). Is this an eighth crystal system? Explain your answer.

10. The relationships $a = b \neq c$, $\alpha = \beta = 90°$, and $\gamma \neq 90°$ point to a monoclinic crystal system, except that $a = b$. What is the reduced (standard) Bravais lattice in this case? Provide equations that reduce this lattice to one of the 14 standard Bravais types.

11. Consider space group symmetry Fdd2 and without using the International Tables for Crystallography establish the following: (a) the crystal system; (b) the corresponding point group symmetry; (c) the corresponding Laue class; (d) the relationships between the unit cell dimensions; and (e) explain the space group symbol.

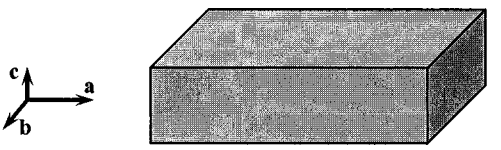


Figure 1.56. Illustration of a brick (parallelepiped) in which three independent edges have different lengths.

12. Consider independent atoms with the following coordinates in the space group symmetry C2/m: Atom1: $x = 0.15, y = 0.0, z = 0.33$; Atom2: $x = .5$, $y = 0.11, z = 0.5$; and Atom3: $x = 0.25, y = 0.25, z = 0.25$. Using the International Tables for Crystallography carry out the following tasks:

a) Apply the coordinates and centering vectors listed for the general equivalent position to generate all symmetrically equivalent atoms from the three listed independent atoms (the total in each case should be the same as the multiplicity of the general position).

b) Find atoms with equal coordinate triplets (remember that the difference by a full translation in one, two or three directions refers to the same atom) and cross them out. The total number of atoms left is the multiplicity of the corresponding special position.

c) Establish both the multiplicity and the Wyckoff notation of special position for each of the three listed independent atoms.

d) To which symmetry element(s), if any, do the independent atoms belong?

e) Which of the three original independent atoms occupies the general equivalent position?

13. The crystal structure of a material is described in space group symmetry $P6_3/mmc$ with the following atomic coordinates

Atom	*x*	*y*	*z*
Ba1	0	0	0.25
Ba2	0.3333	0.6667	0.9110
Ni	0	0	0
Sb	0.3333	0.6667	0.1510
O1	0.4816	-0.0368	0.25
O2	0.1685	0.3370	0.4169

Using the International Tables for Crystallography describe every atom in terms of the multiplicities and Wyckoff letters of their site positions and establish the content of the unit cell, the simplest chemical formula and the number of formula units[1] (Z) per unit cell.

14. Imagine that there is an "edge-centered" lattice (for example unit cell edges along *Z* contain lattice points at 1/2**c**). If this were true, the following lattice translation is present: (0, 0, 1/2). Convert this lattice to one of the standard lattices.

[1] Usually, a formula unit corresponds to the simplest chemical formula or to the stoichiometry of the molecule of a material.

Chapter 2

FUNDAMENTALS OF DIFFRACTION

2.1 Introduction

In the previous chapter, we introduced basic concepts of symmetry and discussed the structure of crystals in terms of three-dimensional periodic arrays of atoms and/or molecules, sometimes perturbed by various modulation functions. In doing so, we implicitly assumed that this is indeed reality. Therefore, it is time to think about the problem from a different point of view: how atoms or molecules can be observed – either directly or indirectly – and thus, how is it possible to determine the crystal structure of a material and verify the concepts of crystallographic symmetry?

To begin answering this question, consider the following mental experiment: imagine yourself in a dark room next to this book (*Figure 2.1*, left). Since human eyes are sensitive to visible light, you will not be able to see the book, nor will you be able to read these words in total darkness. Only

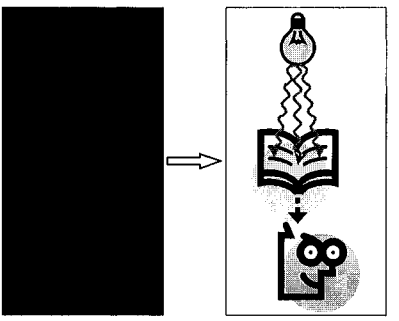


Figure 2.1. The illustration of an observer placed in the absolutely dark room with a book (left) and the same room with the light source producing visible rays of light (right).

when you turn on the light, the book becomes visible and the information stored here becomes accessible (*Figure 2.1*, right). The fundamental outcome of our experiment is that the book and its content can be observed by means of a visible light after it has been scattered by the object (the book) and detected by eyes.

In general, a source of rays and a suitable detector (such as the light bulb and the eye, respectively) are required to observe common objects. Atoms, however, are too small to be discerned using any visible light source because atomic radii[1] range from a few tenths of an angström to a few angströms, and they are smaller than 1/1000 of the wavelengths present in visible light (from ~4000 to ~7000 Å). A suitable wavelength to observe individual atoms is that of x-rays. The latter are short-wave electromagnetic radiation discovered by W.C. Roentgen,[2] and they have the wavelengths that are commensurate with both the atomic sizes and shortest interatomic distances.

Unfortunately, the index of refraction of x-rays is ~1 for all materials and they cannot be focused by a lens in order to observe such small objects as atoms are, as it is done by glass lenses in a visible light microscope or by magnetic lenses in an electron microscope. Thus, in general, x-rays cannot be used to image individual atoms directly.[3] However, as was first shown by Max von Laue in 1912 using a single crystal of hydrated copper sulphate ($CuSO_4 \cdot 5H_2O$), the periodicity of the crystal lattice allows atoms in a crystal to be observed with exceptionally high resolution and precision by means of x-ray diffraction. As we will see later, the diffraction pattern of a crystal is a transformation of an ordered atomic structure into reciprocal space rather than a direct image of the former, and the three-dimensional distribution of atoms in a lattice can be restored only after the diffraction pattern has been transformed back into direct space.

Particles in motion, such as neutrons and electrons, may be used as an alternative to x-rays. They produce images of crystal structures in reciprocal space because of their dual nature: as follows from quantum mechanics,

[1] Atomic radius may be calculated self-consistently or it may be determined from experimental structural data. Effective size of an atom varies as a function of its environment and nature of chemical bonding. Several different scales – covalent, ionic, metallic, and Van der Waals radii – are commonly used in crystallography.

[2] Wilhelm Conrad Roentgen (1845-1923). German physicist who on November 8, 1895 discovered x-rays and was awarded the first ever Nobel Prize in Physics in 1901 "in recognition of the extraordinary services he has rendered by the discovery of the remarkable rays subsequently named after him". For more information about W.C. Roentgen see http://www.nobel.se/physics/laureates/1901/index.html on the Web.

[3] Direct imaging of atoms is feasible using x-ray holography, in which the wave after passing through a sample is mixed with a reference wave to recover phase information and produce three-dimensional interference patterns. For more information see R. Fitzgerald, X-ray and γ-ray holography improve views of atoms in solids, Phys. Today **54**, 21 (2001).

waves behave as particles (e.g. photons), and particles (e.g. neutrons and electrons) behave as waves with wavelength λ determined by the de Broglie equation:

$$\lambda = \frac{h}{mv} \tag{2.1}$$

where h is Planck's constant ($h = 6.626\times10^{-34}$ J·s), m is the particle's rest mass, and v is the particle's velocity ($mv = p$, particle momentum).

For example, a neutron (rest mass, $m = 1.6749\times10^{-27}$ kg) moving at a constant velocity $v = 3000$ m/s will also behave as a wave with $\lambda = 1.319$ Å. Furthermore, charged particles, e.g. electrons, can be focused using magnetic lenses. Thus, modern high-resolution electron microscopes allow direct imaging of atomic structures (for the most part in two dimensions on a surface) with the resolution sufficient to distinguish individual atoms. Direct imaging methods, however, require sophisticated equipment and the accuracy in determining atomic positions is substantially lower than that possible by means of diffraction techniques.[1] Hence, direct visualization of a structure with atomic resolution is invaluable in certain applications but the three-dimensional crystal structures are determined exclusively from diffraction data.

The process of transforming diffraction patterns in order to reinstate the underlying crystal structures in the three-dimensional direct space is governed by the theory of diffraction. The latter rests on several basic assumptions, yet it is accurate and practical. We have no intent to cover the comprehensive derivation of the x-ray diffraction theory since it is mainly of interest to experts, and can be found in many excellent books and reviews.[2] Therefore, in this chapter we will discuss the nature and sources of radiation that are in common use today and consider the principles and fundamental laws of diffraction in general. We will also consider diffraction from a crystalline matter – specifically from polycrystalline materials – and describe diffraction pattern as a function of crystal symmetry, atomic structure and conditions of the experiment.

[1] Despite recent progress in the three-dimensional x-ray holography [e.g. see M. Tegze, G. Faigel, S. Marchesini, M. Belakhovsky, and A. I. Chumakov, Three-dimensional imaging of atoms with isotropic 0.5 Å resolution, Phys. Rev. Lett. **82**, 4847 (1999)], which in principle enables visualization of the atomic structure in three dimensions, its accuracy in determining coordinates of atoms and interatomic distances is much lower than possible by employing conventional diffraction methods.

[2] For example, see the International Tables for Crystallography, vol. B, Second edition, U. Shmueli, Ed. (2001) and vol. C, Second edition, A.J.C. Wilson and E. Prince, Eds. (1999), Published for the International Union for Crystallography by Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston/Dordrecht/London, and references therein.

2.2 Properties and sources of radiation

Nearly immediately after their discovery, x-rays were put to use to study the internal structure of objects that are opaque to visible light but transparent to x-rays, e.g. parts of a human body using radiography, which takes advantage of varying absorption: bones absorb x-rays stronger than surrounding tissues. It is interesting to note that the lack of understanding of their nature, which did not occur until 1912, did not prevent the introduction of x-rays into medicine and engineering. Today the nature and the properties of x-rays and other types of radiation are well understood and they are briefly considered in this section.

2.2.1 Nature and properties of x-rays

Electromagnetic radiation is generated every time when electric charge accelerates or decelerates. It consists of transverse waves where electric (**E**) and magnetic (**H**) vectors are perpendicular to one another and to the propagation vector of the wave (**k**), see *Figure 2.2*, top. The x-rays have wavelengths from ~0.1 to ~100 Å, which are located between γ-radiation and ultraviolet rays as also shown in *Figure 2.2*, bottom. The wavelengths, most commonly used in crystallography, range between ~0.5 and ~2.5 Å since they are of the same order of magnitude as the shortest interatomic distances observed in both organic and inorganic materials. Furthermore, these wavelengths can be easily produced in almost every research laboratory.

When x-rays propagate through a substance, the occurrence of the following processes should be considered in the phenomenon of diffraction:

1. Coherent scattering (section 2.5), which produces beams with the same wavelength as the incident (primary) beam. In other words, the energy of the photons in a coherently scattered beam remains unchanged when compared to that in the primary beam.
2. Incoherent (or Compton) scattering, in which the wavelength of the scattered beam increases due to partial loss of photon energy in collisions with core electrons (the Compton effect).
3. Absorption of the x-rays, see section 2.3.2.1, in which some photons are dissipated in random directions due to scattering, and some photons lose their energy by ejecting electron(s) from an atom (i.e. ionization) and/or due to the photoelectric effect (i.e. x-ray fluorescence).

Incoherent scattering is not essential when the interaction of x-rays with crystal lattices is of concern, and it is generally neglected. When absorption becomes significant, it is usually taken into account as a separate effect. Thus, in the first approximation only coherent scattering results in the diffraction from periodic lattices and will be considered in this chapter.

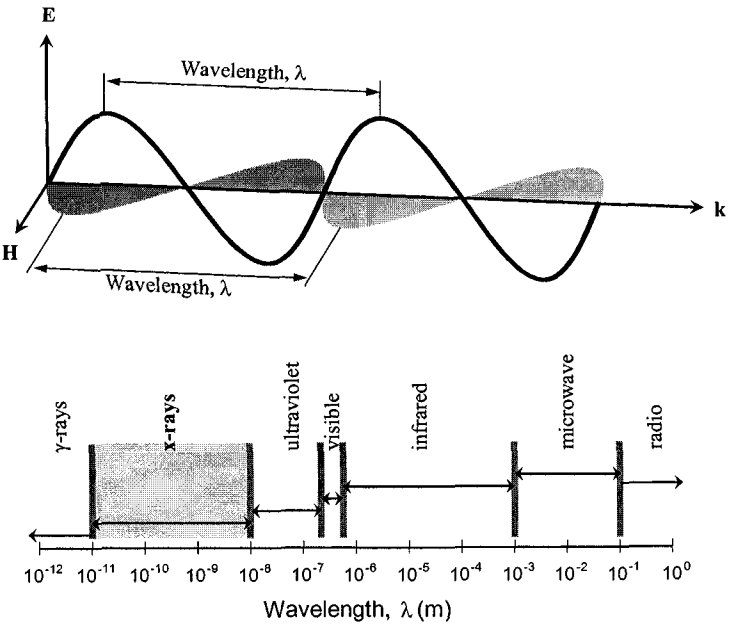


Figure 2.2. Top – the schematic of the transverse electromagnetic wave in which electric (**E**) and magnetic (**H**) vectors are mutually perpendicular, and both are perpendicular to the direction of the propagation vector of the wave, **k**. The wavelength, λ, is the distance between the two neighboring wave crests. Bottom – the spectrum of the electromagnetic waves. The range of typical x-ray wavelengths is shaded. The boundaries between different types of electromagnetic waves are diffuse.

Generally, the interaction of x-rays (or any other type of radiation with the proper wavelength) with a crystal is multifaceted and complex, and there are two different levels of approximation – kinematical and dynamical theories of diffraction. In the *kinematical diffraction*, a beam scattered once is not allowed to be scattered for the second, third and so on times. Thus, the kinematical theory of diffraction is based on the assumption that the interaction of the diffracted beam with the crystal is negligibly small. This requires the following postulations: i) a crystal consists of individual mosaic blocks – crystallites[1] – which are slightly misaligned with respect to one another; ii) the size of the crystallites is small, and iii) the misalignment of the crystallites is large enough, so that the interaction of x-rays with matter at the length scale exceeding the size of mosaic blocks is negligible.

On the contrary, the theory of the *dynamical diffraction* accounts for scattering of the diffracted beam and other interactions of waves inside the

[1] Crystallite usually means a tiny single crystal (microcrystal). Each particle in a polycrystalline material usually consists of multiple crystallites that join together in different orientations. A small powder particle can be a single crystallite as well.

crystal, and thus the mathematical apparatus of the theory is quite complex. Dynamical effects become significant and the use of the theory of dynamical diffraction is justified only when the crystals are nearly perfect or when there is an exceptionally strong interaction of the radiation with the material. In the majority of crystalline materials, however, dynamical effects are small and they are usually noticeable only when precise single crystal experiments are conducted. Even then, numerous dynamical effects (e.g. primary and/or secondary extinction, simultaneous diffraction, thermal diffuse scattering, and others) are usually applied as corrections to the kinematical diffraction model.

The kinematical approach is simple, and adequately and accurately describes the diffraction of x-rays from mosaic crystals. This is especially true for polycrystalline materials where the size of crystallites is relatively small. Hence, the kinematical theory of diffraction is used in this chapter and throughout this book.

2.2.2 Production of x-rays

The x-rays are usually generated using two different methods or sources. The first is a device, which is called an x-ray tube, where electromagnetic waves are generated from impacts of high-energy electrons with a metal target. These are the simplest and the most commonly used sources of x-rays that are available in a laboratory of any size, and thus, an x-ray tube is known as a laboratory or a conventional x-ray source. Conventional x-ray sources usually have low efficiency and their brightness[1] is fundamentally limited by the thermal properties of the target material. The latter must be continuously cooled because nearly all kinetic energy of the accelerated electrons is converted into heat when they decelerate rapidly (and sometimes instantly) during the impacts with a metal target.

The second is a much more advanced source of x-ray radiation – the synchrotron, where high energy electrons are confined in a storage ring. When they move in a circular orbit, electrons accelerate towards the center of the ring, thus emitting electromagnetic radiation. The synchrotron sources are extremely bright (or brilliant[2]) since thermal losses are minimized and

[1] Brightness is measured as photon flux – a number of photons per second per unit area – where the area is expressed in terms of the corresponding solid angle in the divergent beam. Brightness is different from intensity of the beam, which is the total number of photons leaving the target, because intensity can be easily increased by increasing the area of the target irradiated by electrons without increasing brightness.

[2] The quality of synchrotron beams is usually characterized by brilliance, which is defined as brightness divided by the product of the source area (in mm^2) and a fraction of a useful photon energy, i.e. bandwidth [see, for example, J. Als-Nielsen and D. McMorrow, Elements of modern x-ray physics, John Wiley & Sons, New York (2001)].

there is no target to cool. Their brightness is only limited by the flux of electrons in the high energy beam. Today, the so-called third generation of synchrotrons is in operation and their brilliance exceeds that of the conventional x-ray tube by nearly ten orders of magnitude.

Obviously, given the cost of both the construction and maintenance of a synchrotron source, owning one would be prohibitively expensive and inefficient for an average crystallographic laboratory. All synchrotron sources are multiple user facilities, which are constructed and maintained using governmental support (e.g. they are supported by the United States Department of Energy in the US and by similar agencies in Europe and Japan), which is fully justified by the unique structural information that can be obtained using brilliant, variable energy x-ray beams.

In general, there is no principal difference in the diffraction phenomena using the synchrotron and conventional x-ray sources, except for the presence of several highly intense peaks with fixed wavelengths in the conventionally obtained x-ray spectrum and their absence, i.e. the continuous distribution of photon energies when using synchrotron sources. Here and throughout the book, the x-rays from conventional sources are of concern unless noted otherwise.

2.2.3 Conventional sealed x-ray sources

As noted above, the x-ray tube is a conventional laboratory source of x-rays. The two types of x-ray tubes in common use today are the sealed tube and the rotating anode tube. The sealed tube consists of a stationary anode coupled with a cathode, and both are placed inside a metal/glass or a metal/ceramic container sealed under high vacuum as shown in *Figure 2.3*.

The x-ray tube assembly is a simple and maintenance-free device. However, the overall efficiency of an x-ray tube is very low – approximately 1% or less. Most of the energy supplied to the tube is converted into heat, and therefore, the anode must be continuously cooled with chilled water to avoid target meltdown. The input power to the sealed x-ray tube (~0.5 to 3 kW) is therefore, limited by the tube's ability to dissipate heat, but the resultant energy of the usable x-ray beam is much lower than 1% of the input power because only a small fraction of the generated photons exits through each window. Additional losses occur during the monochromatization and collimation of the beam (see section 2.3).

In the x-ray tube, electrons are emitted by the cathode, usually electrically heated tungsten filament, and they are accelerated towards the anode by a high electrostatic potential (30 to 60 kV) maintained between the cathode and the anode. The typical current in a sealed tube is between 10 and 50 mA. The x-rays are generated by the impacts of high-energy electrons

with the metal target of a water-cooled anode, and they exit the tube through beryllium (Be) windows, as shown in *Figure 2.3* and *Figure 2.4*.

A standard sealed tube has four Be windows located 90° apart around the circumference of the cylindrical body. One pair of the opposite windows corresponds to a point-focused beam, which is mostly used in single crystal diffraction, while the second pair of windows results in a line-focused beam, which is normally used in powder diffraction applications, see *Figure 2.4*.

Given the geometry of the x-ray tube, the intensities of both the point- and line-focused beams are nearly identical, but their brightness is different: the point focus is brighter than the linear one. The use of the linear focus in powder diffraction is justified by the need to maintain as many particles in the irradiated volume of the specimen as possible. The line of focus (i.e. the projection of the cathode visible through beryllium windows) is typically 0.1 to 0.2 mm wide[1] and 8 to 12 mm long. Similarly, point focus is employed in single crystal diffraction because a typical size of the specimen is small (0.1 to 1 mm). Thus, high brightness of a point-focused beam enables one to achieve high scattered intensity in a single crystal diffraction experiment.

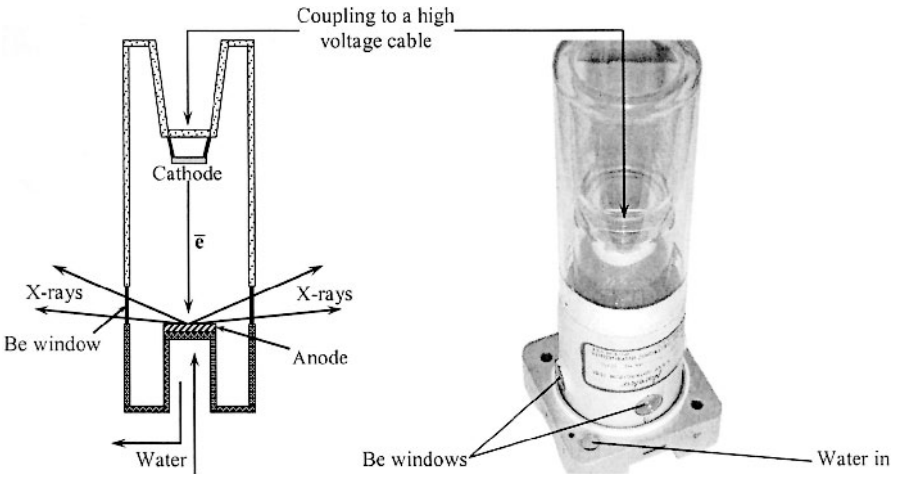


Figure 2.3. The schematic (left) and the photograph (right) of the sealed x-ray tube. The bottom part of the tube is metallic and it contains the anode (high purity copper, which may be coated with a layer of a different metal, e.g. Cr, Fe, Mo, etc., to produce a target other than copper), the windows (beryllium foil), and the cooling system. The top part of the tube contains the cathode (tungsten filament) and it is manufactured from glass or ceramics, welded shut to the metal canister in order to maintain high vacuum inside the tube. The view of two windows (a total of four) and the "Water out" outlet is obscured by the body of the tube (right). High voltage is supplied by a cable through a coupling located in the glass (or ceramic) part of the tube. Both the metallic can and the anode are grounded.

[1] The projection of the cathode on the anode surface is wider, 1 to 2 mm, see *Figure 2.9*.

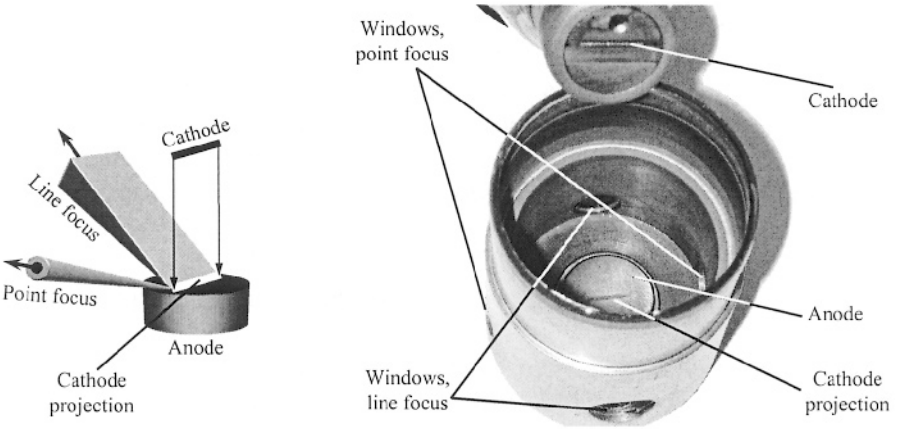


Figure 2.4. The schematic explaining the appearance of two different geometries of the x-ray focus in a conventional sealed x-ray tube (left) and the disassembled tube (right). The photo on the right shows the metallic can with four beryllium windows, two of which correspond to line- and two to point-foci. The surface of the anode with the cathode projection is seen inside the can (bottom, right). What appears as a scratch on the surface of the anode is the damage from the high intensity electron beam and a thin layer deposit of the cathode material (W), which occurred during the lifetime of the tube. The cathode assembly is shown on top, right.

2.2.4 Continuous and characteristic x-ray spectra

The x-ray spectrum, generated in a typical x-ray tube, is shown schematically in *Figure 2.5*. It consists of several intense peaks, the so-called characteristic spectral lines, superimposed over a continuous background, known as the white radiation. The continuous part of the spectrum is generated by electrons decelerating rapidly and unpredictably – some instantaneously, other gradually – and the distribution of the wavelengths depends on the accelerating voltage but not on the nature of the anode material. White radiation, also known as *bremsstrahlung* (German for "braking radiation"), is generally highly undesirable in x-ray diffraction analysis applications.[1]

While it is difficult to establish the exact distribution of the wavelengths in the white spectrum analytically, it is possible to establish the shortest wavelength that will appear in the continuous spectrum as a function of the accelerating voltage. Photons with the highest energy (i.e. rays with the shortest wavelength) will be emitted by the electrons, which are stopped instantaneously by the target. In this case, the electron may transfer all of its kinetic energy

[1] One exception is the so-called Laue technique, in which white radiation is employed to produce diffraction patterns from stationary single crystals.

$$\frac{mv^2}{2} = eV \tag{2.2}$$

to a photon with the energy

$$h\nu = \frac{hc}{\lambda} \tag{2.3}$$

where m is the rest mass, v is the velocity and e is the charge of the electron (1.602×10^{-19} coulomb), V is the accelerating voltage, c is the speed of light in vacuum (2.998×10^{8} m/s), h is Planck's constant (6.626×10^{-34} J·s), ν is the frequency and λ is the wavelength of the wave associated with the energy of the photon.

After combining the right hand parts of Eqs. 2.2 and 2.3 and solving with respect to λ, it is easy to obtain the equation relating the shortest possible wavelength (λ_{SW} in Å) and the accelerating voltage (in V).

$$\lambda_{SW} = \frac{1.240\times10^{4}}{V}\ \text{Å} \tag{2.4}$$

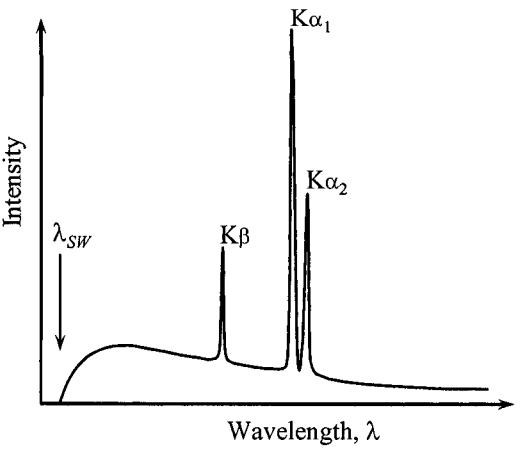


Figure 2.5. The schematic of a typical x-ray emission spectrum, for clarity indicating only the presence of continuous background and three characteristic wavelengths: $K\alpha_1$, $K\alpha_2$, and $K\beta$, which have high intensities. The relative intensities of the three characteristic spectral lines are approximately to scale, however, the intensity of the continuous spectrum and the separation of the $K\alpha_1/K\alpha_2$ doublet are exaggerated. Fine structure of the $K\beta$ spectral line is not shown for clarity. The vertical arrow indicates the shortest possible wavelength of white radiation, λ_{SW}, as determined by Eq. 2.4.

The three characteristic lines are quite intense and they result from the transitions of upper level electrons in the atom core to vacant lower energy levels, from which an electron was ejected by the impact with an electron accelerated in the x-ray tube. The energy differences between various energy levels in an atom are element-specific and therefore, each chemical element emits x-rays with a constant, i.e. characteristic, distribution of wavelengths that appear due to excitations of core electrons by high energy electrons bombarding the target, see *Table 2.1.* Obviously, before core electrons can be excited from their lower energy levels, the bombarding electrons must have energy, which is equal to or exceeds that of the energy difference between the two nearest lying levels of the target material.

Table 2.1. Characteristic wavelengths of five common anode materials and the K absorption edges of suitable β-filter materials.[1]

Metal	Wavelength (Å)				β	K- absorption
	Kα[a]	$K\alpha_1$	$K\alpha_2$	Kβ	filter	edge, (Å)
Cr	2.29105	2.28975(3)	2.293652(2)	2.08491(3)	V	2.26921(2)
Fe	1.93739	1.93608(1)	1.94002(1)	1.75664(3)	Mn	1.896459(6)
Co	1.79030	1.78900(1)	1.79289(1)	1.62082(3)	Fe	1.743617(5)
Cu	1.54187	1.5405929(5)	1.54441(2)	1.39225(1)	Ni	1.488140(4)
Mo	0.71075	0.7093171(4)	0.71361(1)	0.63230(1)	Nb	0.653134(1)
					Zr	0.688959(3)

[a] The weighted average value, calculated as $\lambda_{average} = (2\lambda_{K\alpha_1}+\lambda_{K\alpha_2})/3$.

The transitions from L and M shells to the K shell, i.e. L → K and M→ K are designated as Kα and Kβ radiation,[2] respectively. Here K corresponds to the shell with principal quantum number n = 1, L to n = 2 and M to n = 3. The Kα component consists of two characteristic wavelengths designated as $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$, which correspond to $2p_{1/2} \rightarrow 1s_{1/2}$ and $2p_{3/2} \rightarrow 1s_{1/2}$ transitions, respectively, where *s* and *p* refer to the corresponding orbitals. The subscripts 1/2 and 3/2 are equal to the total angular momentum quantum number, j.[3] The Kβ component also consists of several spectral lines, the

[1] The wavelengths are taken from the International Tables for Crystallography, vol. C, Second edition, A.J.C. Wilson and E. Prince, Eds., Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston/ Dordrecht/London (1999). For details on absorption and filtering, see section 2.3.2.1.

[2] According to IUPAC [R. Jenkins, R. Manne, J. Robin, C. Cenemaud, Nomenclature, symbols, units and their usage in spectrochemical analysis. VIII Nomenclature system for x-ray energy and polarization, Pure Appl. Chem. **63**, 735 (1991)] the old notations, e.g. Cu $K\alpha_1$ and Cu Kβ should be substituted by the initial and final levels separated by a hyphen, e.g. Cu K-L_3 and Cu K-M_3, respectively. However, since the old notations remain in common use, they will be retained throughout this book.

[3] $j = \ell \pm s$ when $\ell > 0$ and $j = 1/2$ when $\ell = 0$, where ℓ is the orbital, and s is the spin quantum numbers. Since ℓ adopts values 0, 1, 2, ..., n-1, which correspond to *s*, *p*, *d*, ... orbitals and $s = \pm 1/2$, j is equal to 1/2 for *s* orbitals, 1/2 or 3/2 for *p* orbitals, and so on.

strongest being $K\beta_1$ and $K\beta_3$, which are so close to one another that they are practically indistinguishable in the x-ray spectra of many anode materials. There are more characteristic lines in the emission spectrum (e.g. $L\alpha$-γ and $M\alpha$-ξ), however, their intensities are substantially lower and their wavelengths are greater that those of $K\alpha$ and $K\beta$. Therefore, they are not used in x-ray diffraction analysis and will not be considered here.[1]

In addition to their wavelengths, the strongest characteristic spectral lines have different intensities: the intensity of $K\alpha_1$ exceeds that of $K\alpha_2$ by a factor of two, and the intensity of $K\alpha_1$ is approximately five times that of the intensity of the strongest $K\beta$ line, although the latter ratio varies considerably with the atomic number. Spectral purity, i.e. the availability of a single intense wavelength, is critical in most diffraction applications and therefore, various monochromatization methods are used to eliminate multiple wavelengths (and hence multiple Bragg peaks from the identical sets of crystallographic planes), which is discussed in section 2.3. Although the continuous x-ray emission spectrum does not result in distinct diffraction peaks from polycrystals, its presence increases the adverse background noise and therefore, white radiation should be minimized.

Typical anode materials that are used in x-ray tubes (*Table 2.1*) produce characteristic wavelengths between ~0.5 and ~2.3 Å. However, only two of them are in the most common use. These are Cu in powder and Mo in single-crystal diffractometry. Other anode materials can be used in special applications, for example Ag anode ($\lambda\ K\alpha_1$ = 0.5594218 Å) can be used to increase the resolution of the atomic structure since using shorter wavelength broadens the range of $\sin\theta/\lambda$ in which diffraction peaks can be measured. Bragg peaks, however, are observed closer to each other and the resolution of the diffraction pattern may deteriorate. On the other hand, Cr, Fe or Co anodes may be used instead of a Cu anode in powder diffraction (or Cu anode instead of Mo anode in single crystal diffractometry) to increase the resolution of the diffraction pattern (Bragg peaks are observed further apart) but the resolution of the atomic structure decreases.

2.2.5 Rotating anode x-ray sources

The low thermal efficiency of the sealed x-ray tube can be substantially improved by using a rotating anode x-ray source,[2] which is shown in *Figure*

[1] Except for one experimental artifact shown later in *Figure 2.18*, where two components present in the $L\alpha$ characteristic spectrum of W (filament material contaminating Cu anode of a relatively old x-ray tube) are clearly recognizable in the diffraction pattern collected from the oriented single crystalline silicon wafer.

[2] For more details on rotating anode x-ray sources see W.C. Phillips, X-ray sources, Methods Enzymol. **114**, 300 (1985) and references therein.

2.6. In this design, a massive disk-shaped anode is continuously rotated at a high speed while being cooled by a stream of chilled water. Both factors, i.e. the anode mass (and therefore, the total area bombarded by high energy electrons) and anode rotation, which constantly brings chilled metal into the impact zone, enable a routine increase of the x-ray tube input power to ~15 – 18 kW and in some reported instances to 50 – 60 kW, i.e. up to 20 times greater when compared to a standard sealed x-ray tube.

The resultant brightness of the x-ray beam increases proportionally to the input power, however, the lifetime of seals and bearings that operate in high vacuum may be limited in some designs.[1] The considerable improvement in the incident beam brightness yields much better diffraction patterns, especially when diffraction data are collected in conditions other than the ambient air (e.g. high or low temperature, high pressure and other), which require additional shielding and windows for the x-rays to pass through, thus resulting in added intensity losses.

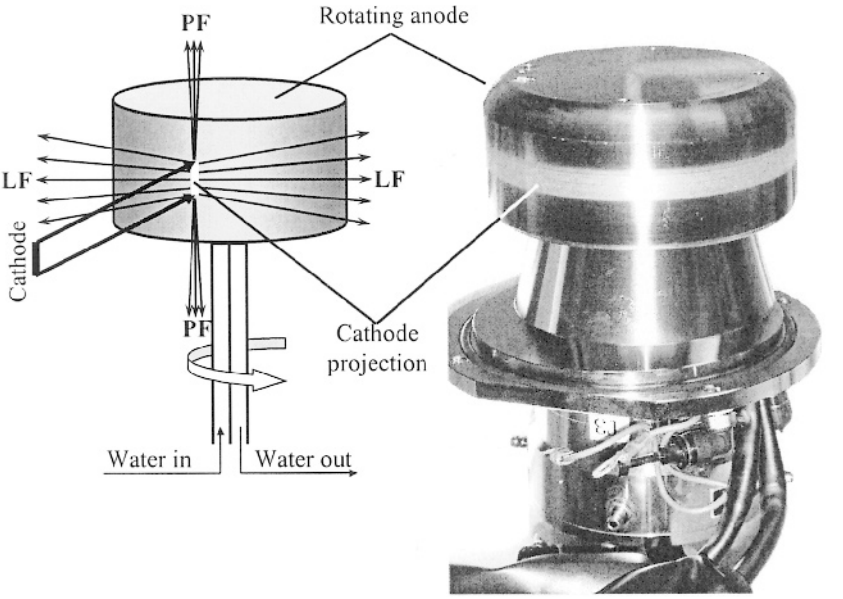


Figure 2.6. The schematic (left) and the photograph (right) of the direct drive rotating anode assembly. **PF** is point focus and **LF** is line focus. The trace seen on the anode surface on the right is surface damage caused by high-energy electrons bombarding the target and a thin layer deposit of the filament material (W), which occurred during anode operation. (Photograph courtesy of Rigaku/MSC.)

[1] In the laboratory of one of the authors (VKP) the direct drive rotating anode source manufactured by Rigaku/MSC has been in continuous operation (the anode is spinning and the x-rays are on 24 hours per day, 7 days per week) for 18 months at the time of writing this book and it is still operating without a breakdown.

2.2.6 Synchrotron radiation sources

Synchrotron radiation sources were developed and successfully brought on line beginning in 1960's. They are the most powerful x-ray radiation sources today. Both the brilliance of the beam and the coherence of the generated electromagnetic waves are exceptionally high. The synchrotron output power exceeds that of the conventional x-ray tube by many orders of magnitude. Tremendous energies are stored in synchrotron rings (*Figure 2.7*), where beams of accelerated electrons or positrons are moving in a circular orbit, controlled by a magnetic field, at relativistic velocities.

Electromagnetic radiation ranging from radiofrequency to short-wavelength x-ray region (*Figure 2.8*) is produced due to the acceleration of charged particles towards the center of the ring. The x-ray beam is emitted in the direction, tangential to the electron/positron orbit (*Figure 2.7*).

Since there is no target to cool, the brilliance of the x-ray beam that can be achieved in synchrotrons is four (first generation synchrotrons) to twelve (third generation synchrotrons) orders of magnitude higher than that from a conventional x-ray source. Furthermore, given the size of the storage ring (hundreds of meters in diameter), the average synchrotron beam consists of weakly divergent beams that may be considered nearly parallel at distances typically used in powder diffraction (generally less than 1 m). This feature presents an additional advantage in powder diffraction applications since the instrumental resolution is also increased.

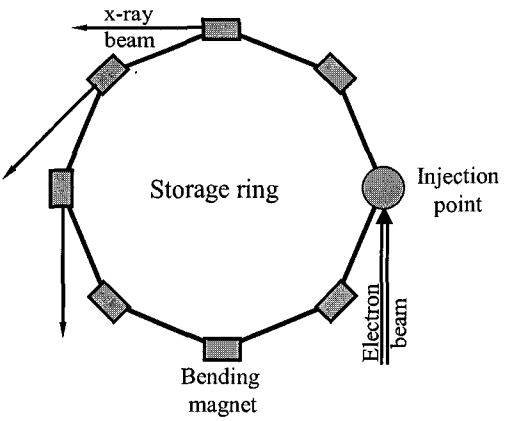


Figure 2.7. Schematic diagram of a synchrotron illustrating x-ray radiation output from bending magnets. Electrons must be periodically injected into the ring to replenish losses that occur during normal operation. Unlike in conventional x-ray sources, where both the long- and short-term stability of the incident photon beam are controlled by the stability of the power supply, the x-ray photon flux in a synchrotron changes with time: it decreases gradually due to electron losses, and then periodically and sharply increases when electrons are injected into the ring.

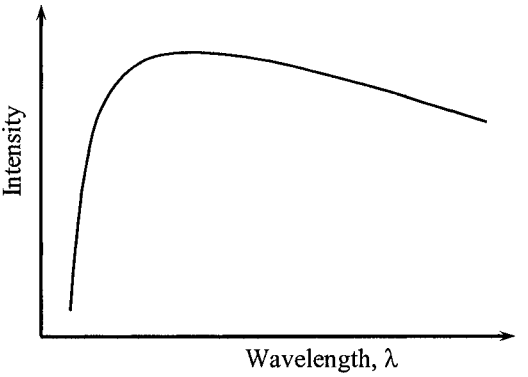


Figure 2.8. The schematic of a typical x-ray spectrum from a synchrotron.

Another important advantage of the synchrotron radiation sources, in addition to extremely high brilliance of the x-ray beam, is in the distribution of the beam intensity as a function of wavelength (*Figure 2.8*). The high intensity, observed in a broad range of photon energies, allows for easy selection of nearly any desired wavelength. Furthermore, the wavelength may be changed when needed and energy dispersive experiments, during which the diffraction angle remains constant but the wavelength varies, can be conducted quite effectively.

Thus, synchrotron radiation finds more and more use today, although its availability is restricted to the existing synchrotron sites. Some of the well-known sites are the ALS – Advanced Light Source at Berkeley Lab, APS – Advanced Photon Source at Argonne National Laboratory, NSLS – National Synchrotron Light Source at Brookhaven National Laboratory, SRS – Synchrotron Radiation Source at Daresbury Laboratory, ESRF – European Synchrotron Radiation Facility in Grenoble, and others.[1]

2.2.7 Other types of radiation

Other types of radiation that are commonly used in diffraction analysis are neutrons and electrons. The properties of both are compared with those of x-rays in *Table 2.2*.

Neutrons are usually produced in nuclear reactors; they have variable energy and therefore, a white spectrum. Maximum flux of neutrons is usually obtained in an angstrom range of wavelengths. The main differences when compared to x-rays are as follows: i) neutrons are scattered by nuclei, which are much smaller than electron clouds, and the scattering occurs on

[1] Web links to worldwide synchrotron and neutron facilities can be found at http://www.iucr.org/cww-top/rad.index.html.

points; ii) scattering factors of elements remain constant over the whole range of Bragg angles; iii) scattering functions are not proportional to the atomic number and they are different for different isotopes of the same chemical element. Furthermore, since neutrons have spins, they interact with the unpaired electron spins (magnetic moments) and thus neutron diffraction data are commonly used to determine ordered magnetic structures. Other differences between neutrons and x-rays are nonessential in general diffraction theory.

Table 2.2. Comparison of three types of radiation used in powder diffraction.

	X-rays (conv./synch.)	Neutrons	Electrons
Nature	wave	particle	particle
Medium	atmosphere	atmosphere	high vacuum
Scattering by	electron density	nuclei and magnetic spins of electrons	electrostatic potential
Scattering function	$f(s) \propto Z$ [a]	f is constant at all s	$f(s) \propto Z^{1/3}$, [b]
Wavelength range, λ	0.5–2.5/0.1-10 Å	~1 Å	0.02–0.05 Å
Wavelength selection	fixed,[c] Kα,β/variable	variable [c]	variable [c]
Focusing	none		magnetic lenses
Lattice image	reciprocal		direct, reciprocal
Direct structure image	no		yes
Applicable theory of diffraction	kinematical		dynamical
Use to determine atomic structure	relatively simple		very complex

[a] s – $\sin\theta/\lambda$, Z – atomic number, f – atomic scattering function.

[b] If unknown, electron scattering factor $f_e(s)$ may be derived from x-ray scattering factor $f_x(s)$ as $f_e(s) = k[Z - f_x(s)]/s^2$, where k is constant.[1]

[c] According to Moseley's law, x-ray characteristic frequency is $\nu = c/\lambda = C\,(Z - \sigma)^2$, while for neutrons and electrons $\lambda = h/mv = h\,(2mE)^{-1/2}$, where C and σ are constants, m is mass, v is velocity, and E is kinetic energy of a particle.

One of the biggest disadvantages of the conventional (reactor-generated) neutron sources is relatively low neutron fluxes at useful energies. This problem is addressed in the new generation of highly intense pulsed (spallation) neutron sources.[2] In a spallation neutron source, bunches of protons are accelerated to high energies, and then released bombarding a heavy metal target in short but extremely potent pulses. The collision of each proton with a heavy metal nucleus results in many expelled (spalled or

[1] Electron diffraction techniques, Vol. 1, J. M. Cowley, Ed., Oxford University Press, NY (1992).

[2] One of the brightest operational pulsed neutron sources (ISIS) is located in the UK (http://www.isis.rl.ac.uk/). In the US, the construction of the spallation source at the Oak Ridge National Laboratory (http://www.sns.gov/) is scheduled for completion in 2006.

knocked out) neutrons at various energies. The resultant highly intense (~10^2 times higher flux than in any conventional reactor) neutron beams have a nearly continuous energy spectrum and they can be used in a variety of diffraction studies, mostly in the so-called time-of-flight (TOF) experiments. In the latter, the energy (and the wavelength) of the neutron that reaches the detector is calculated from the time it takes for a neutron to fly from the source to the specimen and from the specimen to the detector.

In addition to the direct imaging of crystal lattices (e.g. in a high-resolution transmission electron microscope), electrons may be used in diffraction analysis. Despite the ease of the production of electrons by heating a filament in vacuum, electron diffraction is not as broadly used as x-ray diffraction. First, the experiments should be conducted in high vacuum, which is inconvenient and may result in the decomposition of some materials. Second, electrons strongly interact with materials. The latter requires the use of the dynamical theory of diffraction, thus making structure determination and refinement quite complex. Finally, the complexity and the cost of a high-resolution electron microscope usually considerably exceed those of a high-resolution powder diffractometer.

Neutron diffraction examples will be discussed when deemed necessary, even though in this book we have no intent to cover diffraction of neutrons (and electrons) at any significant depth. Interested readers can find more information on electron and neutron diffraction in some of the references provided at the end of this chapter.

2.3 Collimation and monochromatization

Both the polychromatic nature and the angular divergence of the primary x-ray beam generated using either a sealed or rotating anode x-ray tube (see *Figure 2.3* to *Figure 2.6*) result in complex diffraction patterns when x-rays are employed in the "as produced" condition. This occurs since i) – white radiation causes a high background; ii) – the presence of the three intense characteristic lines ($K\alpha_1$, $K\alpha_2$ and $K\beta$) in the spectrum results in three Bragg peaks from each set of crystallographic planes (i.e. from each point in the reciprocal space), and iii) – the angular divergence in all directions yields broad and asymmetric Bragg peaks. Thus, the incident x-ray beam needs to be modified (conditioned) in order to improve the quality of the powder diffraction pattern.

Angular divergence (dispersion) can be reduced by collimation – the process of selecting electromagnetic waves with parallel or nearly parallel propagation vectors. The undesirable satellite wavelengths can be removed by various monochromatization approaches – the processes that convert polychromatic radiation into a single wavelength ($K\alpha_1$ or $K\beta$ in conventional

x-ray sources, or narrow bandwidth using a synchrotron source) or at least into a double wavelength ($K\alpha_1$ plus $K\alpha_2$) beam. The $K\alpha_1$ plus $K\alpha_2$ doublet wavelength is, by and large, the only acceptable combination of polychromatic x-rays that is in common use today.

The main problem in both collimation and monochromatization is not in how to reduce both the angular and wavelength (energy) dispersions but how to do so with the minimal loss of intensity (photon flux) of both the incident and diffracted beams. Needless to say, different diffraction methods require a different degree of collimation and monochromatization. Thus, high resolution or low-angle scattering applications usually require parallel and narrow beams containing a single wavelength, while routinely used powder diffractometers have less strict requirements. For example, the commonly used Bragg-Brentano focusing technique[1] was specifically developed to work well with slightly divergent incident beams and this focusing method will not produce the best results when coupled with a perfectly parallel incident beam.

2.3.1 Angular divergence and collimation

The simplest collimation can be achieved by placing a slit between the x-ray source and the sample, as shown in *Figure 2.9*, top left. The angular divergence of thus collimated beam is established by the dimensions of the source, the size, and the placement of the slit. This slit is usually called the divergence slit and in the majority of powder diffractometers, the placement of the divergence slit is fixed at a certain distance from the x-ray tube focus.

Considering the geometry shown in *Figure 2.9* and assuming that the distance between the slit and the tube focus is much larger than the slit opening, the angular divergence of the collimated beam, i.e. the angle α is given as

$$\alpha(^\circ) \cong \frac{180}{\pi}\frac{D+S}{L} \tag{2.5}$$

where D is the divergence slit opening in mm, S is the width of the focus of the x-ray tube (in mm) visible at a take-off angle ψ, and L is the distance between the tube focus and the slit in mm. Since S and L are usually fixed, the variable beam divergence is customarily achieved by varying the slit opening, D. A second divergence slit can be placed further on the way of the beam to provide additional collimation as shown in *Figure 2.9*, top right.

[1] The so-called Bragg-Brentano focusing geometry is the most commonly used technique in modern powder diffractometry. It is briefly discussed later in this chapter and in greater depth in the next chapter.

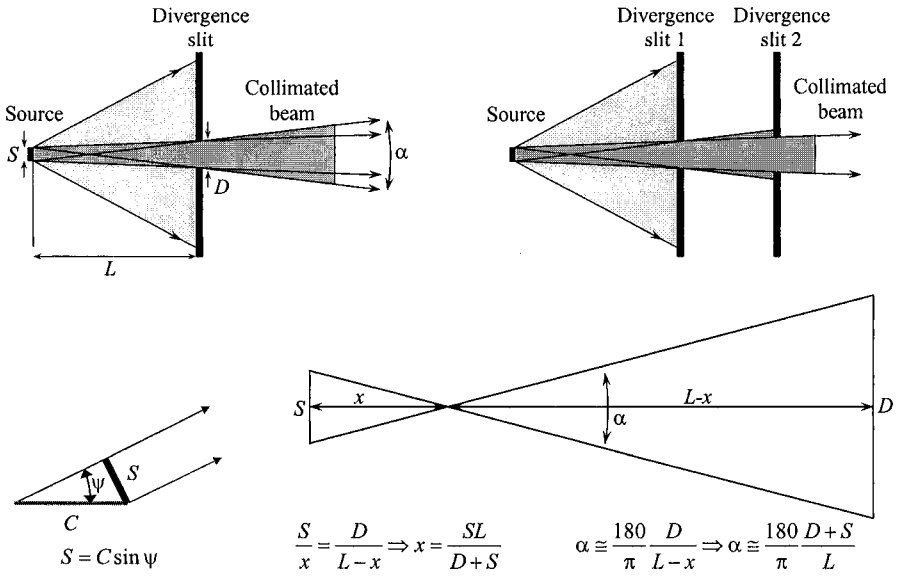


Figure 2.9. The schematic showing collimation of the incident x-ray beam by using a single divergence slit (top, left) or coupled divergence slits (top, right). The schematic on the bottom left illustrates the size of the source (S) when the projection of the cathode (C) is viewed at a take-off angle, ψ.[1] Equation 2.5 is derived on the bottom, right.

Both collimation methods shown in *Figure 2.9* are commonly used in powder diffractometers that are employed for routine powder diffraction experiments. High resolution and low-angle scattering diffractometers require better and therefore, more complex collimation, which to some extent overlaps with the monochromatization described below, but otherwise will not be considered in this book.[2]

Divergence slits reduce angular dispersion of the incident x-ray beam in the plane perpendicular to the goniometer axis, in other words they are used to control the so-called in-plane divergence, which is further discussed in Chapter 3. Angular divergence in the direction parallel to the goniometer axis is known as the axial divergence and it is controlled by using the so-called Soller slits. Soller slits are usually manufactured from a set of parallel, equally spaced thin metal plates as shown in *Figure 2.10*, top.

Each pair of the neighboring plates works similar to a regular divergence slit. The major differences in the design of Soller slits, when compared to

[1] For a line focus, a typical width of the cathode projection C = 1 mm; a typical take-off angle $\psi = 6^{\circ}$. Hence, a typical size of the source in powder diffraction is $S \cong 0.1$ mm.

[2] Advanced collimation and monochromatization techniques are described in: D.K. Bowen and B.K. Tanner, High resolution x-ray diffractometry and topography, Taylor & Francis, London/Bristol, PA (1998).

divergence slits, is in the requirement to minimally affect the in-plane size of the beam, regardless of the distance between the plates. This is done to maximize the intensity of the incident beam and thus, to maintain the high quality of powder diffraction patterns. Soller slits, installed on both the primary and diffracted beam paths, substantially reduce axial divergence of the x-ray beam and asymmetry (see section 2.9.2) of Bragg peaks. The axial divergence of the beam collimated by Soller slits can be estimated in the same way as for a single divergence slit:

$$\alpha(^\circ) \cong \frac{180}{\pi}\frac{2d}{l} \tag{2.6}$$

where d is the distance between the parallel plates in mm and l is the plate length (also in mm) as shown at the bottom of *Figure 2.10*. Thus, the axial divergence can be reduced or increased by varying either or both the length of the plates (l) and the distance between them (d).

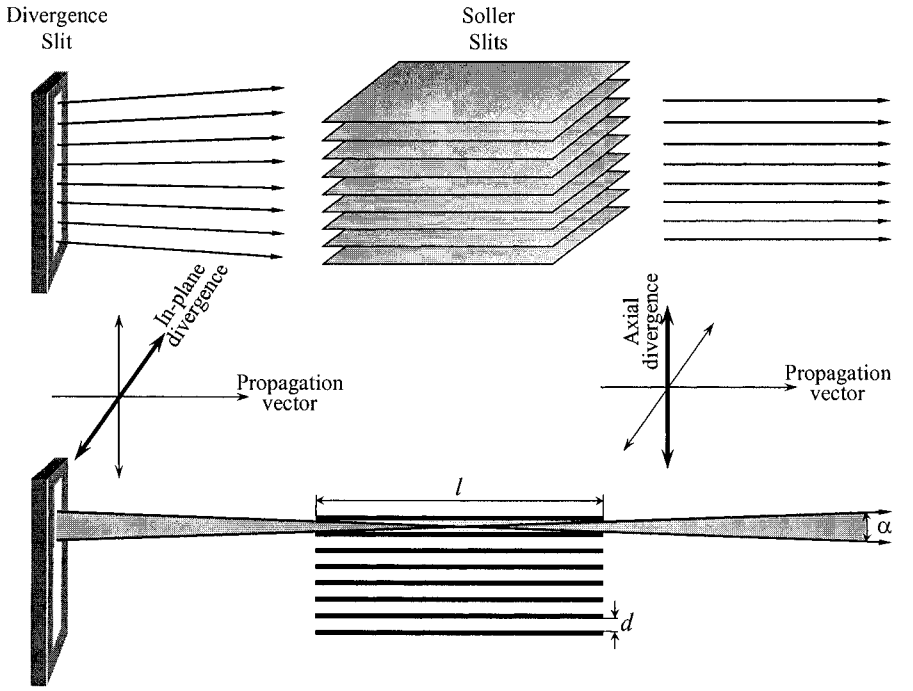


Figure 2.10. The schematic showing how the x-ray beam is collimated by using both the divergence and Soller slits (top). The beam, collimated in-plane by the divergence slit, is further collimated axially by the Soller slits. The coordinates in the middle of the drawing indicate the corresponding directions. The bottom part of the figure illustrates the analogy of Eq. 2.6 with Eq. 2.5.

2.3.2 Monochromatization

In addition to collimation, the x-ray beam should be monochromatized by reducing the intensity of white radiation and by eliminating the undesirable characteristic wavelengths from the x-ray spectrum, leaving only a single usable wavelength. As noted above, when conventional x-ray sources are employed, the two-wavelengths beams ($K\alpha_1$ plus $K\alpha_2$) are acceptable because the complete removal of the $K\alpha_2$ component substantially reduces the intensity of the incident beam and therefore, increases the time of the experiment needed to obtain high quality x-ray diffraction data. When synchrotron sources are used, the monochromatization process selects a single wavelength from a continuous x-ray spectrum. The most common methods utilized in the instrumental monochromatization of x-ray beams are as follows:

- Using a β-filter (conventional x-ray sources only).
- Using diffraction from a crystal monochromator (any source, including neutrons).
- Pulse height selection using a proportional counter (x-rays).
- Energy resolution using a solid-state detector (x-rays).

2.3.2.1 Absorption of x-rays and β-filters

The simplest monochromatization of x-rays produced in a conventional source can be performed by means of filtering, which takes advantage of the peculiar variation of the x-ray absorption properties of chemical elements. When x-rays penetrate into the matter, they are partially transmitted and partially absorbed. Thus, when an x-ray beam travels the infinitesimal distance, *dx*, its intensity is reduced by the infinitesimal fraction *dI/I* (*Figure 2.11*, left), which can be defined using the following differential equation

$$\frac{dI}{I} = -\mu dx \tag{2.7}$$

where μ is the proportionality coefficient expressed in the units of the inverse distance, usually in cm^{-1}. This coefficient is also known as the linear absorption coefficient of a material.

After integrating Eq. 2.7, the transmitted intensity (I_t) is easily calculated in terms of a fraction of the initial intensity of the beam (I_0):

$$I_t = I_0 \exp(-\mu x) \tag{2.8}$$

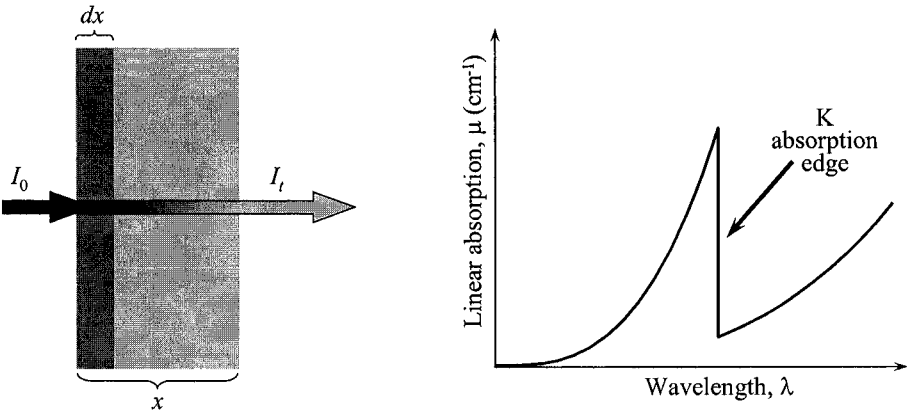


Figure 2.11. The schematic explaining the phenomenon of absorption of x-rays by the matter (left) and the typical behavior of the linear absorption coefficient of any chemical element as a function of the wavelength of the x-rays (right). The gradual reduction of the transmitted intensity (left) is represented by the gradual change of the shade of grey of the arrow indicating the x-ray beam.

The linear absorption coefficient of any chemical element is a function of the wavelength, and a typical $\mu(\lambda)$ dependence is shown in *Figure 2.11*, right. In the range of wavelengths, which is of interest to filtering applications, the $\mu(\lambda)$ function consists of two continuous branches separated by an abrupt change in the absorption properties at a certain photon energy. The point, at which the discontinuity of the absorption coefficient occurs, is called the K absorption edge, and the linear absorption coefficient (μ) changes its value by a factor of 6 to 8.

The continuous change of the liner absorption along each of the two branches is approximately defined as $\mu = kZ^3\lambda^3$, where Z is the atomic number of the chemical element and k is a constant, specific for each of the two continuous parts of the absorption function. The continuous branches correspond to the absorption occurring due to random scattering of photons by electrons, which is observed in all directions, thus reducing the number of photons in the transmitted beam in the direction of the propagation vector.

The appearance of the discontinuity (i.e. the presence of the K absorption edge) is known as the true absorption and it can be understood by considering Eq. 2.3. As the wavelength decreases, the energy of the x-ray photons increases and at a certain λ it becomes sufficient to excite K electrons.[1] This not only causes a rapid increase in the number of the absorbed photons but also results in the transitions of upper level electrons to

[1] At higher wavelengths (lower energies), L- and M-absorption edges also appear due to L- and M-electrons being excited from their ground states.

vacant K levels in the atoms of the absorber – a photoelectric effect, during which a fluorescent x-ray photon can be emitted in any direction. Both scattered and true absorption result in the exponential reduction of the transmitted intensity, as defined by Eq. 2.8.

The monochromatization using a β-filter employs the presence of the K absorption edge to selectively absorb Kβ radiation and transmit the $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ parts of the x-ray spectrum, as shown schematically in *Figure 2.12*. Thus, a properly selected β-filter material has its K absorption edge below the wavelength of the $K\alpha_1$ characteristic line and just above the wavelength of the Kβ line.[1]

The general rule for choosing the β-filter is to use a material, which is rich in a chemical element, one atomic number less than the anode material in the periodic table. This assures proper location of the K absorption edge, i.e. between the $K\alpha_1$ and Kβ lines. For heavy anode materials (e.g. Mo), this rule can be extended to two atomic numbers below the element of the anode. A list of β-filter elements, suitable for the most commonly used anode materials, is found in *Table 2.1*. Thus, for a Cu anode, a foil made from Ni will work best as the β-filter, while for Mo radiation both Nb and Zr are good β-filters. The former material (Zr) is more often used in practice because its K absorption edge is closer to the wavelength of the $K\alpha_1$ line.

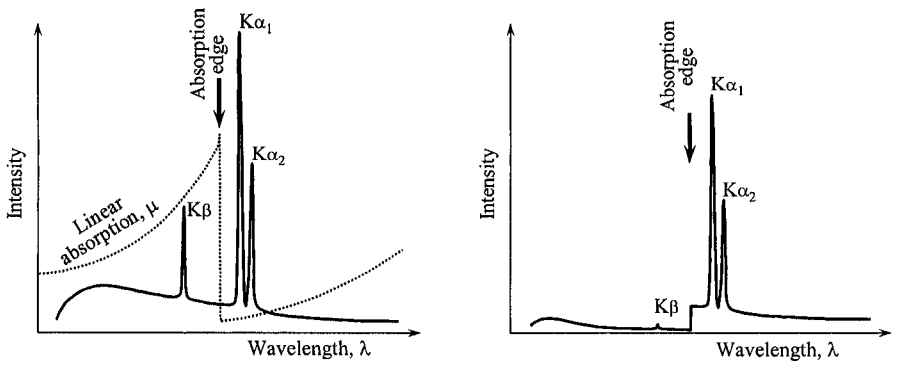


Figure 2.12. Left - the schematic of the x-ray emission spectrum shown as the solid line overlapped with the schematic of the μ(λ) function of the properly selected β-filter material (dotted line). Right – the resultant distribution of intensity after filtering as a function of the wavelength.

[1] Better monochromatization can be achieved when using the so-called balanced filters. The first filter material is chosen to suppress Kβ and other short wavelengths. The second filter material is selected such that its K absorption edge is located above the wavelength of the $K\alpha_2$ component and the thickness of each material is selected to equally suppress the Kβ intensity. As a result, the balanced filter reduces the intensity of both short and long wavelengths. Balanced filters are seldom used today because the resulting intensity loss is usually higher when compared with a well aligned crystal-monochromator.

The major disadvantages of β-filters are: i) – they are incapable of complete elimination of the Kβ intensity, and ii) – they leave a considerable amount of white radiation after filtering. Furthermore, any β-filter also reduces all intensities in the spectrum at wavelengths higher than the corresponding absorption edge (see *Figure 2.12*). This results in the reduction of the intensity of the $K\alpha_{1,2}$ components, although obviously the latter are reduced by a much smaller factor than the intensity of the Kβ line. Fundamentally, the use of a β-filter improves $I_{K\alpha}/I_{K\beta}$ and $I_{K\alpha}/I_{white}$ ratios and this improvement is proportional to the thickness of the filter. For example, assume that the ratio of the intensities of the $K\alpha_1$ and Kβ spectral lines in the unfiltered spectrum is approximately 5:1. After passing through a properly designed β-filter, it becomes ~100 – 500 to 1.

Considering Eq. 2.8 and the as-produced ratio of intensities between $K\alpha_1$ and Kβ lines (5:1), the filtered $I_{K\alpha_1}/I_{K\beta}$ intensity ratio can be expressed as follows:

$$\frac{I_{K\alpha_1}}{I_{K\beta}} = 5\frac{\exp(-\mu_\alpha t)}{\exp(-\mu_\beta t)} \tag{2.9}$$

where μ_α and μ_β are the linear absorption coefficients of the filter material for $\lambda_{K\alpha}$ and $\lambda_{K\beta}$, respectively, and t is the thickness of the β-filter. This equation can also be used to calculate the filter thickness, t, which is necessary to obtain the desired $I_{K\alpha}/I_{K\beta}$ ratio. Thus, depending on the particular need and the application, a compromise is made between the purity of the spectrum and the intensity of the Kα radiation.

Absorption coefficients for all chemical elements are usually tabulated (see *Table 2.3*) in the form of mass absorption coefficients,[1] μ/ρ (the units are cm^2/g), instead of the linear absorption coefficients, μ.

The linear absorption coefficient of any material (solid, liquid or gas) is then calculated as

$$\mu = \rho_m \sum_{i=1}^{n} w_i \left(\frac{\mu}{\rho}\right)_i \tag{2.10}$$

where w_i is the mass fraction of the chemical element in the material, $(\mu/\rho)_i$ is elemental mass absorption coefficient, and ρ_m is the density of the material. For example, the liner absorption coefficient of the stoichiometric

[1] This is reasonable because absorption of x-rays is proportional to the probability of a photon to encounter an atom when passing through matter. This probability is directly proportional to the number of atoms in the unit volume, i.e. to the density of the material.

mixture of gaseous hydrogen and oxygen (2 moles of H_2 per 1 mole of O_2) is only ~1/1200 of the linear absorption coefficient of water because the density of water is just over 1200 times greater than the density of the mixture of the two gases at atmospheric pressure and room temperature.

Table 2.3. Mass absorption coefficients (in cm^2/g) of selected chemical elements for the commonly used anode materials.[1] The mass absorption coefficients of the best β-filter elements for the corresponding anode are shaded.

Anode / Element	Cr		Fe		Cu		Mo	
	Kα	Kβ	Kα	Kβ	Kα	Kβ	Kα	Kβ
H	0.412	0.405	0.400	0.396	0.391	0.388	0.373	0.370
He	0.498	0.425	0.381	0.335	0.292	0.268	0.202	0.197
...								
C	15.0	11.2	8.99	6.68	4.51	3.33	0.576	0.458
N	24.7	18.6	14.9	11.0	7.44	5.48	0.845	0.645
O	37.8	28.4	22.8	17.0	11.5	8.42	1.22	0.908
...								
Sc	516	403	332	256	180	137	20.8	14.9
Ti	590	444	358	277	200	152	23.4	16.8
V	96.5	479	399	309	219	166	26	18.7
Cr	86.8	67.0	492	385	247	185	29.9	21.5
Mn	97.5	75.3	61.6	375	270	207	33.1	23.8
Fe	113	86.9	71.0	54.3	302	232	37.6	27.1
Co	124	96.0	78.5	60.0	321	248	41.0	29.6
Ni	144	112	91.3	69.8	48.8	279	46.9	34.0
Cu	153	118	96.8	74.0	51.8	39.2	49.1	35.7
...								
Sr	328	256	210	161	113	85.9	90.6	67.2
Y	358	279	229	176	124	94.0	97.0	72.1
Zr	386	300	247	191	139	101	16.3	76.1
Nb	416	325	267	205	145	110	17.7	81.0
Mo	442	345	284	219	154	117	18.8	13.8

2.3.2.2 Crystal monochromators

A different and more complex but much improved monochromatization approach takes advantage of diffraction from a high-quality single crystal, properly positioned with respect to the propagation vector of x-rays. The examples of commonly used crystal monochromator materials include pyrolitic graphite, Si, Ge, and LiCl.

A nearly perfect single crystal is placed at a specific angle (θ^M) with respect to the primary or the diffracted x-ray beams and, according to the Braggs' law (Eq. 2.11),[2] only discrete wavelengths can be transmitted at this

[1] Taken from the International Tables for Crystallography, vol. C, Second edition, A.J.C. Wilson and E. Prince, Eds., vol. C, Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston/Dordrecht/ London (1999).

[2] Also, see section 2.6.1.

angle. Assuming that $n = 1$, the single transmitted wavelength, λ_t, is a function of the corresponding interplanar distance of the crystal, d^M_{hkl}, and θ^M. In reality, even the best crystal monochromators always allow some wavelength dispersion in the transmitted beam because of the unavoidable imperfections.

$$2d^M_{hkl} \sin\theta^M = n\lambda_t \tag{2.11}$$

The general principle of operation of a single crystal monochromator is illustrated in *Figure 2.13*. The x-rays in the divergent beam that reach the monochromator form slightly different angles (ranging from θ_1 to θ_2) with the crystal. They are reflected from the set of crystallographic planes, *hkl*, which are parallel to the crystal surface.

According to Braggs' law (Eq. 2.11), both the incident and diffracted beams with identical wavelengths should form the same angle with the surface of the crystal. Hence, each wavelength, λ_i, is diffracted at a particular angle $\theta_1 \le \theta_i \le \theta_2$ which yields an uneven spatial distribution of wavelengths in the beam reflected by the crystal. In effect, the shorter wavelengths are grouped at the low Bragg angles (they are darker in *Figure 2.13*) and the longer wavelengths are observed at the high Bragg angles (they are lighter in *Figure 2.13*). For example, the Kβ line falls into the low Bragg angle range and the $K\alpha_1/K\alpha_2$ doublet falls into the high angle range. The former or the latter can be easily selected by a slit properly installed in the path of x-rays reflected by a crystal monochromator.

Even though the diffracted beam is not perfectly monochromatic at any specific angle due to various imperfections (defects, distortions, stresses, etc.) present in the crystal monochromator, the separation of Kα and Kβ wavelengths is large enough so that the elimination of the Kβ and nearly all

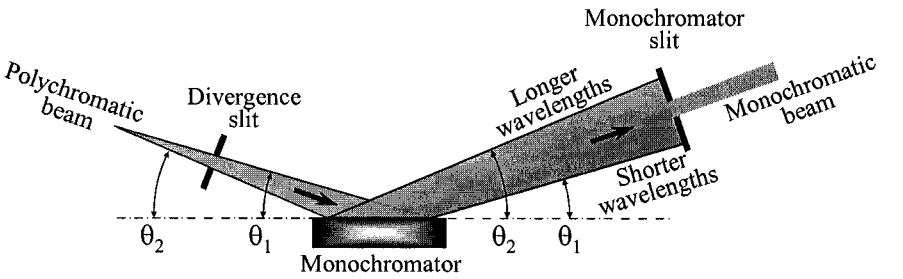


Figure 2.13. The schematic explaining the principle of monochromatization using a single crystal monochromator. Generally $\theta^M \cong (\theta_2 + \theta_1)/2$. The directions of the propagation vectors are indicated by arrows.

white x-rays during the monochromatization is usually not a problem. However, the separation of $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ wavelengths requires more than just a simple arrangement shown in *Figure 2.13*. The wavelength (photon energy) resolution can be improved by using diffraction from two or more monochromators placed in sequence. We note that the diffraction from the sample, in the first approximation, works as a preliminary monochromator. Thus, the distribution of the wavelengths may be assumed uniform in the whole range of incident angles (from θ_1 to θ_2 in *Figure 2.13*) but this is no longer the case in the beam reflected by the first monochromator or by the sample.

The following two configurations (parallel and angular), which are shown in *Figure 2.14*, are in common use to improve the monochromatization of the beam. Both diffracting plates can be crystal monochromators, or one can be the sample while another is the monochromator. The latter arrangement is especially common in powder diffractometry.

Two parallel plates (*Figure 2.14*, left) remove the $K\beta$ line completely. The $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ doublet can be separated at specific conditions when the first plate is used as a monochromator but at a cost of the reduced beam intensity. When the second plate is used as monochromator, the resultant intensity is higher but the $K\alpha_1/K\alpha_2$ doublet is nearly impossible to separate. This layout also improves the collimation of the beam. The second arrangement (*Figure 2.14*, right) is more efficient. Angular orientation of the two crystals separates $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ lines quite well due to the larger spatial difference between the two wavelengths after diffraction from the second plate. Yet again, this is usually done at a considerable intensity loss penalty.

The three most common geometries of a crystal monochromator and a sample, used in powder diffraction, are illustrated in *Figure 2.15* and their characteristics are compared in *Table 2.4*. Diffracted beam monochromators (*Figure 2.15*a, b) have a relatively high intensity output (or in other words have low intensity losses) but do not separate the $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ doublet. The removal of both the $K\beta$ component and white radiation is excellent. The

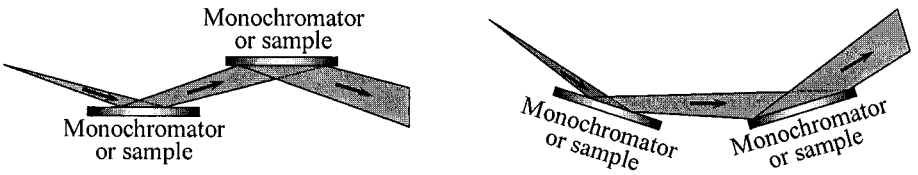


Figure 2.14. Parallel (left) and angular (right) arrangements of two crystal monochromators or the sample and the crystal monochromator commonly used to improve the monochromatization of the resultant x-ray beam.

latter is especially important when the sample is strongly fluorescent. The diffracted beam monochromators, by far, are more commonly used than the primary beam monochromators. The advantage of the angular configuration (*Figure 2.15*b) is in the lower torque exerted on the detector arm when compared with the linear configuration, but the crystal surface should be curved to match the radius of the monochromator focusing circle for best results.

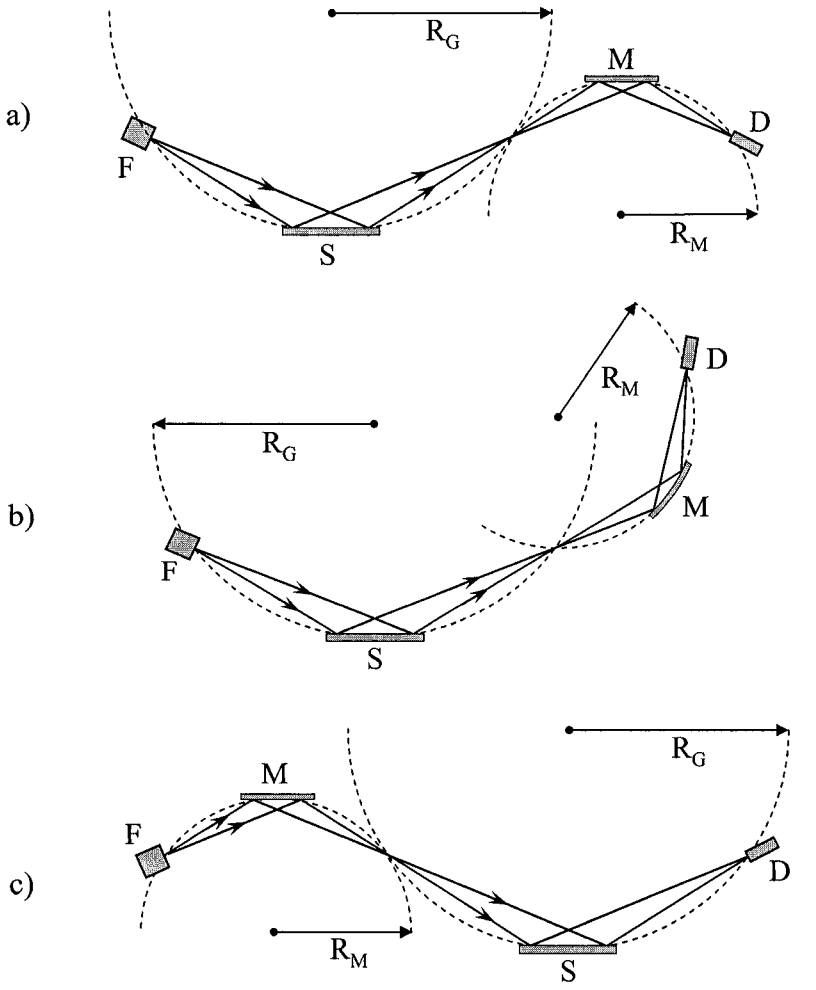


Figure 2.15. The three different monochromator/sample geometries used in powder diffraction: a) flat *diffracted* beam monochromator, parallel arrangement; b) curved *diffracted* beam monochromator, angular arrangement, and c) flat *primary* beam monochromator, parallel arrangement. F – focus of the x-ray source, S – sample, M – crystal monochromator, D – detector, R_M – radius of the monochromator focusing circle, R_G – radius of the goniometer focusing circle.

Table 2.4. Comparison of the three common monochromator/sample configurations used in powder diffractometry.

Property	a[a]	b	c
Position in the beam	Diffracted	Diffracted	Primary
Orientation relatively the sample	Parallel	Angular	Parallel
Shape of the crystal	Flat/Curved	Curved	Flat/Curved
Intensity loss	Low	Low	Low/High
$K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ separation	No	No	No/Complete
Alignment	Simple	Simple	Simple/Complex
Additional torque on the detector arm	High	Low	None
Use with area detectors	Impossible	Impossible	Possible

[a] Labeling of the columns corresponds to *Figure 2.15*.

The most important advantage of the primary beam monochromator (*Figure 2.15*c) is the possibility to separate $K\alpha_1/K\alpha_2$ doublets, which is especially important when working with complex diffraction patterns where the maximum resolution of Bragg peaks is critical. A primary beam monochromator is the only type of geometry that can be used with area detectors (see section 2.4.4). The main disadvantages are high intensity losses, the need for precise alignment, and potential for high fluorescent background in some combinations of materials and photon energies.

2.3.2.3 Pulse height selection and energy resolution

Monochromatization by pulse height selection using a proportional detector is based on the fact that the signal generated in the detector is proportional to the energy of the absorbed x-ray photon and therefore, inversely proportional to its wavelength. This approach is discussed in the following section, where the proportional detector is described. Monochromatization by pulse height selection is far from ideal and it does not even result in the complete elimination of the $K\beta$ intensity. Nevertheless, its use substantially improves the quality of powder diffraction data by reducing the background noise, especially when combined with a β-filter.

Relatively recently developed cooled solid-state detectors find more and more use as both detectors and monochromators because of their extremely high sensitivity to the energy of absorbed photons, which enables precise energy discrimination. Thus, the detector can be tuned to register wavelengths only within certain limits, e.g. $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ energies, or in some of the most recent applications, only $K\beta$ component. The latter is one of the ways to obtain single wavelength x-rays without using crystal monochromators and, therefore, without substantial loss of intensity except for the fact that the intensity of the $K\beta$ line is only ~1/5 of the intensity of the $K\alpha_1$ line. Another advantage of this approach is a clean registered diffraction pattern because the majority of white radiation is also eliminated. The disadvantages of this monochromatization technique arise from the

limitations intrinsic to solid-state detection and they will be briefly discussed below.

2.4 Detection of x-rays

The detector is an integral part of any diffraction analysis system and its major role is to measure the intensity and, sometimes, the direction of the scattered beam. The detection is based on the ability of x-rays to interact with matter and to produce certain effects or signals, for example to generate particles, waves, electrical current, etc., which can be easily registered. In other words, each photon entering the detector generates a specific event, better yet, a series of events that can be recognized and from which the total photon count (intensity) can be determined. Obviously, the detector must be sensitive to x-rays (or in general to the radiation being detected) and should have an extended dynamic range and low background noise.[1]

2.4.1 Detector efficiency, linearity, proportionality and resolution

An important characteristic of any detector is how efficiently it collects x-ray photons and then converts them into a measurable signal. Detector efficiency is determined by first, a fraction of x-ray photons that pass through the detector window (the higher, the better) and second, a fraction of photons that are absorbed by the detector and thus result in a series of detectable events (again, the higher, the better). The product of the two fractions, which is known as the absorption or quantum efficiency, should usually be between 0.5 and 1.

The efficiency of modern detectors is quite high, in contrast to the x-ray film, which requires multiple photons to activate a single grain of photon-sensitive silver halide. It is important to keep in mind that the efficiency depends on the type of the detector and it normally varies with the wavelength for the same type of the detector. The need for high efficiency is difficult to overestimate since every missed (i.e. not absorbed by the detector) photon is simply a lost photon. It is nearly impossible to account for the lost photons by any amplification method, no matter how far the amplification algorithm has been advanced.

The linearity of the detector is critical in obtaining correct intensity measurements (photon count). The detector is considered linear when there

[1] For the purpose of this consideration, the dynamic range is the ability of the detector to count photons at both the low and high fluxes with the same effectiveness, and by the background noise we mean the events similar to those generated by the absorbed photons, but occurring randomly and spontaneously in the detector without photons entering the detector.

is a linear dependence between the photon flux (the number of photons entering through the detector window in one second) and the rate of signals generated by the detector (usually the number of voltage pulses) per second. In any detector, it takes some time to absorb a photon, convert it into a voltage pulse, register the pulse, and reset the detector to the initial state, i.e. make it ready for the next operation. This time is usually known as the dead time of the detector – the time during which the detector remains inactive after it has just registered a photon.

The presence of the dead time always decreases the registered intensity. This effect, however, becomes substantial only at high photon fluxes. When the detector is incapable of counting every photon due to the dead time, then some of them could be absorbed by the detector but remain unaccounted, i.e. become lost photons. It is said that the detector becomes non-linear under these conditions. Thus the linearity of the detector can be expressed as: i) – the maximum flux in photons per second that can be reliably counted (the higher the better); ii) – the dead time (the shorter, the better), or iii) – the percentage of the loss of linearity at certain high photon flux (the lower percentage, the better). The latter is compared for several different types of detectors in *Table 2.5* along with other characteristics.

The proportionality of the detector determines how the size of the generated voltage pulse is related to the energy of the x-ray photon. Since x-ray photons produce a certain amount of events (ion pairs, photons of visible light, etc.) and each event requires certain energy, the number of events is generally proportional to the energy of the x-ray photon and therefore, to the inverse of its wavelength. The amplitude of the generated signal is normally proportional to the number of these events and thus, it is proportional to the x-ray photon energy, which could be used in pulse-height discrimination. Usually, the high proportionality of the detector enables one to achieve additional monochromatization of the x-ray beam in a straightforward fashion: during the registration, the signals that are too high or too low and thus correspond to photons with exceedingly high or exceedingly low energies, respectively, are simply not counted.

Table 2.5. Selected characteristics of the most common detectors using Cu Kα radiation.

Property / Detector	Linearity loss at 40,000 cps[a]	Proportionality	Resolution for Cu Kα	Energy per event (eV)	No. of events[b]
Scintillation	<1%	Very good	45%	350	23
Proportional	<5%	Good, but fails at high photon flux	14%	26	310
Solid-state	Up to 50%	Pileup in mid-range	2%	3.7	2200

[a] cps – counts per second.

[b] Approximate number of ion pairs or visible light photons resulting from a single x-ray photon assuming Cu Kα radiation with photon energy of about 8 keV.

Finally, the resolution of the detector characterizes its ability to resolve x-ray photons of different energy and wavelength. The resolution (R) is defined as follows:

$$R(\%) = \frac{\sqrt{\delta V}}{V} 100\% \tag{2.12}$$

where V is the average height of the voltage pulse and δV is the spread of voltage pulses. The latter is also defined as the full width at half-maximum of the pulse height distribution in Volts. The resolution for Cu Kα radiation for the main types of detectors is listed in *Table 2.5*. Thus, the resolution is a function of both the number of the events generated by a single photon and the energy required to generate the event, and it is critically dependent on how small is the spread in the number of events generated by different photons with identical energy. In other words, high resolution is only viable when every photon is absorbed completely, which is difficult to achieve when the absorbing medium is gaseous, but is nearly ideal in the solid state simply due to the difference in their densities (see section 2.3.2.1).

2.4.2 Classification of detectors

Historically, the first and the oldest detector of x-rays, which was in use for many decades, is the photographic film. Just as the visible light, the x-ray photons excite fine particles of silver halide when the film is exposed to x-rays. During the development, the exposed halide particles are converted into black metallic silver grains. Only the activated silver halide particles, i.e. those that absorbed several x-ray photons (usually at least 3 to 5 photons), turn into metallic silver.

This type of detector is simple but is no longer in common use due to its low proportionality range, and limited spatial and energy resolution. Furthermore, the film development process introduces certain inconveniences and is time consuming. Finally, the information stored on the developed photographic film is difficult to digitize.

In modern detectors the signal, which is usually an electric current, is easily digitized and transferred to a computer for further processing and analysis. In general, detectors could be broadly divided into two categories: ratemeters and true counters. In a ratemeter, the readout is performed after hardware integration, which results, for example, in the electrical current or a voltage signal that is proportional to the flux of photons entering the detector. True counters, on the other hand, count individual photons entering through the detector window and being absorbed by the detector.

Hence, the photographic film vaguely resembles a ratemeter because the intensity is extracted from the degree of darkening of the spots found on the film – the darker the spot, the higher the corresponding intensity because the larger number of photons have been absorbed by the spot on the film surface. The three most commonly utilized types of x-ray detectors today are gas proportional, scintillation, and solid-state detectors, all of which are true counters.

Yet another classification of detectors is based on whether the detector is capable of resolving the location where the photon has been absorbed and thus, whether they can detect the direction of the beam in addition to counting the number of photons. Conventional gas proportional, scintillation, and solid-state detectors do not support spatial resolution and therefore, they are also known as point detectors. A point detector registers only the intensity of the diffracted beam, one point at a time. In other words, the readout of the detector corresponds to a specific value of the Bragg angle as determined by the position of the detector relatively to both the sample and the incident beam. This is illustrated as the series of dots in *Figure 2.16*, each dot corresponding to a single position of the detector and a single point measurement of the intensity. Thus, to examine the distribution of the diffracted intensity as a function of Bragg angle using a point detector, it is necessary to perform multiple point measurements at varying Bragg angles.

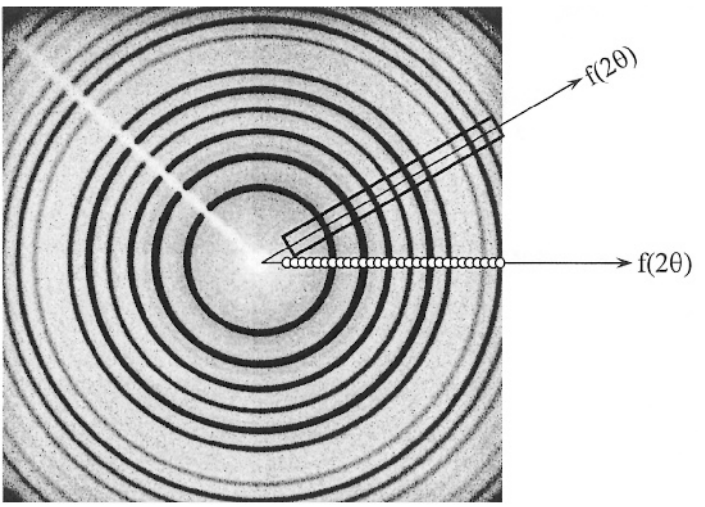


Figure 2.16. The schematic explaining the difference between point (the set of discrete dots), line (solid rectangle) and area (the entire picture) detectors, which are used in modern powder diffractometry. The light trace extended from the center of the image to the upper left corner is the shade from the primary beam trap. The Bragg angle is zero at the center of the image and it increases along any line that extends from the center of the image as shown by the two arrows (also see *Figure 2.34*).

Detectors that support spatial resolution in one direction are usually termed as line detectors, while those that facilitate resolution in two dimensions are known as area detectors. Again, photographic film is a typical example of an area detector because each point on the film can be characterized by two independent coordinates and the entire film area is exposed simultaneously. The following three types of line and area detectors are in common use in powder diffractometry today: position sensitive (PSD), charge coupled devices (CCD), and image plates (IPD). The former is a line detector (its action is represented by the rectangle in *Figure 2.16*) and the latter two are area detectors (the entire area of *Figure 2.16* represents an image of how the intensity is measured simultaneously). Both line and area detectors can measure diffracted intensity at multiple points at once and thus, a single measurement results in the diffraction pattern resolved in one or two dimensions, respectively.

2.4.3 Point detectors

A typical **gas proportional counter** detector usually consists of a cylindrical body filled with a mixture of gases (Xe mixed with some quench gas, usually CO_2, CH_4 or a halogen, to limit the discharge) and a central wire anode as shown schematically in *Figure 2.17*, left. High voltage is maintained between the cathode (the body of the counter) and the anode. When the x-ray photon enters through the window and is absorbed by the gas, it ionizes Xe atoms producing positively charged ions and electrons, i.e. ion pairs (see *Table 2.5*). The resulting electrical current is measured and the number of current pulses is proportional to the number of photons absorbed by the mixture of gases. The second window is usually added to enable the exit of the non-absorbed photons thus limiting the x-ray fluorescence, which may occur at the walls of the counter. In some cases, the cylinder can be filled by a mixture of gases under pressure exceeding the ambient to improve photon absorption and, therefore, photon detection by the detector.

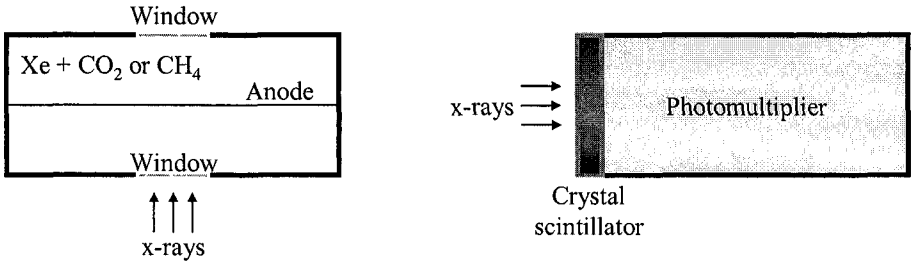


Figure 2.17. The schematics of the gas proportional counter (left) and the scintillation (right) detectors of x-rays.

Gas proportional counters have relatively good resolution, so the heights of current pulses can be analyzed and discriminated to eliminate pulses that appear due to Kβ photons and due to low and high energy white radiation photons. The pulse height discrimination is often used in combination with a β-filter to improve the elimination of the Kβ and white background photons.

The lifetime of a proportional detector is limited to about two years because a fraction of the gas, filling the detector, escapes through the windows, which are usually made from a thin and low absorbing organic film to improve quantum efficiency. Another disadvantage of this type of the detector is its low effectiveness at high photon fluxes and with short wave (high energy) x-rays, such as Mo (the mass absorption coefficients of Xe are 299 and 38.2 cm^2/g for Cu Kα and Mo Kα radiation, respectively).

A typical **scintillation detector** employs a different principle for the detection of x-rays. It is constructed from a crystal scintillator coupled with a photomultiplier tube as shown in *Figure 2.17*, right. The x-ray photons, which are absorbed by the crystal, generate photons of blue light. After exiting the crystal, blue light photons are converted into electrons in a photomultiplier and amplified, and the resultant voltage pulses are registered as photon counts.

The crystal scintillator is usually made from cleaved, optically clear sodium iodide (NaI) activated with ~1% of Tl. The crystals are hydroscopic and thus, they are usually sealed in a vacuum tight enclosure with a thin Be window in the front (x-rays entry window) and high quality optical glass in the back (blue light photons exit window). The crystal is usually mounted on the photomultiplier tube using a viscous fluid that minimizes the refraction of blue light on the interface between the crystal and the photomultiplier.

Unfortunately, due to the relatively high energy of blue light photons, the x-ray wavelength resolution of the scintillation detector is quite low. Although, the extremely short wavelengths (e.g. cosmic rays) can be discriminated and eliminated, the Kβ photons cannot be recognized and filtered out by the detector. Despite their low resolution, scintillation detectors are highly stable and effective; especially at high photon fluxes (see *Table 2.5*). They have very short dead time and therefore, extended linear range. Because of this, scintillation detectors are by far the most commonly used detectors in the modern laboratory x-ray powder diffractometry.

Yet another physical phenomenon is used in **solid-state detectors**, which are manufactured from high quality silicon or germanium single crystals doped with lithium and commonly known as Si(Li) or Ge(Li) solid-state detectors. The interaction of the x-ray photon with the crystal (detector) produces electron-hole pairs in quantities proportional to the energy of the photon divided by the energy needed to generate a single pair. The latter is

quite low and amounts to approximately 3.7 eV for a Si-based detector. The electric potential difference applied across the crystal results in the photon-induced electric current, which is amplified and measured. The current is indeed proportional to the number of the generated electron-hole pairs.

In order to minimize noise and Li migration, the solid-state detector should be cooled, usually to ~80 K. This can be done using liquid nitrogen but it is quite inconvenient to have a cryogenic container mounted on the detector arm, especially since the container needs to be refilled every few days. Thus, solid-state detectors coupled with thermoelectric coolers have been developed and commercialized, and successfully used in powder diffraction.

The substantial advantage of this type of detector is its high resolution at low temperature, even when compared with proportional counters (*Table 2.5*). Cooled solid-state detectors facilitate excellent filtration of both the undesirable Kβ and white radiation, thus resulting in a very low background without a significant loss of the intensity of the $K\alpha_1/K\alpha_2$ doublets. It is worth noting that even the highest quality, perfectly aligned monochromator decreases the characteristic Kα intensity by a factor of two or more. Thus, with the cooled solid-state detector the monochromator is no longer needed unless the extreme spectral purity is an issue.

The major drawback of this type of detector, not counting the need for continuous cooling, is its relatively low linear range – only up to about 2×10^4 counts per second. This may result in experimental artifacts when measuring extremely strong Bragg peaks, similar to those shown in *Figure 2.18*.

The inset of this figure shows sharp and random spikes peaking at $\sim1.2\times10^5$ counts instead of a smooth Bragg peak, due to the highly non-linear response of the detector when photon flux exceeds 2 to 5×10^4 counts per second. Furthermore, the photon energy resolution-based electronic monochromatization also fails. In addition to the (400) Bragg peak centered at $2\theta \cong 69.2°$, which is expected for this orientation of the single crystalline silicon wafer, three additional Bragg peaks are clearly recognizable in the measured diffraction pattern at $2\theta \cong 61.6$, 65.9 and 66.3°.

A simple analysis, based on the Braggs' equation, leads to the conclusion that these three peaks are all due to the reflections from the (400) crystallographic planes of Si, each representing a different wavelength in a characteristic spectrum of this particular x-ray tube. The first satellite Bragg peak ($2\theta \cong 61.6°$) corresponds to the incompletely suppressed Kβ component in the characteristic spectrum of the Cu anode. Obviously this occurs due to the extremely high intensity of the (400) peak from the nearly perfect single crystalline specimen. The two remaining Bragg peaks ($2\theta \cong$ 65.9 and 66.3°) are due to the presence of a W impurity deposited on the surface of the anode (see *Figure 2.4*) during the long time operation of the x-

ray tube, and they correspond to the reflections caused by W $L\alpha_1$ and $L\alpha_2$ characteristic lines. Another unusual feature of this diffraction pattern is the fact that the intensity corresponding to the very weak W $L\alpha_1$ peak is higher than that of the much stronger Cu $K\beta$ peak. Indeed, this happens because the energy of the former is closer to the energy of Cu $K\alpha$ photons. Since the detector is tuned to register Cu $K\alpha$ photons, discriminating other photons with nearly the same energy is difficult to achieve. It is worth noting that if the same data would be collected using a brand new Cu-anode x-ray tube (which has no deposit from the W filament on the surface of the anode), only two characteristic Cu Bragg peaks would be visible.

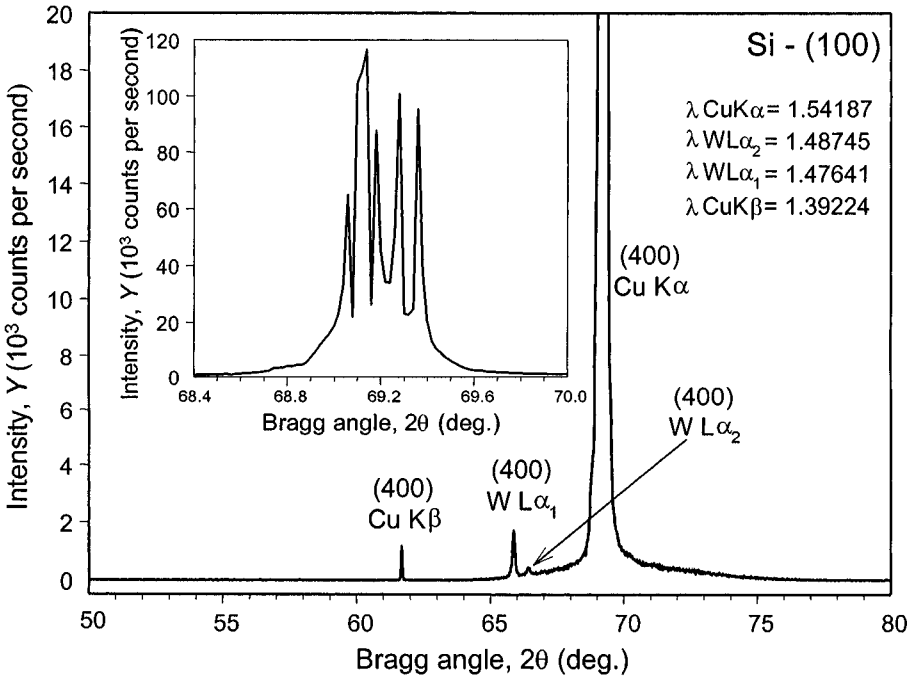


Figure 2.18. The x-ray diffraction pattern collected from a single crystalline Si-wafer in the reflecting position with the [100] direction perpendicular to its surface using a powder diffractometer equipped with the thermoelectric cooled Si(Li) solid-state detector. The inset shows multiple random spikes for the (400) Cu $K\alpha$ peak when photon flux exceeds ~20,000 cps due to the non-linearity of the detector. The additional Bragg peaks are marked with the corresponding characteristic wavelengths. (Experimental data courtesy of Dr. J.E. Snyder.)

[1] This particular x-ray tube was in service for more than a year and the total number of hours of operation was approaching 2000. The tube was regularly operated at ~75% of rated power.

2.4.4 Line and area detectors

A **position sensitive detector (PSD)** employs the principle of a gas proportional counter, with an added capability to detect the location of a photon absorption event. Hence, unlike the conventional gas proportional counter, the PSD is a line detector that can measure the intensity of the diffracted beam in multiple (usually thousands) points simultaneously. As a result, a powder diffraction experiment becomes much faster, while its quality generally remains nearly identical to that obtained using a standard gas proportional counter.[1]

The basic principle of sensing the position of the photon absorption event by the PSD is based on the following property of the proportional counter. The electrons (born by the x-ray photon absorption and creation of Xe ion – electron pairs) accelerate along a minimum resistance (i.e. linear) path towards the wire anode, where they are discharged thus producing the electrical current pulse in the anode circuit. In the point detector, the amplitude of this pulse is measured on one end of the wire. Given the high speed of modern electronics, it is possible to measure the same signal on both ends of the wire anode. Thus, the time difference between the two measurements of the same discharge pulse is used to determine the place where the discharge occurred provided the length of the wire anode is known as illustrated schematically in *Figure 2.19*.

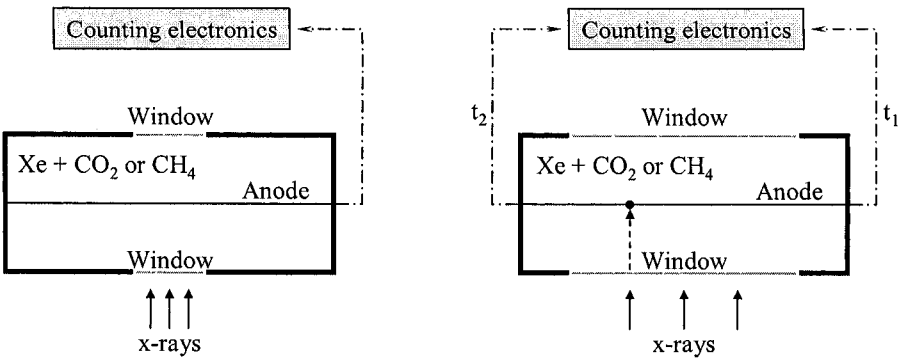


Figure 2.19. The schematic comparing the conventional gas proportional detector, where the signal is collected on one side of the wire anode (left) and the position sensitive detector, where the signals are measured on both sides of the wire anode (right). The position of the electron discharge (dark dot) is determined by the counting electronics from the difference between times t_1 and t_2 it takes for the two signals to be recorded.

[1] A significant deterioration of the quality of x-ray powder diffraction data may occur when the studied specimen is highly fluorescent because it is impractical to monochromatize the diffracted beam when using line or area detectors. Also see Chapter 3.

The spatial resolution of the PSD's is not as high as that attainable with the precise positioning of point detectors. Nevertheless, it remains satisfactory (approaching about 0.01°) to conduct good quality experiments. Yet a minor loss of the resolution is a small price to pay for the ability to collect powder diffraction data in a wide range of Bragg angles, all at once, which obviously and substantially decreases the duration of the experiment. A typical improvement is from many hours using a point detector down to several minutes or less using a position sensitive detector.

Different models of the PSD's may have different geometry, resolution and Bragg angle range: short linear PSD's cover a few degrees range (from ~5 to 10°), while long curved PSD's may cover as much as ~120 to 140° 2θ. The biggest advantage of the long range PSD's is the considerable experimental time reduction when compared to short or medium range position sensitive detectors. Their disadvantage arises from often substantial differences in the photon counting properties observed at different places along the detector, for example in the middle vs. the ends of its length. The large angular spread of long detectors also puts some restrictions on the quality of focusing of x-rays and usually results in the deterioration of the shape of Bragg peaks. Relevant discussion about the geometry of powder diffractometers equipped with PSD's is found in Chapter 3.

Area detectors record diffraction pattern in two dimensions simultaneously. Not counting the photographic film, two types of electronic area detectors have been advanced to a commercial status, and are becoming more frequently used in modern x-ray powder diffraction analysis.

In a **charge coupled device** detector, x-ray photons are converted by a phosphor[1] into visible light, which is captured using a charge-coupled device camera. In an **image plate detector**, x-ray photons are also captured by a phosphor.[2] The excited phosphor pixels, however, are not converted into the signals immediately. Instead, the information is stored in the phosphor grains as a latent image, in a way, similar to the activation of silver halide particles in the photographic film during exposure. When the data collection is completed, the image is scanned (so to say is "developed") by a laser, which deactivates pixels that emit the stored energy as a blue light. Visible light photons are then registered by a photomultiplier in a conventional manner.

[1] A typical CCD phosphor is Tb^{3+} doped Gd_2O_2S, which converts x-ray photons into visible light photons.

[2] A typical image plate phosphor is Eu^{2+} doped BaFBr. When exposed to x-rays, Eu^{2+} oxidizes to Eu^{3+}. Thus produced electrons may either recombine with Eu^{3+} or they become trapped by F-vacancies in the crystal lattice of BaFBr. The trapped electrons may exist in this metastable state for a long time. They are released when exposed to a visible light and emit blue photons during recombination with Eu^{3+} ions, e.g. see K. Takahashi, K. Khoda, J. Miyahara, Y. Kanemitsu, K. Amitani, and S. Shionoya, Mechanism of photostimulated luminescence in BaFX:Eu^{2+} (X = Cl, Br) phosphors, J. Luminesc. **31-32**, 266 (1984).

The use of detectors, collimators and monochromators in different powder diffractometers is discussed in Chapter 3, while the reminder of this chapter is dedicated to theory of diffraction, understanding the origin of the powder diffraction pattern, and a brief description of how structural information can be extracted from powder diffraction data.

2.5 Scattering by electrons, atoms and lattices

It is well know that when a wave interacts with and is scattered by a point object, the outcome of this interaction is a new wave, which spreads in all directions. If no energy loss occurs, the resultant wave has the same frequency as the incident (primary) wave and this process is known as elastic scattering. In three dimensions, the elastically scattered wave is spherical, with its origin in the point coinciding with the object as shown schematically in *Figure 2.20*.

When two or more points are involved, they all produce spherical waves with the same λ, which interfere with each other simply by adding their amplitudes. If the two scattered waves with parallel propagation vectors are completely in-phase, the resulting wave has its amplitude doubled (*Figure 2.21*, top), while the waves, which are completely out-of-phase, extinguish one another as shown in *Figure 2.21*, bottom.

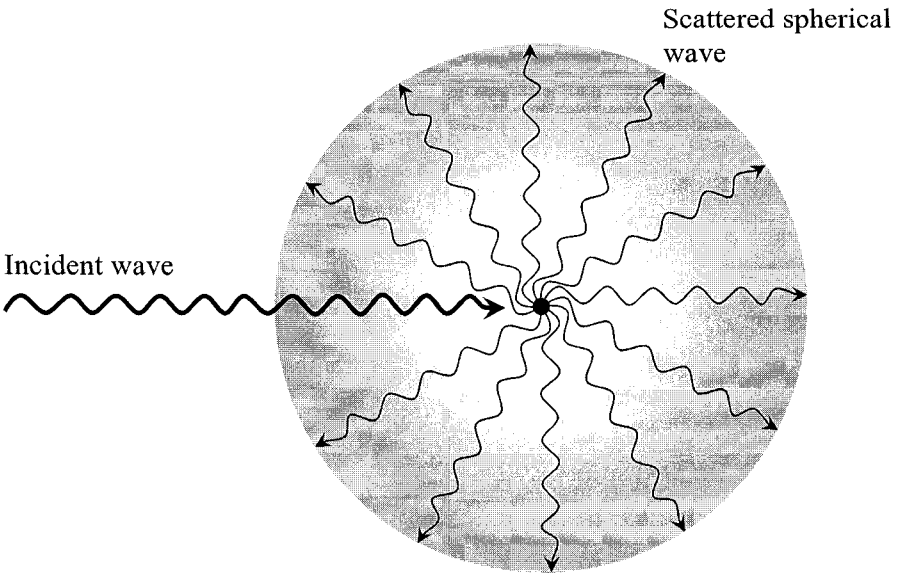


Figure 2.20. The illustration of a spherical wave produced as a result of elastic scattering of the incident wave by the point object (filled dot in the center of the grey circle).

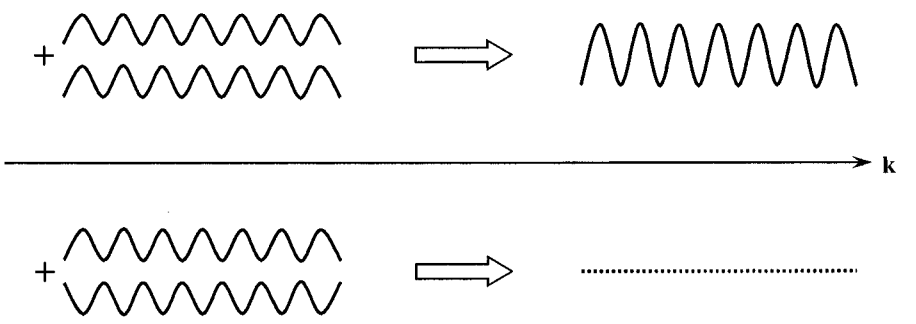


Figure 2.21. The two limiting cases of the interaction between two waves with parallel propagation vectors (**k**): the constructive interference of two in-phase waves resulting in a new wave with double the amplitude (top), and the destructive interference of two completely out-of-phase waves in which the resultant wave has zero amplitude, i.e. the two waves extinguish one another (bottom).

The first case seen in *Figure 2.21* is called constructive interference and the second case is termed as destructive interference. Constructive interference, which occurs on periodic arrays of points, increases the resultant wave amplitude by many orders of magnitude and this phenomenon is one of the cornerstones in the theory of diffraction.

Diffraction can be observed only when the wavelength is of the same order of magnitude as the repetitive distance between the scattering objects. Thus, for crystals, the wavelength should be in the same range as the shortest interatomic distances, that is, somewhere between ~0.5 and ~2.5 Å. This condition is fulfilled when using electromagnetic radiation, which within the mentioned range of wavelengths, is x-rays. It is important to note that x-rays scatter from electrons, so that the active scattering centers are not the nuclei, but the electrons, or more precisely the electron density, periodically distributed in the crystal lattice.

The other two types of radiation that can diffract from crystals are neutron and electron beams. Unlike x-rays, neutrons are scattered on the nuclei, while electrons, which have electric charge, interact with the electrostatic potential. Nuclei, their electronic shells (i.e. core electron density), and electrostatic potentials, are all distributed similarly in the same crystal and their distribution is established by the crystal structure of the material. Thus, assuming a constant wavelength, the differences in the diffraction patterns when using various kinds of radiation are mainly in the intensities of the diffracted beams. The latter occurs because various types of radiation interact in their own way with different scattering centers. The x-rays are the simplest, most accessible and by far the most commonly used waves in powder diffraction.

2.5.1 Scattering by electrons

The origin of the electromagnetic wave elastically scattered by the electron can be better understood by recalling the fact that electrons are charged particles. Thus, an oscillating electric field (see *Figure 2.2*) from the incident wave exerts a force on the electric charge (electron) forcing the electron to oscillate with the same frequency as the electric field component of the electromagnetic wave. The oscillating electron accelerates and decelerates in concert with the varying amplitude of the electric field vector, and emits electromagnetic radiation, which spreads in all directions. In this respect, the elastically scattered x-ray beam is simply radiated by the oscillating electron; it has the same frequency and wavelength as the incident wave, and this type of scattering is also known as coherent scattering.[1]

For the sake of simplicity we now consider electrons as stationary points and disregard the dependence of the scattered intensity[2] on the scattering angle.[3] Each electron then interacts with the incident x-ray wave producing a spherical elastically scattered wave as shown in *Figure 2.20*. Thus, the scattering of x-rays by a single electron yields an identical scattered intensity in every direction.

When more than one point is affected by the same incident wave, the overall scattered amplitude will be a result of interference among multiple spherical waves. As established above (*Figure 2.21*) the amplitude will vary depending on the difference in the phases of multiple waves with parallel propagation vectors but originating from different points.

[1] It is worth noting that coherency of the electromagnetic wave elastically scattered by the electron establishes specific phase relationships between the incident and the scattered wave: their phases are different by π (i.e. scatterred wave is shifted with respect to the incident wave exactly by $\lambda/2$).

[2] The scattered (diffracted) x-ray intensity recorded by the detector is proportional to the amplitude squared.

[3] The absolute intensity of the x-ray wave coherently scattered by a single electron, I, is determined from the Thomson equation:

$$I = I_0 \frac{K}{r^2}\left(\frac{1+\cos^2 2\theta}{2}\right)$$

where I_0 is the absolute intensity of the incident beam, K is constant ($K = 7.94\times10^{-30}$ m^2), r is the distance from the electron to the detector in m, and θ is the angle between the propagation vector of the incident wave and the direction of the scattered wave. It is worth noting that in a powder diffraction experiment all prefactors in the right hand side of the Thomson's equation are constant and can be omitted. The only variable part is, therefore, a function of the Bragg angle, θ. It emerges because the incident beam is generally unpolarized but the scattered beam is always partially polarized. This function, therefore, is called the polarization factor.

The phase difference between these waves is also called the phase angle, φ. For example, diffraction from a row of five equally spaced points produces a pattern shown schemtically in *Figure 2.22*, which depicts the intensity of the diffracted beam, *I*, as a function of the phase angle, φ. The major peaks (or diffraction maxima) in the pattern are caused by the constructive interference, while the multiple smaller peaks are due to the superimposed waves, which have different phases but are not completely out of phase.

For a one-dimensional periodic structure, the intensity diffracted by the row of *N* equally spaced points is proportional to the so-called interference function, which is shown in Eq. 2.13.

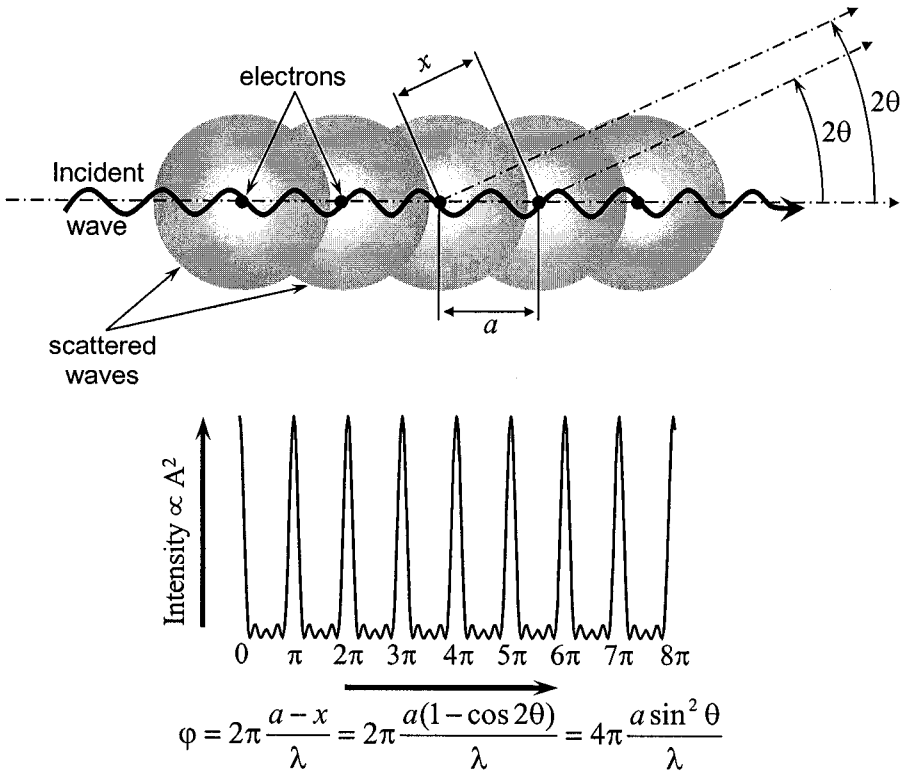


Figure 2.22. Top – five equally spaced points producing five spherical waves as a result of elastic scattering of the single incident wave. Bottom – the resultant scattered amplitude as a function of the phase angle, φ. In this geometry, the phase angle is a function of the spacing between the points, *a*, the wavelength of the incident beam, λ, and the scattering angle, 2θ. The relationship between the phase (φ) and scattering (θ) angles for the arrangement shown on top is easily derived by considering path difference (*a*-*x*) between any pair of neighboring waves, which have parallel propagation vectors.

$$I(\varphi) \propto \frac{\sin^2 N\varphi}{\sin^2 \varphi}$$

or (2.13)

$$I(\varphi) \propto N^2, \text{ when } \varphi = h\pi, \text{ and } h = ..., -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, ...$$

The example considered above illustrates scattering from only five points. When the number of equally spaced points increases, the major constructive peaks become sharper and more pronounced, while the minor peaks turn out to be less and less visible. The gradual change is illustrated in *Figure 2.23*, where the resultant intensity from the rows of five, ten and twenty points is modeled as a function of the phase angle using Eq. 2.13.

When N approaches infinity, the scattered intensity pattern becomes a periodic delta function, i.e. the scattered amplitude is nearly infinite at specific phase angles ($\varphi = h\pi$, h = ..., -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, ...) and is reduced to zero everywhere else. Since crystals contain practically an infinite number of scattering points, which are systematically arranged in three dimensions, they also should produce discrete diffraction patterns with sharp diffraction peaks observed only in specific directions. Just as in the one-dimensional case (*Figure 2.22*), the directions of diffraction peaks (i.e. diffraction angles, 2θ) are directly related to the spacing between the diffracting points (i.e. lattice points, as established by the periodicity of the crystal) and the wavelength of the used radiation.

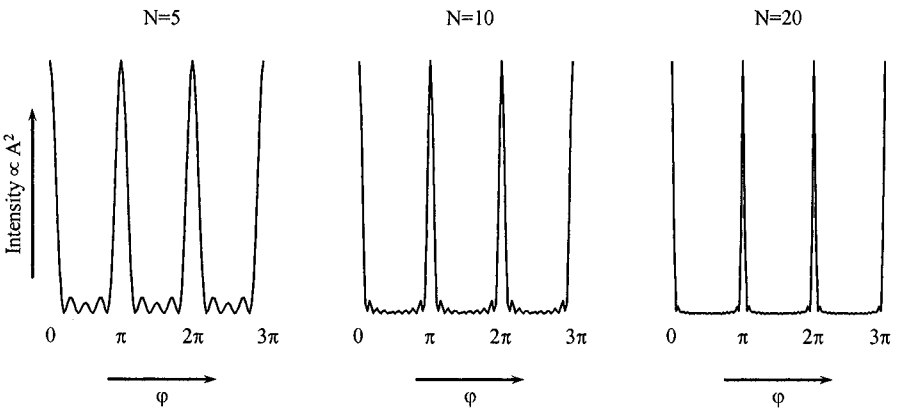


Figure 2.23. The illustration of the changes in the diffraction pattern from a one-dimensional periodic arrangement of scattering points when the number of points (N) increases from 5 to 20. The horizontal scales are identical, but the vertical scales are normalized for the three plots.

2.5.2 Scattering by atoms and scattering factor

We now consider an atom instead of a stationary electron. The majority of atoms and ions consist of multiple electrons distributed around a nucleus as shown schematically in *Figure 2.24*. It is easy to see that no path difference is introduced between the waves for the forward scattered x-rays. Thus, intensity scattered in the direction of the propagation vector of the incident wavefront is proportional to the total number of core electrons, Z, in the atom. For any other angle, $2\theta > 0$, i.e. when the propagation vector of the scattered waves, **k"**, is different from the propagation vector of the incident waves, **k**, the presence of core electrons results in the introduction of a certain path difference, δ, between the individual waves in the resultant wavefront.

The amplitude of the scattered beam is therefore, a gradually decaying function of the scattered angle and it varies with φ and with θ. The intrinsic angular dependence of the x-ray amplitude scattered by an atom is called the atomic scattering function (factor), f, and its behavior is shown schematically in *Figure 2.25*, left as a function of the phase angle.

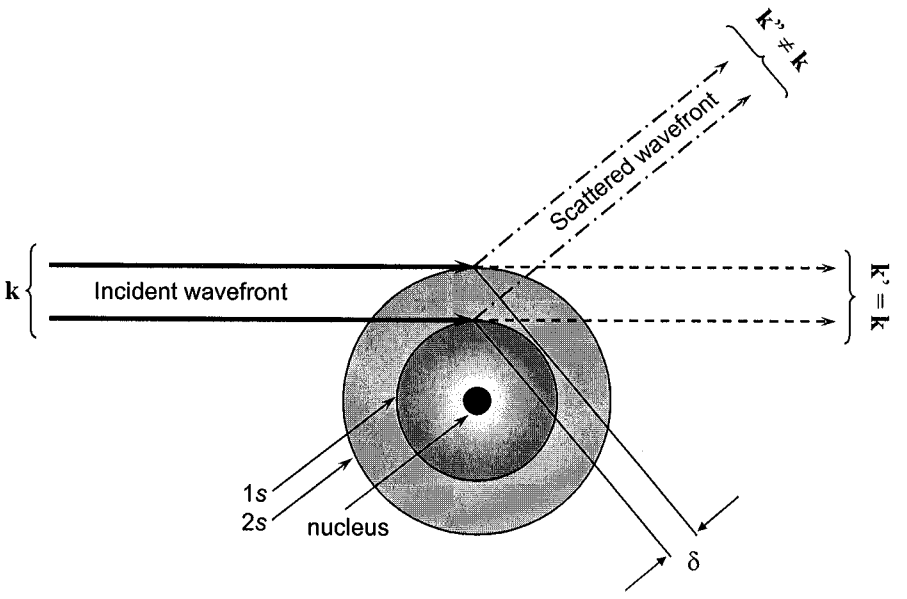


Figure 2.24. The schematic of the elastic scattering of x-rays by *s* electrons illustrating the introduction of a path difference, δ, into the wavefront with a propagation vector **k"**, when it is different from the propagation vector, **k**, of the incident beam. The distribution of electrons in two *s*-orbitals is determined from the corresponding wave functions.

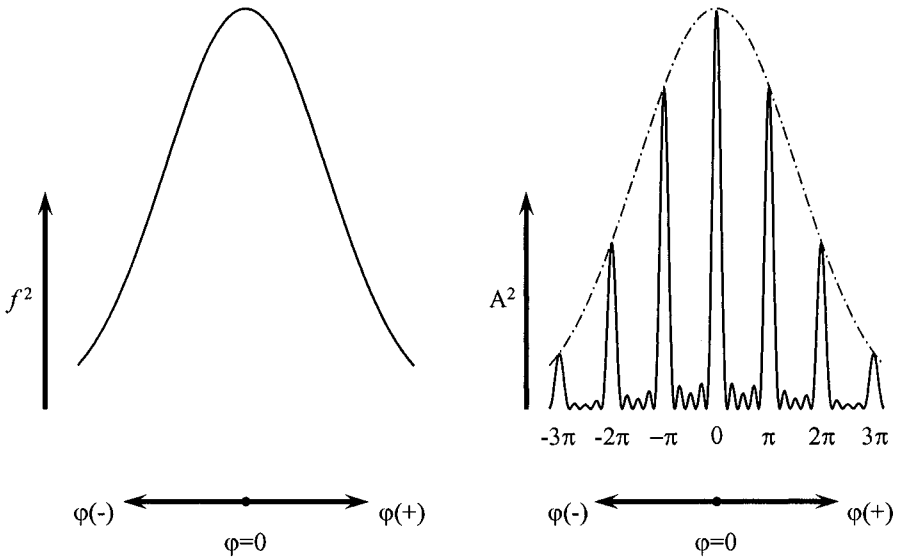


Figure 2.25. The schematic showing the dependence of the intensity scattered by an atom, i.e. the atomic scattering factor, $f^2 \propto A^2$, as a function of the phase angle (left), and the resultant decrease of the intensity of the diffraction pattern from the row of five regularly spaced atoms, also as a function of the phase angle (right).

Thus, when stationary, periodically arranged electrons are substituted by atoms, their diffraction pattern is the result of a superposition of the two functions, as shown in *Figure 2.25*, right. In other words, the amplitude squared of the diffraction pattern from a row of N atoms is a product of the interference function (Eq. 2.13) and the corresponding atomic scattering function squared, $f^2(\varphi)$:

$$I(\varphi) \propto f^2(\varphi)\frac{\sin^2 N\varphi}{\sin^2 \varphi} \tag{2.14}$$

It is worth noting that it is the radial distribution of core electrons in an atom, which is responsible for the reduction of the intensity when the diffraction angle increases. Thus, it is a specific feature observed in x-ray diffraction from ordered arrangements of atoms. If, for example, the diffraction of neutrons is of concern, they are scattered by nuclei, which may be considered as points. Hence, neutron scattering functions (factors) are independent of the diffraction angle and they remain constant for a given type of nuclei (also see *Table 2.2*).

2.5.3 Scattering by lattices

The interference function in Eq. 2.14 describes a discontinuous distribution of the scattered intensity in the diffraction space.[1] Assuming an infinite number of points in a one-dimensional periodic structure ($N \rightarrow \infty$), the distribution of the scattered intensity is a periodic delta-function (see above) and therefore, diffraction peaks occur only in specific points, which establish a one-dimensional lattice in the diffraction space. Hence, diffracted intensity is only significant at certain points, which are determined (also see Eq. 2.13, *Figure 2.23*, and *Figure 2.25*) from

$$I(\varphi) \propto f^2(\varphi)\frac{\sin^2 N\varphi}{\sin^2 \varphi} = f^2(\varphi)\frac{\sin^2 Nh\pi}{\sin^2 h\pi} \tag{2.15}$$

In three dimensions, a total of three integers (h, k and l)[2] are required to define the positions of intensity maxima in the diffraction space:

$$I(\varphi) \propto f^2(\varphi)\frac{\sin^2 N_1h\pi}{\sin^2 h\pi}\frac{\sin^2 N_2k\pi}{\sin^2 k\pi}\frac{\sin^2 N_3l\pi}{\sin^2 l\pi} \tag{2.16}$$

where N_1, N_2 and N_3 are the total numbers of the identical atoms in the corresponding directions.

On the other hand, when the unit cell contains more than one atom, the individual atomic scattering function $f(\varphi)$ should be replaced with scattering by the whole unit cell, since the latter is now the object that forms a periodic array. The scattering function of one unit cell, F, is called the structure factor or the structure amplitude. It accounts for scattering factors of all atoms in the unit cell together with other relevant atomic parameters. As a result, a diffraction pattern produced by a crystal lattice may be defined as

$$I(\varphi) \propto F^2(\varphi)\frac{\sin^2 U_1h\pi}{\sin^2 h\pi}\frac{\sin^2 U_2k\pi}{\sin^2 k\pi}\frac{\sin^2 U_3l\pi}{\sin^2 l\pi} \tag{2.17}$$

where U_1, U_2 and U_3 are the numbers of the unit cells in the corresponding directions.

The phase angle is a function of lattice spacing (*Figure 2.22*), which is a function of h, k and l. As we will see later (section 2.10), the structure factor

[1] Diffraction space, in which diffraction peaks are arranged into a lattice, is identical to a reciprocal space.

[2] The integers h, k and l are identical to Miller indices.

is also a function of the triplet of Miller indices (*hkl*). Hence, in general the intensities of discrete points (*hkl*) in the reciprocal space are given as

$$I(hkl) \propto F^2(hkl)\frac{\sin^2 U_1 h\pi}{\sin^2 h\pi}\frac{\sin^2 U_2 k\pi}{\sin^2 k\pi}\frac{\sin^2 U_3 l\pi}{\sin^2 l\pi} \tag{2.18}$$

The scattered intensity is nearly always measured in relative and not in absolute units, which necessarily introduces a proportionality coefficient, *C*. As we established before, when the phase angle is $n\pi$ (n is an integer), the corresponding interference functions in Eq. 2.18 are reduced to U_1^2, U_2^2 and U_3^2 and they become zero otherwise. Hence, assuming that the volume of a crystalline material producing a diffraction pattern remains constant (this is always ensured in a properly arranged experiment), the proportionality coefficient *C* can be substituted by a scale factor $K = CU_1^2U_2^2U_3^2$.

In addition to the scale factor, intensity scattered by a lattice is also subject to different geometrical effects,[1] *G*, which are various functions of the diffraction angle, θ. All things considered, the intensity scattered by a lattice may be given by the following equation:

$$I(hkl) = K \times G(\theta) \times F^2(hkl) \tag{2.19}$$

This is a very general equation for intensity of the individual diffraction (Bragg) peaks observed in a diffraction pattern of a crystalline substance, and it will be discussed in details in section 2.10, while the geometry of powder diffraction, i.e. the directions in which discrete peaks can be observed, is discussed in the following two sections.

2.6 Geometry of diffraction by lattices

Both direct and reciprocal spaces may be used to understand the geometry of diffraction by a lattice. Direct space concepts are intuitive, and therefore, we will begin our consideration using physical space. Conversely, reciprocal space is extremely useful in the visualization of diffraction patterns in general and from powders in particular. In this section, therefore, we also show the relationships between geometrical concepts of diffraction in physical and reciprocal spaces.

[1] One of these geometrical effects is the polarization factor introduced earlier in the Thomson's equation, see section 2.5.1 and the corresponding footnote (No. 3 on page 140).

2.6.1 Laue equations and Braggs' law

The geometry of diffraction from a lattice, or in other words the relationships between the directions of the incident and diffracted beams, was first given by Laue (see the footnote on page 31) in a form of three simultaneous equations, which are commonly known as Laue equations:

$$\begin{aligned} a(\cos\psi_1 - \cos\varphi_1) &= h\lambda \\ b(\cos\psi_2 - \cos\varphi_2) &= k\lambda \\ c(\cos\psi_3 - \cos\varphi_3) &= l\lambda \end{aligned} \qquad (2.20)$$

Here a, b and c are the dimensions of the unit cell; $\psi_{1\text{-}3}$ and $\varphi_{1\text{-}3}$ are the angles that the incident and diffracted beams, respectively, form with the parallel rows of atoms in three independent directions; the three integer indices h, k and l have the same meaning as in Eq. 2.18, i.e. they are unique for each diffraction peak and define the position of the peak in the reciprocal space (also see Chapter 1, section 1.15), and λ is the wavelength of the used radiation. The cosines, $\cos\psi_i$ and $\cos\varphi_i$, are known as the direction cosines of the incident and diffracted beams, respectively. According to the formulation given by Laue, sharp diffraction peaks can only be observed when all three equations in 2.20 are satisfied simultaneously.

Laue equations once again indicate that a periodic lattice produces diffraction maxima at specific angles, which are defined by both the lattice repeat distances (a, b, c) and the wavelength (λ). Laue equations give the most general representation of a three-dimensional diffraction pattern and they may be used in the form of Eq. 2.20 to describe the geometry of diffraction from a single crystal.

More useful in powder diffraction is the law formulated by W.H. Bragg and W.L. Bragg (see the footnote on page 31). It was introduced above (e.g. see Eq. 2.11) without an explanation, and we already know that it establishes certain relationships among the diffraction angle (Bragg angle), wavelength and interplanar spacing.

According to the Braggs, diffraction from a crystalline sample can be explained and visualized by using a simple notion of mirror reflection of the incident x-ray beam from a series of crystallographic planes. As established earlier (see Chapter 1, section 1.14.1), all planes with identical triplets of Miller indices are parallel to one another and they are equally spaced. Thus, each plane in a set (*hkl*) may be considered as a separate scattering object. The set is periodic in the direction perpendicular to the planes and the repeat distance in this direction is equal to the interplanar distance d_{hkl}. Diffraction from a set of equally spaced objects is only possible at specific angle(s) as

we already saw in section 2.5. The possible angles, θ, are established from Braggs' law, which is derived geometrically in *Figure 2.26.*

Consider an incident front of waves with parallel propagation vectors, which form an angle θ with the planes (*hkl*). In a mirror reflection, the reflected wavefront will also consist of parallel waves, which form the same angle θ with all planes. The path differences introduced between a pair of waves both before and after they are reflected by the neighboring planes, Δ, are determined by the interplanar distance as $\Delta = d_{hkl}\sin\theta$. The total path difference is 2Δ, and the constructive interference is observed when $2\Delta = n\lambda$, where n is integer and λ is the wavelength of the incident wavefront. This simple geometrical analysis results in the Braggs' law:

$$2d_{hkl}\sin\theta_{hkl} = n\lambda \tag{2.21}$$

The integer n is known as the order of reflection. Its value is taken as 1 in all calculations, since orders higher than one ($n > 1$) can always be represented by first order reflections ($n = 1$) from a set of different crystallographic planes with indices that are multiples of n because

$$d_{hkl} = nd_{nh,nk,nl} \tag{2.22}$$

and for any $n > 1$, Eq. 2.21 is simply transformed as follows:

$$2d_{hkl}\sin\theta_{hkl} = n\lambda \Rightarrow 2d_{nh,nk,nl}\sin\theta_{nh,nk,nl} = \lambda \tag{2.23}$$

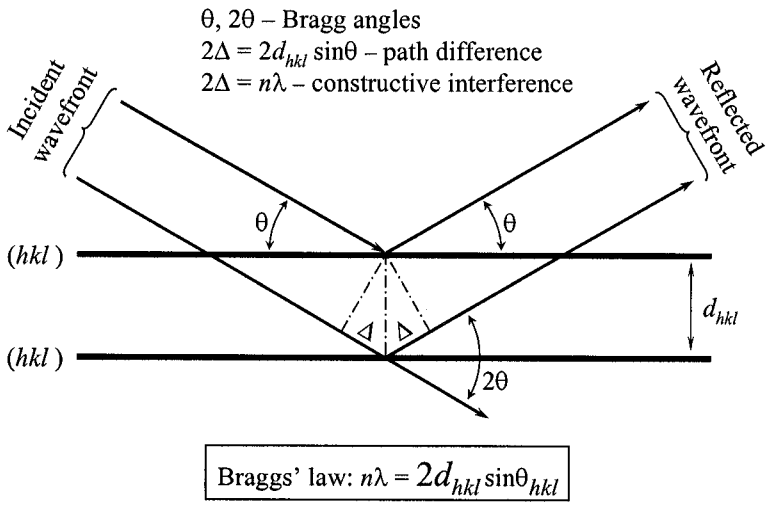


Figure 2.26. Geometrical illustration of the Braggs' law.

2.6.2 Reciprocal lattice and Ewald's sphere

The better visual representation of the phenomenon of diffraction has been introduced by Ewald (see the footnote on page 50). Consider an incident wave with a certain propagation vector, $\mathbf{k}_0$, and a wavelength, λ. If the length of $\mathbf{k}_0$ is selected as the inverse of the wavelength

$$|\mathbf{k}_0| = 1/\lambda \tag{2.24}$$

then the entire wave is fully characterized, and it is said that $\mathbf{k}_0$ is its wavevector. When the primary wave is scattered elastically, the wavelength remains constant. Thus, the scattered wave is characterized by a different wavevector, $\mathbf{k}_1$, which has the same length as $\mathbf{k}_0$:

$$|\mathbf{k}_1| = |\mathbf{k}_0| = 1/\lambda \tag{2.25}$$

The angle between $\mathbf{k}_0$ and $\mathbf{k}_1$ is 2θ (*Figure 2.27*, left). We now overlap these two wavevectors with a reciprocal lattice (*Figure 2.27*, right) such that the end of $\mathbf{k}_0$ coincides with the origin of the lattice. As shown by Ewald, diffraction in the direction of $\mathbf{k}_1$ occurs only when its end coincides with a point in the reciprocal lattice. Thus, considering that $\mathbf{k}_0$ and $\mathbf{k}_1$ have identical lengths regardless of the direction of $\mathbf{k}_1$ (the direction of $\mathbf{k}_0$ is fixed by the origin of the reciprocal lattice), their ends are equidistant from a common point and all possible orientations of $\mathbf{k}_1$ delineate a sphere in three dimensions. This sphere is called the Ewald's sphere, and it is shown schematically in *Figure 2.28*. Obviously, the radius of the Ewald's sphere is $1/\lambda$.

The simple geometrical arrangement of the reciprocal lattice, Ewald's sphere, and three vectors ($\mathbf{k}_0$, $\mathbf{k}_1$, and $\mathbf{d}^*_{hkl}$) in a straightforward and elegant fashion yields Braggs' equation. From both *Figure 2.27* and *Figure 2.28*, it is clear that vector $\mathbf{k}_1$ is a sum of two vectors, $\mathbf{k}_0$ and $\mathbf{d}^*_{hkl}$:

$$\mathbf{k}_1 = \mathbf{k}_0 + \mathbf{d}^*_{hkl} \tag{2.26}$$

Its length is known ($1/\lambda$) and its orientation, i.e. angle θ, is found by a simple algebraic transformation after recalling that $|\mathbf{d}^*| = 1/d$:

$$|\mathbf{k}_1| \sin\theta = |\mathbf{k}_0| \sin\theta = \frac{|\mathbf{d}^*|}{2} \Rightarrow 2d \sin\theta = \lambda \tag{2.27}$$

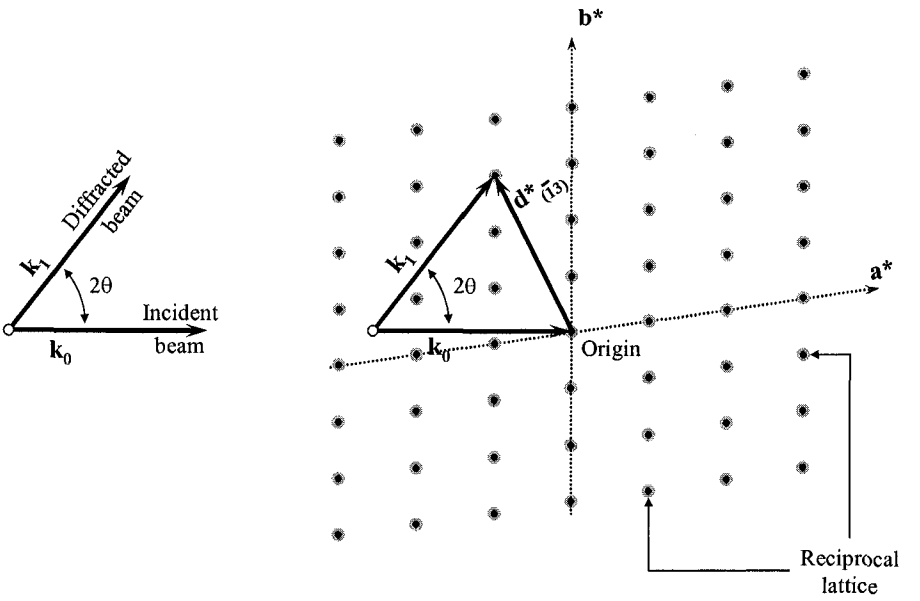


Figure 2.27. The incident ($\mathbf{k}_0$) and diffracted ($\mathbf{k}_1$) wavevectors originating from a common point (left) and the same two vectors overlapped with the two-dimensional reciprocal lattice, which is based on the unit vectors **a*** and **b*** (right). The origin of the reciprocal lattice is chosen at the end of $\mathbf{k}_0$. When diffraction occurs from a point in the reciprocal lattice, e.g. the point ($\bar{1}3$), the corresponding reciprocal lattice vector $\mathbf{d}^*_{hkl}$ [e.g. $\mathbf{d}^*_{(\bar{1}3)}$] extends between the ends of $\mathbf{k}_0$ and $\mathbf{k}_1$.

The Ewald's sphere and the reciprocal lattice are essential tools in the visualization of the three-dimensional diffraction patterns from single crystals, as will be illustrated in the next few paragraphs. They are also invaluable in the understanding of the geometry of diffraction from polycrystalline (powder) specimens, which will be explained in the next section.

Consider a stationary single crystal, in which the orientation of basis vectors of the reciprocal lattice is established by the orientation of the corresponding crystallographic directions with respect to the external shape of the crystal, as shown in *Figure 2.29*. Thus, only a few, if any (also see *Figure 2.28*), points of the reciprocal lattice will coincide with the surface of the Ewald's sphere when a randomly oriented single crystal is irradiated by monochromatic x-rays. This occurs because first, the sphere has a constant radius determined by the wavelength, and second, the distribution of the reciprocal lattice points in three dimensions is fixed by both the lattice parameters and the orientation of the crystal. The resultant diffraction pattern may reveal just a few diffraction peaks, as shown in *Figure 2.30*, left.

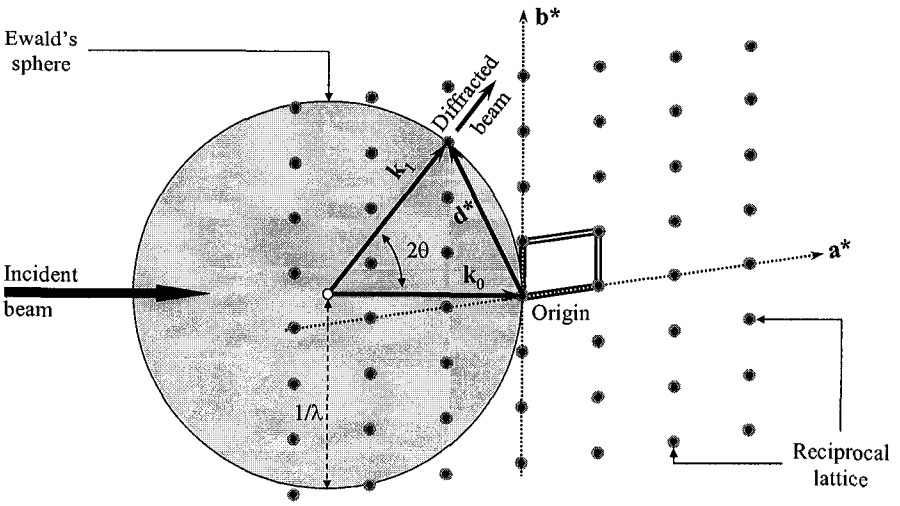


Figure 2.28. The visualization of diffraction using the Ewald's sphere with radius $1/\lambda$ and the two-dimensional reciprocal lattice with unit vectors **a*** and **b***. The origin of the reciprocal lattice is located on the surface of the sphere at the end of $\mathbf{k}_0$. Diffraction can only be observed when a reciprocal lattice point, other than the origin, intersects with the surface of the Ewald's sphere [e.g. the point $(\bar{1}3)$]. The incident and the diffracted beam wavevectors, $\mathbf{k}_0$ and $\mathbf{k}_1$, respectively, have common origin in the center of the Ewald's sphere. The two wavevectors are identical in length, which is the radius of the sphere. The unit cell of the reciprocal lattice is shown using double lines.

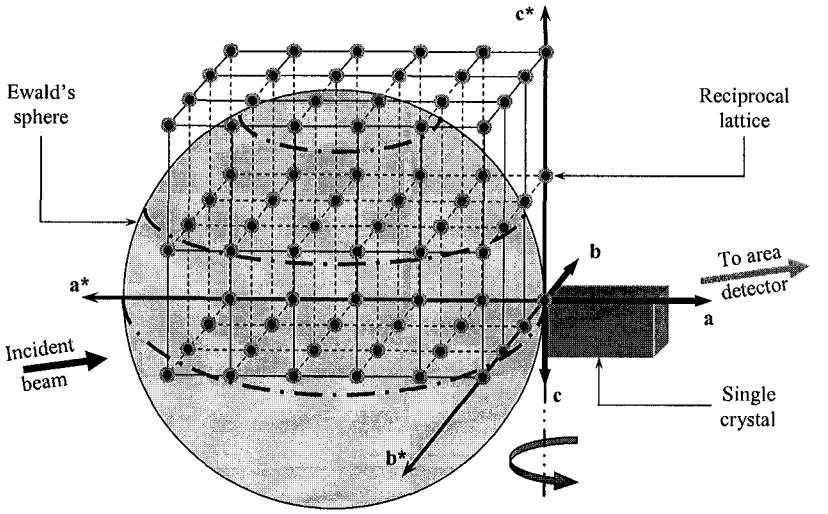


Figure 2.29. The illustration of a single crystal showing the orientations of the basis vectors corresponding to both the direct (**a**, **b** and **c**) and reciprocal (**a***, **b*** and **c***) lattices and the Ewald's sphere. The reciprocal lattice is infinite in all directions but only one octant (where $h > 0$, $k > 0$ and $l > 0$) is shown for clarity.

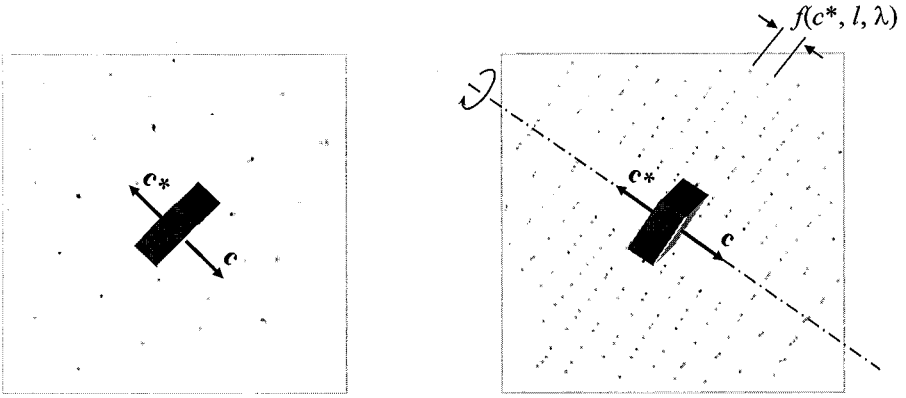


Figure 2.30. The two-dimensional diffraction patterns from stationary (left)[1] and rotating (right)[2] single crystals recorded using a CCD detector. The incident wavevector is perpendicular to the plane of the figure. The dash-dotted line on the right shows the rotation axis, which is collinear with **c***.

Many more reciprocal lattice points will be placed on the surface of the Ewald's sphere when the crystal is set in motion, for example, when it is rotated around an axis. The rotation of the crystal changes the orientation of the reciprocal lattice but the origin of the latter remains aligned with the end of the incident wavevector. Hence, all reciprocal lattice points with $d^* \leq 2/\lambda$ will coincide with the surface of the Ewald's sphere at different angular positions of the crystal. When the rotation axis is collinear with one of the crystallographic axes and is perpendicular to the incident beam, the reciprocal lattice points form planar intersections with the Ewald's sphere (*Figure 2.29*, dash-dotted lines). The planes are mutually parallel and equidistant, and the resultant diffraction pattern[3] will be similar to that illustrated in *Figure 2.30*, right.

[1] The single crystal is triclinic $Pb_3F_5(NO_3)$: space group $P\bar{1}$, a = 7.3796(6), b = 12.1470(9), c = 16.855(1) Å, α = 100.460(2), β = 90.076(1), γ = 95.517(1)°. [D.T. Tran, P.Y. Zavalij and S.R.J. Oliver. A cationic layered material for anion-exchange, J. Am. Chem. Soc. **124**, 3966 (2002)]

[2] The single crystal is orthorhombic, $FePO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$: space group Pbca, a = 9.867(1), b = 10.097(1), c = 8.705(1) Å. [Y. Song, P.Y. Zavalij, M. Suzuki, and M.S. Whittingham. New iron(III) phosphate phases: Crystal structure, electrochemical and magnetic properties, Inorg. Chem. **41**, 5778 (2002)].

[3] This type of the diffraction pattern enables one to determine the lattice parameter of the crystal in the direction along the axis of rotation. It is based on the following geometrical consideration: the distance between the planar cross-sections of the Ewald's sphere in *Figure 2.29* equals c^*; the corresponding diffraction peaks are grouped into lines (see *Figure 2.30*, right), and the distance between the neighboring lines is a function of c^*, the distance from the crystal to the detector, l, and the wavelength, λ.

2.7 Origin of the powder diffraction pattern

A different situation is observed in the case of diffraction from powders or from polycrystalline specimens, i.e. when multiple single crystals (crystallites or grains) are irradiated simultaneously by a monochromatic incident beam. When the number of grains in the irradiated volume is large and their orientations are completely random, the same is true for the reciprocal lattices associated with each crystallite. Thus, the ends of the identical reciprocal lattice vectors, $\mathbf{d}^*_{hkl}$, become arranged on the surface of the Ewald's sphere in a circle perpendicular to the incident wavevector, $\mathbf{k}_0$. The corresponding scattered wavevectors, $\mathbf{k}_1$, will be aligned along the surface of the cone, as shown schematically in *Figure 2.31*. The apex of the cone coincides with the center of the Ewald's sphere, the cone axis is parallel to $\mathbf{k}_0$, and the solid cone angle is 4θ.

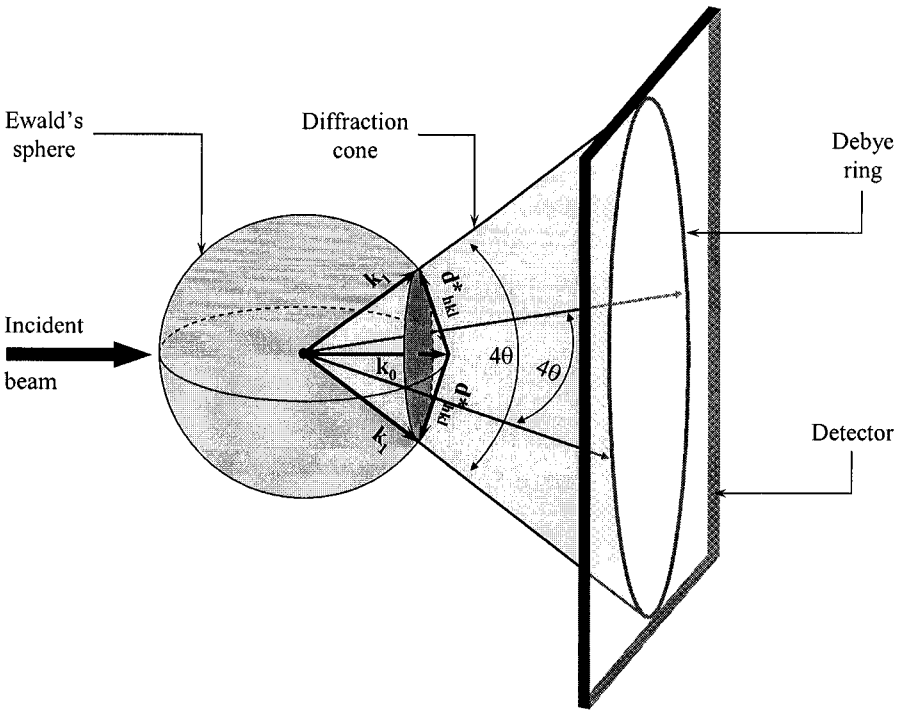


Figure 2.31. The origin of the powder diffraction cone as the result of the infinite number of the completely randomly oriented identical reciprocal lattice vectors, $\mathbf{d}^*_{hkl}$, forming a circle with their ends placed on the surface of the Ewald's sphere, thus producing the powder diffraction cone and the corresponding Debye ring on the flat screen (film or area detector). The detector is perpendicular to both the direction of the incident beam and cone axis, and the radius of the Debye ring in this geometry is proportional to $\tan 2\theta$.

Assuming that the number of crystallites approaches infinity (the randomness of their orientations has been postulated in the previous paragraph), the density of the scattered wavevectors, $\mathbf{k}_1$, becomes constant on the surface of the cone. The diffracted intensity will therefore, be constant around the circumference of the cone base or, when measured by a planar area detector as shown in *Figure 2.31*, around the ring, which the cone base forms with the plane of the detector. Similar rings but with different intensities and diameters will be formed by other independent reciprocal lattice vectors, and these are commonly known as the Debye rings.[1]

The appearance of eight diffraction cones when polycrystalline copper powder is irradiated by the monochromatic Cu $K\alpha_1$ radiation is shown schematically in *Figure 2.32*. All Bragg peaks, possible in the range $0° < 2\theta < 180°$, are also listed with the corresponding Miller indices and relative intensities in *Table 2.6*.

Table 2.6. Bragg peaks observed from a polycrystalline copper using Cu $K\alpha_1$ radiation.[2]

h k l	I/I_0	2θ (°)
1 1 1	100	43.298
0 0 2	46	50.434
0 2 2	20	74.133
1 1 3	17	89.934
2 2 2	5	95.143
0 0 4	3	116.923
1 3 3	9	136.514
0 2 4	8	144.723

Assuming that the diffracted intensity is distributed evenly around the base of each cone (see the postulations made above), there is usually no need to measure the intensity of the entire Debye ring. Hence, in a conventional powder diffraction experiment, the measurements are performed only along a narrow rectangle centered at the circumference of the equatorial plane of the Ewald's sphere, as shown in *Figure 2.32* and indicated by the arc with an

[1] In this geometry (flat detector perpendicular to the incident beam placed behind the sample) it is fundamentally impossible to measure intensity scattered at $2\theta \geq 90°$. One alternative is to place the detector between the focal point of the x-ray tube and the sample; this enables to measure intensity scattered at $2\theta > 90°$. In either case, when diffraction occurs at $2\theta = 90°$, the measurement is impossible ($\tan 90° = \infty$). Furthermore when $2\theta \cong 90°$, the size of a flat detector becomes prohibitively large. For practical measurements, a flat detector may be tilted at any angle with respect to the propagation vector of the incident beam. Furthermore, a flexible image plate detector may be arranged as a cylinder with its axis perpendicular to the incident wavevector and traversing the location of the specimen, which facilitates simultaneous measurement of the entire powder diffraction pattern.

[2] The data are taken from the ICDD powder diffraction file, record No. 4-836: H.E. Swanson, E. Tatge, National Bureau of Standards (US), Circular 359, 1 (1953).

arrow marked as 2θ. Because of this, only one variable axis (2θ) is fundamentally required in powder diffractometry, yet the majority of instruments have two independently or jointly controlled axes. The latter is done due to a variety of reasons, such as the limits imposed by the geometry, more favorable focusing, particular application, etc. More details about the geometry of modern powder diffractometers is given in Chapter 3.

In powder diffraction, the scattered intensity is customarily represented as a function of a single independent variable – Bragg angle – 2θ, as modeled in *Figure 2.33* for a polycrystalline copper. This type of the plot is standard and it is called the powder diffraction pattern or the histogram. In some instances, the diffracted intensity may be plotted versus the interplanar distance, d, the Q–value ($Q = 1/d^2 = d^{*2}$) or $\sin\theta/\lambda$.

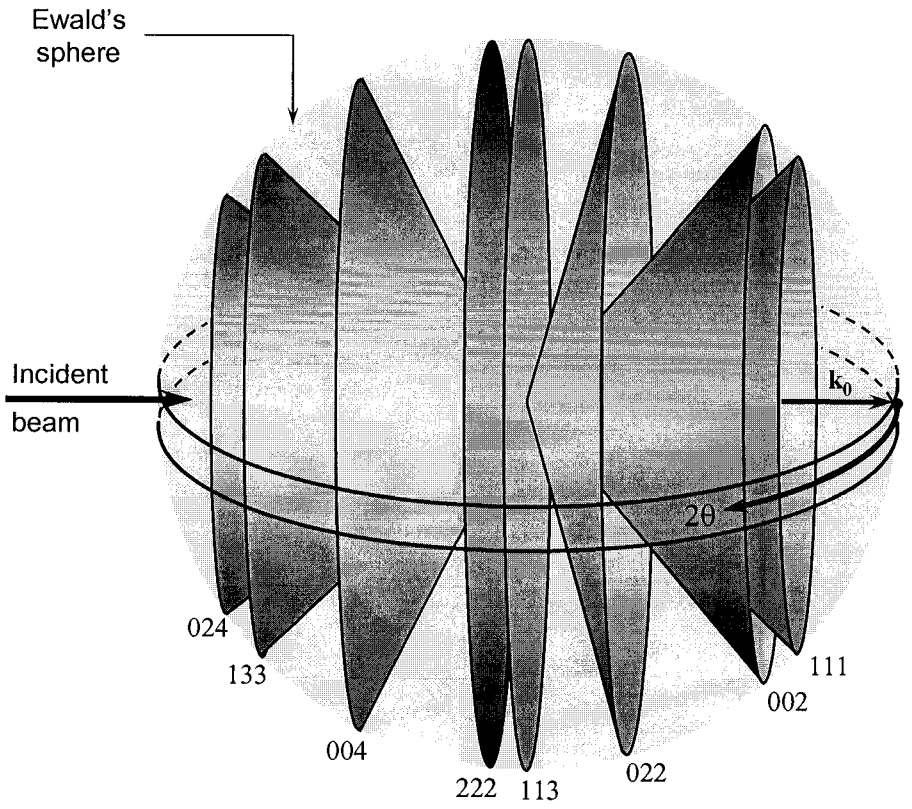


Figure 2.32. The schematic of the powder diffraction cones produced by a polycrystalline copper sample using Cu $K\alpha_1$ radiation. The differences in the relative intensities of various Bragg peaks (diffraction cones) are not discriminated, and they may be found in *Table 2.6.* Each cone is marked with the corresponding triplet of Miller indices.

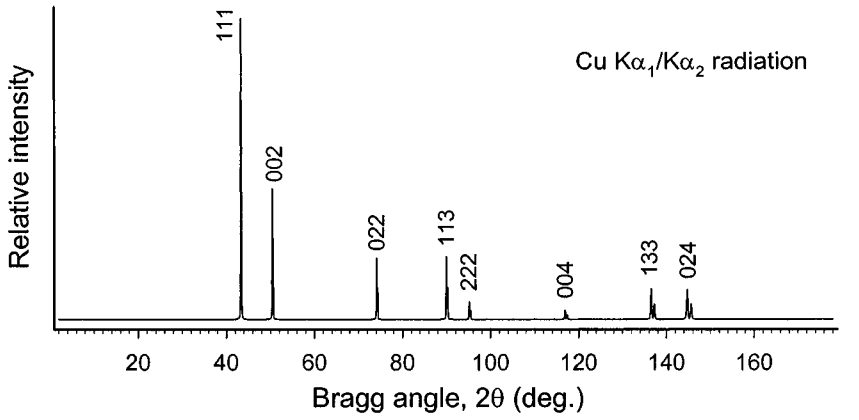


Figure 2.33. The simulated powder diffraction pattern of copper (space group Fm3m, a = 3.615 Å, CuKα_1/Kα_2 radiation, Cu atom in 4(a) position with $x = 0, y = 0, z = 0$).

The scattered intensity is usually represented as the total number of the accumulated counts, counting rate (counts per second – cps) or in arbitrary units. Regardless of which units are chosen to plot the intensity, the patterns are visually identical because the intensity scale remains linear and because the intensity measurements are normally relative, not absolute. In rare instances, the intensity is plotted as a common or a natural logarithm, or a square root of the total number of the accumulated counts in order to better visualize both strong and weak Bragg peaks on the same plot. The use of these two non-liner intensity scales, however, always increases the visibility of the noise (i.e. highlights the presence of statistical counting errors). A few examples of the non-conventional representation of powder diffraction patterns are found in the next section.

In the previous two sections, we assumed that the diffracted intensity is observed as infinitely narrow diffraction maxima (delta functions). In reality, the Ewald's sphere has finite thickness due to wavelength aberrations, and reciprocal lattice points are far from infinitesimal shapeless points – they may be reasonably imagined as small diffuse spheres (do not forget that the reciprocal lattice itself is not real and it is nothing else than a useful mathematical concept). Therefore, Bragg peaks always have non-zero widths as functions of 2θ, which is illustrated quite well in *Figure 2.34* and *Figure 2.35* by the powder diffraction pattern of LaB_6.[1] The data were collected using Mo Kα radiation on a Bruker SmartApex diffractometer equipped with a flat CCD detector placed perpendicular to the primary beam. This figure also serves as an excellent experimental confirmation of our conclusions made at the beginning of this section (e.g. see *Figure 2.31* and *Figure 2.32*).

[1] NIST standard reference material, SRM 660 (see http://srmcatalog.nist.gov/).

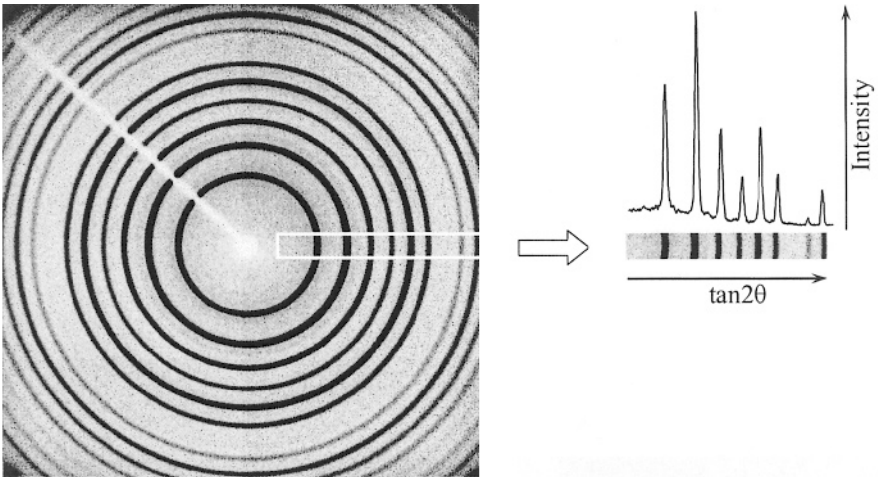


Figure 2.34. Left – the x-ray diffraction pattern of a polycrystalline LaB_6 obtained using Mo Kα radiation and recorded using a flat CCD area detector placed perpendicular to the incident beam wavevector (compare with *Figure 2.31* and *Figure 2.32*). The white box delineates the area in which the scattered intensity was integrated from the center of the image towards its edge. Right – the resultant intensity as a function of tan2θ shown together with the area over which the integration has been carried out.

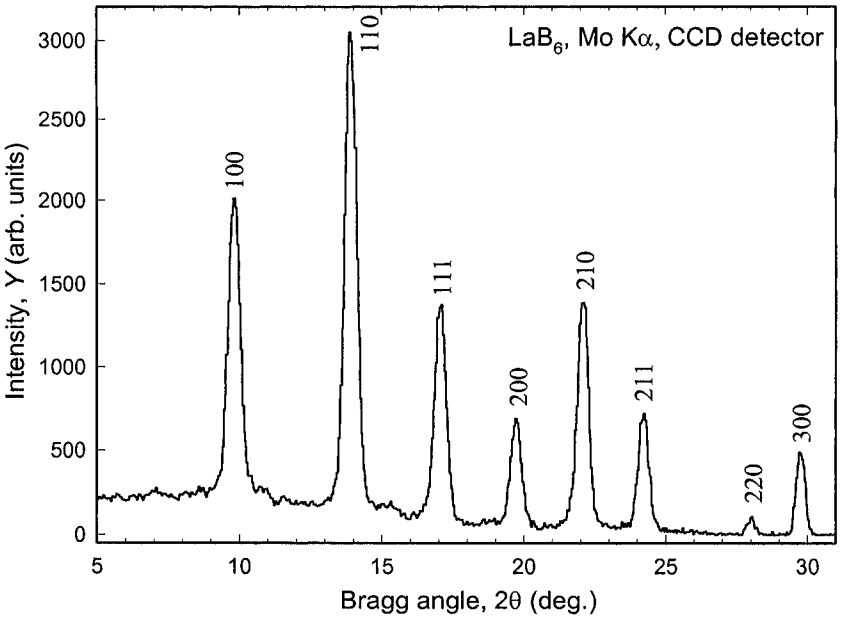


Figure 2.35. The powder diffraction pattern of the polycrystalline LaB_6 as intensity versus 2θ obtained by the integration of the rectangular area from the two-dimensional diffraction pattern shown in *Figure 2.34*.

As shown in *Figure 2.34*, when diffraction cones, produced by the LaB_6 powder, intersect with the flat detector placed perpendicularly to the incident wavevector, they create a set of concentric Debye rings. As in a typical powder diffractometer, only a narrow band has been scanned and the result of the integration is also shown in *Figure 2.34* as the scattered intensity versus tan2θ (note, that the radial coordinate of the detector is tan2θ and not 2θ). The resultant diffraction pattern is shown in the standard format as relative intensity versus 2θ in *Figure 2.35*, where each Bragg peak is labeled with the corresponding Miller indices.

It is worth noting that the diffractometer used in this experiment is a single crystal diffractometer, which was not designed to take full advantage of focusing of the scattered beam. As a result, the Bragg peaks shown in *Figure 2.35* are quite broad and the $K\alpha_1/\alpha_2$ doublet is unresolved even when 2θ approaches 30°. As we will see in Chapter 3 (e.g. see *Figure 3.37*) a much better resolution is possible in high resolution powder diffractometers, where the doublet becomes resolved at much lower Bragg angles.

2.7.1 Representation of powder diffraction patterns

In a typical experiment the intensity, diffracted by a polycrystalline sample, is measured as a function of Bragg angle, 2θ. Hence, powder diffraction patterns are usually plotted in the form of the measured intensity, *Y*, as the dependent variable versus the Bragg angle as the independent variable; see *Figure 2.36*, top and *Figure 2.37*a, c. In rare instances, for example when there are just a few very intense Bragg peaks and all others are quite weak, or when it is necessary to directly compare diffraction patterns collected from the same material using different wavelengths, the scales of one or both axes may be modified for better viewing and easier comparison.

When the first is true (i.e. there are few extremely strong Bragg peaks while all others are weak), the vertical axis can be calibrated as a logarithm of intensity (*Figure 2.36*, middle) or its square root (*Figure 2.36*, bottom). This changes the scale and enables better visualization of the low-intensity features. In the example shown in *Figure 2.36*, the middle (logarithmic) plot reveals all weak Bragg peaks in addition to the nonlinearity of the background and the details of the intensity distribution around the bases of the strongest peaks. The $Y^{1/2}$ scale is equivalent to the plot of statistical errors of the measured intensities (see Chapter 3, section 3.7.1), in addition to better visualization of weak Bragg peaks.

Various horizontal scales alternative to the Bragg angle, see *Figure 2.37*, are usually wavelength-independent and their use is mostly dictated by special circumstances.

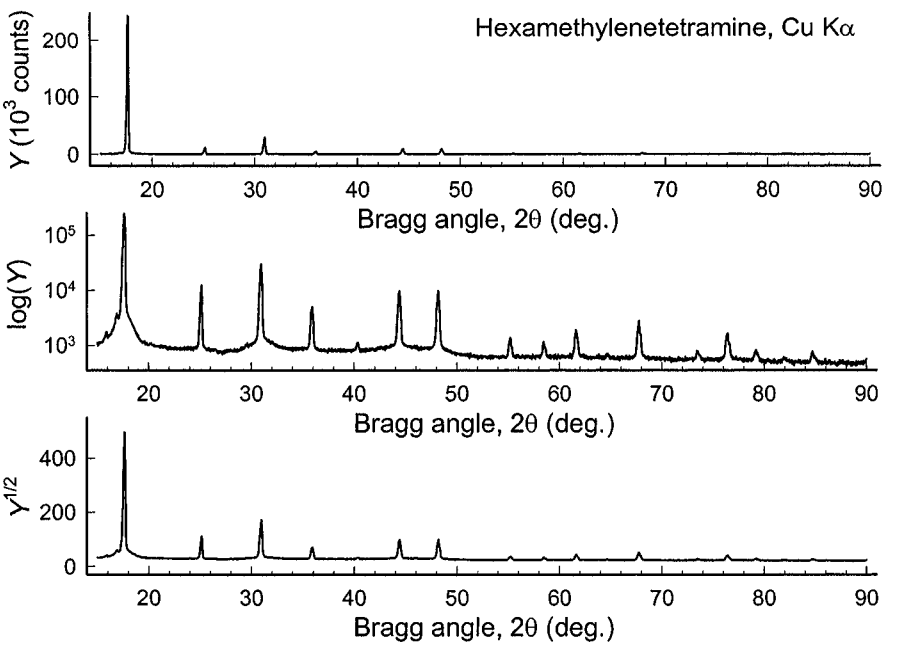


Figure 2.36. The powder diffraction pattern[1] of hexamethylenetetramine collected using Cu Kα radiation and plotted as the measured intensity in counts (top), common logarithm (middle), and square root (bottom) of the total number of registered photon counts versus 2θ.

For example, *d*-spacing (*Figure 2.37*e) is most commonly used in the time-of-flight (TOF) experiments: according to Eq. 2.1, the wavelength is the inverse of the velocity of the particle (neutron). The time-of-flight from the specimen to the detector is therefore, directly proportional to *d*. This scale, however, reduces the visual resolution in the low *d* range (equivalent to high Bragg angle range) when used in combination with x-ray diffraction data. In TOF experiments, the actual resolution of the diffraction pattern is reduced at low *d*, i.e. at high neutron velocities.

The second scale is $1/d = 2\sin\theta/\lambda$ (see *Figure 2.37*d and f). It results in only slightly reduced resolution at high Bragg angles when compared to the 2θ scale. Recalling that $1/d = d^*$, this type of the plot is a one-dimensional projection of the reciprocal lattice and it is best suited for direct comparison of powder diffraction data collected using different wavelengths. The similarity of these two diffraction patterns is especially impressive after comparing them when both are plotted versus 2θ (*Figure 2.37*a, c).

[1] Powder diffraction data were collected on a Scintag XDS2000 powder diffractometer using Cu Kα radiation and cooled Ge(Li) solid-state detector. The counting time was 10 s in every point; the data were collected with a 0.025° step of 2θ.

The third is the Q-values scale, where $Q = 1/d^2 = 4\sin^2\theta/\lambda^2$, which provides the best resolution at high Bragg angles when compared to other wavelength-independent scales, see *Figure 2.37*b. This scale results in the equally spaced Bragg peaks when the crystal system is cubic (see Chapter 5, section 5.7). In cases of lower symmetry crystal systems, only certain types of Bragg peaks are equally spaced along the Q-axis and in some instances, the Q-scaled powder diffraction pattern may be used to assign indices and/or examine the relationships between the lattice parameters of the material with the unknown crystal structure.

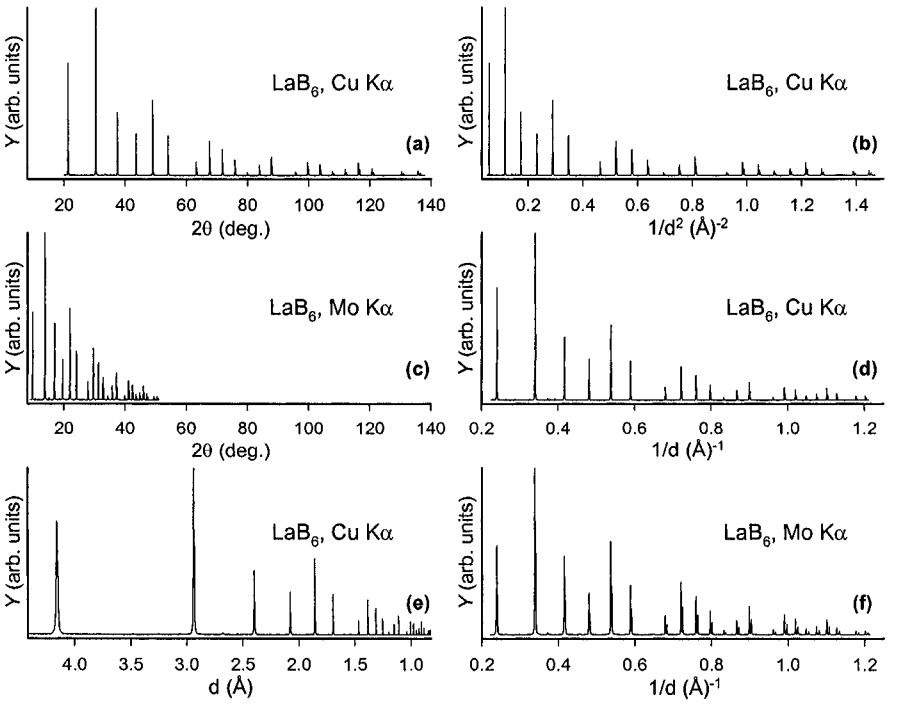


Figure 2.37. Two powder diffraction patterns of LaB_6 collected using different wavelengths with the scattered intensity plotted versus different independent variables.[1] Each plot contains the same number of Bragg peaks, which can be observed below $2\theta \cong 140°$ when using Cu Kα radiation.

[1] Powder diffraction data were collected on a Scintag XDS2000 powder diffractometer using Cu Kα radiation and cooled Ge(Li) solid-state detector and on a Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode powder diffractometer using Mo Kα radiation with diffracted beam monochromator and scintillation detector. The data were collected with a 0.02° step of 2θ using Cu Kα and with a 0.01° step using Mo Kα radiations.

2.7.2 Understanding of powder diffraction patterns

The best way to appreciate and understand how structural information is encoded in a powder diffraction pattern is to consider the latter as a set of discrete diffraction peaks (Bragg reflections) superimposed over a continuous background. Although the background may be used to extract information about the crystallinity of the specimen and few other parameters about the material, we will be concerned with the Bragg peaks and not with the background. In the majority of powder diffraction applications the background is an inconvenience, which has to be dealt with, and generally every attempt is made to achieve its minimization during the experiment.

Disregarding the background, the structure of a typical powder diffraction pattern may be described by the following components: *positions*, *intensities* and *shapes* of multiple Bragg reflections, e.g. compare *Figure 2.36*a and *Figure 2.37*a. Each of the three components italicized above contains information about the crystal structure of the material, the properties of the specimen (sample) and the instrumental parameters, as shown in *Table 2.7*. Some of these parameters have the key role in defining a particular component of the powder diffraction pattern, while others result in various distortion(s) as also indicted in *Table 2.7*. It is worth noting that this table is not comprehensive and additional parameters may affect positions, intensities and shapes of Bragg peaks.

Table 2.7. Powder diffraction pattern as a function of various crystal structure, specimen and instrumental parameters.[a]

Pattern component	Crystal structure	Specimen property	Instrumental parameter
Peak position	**Unit cell parameters:** (a,b,c,α,β,γ)	*Absorption*	**Radiation (wavelength)**
		Porosity	*Instrument/sample alignment*
			Axial divergence of the beam
Peak intensity	**Atomic parameters** (x, y, z, B, etc.)	*Preferred orientation*	Geometry and configuration
		Absorption	**Radiation (Lorentz, polarization)**
		Porosity	
Peak shape	*Crystallinity*	*Grain size*	**Radiation (spectral purity)**
	Disorder	*Strain*	**Geometry**
	Defects	*Stress*	**Beam conditioning**

[a] Key parameters are shown in **bold**. Parameters that may have a significant influence are shown in *italic*.

In addition to the influence brought about by the instrumental parameters, there are two kinds of crystallographic (structural) parameters, which essentially define the structure of every powder diffraction pattern. These are the unit cell dimensions and the atomic structure (both the unit cell content and spatial distributions of atoms in the unit cell). Thus, a powder diffraction pattern can be constructed (or simulated) as follows:

1. Positions of Bragg peaks are established from the Braggs' law as a function of the wavelength and the interplanar distances, i.e. *d*-spacing. The latter can be easily calculated from the known unit cell dimensions (section 2.8). For instance, in the case of the orthorhombic crystal system permissible Bragg angles are found from

$$2\theta_{hkl} = 2\arcsin\left(\frac{\lambda}{2d_{hkl}}\right), \quad \text{where} \quad d_{hkl} = \left(\frac{h^2}{a^2} + \frac{k^2}{b^2} + \frac{l^2}{c^2}\right)^{-1/2} \tag{2.28}$$

Since h, k and l are integers, both the resultant d-values and Bragg angles vary discontinuously as functions of Miller indices and unit cell dimensions. Bragg angles are also dependent on the employed wavelength. The example of the discontinuous distribution of Bragg angles is shown using short vertical bars of equal length in *Figure 2.38*a.

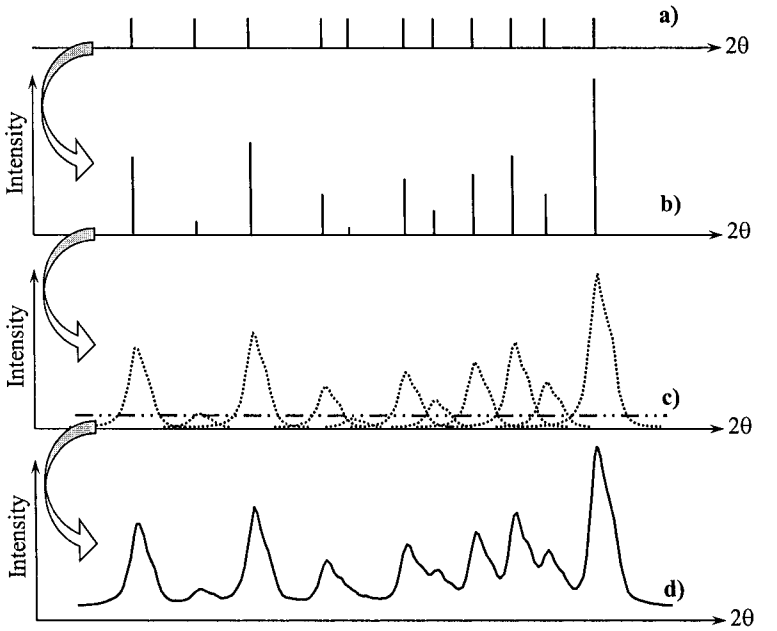


Figure 2.38. The appearance of the powder diffraction pattern: a) – only Bragg peak positions (e.g. see Eq. 2.28) are represented by the vertical bars of equal length; b) – in addition to peak positions, their intensities are indicated by using the bars with variable lengths (the higher the intensity, the longer the bar); c) – peak shapes have been introduced by convoluting individual intensities with appropriate peak shape functions, and a constant background has been indicated by the dash-double dotted line; d) – the resultant powder diffraction pattern is the sum of all components shown separately in (c), i.e. discrete but partially overlapped peaks and continuous background.

2. As noted in section 2.5, the intensity of diffraction maxima is a function of the periodicity of the scattering centers (unit cells) and therefore, the intensities can be calculated for individual Bragg peaks from the structural model. The latter requires the knowledge of the coordinates of atoms in the unit cell together with other relevant atomic and geometrical parameters. The influence of the varying intensity on the formation of the powder diffraction pattern is illustrated using the varying lengths of the bars in *Figure 2.38*b – the longer the bar, the higher the intensity. Although not shown in *Figure 2.38*, certain combinations of Miller indices may have zero or negligibly small intensity and, therefore, the corresponding Bragg reflections disappear or become unrecognizable in the diffraction pattern.
3. The shape of Bragg peaks is usually represented by a bell-like function – the so-called peak shape function. The latter is weakly dependent on the crystal structure and is the convolution of various individual functions, established by the instrumental parameters and to some extent by the properties of the specimen, see *Table 2.7*. The shape of each peak can be modeled using instrumental and specimen characteristics, although in reality *ab initio* modeling is difficult and most often it is performed using various empirically selected peak shape functions and parameters. If the radiation is not strictly monochromatic, i.e. when both $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ components are present in the diffracted beam, the resultant peak should include contributions from both components as shown in *Figure 2.39*.

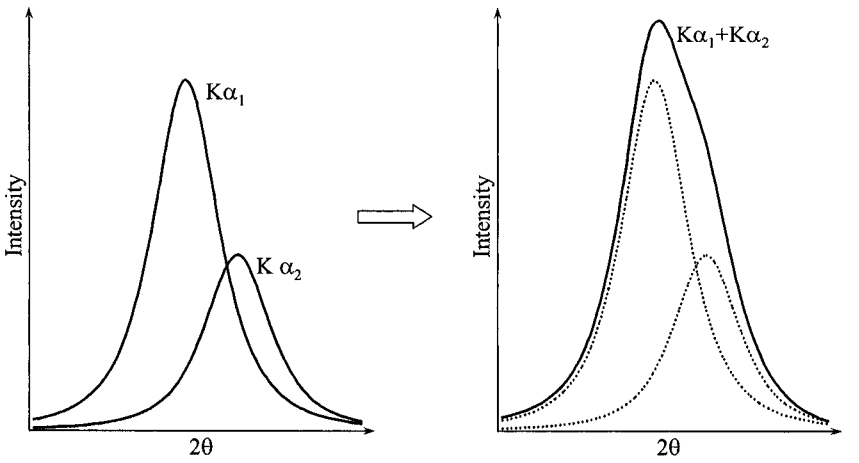


Figure 2.39. The two individual peak shape functions corresponding to monochromatic $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ wavelengths (left) and the resulting combined peak shape function for a $K\alpha_1/K\alpha_2$ doublet as the sum of two peaks (right). Since both $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ peaks correspond to the same $\mathbf{d}^*_{hkl}$, their positions, θ_1 and θ_2, are related as $\sin\theta_1/\lambda K\alpha_1 = \sin\theta_2/\lambda K\alpha_2$ (see Eq. 2.21), while their areas (intensities) are related as 2 to 1 (see *Figure 2.5*).

Thus, vertical bars with different lengths are replaced by the corresponding peak shape functions, as shown in *Figure 2.38*c. It should be noted that although the relative intensities of different Bragg reflections may be adequately represented by the lengths of the bars, this is no longer correct for peak heights: the bars are one-dimensional and have zero area, but peak area is a function of the full width at half maximum, which varies with Bragg angle. Individual peaks should have their areas proportional to intensities of individual Bragg reflections (see section 2.10.1).

4. Finally, the resultant powder diffraction pattern is a sum of the individual peak shape functions and a background function as illustrated in *Figure 2.38*d, where the background function was assumed constant for clarity.

It is generally quite easy to simulate the powder diffraction pattern when the crystal structure of the material is known (the peak shape parameters are empirical and the background, typical for a given instrument, may be measured). The inverse process, i.e. the determination of the crystal structure from powder diffraction data is much more complex. First, individual Bragg peaks should be located on the pattern, and both their positions and intensities determined by fitting to a certain peak shape function, including the background. Second, peak positions are used to establish the unit cell symmetry, parameters and content. Third, peak intensities are used to determine space group symmetry and coordinates of atoms. Fourth, the entire diffraction pattern is used to refine all crystallographic and peak shape function parameters, including the background. All these issues will be discussed and illustrated in Chapters 4 through 7.

2.8 Positions of powder diffraction peaks

As was discussed earlier in general terms, diffraction peaks appear at specific angles due to scattering by periodic lattices. Furthermore, as shown by the Braggs and confirmed by Ewald (section 2.6), these angles are a discontinuous function of the interplanar distances (lengths of independent reciprocal lattice vectors) and the wavelength (radius of the Ewald's sphere). Therefore, both the unit cell dimensions and the wavelength are the two major factors that determine Bragg angles. As we will also see below, the observed peak positions can be distorted by instrumental and specimen parameters.

2.8.1 Peak positions as a function of unit cell dimensions

The interplanar distance is a function of the unit cell parameters and Miller indices, h, k and l, which fully describe every set of crystallographic

planes. The corresponding formulae for the inverse square of the interplanar distance, $1/d^2$, are usually given separately for each crystal system,[1] as shown in Eqs. 2.29 to 2.34.

Cubic: $$\frac{1}{d^2} = \frac{h^2 + k^2 + l^2}{a^2} \tag{2.29}$$

Tetragonal: $$\frac{1}{d^2} = \frac{h^2 + k^2}{a^2} + \frac{l^2}{c^2} \tag{2.30}$$

Hexagonal: $$\frac{1}{d^2} = \frac{4}{3}\frac{h^2 + hk + k^2}{a^2} + \frac{l^2}{c^2} \tag{2.31}$$

Orthorhombic: $$\frac{1}{d^2} = \frac{h^2}{a^2} + \frac{k^2}{b^2} + \frac{l^2}{c^2} \tag{2.32}$$

Monoclinic: $$\frac{1}{d^2} = \frac{h^2}{a^2 \sin^2\beta} + \frac{k^2}{b^2} + \frac{l^2}{c^2 \sin^2\beta} + \frac{2hl\cos\beta}{ac\sin^2\beta} \tag{2.33}$$

Triclinic:
$$\frac{1}{d^2} = \left[\frac{h^2}{a^2\sin^2\alpha} + \frac{2kl}{bc}(\cos\beta\cos\gamma - \cos\alpha) + \frac{k^2}{b^2\sin^2\beta} + \frac{2hl}{ac}(\cos\alpha\cos\gamma - \cos\beta) + \frac{l^2}{c^2\sin^2\gamma} + \frac{2hk}{ab}(\cos\alpha\cos\beta - \cos\gamma)\right] / (1 - \cos^2\alpha - \cos^2\beta - \cos^2\gamma + 2\cos\alpha\cos\beta\cos\gamma) \tag{2.34}$$

[1] Primitive rhombohedral lattices, i.e. when $a = b = c$ and $\alpha = \beta = \gamma \neq 90°$ are nearly always treated in the hexagonal basis with rhombohedral (R) lattice centering. In a primitive rhombohedral lattice $\frac{1}{d^2} = \frac{(h^2 + k^2 + l^2)\sin^2\alpha + 2(hk + kl + hl)(\cos^2\alpha - \cos\alpha)}{a^2(1 - 3\cos^2\alpha + 2\cos^3\alpha)}$.

The most complex formula is the one for the triclinic crystal system, in which a total of six independent parameters are required to describe the unit cell dimensions. On the other hand, Eq. 2.34 is the most general, since Eqs. 2.29 to 2.33 are easily derived from it. For example, after introducing the corresponding relationships between the unit cell dimensions for the tetragonal crystal system (i.e. $a = b \neq c$, $\alpha = \beta = \gamma = 90°$) into Eq. 2.34, the latter is straightforwardly simplified to Eq. 2.30. The simplified formulae are only useful in manual calculations but when the list of possible d's (or θ's) is generated using a computer program, it makes much more sense to employ only the most general equation since obviously the resultant $1/d^2$ values will be correct upon the substitution of the appropriate numerical values into Eq. 2.34.

The usefulness of the reciprocal lattice concept may be once again demonstrated here by illustrating how easily Eqs. 2.29 to 2.34 can be derived in the reciprocal space employing reciprocal lattice vectors. When the derivation is performed in the direct space the geometrical considerations become quite complex.

Consider a reciprocal lattice as shown schematically in *Figure 2.40*. Any reciprocal lattice vector, $\mathbf{d}^*_{hkl}$, is a sum of three non-coplanar vectors ($\mathbf{a}^*$, $\mathbf{b}^*$ and $\mathbf{c}^*$ are the unit vectors of the reciprocal lattice and h, k and l are integers):

$$\mathbf{d}^*_{hkl} = h\mathbf{a}^* + k\mathbf{b}^* + l\mathbf{c}^* \tag{2.35}$$

For example, in the orthorhombic crystal system $\alpha^* = \beta^* = \gamma^* = 90°$. Hence, Eq. 2.35 is transformed into

$$(d^*_{hkl})^2 = (ha^*)^2 + (kb^*)^2 + (lc^*)^2 \tag{2.36}$$

and Eq. 2.32 is obtained immediately because $d^* = 1/d$, $a^* = 1/a$, $b^* = 1/b$ and $a^* = 1/c$.

In the general case (triclinic crystal system), the equivalent of Eq. 2.36 is more complex

$$\begin{aligned} d^{*2} = {} & h^2a^{*2} + k^2b^{*2} + l^2c^{*2} + \\ & 2hka^*b^*\cos\gamma^* + 2hla^*c^*\cos\beta^* + 2klb^*c^*\cos\alpha^* \end{aligned} \tag{2.37}$$

but it becomes considerably more intuitive and easier to understand in terms of reciprocal lattice parameters than Eq. 2.34, which is given in terms of direct unit cell dimensions.

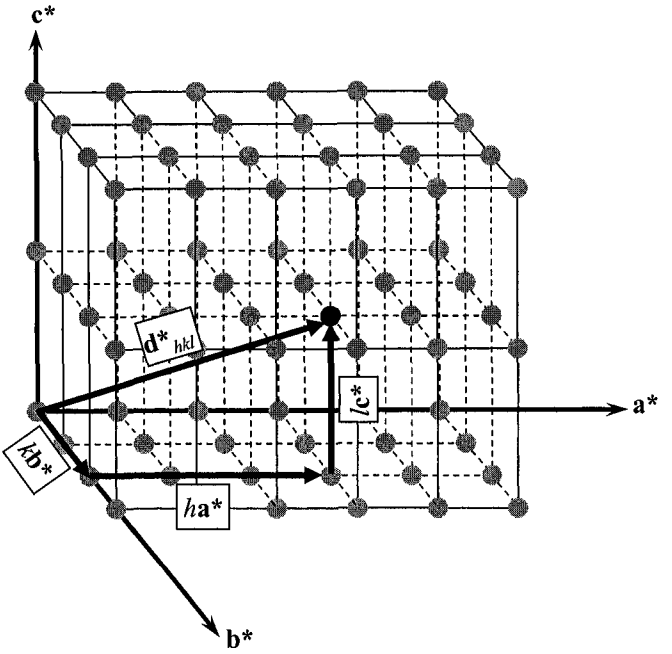


Figure 2.40. The illustration of a reciprocal lattice vector, $\mathbf{d}^*_{hkl}$, as a vectorial sum of three basis unit vectors, **a***, **b*** and **c*** multiplied by *h*, *k* and *l*, respectively.

According to the Braggs' law (Eq. 2.21), the diffraction angle, θ_{hkl}, of a reflection from a series of lattice planes (*hkl*) is determined from the interplanar distance, d_{hkl}, and the wavelength, λ as:

$$\sin\theta_{hkl} = \frac{\lambda}{2d_{hkl}} \tag{2.38}$$

2.8.2 Other factors affecting peak positions

Equations 2.34 and 2.37 are exact assuming that both the powder diffractometer and the sample are ideal. In reality, various instrumental and specimen features may affect the observed positions of Bragg peaks. These factors are often known as systematic aberrations (distortions), and they are usually assembled into a single correction parameter, $\Delta 2\theta$. The latter is applied to the idealized Bragg angle, $2\theta_{calc}$, calculated from the unit cell dimensions and wavelengths using Eqs. 2.34 or 2.37 and Eq. 2.38, so that the experimentally observed Bragg angle, $2\theta_{obs}$, is given as

$$2\theta_{obs} = 2\theta_{calc} + \Delta 2\theta \tag{2.39}$$

For the most commonly used Bragg-Brentano focusing geometry (see Chapter 3), the overall correction is generally a sum of six factors:

$$\Delta 2\theta = \frac{p_1}{\tan 2\theta} + \frac{p_2}{\sin 2\theta} + \frac{p_3}{\tan \theta} + p_4 \sin 2\theta + p_5 \cos \theta + p_6 \tag{2.40}$$

The first two parameters, p_1 and p_2, account for the axial divergence of the incident beam and they can be expressed as

$$p_1 = -\frac{h^2 K_1}{3R^2}; \quad p_2 = -\frac{h^2 K_2}{3R^2} \tag{2.41}$$

where h is the length of the specimen parallel to the goniometer axis, R is the goniometer radius, K_1 and K_2 are constants established by the collimator. Soller slits usually minimize the axial divergence and therefore, these two corrections are often neglected for practical purposes.

In addition to axial divergence, the first parameter (p_1) includes a shift that is due to peak asymmetry caused by other factors. One of these is the finite length of the receiving slit of the detector, which results in the measurement of a fixed length of an arc (see *Figure 2.34*) rather than an infinitesimal point of the Debye ring. The curvature of the Debye ring increases[1] with the decreasing Bragg angle and the resultant increasing peak asymmetry cannot be corrected for by using Soller slits. This effect can be minimized by reducing the detector slit length, which however, considerably lowers the measured intensity.

The third parameter, p_3, is given as

$$p_3 = -\frac{\alpha^2}{K_3} \tag{2.42}$$

[1] Strictly speaking, the curvature of the Debye ring increases both below and above $2\theta = 90°$, e.g. see *Figure 2.32*. Both the curvature and associated asymmetry become especially significant when $2\theta \leq \sim 20°$ and $2\theta \geq \sim 160°$. At low Bragg angles this contribution to asymmetry results in the enhancement of the low angle slopes of Bragg peaks, while at high Bragg angles the asymmetry effect is opposite. Asymmetry at high Bragg angles is often neglected because the intensity of Bragg peaks is usually low due to a variety of geometrical and structural factors, which will be discussed in sections 2.10 and 2.11. It is also worth mentioning that at $2\theta \cong 90°$ the contribution from p_1 becomes negligible because $\tan 2\theta \rightarrow \infty$.

where α is the in-plane divergence of the x-ray beam and K_3 is a constant. This factor accounts for the zero curvature of flat samples, typically used in Bragg-Brentano goniometers. This geometry of the sample distorts the ideal focusing in which the curvature of the sample surface should vary with Bragg angle. The aberrations are generally insignificant and they are usually neglected in routine powder diffraction experiments.

The fourth parameter is

$$p_4 = \frac{1}{2\mu_{eff}R} \tag{2.43}$$

where μ_{eff} is the effective linear absorption coefficient. This correction is known as the transparency shift error and it may play a role when examining thick (more than 50 to 100 μm) samples. The transparency shift error is caused by the penetration of the beam into the sample and the penetration depth is a function of Bragg angle. Usually p_4 is the refined parameter since μ_{eff} is rarely known (both the porosity and the density of the powder sample are usually unknown). The transparency shift error could be substantial for low absorbing samples, e.g. organic compounds, and it is usually negligible for highly absorbing specimens, i.e. compounds containing heavy chemical elements. For low absorbing materials this shift can be reduced by using thin samples, however, doing so significantly decreases intensity at high Bragg angles. The latter is already small when a compound consists of light chemical elements due to their low x-ray scattering ability.

The fifth parameter characterizes specimen displacement, s, from the goniometer axis and it is expressed as

$$p_5 = -\frac{2s}{R} \tag{2.44}$$

where R is the radius of the goniometer. This correction may be substantial, especially when there is no good and easy way to control the exact position of the specimen surface.

The last parameter, p_6, is constant over the whole range of Bragg angles and the corresponding aberration usually arises due to improper setting(s) of zero angles for one or more diffractometer axes: detector and/or x-ray source. Hence, this distortion is called the zero shift error. The zero shift error can be easily minimized by proper alignment of the goniometer. However, in some cases, e.g. in neutron powder diffraction, zero shift is practically unavoidable and, therefore, should be always accounted for.

In routine experiments most or even all peak displacement corrections (Eq. 2.40) may be ignored when their effect falls into the range of

experimental errors. When the powder diffractometer is well aligned and when axial divergence is small, usually only the specimen displacement correction (p_5) is required, as shown in *Figure 2.41*. However, if there is a substantial number of Bragg peaks at low angles and their asymmetry is noticeable, the corresponding correction (p_1) becomes essential. The same is true for the transparency shift correction (p_4), which is required in the case of low absorbing samples.

In order to account for several different factors simultaneously, high accuracy of the experimental powder diffraction data is required in addition to the availability of data in a broad range of Bragg angles. Even then it may be difficult since p_4 and p_5 are strongly correlated, and so is the zero shift parameter, p_6. Generally, they cannot be distinguished from one another when only a small part of the diffraction pattern has been measured (e.g. below 60 to 70° 2θ). Thus, refinement of any single parameter (p_4, p_5 or p_6) gives similar results, i.e. the satisfactory fit between the observed and calculated 2θ values. The problem is: how precise are the obtained unit cell parameters? If the wrong correction was taken into account, the resultant unit cell dimensions may be somewhat different from their true values. The best way to deal with the ambiguity of which correction to apply, is to use an internal standard, which unfortunately contaminates the powder diffraction pattern with Bragg peaks of the standard material.

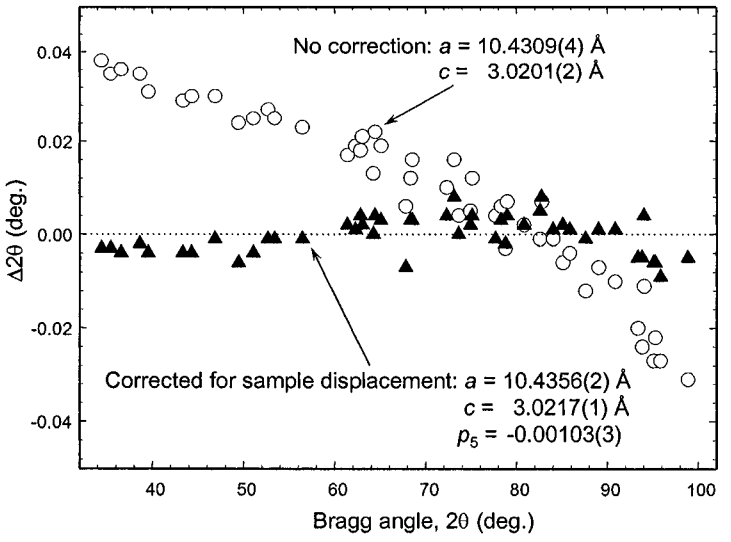


Figure 2.41. The differences between the observed and calculated 2θ values plotted as a function of 2θ without (open circles) and with (filled triangles) specimen displacement correction. The corresponding values of the unit cell parameters and the specimen displacement parameter are indicated on the plot. The material belongs to the tetragonal crystal system.

An example of how important the sample displacement correction may become is shown in *Figure 2.41*, where the differences between the observed and calculated Bragg angles are in the -0.03 to +0.04° range before correction (open circles). They fall within the -0.01 to +0.01° range (filled triangles) when the sample displacement parameter was refined together with the unit cell dimensions. Even though the difference in the unit cell dimensions obtained with and without the sample displacement correction (*Figure 2.41*) is not exceptionally large, it is still ten to twenty times the least squares standard deviations, i.e. the differences in lattice parameters are statistically significant.

2.9 Shapes of powder diffraction peaks

All but the simplest powder diffraction patterns are composed from more or less overlapped Bragg peaks due to the intrinsic one-dimensionality of the powder diffraction technique coupled with the usually large number of "visible" reciprocal lattice points, i.e. those that have $d^*_{hkl} \leq 2/\lambda$, and the limited resolution of the instrument (e.g. see the model in *Figure 2.38*d and *Figure 2.32*). Thus, processing of the data by fitting peak shapes to a suitable function is required in order to obtain both the positions and intensities of individual Bragg peaks. The same is also needed in structure refinement using the full profile fitting approach – the Rietveld method.

The observed peak shapes are best described by the so-called peak shape function (PSF), which is a convolution[1] of three different functions: instrumental broadening, Ω, wavelength dispersion, Λ, and specimen function, Ψ. Thus, PSF can be represented as follows:

$$PSF(\theta) = \Omega(\theta) \otimes \Lambda(\theta) \otimes \Psi(\theta) + b(\theta) \qquad (2.45)$$

where b is the background function.

The instrumental function, Ω, depends on multiple geometrical parameters: the locations and geometry of the source, monochromator(s),

[1] A convolution ($\otimes$) of two functions, f and g, is defined as an integral

$$f(t) \otimes g(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(\tau) g(t-\tau) d\tau = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(\tau) f(t-\tau) d\tau$$

which expresses the amount of overlap of one function g as it is shifted over another function f. It, therefore, "blends" one function with another. The convolution is also known as "folding" (e.g. see E.W. Weisstein, Convolution, Eric Weisstein's world of mathematics, http://mathworld.wolfram.com/Convolution.html).

slits, and specimen. The wavelength (spectral) dispersion function, Λ, accounts for the distribution of the wavelengths in the source and it varies depending on the nature of the source, and the monochromatization technique. Finally, the specimen function, Ψ, originates from several effects. First is dynamic scattering, or deviations from the kinematical model. They yield a small but finite width (the so-called Darwin width) of the Bragg peaks. The second effect is determined by the physical properties of the specimen: crystallite (grain) size and microstrains. For example, when the crystallites are small (usually smaller than ~1μm) and/or they are strained, the resultant Bragg peak widths may increase substantially.

It is worth noting that unlike the instrumental and wavelength dispersion functions, the broadening effects introduced by the physical state of the specimen may be of interest in materials characterization. Thus, effects of the average crystallite size (τ) and microstrain (ε) on Bragg peak broadening (β, in radians) can be described in the first approximation as follows:

$$\beta = \frac{\lambda}{\tau \cdot \cos\theta} \tag{2.46}$$

and

$$\beta = k \cdot \varepsilon \cdot \tan\theta \tag{2.47}$$

where k is a constant that depends on the definition of a microstrain. It is important to note that β in Eqs. 2.46 and 2.47 is not the total breadth of a Bragg peak but it is an excess width, which is an addition to all instrumental contributions. The latter is usually established by measuring a standard material without microstrain and grain size effects at the same experimental conditions.

In general, three different approaches to the description of peak shapes can be used. The first employs *empirical* peak shape functions, which fit the profile without attempting to associate their parameters with physical quantities. The second is a *semi-empirical* approach that describes instrumental and wavelength dispersion functions using empirical functions, while specimen properties are modeled using realistic physical parameters. In the third, the so-called *fundamental parameters* approach,[1] all three components of the peak shape function (Eq. 2.45) are modeled using rational physical quantities.

[1] J. Bergmann, Contributions to evaluation and experimental design in the fields of x-ray powder diffractometry, Ph.D. thesis (in German), Dresden University for Technology (1984). See http://www.bgmn.de/methods.html for more information and other references.

2.9.1 Peak shape functions

Considering *Figure 2.38*, *Figure 2.39* and Eq. 2.45, the intensity, $Y(i)$, of the i^{th} point ($1 \leq i \leq n$, where n is the total number of measured points) of the powder diffraction pattern, in the most general form is the sum of the contributions, y_k, from the m overlapped individual Bragg peaks ($1 \leq k \leq m$) and the background, $b(i)$. Therefore, it can be described using the following expression:

$$Y(i) = b(i) + \sum_{k=1}^{m} I_k \left[y_k(x_k) + 0.5 y_k(x_k + \Delta x_k) \right] \tag{2.48}$$

where: I_k is the intensity of the k^{th} Bragg reflection, $x_k = 2\theta_i - 2\theta_k$ and Δx_k is the difference between the Bragg angles of the $K\alpha_2$ and $K\alpha_1$ components in the doublet (if present). The presence of Bragg intensity as a multiplier in Eq. 2.48 enables one to introduce and analyze the behavior of different normalized functions independently of peak intensity, i.e. assuming that the definite integral of a peak shape function, calculated from negative to positive infinity, is unity in each case.

The four most commonly used empirical peak shape functions (y) are as follows:

Gauss:
$$y(x) = G(x) = \frac{C_G^{1/2}}{\sqrt{\pi} H} \exp\left(-C_G x^2\right) \tag{2.49}$$

Lorentz:
$$y(x) = L(x) = \frac{C_L^{1/2}}{\pi H'} \left(1 + C_L x^2\right)^{-1} \tag{2.50}$$

Pseudo-Voigt:
$$y(x) = PV(x) = \eta \frac{C_G^{1/2}}{\sqrt{\pi} H} \exp\left(-C_G x^2\right) + (1 - \eta) \frac{C_L^{1/2}}{\pi H} \left(1 + C_L x^2\right)^{-1} \tag{2.51}$$

Pearson-VII:

$$y(x) = PVII(x) = \\ = \frac{\Gamma(\beta)}{\Gamma(\beta - 1/2)} \frac{C_P^{1/2}}{\sqrt{\pi} H} \left(1 + C_P x^2\right)^{-\beta} \tag{2.52}$$

where:

- H and H', are the full widths at half maximum (often abbreviated as FWHM).
- $x = (2\theta_i - 2\theta_k)/H_k$, is essentially the Bragg angle of the i^{th} point in the powder diffraction pattern with its origin in the position of the k^{th} peak divided by the peak's FWHM.
- $2\theta_i$, is the Bragg angle of the i^{th} point of the powder diffraction pattern;
- $2\theta_k$, is the calculated (or ideal) Bragg angle of the k^{th} Bragg reflection.
- $C_G = 4\ln 2$, and $C_G^{1/2}/\sqrt{\pi} H$ is the normalization factor for the Gauss function such that $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} G(x)dx = 1$.
- $C_L = 4$, and $C_L^{1/2}/\pi H'$ is the normalization factor for the Lorentz function such that $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} L(x)dx = 1$.
- $C_P = 4(2^{1/\beta} - 1)$, and $[\Gamma(\beta)/\Gamma(\beta - 1/2)] C_P^{1/2}/\sqrt{\pi} H$ is the normalization factor for the Pearson-VII function such that $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} PVII(x)dx = 1$.
- $H = \left(U \tan^2\theta + V \tan\theta + W\right)^{1/2}$, which is known as Caglioti formula, is the full width at half maximum as a function of θ for Gauss, pseudo-Voigt and Pearson-VII functions, and U, V and W are free variables.[1]
- $H' = U/\cos\theta + V \tan\theta$, is the full width at half maximum as a function of θ for the Lorentz function, and U and V are free variables.
- $\eta = \eta_0 + \eta_1 2\theta + \eta_2 2\theta^2$, where $0 \le \eta \le 1$, is the pseudo-Voigt function mixing parameter, i.e. the fractional contribution of the Gauss function into the linear combination of Gauss and Lorentz functions, and η_0, η_1 and η_2 are free variables.

[1] G. Caglioti, A. Paoletti, and F.P. Ricci, Choice of collimators for a crystal spectrometer for neutron diffraction, Nucl. Instrum. Methods **3**, 223 (1958).

- Γ, is the gamma function.[1]
- $\beta = \beta_0 + \beta_1/2\theta + \beta_2/(2\theta)^2$, is the exponent as a function of Bragg angle in the Pearson-VII function, and β_0, β_1 and β_2 are free variables.

The two simplest peak shape functions (Eqs. 2.49 and 2.50) represent Gaussian and Lorentzian distributions, respectively, of the intensity in the Bragg peak. They are compared in *Figure 2.42*, from which it is easy to see that the Lorentz function is sharp near its maximum but has long tails on each side near its base. On the other hand, the Gauss function has no tails at the base but has a rounded maximum. Both functions are centrosymmetric, i.e. $G(x) = G(-x)$ and $L(x) = L(-x)$.

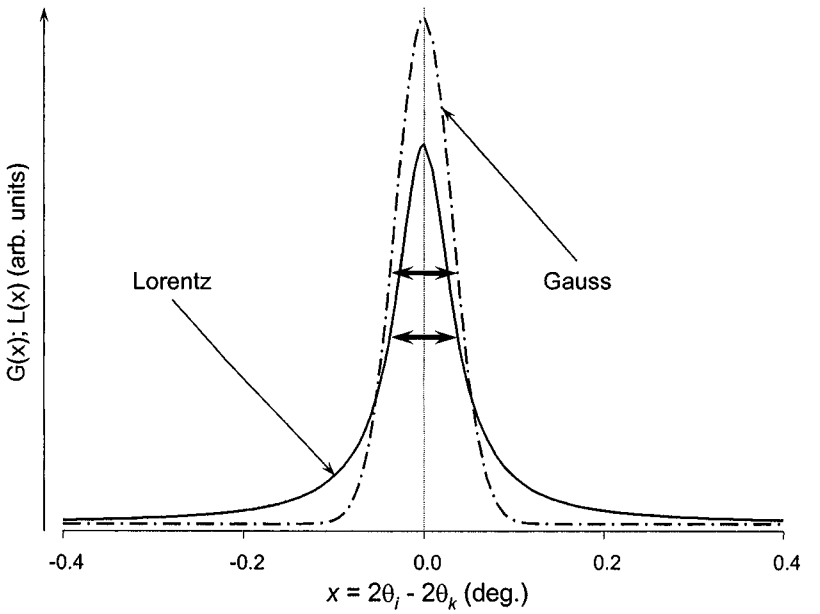


Figure 2.42. The illustration of Gauss (dash-dotted line) and Lorentz (solid line) peak shape functions. Both functions have been normalized to result in identical definite integrals ($\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} G(x)dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} L(x)dx$) and full widths at half maximum (FWHM). The corresponding FWHM's are shown as thick horizontal arrows.

[1] Gamma function is defined as $\Gamma(z) = \int_0^{\infty} t^{z-1} e^{t} dt$, or recursively for a real argument as $\Gamma(z) = (z-1)\Gamma(z-1)$. It is non-existent when z = 0, -1, -2, ..., and becomes (z-1)! when z = 1, 2, 3, ... Gamma function is an extension of the factorial to complex and real arguments, (e.g. see E.W. Weisstein, Gamma function, Eric Weisstein's world of mathematics, http://mathworld.wolfram.com/GammaFunction.html for more information).

The shapes of real Bragg peaks, which are the results of convoluting multiple instrumental and specimen functions (Eq. 2.45), are rarely described well by simple Gaussian or Lorentzian distributions, especially in x-ray diffraction. Usually real peak shapes are located somewhere between the Gauss and Lorentz distributions and they can be better represented as the mixture of the two functions.[1] An ideal way would be to convolute the Gauss and Lorentz functions in different proportions. This convolution, however, is a complex procedure, which requires numerical integration every time one or several peak shape function parameters change. Therefore, a much simpler linear combination of Gauss and Lorentz functions is used instead of a convolution, and it is usually known as the pseudo-Voigt function (Eq. 2.51). The Gaussian and Lorentzian are mixed in η to $1-\eta$ ratio, so that the value of the mixing parameter, η, varies from 0 (pure Lorentz) to 1 (pure Gauss). Obviously, η has no physical sense outside this range.

The fourth commonly used peak shape function is Peasron-VII (Eq. 2.52). It is similar to Lorentz distribution except that the exponent (β) varies in the Pearson-VII, while it remains constant ($\beta = 1$) in the Lorentz function. Pearson-VII provides an intensity distribution close to the pseudo-Voigt function: when the exponent, $\beta = 1$, it is identical to the Lorentz distribution, and when $\beta \cong 10$, Pearson-VII becomes nearly pure Gaussian. Thus, when the exponent is in the range $0.5 < \beta < 1$ or $\beta > 10$, the peak shape extends beyond Lorentz or Gauss functions, respectively, but these values of β are rarely observed in practice. An example of the x-ray powder diffraction profile fitting using Pearson-VII function is shown in *Figure 2.43*. Both the pseudo-Voigt and Pearson-VII functions are also centrosymmetric.

The argument, x, in each of the four empirical functions establishes the location of peak maximum, which is obviously observed when $x = 0$ and $2\theta_i = 2\theta_k$. A second parameter, determining the value of the argument, is the full width at half maximum, H. The latter varies with 2θ and its dependence on the Bragg angle is most commonly represented by an empirical peak broadening function, which has three free parameters U, V, and W (except for the pure Lorentzian, which usually has only two free parameters). Peak broadening parameters are refined during the profile fitting. Hence, in the most general case the peak full width at half maximum at a specific 2θ angle is represented as

$$H = \sqrt{U\tan^2\theta + V\tan\theta + W} \qquad (2.53)$$

[1] The most notable exception is the shape of peaks in neutron powder diffraction (apart from the time-of-flight data), which is typically close to the pure Gaussian distribution. Peak shapes in TOF experiments are usually described by a convolution of exponential and pseudo-Voigt functions.

As an example, the experimentally observed behavior of FWHM for a standard reference material SRM-660 (LaB_6) is shown in *Figure 2.44* together with the corresponding interpolation using Eq. 2.53, both as functions of the Bragg angle, 2θ, rather than tanθ.

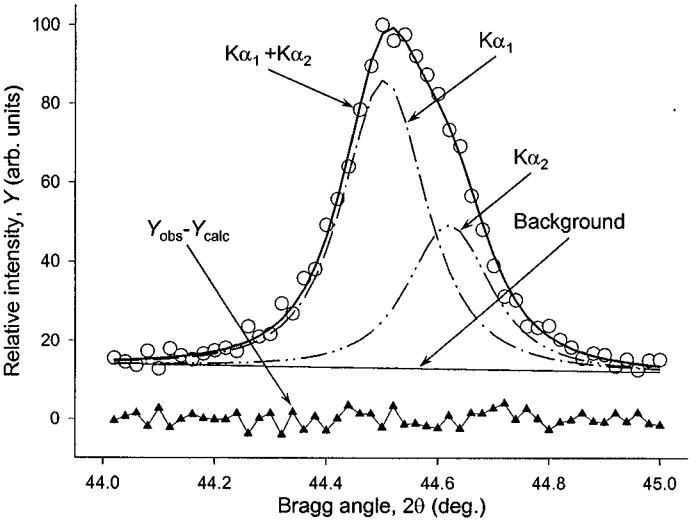


Figure 2.43. The example of using Pearson-VII function to fit experimental data (open circles) representing a single Bragg peak containing $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ components.

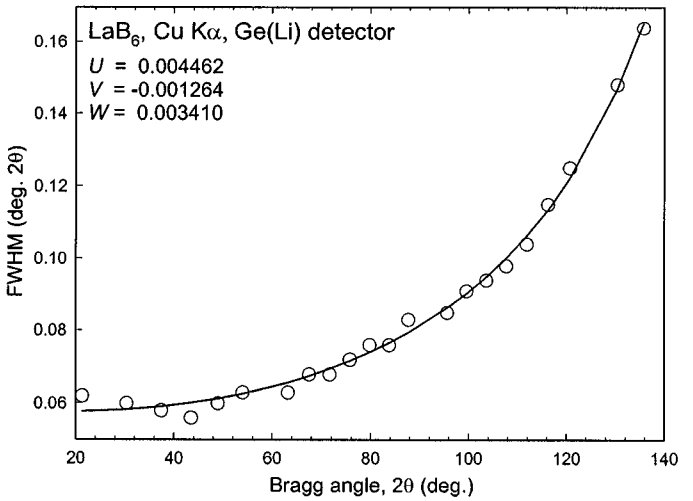


Figure 2.44. Experimentally observed full width at half maximum of LaB_6 (open circles) as a function of 2θ. The solid line represents a least squares fit using Eq. 2.53 with $U = 0.004462$, $V = -0.001264$, and $W = 0.003410$.

It is worth noting that the Lorentzian broadening function (H') parameters, X and Y, have the same dependence on Bragg angle as crystallite size- and microstrain-related broadening (compare Eqs. 2.46 and 2.47 with Eq. 2.50 and following explanation of notations). Therefore, when Bragg peaks are well represented by the pure Lorentz distribution, these physical characteristics of the specimen can be calculated from FWHM parameters after the instrumental and wavelength dispersion parts are subtracted.

The mixing coefficient, η for pseudo-Voigt function and the exponent, β for Pearson-VII function, generally vary for a particular powder diffraction pattern. Their behavior is typically modeled with a different empirical parabolic function of $\tan\theta$ and 2θ, respectively, as follows from equations 2.51 and 2.52. Peak shapes in the majority of routinely collected x-ray diffraction patterns are reasonably well represented using pseudo-Voigt and/or Pearson-VII functions. On the other hand, noticeable improvements in the experimental powder diffraction techniques, which occurred in the last decade, resulted in the availability of exceptionally precise and high resolution data, especially when employing synchrotron radiation sources, where the use of these relatively simple functions is no longer justified. Furthermore, the ever-increasing computational power facilitates the development and utilization of advanced peak shape functions, including those that extensively use numerical integration.

Most often, various modifications of the pseudo-Voigt function are employed to achieve improved precision, enhance the asymmetry approximation, account for the anisotropy of Bragg peak broadening, etc. For example, a total of four different functions (not counting those for the time-of-flight experiments) are employed in GSAS.[1] The first function is the pure Gaussian (Eq. 2.49), which is suitable for neutron powder diffraction patterns. The second is a modified pseudo-Voigt (the so-called Thompson modified pseudo-Voigt),[2] where the function itself remains identical to Eq. 2.51 but it employs a multi-term Simpson's integration introduced by C.J. Howard.[3] Its FWHM (H) and mixing (η) parameters are modeled as follows:

$$H = \left(\sum_{i=0}^{5} a_i H_G^{5-i} H_L^i \right)^{1/5} \tag{2.54}$$

[1] C.A. Larsen and R.B. Von Dreele, GSAS: General structure analysis system. LANL, Los Alamos, New Mexico, USA (2000). The cited user manual and software are freely available *via* FTP at ftp://ftp.lanl.gov/public/gsas/.

[2] P. Thompson, D.E. Cox, and J.B. Hastings. Rietveld refinement of Debye-Scherrer synchrotron x-ray data from Al_2O_3, J. Appl. Cryst. **20**, 79 (1987).

[3] C.J. Howard. The approximation of asymmetric neutron powder diffraction peaks by sums of Gaussians, J. Appl. Cryst. **15**, 615 (1982).

$$\eta = \sum_{i=1}^{3} b_i \left(\frac{H_L}{H} \right)^i \tag{2.55}$$

where a_i and b_i are tabulated coefficients. Furthermore,

$$H_G = 2\sigma\sqrt{2\ln 2} \tag{2.56}$$

$$\sigma = \sqrt{U\tan^2\theta + V\tan\theta + W + P/\sin^2\theta} \tag{2.57}$$

$$\begin{aligned} H_L &= (X + X_a\cos\phi)/\cos\theta + \\ &+ (Y + Y_a\cos\phi)\tan\theta \end{aligned} \tag{2.58}$$

and H_G is the Gaussian full width at half maximum modified by an additional broadening parameter, P; H_L is Lorentzian full width at half maximum, which accounts for the anisotropic FWHM behavior by introducing two anisotropic broadening parameters, X_a (crystallite size) and Y_a (strain), and ϕ is the angle between a common anisotropy axis and the corresponding reciprocal lattice vector.

The major benefit achieved when using the modified pseudo-Voigt function is in the separation of FWHM's due to Gaussian and Lorentzian contributions to the peak shape function. They represent two different effects contributing to the combined peak width, which are due to the instrumental (Gauss) and specimen (Lorentz) broadening. The specimen broadening parameters X and Y, being coefficients of $1/\cos\theta$ and $\tan\theta$, could be directly associated with the crystallite size and microstrain, respectively. Anisotropic broadening can be refined using two additional parameters, X_a and Y_a. The crystallite size (p) in Å can be obtained from these parameters as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} &p_{iso} = p_{\perp} = \frac{180K\lambda}{\pi X} \\ &\text{and} \\ &p_{\parallel} = \frac{180K\lambda}{\pi(X + X_a)} \end{aligned} \tag{2.59}$$

and microstrain (s) in percent as:

$$s_{iso} = s_{\perp} = \frac{\pi}{180}(Y - Y_{instr}) \cdot 100\%$$

and (2.60)

$$s_{\parallel} = \frac{\pi}{180}(Y + Y_a - Y_{instr}) \cdot 100\%$$

where the subscript *iso* indicates isotropic parameters, $\perp$ and $\parallel$ denote parameters that are perpendicular and parallel, respectively, to the anisotropy axis, K is the Scherrer constant,[1] and Y_{instr} is the instrumental part in the case of strain broadening.

The third function used in GSAS, is similar to the second function, as described in Eqs. 2.54 thrrough 2.58. However, it fits real Bragg peak shapes better due to improved handling of asymmetry, which is treated in terms of axial divergence.[2] This function is formed by a convolution of pseudo-Voigt with the intersection of the diffraction cone and a finite receiving slit length using two geometrical parameters, S/L and D/L, where S and D are the sample and the detector slit dimensions in the direction parallel to the goniometer axis, and L is the goniometer radius. These two parameters can be measured experimentally or refined when low Bragg angle peaks are present.

The fourth function is also a modified pseudo-Voigt, but it accounts for microstrain broadening as suggested by P. Stephens.[3] Up to 15 coefficients (in the triclinic crystal system) could be used to describe strain broadening. Both the third and fourth functions fit asymmetric peaks much better than the first two and the simple pseudo-Voigt (Eq. 2.51), especially at low Bragg angles. The latest function also results in an excellent fit when irregular peak broadening was caused by microstrains.

In the modified pseudo-Voigt functions described above (Eqs. 2.54 to 2.58), both the Gaussian to Lorentzian mixing parameter (η, Eq. 2.54) and their individual contributions to the total peak width (H, Eq. 2.55) are tabulated. This feature may be used to lower the number of free parameters and to obtain more realistic peak shape parameters that are due to the physical state of the specimen. Either or both may be achieved by using one of the following approaches:

[1] K is known as the shape factor or Scherrer constant which varies in the range $0.89 < K < 1$, and usually $K = 0.9$ [H.P. Klug and L.E. Alexander, X-ray diffraction procedures for polycrystalline and amorphous materials, Second edition, John Wiley, NY (1974) p. 656].

[2] L.W. Finger, D.E. Cox, A.P. Jephcoat. A correction for powder diffraction peak asymmetry due to axial divergence, J. Appl. Cryst. **27**, 892 (1994).

[3] P.W. Stephens. Phenomenological model of anisotropic peak broadening in powder diffraction, J. Appl. Cryst. **32**, 281 (1999).

1. Employing a high quality standard sample (e.g. LaB_6, see the footnote on page 156) that has no measurable contributions from small crystallite size and microstrains, the peak shape function parameters (U, V, W and P), responsible for the instrumental and wavelength dispersion broadening, can be determined experimentally. These should remain constant during following experiments when using different materials and, thus should be kept fixed in future refinements. Obviously, the goniometer configuration must be identical in the experiments conducted using both the standard and real samples. This method requires measuring a standard every time when any change in the experimental settings occurs, including replacement of the x-ray tube, selection of different divergence or receiving slits, monochromator geometry, filter, and other.
2. Taking advantage of the fundamental parameters approach, which is based on a comprehensive description of the experimental conditions and hardware configuration. It is developed quite well and as a result, the corresponding peak shape parameters may be computed and not necessarily refined. This technique requires realistic data about the experimental configuration, such as slit openings and heights, in-plane and axial divergences, monochromator characteristics, source and sample geometry and dimensions, and other. Indeed, considerable effort is involved in order to obtain all required physical characteristics of the powder diffractometer, the source and the specimen. The resultant peak shape is then obtained as a convolution (Eq. 2.45) of the modeled instrumental function, wavelength distribution in the incident spectrum, and sample function, with the pseudo-Voigt function.[1] The fundamental parameters approach is implemented in several software products, including Koalariet/XFIT[2] and BGMN.[3] More detailed information about both the technique and its implementation may be found in the corresponding references.[4,5]

[1] From this point of view, some applications of the modified pseudo-Voigt function (e.g. third and fourth peak shape functions employed in GSAS) are in a way similar to the fundamental parameters approach as they use instrumental parameters to describe certain aspects of peak shape.

[2] See http://www.ccp14.ac.uk/tutorial/xfit-95/xfit.htm.

[3] See http://www.bgmn.de/.

[4] R.W. Cheary and A. Coelho. A fundamental parameters approach to X-ray line-profile fitting, J. Appl. Cryst. **25**, 109 (1992); R.W. Cheary and A.A. Coelho. Axial divergence in a conventional x-ray powder diffractometer. II. Realization and evaluation in a fundamental-parameter profile fitting procedure, J. Appl. Cryst. **31**, 862 (1998).

[5] J. Bergmann, R. Kleeberg, A. Haase, and B. Breidenstein. Advanced fundamental parameters model for improved profile analysis, Mater. Sci. Forum **347**, 303 (2002) and references therein.

2.9.2 Peak asymmetry

All peak shape functions considered so far were centrosymmetric with respect to their arguments (x), which implies that both the low and high angle slopes of Bragg peaks have mirror symmetry with respect to a vertical line intersecting the peak maximum (e.g. see *Figure 2.42*). In reality, Bragg peaks are asymmetric due to various instrumental factors such as axial divergence and non-ideal specimen geometry, and due to the non-zero curvature of the Debye rings (e.g. see *Figure 2.34*), especially at low Bragg angles. The combined asymmetry effects usually result in the low angle sides of Bragg peaks being considerably broader than their high angle sides, as illustrated schematically in *Figure 2.45*. Peak asymmetry is usually strongly dependent on the Bragg angle and it is most prominently visible at low Bragg angles (2θ below ~20 to 30°). At high Bragg angles peak asymmetry may become barely visible but it is still present.

A proper configuration of the instrument and its alignment can substantially reduce peak asymmetry but unfortunately, they cannot eliminate it completely. The major asymmetry contribution, which is caused by the axial divergence of the beam, can be successfully controlled by Soller slits especially when they are used on both the incident and diffracted beam's sides. The length of the Soller slits is critical in handling both the axial divergence and asymmetry; however, the reduction of the axial divergence is usually accomplished at a sizeable loss of intensity.

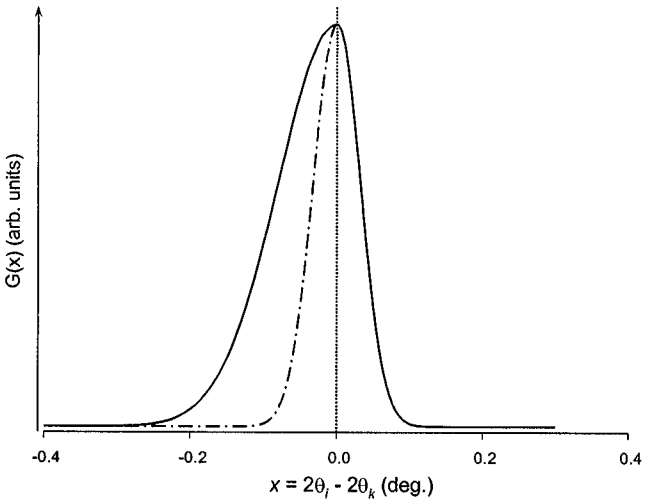


Figure 2.45. The schematic illustrating the asymmetric Bragg peak (solid line) when compared with the symmetric peak composed of the dash-dotted line (left slope) and the solid line (right slope). Both peaks are modeled by the pure Gauss function (Eq. 2.49) using two different FWHM's on different sides of the peak maximum in the asymmetric case.

Since asymmetry cannot be completely eliminated, it should be addressed in the profile fitting procedure. Generally, there are three ways of treating the asymmetry of Bragg peaks, all achieved by various modifications of the selected peak shape function:

1. In the first method, the symmetry of a function is broken by introducing a multiplier, which increases the intensity on one side from the peak maximum (usually the low Bragg angle side) and decreases it on the opposite side. The same modification of intensities can also be achieved by introducing different peak widths on the opposite sides of the peak maximum, as has been done in *Figure 2.45*. The following equation expresses the intensity correction, A, as a function of Bragg angle:

$$A(x_i) = 1 - \alpha \frac{z_i \times |z_i|}{\tan\theta} \tag{2.61}$$

In Eq. 2.61 α is a free variable, i.e. the asymmetry parameter, which is refined during profile fitting and z_i is the distance from the maximum of the symmetric peak to the corresponding point of the peak profile, i.e. $z_i = 2\theta_k - 2\theta_i$. This modification is applied separately to every individual Bragg peak, including $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ components. Since Eq. 2.61 is a simple intensity multiplier, it may be easily incorporated into any of the peak shape functions considered above. Additionally, in the case of the Pearson-VII function, asymmetry may be treated differently. It works nearly identical to Eq. 2.61 and all variables have the same meaning as in this equation but the expression itself is different:

$$A(x_i) = 1 + \alpha \frac{z_i^3}{\left(2H^2/C_P^{1/2} + z_i^2\right)^{3/2}} \tag{2.62}$$

where $C_P = 4\left(2^{1/\beta} - 1\right)$, see Eq. 2.52.

2. Equations 2.61 and 2.62 are quite simple but they are also far from the best in treating peak asymmetry, especially when high quality powder diffraction data are available. Better results can be achieved by introducing the so-called split pseudo-Voigt or split Pearson-VII functions. Split functions employ two sets of peak shape parameters (all or only some of them) separately to represent the opposite sides of each peak. For example, in a split Pearson-VII function, a different exponent β and its dependence on the Bragg angle may be used to model the low (left) and high (right) angle sides of the peak, while keeping the same FWHM parameters U, V and W. This results in a total of nine peak shape

function parameters: U, V, W, β^{L}_{0}, β^{L}_{1}, β^{L}_{2}, β^{R}_{0}, β^{R}_{1} and β^{R}_{2}, where superscripts ^{L} and ^{R} refer to parameters of the left and right sides, respectively, of the peak (see Eq. 2.52 and following explanation of notations). It is also possible to split the peak width (FWHM parameters) but then a total of twelve parameters should be refined, which is usually an overwhelming number of free variables for an average or even good quality powder diffraction experiment.

3. In some advanced implementations of the modified pseudo-Voigt function, an asymmetric peak can be constructed as a convolution of a symmetric peak shape and a certain asymmetrization function, which can be either empirical or based on the real instrumental parameters. For example, as described in section 2.9.1, and using the Simpson's multi-term integration rule this convolution can be approximated using a sum of several (usually 3 or 5) symmetric Bragg peak profiles:

$$y(x)_{asym} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} g_i y(x)_{sym} \tag{2.63}$$

where: n is the number of terms, $n = 3$ or 5; y_{sym} and y_{asym} are modeled symmetric and the resulting asymmetric peak shape functions, respectively, and g_i are the coefficients describing Bragg angle dependence of the chosen asymmetry parameter. This approach is relatively complex but in the case of high accuracy data (e.g. precision x-ray or synchrotron powder diffraction), it adequately describes the observed asymmetry of Bragg peaks. An even more accurate method employs the modeling of asymmetry by using geometrical parameters responsible for axial divergence (see section 2.9.1; Finger, Cox, and Jephcoat reference on page 180). Nevertheless, lower quality routine powder diffraction patterns to a large extent can be treated using the simpler Eq. 2.61.

2.10 Intensity of powder diffraction peaks

Any powder diffraction pattern is composed of multiple Bragg peaks, which have different intensities in addition to varying positions and shapes. Numerous factors have either central or secondary roles in determining peak intensities. As briefly mentioned in section 2.7 (*Table 2.7*), these factors can be grouped as: i) – *structural factors*, which are determined by the crystal structure; ii) – *specimen factors* owing to its shape and size, grain size and distribution, microstructure and other parameters of the sample, and iii) – *instrumental factors*, such as properties of radiation, type of focusing geometry, properties of the detector, slit and/or monochromator geometry.

The two latter groups of factors may be viewed as secondary, so to say, they are less critical than the principal part defining the intensities of the individual diffraction peaks, which is the structural part.[1] Structural factors depend on the internal (or atomic) structure of the crystal, which is described by relative positions of atoms in the unit cell, their types and other characteristics, such as thermal motion and population parameters. In this section, we will consider secondary factors in addition to introducing the concept of the integrated intensity, while the next section is devoted to the major component of Bragg peak intensity – the structure factor.

2.10.1 Integrated intensity

Consider the Bragg peak, which is shown in *Figure 2.46*, and let us try to answer the question: which quantity most adequately describes its intensity, i.e. what is the combined result of scattering from a series of crystallographic planes (*hkl*) or, which is the same, from the corresponding point in the reciprocal lattice? Is it the height of the peak (i.e. the Y coordinate of the highest point)? Is it the area under the peak? Is it something else?

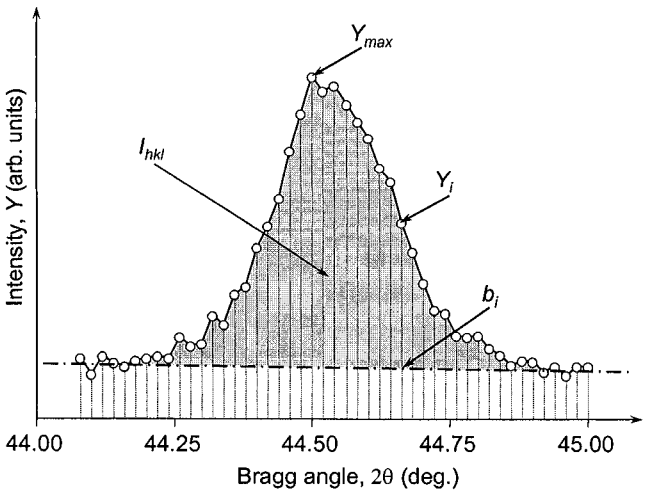


Figure 2.46. The relationship between the measured shape (the open circles connected with the solid lines) and the integrated intensity (shaded area) of the Bragg peak. The background is shown using the dash-dotted line. The maximum measured intensity is indicated as Y_{max}. The measured intensities and the corresponding values of the background are indicated for one of the points as Y_i and b_i, respectively.

[1] Some of the external factors, e.g. preferred orientation (see section 2.10.6), may have a tremendous effect on the diffracted intensity. However, all secondary factors have similar or identical effects on the diffracted intensity, regardless of the crystal (atomic) structure of the material.

The value of the peak maximum (Y_{max}) is intuitively and often termed as its intensity. It can be easily measured and is indeed used in many applications where relative intensities are compared on a qualitative basis, e.g. when searching for a similar pattern in a powder diffraction database. This approach to measuring intensity is, however, unacceptable when quantitative values are needed because both the instrumental and specimen factors may cause peak broadening, which may be different for identical Bragg peaks produced by the same crystalline material. On the other hand, the area under the peak remains unchanged in most cases, even when substantial broadening is observed (see Eq. 2.48 indicating that Bragg peak intensity is a multiplier applied to the corresponding peak shape function, which has unit area). Thus, the area which is shaded in *Figure 2.46* is known as the integrated intensity, and it represents the true intensity of Bragg peaks in powder diffraction.

The intensity, I_{hkl}, scattered by a reciprocal lattice point (*hkl*) corresponds to the integrated intensity of the matching Bragg peak. For simplicity, it is often called "intensity". What is actually measured in a powder diffraction experiment is the intensity in different points of the powder pattern and it is commonly known as profile intensity. Profile intensity is usually labeled Y_i, where i is the sequential point number, normally beginning from the first measured data point ($i = 1$).

Assuming that powder diffraction data were collected with a constant step in 2θ, the area of an individual peak may be calculated simply by adding the intensities (Y-coordinates) of all points measured within the range of the peak after the contribution from the background has been subtracted in every point. The background is shown as a nearly horizontal dash-dotted line in *Figure 2.46*. The observed integrated intensity (I_{hkl}) of a Bragg peak (*hkl*) is, therefore, determined from numerical integration as:

$$I_{hkl} = \sum_{i=1}^{j} \left(Y_i^{obs} - b_i \right) \tag{2.64}$$

where j is the total number of data points measured within the range of the peak.[1]

[1] Strictly speaking, each Bragg peak begins and ends when its contribution becomes indistinguishable from that of the background. The determination of peak range at its base presents a challenging numerical problem since i) – diffracted intensity is always measured with a finite error; ii) – it is nearly impossible to achieve zero background, and iii) – Bragg peaks often overlap with one another. Thus, for all practical purposes, the beginning and the end of any Bragg peak (i.e. its width at the base) is usually assumed in terms of a certain number of full widths at half maximum to the left and to the right from peak maximum. For Bragg peaks, which are well represented by pure Gaussian

The integrated intensity is a function of the atomic structure and it also depends on multiple factors, such as certain specimen and instrumental parameters. Considering Eq. 2.19 and after including necessary details, earlier grouped as "geometrical" effects, the calculated integrated intensity in powder diffraction is expressed as the following product:

$$I_{hkl} = K \times p_{hkl} \times L_\theta \times P_\theta \times A_\theta \times T_{hkl} \times E_{hkl} \times \left|F_{hkl}\right|^2 \qquad (2.65)$$

where:

- K is the scale factor, i.e. it is a multiplier required to normalize experimentally observed integrated intensities with absolute calculated intensities. Absolute calculated intensity is the total intensity scattered by the content of one unit cell in the direction (θ) defined by the length of the corresponding reciprocal lattice vector. Therefore, the scale factor is a constant for a given phase and it is determined by the number, spatial distribution and states of the scattering centers (atoms) in the unit cell.
- p_{hkl} is the multiplicity factor, i.e. it is a multiplier which accounts for the presence of multiple symmetrically equivalent points in the reciprocal lattice.
- L_θ is Lorentz multiplier, which is defined by the geometry of diffraction.
- P_θ is the polarization factor, i.e. it is a multiplier, which accounts for a partial polarization of the scattered electromagnetic wave (see the footnote and Thomson's equation in section 2.5.1).
- A_θ is the absorption multiplier, which accounts for absorption of both the incident and diffracted beams and non-zero porosity of the powdered specimen.
- T_{hkl} is the preferred orientation factor, i.e. it is a multiplier, which accounts for possible deviations from a complete randomness in the distribution of grain orientations.
- E_{hkl} is the extinction multiplier, which accounts for deviations from the kinematical diffraction model. In powders, these are quite small and the extinction factor is nearly always neglected.
- F_{hkl} is the structure factor (or the structure amplitude), which is defined by the details of the crystal structure of the material: coordinates and types of atoms, their distribution among different lattice sites and thermal motion.

---

distribution, the number of FWHM's can be limited to 2-3 on each side, while in the case of nearly Lorentzian distribution this number should be increased substantially (see *Figure 2.42*). In some instances, the number of FWHM's can reach 10 to 20. It is also possible to define peak limits in terms of maximum intensity, for example, a peak extends only as far as profile intensity (Y_i) remains greater or equal than a certain small predetermined fraction of the maximum intensity (Y_{max}).

The subscript *hkl* indicates that the multiplier depends on both the length and direction of the corresponding reciprocal lattice vector $\mathbf{d}^*_{hkl}$. Conversely, the subscript θ indicates that the corresponding parameter is only a function of Bragg angle and, thus it only depends upon the length of the corresponding reciprocal lattice vector, d^*_{hkl}.

2.10.2 Scale factor

As described above, the amplitude of the wave (and thus, the intensity, see Eqs. 2.13 to 2.19 and relevant discussion in section 2.5) scattered in a specific direction by a crystal lattice is usually calculated for its symmetrically independent minimum – one unit cell. In order to compare the experimentally observed and the calculated intensities directly, it is necessary to measure the absolute value of the scattered intensity. This necessarily involves

- Measuring the absolute intensity of the incident beam exiting through the slits and reaching the sample.
- Precise account of inelastic and incoherent scattering, and absorption by the sample, sample holder, air and other components of the system, such as windows of a sample attachment, if any.
- Measuring the portion of the diffracted intensity that passes through receiving slits, monochromator and detector windows.
- Correction for efficiency of the detector, number of events generated by a single photon, detector proportionality, etc, all of which must be precise and reproducible.
- Knowledge of many other factors, such as the volume of the specimen which participates in scattering of the incident beam, the fraction of the irradiated volume which is responsible for scattering precisely in the direction of the receiving slit, and so on.

Obviously, doing all of this is impractical, and in reality the comparison of the observed and calculated intensities is nearly always done after the former are normalized with respect to the latter using the so-called scale factor. As long as all observed intensities are measured under nearly identical conditions (which is relatively easy to achieve), the scale factor is a constant for each phase and is applicable to the entire diffraction pattern.

Thus, scattered intensity is conventionally measured using an arbitrary relative scale and the normalization is usually performed by analyzing all experimental and calculated intensities using a least squares technique.[1] The

[1] In certain applications, e.g. when the normalized structure factors should be calculated (see section 2.14.2), the knowledge of the approximate scale factor is required before the model of the crystal structure is known. This can be done using various statistical approaches [e.g. see A.J.C Wilson, Determination of absolute from relative x-ray intensity data,

scale factor is one of the variables in structure refinement and its correctness is critical in achieving the best agreement between the calculated and observed intensities.[1] Its value is also essential in quantitative analysis of multiple phase mixtures.

2.10.3 Multiplicity factor

As we established earlier, a powder diffraction pattern is one-dimensional but the associated reciprocal lattice is three-dimensional. This translates into scattering from multiple reciprocal lattice vectors at identical Bragg angles. Consider two points in a reciprocal lattice, $00l$ and $00\bar{l}$. By examining Eqs. 2.29 to 2.34 it is easy to see that in any crystal system $1/d^2(00l) = 1/d^2(00\bar{l})$. Thus, Bragg reflections from these two reciprocal lattice points will be observed at exactly the same Bragg angle.

Now consider the orthorhombic crystal system. Simple analysis of Eq. 2.32 indicates that the following groups of reciprocal lattice points will have identical reciprocal lattice vector lengths and thus, are equivalent in terms of the corresponding Bragg angle:

$h00$ and $\bar{h}00$	– 2 equivalent points
$0k0$ and $0\bar{k}0$	– 2 equivalent points
$00l$ and $00\bar{l}$	– 2 equivalent points
$hk0$, $\bar{h}k0$, $h\bar{k}0$ and $\bar{h}\bar{k}0$	– 4 equivalent points
$h0l$, $\bar{h}0l$, $h0\bar{l}$ and $\bar{h}0\bar{l}$	– 4 equivalent points
$0kl$, $0\bar{k}l$, $0k\bar{l}$ and $0\bar{k}\bar{l}$	– 4 equivalent points
hkl, $\bar{h}kl$, $h\bar{k}l$, $hk\bar{l}$, $\bar{h}\bar{k}l$, $\bar{h}k\bar{l}$, $h\bar{k}\bar{l}$ and $\bar{h}\bar{k}\bar{l}$	– 8 equivalent points

Assuming that the symmetry of the structure is mmm, these equivalent reciprocal lattice points have the same intensity in addition to the identical Bragg angles. Consequently, in general there is no need to calculate intensity separately for each reflection in a group of equivalents. It is enough to calculate it for one of the corresponding Bragg peaks and then multiply the calculated intensity by the number of the equivalents in the group, i.e. by the multiplicity factor. The multiplicity factor is, therefore, a function of lattice symmetry and combination of Miller indices. In the example considered

---

Nature (London) **150**, 151 (1942)], consideration of which is beyond the scope of this book.

[1] The correctness of the scale factor is dependent on many parameters. The most critical are: the photon flux in the incident beam remains identical during measurements at any Bragg angle; the volume of the material producing scattered intensity is constant; the number of crystallites approaches infinity and their orientations are completely random; the background is accounted precisely; the absorption of x-rays (when relevant) is accounted.

above (orthorhombic crystal system with point group symmetry mmm), the following multiplicity factors could be assigned to the following types of reciprocal lattice points:

$p_{hkl} = 2$ for $h00$, $0k0$ and $00l$
$p_{hkl} = 4$ for $hk0$, $0kl$ and $h0l$, and
$p_{hkl} = 8$ for hkl

Reciprocal lattices and therefore, diffraction patterns are generally centrosymmetric regardless of whether the corresponding direct lattices are centrosymmetric or not. Thus, pairs of reflections with the opposite signs of indices, (hkl) and $(\bar{h}\,\bar{k}\,\bar{l})$ – the so-called Friedel pairs – usually have equal intensity. Yet, they may be different in the presence of atoms that scatter anomalously (see section 2.11.4) and this phenomenon should be taken into account when multiplicity factors are evaluated comprehensively. Relevant details associated with the effects of anomalous scattering on the multiplicity factor will be considered below in section 2.12.2.

2.10.4 Lorentz-polarization factor

The Lorentz factor takes into account two different geometrical effects and it has two components. The first is owing to finite size of reciprocal lattice points and finite thickness of the Ewald's sphere, and the second is due to variable radii of the Debye rings. Both components are functions of θ.

Usually the first component is derived by considering a reciprocal lattice rotating at a constant angular velocity around its origin. Under these conditions, various reciprocal lattice points spend different time in contact with the surface of the Ewald's sphere. Shorter reciprocal lattice vectors are in contact with the sphere for longer periods when compared with longer vectors. In powder diffraction, this contribution arises from the varying density of the equivalent reciprocal lattice points resting on the surface of the Ewald's sphere, which is a function of d^*. It can be shown that the first component of the Lorentz factor is proportional to $1/\sin\theta$.

The second component accounts for a constant length of the receiving slit. As a result, a fixed length of the Debye ring is always intercepted by the slit regardless of Bragg angle. The radius of the ring (r_D) is, however, proportional to $\sin 2\theta$.[1] Because the scattered intensity is distributed evenly along the circumference of the ring, the intensity that reaches the detectors becomes inversely proportional to r_D and, therefore, directly proportional to $1/\sin 2\theta$.

[1] This proportionality holds as long as the distance between the specimen and the receiving slit of the detector remains constant at any Bragg angle.

The two factors combined result in the following proportionality

$$L \propto \frac{1}{\sin\theta \sin 2\theta} \tag{2.66}$$

which after recalling that $\sin 2\theta = 2\sin\theta\cos\theta$ and ignoring all constants (which are absorbed by the scale factor), becomes

$$L = \frac{1}{\cos\theta \sin^2\theta} \tag{2.67}$$

The polarization factor arises from partial polarization of the electromagnetic wave after scattering. Considering the orientation of the electric vector, the partially polarized beam can be represented by two components: one has its amplitude parallel ($A_{\parallel}$) to the goniometer axis and another has the amplitude perpendicular ($A_{\perp}$) to the same axis. The diffracted intensity is proportional to the square of the amplitude and the two projections of the partially polarized beam on the diffracted wavevector are proportional to 1 for $(A_{\parallel})^2$ and $\cos^2 2\theta$ for $(A_{\perp})^2$. Thus, partial polarization after scattering yields the following overall factor (also see Thomson equation in the footnote on page 140):

$$P \propto \frac{1+\cos^2 2\theta}{2} \tag{2.68}$$

When a monochromator is employed, it introduces additional polarization, which is accounted as:

$$P \propto \frac{1-K+K\cdot\cos^2 2\theta\cdot\cos^2 2\theta_M}{2} \tag{2.69}$$

where $2\theta_M$ is the Bragg angle of the reflection from a monochromator (it is a constant for a fixed wavelength), and K is the fractional polarization of the beam. For neutrons $K = 0$; for unpolarized and unmonochromatized characteristic x-ray radiation, $K = 0.5$ and $\cos 2\theta_M = 1$, while for a monochromatic or synchrotron radiation K should be established experimentally (i.e. measured) or refined.

The Lorentz and polarization contributions to the scattered intensity are nearly always combined together in a single Lorentz-polarization factor, which in the case when no monochromator is employed is given as:

$$LP = \frac{1+\cos^2 2\theta}{\cos\theta \cdot \sin^2 \theta} \tag{2.70}$$

or assuming $K = 0.5$ with a crystal monochromator

$$LP = \frac{1+\cos^2 2\theta \cos^2 2\theta_M}{\cos\theta \cdot \sin^2 \theta} \tag{2.71}$$

Once again, all constant multipliers have been ignored in Eqs. 2.70 and 2.71. The Lorentz-polarization factor is strongly dependent on the Bragg angle as shown in *Figure 2.47*. It is near its minimum between ~80 and ~120° 2θ, and increases substantially both at low and high angles. The latter (above approximately 150° 2θ) are usually out of range in most routine powder diffraction experiments. As is easy to see from *Figure 2.47*, additional polarization caused by the presence of a monochromator results in a small change in the behavior of the Lorentz-polarization factor but it must be properly accounted for, especially when precision of diffraction data is high.

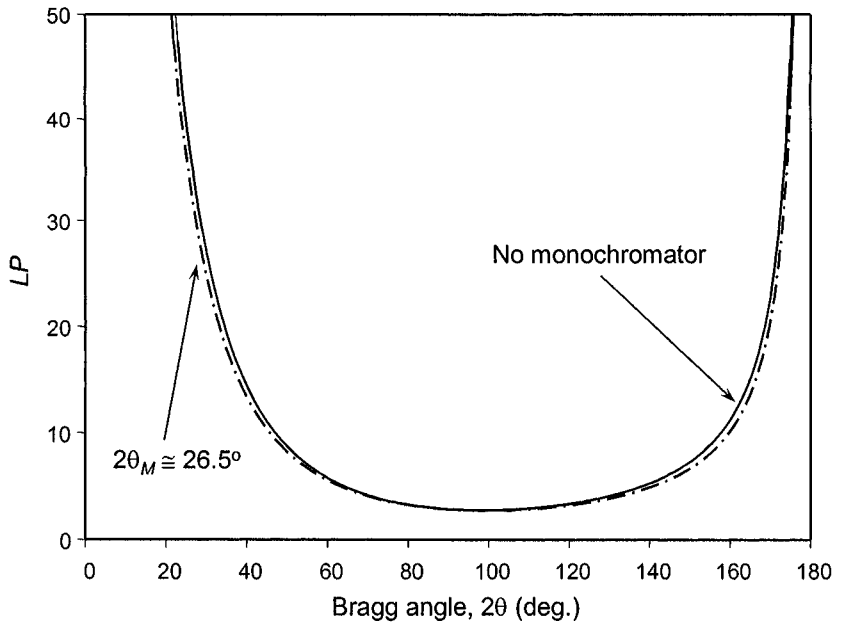


Figure 2.47. Lorentz-polarization factor as a function of Bragg angle: the solid line represents calculation using Eq. 2.70 (no monochromator), and the dash-dotted line is calculated assuming graphite monochromator and Cu Kα radiation with $K = 0.5$ (Eq. 2.71).

2.10.5 Absorption factor

Absorption effects in powder diffraction are dependent on both the geometry and properties of the sample and the focussing method. For example, when a flat sample is studied using the Bragg-Brentano technique, the scattered intensity is not affected by absorption as long as the specimen is highly impermeable and thick enough so that the incident beam never penetrates all the way through the sample at any Bragg angle. On the contrary, absorption by a thick flat sample in the transmission geometry has considerable influence on the scattered intensity, much stronger than if a thin sample of the same kind is under examination.

As established earlier (see Eqs. 2.7 and 2.8), intensity of the x-ray beam or other type of radiation is reduced due to absorption after passing through a layer of a material with a finite thickness. Consider *Figure 2.48*, where the incident beam is scattered by the infinitesimal volume dV of the flat sample in the reflection geometry. The total path of both the incident and diffracted beams through the sample is $l = x_I + x_S$. Thus, to calculate the effect of absorption in this and in any other geometry, it is necessary to perform the integration over the entire volume of the specimen which contributes to scattering.

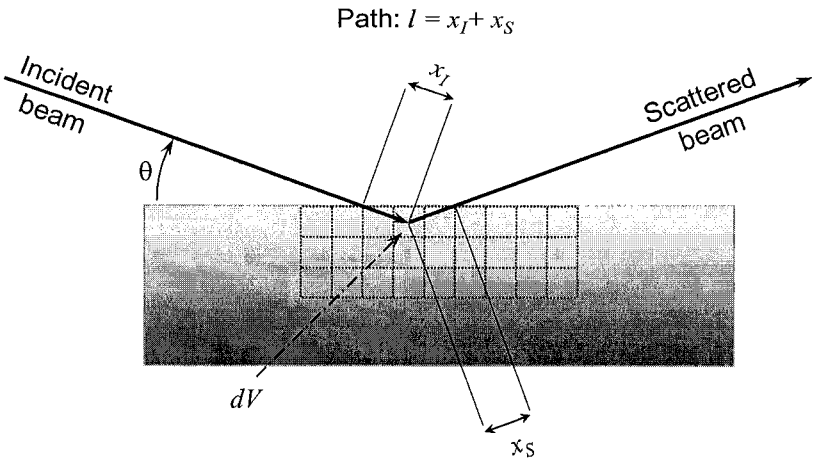


Figure 2.48. The illustration of the derivation of Eq. 2.72. The incident beam penetrates into the sample by the distance x_I before being scattered by the infinitesimal volume dV. The scattered beam traverses the distance x_S before exiting the sample. In the Bragg-Brentano geometry $x_I = x_S$.

Taking into account Eq. 2.8, the following integral equation expresses the reduction of the diffracted intensity, A, as the result of absorption:[1]

$$A = \frac{1}{V}\int_V \exp(-\mu_{eff} l)dV \tag{2.72}$$

It is important to recognize that an effective linear absorption coefficient, μ_{eff}, has been introduced into Eq. 2.72 to account for a lower density of dusted or packed powder when compared with the linear absorption coefficient, μ, of the bulk. The latter is usually used in diffraction from single crystals.

Eq. 2.72 can be solved analytically for all geometries usually employed in powder diffraction.[2] For the most commonly used Bragg-Brentano focusing geometry the two limiting cases are as follows:

- The material has very high linear absorption coefficient, or it is thick enough so that there is a negligible transmission of the incident beam through the sample at any Bragg angle. The resultant absorption factor in this case is a constant and it is usually neglected in Eq. 2.65 because it becomes a part of the scale factor:

$$A = \frac{\mu_{eff}}{2} \tag{2.73}$$

- The material has low linear absorption or the sample is thin so that the incident beam is capable of penetrating all the way through the sample. The absorption correction in this case is a function of Bragg angle as shown in Eq. 2.74. Once again, the constant coefficient $1/2\mu_{eff}$ is usually omitted since it becomes a part of the scale factor:

$$A = \frac{1-\exp(-2\mu_{eff} t/\sin\theta)}{2\mu_{eff}} \propto 1-\exp(-2\mu_{eff} t/\sin\theta) \tag{2.74}$$

[1] In single crystal diffraction, absorption correction is usually applied to the observed intensities and therefore, A is sometimes called the transmission factor, while the corresponding absorption correction is $A^* = 1/A$.

[2] Analytical integration necessarily assumes that μ_{eff} remains constant, even though the irradiated area of the specimen surface changes as a function of Bragg angle, as discussed in Chapter 3, section 3.5.3. When diffraction from a single crystal is of concern, analytical solution of this equation is rarely possible and it is usually integrated numerically using the known dimensions of a single crystal and the orientations of both the incident and diffracted beams with respect to crystallographic axes for each individual reflection *hkl*.

In Eq. 2.74, t is sample thickness. Ignoring the absorption correction, especially when μ and/or t are small, which means a weakly absorbing or thin sample, results in the underestimated calculated intensity at high Bragg angles. As a result, unphysical (negative) values of thermal displacement parameters are usually obtained.

The major difficulty in applying an absorption correction (Eq. 2.74) arises from usually unknown μ_{eff}. Obviously, the linear absorption coefficient, μ, can be easily calculated when the dimensions of the unit cell and its content are known (see Eq. 2.10) but it is applicable only for a fully dense sample. When a pulverized sample is used (and typically it is), μ_{eff} cannot be determined easily without measuring sample density. Often the combined parameter ($\mu_{eff}t$) can be refined or estimated and accounted in intensity calculations during Rietveld refinement (Chapter 7).

Another problem with pulverized samples is that their packing density varies as a function of the depth. This is known as the porosity effect, and for the Bragg-Brentano geometry, it may be expressed using two different approaches:

The first has been suggested by Pitschke *et al.*[1]

$$A = \frac{1 - a_1(1/\sin\theta - a_2/\sin^2\theta)}{1 - a_1(1 - a_2)} \tag{2.75}$$

and the second by Suortti[2]

$$A = \frac{a_1 + (1 - a_1)\exp(-a_2/\sin\theta)}{a_1 + (1 - a_1)\exp(-a_2)} \tag{2.76}$$

where a_1 and a_2 are two variables that can be refined. Both approximations account also for surface roughness as well as for absorption effects. They give practically identical results and the only difference is that the Suortti formula works better at low Bragg angles, according to Larsen and Von Dreele.[3]

Approximations given in Eqs. 2.74 to 2.76 also account for some other effects that distort intensity, for example improper size of the incident beam, causing the beam to be broader than the sample at low Bragg angles. The refinement of the corresponding parameters may become unstable because of

[1] W. Pitschke, N. Mattern, and H. Hermann, Incorporation of microabsorption corrections into Rietveld analysis, Powder Diffraction **8**, 223 (1993).

[2] P. Suortti, Effects of porosity and surface roughness on the x-ray intensity reflected from a powder specimen, J. Appl. Cryst. **5**, 325 (1972).

[3] C.A. Larsen and R.B. Von Dreele, General Structure Analysis System (GSAS), Los Alamos National Laboratory Report, LAUR 86-748 (2000).

correlations with some structural parameters (e.g. with the scale factor and/or thermal displacement parameters of atoms). Therefore, any of these corrections should be introduced and/or refined with care.

2.10.6 Preferred orientation

Conventional theory of powder diffraction assumes completely random distribution of the orientations among the infinite amount of crystallites in a specimen used to produce a powder diffraction pattern. In other words, precisely the same fraction of the specimen volume should be in the reflecting position for each and every Bragg reflection. Strictly speaking this is possible only when the specimen contains an infinite number of crystallites. In practice it can be only achieved when the number of crystallites is very large (usually in excess of 10^6 to 10^7 particles). Nonetheless, even when the number of crystallites approaches infinity, this does not necessarily mean that their orientations will be completely random. The external shape of the crystallites plays an important role in achieving randomness of their orientations in addition to their number.

When the shapes of crystallites are isotropic, random distribution of their orientations is not a problem and deviations from an ideal sample are usually negligible. However, quite often the shapes are anisotropic, e.g. platelet-like or needle-like and this results in the introduction of distinctly non-random crystallite orientations due to natural preferences in packing of the anisotropic particles. The non-random particle orientation is called preferred orientation and it may cause considerable distortions of the scattered intensity.

Preferred orientation effects are addressed by introducing the preferred orientation factor in Eq. 2.65 and/or by proper care in the preparation of the powdered specimen. The former may be quite difficult and even impossible when preferred orientation effects are severe. Therefore, every attempt should be made to physically increase randomness of particle distributions in the sample to be examined during a powder diffraction experiment. The sample preparation will be discussed in Chapter 3, and in this section we will discuss the modelling of the preferred orientation by various functions approximating the radial distribution of the crystallite orientations.

Consider two limiting anisotropic particle shapes: platelet-like and needle-like. The platelets, when packed in a flat sample holder, will tend to align parallel to one another and to the sample surface.[1] Then, the amount of plates that are parallel or nearly parallel to the surface will be much greater than the amount of platelets that are perpendicular or nearly perpendicular to the surface. In this case, a specific direction that is perpendicular to the flat

[1] Also see the schematic shown in *Figure 3.20* in Chapter 3.

sides of the crystallites is called the preferred orientation axis. It coincides with a reciprocal lattice vector $\mathbf{d}^{*\mathrm{T}}_{hkl}$ that is normal to the flat side of each crystallite. Therefore, intensity of reflections from reciprocal lattice points with vectors parallel to $\mathbf{d}^{*\mathrm{T}}_{hkl}$ will be larger than intensity of reflections produced by any other point of the reciprocal lattice (minimum for those with reciprocal lattice vectors perpendicular to $\mathbf{d}^{*\mathrm{T}}_{hkl}$) simply because the distribution of their orientations is highly anisotropic. The preferred orientation in cases like that is said to be uniaxial, and the preferred orientation axis is perpendicular to the surface of the flat specimen.

The needle-like crystallites, when packed into a flat sample, will also tend to align parallel to the surface.[1] However, the preferred orientation axis, which in this case coincides with the elongated axes of the needles, will be parallel to the sample surface. In addition to the nearly unrestricted distribution of needles' axes in the plane parallel to the sample surface (which becomes nearly ideally random when the sample spins around an axis perpendicular to its surface), each needle may be freely rotated around its longest direction. Hence, if the axis of the needle coincides, for example, with the vector $\mathbf{d}^{*\mathrm{T}}_{hkl}$, then reflections from reciprocal lattice points with vectors parallel to $\mathbf{d}^{*\mathrm{T}}_{hkl}$ will be suppressed to a greater extent and reflections from reciprocal lattice points with vectors perpendicular to $\mathbf{d}^{*\mathrm{T}}_{hkl}$ will be strongly increased. This example describes the so-called in-plane preferred orientation.

In both cases the most affected is the intensity of Bragg peaks that correspond to reciprocal lattice points that have their corresponding reciprocal lattice vectors parallel or perpendicular to $\mathbf{d}^{*\mathrm{T}}_{hkl}$, while the effect on intensity of other Bragg peaks is intermediate. Hence the preferred orientation effect on the intensity of any reflection *hkl* can be described as a radial function of angle ϕ_{hkl} between the corresponding vector $\mathbf{d}^{*}_{hkl}$ and a specific $\mathbf{d}^{*\mathrm{T}}_{hkl}$, which is the preferred orientation direction. The angle ϕ_{hkl} can be calculated from:

$$\cos\phi_{hkl} = \frac{\mathbf{d}^{*\mathrm{T}}_{hkl} \cdot \mathbf{d}^{*}_{hkl}}{d^{*T}_{hkl} d^{*}_{hkl}} \tag{2.77}$$

where $\mathbf{d}^{*}_{hkl}$ is the reciprocal lattice vector corresponding to a Bragg peak *hkl* and $\mathbf{d}^{*\mathrm{T}}_{hkl}$ is the reciprocal lattice vector parallel to the preferred orientation axis. The numerator is a scalar product of the two vectors and the denominator is a product of the lengths of two vectors.

The simplest radial function that describes the anisotropic distribution of the preferred orientation factor as a function of angle ϕ_{hkl} is an ellipse

[1] Also see the schematic shown in *Figure 3.20* in Chapter 3.

(*Figure 2.49*a), and the corresponding values of T_{hkl}, which are used in Eq. 2.65, can be calculated using the following expression:[1]

$$T_{hkl} = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{i=1}^{N}\left[1+(\tau^2-1)\cos^2\phi_{hkl}^{i}\right]^{-1/2} \qquad (2.78)$$

In Eq. 2.78 the multiplier T_{hkl} is calculated as a sum over all N symmetrically equivalent reciprocal lattice points and τ is the preferred orientation parameter refined against experimental data. The magnitude of the preferred orientation parameter is defined as $\tau = T_{\perp}/T_{\parallel}$, where $T_{\perp}$ is the factor for Bragg peaks with reciprocal lattice vectors perpendicular, and $T_{\parallel}$ is the same for those which are parallel to the preferred orientation axis, respectively. In the case of the ellipsoidal preferred orientation function this parameter is equal to τ for the needles (in-plane preferred orientation) and $1/\tau$ for platelets (axial preferred orientation).

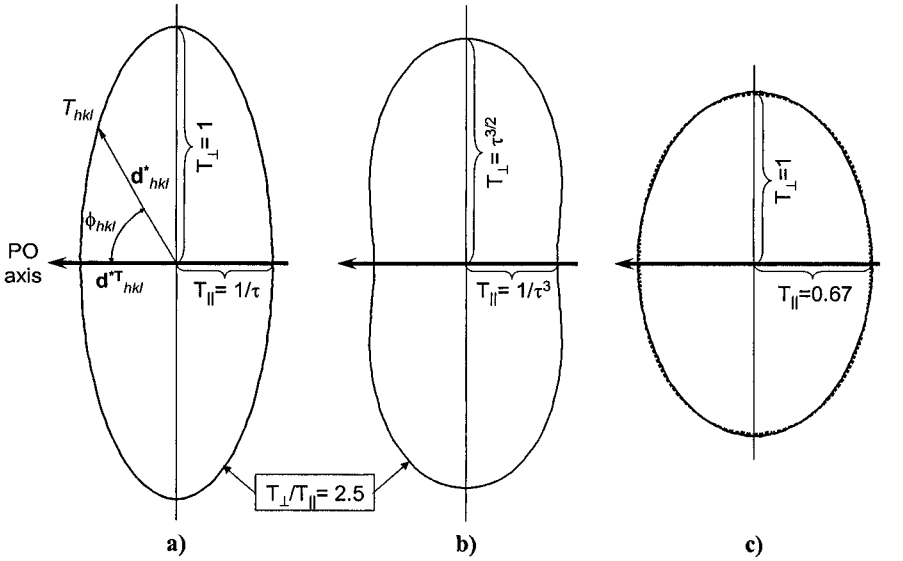


Figure 2.49. Preferred orientation functions for needles represented by the ellipsoidal (a) and March-Dollase (b) functions with the parameter $\tau = T_{\perp}/T_{\parallel} = 2.5$, and the two functions overlapped when $T_{\perp}/T_{\parallel} = 1.5$ (c). The two notations, $T_{\parallel}$ and $T_{\perp}$, refer to preferred orientation corrections in the directions parallel and perpendicular to the preferred orientation (PO) axis, respectively.

[1] V.K. Pecharsky, L.G. Akselrud, and P.Y. Zavalij, Method for taking into account the influence of preferred orientation (texture) in a powdered sample by investigating the atomic structure of a substance, Kristallografiya **32**, 874 (1987). Engl. transl.: Sov. Phys. Crystallogr. **32**, 514 (1987).

A different approach has been suggested by Dollase,[1] where the preferred orientation factor is represented by a more complex March-Dollase function:

$$T_{hkl} = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{i=1}^{N}\left(\tau^2 \cos^2 \phi_{hkl}^{i} + \frac{1}{\tau}\sin^2 \phi_{hkl}^{i}\right)^{-3/2} \qquad (2.79)$$

Here the preferred orientation parameter, $\tau^{4½}$, represents needles and its inverse represents plates. An example of the March-Dollase preferred orientation function for needles with magnitude $T_{\perp}/T_{\parallel} = 2.5$ is shown in *Figure 2.49*b.

In both cases (Eqs. 2.78 and 2.79) the preferred orientation factor T_{hkl} is proportional to the probability of the point of the reciprocal lattice, *hkl*, to be in the reflecting position (i.e. the probability of being located on the surface of the Ewald's sphere). In other words, this multiplier is proportional to the amount of crystallites with *hkl* planes parallel to the surface of the flat sample.

Both approaches work in a similar way. In the case of platelet-like particles, the function is stretched along $T_{\parallel}$ ($T_{\parallel} > T_{\perp}$), while in case of needles it is stretched along $T_{\perp}$ ($T_{\parallel} < T_{\perp}$). Therefore, in both cases $\tau < 1$ describes preferred orientation of the platelets and $\tau > 1$ describes preferred orientation of the needles. Obviously $\tau = 1$ corresponds to a completely random distribution of reciprocal lattice vectors and the corresponding radial distribution functions become a circle with unit radius (both Eq. 2.78 and 2.79 result in $T_{hkl} = 1$ for any ϕ_{hkl}).

Both functions give practically the same result at low and moderate degrees of non-randomness (i.e. at low preferred orientation contribution). The example with $T_{\perp}/T_{\parallel} = 1.5$ is shown in *Figure 2.49*c, where the two functions (Eqs. 2.78 and 2.79) are nearly indistinguishable. Unfortunately, strong preferred orientation cannot be adequately approximated by either of these functions and the best way around it is to reduce the preferred orientation by properly preparing the sample.

The platelets and needles discussed above are the two limiting but still the simplest possible cases. Particles may (and often do) have shapes of ribbons. These particles will pack the same way needles do – parallel to the sample surface but the ribbons will not be randomly oriented around their longest axes – they will tend to align their flat sides parallel to the sample surface. This case should be treated using two different preferred orientation functions simultaneously: one along the needle and one perpendicular to its

[1] W.A. Dollase, Correction of intensities for preferred orientation in powder diffractometry: Application of the March model, J. Appl. Cryst. **19**, 267 (1986).

flat surface. Thus, both types of functions (Eqs. 2.78 and 2.79) can be modified as follows:

$$T_{total} = k_0 + \sum_{i=1}^{N_a} k_i T_i \tag{2.80}$$

where T_{total} is the overall preferred orientation correction, N_a is the number of different preferred orientation axes, T_i is the preferred orientation correction for the i^{th} axis, and k_i is the corresponding scale factor, which reflects the contribution of each axis. Here, k_0 is the portion of the sample not affected by preferred orientation at all. Eq. 2.80 is sometimes used even when only one kind of the preferred orientation is present, thus giving the following very simple expression

$$T_{total} = k + (1-k)T_{hkl} \tag{2.81}$$

Yet another approach, which is based on the algorithm described by Bunge,[1] uses spherical harmonics expansion to deal with preferred orientation in three dimensions as a complex radial distribution:

$$T(h,y) = 1 + \sum_{l=2}^{L} \frac{4\pi}{2l+1} \sum_{m=-l}^{l} \sum_{n=-l}^{l} C_l^{mn} k_l^m(h) k_l^n(y) \tag{2.82}$$

where

- h represents reflection, and y sample orientations;
- L is the maximum order of a harmonic;
- C_l^{mn} are harmonic coefficients;
- $k(h)$ and $k(y)$ are harmonic factors as functions of reflection and sample orientations, respectively.

The expression for harmonic factors is complex and is defined azimuthally by means of a Lagrange function. Sample orientation in routine powder diffraction experiment is fixed and so is the corresponding harmonic factor $k(y)$, which simplifies Eq. 2.82 to:

$$T(h) = 1 + \sum_{l=2}^{L} \frac{4\pi}{2l+1} \sum_{m=-l}^{l} C_l^m k_l^m(h) \tag{2.83}$$

[1] H.-J. Bunge, Texture analysis in materials science, Butterworth, London (1982).

The magnitude of the preferred orientation can be evaluated using the following function:

$$J = 1 + \sum_{l=2}^{L} \frac{1}{2l+1} \sum_{m=-l}^{l} \left| C_l^m \right|^2 \qquad (2.84)$$

which is unity in the case of random orientation, otherwise $J > 1$. When all grains are perfectly aligned (single crystal) the function 2.84 becomes infinity.

Only even orders are taken into account in Eqs. 2.83 and 2.84 due to the presence of the inversion center in the diffraction pattern. The number of harmonic coefficients C and terms $k(h)$ varies depending on lattice symmetry and desired harmonic order L. The low symmetry results in multiple terms (triclinic has 5 terms for $L = 2$) and therefore, low orders 2 or 4 are usually sufficient. High symmetry requires fewer terms (e.g. cubic has only 1 term for $L = 4$), so higher orders may be required to adequately describe preferred orientation. The spherical harmonics approach is realized in GSAS.[1]

An example of the preferred orientation modeled using 2nd and 4th order spherical harmonics in the orthorhombic crystal system [space group $Cmc2_1$, $C^0_2 = 0.17(1)$, $C^2_2 = 1.65(1)$, $C^0_4 = 0.17(2)$, $C^2_4 = 0.04(1)$, $C^4_4 = 0.56(2)$] is shown in *Figure 2.50.*

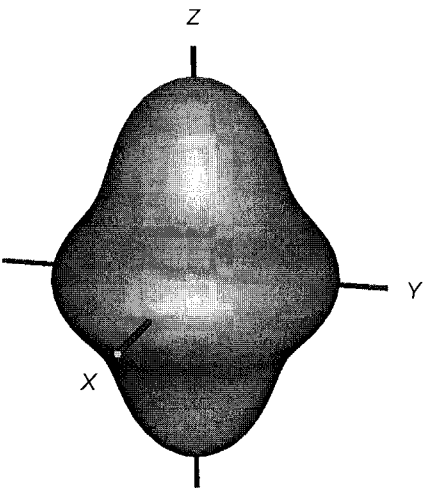


Figure 2.50. The illustration of the complex distribution of reciprocal lattice vectors modeled using a spherical harmonic preferred orientation function for the (100) reflection.

[1] R. B. Von Dreele, Quantitative texture analysis by Rietveld refinement, J. Appl. Cryst. **30**, 517 (1997).

Here the surface represents the probability to find the reciprocal lattice point (100) in the diffractometer coordinate system assuming Bragg-Brentano focusing geometry. The *Z*-axis is perpendicular to the sample, and *X*- and *Y*-axes are located in the plane of the sample.

To date, the spherical harmonics approach is the most comprehensive method developed to account for the preferred orientation effects but in routine experiments it should be used with great care. The order of expansion should be increased gradually and only as long as improvements are obvious and the results make sense. An unnecessarily large number of harmonic coefficients may give excellent agreement between the observed and calculated diffraction patterns but incorrect structural, especially thermal displacement parameters may result. In its full form, Eq. 2.82 may be used in complex texture analysis, where powder diffraction data have been collected not only as a function of Bragg angle 2θ but also at different orientations along Debye rings and with tilting the sample.

2.10.7 Extinction factor

Extinction effects, which are dynamical in nature, may be noticeable in diffraction from nearly perfect and/or large mosaic crystals. Two types of extinction are generally recognized: primary, which occurs within the same crystallite, and secondary, which originates from multiple crystallites. Primary extinction is caused by back-reflection of the scattered wave into the crystal and it decreases the measured scattered intensity (*Figure 2.51*, left). Furthermore, the re-reflected wave is usually out of phase with the incident wave and thus, the intensity of the latter is lowered due to destructive interference. Therefore, primary extinction lowers the observed intensity of very strong reflections from perfect crystals. Especially in powder diffraction, primary extinction effects are often smaller than experimental errors; however, when necessary they may be included in Eq. 2.65 as:[1]

$$E_{hkl} = E_B \sin^2 \theta + E_L \cos^2 \theta \tag{2.85}$$

where E_B and E_L are Bragg ($2\theta = \pi$) and Laue ($2\theta = 0$) components, both defined as various functions of the extinction parameter, x, which is normally a refined variable:

$$x = (KN_c \lambda F_{hkl} D)^2 \tag{2.86}$$

[1] T.M. Sabine, R.B. Von Dreele, and J.E. Jorgensen, Extinction in time-of-flight neutron powder diffractometry, Acta Cryst. **A44**, 374 (1988); T.M. Sabine, A reconciliation of extinction theories, Acta Cryst. **A44**, 368 (1988).

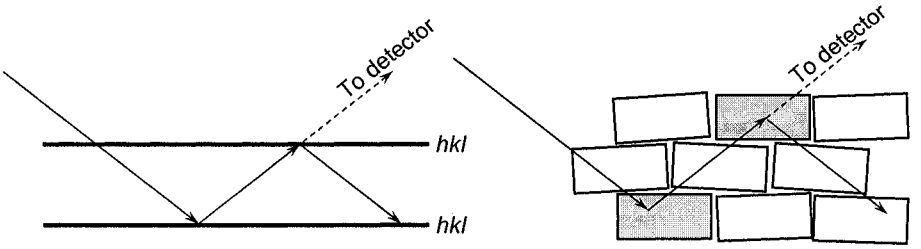


Figure 2.51. The illustration of primary (left) and secondary (right) extinction effects, which reduce intensity of strong reflections from perfect crystals and ideally mosaic crystals, respectively. The solid lines indicate actual reflections paths. The dashed lines indicate the expected paths, which are partially suppressed by dynamical effects. The shaded rectangles on the right indicate two different blocks of mosaic with identical orientations.

In Eq. 2.86, K is the shape factor (it is unity for a cube of edge D, $K = 3/4$ for a sphere of diameter D, and $K = 8/3\pi$ for a cylinder of diameter D), λ is the wavelength, F_{hkl} is the calculated structure amplitude and N_c is the number of unit cells per unit volume.

Secondary extinction (*Figure 2.51*, right) occurs in a mosaic crystal when the beam, reflected from a crystallite, is re-reflected by a different block of the mosaic, which happens to be in the diffracting position with respect to the scattered beam. This dynamical effect is observed in relatively large, nearly perfect mosaic crystals; it reduces measured intensities of strong Bragg reflections, similar to the primary extinction. It is not detected in diffraction from polycrystalline materials and therefore, is always neglected.

2.11 Structure factor

So far we discussed all prefactors in Eq. 2.65, which were dependent on multiple parameters except for the crystal structure of the material. The only remaining term here is the structure factor, $|F_{hkl}|^2$, which is the square of the absolute value of the so-called structure amplitude, $\mathbf{F}_{hkl}$. It is this factor that includes multiple contributions, which are determined by the distribution of atoms in the unit cell and other structural features.

2.11.1 Structure amplitude

When the unit cell contains only one atom, the resulting diffracted intensity is only a function of the scattering ability of this atom (see section 2.5.2). However, when the unit cell contains many atoms and they have different scattering ability, the amplitude of the scattered wave is given by a complex function, which is called the structure amplitude:

$$\mathbf{F(h)} = \sum_{j=1}^{n} g^j t^j(s) f^j(s) \exp(2\pi i \mathbf{h} \cdot \mathbf{x}^j) \tag{2.87}$$

where:

- **F(h)** is the structure amplitude of a Bragg reflection with indices *hkl*, which are represented as vector **h** in three dimensions. The structure amplitude itself is often shown in a vector form since it is a complex number;
- n is the total number of atoms in the unit cell and n includes all symmetrically equivalent atoms;
- s is $\sin\theta_{hkl}/\lambda$;
- g^j is the population (or occupation) factor of the j^{th} atom ($g^j = 1$ for a fully occupied site);
- t^j is the temperature factor, which describes thermal motions of the j^{th} atom;
- $f^j(s)$ is the atomic scattering factor describing interaction of the incident wave with a specific type of an atom as a function of $\sin\theta/\lambda$ for x-rays or electrons, and it is simply f^j (i.e. is independent of $\sin\theta/\lambda$) for neutrons;
- $\mathbf{i} = \sqrt{-1}$;
- $\mathbf{h} \cdot \mathbf{x}^j$ is a scalar product of two vectors: $\mathbf{h} = (h, k, l)$ and vector $\mathbf{x}^j = (x^j, y^j, z^j)$. The latter represents fractional coordinates of the j^{th} atom in the unit cell:

$$\mathbf{h} \cdot \mathbf{x}^j = \begin{pmatrix} h & k & l \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} x^j \\ y^j \\ z^j \end{pmatrix} = hx^j + ky^j + lz^j \tag{2.88}$$

Taking into account Eq. 2.88, the previous Eq. 2.87 can be written in the expanded form as:

$$\mathbf{F}_{hkl} = \sum_{j=1}^{n} g^j t^j(s) f^j(s) \exp[2\pi i(hx^j + ky^j + lz^j)] \tag{2.89}$$

2.11.2 Population factor

Considering a randomly chosen unit cell, each available position with a specific coordinate triplet (x^j, y^j, z^j) may be only occupied by one atom (fractional population parameter $g^j = 1$) or it may be left unoccupied ($g^j = 0$). On the other hand, even very small crystals contain a nearly infinite number of unit cells (e.g. a crystal in the form of a cube with 1 μm side will contain

10^9 cubic unit cells with a = 10 Å) and diffraction is observed from all of the unit cells simultaneously. Hence, the resulting structure amplitude is normalized to a certain mean unit cell, which represents the distribution of atoms averaged over the entire volume of the studied sample. In the majority of compounds, each crystallite is fully ordered and the content of every unit cell may be assumed identical throughout the whole crystal, so the population factor remains unity for every atom. Occasionally, population factor(s) may be lower than one but greater than zero, and some of the common reasons of why this occurs are briefly discussed below.

It is possible that in some of the unit cells atoms are missing. Thus, instead of a complete occupancy, the corresponding site in an average unit cell will contain only a fraction ($0 < g^j < 1$) of the j^{th} atom. In cases like that, it is said that the lattice has defects and g^j smaller than 1 reflects a fraction of the unit cells where a specific position is occupied. Obviously, a fraction of the unit cells where the same position is empty complements g^j to unity and it is equal to $1 - g^j$.

A different situation arises when in an average unit cell atom j is located close to a finite symmetry element, e.g. mirror plane. A mirror plane produces atom j', symmetrically equivalent to j, so that the distance between j' and j becomes unreasonably small and core electrons of the two atoms overlap but in reality they cannot be located at such close distance (*Figure 2.52*, left). This usually means that in some of the unit cells atom j is located on one side of the mirror plane, while in the others it is positioned on the opposite side of the same plane. If this is the case, then in the absence of "conventional" defects, the population factors g^j and $g^{j'}$ are related as $g^j = 1 - g^{j'}$, and $g^j = g^{j'}$ because of mirror symmetry.

In general, $g^j = 1/n$, where n is the multiplicity of the symmetry element which causes the overlap of the corresponding atoms. When the culprits are a mirror plane, a two fold rotation axis or a center of inversion, $n = 2$ and $g^j = 0.5$. For a three fold rotation axis $n = 3$ and $g^j = 1/3$, and so on (*Figure 2.52*, middle and right). When defects are present in addition to the overlap, g^j is no longer equal to $g^{j'}$ and two or more population factors may become independent.

The condition illustrated in *Figure 2.52* usually happens when the real symmetry of the unit cell (and the lattice) is lower than the symmetry of the average unit cell as detected from diffraction data. Hence, the following should be taken into the consideration:

1. Distribution of atoms j and j' in the lattice is random, so the crystal is partially disordered. In this case, the average cell may still be used to describe the average crystal structure even when it has a higher symmetry than the real unit cell.

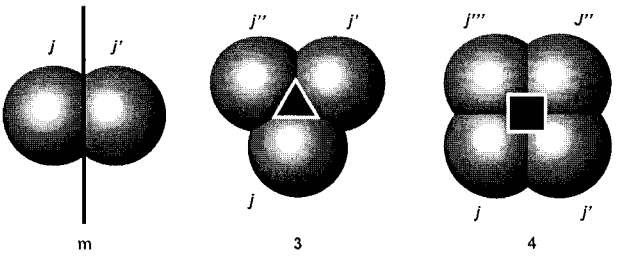


Figure 2.52. The illustration of forbidden overlaps as a result of an atom being too close to a finite symmetry element: mirror plane (left), three-fold rotation axis (middle), and four-fold rotation axis (right). Assuming that there are no defects in a crystal lattice, these distributions require $g^j = 1/2$, 1/3 and 1/4, respectively.

2. Atoms j and j' are distributed in the lattice in an ordered fashion. This usually means that the incorrect space group symmetry was used to describe the crystal structure. The symmetry therefore, should be lowered by modifying or removing those elements that cause atoms to overlap.[1]

Yet another possibility is the so-called statistical mixing of various atoms in the same site. It may be observed when different unit cells contain two or more types of atoms in the same position.[2] In the most general case, the occupational disorder can be expressed as:

$$g^0 + \sum_{j=1}^{m} g^j = 1 \qquad (2.90)$$

where g^0 represents the unoccupied fraction of the unit cells (i.e. defects) and m is the number of different types of atoms that occupy given site position in different unit cells.

In all cases, considered in this section, population factor(s) could be refined even though some of them may be constrained by symmetry or other relationships. For example when $g^0 = 0$ and $m = 3$ in Eq. 2.90, the following constraint should be in effect: $g^3 = 1 - g^1 - g^2$. Given the sensitivity of the

[1] For example, overlaps due to a mirror plane may be avoided after doubling the unit cell dimension along the mirror plane and substituting it with a glide plane. When certain symmetry operation(s) are excluded from the space group symmetry, this may sometimes result in a substantial change, including switching to a lower symmetry crystal system.

[2] Strictly speaking, it should be referred to as "practically the same position", since different atoms would interact differently with their surroundings, thus causing locally different environments unless their volumes and electronic properties are quite similar (e.g. Si and Ge; Fe^{3+} and Co^{3+}, and other). Consequently, in the majority of cases their positions (coordinates) will be at least slightly different. On the other hand, the differences in the positions of these atoms can rarely be detected from diffraction experiment and therefore, are neglected.

population parameters to the potentially overestimated symmetry, it is important to analyze their values, especially if they converge into simple factions, e.g. 1/2, 1/3, and so on (see *Figure 2.52*).

2.11.3 Temperature factor

At any temperature higher than absolute zero, certain frequencies in a phonon spectrum of the crystal lattice are excited and as a result, atoms are in a continuous oscillating motion about their equilibrium positions, which are determined by coordinate triplets (x, y, z). To account for these vibrations, the so-called temperature factor is introduced into the general equation (Eq. 2.87) of the structure amplitude.

It is worth noting that according to a recommendation issued by the International Union of Crystallography (IUCr), the corresponding parameters representing the temperature factor should be referred as "atomic displacement parameters" instead of the commonly used "temperature parameters" or "thermal parameters". This suggestion is based on the fact that these parameters, when determined from x-ray diffraction experiment, represent the combined total of several effects in addition to displacements caused by thermal motion. They include deformation of the electron density around the atom due to chemical bonding, improperly or not accounted absorption, preferred orientation, porosity, and so on, even if they influence the structure factor to a much lesser degree than thermal motion.

Oscillatory motions of atoms may be quite complex and as a result, several different levels of approximations in the expression of the temperature factor can be used. In the simplest form, the temperature factor of the j^{th} atom is represented as:

$$t^j = \exp\left(-B^j \frac{\sin^2\theta}{\lambda^2}\right) \tag{2.91}$$

where B^j is the displacement parameter of the j^{th} atom, θ is the Bragg angle at which a specific reflection *hkl* is observed and λ is the wavelength. This is the so-called isotropic approximation, which assumes equal probability of an atom to deviate in any direction regardless of its environment, i.e. atoms are considered as diffuse spheres. In Eq. 2.91

$$B^j = 8\pi^2(\bar{u}^2)^j \tag{2.92}$$

where $(\bar{u}^2)^j$ is the root mean square deviation of the j^{th} atom from its equilibrium position (x, y, z) in Å^2.

Considering Eq. 2.92, the isotropic displacement parameters are only physical when they are positive (also see section 2.11.4). Depending on the nature of the material, they usually vary within relatively narrow ranges at room temperature. For inorganic ionic crystals and intermetallic compounds the typical range of B's is ~0.5 to ~1 Å^2; for other inorganic and many coordination compounds B varies from ~1 to ~3 Å^2, while for organic and organometallic compounds and for solvent or other intercalated non-bonded molecules or atoms this range extends from ~3 to ~10 Å^2 or higher. As can be seen in *Figure 2.53*, the high value of the atomic displacement parameter results in a rapid decrease of the structure amplitude when the Bragg angle increases (also see Eq. 2.87).

As mentioned at the beginning of this section, the temperature factor absorbs other unaccounted or incorrectly accounted effects. The most critical are absorption, porosity and other instrumental or sample effects (see Chapter 3), which in a systematic way modify the diffracted intensity as a function of the Bragg angle. As a result, the B parameters of all atoms may become negative. If this is the case, then the absorption correction should be re-evaluated and re-refined or the experiment should be repeated to minimize the deleterious instrumental influence on the distribution of intensities of Bragg peaks.

The next level of approximation accounts for the anisotropy of thermal motions in a harmonic approximation and describes atoms as ellipsoids in one of the three following forms, which are, in fact, equivalent to one another:

$$t^j = \exp[-(\beta^j_{11}h^2 + \beta^j_{22}k^2 + \beta^j_{33}l^2 + 2\beta^j_{12}hk + 2\beta^j_{13}hl + 2\beta^j_{23}kl)] \quad (2.93)$$

$$t^j = \exp[-\frac{1}{4}(B^j_{11}h^2a^{*2} + B^j_{22}k^2b^{*2} + B^j_{33}l^2c^{*2} + 2B^j_{12}hka^*b^* + 2B^j_{13}hla^*c^* + 2B^j_{23}klb^*c^*)] \quad (2.94)$$

$$t^j = \exp[-2\pi^2(U^j_{11}h^2a^{*2} + U^j_{22}k^2b^{*2} + U^j_{33}l^2c^{*2} + 2U^j_{12}hka^*b^* + 2U^j_{13}hla^*c^* + 2U^j_{23}klb^*c^*)] \quad (2.95)$$

where $\beta^j_{11}...\beta^j_{23}$, $B^j_{11}...B^j_{23}$ and $U^j_{11}...U^j_{23}$ are the anisotropic atomic displacement parameters (six parameters[1] per atom).

[1] This is true for atoms located in the general site position (point symmetry 1), where all six parameters are independent from one another. In special positions, some or all of the

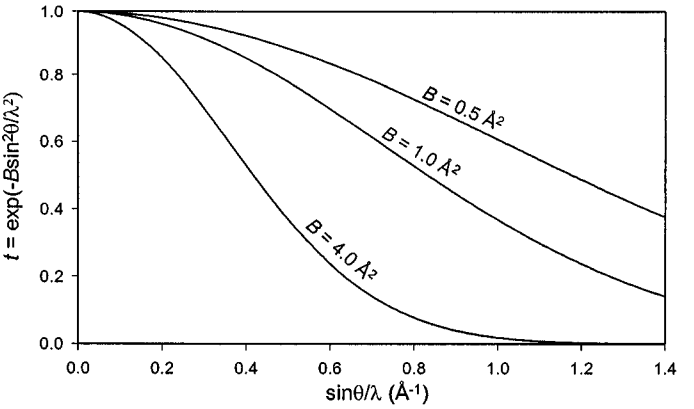


Figure 2.53. Temperature factor as a function of $\sin\theta/\lambda$ for several different atomic displacement parameters: B = 0.5, 1.0 and 4.0 Å^2.

As follows from Eqs. 2.94 and 2.95, the relationships between B_{ij} and U_{ij} are identical to that given in Eq. 2.92 and both are measured in Å^2. The β_{ij} parameters in Eq. 2.93 are dimensionless but may be easily converted into B_{ij} or U_{ij}. Very high quality powder diffraction data are needed to obtain dependable anisotropic displacement parameters and even then, they may be reliable only for those atoms that have large scattering factors (see next section).[1] On the other hand, the refinement of anisotropic displacement parameters is essential for those crystal structures, where strongly scattering atoms are distinctly anisotropic.

The anisotropic displacement parameters can also be represented in a format of a tensor, $\mathbf{T_{ij}}$, i.e. a square matrix symmetrical with respect to its principal diagonal. For B_{ij} it is given as

$$\mathbf{B_{ij}} = \begin{pmatrix} B_{11} & B_{12} & B_{13} \\ B_{12} & B_{22} & B_{23} \\ B_{13} & B_{23} & B_{33} \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.96}$$

and for other types of anisotropic displacement parameters (Eqs. 2.93 and 2.95) the matrices are identical except that the corresponding elements are β_{ij} and U_{ij}, respectively. The diagonal elements of the tensor, $\mathbf{T_{ii}}$ (i = 1, 2, 3),

---

anisotropic displacement parameters will be constrained by symmetry. For example, B_{13} (β_{13}, U_{13}) and B_{23} (β_{23}, U_{23}) for an atom located on a mirror plane perpendicular to Z-axis are constrained to 0.

[1] More often than not, the anisotropic atomic displacement parameters determined from powder diffraction data affected by preferred orientation will be incorrect (unphysical).

describe atomic displacements along three mutually perpendicular axes of the ellipsoid. Thus, similar to the isotropic displacement parameter, they may not be negative and should have reasonable values at room temperature as established by the nature of the material. Generally, the ratios between U_{ii}, should not exceed 3 to 5, unless the large anisotropy can be explained.

All nine elements of the tensor $\mathbf{T_{ij}}$ establish the orientation of the ellipsoid in the coordinate basis of the crystal lattice. Hence, any or all non-diagonal elements may be positive or negative but certain relationships between them and the diagonal parameters should be observed as shown in Eq. 2.97 for B_{ij}. If any of these three relationships between the anisotropic displacement parameters is violated, then the set of parameters has no physical meaning.

$$\begin{aligned} &B_{ii} > 0 \\ &B_{ii}B_{jj} > B_{ij}^2 \\ &B_{11}B_{22}B_{33} + B_{12}^2B_{13}^2B_{23}^2 > B_{11}B_{23}^2 + B_{22}B_{13}^2 + B_{33}B_{12}^2 \end{aligned} \tag{2.97}$$

The anisotropic displacement parameters can be visualized as ellipsoids (*Figure 2.54*) that delineate the volume where atoms are located most of the time, typically at the 50 % probability level. The magnitude of the anisotropy and the orientations of the ellipsoids may be used to validate the model of the crystal structure and the quality of refinement by comparing "thermal" motions of atoms with their bonding states. Because of this, when new structural data are published, the ellipsoid plot is usually required when the results are based on single crystal diffraction data.

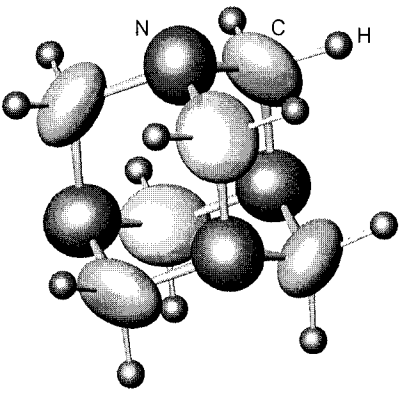


Figure 2.54. The atomic displacement ellipsoids of carbon and nitrogen atoms shown at the 50 % probability level for the hexamethylenetetramine molecule as determined from powder diffraction data (see problem 4 in Chapter 7). Hydrogen atoms were refined in the isotropic approximation (Eq. 2.91) and are shown as small diffuse spheres.

Yet another level of complexity of vibrational motion is taken into account by using the so-called anharmonic approximation of atomic displacement parameters. One of the commonly used approaches is the cumulant expansion formalism suggested by Johnson,[1] in which the structure factor is given by the following general expression:

$$\mathbf{F(h)} = \sum_{j=1}^{n} g^j f^j(s) \exp(2\pi \mathbf{i} \mathbf{h} \cdot \mathbf{x}^j - \beta^j_{kl} h_k h_l - \\ - \mathbf{i}\gamma^j_{klm} h_k h_l h_m + \delta^j_{klmn} h_k h_l h_m h_n - \ldots) \tag{2.98}$$

where

- β^j_{kl} are the anisotropic displacement parameters (see Eq. 2.93);[2]
- γ^j_{klm} are the third order anharmonic displacement parameters;
- δ^j_{klmn} are the fourth order displacement parameters. The expansion in Eq. 2.98 may be continued to include fifth, sixth, and so on order terms. The sign of the corresponding term is determined from the sign of $\mathbf{i}^p$ where p is the order of the anharmonic term;
- k, l, m, n (p, q, etc., in the higher order expansions) vary between 1 and 3;
- h_k, h_l, h_m and h_n (h_p, h_q, etc.) are the corresponding Miller indices ($h_1 = h$, $h_2 = k$, and $h_3 = l$, respectively);
- other notations are identical to Eq. 2.87.

Displacement parameters are included in Eq. 2.97 with all possible permutations of indices. Thus, for a conventional anisotropic approximation after considering the diagonal symmetry of the corresponding tensor (Eq. 2.96)

$$\beta_{11}hh + \beta_{22}kk + \beta_{33}ll + \beta_{12}hk + \beta_{21}kh + \\ \beta_{13}hl + \beta_{31}lh + \beta_{23}kl + \beta_{32}lk = \\ \beta_{11}h^2 + \beta_{22}k^2 + \beta_{33}l^2 + 2\beta_{12}hk + 2\beta_{13}hl + 2\beta_{23}kl \tag{2.99}$$

the already known expression for the exponential factor in Eq. 2.93 is easily obtained. Following the same procedure it is possible to show that in the case of the third order anharmonic expansion the number of the independent

[1] C.K. Johnson, in: Thermal neutron diffraction: proceedings of the International Summer School at Harwell, 1-5 July 1968 on the accurate determination of neutron intensities and structure factors, p. 132-160, B.T.M. Willis, Ed., London, Oxford University Press (1970).

[2] In this treatment, the conventional harmonic anisotropic displacement model may be considered as a "second order" approximation.

atomic displacement parameters is increased by 10 (γ_{111}, γ_{222}, γ_{333}, γ_{112}, γ_{113}, γ_{122}, γ_{133}, γ_{221}, γ_{223}, γ_{233} and γ_{123}).[1] Similarly, the maximum number of parameters per atom in the fourth order expansion is increased by 15 (δ_{1111}, δ_{2222}, δ_{3333}, δ_{1112}, δ_{1113}, δ_{1122}, δ_{1133}, δ_{1123}, δ_{1222}, δ_{1223}, δ_{1233}, δ_{1333}, δ_{2223}, δ_{2233} and δ_{2333}), fifth order by 21, and so on.

A brief description of the anharmonic approximation is included here for completeness since rarely, if ever, it is possible to obtain reasonable atomic displacement parameters of this complexity from powder diffraction data: the total number of atomic displacement parameters of an atom in the fourth order anharmonic approximation may reach 31 (6 anisotropic + 10 third order + 15 fourth order). The major culprits preventing their determination in powder diffraction are uncertainty of the description of Bragg peak shapes, non-ideal models to account for the presence of preferred orientation, and the inadequacy of accounting for porosity.

2.11.4 Atomic scattering factor

As briefly mentioned above (see section 2.5.2), the ability to scatter radiation varies depending on the type of an atom and therefore, the general expression of the structure amplitude contains this factor as a multiplier (Eq. 2.87). For x-rays, the scattering power of various atoms and ions is proportional to the number of core electrons. Therefore, it is measured using a relative scale normalized to the scattering ability of an isolated electron. The x-ray scattering factors depend on the radial distribution of the electron density around the nucleus and they are also functions of Bragg angle.

When neutrons are of concern, their coherent scattering by nuclei is independent of the Bragg angle and the corresponding factors remain constant for any Bragg reflection. Scattering factors of different isotopes are represented in terms of coherent scattering lengths of a neutron and are expressed in femtometers (1 fm = 10^{-15} m).

The best known scattering factors for x-rays and scattering lengths for neutrons of all chemical elements are listed for common isotopes and their naturally occurring mixtures (neutrons) and for neutral atoms and common ions (x-rays) in the International Tables for Crystallography.[2]

[1] Just as in the case of the conventional anisotropic approximation, the maximum number of displacement parameters is only realized for atoms located in the general site position (site symmetry 1). In special positions some or all of the displacement parameters will be constrained by symmetry. For example, γ_{333}, γ_{113}, γ_{223} and γ_{123} for an atom located in the mirror plane perpendicular to *Z*-axis are constrained to 0. Furthermore, if an atom is located in the center of inversion, all parameters of the odd order anharmonic tensors (3, 5, etc.) are reduced to 0.

[2] International Tables for Crystallography, vol. C, 2nd edition, A.J.C. Wilson and E. Prince, Eds., Second edition, Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston/Dordrecht/London (1999).

For practical computational purposes, the normal atomic scattering factors for x-rays as functions of Bragg angle are represented by the following exponential function:

$$f_0^j(\sin\theta/\lambda) = c_0^j + \sum_{i=1}^{4} a_i^j \exp(-b_i^j \sin\theta/\lambda) \qquad (2.100)$$

Thus, scattering factors of various chemical elements and ions can be represented as functions of 9 coefficients c_0, a_1 - a_4, b_1 - b_4 and $\sin\theta/\lambda$, which are also found in the International Tables for Crystallography, vol. C.

The x-ray atomic scattering factors f_0^j for several atoms and ions are shown in *Figure 2.55* as functions of $\sin\theta/\lambda$. As established earlier (see section 2.5.2), the forward scattered x-ray amplitude is always the result of a constructive interference and therefore, at $\sin\theta/\lambda = 0$ the value of the scattering factor and the sum of five coefficients in Eq. 2.100 ($c_0 + a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + a_4$) are both equal to the number of electrons. It is worth noting that the difference between scattering factors of neutral atoms and ions (compare the plots for V, V^{3+} and V^{5+}) is substantial only at low Bragg angles. On the other hand, atoms in solids are rarely fully ionized even in their highest oxidation states. Therefore, atomic scattering factors for neutral atoms usually give adequate approximation, and they are commonly used in all calculations.

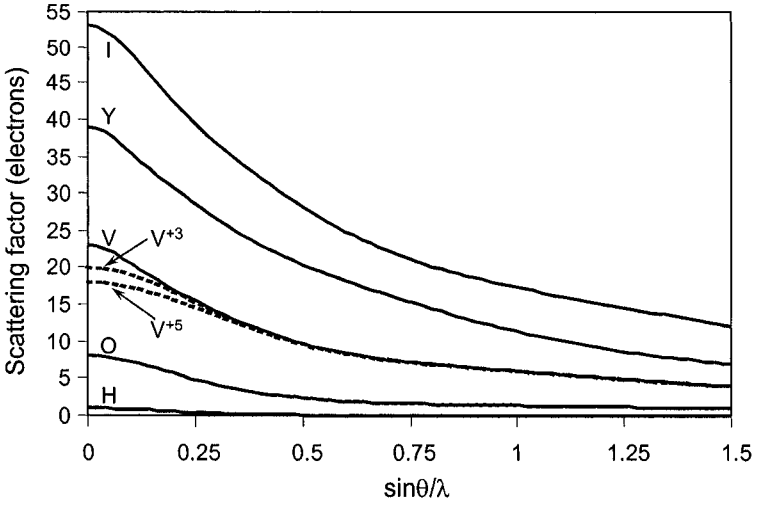


Figure 2.55. Atomic scattering factors of H, O, V^{+5}, V^{+3}, V, Y and I as functions of $\sin\theta/\lambda$ plotted in order from the bottom to the top. Scattering factors of vanadium ions become nearly identical to that of the neutral atom at $\sin\theta/\lambda \geq \sim 0.25$, which corresponds to $2\theta \geq \sim 45°$ (Cu Kα).

Considering *Figure 2.53* and *Figure 2.55*, both the temperature and scattering factors decrease exponentially with $\sin\theta/\lambda$. Hence, when the displacement parameter of an individual atom becomes unphysical during a least squares refinement, this usually means that the improper type of an atom has been placed in the suspicious site. If the chemical element placed in a certain position has fewer electrons than it should, then during the refinement its displacement parameter(s) becomes negative or much lower than those of the correctly placed atoms. This reduction in the displacement parameters(s) (Eq. 2.91 to 2.95) offsets the inadequately low scattering factor (Eq. 2.100) by increasing the temperature factor. Similarly, when the site has too many electrons than it really does, displacement parameter(s) of the corresponding atom will be unusually high during the refinement. Similar effects are observed in neutron diffraction.

Anomalous displacement parameter(s) will be also observed when an atom is placed in a position that is empty or only partially occupied (i.e. the site has sizeable defects). In this case, displacement parameter(s) become extremely large, effectively reducing the contribution from this atom to the structure factor (see *Figure 2.53*). All sites, which have unusually low or unusually high displacement parameter(s), should be tested by refining population parameter(s), while setting the displacement parameters at some reasonable values to avoid possible and sometimes severe correlations. This refinement may reveal the nature of the chemical element located in a specific position by analyzing the number of electrons (or scattering length in neutron diffraction).

For example, assume that a Ni atom has been placed in a certain position and a least squares refinement results in a large and positive isotropic displacement parameter for this site but displacement parameters of other atoms are in the "normal" range. After the population parameter of Ni has been refined while keeping its displacement parameter fixed at the average value of other "normal" atoms, the resulting $g^{Ni} = 0.5$. Considering *Figure 2.55*, the approximate number of electrons in this position is equal to $Z^{Ni}g^{Ni} = 28\times0.5 = 14\ \bar{e}$. Hence, the refinement result points to one of the following: i) the site is occupied by Ni atoms at 50 % population (50 % of the unit cells have Ni in this position and in the remaining 50 %, the same position is vacant), or ii) the site is occupied by the element that has approximately 14 electrons, i.e. Si. Depending on many other factors (e.g. precision of the experiment) the same position may be also occupied by Al (13 electrons), P (15 electrons) or by other neighboring atoms.

The final decision about the population of this "Ni" site can be made only when all available data about the material are carefully considered: i) which chemical elements may be present in this sample or were used during its preparation, if known? ii) what are the results of the chemical analysis? iii)

what is the gravimetric density of the material? and iv) what is the environment of this particular position? For example, an octahedral coordination usually points to Al but not Si or P.

It should be emphasized that the calculation of the number of electrons described above is not exact since x-ray scattering factors are only directly proportional to the number of electrons at $2\theta = 0°$ and the proportionality becomes approximate at $\sin\theta/\lambda > 0$. The population parameter(s) refinement results are usually more reliable in neutron diffraction because neutron scattering lengths are independent of the Bragg angle.

Normal x-ray scattering factor, f_0 (Eq. 2.100) describes the scattering ability of different atoms as a function of $\sin\theta/\lambda$ (or interplanar distance, d, since $\sin\theta/\lambda = 1/2d$) and, therefore, is wavelength independent. This is only true for light chemical elements and relatively short wavelengths. Most atoms scatter x-rays anomalously and their scattering factors become functions of the wavelength.[1] Anomalous scattering is taken into account by including two additional parameters into the overall scattering factor of each chemical element in the following form:

$$f^j(s) = f_0^j(s) + \Delta f^{j\prime} + \mathbf{i}\Delta f^{j\prime\prime} \qquad (2.101)$$

where:

- s is $\sin\theta/\lambda$;
- f_0^j is the normal atomic scattering factor that depends only on the type of the scattering atom (number of electrons) and is a function of $\sin\theta/\lambda$;
- $\Delta f^{j\prime}$ and $\Delta f^{j\prime\prime}$ are the real and imaginary components, respectively, of the anomalous scattering factor and they depend on both the atom type and the wavelength.

The anomalous scattering coefficients are also listed in the International Tables for Crystallography for all chemical elements and commonly used wavelengths of laboratory x-rays. They can be measured or calculated for any wavelength, which is important when using synchrotron radiation.[2] The anomalous scattering is usually at least an order of magnitude lower than normal scattering. Generally, the magnitude of the anomalous scattering coefficients is proportional to the wavelength and inversely proportional to the number of electrons in an atom. Anomalous scattering is at its maximum when the wavelength is near the corresponding absorption edge of an atom.

[1] Some isotopes also scatter neutrons anomalously.

[2] The most precise values are obtained from experimental measurements. When one of the two anomalous scattering coefficients is measured, the second can be relatively precisely calculated using Kramers – Kronig equation. More details about the anomalous scattering can be found in a special literature, e.g. see J. Als-Nielsen and D. McMorrow, Elements of modern x-ray physics, John Wiley & Sons, Ltd., New York (2001).

2.11.5 Phase angle

The structure amplitude, expressed earlier as a sum of exponents, can be also represented in a different format. Thus, by applying Euler's formula

$$e^{\mathrm{i}x} = \cos x + \mathbf{i}\sin x \tag{2.102}$$

Eq. 2.89 becomes

$$\mathbf{F}_{hkl} = \sum_{\mathrm{j}=1}^{n} g^{\mathrm{j}} t^{\mathrm{j}}(s) f^{\mathrm{j}}(s) \cos[2\pi(hx^{\mathrm{j}} + ky^{\mathrm{j}} + lz^{\mathrm{j}})] + \mathbf{i}\sum_{\mathrm{j}=1}^{n} g^{\mathrm{j}} t^{\mathrm{j}}(s) f^{\mathrm{j}}(s) \sin[2\pi(hx^{\mathrm{j}} + ky^{\mathrm{j}} + lz^{\mathrm{j}})] \tag{2.103}$$

The sums of cosines and sines in Eq. 2.103 signify the real (**A**) and imaginary (**B**) components of a complex number, respectively, which the structure amplitude indeed is. Hence, considering the notations introduced in Eq. 2.87, Eq. 2.103 can be rewritten as:

$$\mathbf{F(h)} = \mathbf{A(h)} + \mathbf{iB(h)} \tag{2.104}$$

Complex numbers can be represented as vectors in two dimensions with two mutually perpendicular axes: real and imaginary. Accordingly, the complex structure amplitude (Eq. 2.104) may be imagined as a vector **F** and its real and imaginary components are the projections of this vector on the real and imaginary axes, respectively, as shown schematically in *Figure 2.56*, left. From simple geometry, the following relationships are true:

$$|\mathbf{F(h)}|^2 = |\mathbf{A(h)}|^2 + |\mathbf{B(h)}|^2 = \left[|\mathbf{A(h)}| + \mathbf{i}|\mathbf{B(h)}|\right]\left[|\mathbf{A(h)}| - \mathbf{i}|\mathbf{B(h)}|\right]$$
and
$$\alpha(\mathbf{h}) = \arctan\left(\frac{|\mathbf{B(h)}|}{|\mathbf{A(h)}|}\right) \tag{2.105}$$

where $|\mathbf{F(h)}|$, $|\mathbf{A(h)}|$ and $|\mathbf{B(h)}|$ are the lengths of the corresponding vectors (or their absolute values), and $\alpha(\mathbf{h})$ is the angle that vector **F(h)** makes with the positive direction of the real axis, also known as the phase angle (or the phase) of the structure amplitude. It is worth noting that since **A(h)** and **B(h)** are mutually perpendicular, the phase shift between the imaginary and real components of the structure amplitude is always $\pm\pi/2$.

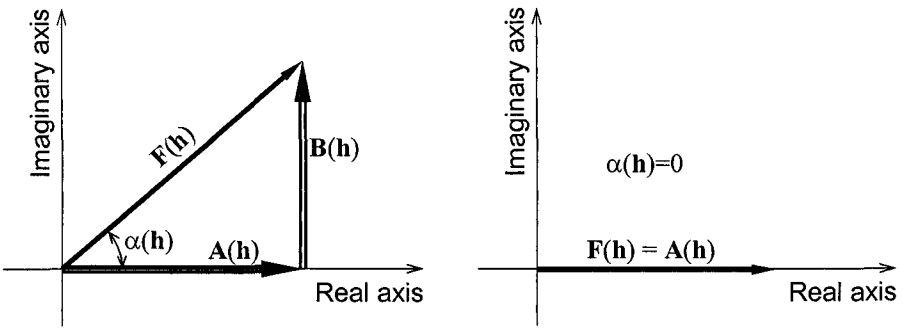


Figure 2.56. The structure amplitude, **F(h)**, shown as a vector representing a complex number with its real, **A(h)**, and imaginary, **B(h)**, components as projections on the real and imaginary axes, respectively, in the non-centrosymmetric (left) and centrosymmetric (right) structures. The imaginary component on the left is shifted from the origin of coordinates for clarity.

As a result, the structure amplitude can be represented by its magnitude, $|\mathbf{F(h)}|$, and phase angle, $\alpha(\mathbf{h})$, which varies between 0 and 2π. When the crystal structure is centrosymmetric (i.e. when it contains the center of inversion), each atom with coordinates (x, y, z) has a symmetrically equivalent atom with coordinates ($-x$, $-y$, $-z$). Thus, considering that $\cos(-\gamma) = \cos(\gamma)$ and $\sin(-\gamma) = -\sin(\gamma)$ and assuming that all atoms scatter normally, Eq. 2.103 can be simplified to

$$\mathbf{F}_{hkl} = \sum_{j=1}^{n} g^j t^j(s) f_0^j(s) \cos[2\pi(hx^j + ky^j + lz^j)] \qquad (2.106)$$

where all sine terms are nullified. The structure amplitude, therefore, becomes a real number and it can be represented as a vector parallel to the real axis. When the phase angle is 0, **F(h)** has a positive direction (see *Figure 2.56*, right); when the phase angle is π, **F(h)** has the opposite (negative) direction. In other words in the presence of the center of inversion and in the absence of the anomalously scattering atoms, the structure amplitude becomes a real quantity with a positive sign when $\alpha(\mathbf{h}) = 0$ and with a negative sign when $\alpha(\mathbf{h}) = \pi$ because its imaginary component is always zero.

When the anomalous scattering is present, the structure amplitude even for a centrosymmetric crystal becomes a complex number. This is shown in Eqs. 2.107 and 2.108. The first (general expression) is easily derived by combining Eqs. 2.101 and 2.103 and rearranging it to group both the real and imaginary components.

$$\mathbf{F}_{hkl} = \left(\begin{array}{l} \sum_{j=1}^{n} g^j t^j(s)\{f_0^j(s) + \Delta f^{j\prime}\}\cos[2\pi(hx^j + ky^j + lz^j)] - \\ \sum_{j=1}^{n} g^j t^j(s)\Delta f^{j\prime\prime}\sin[2\pi(hx^j + ky^j + lz^j)] \end{array} \right) + \mathbf{i}\left(\begin{array}{l} \sum_{j=1}^{n} g^j t^j(s)\{f_0^j(s) + \Delta f^{j\prime}\}\sin[2\pi(hx^j + ky^j + lz^j)] + \\ \sum_{j=1}^{n} g^j t^j(s)\Delta f^{j\prime\prime}\cos[2\pi(hx^j + ky^j + lz^j)] \end{array} \right) \quad (2.107)$$

The introduction of the center of inversion results in the cancellation of all sine terms in Eq. 2.107 and

$$\mathbf{F}_{hkl} = \sum_{j=1}^{n} g^j t^j(s)\{f_0^j(s) + \Delta f^{j\prime}\}\cos[2\pi(hx^j + ky^j + lz^j)] + \mathbf{i}\sum_{j=1}^{n} g^j t^j(s)\Delta f^{j\prime\prime}\cos[2\pi(hx^j + ky^j + lz^j)] \quad (2.108)$$

Recalling that usually $\Delta f^{j\prime\prime} << f_0^j + \Delta f^{j\prime}$, the absolute value of the imaginary component in Eq. 2.108 is smaller than that of the real part, and phase angles remain close to 0 or π in any centrosymmetric structure. In the non-centrosymmetric cases (Eq. 2.107) the phase angles may adopt any value between 0 and 2π.

In conclusion of this section, it is worth noting that the measured integrated intensity (Eq. 2.65) is proportional to the square of the structure amplitude. Thus, the relative absolute value of the structure amplitude is an easily measurable quantity – it can be obtained as a square root of intensity after dividing the latter by all known geometrical factors. The phase angle (or the sign in case of normally scattering centrosymmetric structures), however, remains unknown. In other words, phases are lost and cannot be determined directly from either a powder or a single crystal diffraction experiment. This creates the so called "phase problem" in diffraction analysis, and its significance will be discussed later in this Chapter (see section 2.14).

2.12 Effects of symmetry on the structure amplitude

Considering the most general expression of the structure amplitude, Eq. 2.107, its value is defined by population and displacement parameters of all

atoms present in the unit cell, their scattering ability and coordinates. We know that coordinates and other parameters of atoms in the unit cell are related by symmetry. As was shown in Chapter 1 (Eqs. 1.39 and 1.48), the coordinates of two symmetrically equivalent atoms (**x** and **x'**) are related as

$$\mathbf{x'}=\mathbf{A}\cdot\mathbf{x} \tag{2.109}$$

where $\mathbf{x} = (x, y, z, 1)$ $\mathbf{x'} = (x', y', z', 1)$ and **A** is an augmented matrix representing a symmetry operation. By expanding Eq. 2.109, substituting the result to express the identical arguments of sine and cosine parts in Eq. 2.107 and regrouping it as shown in Eq. 2.110

$$2\pi\mathbf{h}\cdot\mathbf{x'}=2\pi\begin{bmatrix} x(hr_{11}+kr_{21}+lr_{31})+y(hr_{12}+kr_{22}+lr_{32})+ \\ z(hr_{13}+kr_{23}+lr_{33})+\quad (ht_1+kt_2+lt_3) \end{bmatrix} \tag{2.110}$$

it is easy to see that the symmetry of the direct space (crystal structure) is carried over into the reciprocal space by modifying structure amplitudes. Thus, the contribution of two symmetrically equivalent atoms **x** and **x'** into the corresponding reciprocal lattice points, **h** and **h'**, may be expressed as

$$\mathbf{h'}=\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}\cdot\mathbf{h} \tag{2.111}$$

where **h** and **h'** are augmented reciprocal lattice vectors, and $\mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}$ is obtained from **A** by transposing the rotational part of the augmented matrix:

$$\mathbf{A}=\begin{pmatrix} r_{11} & r_{12} & r_{13} & t_1 \\ r_{21} & r_{22} & r_{23} & t_2 \\ r_{31} & r_{32} & r_{33} & t_3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } \mathbf{A}^{\mathrm{T}}=\begin{pmatrix} r_{11} & r_{21} & r_{31} & t_1 \\ r_{12} & r_{22} & r_{32} & t_2 \\ r_{13} & r_{23} & r_{33} & t_3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.112}$$

As a result of symmetry transformation (Eqs. 2.111 and 2.112), both the magnitude of the structure amplitude and its phase may change. Finite symmetry operations (t_1, t_2 and t_3 are all 0) usually affect the phase angle, while infinite operations, i.e. those which have a non-zero translational component, affect both the magnitude and the phase.

2.12.1 Friedel pairs and Friedel's law

We begin with considering the relationships between the structure amplitudes of two centrosymmetric reciprocal lattice points: (*hkl*) and ($\bar{h}\bar{k}\bar{l}$),

the so-called Friedel pair. The analysis is relatively simple and is based on the known relationships between the three trigonometric functions:

$$\begin{aligned} &\cos(-x) = \cos(x), \text{ but} \\ &\sin(-x) = -\sin(x) \text{ and } \tan(-x) = -\tan(x) \end{aligned} \tag{2.113}$$

Regardless of whether the crystal structure is centrosymmetric or not, in the absence of the anomalous scattering it directly follows from Eqs. 2.103, 2.104, 2.105 and 2.113 that

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathbf{A(h)} = \mathbf{A}(\bar{\mathbf{h}}) \\ &\mathbf{B(h)} = -\mathbf{B}(\bar{\mathbf{h}}) \\ &\alpha(\mathbf{h}) = -\alpha(\bar{\mathbf{h}}) \\ &|\mathbf{F(h)}| = \sqrt{|\mathbf{A(h)}|^2 + |\mathbf{B(h)}|^2} = \sqrt{|\mathbf{A(h)}|^2 + |\mathbf{B}(\bar{\mathbf{h}})|^2} = |\mathbf{F}(\bar{\mathbf{h}})| \\ &I(\mathbf{h}) \propto |\mathbf{F(h)}|^2 \Rightarrow I(\mathbf{h}) = I(\bar{\mathbf{h}}) \end{aligned} \tag{2.114}$$

Equation 2.114 represents the algebraic formulation of the Friedel's law, which states that the absolute values of structure amplitudes and intensities are identical but the phase angles have opposite signs for Bragg reflections related to one another by the center of inversion. In another formulation, it states that the reciprocal space is always centrosymmetric in the absence of the anomalous scattering because $|\mathbf{F(h)}| = |\mathbf{F}(\bar{\mathbf{h}})|$. Friedel's law is illustrated in *Figure 2.57*, left.

On the contrary, when the anomalous scattering is substantial, then considering Eq. 2.107 instead of Eq. 2.103, both the real and imaginary components of the structure amplitude are modified as follows

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathbf{A(h)} = \mathbf{A(h)} + \delta\mathbf{A''(h)} \\ &\mathbf{A}(\bar{\mathbf{h}}) = \mathbf{A(h)} - \delta\mathbf{A''(h)} \\ &\mathbf{B(h)} = \mathbf{B(h)} + \delta\mathbf{B''(h)} \\ &\mathbf{B}(\bar{\mathbf{h}}) = -\mathbf{B(h)} + \delta\mathbf{B''(h)} \end{aligned} \tag{2.115}$$

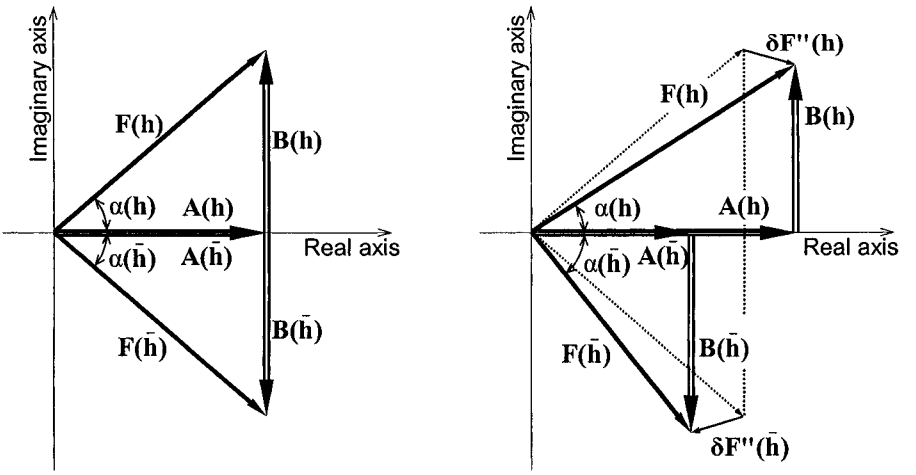


Figure 2.57. The relationships between different components of the structure amplitude in a Friedel pair when all atoms scatter normally (left) and when there are anomalously scattering atoms in the crystal structure (right).

In Eq. 2.115 the factors **A** and **B** represent, respectively, the real and imaginary parts of the structure amplitude which are independent of the anomalous scattering, and **δA"** and **δB"** appear due to the effect introduced by the presence of the complex component of the anomalous scattering, $\Delta f''$. The combined effect of **δA"** and **δB"** results in the modification of the corresponding structure amplitude vectors by **δF(h)"** and **δF($\bar{\mathbf{h}}$)"**. This breaks all equalities in Eq. 2.114 and is illustrated in *Figure 2.57*, right. Thus, Friedel's law is violated in noncentrosymmetric crystal structures containing anomalously scattering species.

When the crystal structure is centrosymmetric (Eq. 2.108), Friedel's law (Eq. 2.114) becomes fully valid even in the presence of the anomalously scattering atoms. This statement is easy to verify and we leave this exercise to the reader.

2.12.2 Friedel's law and multiplicity factor

Earlier, we considered the effect of lattice symmetry on the multiplicity factors in powder diffraction only in terms of the number of completely overlapping equivalent Bragg peaks (section 2.10.3). Because Friedel's law is violated in non-centrosymmetric structures in the presence of anomalously scattering chemical elements, the evaluation of multiplicity factors should also include Eqs. 2.114 and 2.115. Thus, the multiplicity factor, p_{hkl}, may be comprehensively defined as the number of equivalent reflections (*hkl*), which satisfy Eq. 2.114 in addition to having identical lengths of the

reciprocal lattice vectors calculated using Eq. 2.37 (or its equivalent for higher symmetry crystal systems).

Considering an orthorhombic crystal system, the equivalency relationships established above (section 2.10.3) also satisfy Eq. 2.114 i.e. $|\mathbf{F}(hkl)| = |\mathbf{F}(\bar{h}kl)| = |\mathbf{F}(h\bar{k}l)| = |\mathbf{F}(hk\bar{l})| = |\mathbf{F}(\bar{h}\bar{k}l)| = |\mathbf{F}(\bar{h}k\bar{l})| = |\mathbf{F}(h\bar{k}\bar{l})| = |\mathbf{F}(\bar{h}\bar{k}\bar{l})|$ when space group symmetry contains a center of inversion or when there are no anomalously scattering atoms in the unit cell. The multiplicity factor in this case is $p = 8$ for all (hkl) reflections where none of the indices are 0. When the center of inversion is absent and when the anomalous scattering is considerable, the situation is different. For example, in the space group P222, the following two sets of structure amplitudes remain identical: $|\mathbf{F}(hkl)| = |\mathbf{F}(h\bar{k}\bar{l})| = |\mathbf{F}(\bar{h}k\bar{l})| = |\mathbf{F}(\bar{h}\bar{k}l)|$ and $|\mathbf{F}(\bar{h}\bar{k}\bar{l})| = |\mathbf{F}(hk\bar{l})| = |\mathbf{F}(h\bar{k}l)| = |\mathbf{F}(\bar{h}kl)|$ but each set of four is different, and the multiplicity factor is reduced to $p = 4$ for each of the two groups of points in the reciprocal lattice.

2.12.3 Systematic absences

As noted at the beginning of this section, crystallographic symmetry has an effect on the structure amplitude, and therefore, it affects the intensities of Bragg peaks. The presence of translational symmetry causes certain combinations of Miller indices to become extinct because symmetrical contributions into Eq. 2.110 result in the cancellation of relevant trigonometric factors in Eq. 2.107. It is also said that some combinations of indices are forbidden due to the occurrence of translational symmetry.

2.12.3.1 Lattice centering

Consider a body-centered lattice, in which every atom has a symmetrically equivalent atom shifted by (1/2, 1/2, 1/2). The two matrices **A** (Eq. 2.109) for every pair of the symmetrically identical atoms are:

$$A_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } A_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.116}$$

The corresponding arguments defined in Eq. 2.110 become as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} 2\pi(\mathbf{h}\cdot\mathbf{x})_1 &= 2\pi(hx + ky + lz) \\ 2\pi(\mathbf{h}\cdot\mathbf{x})_2 &= 2\pi(hx + ky + lz) + \pi(h + k + l) \end{aligned} \tag{2.117}$$

When these arguments are substituted into the most general equation (2.107) and the summation is carried over every pair of the symmetrically equivalent atoms, the resulting sums of the corresponding trigonometric factors are

$$\begin{aligned}&\cos[2\pi(hx+ky+lz)]+\\&\cos[2\pi(hx+ky+lz)+\pi(h+k+l)]=0\\&\\&\sin[2\pi(hx+ky+lz)]+\\&\sin[2\pi(hx+ky+lz)+\pi(h+k+l)]=0\end{aligned} \tag{2.118}$$

when $h+k+l=\pm1,\pm3,\pm5,\ldots=2n+1$; and

$$\begin{aligned}&\cos[2\pi(hx+ky+lz)]+\cos[2\pi(hx+ky+lz)+\pi(h+k+l)]=\\&=2\cos[2\pi(hx+ky+lz)]\\&\\&\sin[2\pi(hx+ky+lz)]+\sin[2\pi(hx+ky+lz)+\pi(h+k+l)]=\\&=2\sin[2\pi(hx+ky+lz)]\end{aligned} \tag{2.119}$$

when $h+k+l=0,\pm2,\pm4,\ldots=2n$, where n is an integer.

All prefactors in Eq. 2.107 (i.e. g, t, f_0, $\Delta f'$, and $\Delta f''$) are identical for the pairs of the symmetrically equivalent atoms. Hence, Bragg reflections in which the sums of all Miller indices are odd should have zero structure amplitude and zero intensity in any body-centered crystal structure. In other words, they become extinct or absent, and therefore, could not be observed and are forbidden.

This property, which is introduced by the presence of a translational symmetry, is called the systematic absence (or the systematic extinction). Therefore, in a body-centered lattice only Bragg reflections in which the sums of all Miller indices are even (i.e. $h+k+l=2n$ and $n=\pm1,\pm2,\pm3,\ldots$) may have non-zero intensity and be observed. It is worth noting that some (but not all) of the Bragg reflections with $h+k+l=2n$ may become extinct because their intensities are too low to be detected due to other reasons, e.g. a specific distribution of atoms in the unit cell, which is not predetermined by symmetry.

Similar analyses may be easily performed for other types of Bravais lattices, and the resulting relationships between Miller indices are assembled in *Table 2.8*. As a self-exercise try to derive the relationships between Miller

indices of forbidden Bragg peaks for three different types of the base-centered lattices: A, B and C.

Table 2.8. Systematic absences caused by different Bravais lattices.

Bravais lattice	Allowed reflections	Extinct (forbidden) reflections
P	All	None
I	$h+k+l = 2n$	$h+k+l = 2n+1$
F	$h+k = 2n$ and $k+l = 2n$ and $h+l = 2n$[a]	$h+k = 2n+1$ or $k+l = 2n+1$ or $h+l = 2n+1$
A	$k+l = 2n$	$k+l = 2n+1$
B	$h+l = 2n$	$h+l = 2n+1$
C	$h+k = 2n$	$h+k = 2n+1$
R[b]	$-h+k+l = 3n$ (hexagonal basis)	$-h+k+l = 3n+1$ and $3n+2$
R[c]	$h-k+l = 3n$ (hexagonal basis)	$h-k+l = 3n+1$ and $3n+2$

[a] Alternative definition: all indices even ($h=2n$ and $k=2n$ and $l=2n$) or all odd ($h=2n+1$ and $k=2n+1$ and $l=2n+1$).
[b] Standard setting.
[c] Reverse setting.

2.12.3.2 Glide planes

We now consider a glide plane, n, perpendicular to the *Y*-axis. In the simplest case (i.e. when the plane also intersects the origin of coordinates), the equivalents of Eqs. 2.116 to 2.119 become:

$$A_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } A_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1/2 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.120}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 2\pi(\mathbf{h}\cdot\mathbf{x})_1 &= 2\pi(hx+ky+lz) \\ 2\pi(\mathbf{h}\cdot\mathbf{x})_2 &= 2\pi(hx-ky+lz)+\pi(h+l) \end{aligned} \tag{2.121}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\cos[2\pi(hx+0y+lz)]+\cos[2\pi(hx-0y+lz)+\pi(h+l)] = \\ &= 0 \\ &\sin[2\pi(hx+0y+lz)]+\sin[2\pi(hx-0y+lz)+\pi(h+l)] = \\ &= 0 \end{aligned} \tag{2.122}$$

when $h + l = \pm1, \pm3, \pm5, \ldots = 2n + 1$; and

$$\cos[2\pi(hx+0y+lz)]+\cos[2\pi(hx-0y+lz)+\pi(h+l)]=$$
$$=2\cos[2\pi(hx+lz)]$$
$$\sin[2\pi(hx+0y+lz)]+\sin[2\pi(hx-0y+lz)+\pi(h+l)]= \quad (2.123)$$
$$=2\sin[2\pi(hx+lz)]$$

when $h+l=0, \pm2, \pm4, \ldots = 2n$.

Hence, Bragg peaks ($h0l$) in which the sum of h and l is odd should have zero structure amplitude and zero intensity due to the presence of the glide plane n in this orientation. Only Bragg peaks in which the sum of these Miller indices is even (i.e. $h + l = 2n$) may have non-zero intensity and be observed. We note that the presence of this glide plane only affects Bragg peaks with $k = 0$ because of the change of the sign of ky in Eq. 2.121. Again, some (but not all) reflections $h0l$ with $h + l = 2n$ may be absent due to peculiarities of a crystal structure, not associated with the presence of the glide plane n, but no peaks with $h+l=2n+1$ can be observed.

Similar analyses may be performed for other types of glide planes in different orientations and not necessarily traversing the origin of coordinates (as an exercise try to derive the relationships between Miller indices of the systematically absent Bragg peaks for a glide plane, a, perpendicular to Y and Z directions). The relationships between allowed Miller indices for various glide planes in different orientations are shown in *Table 2.9*.

Table 2.9. Combinations of indices, which are allowed by various glide planes

Glide plane	Orientation[a]	Reflection type	Allowed reflections[b]
a	(010)	$h0l$	$h = 2n$
	(001)	$hk0$	$h = 2n$
	(110)	hhl	$h = 2n$
b	(100)	$0kl$	$k = 2n$
	(001)	$hk0$	$k = 2n$
c	(100)	$0kl$	$l = 2n$
	(010)	$h0l$	$l = 2n$
	(110)	hhl	$l = 2n$
	$(1\bar{1}0)$	$h\bar{h}l$	$l = 2n$
d	(100)	$0kl$	$k+l = 4n$ $(k,l = 2n)$
	(010)	$h0l$	$h+l = 4n$ $(h,l = 2n)$
	(001)	$hk0$	$h+k = 4n$ $(h,k = 2n)$
	(110)	hhl	$2h+l = 4n$ $(l = 2n)$
n	(100)	$0kl$	$k+l = 2n$
	(010)	$h0l$	$h+l = 2n$
	(001)	$hk0$	$h+k = 2n$
	(110)	hhl	$l = 2n$

[a] The orientations are given as the crystallographic indices of the corresponding plane.
[b] All other reflections are forbidden.

2.12.3.3 Screw axes

Consider a screw axis, 2_1, parallel to the *Y*-axis. The equivalents of Eqs. 2.116 to 2.119 when the axis passes through the origin of coordinates are as follows:

$$A_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } A_2 = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.124}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 2\pi(\mathbf{h}\cdot\mathbf{x})_1 &= 2\pi(hx+ky+lz) \\ 2\pi(\mathbf{h}\cdot\mathbf{x})_2 &= 2\pi(-hx+ky-lz)+\pi k \end{aligned} \tag{2.125}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\cos[2\pi(0x+ky+0z)]+\cos[2\pi(-0x+ky-0z)+\pi k]=0 \\ &\sin[2\pi(0x+ky+0z)]+\sin[2\pi(-0x+ky-0z)+\pi k]=0 \end{aligned} \tag{2.126}$$

when $k = \pm1, \pm3, \pm5, \ldots = 2n + 1$; and

$$\begin{aligned} &\cos[2\pi(0x+ky+0z)]+\cos[2\pi(-0x+ky-0z)+\pi k] \\ &= 2\cos[2\pi ky] \\ &\sin[2\pi(0x+ky+0z)]+\sin[2\pi(-0x+ky-0z)+\pi k] \\ &= 2\sin[2\pi ky] \end{aligned} \tag{2.127}$$

when $k = 0, \pm2, \pm4, \ldots = 2n$.

Hence, Bragg peaks (0*k*0), in which *k* is odd, should have zero structure amplitude and zero intensity due to the presence of the 2_1 axis in this orientation. Only Bragg peaks in which *k* is even may have non-zero intensity and be observed. Similar to glide planes, the presence of screw axes only affects Bragg peaks with two Miller indices equal to 0 because of the change of the sign of two terms in Eq. 2.125 (*hx* and *lz* in this example).

Corresponding analysis may be performed for other types of screw axes in different orientations. As an exercise try to derive the relationships between Miller indices of the systematically absent Bragg peaks for a 4_1 screw axis parallel to the *Z* direction. Again, the result remains identical whether or not the axis intersects the origin of coordinates. The relationships

between Miller indices of Bragg peaks allowed by various screw axes in different orientations are shown in *Table 2.10*.

Table 2.10. Combinations of indices, which are allowed by various screw axes.

Screw axis	Orientation[a]	Reflection type	Allowed reflections[b]
2_1, 4_2	[100]	$h00$	$h = 2n$
	[010]	$0k0$	$k = 2n$
2_1, 4_2, 6_3	[001]	$00l$	$l = 2n$
4_1, 4_3	[100]	$h00$	$h = 4n$
	[010]	$0k0$	$k = 4n$
	[001]	$00l$	$l = 4n$
3_1, 3_2, 6_2, 6_4	[001]	$00l$	$l = 3n$
6_1, 6_5	[001]	$00l$	$l = 6n$

[a] The orientations are given as the crystallographic directions.
[b] All other reflections are forbidden.

2.12.4 Space groups and systematic absences

As shown in section 2.12.3, the presence of translational symmetry causes extinctions of certain types of reflections. This property of infinite symmetry elements finds use in the determination of possible space group(s) symmetry from diffraction data by analyzing Miller indices of the observed Bragg peaks. It is worth noting that only infinite symmetry elements cause systematic absences, and therefore, may be detected from this analysis. Finite symmetry elements, such as simple rotation and inversion axes, mirror plane and center of inversion, produce no systematic absences and therefore, are not distinguishable using this approach.

As is often the case in diffraction analysis, when the space group symmetry is known, it is quite easy to predict which types of reflections can and which cannot be observed. For example, when the space group symmetry is Pnma, only the following types of Bragg peaks may have non-zero intensity (as established by analyzing *Table 2.8* to *Table 2.10*):

hkl: any (primitive Bravais lattice)
*hk*0: $h = 2n$ (glide plane a $\perp Z$)
*h*0*l*: any (mirror plane m $\perp Y$)
0*kl*: $k+l = 2n$ (glide plane n $\perp X$)
*h*00: $h = 2n$ (derivative of the glide plane a $\perp Z$ because $k = 0$)
0*k*0: $k = 2n$ (derivative of the glide plane n $\perp X$ because $l = 0$)
00*l*: $l = 2n$ (derivative of the glide plane n $\perp X$ because $k = 0$)

When the space group symmetry is unknown, i.e. when reflection conditions are analyzed from diffraction data, the answer may not be unique. For example, the combination of systematic absences listed above also

corresponds to a different space group symmetry, $Pn2_1a$ (as an exercise, please verify that this space group symmetry produces exactly the same combination of the allowed Miller indices of Bragg reflections) and therefore, the two space groups are unrecognizable from a simple analysis of the present Bragg peaks.

All space groups that produce identical combinations of systematic absences are combined into the so-called diffraction groups. For example, space groups $P31c$ and $P\bar{3}1c$, result in the same allowed reflection conditions: $l = 2n$ for both $0kl$ and $00l$ type reflections. They belong to the trigonal diffraction group P--c. The three hexagonal space groups symmetry – $P\bar{6}2c$, $P6_3mc$ and $P6_3/mmc$ – also belong to the P--c diffraction group, but the crystal system is hexagonal. When powder diffraction data are used to analyze systematic absences, these two diffraction groups cannot be distinguished from one another, which occurs due to the same symmetry of shapes of both the trigonal and hexagonal unit cells. The two are discernible using diffraction data from a single crystal, where the three-fold rotation axis is different from the six-fold rotation axis. In powder diffraction, however, Bragg reflections with different intensity in the trigonal crystal system, such as *hkl* and *khl*, are exactly overlapped and, therefore, cannot be distinguished from each other.

Nonetheless, analysis of the systematic absences (the complete list is found in *Table 2.12* to *Table 2.17*) usually allows one to narrow the choice of space group symmetry to just a few possibilities, and the actual symmetry of the material is usually established in the process of the complete determination of its crystal structure. Especially when powder diffraction data are used, it only makes sense to analyze low angle Bragg peaks to minimize potential influence of the nearly completely overlapped reflections with indices not related by symmetry. An example of the space group determination is shown in *Table 2.11*.

This powder diffraction pattern was indexed in the monoclinic crystal system with $a = 9.264$ Å, $b = 9.728$ Å, $c = 9.905$ Å, $\beta = 106.08°$. All observed Bragg peaks have even sums $h + k$, which clearly points to a base-centered lattice C. The first four columns in *Table 2.11* contain Miller indices and Bragg angles 2θ, calculated assuming base-centered lattice C without applying any other conditions, i.e. as in the space group C2/m. The next two columns list Bragg angles and integrated intensities of the observed peaks that correspond to the calculated Bragg angles.

As follows from *Table 2.12*, there are only two possible diffraction groups for the monoclinic C-centered lattice. The second diffraction group, C1c1, differs from the first one, C1-1, by the presence of $h0l$ reflections only with even l. As is easy to see from *Table 2.11*, none of the Bragg peaks $h0l$ with $l = 2n + 1$ is observed, or in other words, the allowed reflections condition is $l = 2n$ for $h0l$ (these are shown in bold). Other conditions are

derived from the C-centering of the lattice. Thus, the following two space groups symmetry are possible for the material: C1c1 and C12/c1. The latter group was confirmed during structure determination.

Table 2.11. Analysis of the observed combinations of indices in the monoclinic base-centered unit cell (E – even, O – odd). The entries corresponding to Bragg peaks that are theoretically possible but are not observed in the powder diffraction pattern are shaded. The observed Bragg reflections *h*0*l*, in which $l = 2n$ are highlighted in bold (zero is considered an even number).

h	*k*	*l*	$2\theta_{calc}$	$2\theta_{obs}$	I_{obs}	*h*+*k* for all *hkl*	*l* for *h*0*l*, 00*l*	*h* for *h*0*l*, *h*00	*k* for 0*k*0
0	0	1	9.227	unobserved		E	O	E	
1	1	0	13.415	13.425	1000	E			
1	1	-1	14.672	14.675	259	E			
1	1	1	17.838	17.838	93	E			
0	2	0	18.168	18.172	112	E			E
0	**0**	**2**	**18.574**	**18.573**	**30**	**E**	**E**	**E**	
2	0	-1	19.466	unobserved		E	O	E	
2	**0**	**0**	**19.876**	**19.869**	**104**	**E**	**E**	**E**	
0	2	1	20.433	20.428	352	E			
1	1	-2	20.619	20.622	86	E			
2	**0**	**-2**	**23.203**	**23.197**	**86**	**E**	**E**	**E**	
2	0	1	24.233	unobserved		E	O	E	
1	1	2	25.179	25.186	4	E			
0	2	2	26.121	26.111	15	E			
2	2	-1	26.774	26.771	36	E			
2	2	0	27.079	27.074	112	E			
0	0	3	28.049	unobserved		E	O	E	
1	1	-3	28.560	28.559	65	E			
1	3	0	29.234	29.237	37	E			
2	0	-3	29.632	unobserved		E	O	E	
2	2	-2	29.652	unobserved		E			
1	3	-1	29.854	29.853	35	E			
3	1	-1	30.306	30.321	38	E			
2	2	1	30.480	30.507	6	E			
2	**0**	**2**	**31.001**	**30.997**	**77**	**E**	**E**	**E**	
3	1	0	31.441	31.422	24	E			
1	3	1	31.591	31.576	27	E			

In general, the determination of the space group symmetry or the list of possible space groups using *Table 2.12* through *Table 2.17* should be performed as follows:

- Based on the symmetry of the unit cell shape, the proper table (crystal system) must be selected. Only in one case, i.e. when the unit cell is primitive with $a = b \neq c$, $\alpha = \beta = 90°$ and $\gamma = 120°$, both trigonal and hexagonal crystal systems should be analyzed.
- All reflections should be first checked for general systematic absences (conditions) caused by lattice centering, which are shown in the first

column in each table. This should narrow the list of possible space groups.
- Subsequently, move to the next column in the corresponding table. Identify reflections that belong to a specified combination of Miller indices listed in the column header and analyze whether or not the extinction conditions are met. This should further narrow the list of possible space groups.
- The last step should be repeated for all columns under the general header "Reflection conditions". When finished, the list should be narrowed to a single line, i.e. the corresponding diffraction group should be found for the known symmetry of the unit cell shape.
- In the case of monoclinic and orthorhombic crystal systems, it may be necessary to transform the unit cell in order to achieve a standard setting of the space group symmetry. The space groups in standard settings are shown in the corresponding tables in bold. Usually only a permutation of the coordinate axes is needed but in some cases in the monoclinic crystal system, such as I-centering or the presence of the glide plane n, a more complex transformation of the unit cell vectors may be required. If necessary, the International Tables for Crystallography (vol. A) should be used as a reference on how to perform a transformation of unit cell vectors properly.

In *Table 2.12* to *Table 2.17*, reflection conditions as determined by the presence of translational symmetry are listed for all crystal systems, except triclinic. The latter has no translational symmetry and therefore, the two possible space groups symmetry, P1 and $P\bar{1}$, belong to the same diffraction class, P1. If a cell showing reflection conditions is empty, there are no restrictions imposed on Miller indices and any combination of them is allowed. Unless noted otherwise, the corresponding symbol(s) or expression(s) present in the cell indicate that the index or the combination is even. Monoclinic and orthorhombic space groups in standard settings are shown in **bold**; trigonal, hexagonal, tetragonal and cubic space groups are only shown in standard setting. Space groups with unique reflection conditions (i.e. those, which are uniquely determined from the systematic absences) are shaded for a standard setting. Superscripts indicate space group number as listed in the International Tables for Crystallography, vol. A. The following abbreviations are employed to specify allowed combinations of indices due to lattice centering:

A: $k + l = 2n$; B: $h + l = 2n$; C: $h + k = 2n$
I: $h + k + l = 2n$
F: $h + k = 2n$ and $h + l = 2n$ and $k + l = 2n$
R: $-h + k + l = 3n$ or $h - k + l = 3n$

Table 2.12. Reflection conditions for the monoclinic crystal system (Laue class 2/m, unique axis *b*).

Reflection conditions			Diffraction symbol	Point group, space groups		
hkl, 0*kl*, *hk*0	*h*0*l*, *h*00, 00*l*	0*k*0		2	m	2/ m
			P1-1	**P121**[3]	**P1m1**[6]	**P12/m1**[10]
		k	$P12_11$	**$P12_11$**[4]		**$P12_1/m1$**[11]
	h		P1a1		P1a1[7]	P12/a1[13]
	h	*k*	$P12_1/a1$			$P12_1/a1$[14]
	l		P1c1		**P1c1**[7]	**P12/c1**[13]
	l	*k*	$P12_1/c1$			**$P12_1/c1$**[14]
	h+*l*		P1n1		P1n1[7]	P12/n1[13]
	h+*l*	*k*	$P12_1/n1$			$P12_1/n1$[14]
C	*h*	*k*	C1-1	**C121**[5]	**C1m1**[8]	**C12/m1**[12]
C	*h*,*l*	*k*	C1c1		**C1c1**[9]	**C12/c1**[15]
A	*l*	*k*	A1-1	A121[5]	A1m1[8]	A12/m1[12]
A	*h*,*l*	*k*	A1n1		A1n1[9]	A12/n1[15]
I	*h*+*l*	*k*	I1-1	I121[5]	I1m1[8]	I12/m1[12]
I	*h*,*l*	*k*	I1a1		I1a1[9]	I12/a1[15]

Table 2.13. Reflection conditions for the orthorhombic crystal system (Laue class mmm).

Reflection conditions							Diffraction symbol	Point group, space groups		
hkl	0*kl*	*h*0*l*	*hk*0	*h*00	0*k*0	00*l*		222	mm2 m2m 2mm	mmm
							P---	**P222**[16]	**Pmm2**[25] Pm2m[25] P2mm[25]	**Pmmm**[47]
						l	$P--2_1$	**$P222_1$**[17]		
					k		$P-2_1-$	$P22_12$[17]		
					k	*l*	$P-2_12_1$	$P22_12_1$[18]		
				h			$P2_1--$	$P2_122$[17]		
				h		*l*	$P2_1-2_1$	$P2_122_1$[18]		
				h	*k*		$P2_12_1-$	**$P2_12_12$**[18]		
				h	*k*	*l*	$P2_12_12_1$	**$P2_12_12_1$**[19]		
			h	*h*			P--a		Pm2a[28]	
									$P2_1ma$[26]	**Pmma**[51]
			k		*k*		P--b		$Pm2_1b$[26]	
									P2mb[28]	Pmmb[51]
			h+*k*	*h*	*k*		P--n		$Pm2_1n$[31]	
									$P2_1mn$[31]	**Pmmn**[59]
		h		*h*			P-a-		Pma2[28]	Pmam[51]
									$P2_1am$[26]	
		h	*h*	*h*			P-aa		P2aa[27]	Pmaa[49]
		h	*k*	*h*	*k*		P-ab		$P2_1ab$[29]	Pmab[57]
		h	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*		P-an		P2an[30]	Pman[53]

Reflection conditions							Diffraction symbol	Point group, space groups		
hkl	0*kl*	*h*0*l*	*hk*0	*h*00	0*k*0	00*l*		222	mm2 m2m 2mm	mmm
		l				*l*	P-c-		**$Pmc2_1$**[26]	
									P2cm[28]	Pmcm[51]
		l	*h*	*h*		*l*	P-ca		$P2_1ca$[29]	Pmca[57]
		l	*k*		*k*	*l*	P-cb		P2cb[32]	Pmcb[55]
		l	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	P-cn		$P2_1cn$[33]	Pmcn[62]
		h+*l*		*h*		*l*	P-n-		**$Pmn2_1$**[31]	
									$P2_1nm$[31]	Pmnm[59]
		h+*l*	*h*	*h*		*l*	P-na		P2na[30]	**Pmna**[53]
		h+*l*	*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	P-nb		$P2_1nb$[33]	Pmnb[62]
		h+*l*	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	P-nn		P2nn[34]	Pmnn[58]
	k				*k*		Pb--		Pbm2[28]	
									$Pb2_1m$[26]	Pbmm[51]
	k		*h*	*h*	*k*		Pb-a		$Pb2_1a$[29]	Pnma[57]
	k		*k*		*k*		Pb-b		Pb2b[27]	Pbmb[49]
	k		*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*		Pb-n		Pb2n[30]	Pbmn[53]
	k	*h*		*h*	*k*		Pba-		**Pba2**[32]	**Pbam**[55]
	k	*h*	*h*	*h*	*k*		Pbaa			Pbaa[54]
	k	*h*	*k*	*h*	*k*		Pbab			Pbab[54]
	k	*h*	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*		Pban			**Pban**[50]
	k	*l*			*k*	*l*	Pbc-		$Pbc2_1$[29]	**Pbcm**[57]
	k	*l*	*h*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pbca			**Pbca**[61]
	k	*l*	*k*		*k*	*l*	Pbcb			Pbcb[54]
	k	*l*	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pbcn			**Pbcn**[60]
	k	*h*+*l*		*h*	*k*	*l*	Pbn-		$Pbn2_1$[33]	Pbnm[62]
	k	*h*+*l*	*h*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pbna			Pbna[60]
	k	*h*+*l*	*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pbnb			Pbnb[56]
	k	*h*+*l*	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pbnn			Pbnn[52]
	l					*l*	Pc--		$Pcm2_1$[26]	
									Pc2m[28]	Pcmm[51]
	l		*h*	*h*		*l*	Pc-a		Pc2a[32]	Pcma[55]
	l		*k*		*k*	*l*	Pc-b		$Pc2_1b$[29]	Pcmb[57]
	l		*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pc-n		$Pc2_1n$[33]	Pcmn[62]
	l	*h*		*h*		*l*	Pca-		**$Pca2_1$**[29]	Pcam[57]
	l	*h*	*h*	*h*		*l*	Pcaa			Pcaa[54]
	l	*h*	*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pcab			Pcab[61]
	l	*h*	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pcan			Pcan[60]
	l	*l*				*l*	Pcc-		**Pcc2**[27]	**Pccm**[49]
	l	*l*	*h*	*h*		*l*	Pcca			**Pcca**[54]
	l	*l*	*k*		*k*	*l*	Pccb			Pccb[54]
	l	*l*	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pccn			**Pccn**[56]
	l	*h*+*l*		*h*		*l*	Pcn-		Pcn2[30]	Pcnm[53]
	l	*h*+*l*	*h*	*h*		*l*	Pcna			Pcna[50]
	l	*h*+*l*	*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pcnb			Pcnb[60]
	l	*h*+*l*	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pcnn			Pcnn[52]
	k+*l*				*k*	*l*	Pn--		$Pnm2_1$[31]	Pnmm[59]
									$Pn2_1m$[31]	

Reflection conditions							Diffraction symbol	Point group, space groups		
hkl	0*kl*	*h*0*l*	*hk*0	*h*00	0*k*0	00*l*		222	mm2 m2m 2mm	mmm
	k+*l*		*h*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pn-a		Pn2$_1$a[33]	**Pnma**[62]
	k+*l*		*k*		*k*	*l*	Pn-b		Pn2b[30]	Pnmb[53]
	k+*l*		*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pn-n		Pn2n[34]	Pnmn[58]
	k+*l*	*h*		*h*	*k*	*l*	Pna-		**Pna2$_1$**[33]	Pnam[62]
	k+*l*	*h*	*h*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pnaa			Pnaa[56]
	k+*l*	*h*	*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pnab			Pnab[60]
	k+*l*	*h*	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pnan			Pnan[52]
	k+*l*	*l*			*k*	*l*	Pnc-		**Pnc2**[30]	Pncm[53]
	k+*l*	*l*	*h*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pnca			Pnca[60]
	k+*l*	*l*	*k*		*k*	*l*	Pncb			Pncb[50]
	k+*l*	*l*	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pncn			Pncn[52]
	k+*l*	*h*+*l*		*h*	*k*	*l*	Pnn-		**Pnn2**[34]	**Pnnm**[58]
	k+*l*	*h*+*l*	*h*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pnna			**Pnna**[52]
	k+*l*	*h*+*l*	*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pnnb			Pnnb[52]
	k+*l*	*h*+*l*	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Pnnn			**Pnnn**[48]
C	*k*	*h*	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*		C---	**C222**[21]	**Cmm2**[35] Cm2m[38] C2mm[38]	**Cmmm**[65]
C	*k*	*h*	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	C--2$_1$	**C222$_1$**[20]		
C	*k*	*h*	*h*,*k*	*h*	*k*		C--(ab)		Cm2a[39] C2mb[39]	**Cmma**[67] Cmmb[67]
C	*k*	*h*,*l*	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	C-c-		**Cmc2$_1$**[36] C2cm[40]	**Cmcm**[63]
C	*k*	*h*,*l*	*h*,*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	C-c(ab)		C2cb[41]	**Cmca**[64]
C	*k*,*l*	*h*	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Cc--		Ccm2$_1$[36] Cc2m[40]	Ccmm[63]
C	*k*,*l*	*h*	*h*,*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Cc-(ab)		Cc2a[41]	Ccmb[64]
C	*k*,*l*	*h*,*l*	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Ccc-		**Ccc2**[37]	**Cccm**[66]
C	*k*,*l*	*h*,*l*	*h*,*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Ccc(ab)			**Ccca**[68] Cccb[68]
B	*l*	*h*+*l*	*h*	*h*		*l*	B---	B222[21]	Bmm2[38] Bm2m[35] B2mm[38]	Bmmm[65]
B	*l*	*h*+*l*	*h*	*h*	*k*	*l*	B-2$_1$-	B22$_1$2[20]		
B	*l*	*h*+*l*	*h*,*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	B--b		Bm2$_1$b[36] B2mb[40]	Bmmb[63]
B	*l*	*h*,*l*	*h*	*h*		*l*	B-(ac)-		Bma2[39] B2cm[39]	Bmam[67] Bmcm[67]
B	*l*	*h*,*l*	*h*,*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	B-(ac)b		B2cb[41]	Bmab[64]
B	*k*,*l*	*h*+*l*	*h*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Bb--		Bbm2[40] Bb2$_1$m[36]	Bbmm[63]
B	*k*,*l*	*h*+*l*	*h*,*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Bb-b		Bb2b[37]	Bbmb[66]
B	*k*,*l*	*h*,*l*	*h*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Bb(ac)-		Bba2[41]	Bbcm[64]
B	*k*,*l*	*h*,*l*	*h*,*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Bb(ac)b			Bbab[68] Bbcb[68]

Reflection conditions							Diffraction symbol	Point group, space groups		
hkl	0*kl*	*h*0*l*	*hk*0	*h*00	0*k*0	00*l*		222	mm2 m2m 2mm	mmm
A	*k*+*l*	*l*	*k*		*k*	*l*	A---	A222[21]	**Amm2**[38] Am2m[38] A2mm[35]	Ammm[65]
A	*k*+*l*	*l*	*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	A2_1--	A$2_1$22[20]		
A	*k*+*l*	*l*	*h*,*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	A--a		Am2a[40] A2_1ma[36]	Amma[63]
A	*k*+*l*	*h*,*l*	*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	A-a-		**Ama2**[40] A2_1am[36]	Amam[63]
A	*k*+*l*	*h*,*l*	*h*,*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	A-aa		A2aa[37]	Amaa[66]
A	*k*,*l*	*l*	*k*		*k*	*l*	A(bc)--		**Abm2**[39] Ac2m[39]	Abmm[67] Acmm[67]
A	*k*,*l*	*l*	*h*,*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	A(bc)-a		Ac2a[41]	Abma[64]
A	*k*,*l*	*h*,*l*	*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	A(bc)a-		**Aba2**[41]	Acam[64]
A	*k*,*l*	*h*,*l*	*h*,*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	A(bc)aa			Abaa[68] Acaa[68]
I	*k*+*l*	*h*+*l*	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	I---	**I222**[23] **I2$_1$2$_1$2$_1$**[24]	**Imm2**[44] Im2m[44] I2mm[44]	**Immm**[71]
I	*k*+*l*	*h*+*l*	*h*,*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	I--(ab)		Im2a[46] I2mb[46]	**Imma**[74] Immb[74]
I	*k*+*l*	*h*,*l*	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	I-(ac)-		**Ima2**[46] I2cm[46]	Imam[74] Imcm[74]
I	*k*+*l*	*h*,*l*	*h*,*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	I-cb		I2cb[45]	Imcb[72]
I	*k*,*l*	*h*+*l*	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	I(bc)--		Ibm2[46] Ic2m[46]	Ibmm[74] Icmm[74]
I	*k*,*l*	*h*+*l*	*h*,*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Ic-a		Ic2a[45]	Icma[72]
I	*k*,*l*	*h*,*l*	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Iba-		**Iba2**[45]	**Ibam**[72]
I	*k*,*l*	*h*,*l*	*h*,*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	Ibca			**Ibca**[73]
F	*k*+*l*	*h*+*l*	*h*+*k*	*h*	*k*	*l*	F---	**F222**[22]	**Fmm2**[42] Fm2m[42] F2mm[42]	**Fmmm**[69]
F	*k*,*l*	[b]	[c]	h_4[d]	k_4[d]	l_4[d]	F-dd		F2dd[43]	
F	[a]	*h*,*l*	[c]	h_4[d]	k_4[d]	l_4[d]	Fd-d		Fd2d[43]	
F	[a]	[b]	*h*,*k*	h_4[d]	k_4[d]	l_4[d]	Fdd-		**Fdd2**[43]	
F	[a]	[b]	[c]	h_4[d]	k_4[d]	l_4[d]	Fddd			**Fddd**[70]

[a] $k + l = 4n$ and $k=2n$, $l=2n$.
[b] $h + l = 4n$ and $h=2n$, $l=2n$.
[c] $h + k = 4n$ and $h=2n$, $k=2n$.
[d] h_4: $h = 4n$; k_4: $k = 4n$; l_4: $l = 4n$.

Table 2.14. Reflection conditions for the trigonal crystal system. There are no space groups with a unique set of reflection conditions.

Reflection conditions				Diffraction symbol	Laue Class					
					$\bar{3}$	$\bar{3}$m1			$\bar{3}$1m	
					Point group, space groups					
hkl	$h\bar{h}l$	*hhl*	00*l*		3, $\bar{3}$	321	3m1	$\bar{3}$m1	312	31m	$\bar{3}$1m
				P---[a]	P3[143] P$\bar{3}$[147]	P321[150]	P3m1[156]	P$\bar{3}$m1[164]	P312[149]	P31m[157]	P$\bar{3}$1m[162]
			l_3[c]	P3_1--[a]	$P3_1$[144] $P3_2$[145]	$P3_121$[152] $P3_221$[154]			$P3_112$[151] $P3_212$[153]		
		l	*l*	P--c[a]						P31c[159]	P$\bar{3}$1c[163]
	l		*l*	P-c-[a]			P3c1[158]	P$\bar{3}$c1[165]			
R	[b]	l_3[c]	l_3[c]	R--	R3[146] R$\bar{3}$[148]	R32[155]	R3m[160]	R$\bar{3}$m[166]			
R	[b],*l*	l_3[c]	l_6[c]	R-c			R3c[161]	R$\bar{3}$c[167]			

[a] These diffraction groups have the same reflection conditions as the following hexagonal groups: P---, $P6_2$--, P--c, and P-c-. Therefore, they are indistinguishable from systematic absences using powder data.

[b] When R is $-h + k + l = 3n$, then $h + l = 3n$; when R is $h - k + l = 3n$, then $-h + l = 3n$.

[c] l_3: $l = 3n$; l_6: $l = 6n$.

Table 2.15. Reflection conditions for the hexagonal crystal system. There are no space groups with a unique set of reflection conditions.

Reflection conditions				Diffraction symbol	Laue Class				
					6/m		6/mmm		
					Point group, space groups				
hkl	$h\bar{h}l$	*hhl*	00*l*		6, $\bar{6}$	6/m	622, 6mm	$\bar{6}$2m, $\bar{6}$m2	6/mmm
				P---[a]	P6[168] P$\bar{6}$[174]	P6/m[175]	P622[177] P6mm[183]	P$\bar{6}$2m[189] P$\bar{6}$m2[187]	P6/mmm[191]
			l	$P6_3$	$P6_3$[173]	$P6_3$/m[176]	$P6_322$[182]		
			l_3[b]	$P6_2$--[a]	$P6_2$[171] $P6_4$[172]		$P6_222$[180] $P6_422$[181]		
			l_6[b]	$P6_1$--	$P6_1$[169] $P6_5$[170]		$P6_122$[178] $P6_522$[179]		
		l	*l*	P--c[a]			$P6_3$mc[186]	P$\bar{6}$2c[190]	$P6_3$/mmc[194]
	l		*l*	P-c-[a]			$P6_3$cm[185]	P$\bar{6}$c2[188]	$P6_3$/mcm[193]
	l	*l*	*l*	P-cc			P6cc[184]		P6/mcc[192]

[a] These diffraction groups have the same reflection conditions as the following trigonal groups: P---, $P3_1$--, P--c, and P-c-. Therefore, they are indistinguishable from systematic absences using powder data.

[b] l_3: $l = 3n$; l_6: $l = 6n$.

Table 2.16. Reflection conditions for the tetragonal crystal system.

Reflection conditions							Diffraction symbol	Laue Class				
								4/*m*		4/*mmm*		
								Point group, space groups				
hkl	*hk*0	0*kl*	*hhl*	00*l*	0*k*0	*hh*0		4, $\bar{4}$	4/*m*	422 4*mm*	$\bar{4}2m$ $\bar{4}m2$	4/*mmm*
							P---	$P4^{75}$	$P4/m^{83}$	$P422^{89}$	$P\bar{4}2m^{111}$	$P4/mmm^{123}$
								$P\bar{4}^{81}$		$P4mm^{99}$	$P\bar{4}m2^{115}$	
					k		$P\text{-}2_1\text{-}$			$P42_12^{90}$	$P\bar{4}2_1m^{113}$	
				l			$P4_2\text{--}$	$P4_2^{77}$	$P4_2/m^{84}$	$P4_222^{93}$		
				l	k		$P4_22_1\text{-}$			$P4_22_12^{94}$		
				l_4[a]			$P4_1\text{--}$	$P4_1^{76}$		$P4_122^{91}$		
								$P4_3^{78}$		$P4_322^{95}$		
				l_4[a]	k		$P4_12_1\text{-}$			$P4_12_12^{92}$		
										$P4_32_12^{96}$		
			l	l			P--c			$P4_2mc^{105}$	$P\bar{4}2c^{112}$	$P4_2/mmc^{131}$
			l	l	k		$P\text{-}2_1c$				$P\bar{4}2_1c^{114}$	
		k			k		P-b-			$P4bm^{100}$	$P\bar{4}b2^{117}$	$P4/mbm^{127}$
		k	l	l	k		P-bc			$P4_2bc^{106}$		$P4_2/mbc^{135}$
		l		l			P-c-			$P4_2cm^{101}$	$P\bar{4}c2^{116}$	$P4_2/mcm^{132}$
		l	l	l			P-cc			$P4cc^{103}$		$P4/mcc^{124}$
		$k+l$		l	k		P-n-			$P4_2nm^{102}$	$P\bar{4}n2^{118}$	$P4_2/mnm^{136}$
		$k+l$	l	l	k		P-nc			$P4nc^{104}$		$P4/mnc^{128}$
	$h+k$				k		Pn--		$P4/n^{85}$			$P4/nmm^{129}$
	$h+k$			l	k		$P4_2/n\text{--}$		$P4_2/n^{86}$			
	$h+k$		l	l	k		Pn-c					$P4_2/nmc^{137}$
	$h+k$	k			k		Pnb-					$P4/nbm^{125}$
	$h+k$	k	l	l	k		Pnbc					$P4_2/nbc^{133}$
	$h+k$	l		l	k		Pnc-					$P4_2/ncm^{138}$
	$h+k$	l	l	l	k		Pncc					$P4/ncc^{130}$
	$h+k$	$k+l$		l	k		Pnn-					$P4_2/nnm^{134}$
	$h+k$	$k+l$	l	l	k		Pnnc					$P4/nnc^{126}$
I	$h+k$	$k+l$	l	l	k		I---	$I4^{79}$	$I4/m^{87}$	$I422^{97}$	$I\bar{4}2m^{121}$	$I4/mmm^{139}$
								$I\bar{4}^{82}$		$I4mm^{107}$	$I\bar{4}m2^{119}$	
I	$h+k$	$k+l$	l	l_4[a]	k		$I4_1\text{--}$	$I4_1^{80}$		$I4_122^{98}$		
I	$h+k$	$k+l$	[b]	l_4[a]	k	h	I--d			$I4_1md^{109}$	$I\bar{4}2d^{122}$	
I	$h+k$	k,l	l	l	k		I-c-			$I4cm^{108}$	$I\bar{4}c2^{120}$	$I4/mcm^{140}$
I	$h+k$	k,l	[b]	l_4[a]	k	h	I-cd			$I4_1cd^{110}$		
I	h,k	$k+l$	l	l_4[a]	k		$I4_1/a\text{--}$		$I4_1/a^{88}$			
I	h,k	$k+l$	[b]	l_4[a]	k	h	Ia-d					$I4_1/amd^{141}$
I	h,k	k,l	[b]	l_4[a]	k	h	Iacd					$I4_1/acd^{142}$

[a] l_4: $l = 4n$.

[b] $2h + l = 4n$; $l = 2n$.

Table 2.17. Reflection conditions for the cubic crystal system.

Reflection conditions				Diffraction symbol	Laue Class				
					$m\bar{3}$		$m\bar{3}m$		
					Point group				
hkl	0*kl*	*hhl*	00*l*		23	$m\bar{3}$	432	$\bar{4}3m$	$m\bar{3}m$
				P---	$P23^{195}$	$Pm\bar{3}^{200}$	$P432^{207}$	$P\bar{4}3m^{215}$	$Pm\bar{3}m^{221}$
			l	$P2_1$	$P2_13^{198}$				
				$P4_2$			$P4_232^{208}$		
			l_4[a]	$P4_1$			$P4_132^{213}$		
							$P4_332^{212}$		
		l	*l*	P--n				$P\bar{4}3n^{218}$	$Pm\bar{3}n^{223}$
	b		*l*	Pa--		$Pa\bar{3}^{205}$			
	k+l		*l*	Pn--		$Pn\bar{3}^{201}$			$Pn\bar{3}m^{224}$
	k+l	*l*	*l*	Pn-n					$Pn\bar{3}n^{222}$
I	*k+l*	*l*	*l*	I---	$I23^{197}$	$Im\bar{3}^{204}$	$I432^{211}$	$I\bar{4}3m^{217}$	$Im\bar{3}m^{229}$
					$I2_13^{199}$				
I	*k+l*	*l*	l_4[a]	$I4_1$--			$I4_132^{214}$		
I	*k+l*	[c], *l*	l_4[a]	I--d				$I\bar{4}3d^{220}$	
I	*k,l*	*l*	*l*	Ia--		$Ia\bar{3}^{206}$			
I	*k,l*	[c], *l*	l_4[a]	Ia-d					$Ia\bar{3}d^{230}$
F	*k,l*	*h+l*	*l*	F---	$F23^{196}$	$Fm\bar{3}^{202}$	$F432^{209}$	$F\bar{4}3m^{216}$	$Fm\bar{3}m^{225}$
F	*k,l*	*h+l*	l_4[a]	$F4_1$--			$F4_132^{210}$		
F	*k,l*	*h,l*	*l*	F--c				$F\bar{4}3c^{219}$	$Fm\bar{3}c^{226}$
F	[d], *k,l*	*h+l*	l_4[a]	Fd--		$Fd\bar{3}^{203}$			$Fd\bar{3}m^{227}$
F	[d], *k,l*	*h,l*	l_4[a]	Fd-c					$Fd\bar{3}c^{228}$

[a] l_4: $l = 4n$.
[b] Conditions are for 0*kl*: $k = 2n$; for *h*0*l*: $l = 2n$; for *hk*0: $h = 2n$.
[c] $2h + l = 4n$.
[d] $2k + l = 4n$.

2.13 Fourier transformation

In crystallography, direct and reciprocal spaces are related to one another as forward and reverse Fourier transformations. In three dimensions these relationships can be represented by the following Fourier integrals:

$$\Phi(\mathbf{h}) = \int_V \rho(\mathbf{x}) \exp[2\pi i(\mathbf{h} \cdot \mathbf{x})] d^3\mathbf{x} \tag{2.128}$$

$$\rho(\mathbf{x}) = \int_{V^*} \Phi(\mathbf{h}) \exp[-2\pi i(\mathbf{h} \cdot \mathbf{x})] d^3\mathbf{h} \tag{2.129}$$

where Eq. 2.129 is forward (–**i**) and Eq. 2.128 is reverse (+**i**) Fourier transforms. Here, $\Phi(\mathbf{h})$ is the function defined in the reciprocal space, i.e. the scattered amplitude; $\rho(\mathbf{x})$ is the corresponding function defined in the direct space, e.g. $\rho(\mathbf{x})$ is the electron density when scattering of x-rays is of concern or it is the nuclear density when scattering of neutrons on nuclei is considered; **h** and **x** are the coordinate vectors in the reciprocal and direct spaces, respectively; V^* and V are, respectively, reciprocal and direct space volumes, and $\mathbf{i} = \sqrt{-1}$.

Both integrals do not require assumption of periodicity and they can be used to calculate the scattered amplitude or the corresponding density function of any direct or reciprocal object, respectively. For example, Eq. 2.128 results in the atomic scattering factor, $f(\sin\theta/\lambda) \propto |\Phi(\mathbf{h})|$, when the integration is performed for an isolated atom. In this case, $\rho(\mathbf{x})$ is the electron density distribution in the atom, which is usually obtained from quantum mechanics.

Considering a crystal, in which the electron density function is periodic, the integral in Eq. 2.128 can be substituted by a sum:

$$\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{h}) = V\sum_{\mathbf{x}} \rho(\mathbf{x}) \exp[2\pi\mathbf{i}(\mathbf{h}\cdot\mathbf{x})] \tag{2.130}$$

where $\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{h})$ is the structure amplitude at a reciprocal lattice point **h**, V is the volume of the unit cell of the direct lattice and the summation is carried over all possible coordinate vectors, **x**, in the unit cell for a specific **h**.

When Eq. 2.130 is compared with Eq. 2.87, it is easy to see that the distribution of the electron density in the unit cell is modeled by n products, $g^j t^j(\sin\theta/\lambda) f^j(\sin\theta/\lambda)$, where g^j, t^j and f^j are the population, temperature and scattering factors of the j^{th} atom, respectively, and the summation ranges over all atoms (from 1 to n) that are present in the unit cell.

Similar substitution of the forward Fourier integral (Eq. 2.129) results in the following sum, which enables one to calculate the distribution of the electron (or nuclear) density in the unit cell from the known structure amplitudes:

$$\rho(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{V}\sum_{\mathbf{h}} \mathbf{F}(\mathbf{h}) \exp[-2\pi\mathbf{i}(\mathbf{h}\cdot\mathbf{x})] \tag{2.131}$$

Here the summation is carried over all reciprocal lattice points, **h**, for a given coordinate vector, **x**. The last equation has exceptional practical importance as it allows one to convert the array of numbers – the observed structure amplitudes obtained from the experimentally measured intensities –

into the image of the atomic structure represented as the distribution of the electron (or nuclear) density in the unit cell.

Thus, in the expanded form, the value of the electron density at any point in the unit cell with coordinates x, y and z ($0 \leq x \leq 1$, $0 \leq y \leq 1$ and $0 \leq z \leq 1$) can be calculated using structure amplitudes obtained from x-ray diffraction experiment as:

$$\rho_{xyz} = \frac{1}{V} \sum_{h=-\infty}^{h=+\infty} \sum_{k=-\infty}^{k=+\infty} \sum_{l=-\infty}^{l=+\infty} \mathbf{F}_{hkl} \exp[-2\pi\mathbf{i}(hx + ky + lz)] \qquad (2.132)$$

where $\mathbf{F}_{hkl}$ are the structure amplitudes represented as complex numbers.

Equation 2.132 may be converted into a more practical form since only the absolute values of the structure amplitude $|\mathbf{F}_{hkl}^{obs}|$ are directly observable in a diffraction experiment. Thus,

$$\rho_{xyz} = \frac{1}{V} \sum_{h=-\infty}^{h=+\infty} \sum_{k=-\infty}^{k=+\infty} \sum_{l=-\infty}^{l=+\infty} |\mathbf{F}_{hkl}^{obs}| \cos[2\pi(hx + ky + lz) - \alpha_{hkl}] \qquad (2.133)$$

where α_{hkl} is the phase angle of the reflection (hkl), see Eq. 2.105.

When the crystal structure is centrosymmetric and contains no anomalously scattering atoms, phase angles are fixed at $\alpha_{hkl} = 0$ or π and Eq. 2.133 is simplified to

$$\rho_{xyz} = \frac{1}{V} \sum_{h=-\infty}^{h=+\infty} \sum_{k=-\infty}^{k=+\infty} \sum_{l=-\infty}^{l=+\infty} s_{hkl} |\mathbf{F}_{hkl}^{obs}| \cos[2\pi(hx + ky + lz)] \qquad (2.134)$$

where $s_{hkl} = 1$ or -1 for $\alpha_{hkl} = 0$ or π, respectively.

Taking into account Friedel's law the summation in Eqs. 2.132 to 2.134 can be simplified by excluding the negative values of one of the indices and by changing the prefactor from $1/V$ to $2/V$ in order to keep the correct absolute values of ρ_{xyz}. Since no real experiment produces an infinite number of data points (structure amplitudes), the practical use of Eqs. 2.132 through 2.134 is accomplished by including all available data, i.e. the summation is truncated and carried over from h_{min} to h_{max}, k_{min} to k_{max} and l_{min} to l_{max}.

Equation 2.133 is most commonly used to calculate the distributions of the electron (nuclear) density in the unit cell, which are also known as Fourier maps, from x-ray (neutron) diffraction data, respectively. The locations of peaks on the Fourier map calculated using x-ray diffraction data represent coordinates of atoms, while the electron density integrated over the range of the peak corresponds to the number of electrons in the atom. The major problem in using Eq. 2.133 is that only the absolute values of the

structure amplitudes, $|\mathbf{F}^{obs}_{hkl}|$, are known directly from the experiment, because they are obtained as square roots of the integrated intensities of the corresponding Bragg peaks (Eq. 2.65) after eliminating all prefactors. As already mentioned above, the information about phase angles α_{hkl} (or signs, s_{hkl}, see Eq. 2.134) is missing and is not measurable directly.

When the distribution of atoms in the unit cell is known at least approximately, e.g. when the model of the crystal structure exists, then the phases can be easily computed from Eqs. 2.103 to 2.105,[1] and all parameters in Eqs. 2.132 to 2.134 are defined. Examples of electron and nuclear density distributions in the unit cell of the intermetallic compound $CeRhGe_3$ calculated from Eq. 2.133 by using x-ray and neutron powder diffraction data (*Figure 2.58*) are shown in *Figure 2.59*. In both cases, phase angles were computed by employing Eqs. 2.103 to 2.105 and the known model of the crystal structure of the material. The individual observed absolute structure amplitudes were calculated from the observed integrated intensities using Eq. 2.65 after the overlapped Bragg peaks were deconvoluted.

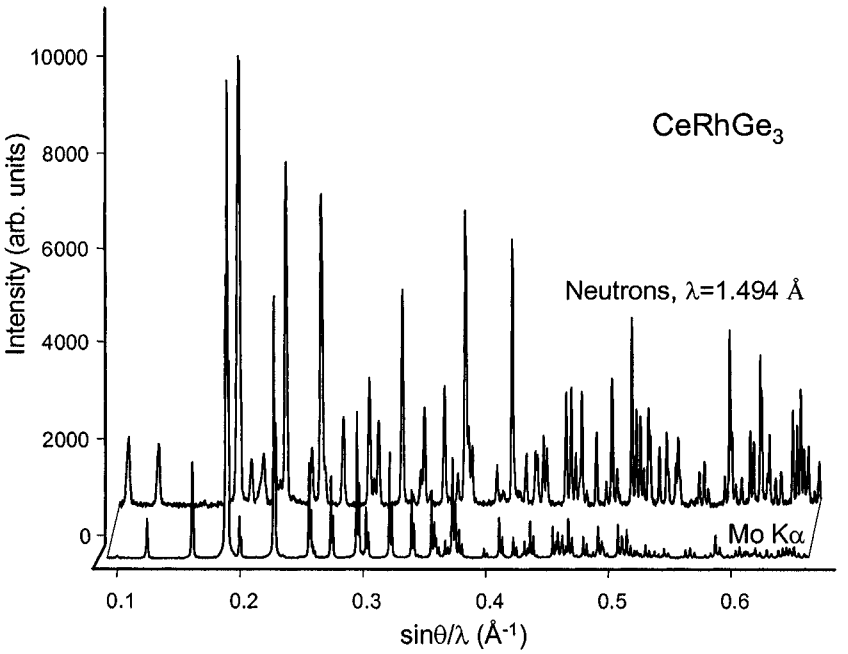


Figure 2.58. Two powder diffraction patterns of the intermetallic $CeRhGe_3$. The bottom plot represents x-ray data collected using Mo Kα radiation at room temperature, and the top plot shows neutron diffraction data collected at T = 200 K using thermal neutrons with λ = 1.494 Å. (Neutron diffraction data courtesy of Dr. O. Zaharko.)

[1] Phase angles can be also determined using the so-called direct phase recovery techniques, see section 2.14.2.

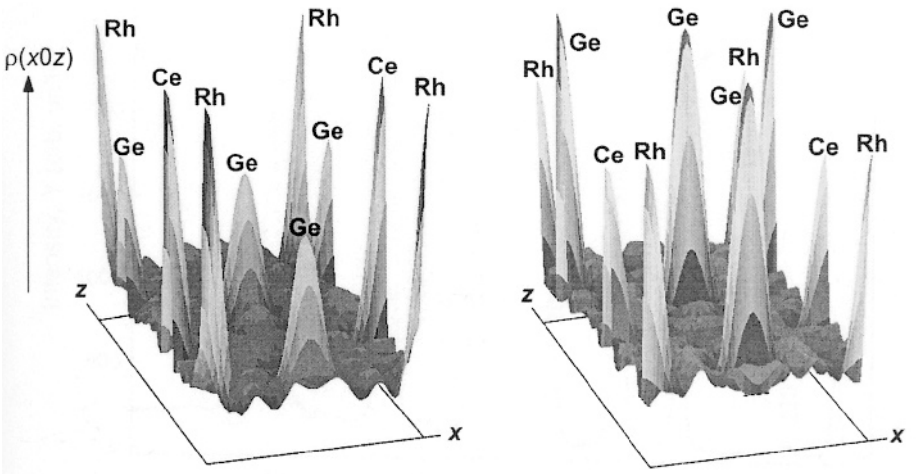


Figure 2.59. The electron (left) and nuclear (right) density distributions in the *x*0*z* plane of the unit cell of $CeRhGe_3$ calculated from x-ray and neutron powder diffraction data, respectively (*Figure 2.58*). The contour of the unit cell is shown schematically as the rectangle under each Fourier map. The peaks correspond to various atoms located in this plane and are so marked on the figure. The volumes of the peaks are proportional to the scattering ability of atoms: for x-rays the scattering power decreases in the series Ce(58 e) → Rh(45 e) → Ge(32 e); for neutrons, the coherent scattering lengths decrease in the reverse order: Ge(8.19 fm) → Rh(5.88 fm) → Ce(4.84 fm).

Hence, in order to calculate a Fourier map and thus, to visualize the crystal structure from diffraction data, phase angles of every Bragg reflection must be somehow established. There are various techniques, which enable the recovery of reflection phases or, in other words, enable the solution of the atomic structure. These methods will be discussed in the following section.

When the crystal structure is unknown, nearly every available *ab initio* phase determination technique usually results in approximate phase angles and, therefore, instead of a complete atomic structure, only a partial model may be found from a subsequently calculated Fourier map. Thus, in the remainder of this section we will briefly discuss the ways of how to improve and complete the initial model of the crystal structure using Fourier transformations.

As soon as phase angles, α_{hkl}, are established at least approximately, they can be used in combination with available $|\mathbf{F}^{obs}_{hkl}|$ to compute a Fourier map and establish the distribution of electron or nuclear density in the unit cell. Even though the phases may be approximate (i.e. inexact), the values of $|\mathbf{F}^{obs}_{hkl}|$ are much more precise and therefore, the Fourier map is usually more accurate than the model employed to calculate phase angles. Thus, a computed Fourier map can be used to improve and refine the model of the

crystal structure by finding coordinates of atoms with a higher precision (when compared to the initial model) and by locating missing atoms.

If a crude initial model was used to determine approximate phases, some atoms might not appear on the map, and these must be deleted because they were not confirmed as a result of Fourier transformation. The new or improved model is then used as a next level approximation to calculate the new set of phase angles and a subsequent Fourier map must be calculated using the new set of phases combined with experimental $|\mathbf{F}^{obs}_{hkl}|$.

This process may be repeated as many times as needed until all atoms in the unit cell are located and the following Fourier map(s) do not improve the model. Equations 2.132 to 2.134 may be combined with a least squares refinement using the observed data, which results in a more accurate model of the crystal structure, including positional and displacement parameters of the individual atoms already included in the model. The success in the solution of the crystal structure is critically dependent on both the accuracy of the initial model (initial set of phase angles) and the accuracy of the experimental structure amplitudes. Needless to say, when the precision of the latter is low, then the initial model should be more detailed and precise.

The effectiveness of Fourier transformation in locating missing atoms may be improved by using the so-called difference Fourier map, which is defined as

$$\Delta\rho_{xyz} = \frac{1}{V}\sum_{h=-\infty}^{h=+\infty}\sum_{k=-\infty}^{k=+\infty}\sum_{l=-\infty}^{l=+\infty}(\mathbf{F}^{obs}_{hkl} - \mathbf{F}^{calc}_{hkl})\exp[-2\pi\mathbf{i}(hx+ky+lz)] \quad (2.135)$$

which is equivalent to Eq. 2.132, except that the observed complex structure amplitudes are reduced by the complex structure amplitudes calculated from the existing model. The resulting Fourier map, therefore, will not contain "known" atoms and only the missing ones should become "visible". This approach works especially well when locating weakly scattering atoms in the presence of strong scatterers (e.g. when locating hydrogen atoms in organic compounds) because the difference Fourier map reveals fine details, which may be otherwise hidden in the background of the normal (Eq. 2.132) map.

The difference electron density distribution also finds an interesting application when the fully refined model of the crystal structure is used to compute a Fourier transformation. Although it may seem that such a Fourier map should result in zero electron density throughout the unit cell (since the differences in Eq. 2.135 are expected to approach zero), this is true only if electron shells of atoms in the crystal structure were not deformed. In reality, atoms do interact and form chemical bonds with their neighbors. This causes a redistribution of the electron density when compared to isolated atoms, for which atomic scattering functions are known.

Thus, the difference Fourier map calculated using Eq. 2.135 for a complete and accurate model using highly precise x-ray diffraction data reveals the so-called deformation electron density distribution. The latter is essentially a difference between the electron density in a real crystal, composed from chemically bound atoms, and individual isolated atoms or ions, which sometimes enables the visualization of excess electron density due to the formation of chemical bonds.[1] This technique has many restrictions and requirements, the major of which are: extremely high accuracy of the experimental diffraction data (including the accuracy of the observed structure amplitudes) and availability of data at high $\sin\theta/\lambda$ (often low temperatures are required to achieve this). Unfortunately, powder diffraction fails in the first requirement, except very simple structures, due to the intrinsic and often unavoidable overlapping of Bragg reflections.

Other types of Fourier transformations may also be calculated when the coefficients in Eq. 2.132 are modified or substituted. For example, when squared observed structure amplitudes $|\mathbf{F}^{obs}_{hkl}|^2$ (in this case phase angles are not required!) or normalized structure amplitudes $\mathbf{E}^{obs}_{hkl}$ are used instead of $\mathbf{F}^{obs}_{hkl}$, the resultant maps usually provide means to solve the crystal structure (see next section). Different modifications of $\mathbf{F}^{obs}_{hkl}$ may reveal the distribution of the electrostatic potential and other properties of crystals.

2.14 Phase problem

Despite the apparent simplicity with which a crystal structure can be restored by applying Fourier transformation to diffraction data (Eqs. 2.132 to 2.135), the fact that the structure amplitude is a complex quantity creates the so-called phase problem. In the simplest case (Eq. 2.133), both the absolute values of the structure amplitudes and their phases (Eq. 2.105) are needed to locate atoms in the unit cell. The former are relatively easily determined from powder (Eq. 2.65) or single crystal diffraction data but the latter are lost during the experiment.

Determination of the crystal structure of an unknown material is generally far from a straightforward procedure, especially when only powder diffraction data are available. It is truly a problem solving process and not a simple refinement, which often may be fully automated. The latter is a technique, which improves structural parameters of the approximately or partially known model, usually by using a least squares minimization against available diffraction data. It is worth noting that the least squares method is

[1] See V.G. Tsirelson and R.P. Ozerov, Electron density and bonding in crystals: principles, theory and x-ray diffraction experiments in solid state physics and chemistry, Institute of Physics, Bristol, UK (1996); P. Coppens, X-ray charge densities and chemical bonding. IUCr Texts on Crystallography 4, Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (1997)

inapplicable to the *ab initio* structure solution because the structure amplitude is a non-linear function of multiple individual atomic parameters (Eq. 2.107). Thus, during the crystal structure solving process phase angles, which have been lost, must be recovered using suitable numerical technique.

A large variety of methods, developed with a specific goal to solve the crystal structure from diffraction data, can be divided into two major groups. The first group entails techniques that are applicable in direct space by constructing a model of the crystal structure from considerations other than the available array of structure amplitudes. These include:

- Purely geometrical modeling in the case of simple inorganic structures.
- Examining various ways of packing and differences in conformations of molecules with known geometry when dealing with molecular structures.
- Finding analogies with closely related compounds, such as isostructural series of intermetallics and partially isostructural host frameworks in various intercalates.
- Using a range of minimization methods, including quantum-chemical, energy, entropy and geometry optimizations, and other recently developed advanced techniques.

When one or more models are constructed, they are tested against the experimental diffraction data. Often some of these approaches are combined together but they always stem from the requirement that the generated model must make physical, chemical and crystallographic sense. Thus, their successful utilization requires a certain level of experience and knowledge of how different classes of crystals are built, e.g. what to expect in terms of coordination and bond lengths for a particular material based solely on its chemical composition. Direct space modeling approaches will be discussed, to some extent, in Chapter 6.

The second group of methods uses an experimental array of diffraction data, i.e. the absolute values of structure amplitudes, to provide initial clues about the crystal structure of a material. Hence, they are applicable in the reciprocal space. The first of the two reciprocal space methods, reviewed in this section, is the Patterson technique, which is best known for its applications in the so-called heavy atom method. Furthermore, as we will see below, even though the phase angles of Bragg reflections are not directly observed or measured, they are usually in certain relationships with one another and with the absolute values of structure amplitudes. This property supports a second reciprocal space approach, the so-called direct phase determination techniques. The latter are always referred in a plural form because they are based on several basic principles and usually contain several different algorithms combined together. Needless to say, the crystal structure determined using any of the reciprocal space methods should also be reasonable from physical, chemical and crystallographic points of view.

2.14.1 Patterson technique

As suggested by Patterson[1] in 1934, the complex coefficients in the forward Fourier transformation (Eqs. 2.129 and 2.132) may be substituted by the squares of structure amplitudes, which are real, and therefore, no information about phase angles is required to calculate the distribution of the following density function in the unit cell:

$$P_{uvw} = \frac{2}{V} \sum_{h=0}^{h=+\infty} \sum_{k=-\infty}^{k=+\infty} \sum_{l=-\infty}^{l=+\infty} \left|\mathbf{F}_{hkl}^{obs}\right|^2 \cos[2\pi(hu + kv + lw)] \qquad (2.136)$$

Here, the multiplier 2 appears because only one-half of a reciprocal space is used in the summation, thus the validity of Friedel's law is implicitly assumed.

The resultant function, unfortunately, does not reveal the distribution of atoms in the unit cell directly but it represents the distribution of interatomic vectors, all of which begin in a common point – the origin of the unit cell. Thus, P_{uvw} is often called the function of interatomic vectors and it is also known as the Patterson function of the F^2-Fourier series. The corresponding vector density distribution in the unit cell is known as the Patterson map.

The interpretation of the Patterson function is based on a specific property of Fourier transformation (denoted as $\Im[\ldots]$) when it is applied to convolutions ($\otimes$) of functions:

$$\begin{aligned} \Im[f(x) \otimes g(x)] &= \Im[f(x)]\Im[g(x)] \\ \Im[f(x)g(x)] &= \Im[f(x)] \otimes \Im[g(x)] \end{aligned} \qquad (2.137)$$

As follows from Eq. 2.137, the multiplication of functions in the reciprocal space (e.g. structure amplitudes) results in a convolution of functions (e.g. electron or nuclear density) in the direct space, and *vice versa*. Since Eq. 2.136 contains the structure amplitude multiplied by itself, the resultant Patterson function, P_{uvw}, represents a self-convolution of the electron (nuclear) density. Hence, it may be described as follows:

$$P_{uvw} = \int_V \rho_{x,y,z} \rho_{x-u,y-v,z-w} dV \qquad (2.138)$$

[1] A.L. Patterson, A Fourier series representation of the average distribution of the scattering power in crystals, Phys. Rev. **45**, 763 (1934), A.L. Patterson, A Fourier series method for the determination of the components of the interatomic distances in crystals, Phys. Rev. **46**, 372 (1934).

where P_{uvw} in every point (u, v, w) inside the unit cell is calculated as the sum (integral) of products of the electron (nuclear) density at two points separated by a vector (u, v, w).

For simplicity, assume that the distribution of electron or nuclear density in the unit cell is discrete rather than continuous and is zero everywhere except for the locations of atoms, viewed as dimensionless points (see *Figure 2.59*, which illustrates that both electron and nuclear density decreases rapidly away from the centers of atoms). Then, the result of Eq. 2.138 is a set of peaks originating in (0, 0, 0) and ending at (u, v, w) with heights (more precisely with peak volumes since atoms are not dimensionless points), H_{ij}, given as

$$H_{ij} \propto Z_i Z_j \tag{2.139}$$

where Z_i and Z_j are the number of electrons (or scattering lengths) of the i^{th} and j^{th} atoms that are connected by a vector (u, v, w) defined as $\mathbf{u} = \pm[\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{x}_j]$.

According to this interpretation of Eq. 2.138, the value of the Patterson function is zero at any other point in the unit cell. An example of an idealized Patterson function corresponding to a simple two-dimensional structure containing a total of four atoms in the unit cell is shown in *Figure 2.60*.

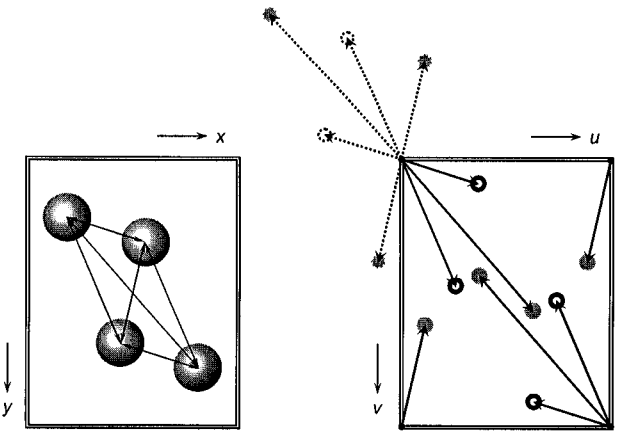


Figure 2.60. The relationships between the distribution of atoms (left), and the Patterson function (right) in a two-dimensional unit cell. All possible interatomic vectors are drawn on the left. On the right, they are brought to a common origin (upper left corner) of the unit cell. Vectors that are outside the unit cell are shown using dotted lines. The content of one unit cell in the Patterson space (right) is shown using solid lines. Black open circles indicate a two-fold increase in the height of the corresponding peaks of the Patterson function when compared with those marked using grey filled circles, which occurs due to a complete overlap of vectors coinciding with the parallel sides of the parallelogram of atoms on the left.

Thus, since a Patterson map contains peaks, which are related to the real distribution of atoms in the unit cell, it is possible to establish both the coordinates of atoms and their scattering power by analyzing coordinates and heights of Patterson peaks. Unfortunately, the analysis of the distribution of interatomic vector density function is sometimes easier said than done due to the presence of several complicating factors.

The first difficulty is that Patterson peaks are usually broader than electron (nuclear) density peaks, which is the result of convolution (Eq. 2.138). The second complication is that the total number of Patterson peaks in the unit cell equals to $n(n\text{-}1)$, where n is the total number of atoms in the unit cell (see *Figure 2.60* where four atoms shown on the left produce 12 Patterson peaks shown on the right, four pairs of which are completely overlapped). The third difficulty is derivative of the first two and it arises from overlapping (often quite substantial) of different interatomic vectors.

An example of the distribution of the interatomic vectors density function in the $u0w$ plane of $CeRhGe_3$ is illustrated in *Figure 2.61*. When compared with the electron and nuclear density distributions (*Figure 2.59*), there are many more peaks in the two Patterson maps. Similar to the results shown in *Figure 2.59*, both Patterson functions are nearly identical except for the distribution of peak intensities, which is expected due to the differences in the scattering ability of Ce, Rh and Ge using x-rays and neutrons.

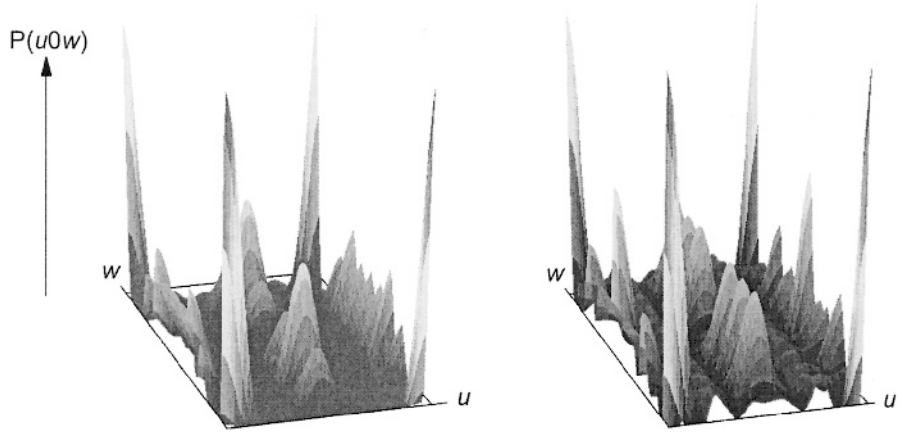


Figure 2.61. Patterson functions calculated in the $u0w$ plane using Eq. 2.136 and employing experimental x-ray (left) and neutron (right) powder diffraction data shown in *Figure 2.58*. The strongest peak in any Patterson function is always observed at (0, 0, 0) because the origins of all vectors coincide with the origin of coordinates. Since in this particular example the real crystal structure contains an atom in (0, 0, 0, see *Figure 2.59*), some of the peaks on the Patterson map correspond to the actual locations of atoms (i.e. $\mathbf{u}^j = \mathbf{x}^j \pm \mathbf{0}$).The contour of the unit cell is shown schematically as the rectangle under each Patterson map.

The complicating factors mentioned above, reduce the resolution of the Patterson map, which may make it extremely difficult or impossible to recover the atomic structure, especially in cases of complex crystal structures containing many atoms with nearly equal atomic numbers, e.g. organic compounds. On the other hand, when only a few atoms in the unit cell have much stronger scattering ability than the rest, the identification of Patterson peaks corresponding to these strong scatterers is relatively easy: according to Eq. 2.139, these peaks will be stronger than all others, except for the peak at the origin.

The application of the Patterson technique to locate strongly scattering atoms is often called the heavy atom method (which comes from the fact that heavy atoms scatter x-rays better and the Patterson technique is most often applied to analyze x-ray diffraction data). This allows constructing of a partial structure model ("heavy" atoms only), which for the most part define phase angles of all reflections (see Eq. 2.107). The "heavy atoms-only" model can be relatively easily completed using sequential Fourier syntheses (either or both standard, Eq. 2.133, and difference, Eq. 2.135), sometimes enhanced by a least squares refinement of all found atoms.

The analysis of the Patterson function requires extensive use of symmetry. Consider all possible interatomic vectors (calculated as $\mathbf{u}_{ij} = \pm[\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{x}_j]$) originating from an atom in the general site position of the space group $P2_1/m$, which are listed in *Table 2.18*. Only three of the vectors (shaded in the first row of the table) are unique, and the relationships between them are established by the combination of symmetry elements in the unit cell.

Table 2.18. Interatomic vectors (shown in bold) produced by an atom located in the general site position in the monoclinic crystal system, space group $P2_1/m$.

Symmetry element	Symmetry operation	*x,y,z*	*-x,1/2+y,-z*	*-x,-y,-z*	*x,½-y,z*
1	*x,y,z*	**0,0,0**	**2*x*,1/2,2*z***	**2*x*,2*y*,2*z***	**0,-½+2*y*,0**
2_1	*-x,½+y,-z*	**-2*x*,1/2,-2*z***	**0,0,0**	**0,1/2+2*y*,0**	**-2*x*,2*y*,-2*z***
$\bar{1}$	*-x,-y,-z*	**-2*x*,-2*y*,-2*z***	**0,-1/2-2*y*,0**	**0,0,0**	**-2*x*,-½,-2*z***
m	*x,½-y,z*	**0,½-2*y*,0**	**2*x*,-2*y*,2*z***	**2*x*,½,2*z***	**0,0,0**

Thus, a vector $2x$, 1/2, $2z$ is the result of a 2_1 screw axis parallel to the *b*-axis, and when the former is correctly identified on the Patterson map, the two coordinates, x and z, of the corresponding atom are found. A second vector – 0, -1/2-$2y$, 0 – is due to a mirror plane and it yields the missing coordinate y, while a vector $2x$, $2y$, $2z$ is due to a center of inversion, which in this case could be used to confirm all three coordinates.

When a structure contains only a single independent heavy atom, the solution is nearly always trivial. It may be possible to solve a structure with two to four independent heavy atoms manually, even though the task

becomes much more challenging. Solving a structure from a Patterson map in the case of more complex crystal structures is usually performed using computer programs.

A more detailed analysis of *Table 2.18* indicates that symmetry of the Patterson function is different from that of the original crystal structure. A comprehensive examination of Patterson symmetry exceeds the scope of this book. It can be shown, however, that symmetry elements with a translational component, present in the space of the crystal structure, are transformed into conforming finite symmetry elements in the Patterson function space except for the lattice translations, which are preserved. Thus, screw axes become rotation axes and glide planes are transformed into mirror planes. Moreover, a center of inversion is always added to the symmetry of Patterson function. For example, space group $P2_1/m$ discussed above results in Patterson symmetry corresponding to space group P2/m; $I\bar{4}2m$ is transformed into I4/mmm, Fdd2 turns into Fmmm, and so on. A complete list of Patterson function symmetry for all space groups can be found in the International Tables for Crystallography, vol. A.

2.14.2 Direct methods

In this approach, the phase angles of reflections are derived directly from the observed structure amplitudes through mathematical relationships between intensities and indices of the reflections. The relationships are based on the following postulations:

1. The electron density is non-negative anywhere in the unit cell, i.e. $\rho_{xyz} \geq 0$ for all x, y, z.
2. The atomic structure is composed from nearly spherical atoms spread nearly evenly throughout the unit cell volume.

These two general properties of the electron density result in special relationships between phase angles of triplets of reflections, which have arithmetically (but not symmetrically) related indices. The triplets of related reflections are defined as follows

First reflection,	**h**:	h, k, l
Second reflection,	**h'**:	h', k', l'
Third reflection,	**h-h'**:	$h-h', k-k', l-l'$

(2.140)

The phase relationships within a triplet are not strict and their probability depends on the magnitude of the associated structure amplitudes. The latter are scaled and normalized in order to reduce their dependence on the atomic scattering factor and vibrational motion since both reduce the structure amplitude exponentially at high $\sin\theta/\lambda$, see Eq. 2.91, *Figure 2.53* and *Figure*

2.55. The normalized structure factor is commonly denoted as E_{hkl} and it is calculated from the conventional structure factor as follows:

$$E_{hkl} = \frac{|\mathbf{F}_{hkl}|}{\langle F_{\text{exp}}^2 \rangle^{1/2}} \tag{2.141}$$

where the expected average value of the structure factor, $<F^2_{exp}>$, is estimated as:

$$\langle F_{\text{exp}}^2 \rangle = \sum_{j=1}^{n} f_j^2(s) \tag{2.142}$$

and $f_j(s)$ is the atomic scattering factor of the j^{th} atom; s is $\sin\theta/\lambda$ of the reflection (*hkl*).

In the *centrosymmetric* structures, the relationships between the signs of the reflections forming a triplet (Eq. 2.140) are described by the Sayre equation:[1]

$$s_{\mathbf{h}} \approx s_{\mathbf{h}'} s_{\mathbf{h}-\mathbf{h}'} \tag{2.143}$$

where s = +1 when $\alpha_{hkl} = 0$ (positive F_{hkl}), s = -1 when $\alpha_{hkl} = \pi$ (negative F_{hkl}), and the symbol $\approx$ has a meaning of "probably equal", for example, $s_{123} \approx s_{102} s_{021}$.

The probability of this sign relationship in the triplet is defined as:

$$P_+ = \tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{1}{2} \tanh\left[N^{-1/2} |E_{\mathbf{h}}| E_{\mathbf{h}'} E_{\mathbf{h}-\mathbf{h}'}\right] \tag{2.144}$$

where P_+ is the probability of the positive sign for a reflection **h**, and:

$$N^{-1/2} = \sigma_3 / \sigma_2^{3/2} \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma_m = \sum_{i=1}^{n} Z_i^m \tag{2.145}$$

Here Z is the atomic number and n is the number of atoms in the unit cell.

In the non-centrosymmetric structures, reflection phases in the triplet are in the following relationship, also given by Sayre:[1]

[1] D. Sayre, The squaring method: a new method for phase determination, Acta Cryst. **5**, 60 (1952).

$$\alpha_{\mathbf{h}} \approx \alpha_{\mathbf{h}'} + \alpha_{\mathbf{h}-\mathbf{h}'} \tag{2.146}$$

where the symbol ≈ also means "probably equal" and the probability of this relationship for the phase $\alpha_{\mathbf{h}}$ is defined as:[1]

$$P_{\alpha_{\mathbf{h}}} = \frac{1}{2\pi I_0(k_{\mathbf{h},\mathbf{h}'})} \exp\left[k_{\mathbf{h},\mathbf{h}'} \cos\left(\alpha_{\mathbf{h}'} + \alpha_{\mathbf{h}-\mathbf{h}'}\right)\right] \tag{2.147}$$

where I_0 is Bessel function, and $k_{\mathbf{h},\mathbf{h}'} = 2N^{-1/2}\left|E_{\mathbf{h}} E_{\mathbf{h}'} E_{\mathbf{h}-\mathbf{h}'}\right|$.

In order to generate phase angles using any of the two Sayre equations (2.143 or 2.146) some reflections with known phases are needed, since both equations define one phase from two others. There are several sources of reflection phases at this stage. First, certain phase angles may be set at arbitrary values to fix the origin and in the case of non-centrosymmetric structures, one additional phase with an arbitrary value is needed to fix the enantiomorph. Second, phase angles of several strong reflections are selected for permutations. For example in the centrosymmetric case, a total of four reflections would have 2^4 possible combinations of signs resulting in 16 different sets of possible phase angles.

For each permutation, the phases of all other reflections are generated using Sayre equations. Thus, direct methods always result in more than one array of phases, and the problem is reduced to selecting the correct solution, if one exists. Several different figures merit and/or their combinations have been developed and are used to evaluate the probability and the relationships between phases. Thus, the solutions are sorted according to their probability – from the highest to the lowest. Then each solution is analyzed and evaluated starting from the one that is most probable.

Usually each reflection forms more than one triplet and each of the triplets may be used for phase determination (estimation). In order to employ all triplets and thus, obtain the best agreement between phase angles that result from different triplets, Karle and Hauptman[2] introduced a general expression for phase determination from triplets. This relationship is known today as the tangent formula:

[1] W. Cochran, Relations between the phases of structure factors, Acta Cryst. **8**, 473 (1955).

[2] J. Karle and H. Hauptman, A theory of phase determination for the four types of non-centrosymmetric space groups, Acta Cryst. **9**, 635 (1956). Jerome Karle, US crystallographer, and Herbert A. Hauptman, US mathematician, laid a foundation towards the development of modern direct phase determination techniques. They won 1985 Nobel Prize in Chemistry "for their outstanding achievements in the development of direct methods for the determination of crystal structures" – http://www.nobel.se/chemistry/laureates/1985/.

$$\tan\alpha_{\mathbf{h}} \cong \frac{\sum_{\mathbf{h}} |E_{\mathbf{h}'}||E_{\mathbf{h}-\mathbf{h}'}| \sin(\alpha_{\mathbf{h}'} + \alpha_{\mathbf{h}-\mathbf{h}'})}{\sum_{\mathbf{h}} |E_{\mathbf{h}'}||E_{\mathbf{h}-\mathbf{h}'}| \cos(\alpha_{\mathbf{h}'} + \alpha_{\mathbf{h}-\mathbf{h}'})} \tag{2.148}$$

where the sums include all triplets, in which the reflection in question, **h**, is involved.

Finally, the generated phase angles are used in a forward Fourier transformation combined with the normalized structure amplitudes E_{hkl}

$$\rho_{xyz} = \frac{1}{V} \sum_{h=-\infty}^{h=+\infty} \sum_{k=-\infty}^{k=+\infty} \sum_{l=-\infty}^{l=+\infty} E_{hkl} \cos\left[2\pi i(hx + ky + lz - \alpha_{hkl}^{direct})\right] \tag{2.149}$$

and the resulting density distribution is called the E-map. It is quite similar to a conventional Fourier map representing electron density but E-maps are usually sharper because the normalized structure amplitudes, E_{hkl}, are corrected for the effects of atomic scattering and thermal displacements.

A generic algorithm of employing direct methods to structure solution may be summarized in the following steps:

1. Observed structure amplitudes are scaled and normalized structure amplitudes are calculated using Eq. 2.141. Reflections with large normalized structure amplitudes (a standard cut-off is $E_{hkl} \geq E_{min} = 1.2$) are selected for phase determination and refinement.
2. Reflections to fix the origin and the enantiomorph (if needed) are selected. There are special requirements on the combinations of indices of these reflections, which are established by space group symmetry.
3. Several of the strongest reflections (those that have the largest E_{hkl}) are chosen for phase permutations. In addition to being the strongest, these reflections should have combinations of indices that result in as many triplets as possible with all reflections selected in step 1.
4. Phases are assigned to all, or as many as possible, reflections selected in step 1 using Sayre equations (Eq. 2.143 or 2.146) and the probability relationships (Eq. 2.144 or 2.147).
5. The best possible agreement between phases is obtained by using a least squares refinement in combination with the tangent formula (Eq. 2.148).
6. Figures of merit are calculated and the resultant sets of phase angles are sorted from the most probable to the least probable solution.
7. E-map (Eq. 2.149) is computed for the most probable solution. The peaks are located on the map and a partial or complete model of the crystal structure is created.
8. The obtained model of the crystal structure is analyzed with respect to common chemical and crystallographic sense – are all bond distances,

angles, coordination polyhedra, etc. reasonable? If yes, move to step 9. If no, go to step 7 using the next best solution.

9. The model of the crystal structure is verified and completed by computing phases for all available (conventional) structure amplitudes using the current structural model (Eq. 2.105) and successive calculation of Fourier (Eq. 2.133) and/or difference Fourier maps (Eq. 2.135). Once all atoms are located, the complete structure is refined using least squares technique against all available diffraction data.
10. If no solution is found, step 2 should be repeated with different parameters and lists(s) of reflections in the starting sets. It may be necessary to expand or reduce the list of reflections under consideration by changing the cut-off value of E_{min} from a standard value of 1.2.

2.14.3 Structure solution from powder diffraction data

Solving the crystal structure using either heavy atom or direct techniques does not always work in a straightforward fashion even when the well-resolved and highly accurate diffraction data from a single crystal are available. The complicating factor in powder diffraction is borne by the intrinsic overlap of multiple Bragg peaks. The latter may become especially severe when the unit cell volume and complexity of the structure increase.

Thus, there is a fundamental difference between the accuracy of structure amplitudes obtained from single crystal and powder diffraction data. The former are always resolved, i.e. there is only one combination of indices, *hkl*, per Bragg peak, whereas in the latter some reflections may be fully or partially overlapped. The intensities of individual reflections *hkl* may still be recovered from powder diffraction data but their accuracy is critically dependent on both the degree of the overlap and the quality of the pattern. Obviously, the absolute overlapping of some reflections makes it impossible to obtain the individual intensities regardless of the quality of data, and only the combined total intensity is known (e.g. reflections 43*l* and 05*l* in both the cubic and tetragonal crystal systems).

As established above, individual intensities (or structure amplitudes) of Bragg reflections are needed in order to solve the crystal structure using direct or Patterson methods. In the first case, accurate normalized structure amplitudes are required to generate phase angles and to evaluate their probabilities. In the second case, accurate structure amplitudes result in the higher accuracy and resolution on the Patterson map.

Thus, when reflections overlap to a degree when the individual intensities can no longer be considered reliable, they may be dealt with using two different approaches:

1. In the first, reflections with low accuracy in individual intensities (those that are completely or nearly completely overlapped) are simply discarded. This works best when direct methods are used for the structure solution because substantial errors even in some of the normalized structure amplitudes may affect phase angles of many other reflections.
2. In the second approach, the total intensity of the diffraction peak is equally divided among the individual reflections, so that $I_{total} = \Sigma I_i$. Yet another approach in a "blind" division is to account for the multiplicity factors of different Bragg reflections, so that $I_{total} = \Sigma m_i I_i$, where m_i is the multiplicity factor of the i^{th} reflection, which depends on symmetry and combination of indices (see sections 2.10.3 and 2.12.2). No obvious preference can be given to any method of intensity division, as each of them is quite arbitrary. This way of handling the overlapped intensities, instead of simply discarding them is most beneficial in the Patterson method.

Even when the crystal structure is partially solved, the individual intensities are still needed to complete the structure by means of calculating Fourier or difference Fourier maps. Obviously, the result of Fourier transformations is affected by the accuracy in the absolute values of the structure amplitudes in addition to the precision of their phase angles (Eqs. 2.133 and 2.135).[1] Considering fully overlapped Bragg reflections, the situation with prorating individual intensities becomes different when compared to the state when the crystal structure is completely unknown: at this point, the calculated intensities of all individual reflections are known with the accuracy of the current structural model. These calculated intensities may be (and usually are) used to divide the total intensity of the peak between all overlapped reflections proportionally to their calculated intensities (see Eq. 6.7 in Chapter 6).

The division of intensities of the overlapped Bragg reflections is only critical when they are needed to calculate Patterson-, Fourier- or E-map(s). There is no need in their separation during a least squares refinement of structural parameters because each point of the diffraction profile is simply taken as a sum of contributions from multiple Bragg reflections.[2]

We conclude this chapter right where we began by repeating the following statement: "The diffraction pattern of a crystal is a transformation of an ordered atomic structure into a reciprocal space rather than a direct image of the former, and the three-dimensional distribution of atoms in a

[1] It turns out that precisely known phase angles are more critical in determining coordinates of atoms in the unit cell than the corresponding absolute values of individual structure factors.

[2] The least squares refinement of structural parameters employing full profile powder diffraction data is discussed in Chapter 7.

lattice can be restored only after the diffraction pattern has been transformed back into a direct space." We now are able to support this statement by *Figure 2.62*, which illustrates how this can be performed in practice.

The very existence of the powder diffraction pattern, which is an experimentally measurable function of the crystal structure and other parameters of the specimen convoluted with various instrumental functions, has been made possible by the commensurability of properties of x-rays and neutrons with properties and structure of solids. As in any experiment, the quality of structural information, which may be obtained *via* different pathways (two possibilities are illustrated in *Figure 2.62* as two series of required steps), is directly proportional to the quality of experimental data. The latter is usually achieved in a thoroughly planned and well executed experiment as will be detailed in Chapter 3. Similarly, each of the data processing steps, which were described in this chapter and are summarized in *Figure 2.62*, requires knowledge, experience and careful execution, and we will describe them in practical terms in Chapters 4 through 7.

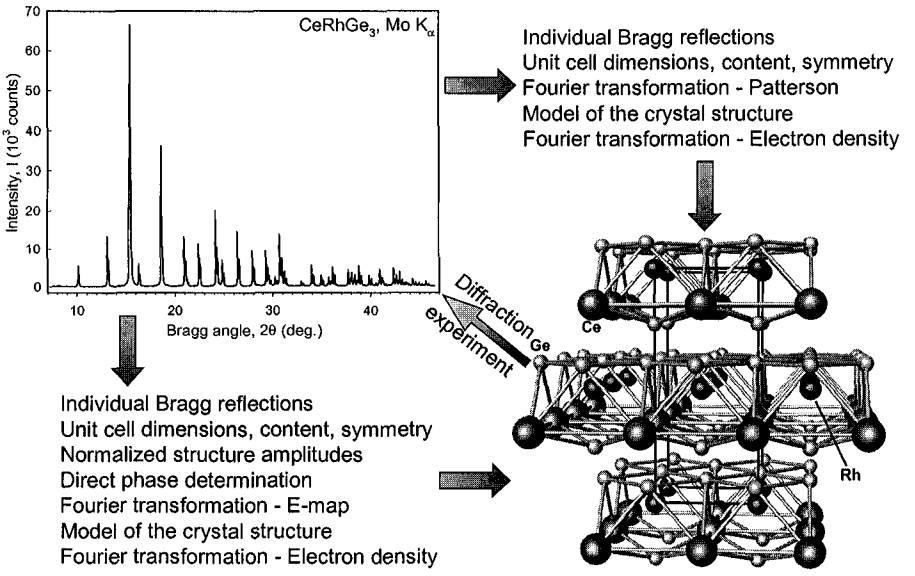


Figure 2.62. The schematic illustrating how the powder diffraction pattern (top, left) can be transformed into the image of the crystal structure in three dimensions (bottom right). Both the diffraction pattern and the model of the crystal structure represent the intermetallic compound $CeRhGe_3$.

2.15 Additional reading

1. International Tables for Crystallography, vol. A, 5th revised edition, Theo Hahn, Ed., Published for the International Union of Crystallography by Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston/Dordrecht/London (2002); vol. B, U. Shmueli, Ed., Published for the International Union of Crystallography by Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston/Dordrecht/ London (2001); vol. C, A.J.C. Wilson and E. Prince, Eds., Published for the International Union of Crystallography by Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston/Dordrecht/London (1999).

2. International Tables for Crystallography. Brief teaching edition of volume A. Fourth, revised and enlarged edition. Theo Han, Ed., Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston/Dordrecht/London (1996).

3. R.B. Neder and Th. Proffen, Teaching diffraction with the aid of computer simulations, J. Appl. Cryst. **29**, 727 (1996); also see Th. Proffen and R.B. Neder. Interactive tutorial about diffraction on the Web at http://www.pa.msu.edu/~proffen/teaching/teaching.html.

4. P. A. Heiney. High resolution x-ray diffraction. Physics department and laboratory for research on the structure of matter. University of Pennsylvania. http://dept.physics.upenn.edu/~heiney/talks/hires/hires.html

5. Electron diffraction techniques. Vol. 1, 2. J. Cowley, Ed., Oxford University Press. Oxford, New York (1992)

6. D.K. Bowen and B.K. Tanner. High resolution x-ray diffractometry and topography. Taylor & Francis. London, Bristol, PA (1998).

7. Modern powder diffraction. D.L Bish and J.E. Post, Eds. Reviews in Mineralogy, Vol. 20. Mineralogical Society of America, Washington, DC (1989).

8. R. Jenkins and R.L. Snyder. Introduction to x-ray powder diffractometry. John Wiley & Sons, New York (1996).

9. W. Clegg, Synchrotron chemical crystallography. J. Chem. Soc., Dalton Trans. **19**, 3223 (2000).

10. J. Als-Nielsen and D. McMorrow, Elements of modern x-ray physics, John Wiley & Sons, New York, (2001).

11. P. Coppens, X-ray charge densities and chemical bonding. IUCr Texts on Crystallography 4, Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (1997).

12. V.G. Tsirelson and R.P. Ozerov, Electron density and bonding in crystals: principles, theory and x-ray diffraction experiments in solid state physics and chemistry, Institute of Physics, Bristol, UK (1996).

13. C. Giacovazzo, Direct phasing in crystallography: fundamentals and applications. IUCr monographs on crystallography 8, Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (1998).

14. T.M. Sabine, The flow of radiation in a polycrystalline material, in: The Rietveld method. IUCr monographs on crystallography 5, R.A. Young, Ed., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (1993).

15. P. Suortti, Bragg reflection profile shape in x-ray powder diffraction patterns, in: The Rietveld method. IUCr monographs on crystallography 5, R.A. Young, Ed., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (1993).

16. R. Delhez, T.H. de Keijser, J.I. Langford, D. Louër, E.J. Mittemeijer, and E.J. Sonneveld, Crystal imperfection broadening and peak shape in the Rietveld method, in: The Rietveld method. IUCr monographs on crystallography 5, R.A. Young, Ed., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (1993).

2.16 Problems

Answers to all problems listed below are located in the file Chapter-2-Problems-Solutions.pdf on the CD accompanying this book.

1. A powder diffractometer in your laboratory is equipped with a sealed x-ray tube, which has Cr anode. You need to design a β-filter to ensure that the intensity of the Kβ spectral line is less than 0.5% of the intensity of the $K\alpha_1$ part in the characteristic spectrum. Calculate the needed thickness of a foil made from the most appropriate metal (which one?) and by how much the intensity of $K\alpha_1$ and Kβ lines will be reduced after filtering.
2. There are 25 plates in a Soller slit. Axial size of the incident beam when it exits the slit is 12 mm. Calculate the length of the plates along the x-ray beam (*l*) if the slit results in the axial divergence of the beam, $\alpha = 2.5°$. Neglect the thickness of the plates.
3. A crystal monochromator is made form high quality pyrolitic graphite (space group $P6_3/mmc$, $a = 2.464$, $c = 6.711$ Å). Assume that this crystal is used to suppress the $K\alpha_2$ spectral line of Cu Kα radiation by using the reflection from (002) planes and that the crystal is cleaved parallel to the (001) plane. Estimate the linear separation (δ, in mm) between the centers of two peaks ($K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$) at 200 mm distance after the reflection from the crystal. Assuming that the crystal is nearly ideal calculate angle θ which the incident beam should form with the surface of the crystal for best result.
4. Vanadium oxide, V_2O_3, crystallizes in the space group symmetry $R\bar{3}c$ with lattice parameters $a = 4.954$ Å and $c = 14.00$ Å. Calculate the interplanar spacing, *d*, and Bragg peak positions, 2θ, for the 104 (the strongest Bragg peak) and for the 012 (the lowest Bragg angle peak) reflections assuming Cu $K\alpha_1$ radiation with $\lambda = 1.5406$ Å.
5. Consider *Figure 2.58*, which shows powder diffraction patterns collected from the same material ($CeRhGe_3$) at room temperature ($T \cong 295$ K) using x-rays and at $T = 200$ K using neutrons. Setting aside differences between intensities of individual Bragg peaks, the most obvious overall difference between the two sets of diffraction data is that diffracted intensity is only slightly suppressed towards high Bragg angles in neutron diffraction, while it is considerably lower in the case of x-ray data. Can you explain why?

6. Establish which combinations of indices are allowed and which are forbidden in the space group symmetry $Cmc2_1$. List symmetry elements that cause each group of reflections to become extinct?

7. Powder diffraction pattern of a compound with unknown crystal structure was indexed with the following unit cell parameters (shown approximately): $a = 10.34$ Å, $b = 6.02$ Å, $c = 4.70$ Å, $\alpha = 90°$, $\beta = 90°$ and $\gamma = 90°$. The list of all Bragg peaks observed from 15 to 60° 2θ is shown in *Table 2.19*. Analyze systematic absences (if any) present in this powder diffraction pattern and suggest possible space groups symmetry for the material.

Table 2.19. List of Bragg peaks with their intensities and indices observed in a powder diffraction pattern of a material indexed in the following unit cell: $a = 10.34$ Å, $b = 6.02$ Å, $c = 4.70$ Å and $\alpha = 90°$, $\beta = 90°$ and $\gamma = 90°$.

h	*k*	*l*	I/I_0	2θ°	*h*	*k*	*l*	I/I_0	2θ°
2	0	0	255	17.105	2	0	2	207	42.154
1	0	1	583	20.712	3	2	1	59	44.296
2	1	0	207	22.629	2	1	2	47	44.899
0	1	1	77	23.966	4	2	0	19	46.246
1	1	1	741	25.495	5	0	1	17	47.978
2	0	1	120	25.572	0	2	2	133	49.120
2	1	1	665	29.598	0	3	1	15	49.339
0	2	0	106	29.650	1	2	2	28	49.961
3	0	1	327	32.152	1	3	1	123	50.166
2	2	0	23	34.448	5	1	1	68	50.470
3	1	1	1000	35.518	2	2	2	332	52.407
1	2	1	317	36.451	4	0	2	332	52.407
4	1	0	204	37.813	2	3	1	132	52.595
1	0	2	116	39.242	4	1	2	160	54.879
2	2	1	139	39.550	6	1	0	195	55.369
4	0	1	169	39.723	3	3	1	241	56.506
1	1	2	207	42.154	4	3	0	143	58.128

8. Powder diffraction pattern of a compound with an unknown crystal structure was indexed with the following unit cell parameters: $a = b = 4.07$ Å, $c = 16.3$ Å, $\alpha = \beta = 90°$, $\gamma = 120°$. The list of all Bragg peaks observed from 2 to 120° 2θ is shown in *Table 2.20*. Analyze systematic absences (if any) present in this powder diffraction pattern and suggest possible space groups symmetry for the material

Table 2.20. List of Bragg peaks with their intensities and indices observed in a powder diffraction pattern of a material indexed in the following unit cell: $a = b = 4.07$ Å, $c = 16.3$ Å, $\alpha = \beta = 90°$, $\gamma = 120°$

h	*k*	*l*	I/I_0	2θ°	*h*	*k*	*l*	I/I_0	2θ°
0	0	3	10000	18.541	0	1	-10	159	75.324
0	1	-1	8851	34.192	0	2	4	256	76.249
0	1	2	280	35.927	0	2	-5	62	79.293
0	0	6	156	37.629	0	0	12	122	80.452
0	1	-4	4599	42.243	0	1	11	159	82.405
0	1	5	817	46.517	0	2	7	572	87.346
0	1	-7	3157	56.682	1	1	9	1097	88.383
0	0	9	1389	57.905	0	2	-8	1045	92.316
1	1	0	3322	60.143	1	2	-1	534	100.328
0	1	8	5186	62.442	1	2	2	59	101.427
1	1	3	456	63.511	1	2	-4	164	105.431
0	2	1	832	71.064	0	0	15	200	107.679
0	2	-2	136	72.107	1	1	12	189	109.601
1	1	6	206	73.182	1	2	-7	439	117.229

Chapter 3

EXPERIMENTAL TECHNIQUES

3.1 Introduction

The powder diffraction experiment is the cornerstone of a truly basic materials characterization technique – diffraction analysis[1] – and it has been used for many decades with exceptional success to provide accurate information about the structure of materials. Although powder data usually lack the three-dimensionality of a diffraction image, the fundamental nature of the method is easily appreciated from the fact that each powder diffraction pattern represents a one-dimensional snapshot of the three-dimensional reciprocal lattice of a crystal.[2] The quality of the powder diffraction pattern is usually limited by the nature and the energy of the available radiation, by the resolution of the instrument, and by the physical and chemical conditions of the specimen. Since many materials can only be prepared in a polycrystalline form, the powder diffraction experiment becomes the only realistic option for a reliable determination of the crystal structure of such materials.

Powder diffraction data are customarily recorded in virtually the simplest possible fashion, where the scattered intensity is measured as a function of a single independent variable – the Bragg angle. What makes the powder diffraction experiment so powerful is that different structural features of a material have different effects on various parameters of its powder diffraction pattern. For example, the presence of a crystalline phase is manifested as a set of discrete intensity maxima – the Bragg reflections –

[1] Fundamentals of diffraction analysis were considered in Chapter 2.

[2] Imaging of the reciprocal lattice in three dimensions is easily doable in a single crystal diffraction experiment.

each with a specific intensity and location. When atomic parameters, e.g. coordinates of atoms in the unit cell or populations of different sites in the lattice of the crystalline phase are altered, this change affects relative intensities and/or positions of the Bragg peaks that correspond to this phase. When the changes are microscopic, e.g. when the grain size is reduced below a certain limit or when the material has been strained or deformed, then the shapes of Bragg peaks become affected in addition to their intensities and positions. Hence, much of the structural information about the material is embedded into its powder diffraction pattern, and when experimental data are properly collected and processed, a great deal of details about a material's structure at different length scales, its phase and chemical compositions can be established.

3.2 Brief history of the powder diffraction method

The x-ray powder diffraction method dates back to Debye and Scherrer[1] who were the first to observe diffraction from LiF powder and succeeded in solving its crystal structure. Later, Hull[2] suggested and Hanawalt, Rinn and Frevel[3] formalized the approach enabling one to identify crystalline substances based on their powder diffraction patterns. Since that time the powder diffraction method has enjoyed enormous respect in both academia and industry as a technique that allows one to readily identify the substance both in a pure form and in a mixture in addition to its ability to provide information about the crystal structure (or the absence of crystallinity) of an unknown powder.

In the early days of the method, powder diffraction data were recorded on x-ray film in a variety of cameras. Using film, the resulting diffraction pattern is usually observed as a series of elliptically distorted narrow concentric ring segments (*Figure 3.1*), where each ring corresponds to one or more Bragg peaks. Multiple Bragg peaks may be convoluted into a poorly resolved or completely unresolved single ring due to the limitations imposed by the one-dimensionality of the technique and by the resolution of both the film and the instrument, e.g. the Debye-Scherrer camera (*Figure 3.2*).

From the locations of Debye rings on the film plus their varying intensity (degree of darkening), it is possible to identify the material and to establish its crystal structure. Given the analogue nature of the film, it is nearly as easy to grasp the overall "structure" of the diffraction pattern, as it is

[1] P. Debye, and P. Scherrer, Interferenzen an regellos orientierten Teilchen in Röntgenlight, Phys. Z. **17**, 277 (1916).

[2] A.W. Hull, A new method of chemical analysis, J. Am. Chem. Soc. **41**, 1168 (1919).

[3] J.D. Hanawalt, H.W. Rinn, and L.K. Frevel, Chemical analysis by x-ray diffraction, Ind. Eng. Chem. Anal. **10**, 457 (1938).

difficult to convert it into a digital format, and considerable effort is usually required to measure both the Bragg angles and diffracted intensities with high precision.

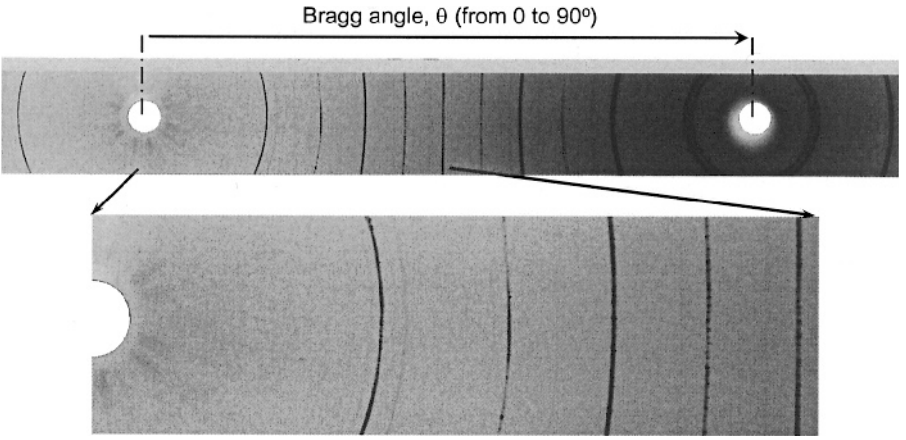


Figure 3.1. Film with the x-ray diffraction pattern of the polycrystalline LuAu needle recorded in a Debye-Scherrer camera using Cu Kα radiation. Bragg peaks are observed as concentric ring segments with varying darkness. Spottiness of some rings, clearly visible at low Bragg angles in the expanded view, indicates insufficient number of grains in the irradiated volume of the sample, which was achieved by annealing the needle at 900°C to promote grain growth. (Film courtesy of Dr. K.A. Gschneidner, Jr.)

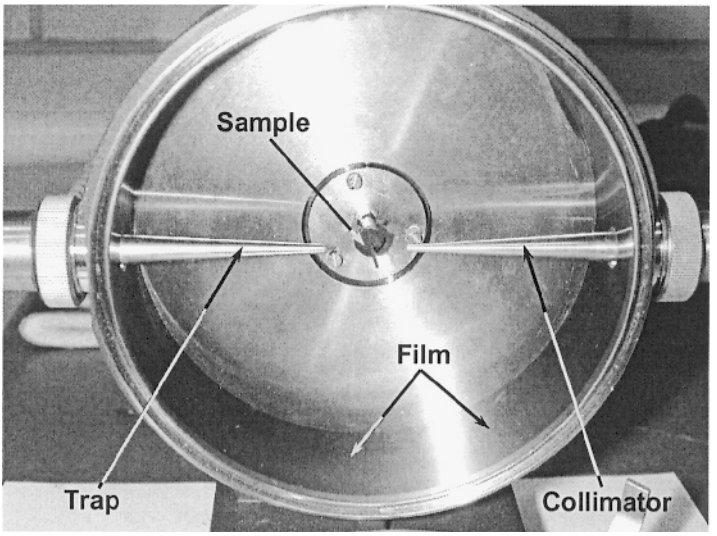


Figure 3.2. Debye-Scherrer camera without a cover showing cylindrical sample, collimator, incident beam trap, and the location of the x-ray film.

Cameras for x-ray powder diffraction are relatively simple but precise optical instruments, and require dark room for loading and developing x-ray film. Debye-Scherrer cameras (*Figure 3.2*) were in the most common use in crystallographic laboratories in the past, and many are still on display today. Debye-Scherrer cameras are exceptionally reliable and nearly maintenance-free devices. When the camera has been loaded with both the sample and the film, the entire diffraction pattern was recorded all at once, in a single exposure (*Figure 3.3*). The typical time to register one powder diffraction pattern on film is from 1 to 3 hours depending on the radius of the camera, the crystallinity of the specimen and the sensitivity of the film.[1]

Powder diffraction data today are almost exclusively collected using much more sophisticated analytical instruments – powder diffractometers (*Figure 3.4*). A powder diffractometer furnishes fully digitized experimental data in the form of diffracted intensity as a numerical function of Bragg angle (see *Figure 3.5*). By their nature, powder diffractometer data are exceptionally well suited for computerized processing. They usually provide accurate information about the structure of materials, especially when coupled with Rietveld analysis,[2] in which subtle anomalies of Bragg peak shapes are used in addition to the integrated intensities of Bragg reflections to extract important information about structural details.

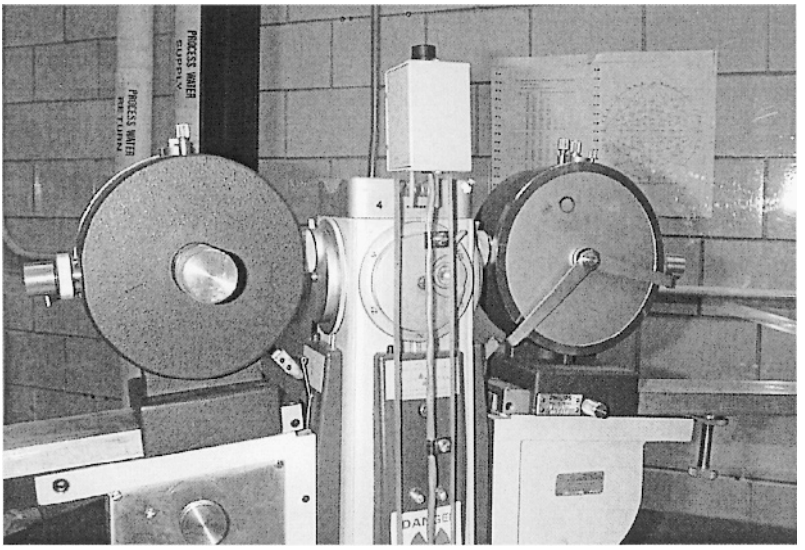


Figure 3.3. Two Debye-Scherrer cameras with covers, which have been loaded with x-ray film and installed on the x-ray generator, ready for collecting powder diffraction data.

[1] It may take as much as 12 to 24 hours, especially when using low energy x-rays (e.g. Cr Kα radiation) in combination with a highly absorbing powder and a large camera radius.

[2] The Rietveld method will be considered in Chapter 7.

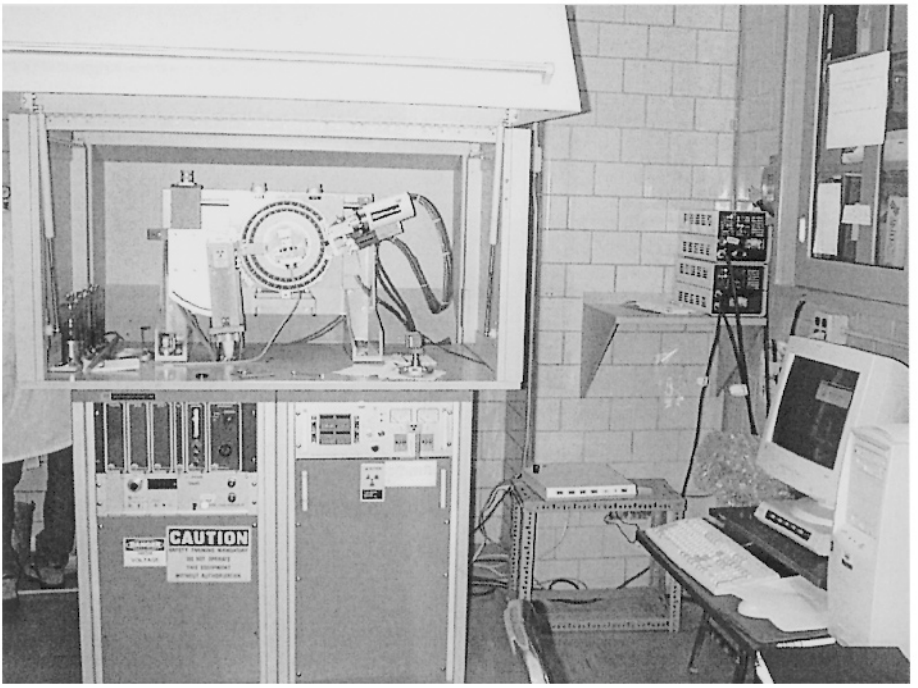


Figure 3.4. The overall view of a powder diffractometer. The radiation enclosure is opened to expose the goniometer, which rests on top of the high voltage power supply. The computer on the right is used to manage and control data collection and to carry out preliminary processing of the data, e.g. conversion from a software-specific binary to ASCII format. (Courtesy of Scintag, Inc.)[1]

Considering *Figure 3.5*, the resolution of powder diffraction data collected using a powder diffractometer is usually much better than that achievable with x-ray film data. This is illustrated in an expanded view, where two closely located Bragg peaks (at $2\theta \cong 81.38$ and 81.60°) are easily recognizable. However, if one compares *Figure 3.5* with *Figure 3.1*, it is easy to see that x-ray film data are pseudo two-dimensional, since they enable one to examine the distribution of intensity along Debye rings in addition to the distribution of intensity as a function of Bragg angle. The fundamental one-dimensionality of conventional powder diffractometer data implies that the experimentalist should be fully aware of potential pitfalls of the technique, which are often associated with improper preparation of the sample and/or with improper selection of data collection parameters and conditions.

[1] In 1998, Scintag was acquired by Thermo Electron and joined Thermo ARL (previously ARL Applied Research Laboratories).

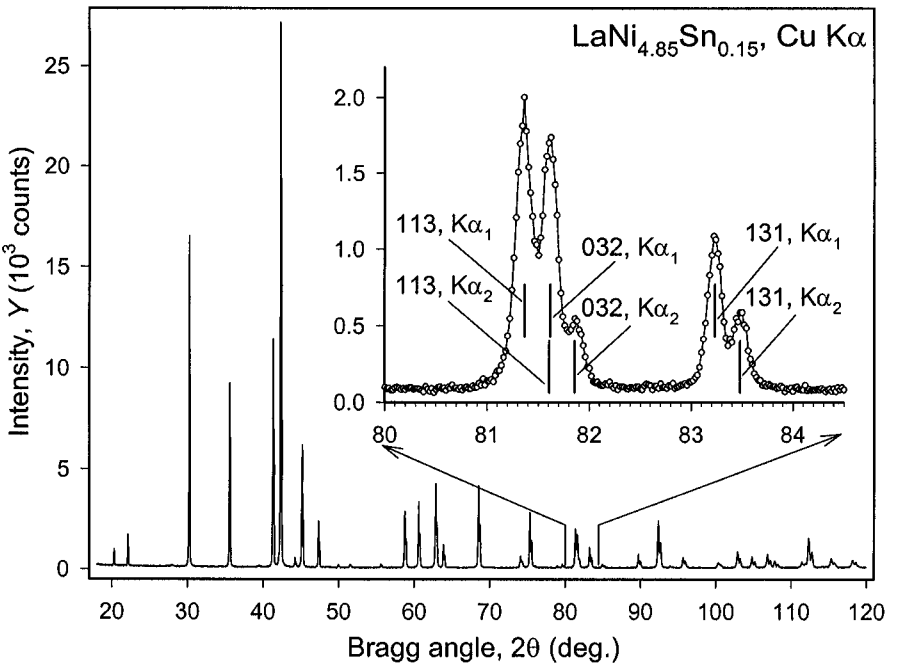


Figure 3.5. The x-ray powder diffraction pattern of polycrystalline $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ recorded on a Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode powder diffractometer using Cu Kα radiation. The expanded view shows three Bragg peaks between 80 and 84.5° 2θ. Each of the Bragg peaks consists of nearly resolved $K\alpha_1/K\alpha_2$ doublets. The $K\alpha_2$ component of the strongest Bragg peak (113) at $2\theta \cong 81.6°$ is completely overlapped with the $K\alpha_1$ component of the second Bragg peak (032) at $2\theta \cong 81.6°$. The $K\alpha_1$ component of 113 peak at $2\theta \cong 81.38°$, the sum of the 113 $K\alpha_2$ and 032 $K\alpha_1$ components at $2\theta \cong 81.6°$ and the 032 $K\alpha_2$ component at $2\theta \cong 81.82°$ are well resolved. Every point in the inset represents a single experimental measurement, $Y(2\theta_i)$. The lines connecting the data points are guides for the eye.

Despite the undeniable historical significance, x-ray film data are seldom employed today in a practical powder diffraction analysis, and in this book we will only be concerned with electronic powder diffractometry. An interested reader is referred to several excellent texts which are dedicated to the analysis of film data, for example those written by Azaroff and Buerger,[1] Lipson and Steeple,[2] Klug and Alexander,[3] and Cullity.[4]

[1] L.V. Azaroff, and M.J. Buerger, The powder method in x-ray crystallography, McGraw-Hill, New York (1958).

[2] H. Lipson, and H. Steeple, Interpretation of x-ray powder diffraction patterns, Macmillan, London/St Martin's Press, New York (1970).

[3] H.P. Klug, and L.E. Alexander, X-ray diffraction procedures for polycrystalline and amorphous materials, 2nd ed. John Wiley, New York (1974).

[4] B.D. Cullity, Elements of x-ray diffraction, 2nd ed. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA (1978).

The last few decades of the 20th century transformed the powder diffraction experiment from a technique familiar to a few into one of the most broadly practicable analytical diffraction experiments, particularly because of the availability of a much greater variety of sources of radiation – sealed and rotating anode x-ray tubes were supplemented by intense neutron and brilliant synchrotron radiation sources. Without a doubt, the accessibility of both neutron and synchrotron radiation sources started a revolution in powder diffraction, especially with respect to previously unimaginable kinds of information that can be extracted from a one-dimensional projection of the three-dimensional reciprocal lattice of a crystal. Yet powder diffraction fundamentals remain the same, no matter what is the brilliancy of the source of particles or x-ray photons employed to produce diffraction peaks, and how basic or how advanced is the method used to record the powder diffraction data.

The conventional analytical powder diffractometer has been and hitherto continues to be a workhorse for thousands of researchers, both mature and those who are just at the beginning of their careers in science and industry. Appropriately, this chapter is illustrated by many examples obtained using standard analytical instruments. Needless to say that when a more advanced radiation source is used to study the phenomenon of powder diffraction from the same quality specimen, this will only result in a better (i.e. more accurate) set of experimental data.

3.3 Powder diffractometers

As mentioned in the previous section, beginning approximately in the 1970's, powder cameras and x-ray film were steadily replaced by automated analytical instruments – powder diffractometers. Despite a large variety of both commercial and one-of-a-kind *apparati* found in analytical laboratories around the world, nearly all of them have many common characteristics dictated by the properties of x-rays.[1] Since standard x-ray tubes produce divergent beams, most of the high resolution powder diffractometers use self-focusing geometries, which improve both the diffracted intensity and the resolution of the instrument. This is usually achieved by highly precise x-ray optics, which is incorporated into the critical part of powder diffractometer hardware – the goniometer (or goniostat), and by a thorough alignment of the latter.

[1] In this book we are predominantly concerned with the so-called Bragg-Brentano focusing geometry. Other types of geometries, e.g. those using Seemann-Bohlin and Guinier geometries, will not be considered here because their use in the determination and refinement of crystal structure from powder diffraction data is limited, when compared to the Bragg-Brentano technique.

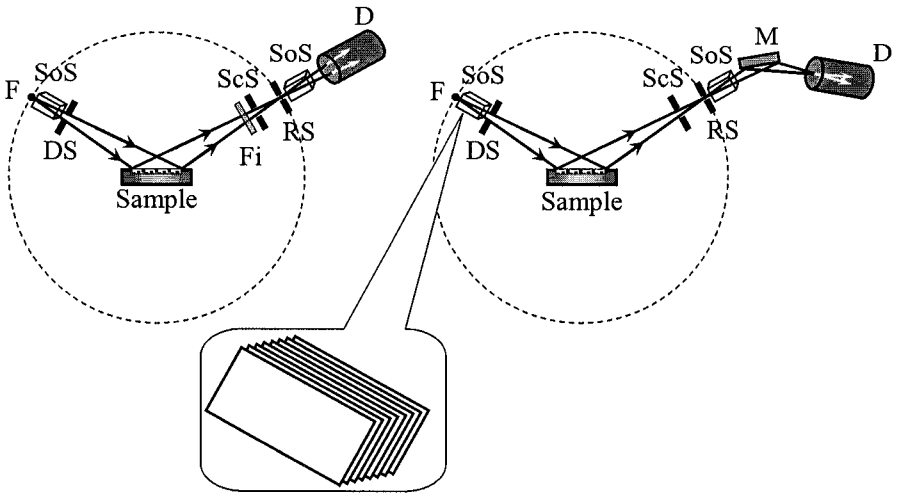


Figure 3.6. Typical focusing optics employed in modern powder diffractometry: without (left) and with (right) the diffracted beam monochromator. F – focus of the x-ray source; SoS – Soller slits; DS – divergence slit; Fi – β-filter; ScS – scatter slit (optional); RS – receiving slit; M – monochromator; D – detector. In each case, both the focal point of the source and the receiving slit are equidistant from the common goniometer axis, which coincides with the center of the sample, and are located on the surface of a cylinder – goniometer circle. The latter is shown using a dashed line. The Soller slit, seen in the expanded view, is constructed from multiple thin parallel plates to limit the divergence of the beam in the direction perpendicular to the plate surfaces (and to the plane of the figure) usually to within 1-5°. Both schematics are not to scale. Also, see *Figure 2.9*, *Figure 2.10*, and *Figure 2.13* to *Figure 2.15*.

The most common features of focusing optics in powder diffractometry are summarized in *Figure 3.6*. Focusing powder diffractometers usually operate in the θ – 2θ scanning regime (or scanning mode), where the incident and diffracted beams both form the same angle θ with the surface of a flat sample, while the diffracted beam forms a 2θ angle with the incident beam (also see *Figure 3.8*, below). The directions of beams are shown by arrows in *Figure 3.6* and in other schematics found in this chapter.

The incident beam passes through at least two slits before reaching the sample. The so-called Soller slit limits the divergence of the incident beam in the direction perpendicular to the plane in which the diffracted intensity is measured, also known as out of plane or axial divergence.[1] Axial divergence of the incident beam is not shown in *Figure 3.6*. The divergence slit establishes the in-plane aperture of the incident beam and the in-plane divergence.[1] Since the sample is irradiated by the divergent incident beam, the diffracted beam converges (self-focuses) at the receiving slit, which is located at the same distance from the center of the sample as the focal point

[1] Also, see Chapter 2, section 2.3.1.

of the source. These two distances remain constant at any Bragg angle, and both the focal point of the x-ray source and the receiving slit of the detector are located on the circumference of an imaginary circle (cylinder), which is known as the goniometer circle. The radius of the goniometer cylinder is identical to the goniometer radius.

The diffracted beam passes through the second Soller slit before reaching the detector when no monochromator is employed (*Figure 3.6*, left), or it is reflected in a crystal-monochromator on its path to the detector (*Figure 3.6*, right). An additional scatter slit, located before the receiving slit, can be employed to reduce the background. The Soller slit on the diffracted beam side can be placed between the scatter and receiving slits.

The diffracted beam is monochromatized using a β-filter (*Figure 3.6*, left) or a crystal monochromator (*Figure 3.6*, right). Quite rarely the monochromatization geometries shown in *Figure 3.6* are reversed, i.e. the incident beam rather than the diffracted beam is monochromatized using either a β-filter or a crystal monochromator. The monochromatization of the diffracted beam is advantageous in that fluorescent x-rays (which may be quite intense in some combinations of samples and photon energies, e.g. see *Figure 3.16*, below) can be suppressed, thus reducing the background.

The common optical features described above may be realized in different ways in the actual hardware design of a powder diffractometer goniostats and thus, goniometers differ from one another by:

1. The orientation of both the goniometer axis and specimen surface (or specimen axis) with respect to the horizon, i.e. they may be located in a vertical or horizontal plane.
2. Diffraction geometry – reflection or transmission – when scattered intensity is registered after the reflection from or after the transmission through the sample, respectively.
3. Motions of the goniometer arms, i.e. according to which arms of the goniometer are movable and which are stationary.

3.3.1 Principles of goniometer design in powder diffractometry

As shown in *Figure 3.7* (left), when the examined specimen is parallel to the horizon, (horizontal goniometer design), it has an obvious advantage in that no special care is required to hold the powder in the sample holder – the powder is simply held by gravity. Furthermore, the sample surface is easily aligned in a horizontal plane using, for example, a level. The disadvantage of this design is that motions of the detector arm (and in some cases motions of the source of x-rays) occur in a vertical plane, thus requiring powerful stepping motors and precise counterbalancing to control heavy goniometer arms with the required precision, usually on the order of 1/1000 of a degree.

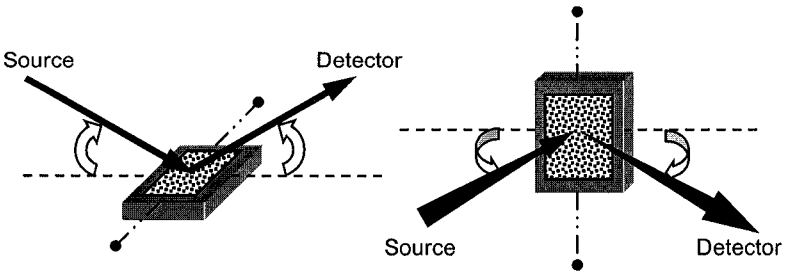


Figure 3.7. Horizontal (left) and vertical (right) orientations of a flat sample. The location of the goniometer axis is shown using a dash-double dotted line with small filled circles at the ends. The dashed line indicates the location of the optical axis, which is the line connecting the focus of the x-ray tube, the receiving slit and the sample surface in the reflection geometry, or the sample center in the transmission geometry at $\theta = 2\theta = 0°$.

On the other hand, the simplicity of the goniometer arms motion in a horizontal plane, when the sample is located in a vertical plane (*Figure 3.7*, right), is offset by the need of more complicated sample preparation to ensure that it stays in place and does not fall of. This is usually achieved by side packing the sample holder or by mixing a powder with a binder (e.g., x-ray amorphous and chemically inert petroleum jelly, oil, grease or varnish), which typically increase preferred orientation or background, respectively (see section 3.5 for more details on sample preparation).

The orientation of the sample usually establishes the orientation of the goniometer axis, i.e. the axis around which both the detector and sample (or both the detector and x-ray source) rotate in a synchronized fashion during θ-2θ or θ-θ data collection. A horizontal sample orientation implies that the goniometer axis is located in the horizontal plane, and a vertical sample orientation makes the goniometer axis vertical, as depicted in *Figure 3.7*.

The reflection geometry takes full advantage of the focusing of the diffracted beam as shown in *Figure 3.8*. This geometry is commonly known as the Bragg-Brentano focusing method and it results in both high resolution and high diffracted intensity. Furthermore, the Bragg-Brentano experimental setup translates into a relatively straightforward sample preparation, and when this diffraction geometry is coupled with the horizontal goniometer axis, the sample can be in a liquid state.

A disadvantage of the Bragg-Brentano geometry, in addition to being susceptible to preferred orientation, is in that it may be difficult to prepare a sample of an adequate thickness to ensure that it is completely opaque to x-rays. This is especially true when examining weakly absorbing materials, e.g., molecular compounds containing only light elements (C, N, O, and H).[1]

[1] Low absorption may affect positions of Bragg peaks due to transparency shift (Chapter 2, section 2.8.2) and/or systematically distort scattered intensity (Chapter 2, section 2.10.5).

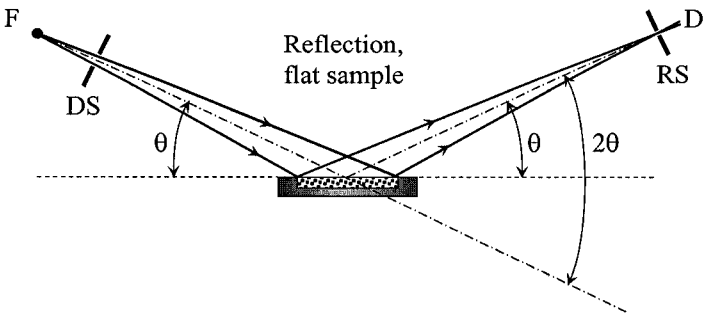


Figure 3.8. The schematic of the Bragg-Brentano focusing geometry using a flat sample when the self-focused diffracted beam is registered by the detector after reflection from the sample. F – focus of the x-ray source, DS – divergence slit, RS – receiving slit, D – detector, θ – Bragg angle.

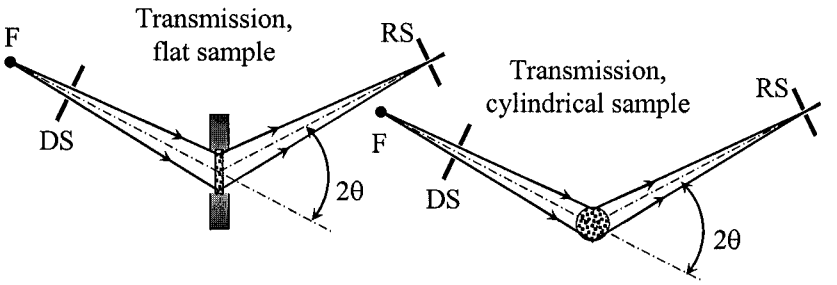


Figure 3.9. Transmission geometry in the case of flat (left) and cylindrical (right) samples. F – focus of the x-ray source, DS – divergence slit, RS – receiving slit, θ – Bragg angle.

The two commonly employed transmission geometries are shown in *Figure 3.9.* Powder diffraction in the transmission mode can be observed from both flat and cylindrical samples. Flat samples usually require small amounts of material, however, the preparation of high quality and uniformly dense specimen may be difficult.

Cylindrical samples, which are common in the Debye-Scherrer cameras (*Figure 3.2*), are also used in powder diffractometry. Similar to flat transmission samples, small amounts of powder are required in the cylindrical specimen geometry. This form of the sample is least susceptible to the non-random distribution of particle orientations, i.e. to preferred orientation effects.

Both flat and cylindrical transmission samples are commonly used in combination with position sensitive or image plate detectors. The major disadvantage of the transmission geometry arises from the fact that self-focusing of the diffracted beam is not as precise as in the Bragg-Brentano

geometry. Hence, laboratory instruments employing transmission geometry usually have lower resolution when compared to those operating in the reflection geometry. It is worth noting that imprecise self-focusing is generally not an issue when using synchrotron x-ray sources, which produce nearly parallel x-ray beams.

Powder diffractometer goniostats can be constructed in a way that both the detector and the sample revolve around a common goniometer axis in a synchronized fashion, or the sample is stationary, but both the detector and the x-ray source arms rotations are synchronized, as shown in *Figure 3.10*. When cylindrical samples are employed, generally there is no need in the synchronization of the goniometer arms, and only the detector arm (if any, e.g. see *Figure 3.14*, below) should be rotated.

The schematic of a goniostat, which realizes horizontal Bragg-Brentano focusing geometry with both the detector and source arms in the synchronized rotation about a common horizontal goniometer axis is shown in *Figure 3.11*. Both arms of the goniometer revolve in the vertical plane, and this geometry of a powder diffractometer is in the most common use today.

Some powder diffractometers, particularly those which are used for routine analysis of multiple samples of the same kind, can be equipped with multiple sample changers (usually from 4 to 12 specimens can be accommodated by a single sample changer). This ensures straightforward software control over the data collection process within a series of samples and enables better automation, as data sets from multiple samples may be collected without operator intervention, e.g. overnight or during a weekend. Multiple sample changers are common in powder x-ray diffractometers used

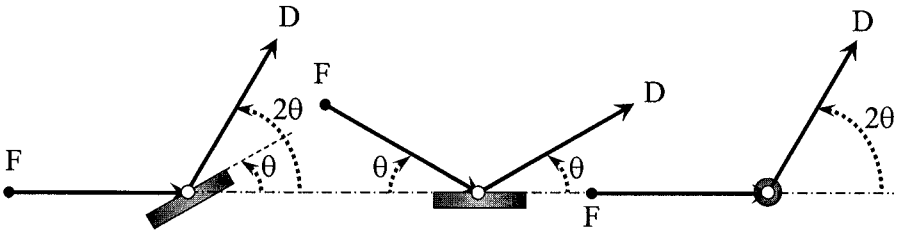


Figure 3.10. Synchronization of the goniometer arms: the x-ray source is stationary while the sample and the detector rotations are synchronized to fulfill the θ-2θ requirement (left); the sample is stationary while the source and the detector arms are synchronized to realize the θ-θ condition (middle) – this geometry is in common use at present; only the detector arm revolves around the goniometer axis in the case of a cylindrical sample (right). F – focus of the x-ray tube indicating the position of the x-ray source arm, D – detector arm, θ – Bragg angle. The common goniometer axis (which is perpendicular to the plane of the projection) around which the rotations are synchronized is shown as the open circle in each of the three drawings. The location of the optical axis is shown as the dash-dotted line.

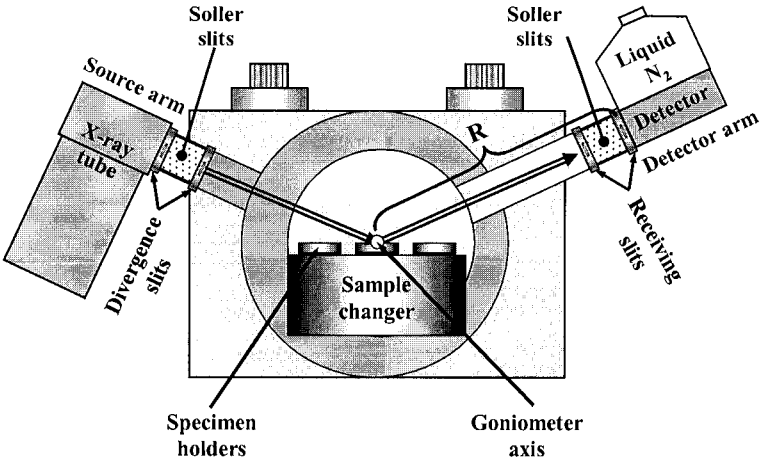


Figure 3.11. The schematic of the goniostat of a Scintag XDS2000 powder diffractometer with the horizontal axis and synchronized rotations of both the source and detector arms. This goniometer is equipped with a liquid nitrogen-cooled solid-state detector, which enables monochromatization of the diffracted beam by selecting a narrow energy window, thus registering only characteristic energy photons. R – is the radius of the goniometer.

in analytical laboratories for quality control purposes. For example, when multiple samples should be analyzed to ensure adequate properties of a product when they are critically dependent on the structure and/or phase composition of a material manufactured in different batches or from the same batch at various stages of the production process.

3.3.2 Goniostats with point detectors

Photographs of two different powder diffractometer goniostats equipped with point detectors are shown in *Figure 3.12* and *Figure 3.13*. The first example (*Figure 3.12*) is a Bragg-Brentano goniometer, where the x-ray source housing is rigidly mounted on the goniometer frame and it remains stationary during data collection. The θ-2θ mode is achieved by synchronizing the rotations of the sample holder and the detector around the common horizontal goniometer axis, as shown schematically in *Figure 3.10*, left.

The slit box located between the x-ray source and the sample (*Figure 3.12*, left) contains two divergence slits, which control the aperture and the divergence of the incident beam in the vertical plane. The two divergence slits are separated by a set of Soller slits, which limit the divergence of the incident beam in the horizontal plane. The sample holder here is an automatic four-specimen sample changer.

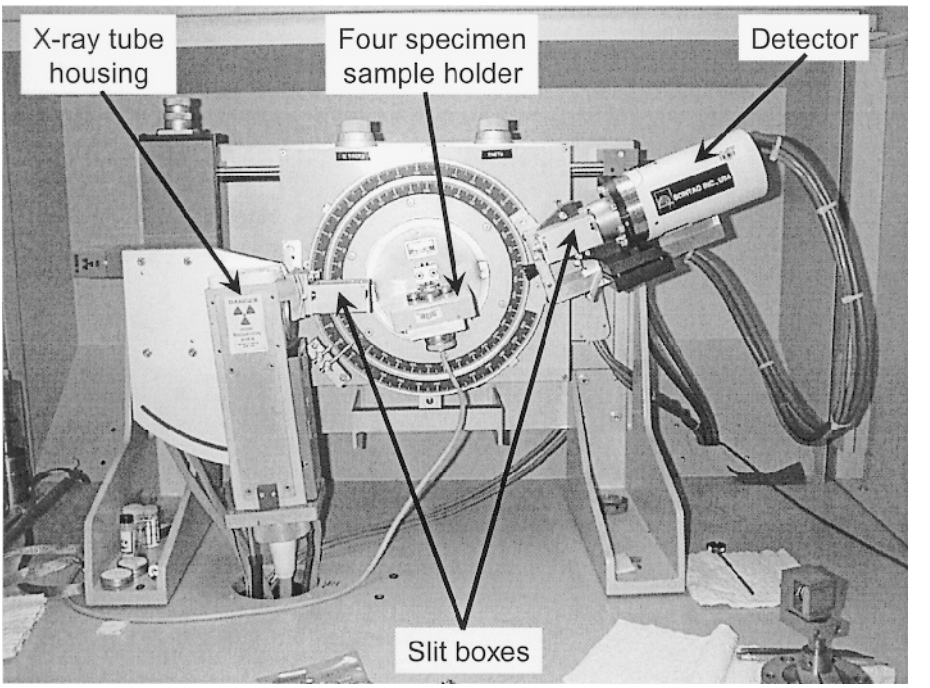


Figure 3.12. The overall view of the goniostat of the Scintag XRD-7 powder diffractometer. This diffractometer has the horizontal goniometer axis, stationary x-ray source and synchronized rotations of both the detector arm and sample holder. The goniometer is equipped with a thermoelectric refrigerator-cooled solid-state detector, which enables the monochromatization of the diffracted beam by selecting a narrow energy window thus registering only characteristic energy photons. (Courtesy of Scintag, Inc.)

The second slit box is located on the detector arm between the sample and the detector. The slit nearest to the sample serves as a scatter slit. It is followed by another Soller slit and a receiving slit positioned just before the detector. The detector in this case is a solid-state detector, which is cooled by a built-in Peltier refrigerator enabling to adjust and maintain the detector sensitivity at extremely narrow width to allow only x-ray photons of specific energy to be registered. Monochromatization of the diffracted x-ray beam is, therefore, achieved electronically rather than by physical means (e.g. by a β-filter or a crystal monochromator), which increases the registered diffracted intensity by eliminating losses in the filter or in the monochromator.

Electronic monochromatization is practical only in the case of modest intensities, as for example, powdered samples. When highly crystalline or single crystalline specimens are used (see *Figure 2.18* in Chapter 2), the incident beam intensity should be reduced by using narrower slits or lowering tube power. The linearity of solid-state detectors is poor at high

photon fluxes: usually when the flux exceeds 20,000 to 50,000 photons per second the response of the detector is no longer linear and the measured intensity will be incorrect.

A different goniostat with the horizontal orientation of the specimen and Bragg-Brentano geometry is shown in *Figure 3.13*. The x-ray tube housing is mounted on the movable arm, and both the x-ray source and the detector can be rotated in a synchronized fashion about the common horizontal goniometer axis (also see the schematic in *Figure 3.10*, middle).

The x-ray source in this example is a rotating anode x-ray tube. Another unusual feature of this goniometer is the presence of variable divergence (*Figure 3.13*, left), scatter and receiving (*Figure 3.13*, right) slits. This combination of slits enables one to maintain the irradiated area of the studied specimen constant at any Bragg angle, which may be useful in some applications. Both variable slit boxes also contain a set of Soller slits each to control the divergence of both the incident and diffracted beams in the horizontal plane.

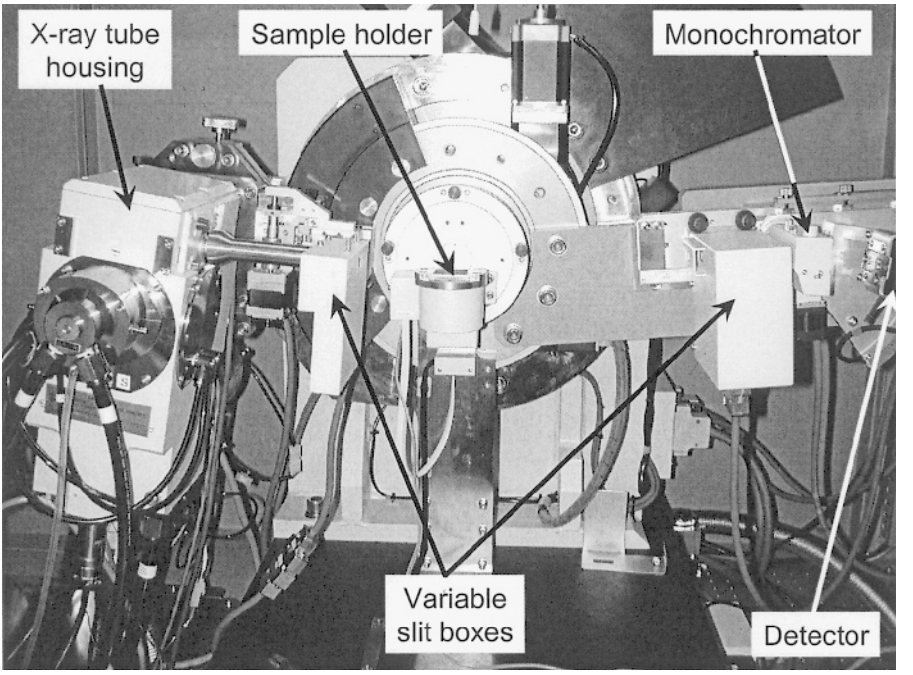


Figure 3.13. The overall view of the goniostat of the Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode powder diffractometer with the horizontal goniometer axis, and synchronized rotations of both the x-ray source and detector arms. This goniometer is equipped with variable divergence, scatter and receiving slits, curved crystal monochromator, and scintillation detector. (Courtesy of Rigaku/MSC.)

The curved crystal-monochromator is positioned between the receiving slit box and the detector (also see the schematic in *Figure 3.6*, right). This goniometer is shown with the specimen spinning sample holder attachment, which enables continuous spinning of the sample during data collection to achieve better particle orientations averaging, thus reducing preferred orientation effects.

The goniometer shown in *Figure 3.13* is equipped with a scintillation detector, which has high linearity (within 1% in excess of ~10^5 counts per second), which is important with the high brightness of the incident beam produced by a rotating anode x-ray tube. Only a small part of the scintillation detector is visible in *Figure 3.13*. The massive counterweight to balance the heavy x-ray tube housing is seen in the background of the photograph as the dark segment (top right).

Overall, powder diffractometers equipped with point detectors offer the best resolution of the resulting powder diffraction data. While the instrumental resolution increases with the increasing goniometer radius, the intensity of the diffracted beam unfortunately decreases because the incident beam produced by an analytical x-ray tube is always divergent.[1] Therefore, typical goniometer radii vary between ~150 and ~300 mm.

3.3.3 Goniostats with area detectors

The schematic of a powder diffractometer goniostat utilizing transmission geometry with a cylindrical specimen and a curved position sensitive detector (PSD) is shown in *Figure 3.14*. When using a curved position sensitive detector covering a long (from ~0 to ~90-140°) 2θ range, generally there is no need to rotate the detector arm and only sample spinning is required to improve particle orientations averaging and minimize preferred orientation.

The greatest advantage of this geometry is in the speed of data collection: the entire diffraction pattern can be recorded in as little as few seconds because the diffracted intensity in the whole range of Bragg angles covered by the circumference of the curved position sensitive detector is registered simultaneously. The downside is that it is impossible to monochromatize the diffracted beam effectively, which results in the increased background, particularly when the sample is strongly fluorescent. Another difficulty may occur in the interpretation of powder diffraction data collected using the geometry shown in *Figure 3.14* because of the lower resolution of curved position sensitive detectors and increased widths of Bragg peaks when compared with point detectors.

[1] When the goniometer radius increases, the size of a flat specimen, needed to maintain high intensity in the Bragg-Brentano geometry, becomes unreasonably large, see section 3.5.3.

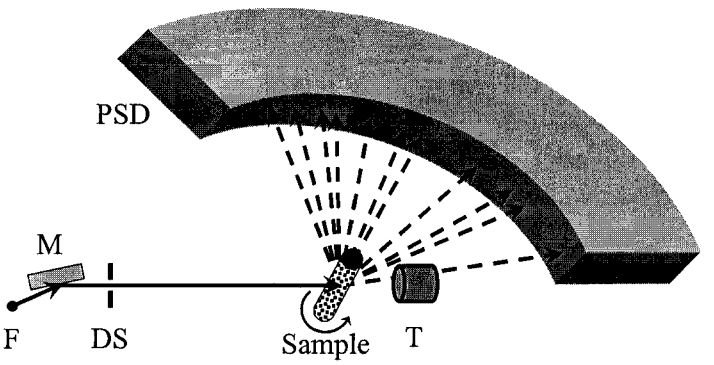


Figure 3.14. The schematic of a powder diffractometer with the vertical goniometer axis, cylindrical sample in the transmission mode and a curved position sensitive detector (PSD). Solid arrows indicate the incident beam and broken arrows indicate the diffracted beams pathways. F – focal point of the x-ray source, M – monochromator, DS – divergence slit, T – incident beam trap.

In principle, curved position sensitive detector can be replaced by a linear position sensitive detector covering segments 5 to 10° (2θ) wide. This approach considerably increases resolution and decreases Bragg peak widths, but the problem of the enhanced background remains.

Recently, image plate detectors are becoming popular in powder diffractometry (*Figure 3.15*). The monochromatized and collimated beam passes through a cylindrical or flat sample and the diffracted beams are registered by the image plate detector in all directions simultaneously. Because of the size of the detector, which can be made as large as necessary, the entire circumference of the Debye ring is normally registered instead of just a small sector as it is done in any other powder diffraction geometry considered above.

The use of image plate detectors restores the pseudo two-dimensionality of the x-ray powder diffraction pattern, which was standard in film-based registration. Experimental diffraction data can be collected at high speeds, nearly identical to those achievable with curved position sensitive detectors. Furthermore, the incident beam can be collimated into a small area and it is fundamentally possible to examine powder diffraction from just a few crystalline grains or even from a single grain, provided all possible grain orientations with respect to the incident beam have been arranged by properly varying the orientation of the specimen. The problems encountered in today's image plate detector-equipped powder diffractometers are similar to those noted above for curved position sensitive detectors: high background and relatively low resolution, see *Figure 3.16*.

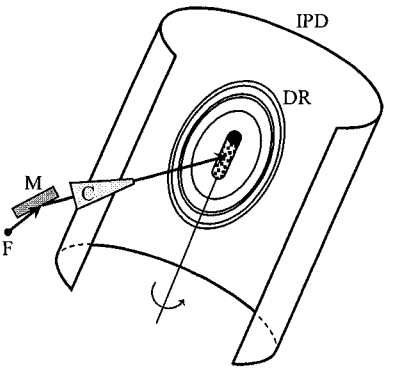


Figure 3.15. The schematic of a powder diffractometer with the vertical goniometer axis, cylindrical sample in the transmission mode and image plate detector (IPD). Solid arrows show the incident beam path. Rings indicate intercepts of Debye cones with the IPD. F – focal point of the x-ray source, M – monochromator, C – collimator, DR – Debye rings.

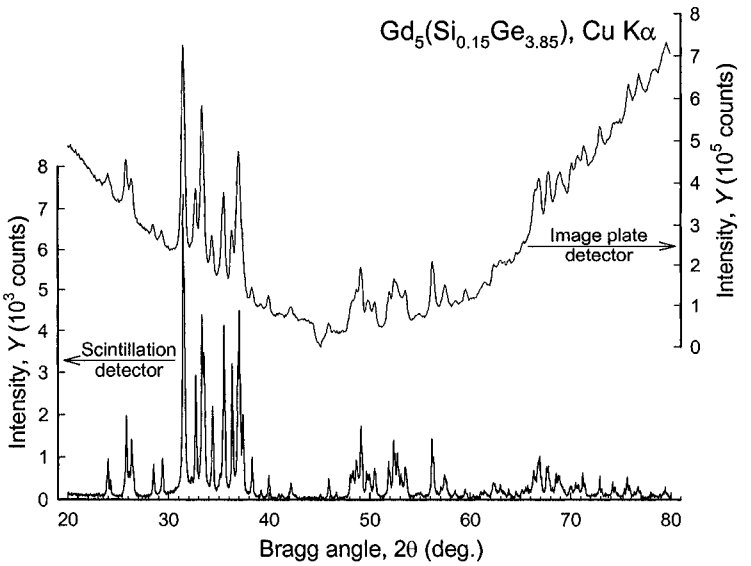


Figure 3.16. Comparison of the x-ray diffraction data collected from the same powder using a point detector and a diffracted beam monochromator in the Bragg-Brentano geometry (lower pattern, left hand intensity scale) and an image plate detector and an incident beam monochromator (upper pattern, right hand intensity scale) in the transmission geometry from a cylindrical sample. An extremely high and non-linear background in the case of the image plate detector is due to strong x-ray fluorescence of Gd atoms interacting with Cu Kα radiation. The widths of the Bragg peaks in the case of the image plate detector are enhanced, which translates into the low resolution of the data. Despite the nearly two orders of magnitude larger photon count, the best peak-to-background ratio for the image plate detector data is 3:1, while it is nearly 70:1 for the point detector data.

When the two powder diffraction patterns (*Figure 3.16*), obtained from the same material are compared, the data collected using the Bragg-Brentano geometry and point detector with the diffracted beam crystal monochromator are definitely more useful in structural analysis than the set of data collected using an image plate detector and an incident beam crystal monochromator. The data set collected using an image plate detector has insufficient quality due to the unfavorable coincidence of conditions. First, the crystal structure of the material is complex (a total of ~300 Bragg peaks are possible in the range shown in *Figure 3.16*: $20 \leq 2\theta \leq 80°$). Second, the powder contains more than 70 wt.% of Gd – a chemical element, which produces a strong fluorescent background when using Cu Kα radiation. Thus, both the position sensitive and the image plate detectors find use in special applications of powder diffraction, such as *in-situ* studies of phase transformations and local non-destructive analysis, but their use in high precision determination of the crystal structure of materials is limited.

In the conclusion of this section, we feel that it is important to mention that despite its long history, powder diffractometry is a rapidly developing field of science, especially at the instrumentation level. Both position sensitive and image plate detectors, brought to routine use by exceptional technological advancements in high speed electronics and tremendous computing power, made the powder diffraction experiment faster than ever. Furthermore, x-ray mirrors and capillaries are making successful entrance into the market of commercial powder diffractometry, potentially enabling nearly parallel x-ray beams in analytical laboratory instruments, not just when using synchrotron radiation sources. It is difficult to predict how advanced the capabilities of powder diffraction instruments will become in ten or twenty years from now, but the essence of the quality powder diffraction experiment will likely remain the same: the best powder diffraction data will always need to be highly precise and collected with the best possible resolution over a minimum background.

3.4 Safety

The information contained in this section deals with radiation safety for users of analytical x-ray systems. It was developed by the Environmental, Safety, Health and Assurance Office of the United States Department of Energy Ames Laboratory.[1] In the content of this book it is intended to raise awareness about the potential dangers associated with the continuous or acute exposure to x-ray radiation and has no legal force. Each workplace where analytical x-rays are used should have a set of established policies and

[1] The document was kindly provided by Mrs. Kate Sordelet.

procedures, which must be strictly enforced and are designed to protect both the operator(s) of analytical x-ray instruments and nearby personnel from x-ray exposure.[1]

3.4.1 Radiation quantities and terms

X-rays transfer their energy to matter through chance encounters with bound electrons or atomic nuclei. These random encounters result in the ejection of energetic electrons from the atom. Each of the electrons liberated goes on to transfer its energy to matter through many direct ionization events (i.e. events involving collisions between charged particles). Since x-rays transfer energy in this indirect manner, they are referred to as indirectly ionizing radiation. Because the encounters of x-ray photons with atoms are by chance, a given photon has a finite probability of passing completely through the medium it is traversing. The probability that a photon will pass completely through a medium depends upon numerous factors including the energy of the x-rays and the medium's chemical composition and thickness.

The following quantities and terms are essential to the description and measurement of various forms of ionizing radiation.

- Exposure. It is a measure of the strength of a radiation field at some point. It is usually defined as the amount of charge (i.e., sum of all ions of one sign) produced in a unit mass of air when the interacting photons are completely absorbed in that mass. The most commonly used unit of exposure is the Roentgen, R, which is defined as that amount of radiation which produces 2.58×10^{-4} coulombs of charge per kilogram (SI units) of dry air. In cases where exposure is to be expressed as a rate, the unit would be R/h or, more commonly, mR/h.
- Absorbed dose. It is the amount of energy passed on by radiation to a given mass of any material. The most common unit of absorbed dose is the rad, which is defined as a dose of 100 ergs of energy per gram of the material in question (SI unit is the gray, 1 Gy = 1 J/kg). The absorbed dose may also be expressed as a rate with units of rad/h or mrad/h.
- Dose equivalent. Although the biological effects of radiation are dependent upon the absorbed dose, some types of particles produce greater effects than others for the same amount of transferred energy. In order to account for these variations when describing human health risk from radiation exposure, the quantity dose equivalent is used. This is the absorbed dose multiplied by certain quality and modifying factors

[1] An overview of precautions against radiation injury is also given by D.C. Creagh and S. Martinez-Carrera in the International Tables for Crystallography, vol. C, Second edition, A.J.C. Wilson and E. Prince, Eds., Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston/Dordrecht/ London (1999) p. 949.

indicative of the relative biological-damage potential of the particular type of radiation. The unit of dose equivalent is the rem or, more commonly, mrem (SI unit is the sievert, 1 Sv = 1 J/kg). Dose equivalent may likewise be expressed as a rate with units of rem/h or mrem/h. For x-ray exposures, the numerical value of the rem is essentially equal to that of the rad.

- Shielding. It is any material, which is placed around or adjacent to a source of penetrating radiation for the purpose of attenuating the exposure rate from the source. For shielding x-rays, materials composed of high atomic number elements such as lead are highly effective.
- Half-value layer. It is that thickness of a given material (i.e. shielding) required to reduce the exposure rate from a source of gamma or x-rays to one-half of its unshielded value.

3.4.2 Biological effects of ionizing radiation

The energy deposited by ionizing radiation as it interacts with matter may result in the breaking of chemical bonds. If the irradiated matter is living tissue, such chemical changes may result in an altered structure or function of constituent cells. The effects of ionizing radiation described at the level of the human organism can be divided broadly into two categories: stochastic and non-stochastic effects.

As implied from the name, stochastic, these are effects that occur by chance. Stochastic effects caused by ionizing radiation consist primarily of genetic effects and cancer. As the dose to an individual increases, the probability that cancer or a genetic effect will occur also increases. However, at no time, even for high doses, is it certain that cancer or genetic damage will result. Similarly, for stochastic effects, there is no threshold dose below which it is relatively certain that an adverse effect cannot occur. In addition, because stochastic effects can occur in unexposed individuals, one can never be certain that the occurrence of cancer or genetic damage in an exposed individual is due to radiation.

Unlike stochastic effects, non-stochastic effects are characterized by a threshold dose below which they do not occur. In addition, the magnitude of the effect is directly proportional to the size of the dose. Furthermore, for non-stochastic effects, there is a clear causal relationship between radiation exposure and the effect. Examples of non-stochastic effects include sterility, erythema (skin reddening), ulceration, and cataract formation. Each of these effects differs from the other in both its threshold dose and in the time over which this dose must be received to cause the effect (i.e. acute vs. chronic exposure).

The effect of ionizing radiation upon humans or other organisms is directly dependent upon the size of the dose received. The dose, in turn, is dependent upon a number of factors including the strength of the source, the distance from the source to the affected tissue, and the time over which the tissue is irradiated. The ability of a given dose of ionizing radiation to cause health effects is influenced by the rate at which the dose is imparted. Because of various repair processes, which occur within the human body, a given dose of radiation in excess of that needed to produce a particular non-stochastic effect may, in fact, not produce such an effect if the dose is imparted over a relatively long period of time (i.e. chronic exposure). It is conservatively assumed, however, that dose rate is not a critical factor in controlling the probable occurrence of stochastic effects such as cancer or genetic damage.

Long-term exposures to relatively low levels of ionizing radiation are referred to as chronic exposures. Such exposures have little potential for inducing non-stochastic health effects and are of concern because of their potential for initiating cancer or genetic damage. Short-term exposures to relatively high levels of ionizing radiation are referred to as acute exposures. Such exposures have the potential for producing both non-stochastic effects (e.g. erythema, epilation, and ulceration) as well as stochastic effects (e.g. cancer) in the irradiated tissue.

The effectiveness of a given dose of external radiation in causing biological damage is dependent upon the portion of the body irradiated. For example, because of differences in the radiosensitivity of constituent tissues, the hand is far less likely to suffer biological damage from a given dose of radiation than are the gonads. Similarly, a given dose to the whole body has a greater potential for causing adverse health effects than does the same dose to only a portion of the body.

3.4.3 Exposure limits

Concern over the biological effects of ionizing radiation began shortly after the discovery of x-rays. From that time to the present, numerous recommendations regarding occupational exposure limits have been proposed and modified by various radiation protection groups, the most important being the International Commission on Radiological Protection (ICRP). These guidelines have, in turn, been incorporated into regulatory requirements for controlling the use of materials and devices emitting ionizing radiation.

In general, the guidelines established for radiation exposure have had as their principle objectives: (1) the prevention of acute radiation effects (e.g., erythema, sterility), and (2) the limiting of the risks of late, stochastic effects

(e.g., cancer, genetic damage) to "acceptable" levels. Numerous revisions of standards and guidelines have been made over the years to reflect both changes in the understanding of the risk associated with various levels of exposure and changes in the perception of what constitutes an "acceptable" level of risk.

Current guidelines for radiation exposure are based upon the conservative assumption that there is no safe level of exposure. In other words, even the smallest exposure has some probability of causing a late effect such as cancer or genetic damage. This assumption has led to the general philosophy of not only keeping exposures below recommended levels or regulatory limits but of also maintaining all exposures "as low as is reasonably achievable" (ALARA). This is a fundamental principle of current radiation safety practice.

Many of the recommendations of the ICRP and other radiation protection groups regarding radiation exposure have been incorporated into regulatory requirements by various countries. For the U.S. Department of Energy facilities, radiation exposure limits are found in Title 10, Part 835 of the Code of Federal Regulations (10CFR835). *Table 3.1* provides a summary of the dose limits for occupational external exposures.

Table 3.1. Summary of dose limits [10 CFR 835.202, 1003(a)(1), (a)(2)]

Type of exposure	Limit
General employee: whole body (internal + external)	5 rem/year
General employee: lens of the eye (external)	15 rem/year
General employee: hands, arms below the elbows, feet, legs below the knee	50 rem/year
General employee: any organ or tissue (other than lens of the eye) and skin	50 rem/year
Declared pregnant worker: fetus/embryo (internal and external)	0.5 rem/gestation period
Minors: whole body (internal and external)	0.1 rem/year
Minors: lens of the eye (external), skin and extremities	10 % of general employee limit

For whole body exposure, the non-occupational exposure limit is 100 mrem/year. This is in addition to the 360 mrem/yr received, on average, by individuals in the U.S. from natural background radiation and manmade radiation sources. The 100 mrem/year limit also applies to individuals under age 18 who work in the vicinity of radiation sources.

3.4.4 Radiation hazards of analytical x-ray systems

Because they utilize extremely high intensity x-ray beams, analytical x-ray systems have the potential for posing significant hazards if operated inappropriately. Radiation exposures can result not only from the primary

beam but also from scattered (or diffracted) rays and secondary radiation from the sample or shielding material.

The x-rays utilized most commonly in analytical systems have wavelengths in the range of 0.5 to 10 angstroms. These are often referred to as soft x-rays because of the ease by which they are absorbed in matter. While this characteristic enables soft x-rays to be readily shielded (generally requiring only a few millimeters of lead or iron), it also makes them particularly hazardous since they are highly absorbed even by soft tissue.

The primary beams from analytical x-ray systems are generally well collimated with beam diameters of less than one centimeter. Because of their intensity and their high degree of absorption in tissue, they can produce severe and permanent local injury from exposures of only a fraction of a second.

Exposure to the primary beam of powder diffraction units is a major concern. In fact, the greatest risk of acute accidental exposures from analytical systems occurs in manipulations of the sample to be irradiated by the direct beam in diffraction studies. Exposure rates on the order of 10,000 R/s ($\sim 4 \times 10^7$ R/h) can exist at the tube housing port. At these levels, erythema would be produced from exposures of only 0.03 second and permanent injury could be inflicted in only 0.1 second. The fingers, of course, are the part of the body most at risk from such high exposures.

For x-ray diffraction systems, the diffracted beam is also small and focused with an intensity of up to 80 R/h (~22 mR/s). Prolonged or repeated exposures to a beam of this intensity could result in an individual exceeding the annual dose limit for the particular tissue irradiated.

Through interactions with the sample and shielding material, the primary beam in diffraction systems often produces diffuse patterns of scattered and secondary x-rays in the environment around the equipment. Exposure rates of 150 mR/h near the shielded sample are not uncommon.

3.4.5 Hazard control measures for analytical x-ray systems

Requirements for controlling potential hazards associated with analytical x-ray systems are specified in most states by law. For example, at Ames Laboratory these requirements are detailed in the Radiological Protection Program or Policy #10202.003, "Analytical X-ray Safety". Portions of these hazard control and safety measures are summarized below.

Equipment requirements.

- Beam entry shut-off device. A device which prevents the entry of any portion of an individual's body into the primary beam path or which

causes the beam to be shut off upon entry into its path shall be provided on all open-beam configurations.
- Shutters. On open-beam configurations, each port on the source housing shall be equipped with a shutter that cannot be opened unless a collimator or coupling has been connected to the port.
- Housing interlock. Each x-ray tube housing shall be equipped with an interlock that shuts off the tube if the tube is removed from the housing or if the housing is disassembled.
- Shielding provided by housing. Each x-ray tube housing shall be constructed so that, with all shutters closed, the radiation, measured at a distance of five centimeters from its surface, is not capable of producing a dose in excess of 2.5 mrem in one hour.
- Warning lights. An easily visible warning light with the words "X-RAY ON" shall be located near any switch that energizes an x-ray tube and shall be illuminated only when the tube is energized.
- Labeling. All analytical x-ray equipment shall be labeled with a readily discernible sign bearing the radiation symbol and the words: (1) "CAUTION - HIGH INTENSITY X-RAY BEAM" on the x-ray source housing; and (2) "CAUTION RADIATION - THIS EQUIPMENT PRODUCES RADIATION WHEN ENERGIZED" near any switch that energizes the x-ray tube.

Area requirements.
- Radiation levels. The components of an analytical x-ray system shall be arranged and shall be sufficiently shielded to ensure that radiation levels near the components cannot result in an individual receiving a dose in excess of 2 mrem in any one hour.
- Surveys. Radiation surveys of all analytical x-ray systems sufficient to show compliance with the radiation levels established in the previous item must be performed: (1) upon installation of the equipment and at least every twelve months thereafter; (2) following any change in the number, type, or arrangement of components in the system; (3) following any maintenance requiring the disassembly or removal of a system component.
- Posting. Each room containing analytical x-ray equipment shall be conspicuously posted with a sign bearing the radiation symbol and the words "CONTROLLED AREA." The interlocked barriers surrounding the x-ray systems shall be posted as a "BUFFER AREA", and the area immediately adjacent to all x-ray beam ports, whether open beam or closed beam, shall be posted with a sign which reads "CAUTION [OR DANGER] - HIGH RADIATION AREA".

Operating Requirements.

- Procedures. Normal operating procedures shall be written and available to all analytical x-ray equipment workers.
- Bypassing safety devices. No individual shall bypass a safety device or interlock unless the individual has obtained written approval of the radiation safety officer.
- Altering system components. No operation involving the removal or alteration of shielding materials, tube housing, shutter, collimators, or beam stops shall be performed until it has been determined that the beam is off and will remain off until safe conditions have been restored.
- Personnel monitoring requirements. At the Ames Laboratory, the Health Physics Group issues ring dosimeters to all users of x-ray diffraction devices and, if requested by the user, whole body badges (*Figure 3.17*) in addition to the extremity dosimeters. Dosimetry is used to provide an indication of the amount of external radiation exposure the wearer has received, and must be worn at all times when using the equipment. The dosimetry will not be issued to any individual until the required safety training has been completed. Dosimeters do not protect from radiation exposure – they are only used to determine the received dose, if any.
- Each individual who wishes to be authorized to use analytical x-ray equipment at the Ames Laboratory must first receive training concerning the radiation hazards associated with the use of the equipment, the function and importance of the equipment's safety devices, proper operating procedures, and procedures to follow in the event of a suspected radiation exposure.

Figure 3.17. Whole body badge (top) and finger dosimeters (bottom) issued to all trained analytical x-ray users at the US DOE's Ames Laboratory.

3.5 Sample preparation

Many factors affect quality of powder diffraction data (e.g. see *Figure 3.1*, *Figure 3.5* and *Figure 3.16*), and the quality of the specimen used in a powder diffraction experiment is one of them. It is difficult to overemphasize the importance of proper sample preparation, especially because it is always under the complete control of the operator carrying out the experiment. Poorly prepared samples will inevitably result in unusable experimental data, which will require additional effort to repeat everything from the beginning, thus both time and resources will be wasted. On the other hand, a high quality sample for powder diffraction may take longer to prepare, but this will be time well spent!

3.5.1 Powder requirements and powder preparation

The true powder diffraction pattern can only be obtained from a specimen containing an infinite number of individual particles realizing an infinite number of orientations in the irradiated volume (e.g. see *Figure 2.31*, Chapter 2). In other words, the particles in the specimen should have a completely random distribution of crystallographic orientations of grains or crystallites with respect to one another. Clearly, this ideal situation is impossible to achieve. However, if one considers a 10 mm diameter and 0.1 mm deep cylindrical sample holder filled with 50 μm diameter spherical particles, it is easy to estimate that it will hold nearly 9×10^4 of such particles at 74.05% packing density, i.e. assuming close packing of the spheres (*Figure 3.18*). When particle size is reduced to 30 μm, the same volume will contain $\sim4\times10^5$ particles, and when the particles are 10 μm in diameter, it will take a total of $\sim1\times10^7$ different particles to fill the same volume. These are large numbers, which may be considered sufficient to approximate the infinite quantity of particles required for collecting powder diffraction data.

It is, therefore, obvious that a nearly infinite number of particles in a specimen is easily achieved by reducing average particle size. Another very effective approach to increase both the number of particles in the irradiated volume and the randomness of their orientations is to spin the specimen continuously during data collection.[1]

The majority of materials, which are routinely examined by powder diffraction, are initially in a state unsuitable for the straightforward preparation of the specimen. Unless the material is already in the form of a fine powder with the average particle size between 10 and 50 μm, its particle size should be reduced.

[1] Sample spinning is the simplest way to better randomize particle orientations. Whenever possible it should be employed during data collection.

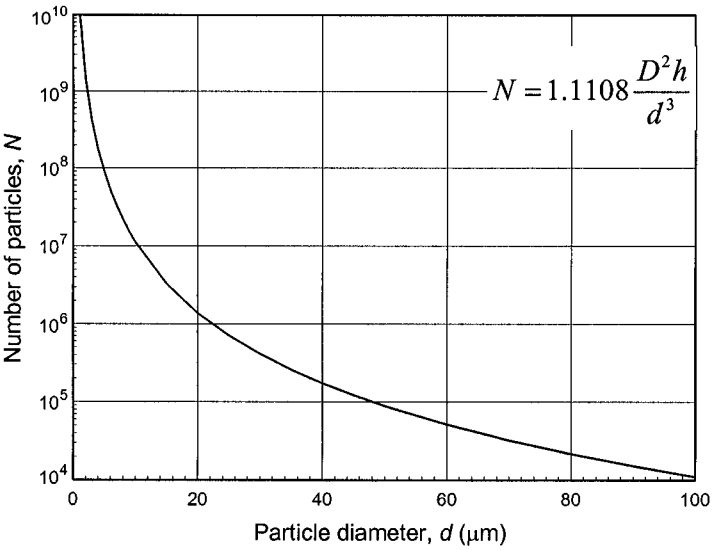


Figure 3.18. The total number of spherical particles in a cylindrical specimen 10 mm in diameter and 0.1 mm deep as a function of particle size assuming close packing of the spheres. D – specimen diameter, h – specimen depth and d – particle diameter.

The most commonly used approach to reduce particle size is to grind the substance using a mortar and pestle, but mechanical mills will also do a fine job (*Figure 3.19*). Both the former and the latter are available in a variety of sizes and materials. Mortars and pestles are usually made from agate or ceramics. Agate is typically used to grind hard materials (e.g., minerals or metallic alloys), while ceramic equipment is suitable to grind soft inorganic and molecular compounds. Mechanical mills require vials and balls, which are usually made from hardened steel, tungsten carbide, or agate.

Dependent on the nature of the material it may take from several seconds to several minutes of either manual or mechanical grinding. Prolonged grinding should not be relied upon, as it usually results in the creation of an excessive surface (its structure is different from the bulk) and in the agglomeration of small particles. When aggregation effects are severe, adding a chemically inert liquid, which does not dissolve the material under examination, may help to prevent excessive conglomeration. In some cases, prolonged mechanical grinding may cause serious degradation in the crystallinity of the material. If the crystallinity is reduced due to induced stresses and micro-deformations, it can be restored by a brief (10-30 min) heat treatment at temperatures near 1/3 of the melting temperature of the material on the absolute thermodynamic temperature scale.

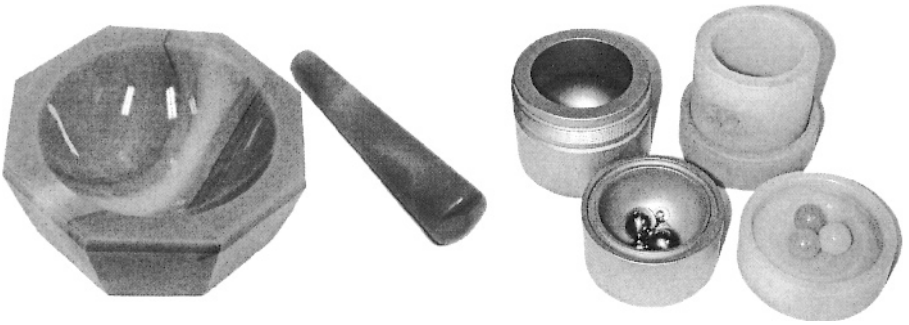


Figure 3.19. The tools most commonly used in sample preparation for powder diffraction experiments: agate mortar and pestle (left), and ball-mill vials made from hardened steel (middle) and agate (right).

A mortar and pestle are normally the only grinding option when the quantity of the material is limited, while mechanical mills usually require much larger amount of material to begin with. It is important to keep milling equipment clean to prevent cross-contamination of samples. One of the best ways to clean a mortar and pestle before grinding a new sample is to use a 50:50 (by volume) mixture of nitric acid (HNO_3) and water. When using a hardened steel or a tungsten carbide ball-mill, the vial should be cleaned using a blaster with fine (< 5μm) Al_2O_3 powder, and the previously used balls should normally be discarded. Agate vials and balls can be cleaned using a 50:50 mixture of water and nitric acid. At the very least, flashing with a low-boiling point organic solvent (e.g. acetone or alcohol), wiping and drying the grinding equipment should always be performed.

One of the biggest concerns when using mechanical grinding in a ball mill is the possibility of contamination of the sample with the vial (balls) material. This is particularly true when hard materials are subject to mechanical processing. To ensure that no contamination occurred, it is advisable to perform a chemical analysis of the material before and after ball milling. When a mortar and pestle are used to grind hard materials, excessive tapping on large pieces of a sample to break them should be avoided as much as possible since small chips of agate or ceramic may cross-contaminate the resulting powder.

Some materials, e.g. metallic alloys and polymers, may be quite ductile. Grinding them using a mortar and pestle or a ball-mill is nearly always unsuccessful, and the powders may be produced by filing. Needless to say, the file should be clean (preferably a brand new tool) to prevent cross

contamination. It is often the case that filings of ductile metallic alloys will become contaminated by small particles broken off the file. The latter can be easily removed from the produced powder by using a strong permanent magnet (e.g. $Nd_2Fe_{14}B$ or $SmCo_5$) provided the powder of interest is paramagnetic or diamagnetic at room temperature. Powders produced by filing usually must be heat treated before preparing a specimen for a powder diffraction experiment to relieve the processing-induced stresses.[1]

Regardless of the method employed to produce fine particles, the resultant powder should be screened using appropriate size sieve(s). The most commonly used sieves have openings from 25 to 75 μm. It is also important to ensure that the sieve is clean before sifting the powder under examination to eliminate cross-contamination. Sieves may be cleaned using a pressurized gas (e.g. nitrogen or helium from a high pressure cylinder), and/or they can be washed in a low boiling point solvent (e.g. acetone or alcohol) before drying by a high pressure gas. It may be problematic to sift powders of low-density materials, but every effort should be made to do so. Sifting not only eliminates large particles from the powder, but it also helps to break down agglomerates that may have formed during grinding.

3.5.2 Powder mounting

As mentioned at the beginning of this section, another important requirement imposed on a high quality powder sample is the realization of the infinite number of possible orientations of the particles with respect to one another, i.e. complete randomness in their orientations. The reduction of particle size is the necessary but not sufficient condition to achieve this. In reality, nearly ideal randomness in particle orientations is only feasible with a large number of particles, which have spherical or nearly spherical (isotropic) shapes. In many cases, grinding or milling produces particles with far from isotropic shapes and, therefore, special precautions should be taken when mounting powders on sample holders. The most severe cases of non-random particle orientation distributions are expected when platelet-like or needle-like particles are produced by grinding, see *Figure 3.20*.

When powder particles have thin platelet-like shapes, they will tend to agglomerate, aligning their flat surfaces nearly parallel to one another (*Figure 3.20*, left). As a result, the orientations of platelets are randomized *via* rotations about a common axis normal to their largest faces, and such samples are expected to have a uniaxial preferred orientation (or texture).

[1] Since 1/3 of the absolute melting temperature is usually sufficient for an effective stress-relief, some materials may self-anneal during the filing. One of the examples is lead (Pb), which is a ductile metal and has melting temperature 601 K. Lead powder self-anneals at room temperature (~298 K), thus producing sharp Bragg peaks in the as-filed state.

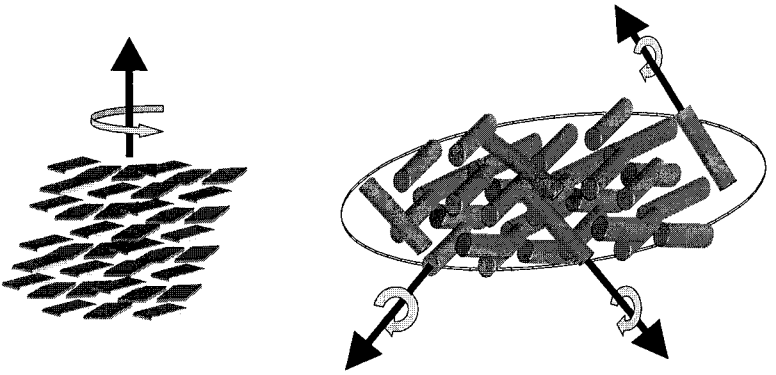


Figure 3.20. The two critical cases of non-random particle orientation distributions due to distinctly anisotropic particle shapes: platelet-like (left) and needle-like (right) particles. The arrows indicate the directions around which the particles may rotate freely.

When particles are in the form of thin needles (*Figure 3.20*, right), the orientations of the axes of the needles may be nearly random in the plane of the sample. Furthermore, each needle has an additional rotational degree of freedom, i.e. rotation about its longest axis, and such samples are expected to have an in-plane preferred orientation. Even more complex preferred orientation effects may occur when elongated particles are flat, i.e. when they are ribbon-like. Then ribbons may align in the plane of the sample, and because they are flat, their surfaces may arrange parallel to the sample surface as well. This is the case of two combined preferred orientation axes: one is along the axis of the ribbon and the second is perpendicular to the flat face.

Regardless of which type of preferred orientation is present in the sample, it will in its own and systematic way affect diffracted intensities.[1] In severe cases, nothing more than lattice parameters (if any) can be determined from highly textured powder diffraction data since it is impossible to precisely account for the changes in the diffracted intensity caused by the exceedingly non-random distribution of particle orientations.

Depending on the diffraction geometry, proper sample preparation techniques are different. We will begin with flat samples used in combination with the Bragg-Brentano focusing geometry and horizontal goniometer axis, since it is the most common geometry employed today. The two types of sample holders frequently used in the Bragg-Brentano method are shown schematically in *Figure 3.21*. They can be made of metal, plastic or glass. The difference between the two is that the holder on the left has a

[1] See Chapter 2, section 2.10.6 for a description of mathematical models, which may be used to account for the effects of preferred orientation on the scattered intensity.

shallow cylindrical or rectangular hole (usually 1/4 to 1 mm deep) to accommodate the powder. The container on the right has a rough spot on its surface. Rough surface is usually created using a sand blaster with hard particles 10 to 50 μm in diameter. When the roughness of the sample surface is of the same order as particle size, this helps to diminish the preferred orientation effects.

When a relatively large quantity of powder is available, the sample for x-ray diffraction can be prepared by filling the volume of a cavity (*Figure 3.21*, left) with the dry powder. The excess powder should be removed from the surface of the sample holder by a single sweep with a razor blade (*Figure 3.22*) or by an edge of a glass slide. Under normal circumstances, the powder should never be compacted inside the hole using a smooth flat surface, e.g. the flat side of a glass slide. If the powder is packed by pressing against a smooth flat surface, this will inevitably rearrange particle orientations in the specimen causing strong preferred orientation (see *Figure 3.20*). Compacting is only forgivable if particles in the powder are nearly spherical, which is quite rare. The powder inside the hole may be compressed, if necessary (e.g. when the material is lightweight), by gently pressing against a rough surface, which has the roughness commensurate with the average particle size.[1]

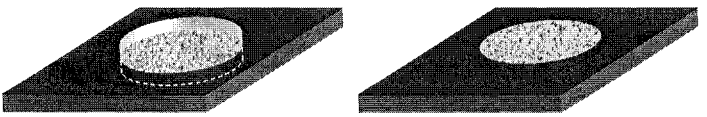


Figure 3.21. Examples of flat sample holders used in powder diffractometers with reflection geometry. The holder on the left has a cavity, which is filled with the powder. The holder on the right has a rough area, which accommodates a thin layer of the powder.

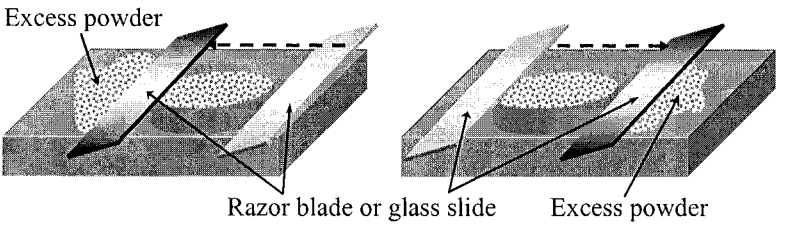


Figure 3.22. Excess powder is removed from the top of the sample holder with a single sweep by an edge of a razor blade or a glass slide. The direction of the sweep depends on the physical properties of the powder and is usually established by trial-and-error.

[1] Flat surfaces with varying roughness may be created by sandblasting a set of glass slides using particles of different diameter. A quick solution may be achieved by gluing a piece of sand paper with appropriate roughness on a glass slide.

Though filling the specimen holder with powder produces the best quality flat samples for powder diffraction experiments, the procedure requires some experience, and a uniform distribution of particle orientations may be difficult to achieve, especially when working with light, fluffy powders. It may be helpful, therefore, to prepare a viscous suspension of powder using chemically inert, low boiling temperature liquid, which does not dissolve the material and then pour the suspension into the hole. Excess mixture is then removed by a single cut with a razor blade, and the remaining solvent should be evaporated before installing the sample on a diffractometer.

Another method of reducing preferred orientation while mounting the powder into the sample holder is the so-called side or back filling. It requires a special or modified sample holder with an opening on the side or on the back. The surface of the holder is covered with a glass slide during packing and the slide surface facing the powder should have nearly the same roughness as the average particle size. Using this technique the powder can be packed better and with lower preferred orientation effects especially on the surface of the sample, which is the most critical part of the specimen in x-ray powder diffraction due to the limited penetration depth of x-rays.

An effective way of avoiding preferred orientation is spraying the fine powder suspended in a quick drying polymer solution. Small droplets spheroidise before the solution dries in-flight, and the tiny solid spheres that form usually contain only a few particles embedded in each droplet.[1] This method removes preferred orientation nearly completely because the resulting particles are spherical and thus maintain random orientations during mounting. It is, however, complex and introduces a substantial amount of a polymer, which increases background noise thus reducing the overall quality of the resultant powder diffraction pattern.

Good quality specimens with minimal preferred orientation effects can be prepared by dusting the ground powders through a sieve directly on a sample holder thus covering the rough spot. This is the only feasible option when using sample holders without the hole to accommodate the powder. It is best to cover the sample holder with a specially made mask, which is removed when the dusting is completed (*Figure 3.23*).

[1] Excellent powdered samples (see *Figure 3.32*), can be prepared by using the high-pressure gas atomization (HPGA) technique. HPGA involves melting a material of interest and then spraying the melt through a nozzle employing a high-pressure non-reactive gas (e.g. nitrogen, argon or helium). Liquid droplets (usually between ~10 and ~100 μm in diameter) spheroidise and then rapidly solidify in-flight maintaining nearly spherical form. The resulting powders may require brief homogenization and/or recrystallization heat treatment before they may be employed to collect powder diffraction data. HPGA-prepared powders are not embedded into polymer shells, however, this technique requires large amount of a starting material and is cost-ineffective in routine diffraction studies.

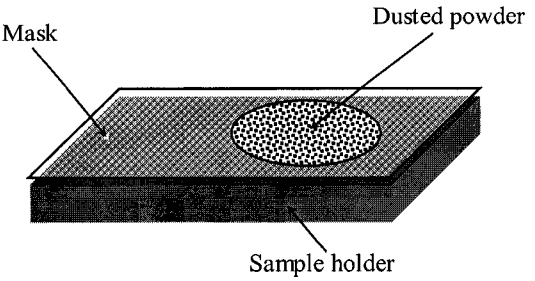


Figure 3.23. Sample for powder diffraction prepared by dusting ground powder on the sample holder through a mask.

Usually it takes several passes of dusting the powder on top of the sample holder surface to ensure complete and uniform coverage of the area, which will be irradiated during the x-ray diffraction experiment. It is also possible to apply a thin layer of oil, grease, or slow drying glue to the appropriate spot on a sample holder surface, and then dust the powder on top. When the dusting is complete, the excess powder is easily removed by flipping the sample holder and/or by gently blowing air over the sample surface. The downside of using fluid to hold the powder on the surface is that the powder will remain contaminated with the fluid after the experiment is finished. Another fact to keep in mind when preparing samples by dusting, is that it is nearly impossible to create a smooth surface of the specimen: pressing a sample holder against a flat surface is not an option as it usually induces strong preferred orientation effects.

The most common approach to prepare flat samples for transmission geometry is by dusting the powder on an x-ray transparent film covered with a thin layer of slow drying varnish or glue and letting it dry before installing the sample on the goniometer. Obviously, both the film and dry varnish/glue should not be crystalline.

Cylindrical specimens are usually prepared by sinking a thin glass capillary into a liquid binder (e.g., purified petroleum jelly or liquid varnish) and then by dipping the capillary into a loose powder. Alternatively, powder can be mixed with oil to a consistency of thick slurry and then the capillary is simply dipped into the mixture. In both cases, the capillary may need to be exposed to the powder several times to ensure complete and uniform coverage of its surface.

In some instances, especially when the studied powder is air or moisture sensitive, it can be placed inside a low absorbing glass capillary (e.g. a borosilicate glass), after which the capillary is sealed. Filling capillaries with powders is usually a tedious process and it requires larger diameter capillaries than those usually used for surface coverage. Furthermore, it may

be difficult to avoid preferred orientation in packed capillaries, even though cylindrical samples are the least susceptible to preferred orientation.

3.5.3 Sample size

Several additional items must be considered when preparing samples for x-ray powder diffraction experiment. One is the length of a flat sample, L, along the optical axis of the goniometer in the Bragg-Brentano geometry. It should be large enough so that at any Bragg angle during data collection, the projection of the x-ray beam on the sample surface does not exceed the length of the specimen. Referring to *Figure 3.24* and assuming that the angular divergence of the beam is φ, it is easy to derive the relationship for the varying irradiated length, L, as a function of φ, goniometer radius, R, and Bragg angle, θ:

$$L = l_1 + l_2 = \frac{R\sin(\frac{\varphi}{2})}{\sin(\theta+\frac{\varphi}{2})} + \frac{R\sin(\frac{\varphi}{2})}{\sin(\theta-\frac{\varphi}{2})} \cong \frac{\phi R}{\sin\theta} \tag{3.1}$$

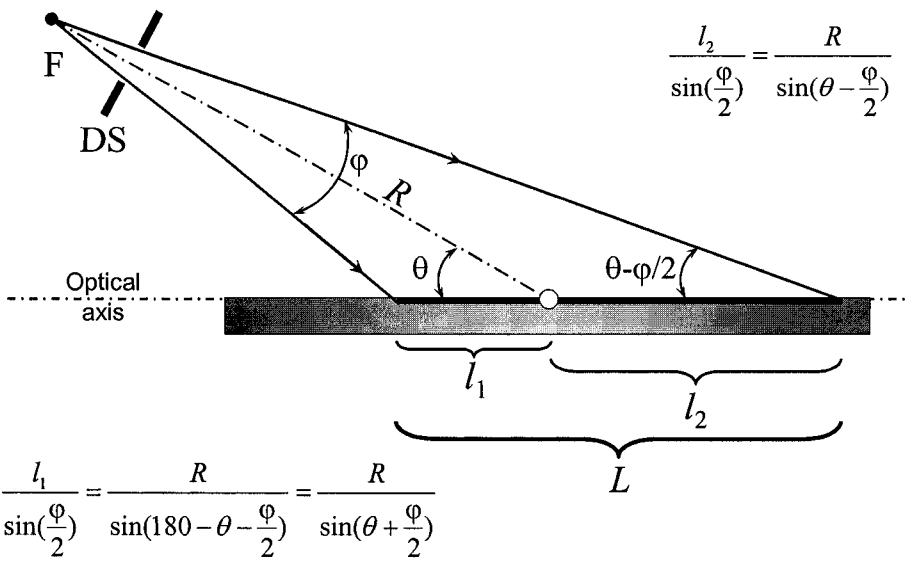


Figure 3.24. The length of the projection of the incident beam, L, on the surface of the flat sample in Bragg-Brentano geometry. F – focal point of the x-ray source, DS – divergence slit, R – goniometer radius, φ – angular divergence of the incident beam, θ – Bragg angle. The location of the goniometer axis is indicated by the open circle.

In Eq. 3.1, φ is the angular divergence of the incident beam in degrees and R is the goniometer radius in mm. When the angular divergence of the incident beam is small ($\varphi \leq \sim 1°$) and $\theta \geq \sim 5°$, the approximation, also shown in Eq. 3.1, may be used, where ϕ is the angular divergence of the incident beam in radians, and R is in mm.

Based on Eq. 3.1, the distance l_2, becomes critical at low Bragg angles, wide divergence slit apertures and large goniometer radii (Figure 3.25). Practical sample sizes in powder diffraction are usually kept below 25 mm in length, and when low Bragg angle data are desired, the appropriate aperture of the incident beam should be selected to avoid the situation when the size of the x-ray spot exceeds the size of the sample. If it does, the measured intensities will be underestimated at low Bragg angles because the sample will be illuminated by only a fraction of the incident beam when compared to that at high Bragg angles. Analytical accounting of this effect is unfeasible due to inhomogeneous distribution of intensity (photon flux) in the cross section of the incident beam.

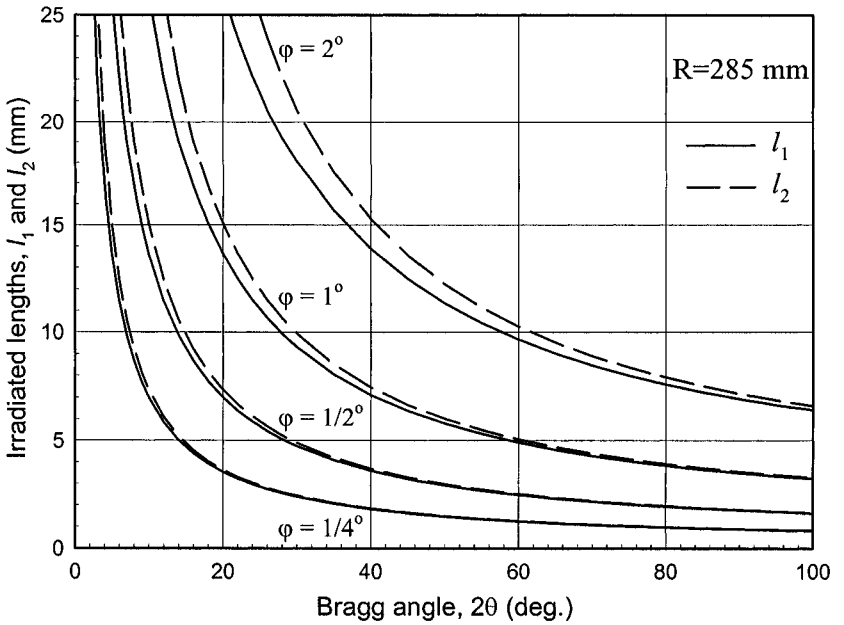


Figure 3.25. Irradiated lengths, l_1 and l_2, of the flat specimen in the Bragg-Brentano geometry as functions of Bragg angle calculated using Eq. 3.1 for different angular divergences of the incident beam assuming goniometer radius, R = 285 mm.

3.5.4 Sample thickness and uniformity

The second important factor is the absorption of x-rays by the sample. In the Bragg-Brentano geometry the sample should be completely opaque to x-rays. Assuming that the absorption of 99.9 % of the incident beam intensity represents complete opacity, then the beam intensity should be reduced by a factor of 1000 and the following equation can be written (also see Eq. 2.8 in Chapter 2):

$$\frac{I_t}{I_0} = \exp(-2\mu_{\text{eff}} l) = 10^{-3} \tag{3.2}$$

where:

- I_0 and I_t are intensities of the incident and transmitted beams, respectively,
- μ_{eff} is effective linear absorption coefficient (in mm^{-1}), which is specific for each sample and it should also account for the porosity of the powder,
- l is beam path (in mm) through the sample and it is related to the sample thickness, t, as $l = t/\sin\theta$.

After solving Eq. 3.2 with respect to t, the minimum sample thickness (in mm) can be estimated from

$$t \cong \frac{3.45}{\mu_{\text{eff}}} \sin\theta_{\max} \tag{3.3}$$

In Eq. 3.3, $\theta_{\max}$ represents the maximum Bragg angle to be measured during the experiment. Hence, it is usually easy to prepare a satisfactory Bragg-Brentano specimen from dense metallic alloys containing elements heavier than Al since they have large linear absorption coefficients, but it may be difficult to prepare a specimen of sufficient thickness from materials with low density and/or containing light atoms (C, N, O, and H), e.g. organic compounds.

Conversely, transmission geometry requires that the sample is minimally absorbing. This is usually not a problem if the studied specimen is a molecular substance. However, when the material is a dense alloy or intermetallic compound containing heavy elements, the preparation of a high quality specimen for transmission powder diffraction may be problematic. With flat transmission samples the best approach is to try to arrange no more than a single layer of particles mounted on the film. When cylindrical specimens are employed, the radius of the capillary should be reduced to a practical minimum. Unfortunately, these measures usually reduce the

number of particles in the irradiated volume and the quality of the resulting diffraction pattern deteriorates.

The third important issue, which is generic to any type of specimen for powder diffraction except cylindrical, is the uniformity of the sample. A portion of the specimen that scatters the incident beam changes as a function of Bragg angle (e.g. see *Figure 3.25* and Eq. 3.1 above, and Eq. 3.6 below). Thus, when the packing density of the powder is not uniform, this will result in random changes of the number of particles in the irradiated volume and in the measured diffracted intensity that are nearly impossible to account for. It is difficult to achieve a uniform packing density because compacting the powder to improve uniformity will generally result in increased preferred orientation with different but also deleterious effects on the resulting relative intensities. Effects of sample non-uniformity are best reduced by rapidly spinning the sample during data collection. As mentioned above, every effort should be made to collect powder diffraction data from a spinning sample since it also considerably improves both the number of particles and randomness of their orientations in the irradiated volume.

3.5.5 Positioning the sample with respect to the goniometer axis

No matter how much time has been spent on the sample preparation and how good the resulting specimen is, it always needs to be properly positioned on the goniometer. Consider, for example, *Figure 3.26*, which shows the effect of sample displacement in the Bragg-Brentano geometry.

When the sample is properly aligned (i.e. when its surface coincides with the goniometer axis as shown by the dashed image of the flat sample), the correct Bragg angle θ is measured, provided the sample is completely opaque (see Chapter 2, section 2.8.2 and Eq. 2.43). However, when the sample is displaced by the distance s from the goniometer axis, this displacement results in a different measured Bragg angle, θ_s, even though both the incident and diffracted beams form the same angle θ with the sample surface. Furthermore, if sample displacement is severe, the focusing of the diffracted beam is no longer precise and this will result in the loss of the resolution of the diffractometer. The latter issue becomes particularly important when using goniometers with small radii.

Similar errors in the measured Bragg angle may occur in the transmission geometry (see *Figure 3.27*). Moreover, when a cylindrical sample continuously deviates from the goniometer axis in a circular fashion during spinning, considerable Bragg peak broadening, $\delta\theta$, may be observed as also indicated in *Figure 3.27*.

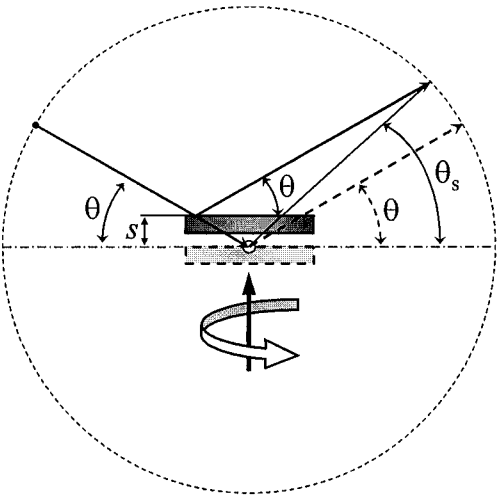


Figure 3.26. The effect of sample displacement by distance *s* from the goniometer axis on the measured Bragg angle, θ_s, in the Bragg-Brentano geometry. The goniometer axis is indicated by the small open circle in the center of the drawing. The optical axis is shown as the dash-dotted line. The ideal location of the sample is shown as the light-shaded dashed rectangle. The axis around which the sample is usually spinning during data collection is indicated by the vertical arrow.

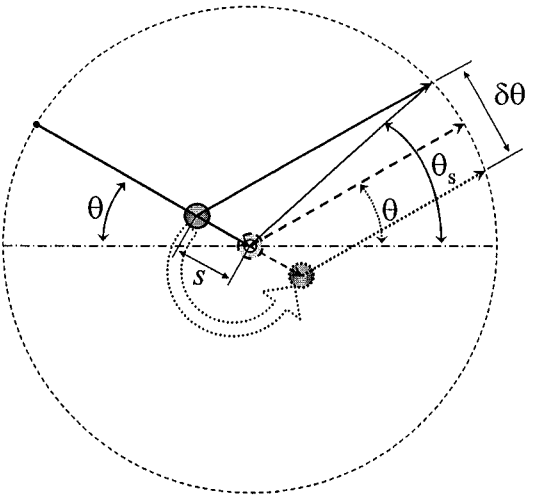


Figure 3.27. Effect of sample displacement by distance *s* from the goniometer axis on the measured Bragg angle, θ_s, in the transmission geometry. When the misaligned cylindrical sample spins around the goniometer axis as shown by a thick broken arrow, peak broadening, $\delta\theta$, results. The goniometer axis is indicated by the small open circle in the center of the drawing. The optical axis is shown as the dash-dotted line. The ideal location of the sample is indicted as the light-shaded dashed circle in the center of the drawing.

Errors in the registered Bragg angles associated with the non-ideal positioning of the sample are usually not as severe when compared to those observed in intensity measurements due to improper sample preparation. They can be nearly completely eliminated by maintaining the goniometer properly aligned. Furthermore, sample positioning errors in Bragg angles are systematic, and they can be accounted for analytically, based on the known geometry of a powder diffractometer. For example, sample displacement error in the Bragg-Brentano geometry (*Figure 3.26*) is expressed as

$$\theta_s - \theta = \frac{s\cos\theta}{R} \tag{3.4}$$

In Eq. 3.4, s is sample displacement, R is goniometer radius and the resulting difference in Bragg angles, $\theta_s - \theta$, is in radians (compare Eq. 3.4 with Eqs. 2.40 and 2.44 in Chapter 2). This error is commonly observed due to the varying sample thickness (especially when the sample was prepared by dusting) and the varying sample transparency. It is worth noting that the displacement, s, can be refined together with lattice parameters, provided low Bragg angle peaks are included in the refinement since they are the most sensitive to s, as shown in *Figure 3.28*.

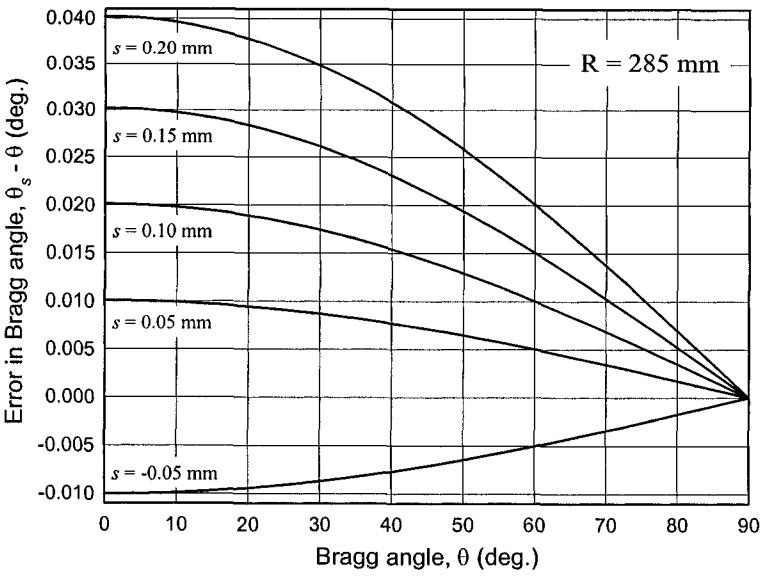


Figure 3.28. The effect of sample displacement, s, on the observed Bragg angles calculated from Eq. 3.4 assuming Bragg-Brentano geometry and goniometer radius R = 285 mm. θ_s is the observed Bragg angle, θ is the Bragg angle in the absence of sample displacement.

3.5.6 Effects of sample preparation on powder diffraction data

To summarize this section, a high quality specimen for powder diffraction may be difficult to prepare and it is not as simple as it seems. The task requires both experience and creativity. The adverse effects of an improperly prepared sample can be illustrated by the following three figures, shown in Rietveld format, where the experimental powder diffraction data were collected in the Bragg-Brentano geometry from two different specimens prepared from the same material, which was intentionally left in the form of course powder.

In the first example (*Figure 3.29*), the sample holder, which had a cylindrical hole, 25 mm in diameter and 1 mm deep to hold the powder, was filled completely with the powder using the technique shown in *Figure 3.22*. The aperture of the incident beam was selected in a way so that the length ($L = l_1 + l_2$, see *Figure 3.24* and *Figure 3.25*) of the irradiated area was ~20 mm at $2\theta = 20°$. Assuming that the calculated diffraction pattern in *Figure 3.29* represents correct distribution of relative intensities, it is easy to see that some of the observed diffraction peaks at random Bragg angles are much stronger than expected. These anomalies are associated with the non-ideal specimen, which contained course grains. As a result, the total number of particles was far from infinite, and/or their orientations were not random.

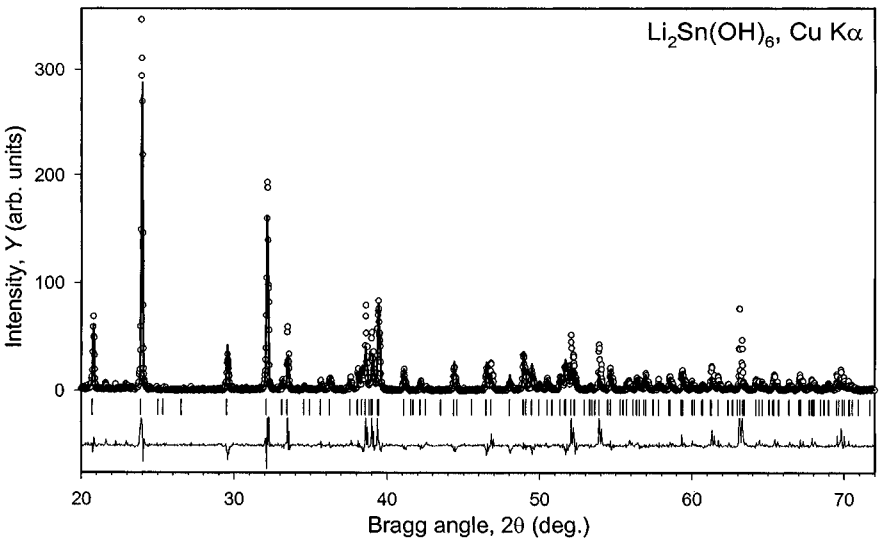


Figure 3.29. Poorly ground powder, suitable incident beam aperture. Experimental data are shown using small circles; the calculated diffraction pattern is shown using solid lines. The difference Y_{obs} - Y_{calc} is shown at the bottom of the plot and the calculated positions of Bragg peaks are marked using vertical bars. The data were collected without spinning the sample.

To illustrate the origin of these random intensity spikes it is worthwhile to recall the spottiness of the Debye rings seen in the film in *Figure 3.1* and modelled for the first four strongest peaks from this film in *Figure 3.30*. Assume that a course-grained LuAu specimen is under examination using a powder diffractometer. Contrary to the film data, a much smaller fraction of the Debye ring is registered by the detector in a conventional powder diffractometer. Two possible traces of the receiving slit traversing Debye rings during data collection are indicated by the two bars in *Figure 3.30*. The sequence of high and low intensity spots varies from one Debye ring to another along these two different directions. This will result in random, considerable and unpredictable variations in the registered intensity as established by a specific distribution of particles in the sample.

We note that the actual path of the detector slit is always the same, e.g. that shown by the solid elongated rectangle in *Figure 3.30*. When the particles in the specimen are rearranged, the distribution of spots along each Debye ring will change, thus effectively changing the path of the receiving slit of the detector, e.g. to that shown by the dashed elongated rectangle. In a conventional powder diffractometry, it is all but impossible to recognize these random and severe intensity spikes or dips from the visual analysis of the collected data, but the same can be done easily from a simple visual analysis of the film or area detector data.

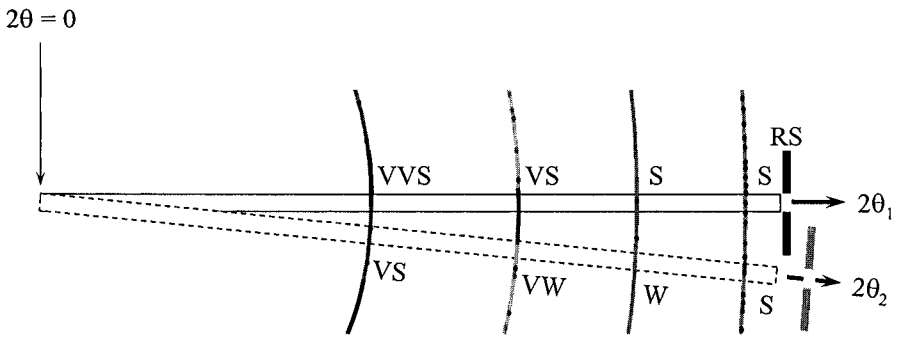


Figure 3.30. The model showing the spottiness of the first four distinct Debye rings in the x-ray film with the powder diffraction pattern of LuAu from *Figure 3.1*. The relative intensities of Bragg peaks vary considerably in the two directions shown as elongated rectangles (each direction represents the possible trace of the receiving slit traversing the Debye rings during data collection). The Debye rings on the x-ray film are elliptic because the Debye-Scherrer camera is cylindrical rather than spherical. The character notations in the figure characterize the expected measured intensity of Bragg peaks as follows: VVS – very very strong, VS – very strong, S – strong, W – weak and VW – very weak. RS is the receiving slit.

In the second example (*Figure 3.31*), the same course powder was placed in a 0.2 mm deep sample holder and the powder covered a smaller area ($10\times5mm^2$). The aperture of the diffractometer was left identical to the first experiment. After comparison of *Figure 3.31* with *Figure 3.29* it is easy to see that the relative intensities of peaks at low Bragg angles are clearly reduced. This happened because the projection of the incident x-ray beam at low Bragg angles (~20 mm) exceeded the sample length (10 mm), and since only a fraction of the incident beam energy was scattered by the sample, the diffracted intensity at low Bragg angles was correspondingly reduced. Furthermore, the reduction of the number of particles in the irradiated sample volume (smaller depth) further exaggerated intensity spikes at random Bragg angles. Clearly, the presence of fewer particles worsens the randomness in the distribution of their orientations.

On the other hand, when the specimen is nearly ideal (i.e., when the particles are small and nearly spherical) and when the aperture of the diffracted beam is compatible with the sample size, highly accurate powder diffraction data can be obtained as shown in *Figure 3.32*. Assuming that the calculated diffraction pattern here also represents the proper diffracted intensity, the difference between the observed and calculated diffracted intensity is minimal over the whole range of Bragg angles and there are no spikes or dips at random Bragg angles as was seen in both *Figure 3.29* and *Figure 3.31*.

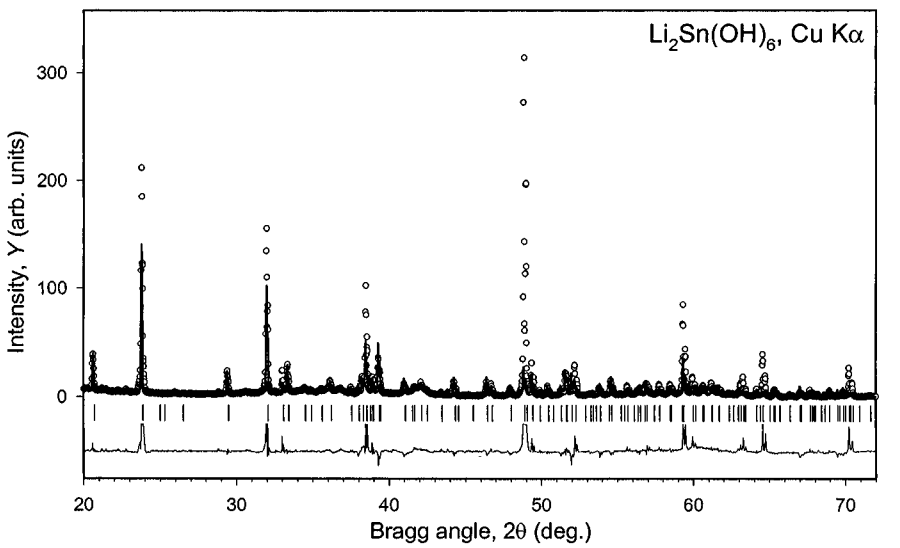


Figure 3.31. Poorly ground powder and an improper incident beam aperture. The data were collected without spinning the sample. Notations are identical to *Figure 3.29*.

The particles in the specimen that was used to collect the data illustrated in *Figure 3.32* consisted of multiple cellular grains with an average diameter of 1 μm – the result of rapid solidification. The powder was subjected to a brief homogenization heat treatment at 950°C (5 min), which was sufficient to even out the distribution of Ni and Sn in the crystal lattice of the major phase. The powder was sifted through a 10 μm sieve after the heat treatment and only particles smaller than ~10 μm in diameter were used to prepare a flat specimen for data collection employing the Bragg-Brentano focusing geometry. The data were collected using a scintillation detector with monochromatization of the diffracted beam by a curved graphite single crystal monochromator. A variable divergence slit was also employed to minimize the background. The peak-to-background ratio for the strongest Bragg reflection at $2\theta \cong 42°$ was ~180:1.

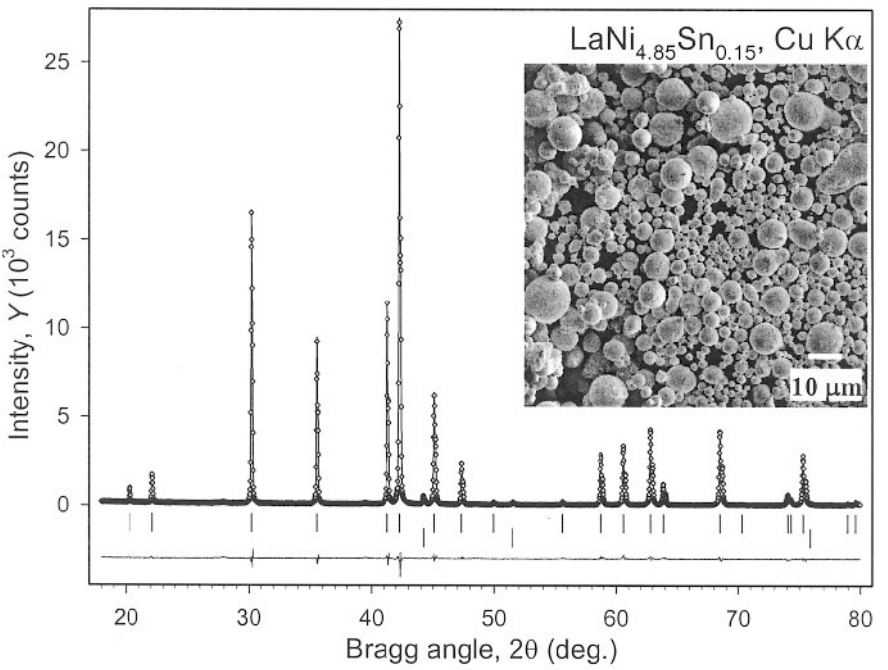


Figure 3.32. High quality, nearly spherical powder prepared by high-pressure gas atomization from the melt and proper sample length, *L*. The x-ray powder diffraction data were collected from a continuously spinning sample (20 mm diameter and 1 mm deep) prepared as shown in *Figure 3.22*. Notations are the same as in *Figure 3.29*. The powder contains a small fraction of a second phase, which is identified by the series of vertical bars shifted downwards. The inset shows the scanning electron microscopy image of the powder morphology. (Powder courtesy of Dr. I.E. Anderson.)

3.6 Data acquisition

When the sample for a powder diffraction experiment has been properly prepared, the next step, i.e. acquiring experimental diffraction data is also exceedingly important in obtaining reliable diffraction data. Needless to say, many of the data acquisition variables can be adjusted to produce a better or worse quality data set. These include instrumental parameters, i.e., the wavelength (energy) of the x-rays, their monochromatization, apertures of goniometer optics, power settings, and data collection parameters, i.e., scanning mode, scan range, step in data collection, and counting time.

3.6.1 Wavelength selection

Usually the wavelength of the x-rays can be freely selected only when using synchrotron radiation. In conventional laboratory conditions when the wavelength of the x-rays needs to be changed, this normally means that the x-ray tube has to be replaced, which should be followed by tube ageing and realignment of the goniometer. These operations should be carried out by trained personnel and they are rarely performed in practice to collect data from a single sample. Therefore, the selection of the x-ray tube (and the anode) type is usually done based on practical considerations, i.e., based on which type of materials are customarily studied, and what is the purpose of the powder diffraction examination of the majority of samples.

The most typical wavelength selection in powder diffractometry is with a copper (Cu) anode, although other anode materials may be used. These include chromium (Cr), iron (Fe), cobalt (Co) and molybdenum (Mo) anodes. The corresponding characteristic wavelengths for these anode materials are listed in *Table 2.1*, Chapter 2. Long wavelengths (Cr, Fe, Co) are preferred when the accuracy of lattice parameters is of greatest concern since it is possible to measure intensity scattered at high Bragg angles.[1] Short wavelength (Mo) can be used to examine a large volume of the reciprocal lattice. However, since powder diffraction data are one-dimensional, the resolution may be too low for complex crystal structures and/or materials with low crystallinity when excessive Bragg peak overlap makes the diffraction pattern extremely difficult to analyze and process.[2]

[1] See Chapter 5, section 5.13 for details about various factors affecting precision of the unit cell dimensions.

[2] Short wavelength radiation may adversely affect resolution of the data collected using goniometers with small radii (usually under ~200 mm). When a large radius goniometer (usually 250 mm or greater) is employed, the reduction of the wavelength from Cu- to Mo-anode has little effect on pattern resolution because the widths of Bragg peaks decrease with the decreasing wavelength. Regardless of the goniometer radius, the use of short wavelengths requires a more precise alignment when compared to long wavelengths.

Another important consideration in selecting x-ray wavelengths for a powder diffraction experiment is whether or not the studied material contains chemical elements with their K-absorption edges located just above the used characteristic wavelength. For example, the K-absorption edge of Co is ~1.61 Å. The strongest $K\alpha_1/K\alpha_2$ spectral lines of copper have wavelengths ~1.54 Å. Hence, nearly all $K\alpha_1/K\alpha_2$ characteristic Cu radiation will be absorbed by Co, and this type of x-ray tube is hardly suitable for x-ray powder diffraction analysis of Co-based materials. The same is true for Fe-based materials because the K-absorption edge of Fe is ~1.74 Å. On the other hand, Co and Fe anodes are well-suited for collecting powder diffraction data from Co- and Fe-containing substances using Co $K\alpha_1/K\alpha_2$ and Fe $K\alpha_1/K\alpha_2$ doublets.

Certain combinations of characteristic wavelengths and chemical elements may cause considerable x-ray fluorescence (e.g. see *Figure 3.16*). This phenomenon is similar to the fluorescence in the visible spectrum and it originates from the fact that electrons in an atom can be excited and removed from their ground states by energy transfer from photons of sufficient energy. Electrons from higher energy levels produce fluorescent x-rays when they lower their energy by occupying the formed vacancies. Fluorescent radiation is dissipated in all directions and it usually results in an increase of the background. Chemical elements with strong true absorption will generally produce strong x-ray fluorescent background.

3.6.2 Monochromatization

Either the diffracted or incident beam should be monochromatized during data collection. When conventional x-ray sources are employed, additional peaks due to the presence of weaker spectral lines with various energies in the characteristic spectrum will "contaminate" the diffraction picture and exaggerate peak overlap. The strongest unwanted wavelength for any anode material is $K\beta_1$ (see *Table 2.1* in Chapter 2). When a continuous (synchrotron or neutron) spectrum is available, it would be impossible to see discrete Bragg reflections as a function of Bragg angle without monochromatization, as directly follows from Bragg's equation.

The simplest monochromatization tool that can be used in powder diffractometry is a β-filter (also see Chapter 2, section 2.3.2.1). Filter materials have their K-absorption edges just above the wavelength of the strongest Kβ spectral line of the anode of the x-ray tube, and their performance is based on how completely they absorb the characteristic impurity wavelengths and how well they transmit the desired parts of the characteristic x-ray spectrum. For example, to eliminate (absorb) nearly all the β-component of a copper anode ($\lambda \cong 1.39$ Å) but to transmit most of the

α-component ($\lambda \cong 1.54$ Å) the filter should be made from Ni (the K absorption edge of Ni is ~1.49Å). This results in nearly an eight-fold difference in the linear absorption coefficients of Ni for Kβ and Kα parts of the characteristic copper spectrum.

Various β-filters are most often used to monochromatize the diffracted beam (e.g. see *Figure 3.6*, left), but sometimes they are used to eliminate Kβ radiation from the incident beam in conventional x-ray sources. The advantages of β-filters are in their simplicity and low cost. The disadvantages include: (1) incomplete monochromatization because a small fraction of Kβ spectral line intensity always remains in the x-ray beam; (2) the intensity of the Kα spectral line is reduced by a factor of two or more, and (3) the effectiveness of a β-filter is low for white x-rays above Kα and it rapidly decreases below Kβ. Therefore, β-filters are nearly helpless in eliminating the background, especially when the latter is enhanced by x-ray fluorescence (the filter itself fluoresces due to the true Kβ absorption).

The most common monochromatization option used in modern powder diffractometry is by means of crystal monochromators (see *Figure 3.6*, right and Chapter 2, section 2.3.2.2). Monochromators transmit only specific, narrowly selected wavelengths. As follows from the Bragg equation ($n\lambda = 2d_m\sin\theta_m$), for a constant interplanar distance, d_m, only one wavelength, λ, will be transmitted at a given monochromator angle, θ_m, assuming that $n = 1$. A great variety of crystal monochromators are used in practice, but the best results are usually obtained using curved crystal monochromators, as shown in *Figure 3.33* since they achieve the most precise focusing of the x-ray beam and therefore, lower the intensity losses.

A well aligned monochromator usually leaves only $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ characteristic wavelengths and considerably reduces background when it is used to monochromatize the diffracted beam. In fact, a diffracted beam monochromator is very effective in nearly complete elimination of even severe fluorescence (see *Figure 3.16*). In some instances, high quality curved monochromators can be used to eliminate the $K\alpha_2$ component in combination with the relatively large focusing distance and narrow monochromator slit. Spectral purity of x-rays is a definite advantage of this monochromatization approach. Furthermore, if necessary, the monochromator angle, θ_m, can be selected to eliminate the $K\alpha_1/\alpha_2$ doublet and to leave only the Kβ part, which is truly monochromatic in light anode materials, including the most commonly used Cu anode.

On a downside, high quality crystal monochromators are relatively expensive, and they also reduce the intensity of characteristic x-rays by a factor of two to three. It is worth noting that when the monochromator is made from a low quality single crystal or when it is improperly aligned, the resulting reduction of the transmitted intensity may be severe.

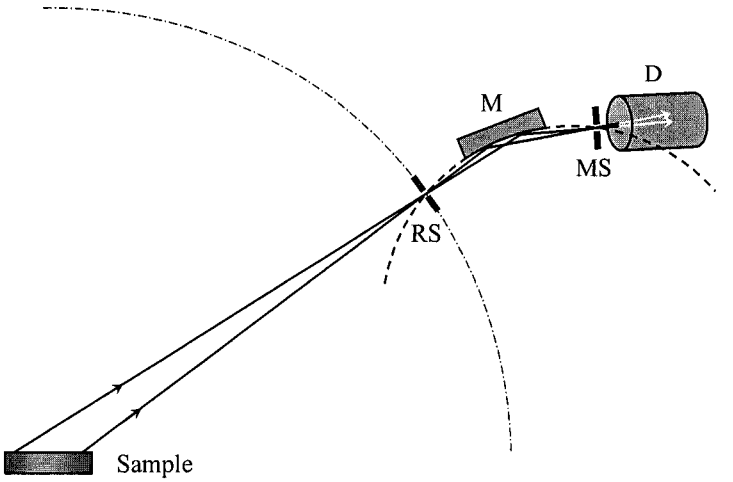


Figure 3.33. The schematic of monochromatization of the diffracted beam using a curved crystal monochromator. RS – receiving slit, M – curved monochromator, MS – monochromator scatter slit, D – detector. The dash-dotted arc represents the goniometer circle. The dashed arc shows the focusing circle of the monochromator.

A third monochromatization option, i.e. energy dispersive solid-state detectors, became available quite recently. By adjusting the energy window, it is possible to make such a detector sensitive to only the specific energy of x-ray photons, and therefore, the monochromatization is achieved electronically (see Chapter 2, sections 2.3.2.3 and 2.4.3). The most important advantage of this approach is in the virtual absence of the loss of intensity. On the downside, continuous cooling of the detector is required. Furthermore, if the powder diffractometer is used in special applications, for example to examine diffraction patterns from large single crystals, very strong diffracted intensity with different wavelengths could be accidentally registered.[1]

All monochromatization options discussed above have been used successfully in powder diffractometry. With point detectors, i.e. with those detectors, which register, diffracted intensity at a specific angle, one point at a time, either or both the incident and diffracted beam can be monochromatized. When position sensitive or image plate detectors are used, the only feasible option is to use a β-filter or a crystal monochromator to achieve monochromatization of the incident beam. As shown in *Figure 3.16*, for some materials the background becomes too high, which makes diffraction data nearly useless in the determination of the atomic parameters of the material.

[1] An example or registering Cu Kβ and W Lα wavelengths is found in *Figure 2.18* in Chapter 2.

3.6.3 Incident beam aperture

The aperture of the incident beam should be selected to match the diffraction geometry and sample size. For the commonly used Bragg-Brentano focusing geometry, the most important requirement is that at any Bragg angle the length of the projection of the incident beam does not exceed the length of the sample (see *Figure 3.24*, *Figure 3.25* and Eq. 3.1). This is achieved by a proper selection of the divergence slit (see *Figure 3.6*). When the slits are calibrated in degrees, the use of Eq. 3.1 to determine the proper size of the divergence slit is straightforward. In the majority of commercial diffractometers, however, slits are calibrated in mm and their angular divergence can be estimated (also see Eq. 2.5 in Chapter 2) using the following simple relationship, which assumes the infinitesimal size of the x-ray tube focus.[1]

$$\varphi \cong \frac{57.3\delta}{r} \tag{3.5}$$

In Eq. 3.5, φ is the angular divergence of the slit in degrees, δ is the slit opening in mm, and r is the distance from the x-ray tube focus to the divergence slit in mm. It may be useful to check that the correct aperture of the incident beam has been selected by mounting a fluorescent screen on the sample holder at the lowest Bragg angle that will be examined during the experiment. Alternatively, it is always possible to select a divergence slit narrower than the acceptable maximum to ensure that the projection of the incident beam fits within the sample length at the minimum Bragg angle. Unnecessary reduction of the aperture of the incident beam, however, results in the proportional reduction in the diffracted intensity, see *Figure 3.35*, below.

In the transmission geometry the requirements are different. When a flat transmission sample is used, the aperture of the incident beam is defined by the largest Bragg angle of interest, since at $\theta = 0$ the sample is perpendicular to the incident beam (and not parallel, as in the Bragg Brentano geometry). Equation 3.1 then becomes as follows (where the notation are the same as in Eq. 3.1)

$$L \cong \frac{\phi R}{\sin(90 - \theta)} \tag{3.6}$$

[1] As established in Chapter 2 (see *Figure 2.9*), this is a valid approximation because the typical projection of the 1 mm wide line focus of the x-ray tube, visible at a small take-off angle (usually 5 to 6°), results in the source size on the order of 0.1 mm.

The opposite constraint on the relationships between the incident beam size and sample size should be followed when a cylindrical transmission sample is under examination: the projection of the beam should be large enough to irradiate the whole sample at any position it may occupy during spinning. This includes small precession around the goniometer axis. If this requirement is not followed, the inhomogeneities in powder packing density may cause sporadic changes in diffracted intensities.[1]

The effects of the incident beam aperture on both the intensity of the diffracted beam and the resolution of the goniometer in the Bragg-Brentano focusing geometry are shown in *Figure 3.34* and *Figure 3.35*. Bragg peak intensities increase rapidly and nearly linearly as a function of the incident beam aperture as long as the opening of the divergence slit keeps the incident beam in check and the lengths of its projection (L, Eq. 3.1) remains shorter than the diameter of the specimen (20 mm), as shown in *Figure 3.36*.

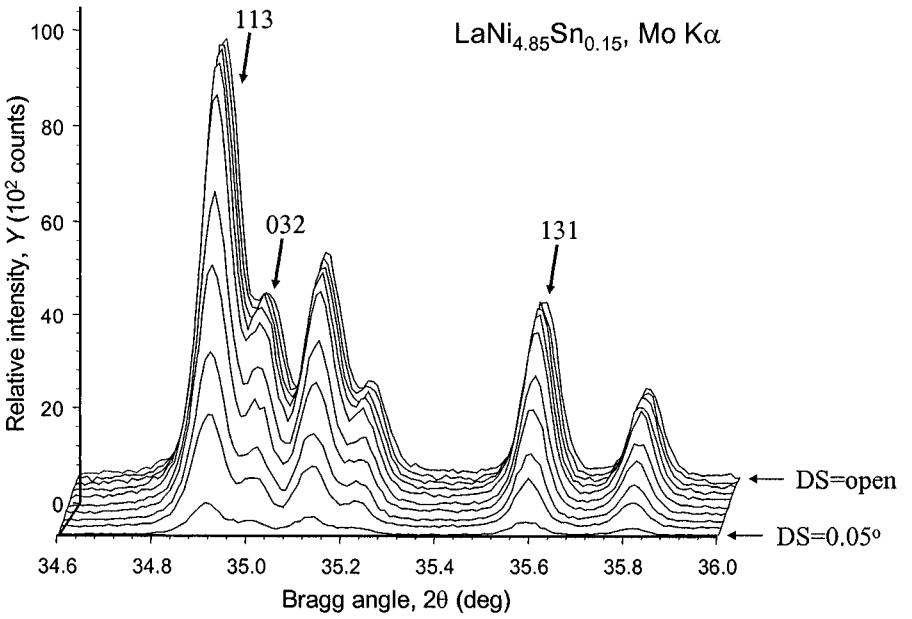


Figure 3.34. The set of x-ray powder diffraction patterns collected from the nearly spherical $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ powder (see *Figure 3.32*, inset) on a Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode powder diffractometer using Mo Kα radiation. Goniometer radius R = 285 mm; receiving slit RS = 0.03°; flat specimen diameter d = 20 mm. Incident beam apertures were 0.05, 0.17, 0.25, 0.38, 0.5, 0.75, 1, 1.5, 2° and completely opened (~5°), respectively. An automatic variable scatter slit was used to reduce the background. The data were collected with a fixed step $\Delta 2\theta = 0.01°$, and the sample was continuously spun during the data collection.

[1] The homogeneity of an incident beam may become an issue when a cylindrical specimen experiences large amplitude oscillations around the goniometer axis during spinning.

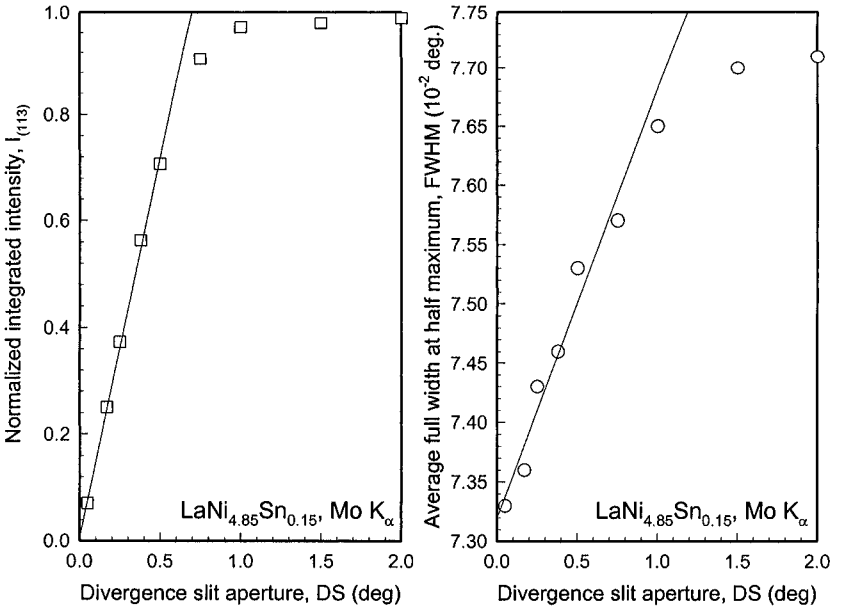


Figure 3.35. The normalized integrated intensity of the strongest peak (left) and the average full width at half maximum, FWHM, (right) of the three Bragg peaks shown in *Figure 3.34*, both as functions of the divergence slit aperture. The intensity of the strongest Bragg peak was normalized with respect to its value when the divergence slit was completely opened (DS ≅ 5°). The corresponding values at the completely opened divergence slit are not shown to clarify the behavior at low apertures.

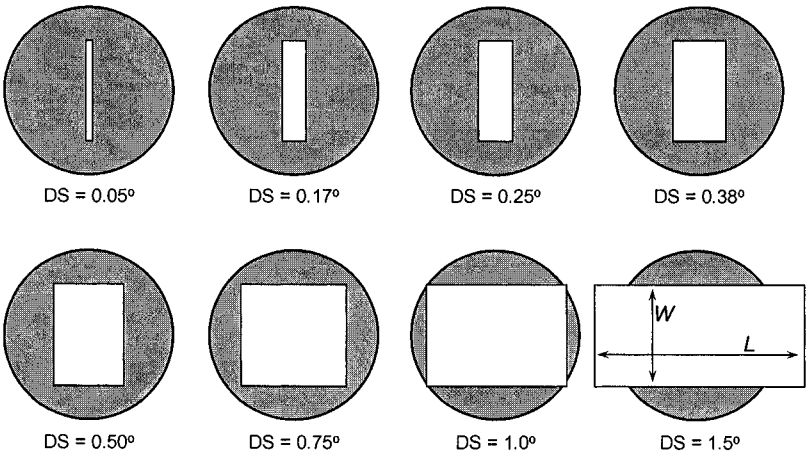


Figure 3.36. The projections of the incident beam (white rectangles) on the sample surface (filled circles) at $2\theta \cong 35°$ modeled using Eq. 3.1 (φ = DS), goniometer radius R = 285 mm, and a constant width, W = 12 mm. Specimen diameter is 20 mm.

Bragg peak intensity continues to increase so long as the aperture of the incident beam is small enough and the projection of the incident beam is fully contained within the sample boundaries. The background level approximately follows the behavior of Bragg peak intensities, which is also evident from *Figure 3.34*. When the aperture of the divergence slit reaches and exceeds 1.5°, no further increase in the intensity of the diffracted beam is observed. This is consistent with Eq. 3.1, *Figure 3.25*, and *Figure 3.36*, which indicate that for the used goniometer the projection of the incident beam exceeds the sample (20 mm diameter) at $2\theta \cong 35°$ when DS aperture (φ) is between 1.0 and 1.5°.[1] Predictably, the linear behavior of the scattered intensity when DS $\leq 0.5°$ extrapolates to $I \rightarrow 0$ with DS $\rightarrow 0$.[2]

The varying incident beam aperture has minimal effect on the resolution of the instrument due to excellent focusing. As shown in *Figure 3.35*, right, the average full width at half maximum (FWHM) increases from ~0.073 to ~0.077° (i.e. only by ~5%) when the divergence slit aperture increases from 0.05° to completely opened (i.e. by as much as ~10,000%). The dependence of the FWHM on the slit opening saturates at wide apertures, which is consistent with the full illumination of the specimen when DS exceeds 1°.

In addition to controlling the aperture of the incident beam in the plane perpendicular to the goniometer axis, its divergence in the plane parallel to the goniometer axis should be controlled by Soller slits (see *Figure 3.6*). This is done to reduce the asymmetric broadening of Bragg peaks, which may be very strong at low Bragg angles and small goniometer radii.

The effect of varying the axial divergence of the incident beam is shown in *Figure 3.37*, where one low- and one middle-Bragg angle peaks were measured with different Soller slits. Obviously, large axial divergence results in the appearance of a broad tail extending towards low Bragg angles and in somewhat reduced resolution of the instrument due to the related change in the peak shape caused by broadening of both the base and FWHM. As the Bragg angle increases, the peak asymmetry becomes less obvious but is still present.

[1] The behavior of L as a function of DS (φ) is nearly linear for a constant θ when φ is small, which is apparent from the second part of Eq. 3.1. The deviation from linearity observed in *Figure 3.35*, left, when DS is between 0.5 and 1°, i.e. when the projection of the incident beam remains within the sample boundaries as seen in *Figure 3.36*, is associated with the inhomogeneity of the incident beam. Its intensity as a function of L becomes nonlinear at large divergence slit openings with the maximum in the center of the projection, gradually and non-linearly decreasing towards its ends. The distribution of intensity in the incident beam as a function of L is source-dependent and, if necessary, it may be measured experimentally.

[2] This is expected assuming the ideal homogeneity of both the incident beam and the sample packing density. The former is true for small divergence slit openings, and the latter is true for the used sample, which was prepared from the nearly spherical particles.

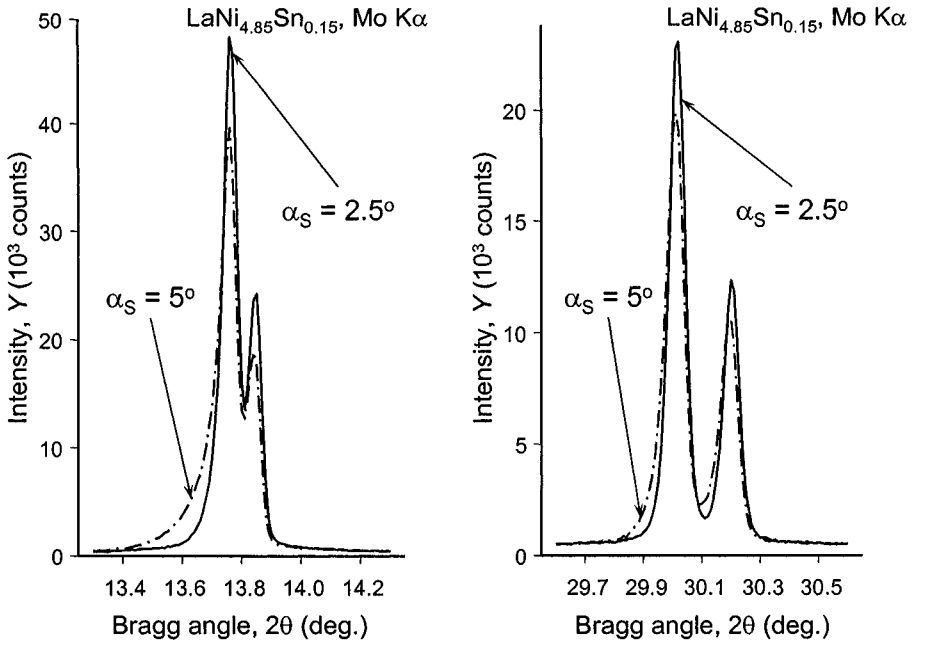


Figure 3.37. Two individual Bragg peaks observed in the diffraction pattern of the $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ powder (see *Figure 3.32*, inset). The data were collected on a Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode powder diffractometer using Mo Kα radiation and two different sets of Soller slits controlling the axial divergence of the incident beam: $\alpha_S = 2.5°$ (solid lines) and $\alpha_S = 5°$ (dash-dotted lines). The Soller slit controlling the axial divergence of the diffracted beam was constant, $\alpha_D = 2.5°$. The goniometer radius R = 285 mm; receiving slit RS = 0.03°; flat specimen diameter d = 20 mm; incident beam aperture DS = 0.17°. An automatic variable scatter slit was employed to reduce the background. The data were collected with a fixed step $\Delta 2\theta = 0.01°$, and the sample was continuously spun during the data collection.

3.6.4 Diffracted beam aperture

The aperture of the receiving slit (*Figure 3.38*) is as important as that on the incident beam side. The receiving slit should be selected as small as reasonably possible to improve the resolution of the instrument. While the size of the receiving slit does not affect the measurements at specific Bragg angles (as does an improperly selected divergence slit), inevitably any reduction in the receiving slit opening results in a proportional reduction of the intensity registered by the detector at all Bragg angles. The balance between the needed intensity and resolution may be difficult to find *ab initio*, and it is best to perform several quick scans of a narrow Bragg angle range with varying receiving slit and make a selection where both the resolution and registered intensity are satisfactory. It is advisable to perform quick scans in the range of Bragg angles that include the strongest Bragg peaks.

The influence of the diffracted beam aperture on both the diffracted intensity and the resolution of the goniometer in the Bragg-Brentano geometry are shown in *Figure 3.38* and *Figure 3.39*, respectively. Bragg peak intensities increase rapidly and nearly linearly as a function of the receiving slit opening when the receiving slit is narrow, then the increase becomes slow and non-linear with an obvious tendency to saturation. The background, however, increases steadily as a function of the receiving slit aperture.

Unlike the incident beam aperture (*Figure 3.35*), the varying receiving slit opening has strong influence on the resolution of the instrument. When the receiving slit aperture increases, the $K\alpha_1$ components of the two Bragg peaks, 113 and 032, which are relatively well resolved when RS $\leq$ 0.04°, are observed as a main peak and a shoulder when RS $\geq$ 0.07°. As shown in *Figure 3.39*, this is due to the considerable change in the FWHM, which increases from ~0.073° for RS = 0.01° to ~0.104° when the receiving slit is in a completely opened position, i.e. peak broadening exceeds 40%.

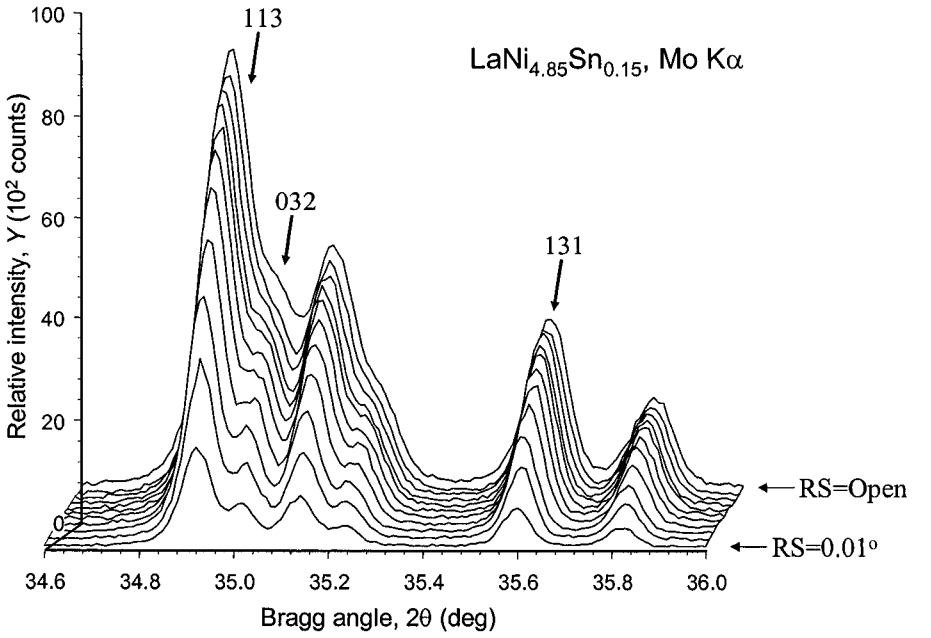


Figure 3.38. The set of x-ray powder diffraction patterns collected from the $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ powder (see the inset in *Figure 3.32*) on a Rigaku TTRAX powder diffractometer using Mo Kα radiation. Goniometer radius R = 285 mm; Divergence slit DS = 0.5°; flat specimen diameter d = 20 mm. Diffracted beam apertures were 0.01, 0.02, 0.03, 0.04, 0.05, 0.06, 0.07, 0.08, 0.1, 0.12° and completely opened (~1°), respectively. An automatic variable scatter slit was used to reduce the background. The data were collected with a fixed step $\Delta 2\theta$ = 0.01°, and the sample was continuously spun during the data collection.

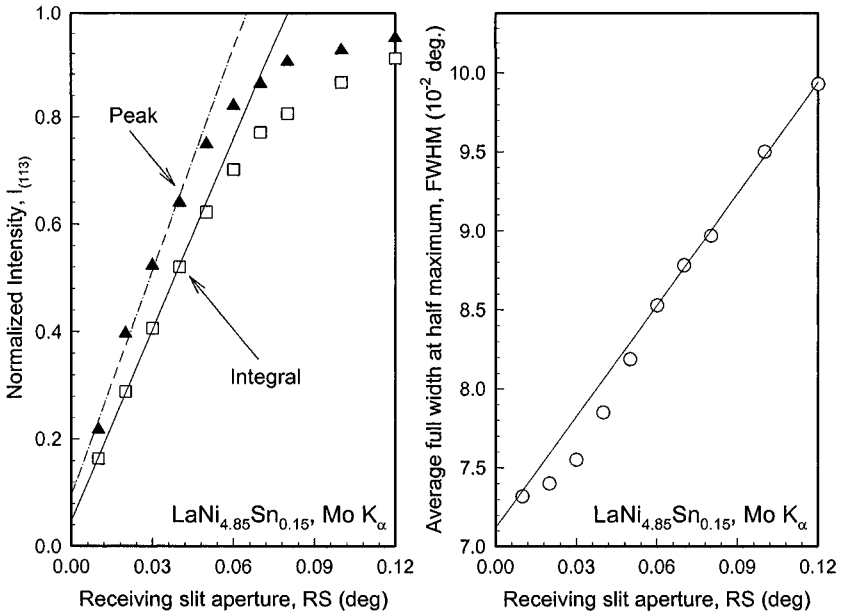


Figure 3.39. The intensity of the strongest peak (left) and the average full width at half maximum (right) of the three Bragg peaks shown in *Figure 3.38*, as functions of the receiving slit aperture. Both the integrated and peak intensities were normalized with respect to their values at the completely opened receiving slit (RS ≅ 1°). The corresponding values at the completely opened receiving slit are not shown to clarify the behavior at low apertures.

As noted above, a scatter slit can be used to reduce the background noise before it reaches the detector. The aperture of the scatter slit should be selected to enable unobstructed passage of the monochromatic diffracted beam at any Bragg angle, see *Figure 3.40*. In this example, the scatter slit ScS is wide enough to transmit the beam without affecting its intensity. On the contrary, the scatter slit ScS' is too narrow, and only a fraction of the diffracted intensity will reach the detector.

The best practical way to select the aperture of the scatter slit manually is to find a well-resolved and strong Bragg peak at low angles, and after setting the detector at the peak maximum find the minimum opening of the scatter slit that does not reduce the intensity of the peak without moving the detector arm. Some goniometer designs enable continuous variation of the scatter slit aperture, and if this is the case, it is advisable to expand the scatter slit gap by a few percent after finding the minimum non-interfering opening. Another option is to move (if possible) the slit by a few mm towards the receiving slit. It is worth noting that it is always better to have a slightly wider scatter slit aperture than a slightly narrower, because an improperly selected scatter slit may result in the reduction of the measured intensity.

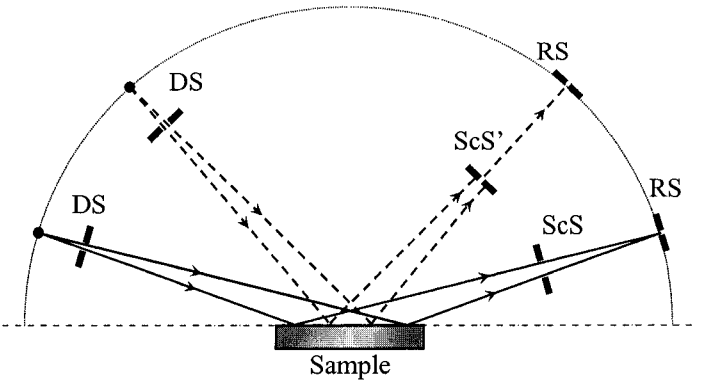


Figure 3.40. Examples of proper (ScS) and improper (ScS') selection of scatter slit aperture. DS – divergence slits, RS – receiving slits.

3.6.5 Variable aperture

Some of the modern powder diffractometers may be equipped with the variable divergence, scatter and receiving slits (e.g., see *Figure 3.13*). This enables slit selection at the software level for any aperture, and in addition, it is possible to vary the aperture of the incident beam continuously during data collection. Thus, the variable slit option facilitates experiments where the length of the irradiated area of the flat sample can be kept constant as shown in *Figure 3.41*. This may be particularly useful when it is impossible to spin the sample during data collection (e.g., when using high or low temperature, or high pressure attachments) to improve particle orientations averaging.

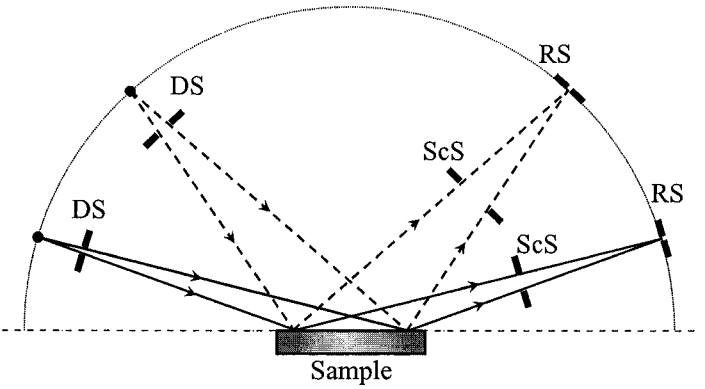


Figure 3.41. The schematic of goniometer optics during data collection employing variable divergence and scatter slits apertures, which enables one to maintain the irradiated area of the sample constant at any Bragg angle. DS – divergence slit, ScS – scatter slit, RS – receiving slit.

The resultant diffraction pattern is then numerically processed to convert the measured profile intensities to a constant incident beam divergence, which is a standard in the majority of crystallographic software. An added benefit when using variable slits is the availability of the software control over the aperture of the scatter slit. Its opening may be varied automatically and continuously thus providing the most effective background reduction at all Bragg angles.

It is worth noting, however, that correcting the measured intensity for the variable aperture of the incident beam introduces additional errors into the experimental data, and if precise intensities are of greatest concern, using the variable divergence slit option should be avoided. The errors associated with the variable divergence slit may become especially severe if the diffractometer is misaligned or when the incident beam is inhomogeneous. On the other hand, maintaining a constant irradiated area eliminates errors due to the inhomogeneity of sample packing, e.g. when there is a difference in packing density in the middle and on the sides of the flat specimen.

An alternative to the continuously variable aperture methods is measuring low and high Bragg angle regions separately with different but fixed divergence slits. Thus, the low Bragg angle region is measured using narrow, and the high Bragg angle region is measured using wide divergence slits, respectively, to improve the intensity at high angles. This makes it difficult to treat the whole powder diffraction pattern simultaneously in many common applications, such as peak search and phase identification. However, the majority of software programs designed for crystal structure refinement enable processing of multiple diffraction patterns and the multiple divergence slits approach is acceptable.[1]

3.6.6 Power settings

Before making the selection of power settings, it is important to know the power ratings of both the high voltage generator and x-ray tube. The two adjustable instrumental parameters are accelerating voltage and tube current. Their product (accelerating voltage in kV and tube current in mA) establishes the output power of the generator and the input power of the x-

[1] When relative diffracted intensities are of greatest concern, the multiple divergence slits technique is preferred over the continuously varying divergence slit method. The two largest contributions to intensity correction errors when slit opening varies arise from both the imprecise mechanical control of the slit opening and from the inhomogeneity of the incident beam. The latter becomes especially severe at large apertures (see *Figure 3.34* to *Figure 3.36* and relevant text). Neither of the errors can be easily accounted for. In the former (multiple divergence slits) these issues become irrelevant because multiple diffraction patterns are employed in calculations with their own scale factors (see Chapter 7, Eq. 7.10 and section 7.3.8).

ray source in Watts. It is usually the case that the maximum power is limited by the x-ray tube power rating.

The accelerating voltage should normally be selected at or slightly above the threshold of the most efficient generation of the characteristic emission spectrum of the anode material. For example, the optimal voltage for the excitation of characteristic radiation is ~45 kV for a Cu anode and ~80 kV for a Mo anode. However, most commercial high-voltage generators do not operate above 60 kV, and the distribution of intensities between white and characteristic radiation for a Mo anode is not at its optimum.

The second parameter, i.e. the tube current, should be selected as high as possible without exceeding the allowable power rating of either the tube or generator, since the intensity of the characteristic radiation in the incident beam is proportional to the tube current. Finally, the standard lifetime of most x-ray tubes (several thousand hours) can be extended considerably if the tube is operated at 75% or less of its rated power.[1]

3.6.7 Classification of powder diffraction experiments

Provided all instrumental parameters discussed above have been properly selected, the next step in the acquisition of high quality experimental data is to select the scanning mode, scan range, step of data collection, and counting time. The scanning mode is applicable to both point detectors and short linear or curved position sensitive detectors. When using long curved position sensitive detectors and/or image plates, the scanning mode generally loses its meaning, since there is no need to move the detector and the entire diffraction pattern is recorded at once, similar to using x-ray film for recording the powder diffraction data. Most settings in data acquisition are dependent on both the type of the powder diffraction experiment, and what information is to be gathered from the acquired data. Based on the counting time, powder diffraction experiments using point detectors can be broadly classified as fast, overnight, and weekend experiments.

Fast experiments are usually conducted in the time frame from several minutes to several hours depending on the brightness of the incident beam (i.e. whether the x-ray source is a rotating anode or a sealed x-ray tube) and the crystallinity of the material. Fast powder diffraction experiments give the experimentalist a general idea about the complexity of a diffraction pattern and data collected in a fast experiment are hardly ever useful beyond the verification of the selected instrumental parameters for longer experiment(s) and/or for simple phase identification purposes. However, an hour-long experiment collected from a nearly perfect sample may be suitable for indexing and accurate refinement of the unit cell parameters.

[1] For a properly aged x-ray tube; ageing procedure is described by the manufacturer.

Overnight experiments normally take from several hours to a whole day or night. It makes sense to run these experiments overnight, since modern powder diffractometers are completely automated. Overnight powder diffraction experiments usually provide good quality diffraction patterns, which are satisfactory for further numerical processing that requires precise peak positions and their intensities.

Weekend experiments normally take more than a day. They are conducted when precise peak shapes are desired, for example, when microstructural properties are analyzed based on the anomalies of Bragg peak shapes, or when the crystal structure of the material is determined and refined by using the Rietveld method (see Chapter 7).

3.6.8 Step scan

The scanning mode defines how the detector and the x-ray source, or the detector and the sample arms move during data collection (this depends on the goniometer design, see *Figure 3.13* and *Figure 3.12*, respectively): are they in an intermittent (stepping) or in a continuous motion. When the goniometer arms are in an intermittent motion, the diffracted intensity is measured when both the x-ray source (sample) and the detector are at rest,[1] and this is usually referred as the step scan mode.

A generic algorithm of data collection in the step scanning mode is shown in the form of a flowchart in *Figure 3.42*. It includes the following sequence of events:

1. Movable goniometer arms advance to their initial (or next) positions.
2. Diffracted intensity is measured for a certain time (counting time) in this configuration.
3. Current Bragg angle and intensity count are saved when counting time expires.
4. Computer analyzes whether the last Bragg angle value has been reached:

– if the answer is no, the loop is repeated by advancing goniometer arms to the next position, which is calculated by adding a fixed step to the current value of 2θ;
– if the answer is yes, the data collection is finished.

The resulting powder diffraction pattern usually consists of intensity data as a numerical function of Bragg angle, as shown in *Figure 3.43*.

[1] In this context, "sample at rest" means that the angle between the sample surface and the incident beam is constant. The specimen, however, normally continues to spin about an axis, which is normal to its surface for better particle averaging and minimization of other errors associated with preferred orientation and sample inhomogeneity.

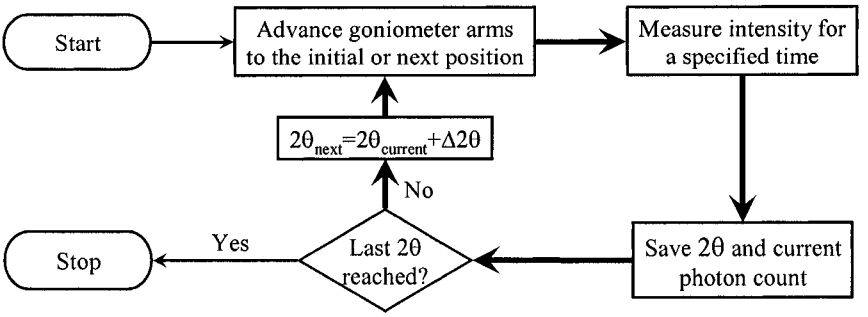


Figure 3.42. The flow chart visualizing a generic step scan data acquisition algorithm. The main loop is highlighted by using thick arrows.

The two most important parameters of the step scan experiment, defined by the user, are the size of the step in terms of Bragg angle, $\Delta 2\theta$, and counting time, t. The step size is constant throughout the entire experiment, and it is usually selected between 0.01 and 0.05° of 2θ. Using Cu Kα radiation, the value $\Delta 2\theta = 0.02°$ is quite standard. When using Mo Kα radiation, step size should be generally reduced to $\Delta 2\theta = 0.01°$. High energy synchrotron radiation may require steps as low as 0.001°. Neutron powder diffraction data are usually collected with 0.05 to 0.1° 2θ steps.

When Bragg peaks are extremely broad, and when conducting fast experiments, larger step sizes for analytical x-ray diffractometers are acceptable. On the contrary, when the crystallinity of the examined material is high and Bragg peaks are narrow, lower step sizes should be employed. A rule of thumb for the selection of the step size is that at least 8 to 12 data points should be measured for well-resolved peaks within one full width at half maximum. Even lower $\Delta 2\theta$ values are used when precise Bragg peak shape data are needed for structure refinement and microstructure determination. When selecting $\Delta 2\theta$ it is important to remember that small step sizes improve resolution, which obviously cannot exceed the limits imposed by the goniometer optics, while large step sizes reduce the duration of the experiment.

```
Instrument specific header
Bragg angle 1, Number of accumulated counts 1[, Error 1]
Bragg angle 2, Number of accumulated counts 2[, Error 2]
Bragg angle 3, Number of accumulated counts 3[, Error 3]
..., ...[, ...]
Bragg angle N, Number of accumulated counts N[, Error N]
```

Figure 3.43. Example of powder diffraction data file format. Optional experimental errors in the measured intensity are shown in square brackets.

The effect of the varying step size on the resulting powder diffraction data is shown in *Figure 3.44*. The resolution of the two closely located Bragg peaks, 113 and 032, is nearly completely lost when $\Delta 2\theta$ was 0.04 and 0.05°. The loss of the resolution in this case is not associated with the intrinsic changes of the peak shape nor with the increase of the full width at half maximum, as is the case when the aperture of the receiving slit varies (see *Figure 3.38* and *Figure 3.39*). It is simply the result of missing the details of the distribution of the diffracted intensity as a function of Bragg angle because the size of the step exceeded the opening of the receiving slit.

Counting time establishes the length of time goniometer arms are held in fixed positions during which the diffracted intensity is measured. Unlike step size, which is constant in the overwhelming majority of powder diffraction experiments, counting time may be a constant or variable for each collected data point. The constant counting time is selected in most experiments as it provides correct relative intensity measurements without additional data processing. Variable counting time can be employed when especially precise information about weak diffraction peaks is required.

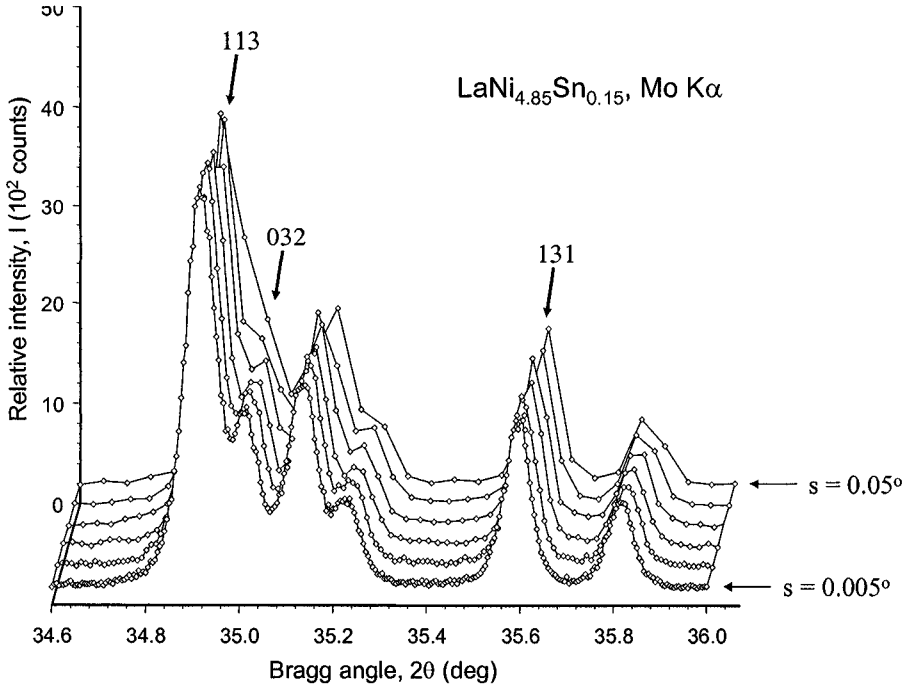


Figure 3.44. A set of x-ray powder diffraction patterns collected from the $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ powder (see the inset in *Figure 3.32*) on a Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode powder using Mo Kα radiation. Goniometer radius R = 285 mm; Divergence slit DS = 0.5°; Receiving slit RS = 0.03°; flat specimen diameter d = 20 mm. Step scan mode with steps 0.005, 0.01, 0.02, 0.03, 0.04 and 0.05°. An automatic variable scatter slit was used to reduce the background.

A typical way of selecting the variable counting time is to specify the number of photon counts to be accumulated at every goniometer arm position. Correct relative intensities are then obtained by scaling each intensity data point to a fixed counting time, e.g. 1 second. The variable counting time approach is rarely used in practical powder diffractometry because data collection process takes an exceedingly long time when the background is low.

3.6.9 Continuous scan

The continuous scanning mode involves uninterrupted movement of the goniometer arms at a constant speed with intensity readings periodically saved at specific intervals ($\Delta 2\theta$) of Bragg angle. According to a generic algorithm of this scanning mode (*Figure 3.45*), the detector begins to register photons as soon as the goniometer arms are set in motion at a constant angular velocity (scan rate) beginning from selected initial positions. Accumulation of counts continues until the predetermined sampling interval, $\Delta 2\theta$, has been scanned. As soon as this condition is detected, the accumulated intensity count is saved together with the median angle of the scanned range. The photon count is then reset to zero and the new cycle of counts accumulation begins. The process is repeated until the last $\Delta 2\theta$ interval has been scanned.

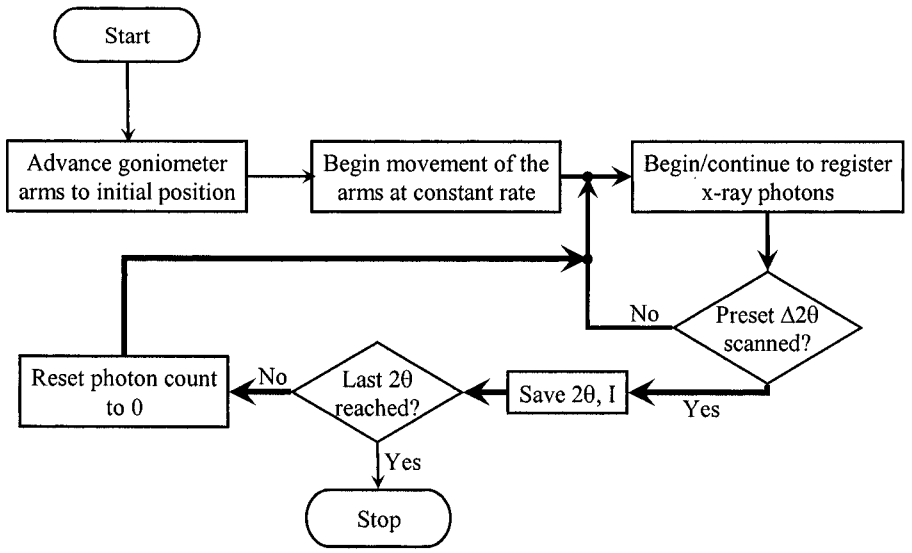


Figure 3.45. The flow chart visualizing a generic algorithm of continuous scan data acquisition. Main loops are highlighted by using thick arrows.

Hence, a continuous scan produces data nearly identical to those collected by means of a step scan, i.e. powder diffraction data are saved in the format shown in *Figure 3.43*. The only difference is that the intensity is not given for a fixed detector position, but for a median Bragg angle in the scanned interval. To minimize the introduction of a small, but systematic error, an intensity measurement during continuous scanning always begins from $2\theta = 2\theta_{median} - \Delta 2\theta/2$, where $2\theta_{median}$ is the median Bragg angle saved in the data file. For example, the diffracted intensity at the Bragg angle $2\theta = 10°$ with a sampling interval $\Delta 2\theta = 0.02°$ is the result of accumulating an x-ray photon count during continuous scanning from 9.99 to 10.01° of 2θ.

The two most important parameters in a continuous scan, which are defined by the user, are the sampling interval (step), s, and the angular velocity (scan rate), r. The sampling step is equivalent to the step size in the step scan mode. Everything said about the size of the step in the previous section, therefore, applies to the sampling step during the continuous scan. The two parameters, i.e. counting time, t, in the step scan and the scan rate, r, in the continuous scan are related to one another as follows

$$t = \frac{60s}{r} \tag{3.7}$$

In Eq. 3.7, t is in seconds, s is in degrees, and r is in degrees/min. Thus, a continuous scan with the rate $r = 0.1$ deg/min and with the sampling step $s = 0.02°$ is equivalent to a step scan with the same step and counting time 12 s/step. When the sampling step is reduced at a constant scan rate, this is equivalent to the proportional reduction of counting time and *vice versa*.

In modern diffractometers both scanning modes result in nearly identical quality of experimental data. A step scan is usually considered as the one with less significant positioning errors, which could be important in experiments where the maximum lattice parameter precision is essential. Continuous scans are used most often for fast experiments, whereas step scans are usually employed in overnight or weekend experiments.

Predictably, when counting times are short ($t << 1$ s) step scans take longer to complete (the required time may be easily doubled when compared with the identical quality continuous scans). This occurs because no intensity is measured when the goniometer arms move to the next position (compare the flow chart from *Figure 3.42* with that from *Figure 3.45*). The difference in the time of the experiment becomes negligible during overnight or weekend experiments.

Many commercial powder diffractometers have physical limits on the lowest scan rate. For example in the Scintag XDS2000 system, the scan rate cannot be lowered below 0.1 deg/min. This scan rate is equivalent to the

counting time of 6 s per step using a sampling interval $\Delta 2\theta = 0.01°$. Hence, longer counting times can be achieved only in the step scan mode.

3.6.10 Scan range

Regardless of the selection of the scanning mode and all other conditions of the experiment, the range of Bragg angles within which the diffracted intensity will be measured is also essential. The range of Bragg angles is usually specified by the user as the start and end Bragg angles, $2\theta_s$ and $2\theta_e$, respectively. The start angle should be a few degrees before the first observable Bragg peak to ensure the measurement of a sufficient number of background data points. If an unknown powder is examined, the beginning of the scan range should be selected at the lowest possible Bragg angle, which is allowed by the geometry of a sample holder, because some sample holders shield all or a fraction of the incident beam when $0 \leq 2\theta \leq \sim 2$ to 5°. It is important to keep in mind that at very low Bragg angles the background caused by a fraction of the divergent incident beam reaching the detector may be very high but most powder diffractometers will provide reliable data at Bragg angles as low as 2 to 4° 2θ. Even lower Bragg angles may be examined provided both the divergence and receiving slits are extremely narrow to eliminate strong contribution from the incident beam.

No powder diffraction experiment should be started at $2\theta_s = 0°$, since the extremely high intensity of the incident beam at full tube power may damage the detector even when the narrowest slits have been used. The most dependable way to determine $2\theta_s$ for an overnight or a weekend experiment is to perform a quick scan at 5 to 10 deg/min beginning at the minimum allowable Bragg angle and ending at $2\theta_e \cong 30$ to 40°. Based on this result, the correct $2\theta_s$ may be properly selected.[1]

The selection of the end angle is usually based on the following factors. First, each goniometer has certain physical limits on the maximum allowed Bragg angle, which are dependent on hardware design. These are established by the manufacturer to ensure that the detector arm does not collide with the x-ray tube housing during data collection. The majority of modern powder diffractometers operating in $\theta - 2\theta$ (or $\theta - \theta$) modes can reach $2\theta_e$ as high as 130 to 150°.

Other considerations are: what is the purpose of powder diffraction data, which wavelength is used and what is the nature of the examined material? Thus, when employing Cu Kα radiation:

[1] Reminder: once the $2\theta_s$ has been found, the divergence slit for the complete experiment should be selected based on the actual size of the prepared specimen as was discussed in sections 3.5.3 and 3.6.4.

- The end Bragg angle of 50 to 70° is usually sufficient for evaluation of crystallinity or for phase identification purposes.
- The end angle should be selected as high as possible when experimental data will be used for precise unit cell or crystal structure refinement. This usually can be established by a quick scan (5 to 10 deg/min) with $2\theta_s \cong$ 50 to 80° and $2\theta_e$ near the physical limit of the goniometer, and the proper $2\theta_e$ is selected a few degrees higher than the last distinguishable Bragg peak.
- Materials containing only light elements (e.g. organic compounds) scatter x-rays well at room temperature only at low Bragg angles (usually less than 50 to 90° 2θ when Cu Kα radiation is employed) and, therefore, it makes no sense to measure diffraction data at higher Bragg angles.

When using short wavelengths, the diffraction pattern is compressed to lower Bragg angles when compared to that collected using long wavelengths, which directly follows from the Braggs' law. For example, when x-ray diffraction data were obtained using Cu Kα radiation at $2\theta_e \cong$ 120°, this is identical to $2\theta_e \cong 47°$ when using Mo Kα radiation. An example of two equivalent sets of diffraction data collected from the same powdered specimen using Cu Kα and Mo Kα radiation is shown in *Figure 3.46*.

It may appear that when short wavelengths are used to collect powder diffraction data, this should result in the reduced resolution thus creating potential problems during data processing. As shown in the inset of *Figure 3.46*, this is not the case because the Bragg peaks observed using shorter wavelength radiation are sharper than those observed using longer wavelengths, provided the instrumental resolution remains constant and that the data collection step size has been appropriately reduced. For example, the full widths at half maximum of the three Bragg peaks shown in the inset in *Figure 3.46* decreases from ~0.172 to ~0.075° 2θ for Cu and Mo Kα radiations, respectively. Furthermore, the resolution of $K\alpha_1/K\alpha_2$ doublet is considerably improved for Mo $K\alpha_{1,2}$ radiation because the separation of the doublet here is nearly 3×FWHM, and it is only ~1.6×FWHM for Cu $K\alpha_{1,2}$ radiation.

The use of short wavelengths somewhat improves the scattered intensity because reflections shift to low Bragg angles where the Lorentz-polarization factor is high.[1] Another advantage of using high energy x-rays is because peak broadening at low angles is less susceptible to a variety of factors, such as crystallite size, strain and some instrumental influences. The largest drawback is the inevitable increase in peak asymmetry and associated loss of resolution.

[1] Intensity gain due to Lorentz-polarization factor (see Chapter 2, section 2.10.4) is partially offset by the requirement of reduced divergence slit opening (see sections 3.5.3 and 3.6.3), provided all other things remain constant, including the brightness of the incident beam.

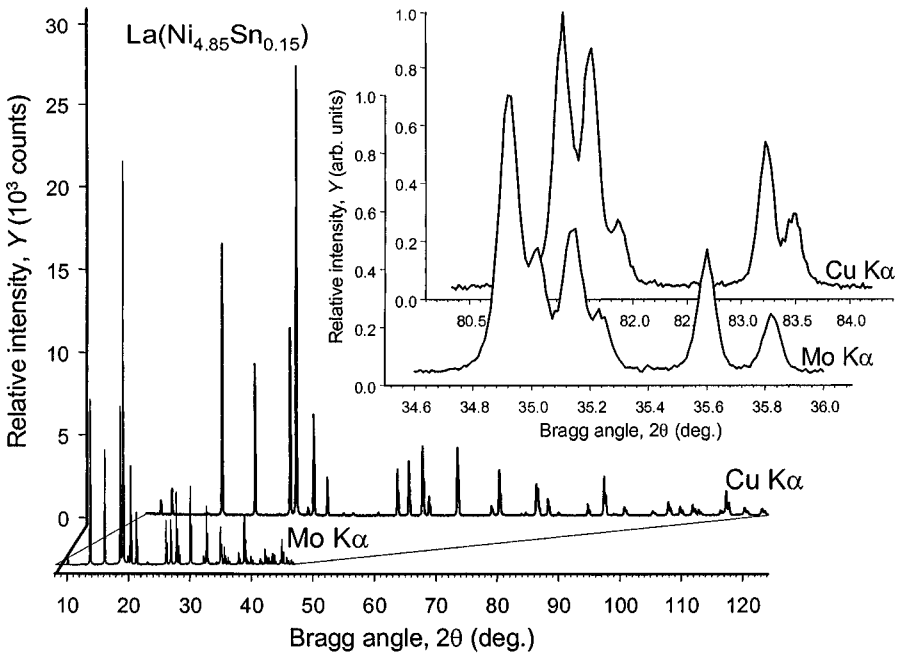


Figure 3.46. Two x-ray powder diffraction patterns collected from the same flat specimen, 20 mm in diameter and 1 mm deep cavity, filled with nearly spherical $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ powder (see the inset in *Figure 3.32*) on a Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode powder diffractometer using Mo Kα and Cu Kα radiations. Goniometer radius R = 285 mm. For the experiment using Mo Kα radiation: divergence slit DS = 0.5°; receiving slit RS = 0.03°; step scan mode, $\Delta 2\theta = 0.01°$. For the experiment using Cu Kα radiation: divergence slit DS = 0.875°; receiving slit RS = 0.03°; step scan mode, $\Delta 2\theta = 0.02°$. An automatic variable scatter slit was used to reduce the background in both experiments. The inset shows the expanded view of the three Bragg peaks observed between ~34.6 and 36.0° 2θ using Mo Kα radiation and the same peaks observed between ~80.3 and 84.2° 2θ using Cu Kα radiation. The resolution is preserved because the corresponding FWHM's are ~0.075 and 0.172° for Mo and Cu Kα radiations, respectively.

3.7 Quality of experimental data

The quality of powder diffraction data may be easily recognized visually from a plot of diffracted intensity as a function of Bragg angle, as depicted in *Figure 3.47*. The two sets of data, shown in this figure, were collected from the same specimen prepared from the nearly ideal $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ powder (see the electron micrograph in the inset of *Figure 3.32*) using the same diffractometer in a continuous scan mode with sampling interval $s = 0.01°$ employing Mo Kα radiation. One of the data sets, which is smooth and appears to be of high quality, was collected with a scan rate $r = 0.15$

deg/min. This scan rate is equivalent to a counting time $s = 4$ seconds in each point (see Eq. 3.7). The second, noisy, powder diffraction pattern was collected with a scan rate $r = 12$ deg/min, which is equivalent to a counting time $s = 0.05$ seconds per point, and it gives the impression of lower quality data. In *Figure 3.47*, it is easily noticeable that strong noise makes the existing weak Bragg peaks nearly unrecognizable (e.g. compare the range of Bragg angles between 33 and 35° 2θ). In addition, it gives rise to false anomalies, which look similar to non-existing weak Bragg peaks (e.g. see the range between 36.6 and 37° 2θ).

Strict numerical characterization of the quality of powder diffraction data is possible in addition to visual analysis. It will be briefly considered in this section along with the several most important issues associated with the proper selection of data acquisition parameters to ensure consistent reliability of the powder diffraction experiment, e.g. similar to that shown in *Figure 3.32*. In our consideration we will implicitly assume that the errors associated with positioning of the goniometer arms are negligible, i.e. that the measured Bragg angles are precise. This is usually true for new goniometers, but may not be the case for goniostats that have been in service for many years (20+ years) and in which the gear mechanism has been worn out.

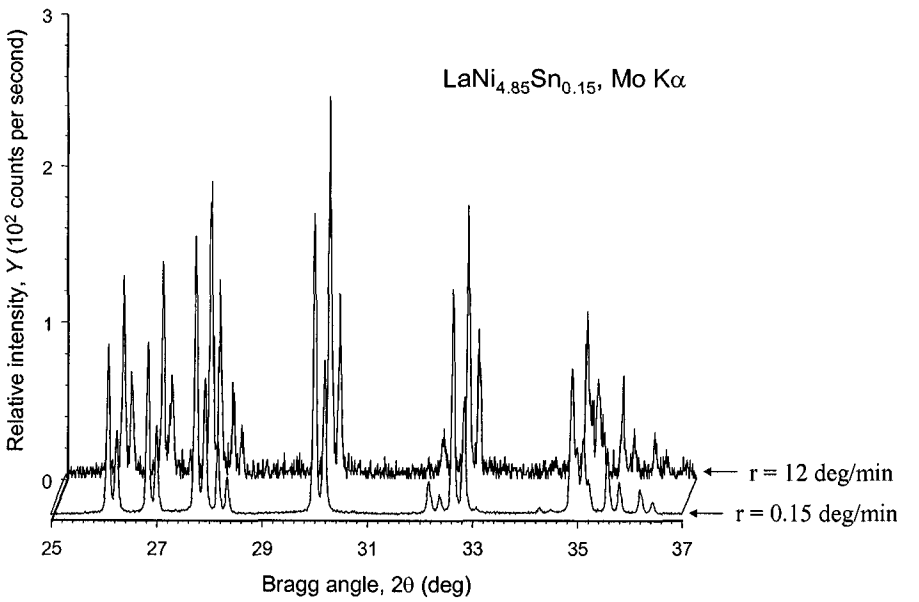


Figure 3.47. The example of different quality x-ray powder diffraction data. Only thin lines connecting observed data points are shown to emphasize the difference in data quality. Both experiments were carried out using the same powdered specimen and the same powder diffractometer with rotating anode x-ray source (*Figure 3.13*) but with different scan rates.

If positioning errors are not negligible, the goniometer should be repaired or replaced, as it is intrinsically impossible to obtain high-quality powder diffraction data using a goniometer, which produces either systematic or random (and therefore, uncontrollable) errors in Bragg angles. Periodic testing of positioning errors of the goniometer should be done by measuring one or several standard materials available from the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST).[1] The most commonly used standards are silicon (SRM 640b), corundum (SRM 676), and LaB_6 (SRM 660/660a).

3.7.1 Quality of intensity measurements

Regardless of the selection of the scan mode (see sections 3.6.8 and 3.6.9), the intensity recorded at each Bragg angle is measured during a certain period of time – counting time – which is one of the multiple user-specified parameters in the data acquisition process. As clearly seen in *Figure 3.47*, the importance of the counting time parameter is difficult to overestimate since it directly influences the accuracy of the measured diffracted intensity, and the overall quality of diffraction data.

In powder diffraction, x-ray photons or neutrons (in x-ray and neutron diffraction experiments, respectively) are registered by the detector as random events. The measured intensity is directly proportional to the number of counts and therefore, the accuracy of intensity measurements is governed by statistics. Even though below we will refer to x-ray diffraction and photons, all conclusions remain identical when neutron diffraction and neutron count is considered.

Assume that a total of N photon counts were registered by the detector. The spread, σ, in this case is defined by the Poisson's probability distribution

$$\sigma = \sqrt{N} \tag{3.8}$$

The corresponding error, ε, in an individual measurement (i.e. in the number of counts registered at each Bragg angle) depends on the confidence level and is given as

$$\varepsilon = \frac{Q\sigma}{N} = \frac{Q}{\sqrt{N}} \times 100\% \tag{3.9}$$

where $Q = 0.67$, 1.64, 2.59 and 3.09 for the 50, 90, 99 and 99.9% confidence levels, respectively. Thus to achieve a 3% error in the intensity measurement

[1] For a complete list of x-ray standards available from NIST see http://srmcatalog.nist.gov/.

at 50% confidence, it is necessary to register a total of ~500 photons, while to reach 3% error at 99% confidence, as many as ~7,400 counts need to be accumulated. For a 1% error at the same confidence levels ~4,500 and ~67,000 photons must be registered by the detector. Equation 3.9 reflects only statistical counting errors, which will be present even in the best quality data. Other systematic and random errors, for example those that appear due to the non-ideal sample, may affect the resulting experimental data, and these errors were described in section 3.5.

Consider the example shown in *Table 3.2*, which shows the effect of counting time on the statistical error of a single x-ray intensity measurement. When the counting time is limited to 1 s, a total of 100 photons will be registered with the resulting ~16% error at the 90% confidence level. When counting time is increased to 25 s, the statistical error in the 2500 registered photons is reduced to 3.3%. It is worth noting that as follows from Eq. 3.9 and *Table 3.2*, when a twofold increase in the accuracy of the intensity measurement is desired, the counting time must be increased fourfold.

Table 3.2. Effect of counting time on the statistical error during a single measurement.

Photon flux (counts per second)	Counting time (s)	Number (N) of registered counts	Spread = $\sqrt{N}$ (counts)	Error at 90% confidence (%)
100	1	100	10	16.4
100	25	2500	50	3.3

Obviously, the quality of intensity measurements in powder diffraction is inversely proportional to the statistical measurement errors and, therefore, it is directly proportional to the square root of the total number of registered photon counts. Assuming constant brightness of the x-ray source, the most certain way to improve the quality of the diffraction data is to use a lower scanning rate or longer counting time in continuous and step scan experiments, respectively.

Increased photon counts in principle can be achieved by using larger divergence and receiving slits, increasing the input power to the x-ray tube, using a position sensitive or image plate detector and some other modifications of various data acquisition and instrumental parameters. The side effects arising from improvements in counting statistics should be considered as well. For example,

- Increasing the counting time translates into long (overnight or weekend) experiments that take more time to collect.
- Increasing the divergence slit may be incompatible with the sample size (see sections 3.5.3 and 3.6.3).
- Increasing the receiving slit decreases the resolution (see section 3.6.4);
- Raising the input power is limited by the ability of an x-ray tube to dissipate heat and results in a reduced life of the tube.

- Using position sensitive or image plate detectors results in a lower resolution and higher background (see *Figure 3.16*).

In extreme cases, the only feasible option may be to seek availability of the nearest synchrotron beam time.

The optimal counting time depends on the requirements imposed by the desired quality of diffraction data. For example, the International Centre for Diffraction Data (ICDD),[1] which maintains and distributes the most extensive database of powder diffraction data, has established the following requirements for the submission of new experimental powder diffraction patterns to be added to the Powder Diffraction File™:

- At least 50,000 counts total should be accumulated for peaks with relative intensity 50% or higher of the strongest observed Bragg peak.
- At least 5,000 counts total should be accumulated for peaks with intensity 5% or higher of the strongest Bragg peak.

The ICDD requirements are quite strict and they are established to control the quality of the database. In a typical powder diffraction experiment according to the classification introduced in section 3.6.7 and assuming that an average diffraction pattern will consist of ~4000 data points, the counting time will vary from 0.5 to 2 s for a fast experiment, from 6 to 10 s in an overnight experiment, and counting time will exceed 20 s during a weekend experiment. Hence, fast, overnight and weekend step scan experiments using a sealed x-ray tube source will usually provide adequate quality of the powder diffraction pattern for phase identification, unit cell parameters refinement, and crystal structure solution and refinement, respectively.

In addition to the statistical error in each individual data point, it is often desirable to have the means of describing the quality of the whole powder diffraction pattern using a single figure of merit. This can be done by using the observed residual, R_{obs},[2] which is given by Eq. 3.10.

$$R_{obs} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \sigma_i \Big/ \sum_{i=1}^{n} N_i \times 100\% \qquad (3.10)$$

[1] International Centre for Diffraction Data, (ICDD®) is a non-profit scientific organization dedicated to collecting, editing, publishing, and distributing powder diffraction data for the identification of crystalline materials. ICDD on the Web: http://www.icdd.com/.

[2] This figure of merit is different from the so-called expected residual used to quantify the quality of experimental data in a Rietveld refinement. The latter is given as $R_{exp} = \left((n-p)/\sum w_i Y_i^2\right)^{1/2}$, see Eq. 6.21, where n is the total number of collected data points, p is the total number of least squares parameters, w_i and Y_i are the weight and the intensity, respectively, of the i^{th} data point ($1 \leq i \leq n$), also see Chapters 6 and 7.

The numerator in Eq. 3.10 represents photon counting errors (see Eq. 3.8) and the denominator corresponds to the total number of counts, both summed over the total number of the measured data points, n. For example the two diffraction patterns shown in *Figure 3.47* are characterized by R_{obs} = 3.59% and 30.9% for the higher and the lower quality data, respectively. The range shown in this figure includes a total of 1201 data points and the total number of accumulated counts varies by nearly two orders of magnitude: $\sim 6.4 \times 10^5$ and $\sim 8 \times 10^3$, for the high and poor quality data, respectively. The R_{obs} figure of merit reflects the overall quality of the powder diffraction pattern and is comparable with other residuals (R-factors) commonly calculated to represent the quality of fitting in the Rietveld method (see Eqs. 6.18 to 6.22 in section 6.7): a low R_{obs} characterizes high quality data, while a high R_{obs} corresponds to low quality diffraction patterns.

3.7.2 Factors affecting resolution

The intrinsic one-dimensionality of the powder diffraction experiment implies that every attempt should be made to collect diffraction data with the highest possible resolution. As we established in section 3.6, many factors affect the resolution of the experimental data, the most important being the radius of the goniometer, the wavelength of the used radiation, the receiving slit aperture and the step size or sampling step.

The goniometer radius is generally fixed. However, since the angular resolution remains constant for a given condition of the specimen, linear resolution of the goniometer is inversely proportional to its radius. Therefore, when especially high resolution is an issue, x-ray diffraction data should be collected using the instrument with the largest available radius. It is important to remember that a large goniometer radius usually translates into a decreased diffracted intensity and the powder diffraction experiment will take a longer time to achieve an identical R_{obs}, when compared to that using the goniometer with a smaller radius.

Similarly, using lower energy x-rays (i.e. x-rays with higher wavelengths) will normally result in the improved resolution of the powder diffraction pattern but not $K\alpha_1/K\alpha_2$ doublets (see *Figure 3.46*). The caveat in using long wavelengths is the reduction of the volume of the "visible" reciprocal lattice when compared to that using short wavelengths because only those reciprocal lattice points which have $d^*_{hkl} \leq 2/\lambda$ (e.g. see Chapter 2, *Figure 2.28*) can be positioned on the surface of the Ewald's sphere.[1]

[1] An additional reduction of the number of experimentally measurable reciprocal lattice points occurs due to a physical limit of any goniometer, which makes it impossible to collect data at Bragg angles exceeding ~150° 2θ.

Furthermore, as discussed above (see section 3.6), the easy selection of the wavelength is only feasible when using a synchrotron x-ray source.

Unlike the goniometer radius and radiation wavelength, both the diffracted beam aperture and the step size (or sampling step), are easily controlled by the experimentalist. Their effects on the resolution of the powder diffraction pattern were examined in section 3.6, which should be consulted for proper selection of beam apertures.

3.8 Additional reading

1. R. Jenkins and R.L. Snyder, Introduction to x-ray powder diffractometry, John Wiley and Sons, New York (1996).

2. W. Parrish and J.I. Langford, Powder and related techniques, in: X-ray techniques, International Tables for Crystallography, vol. C, Second edition, A.J.C. Wilson and E. Prince, Eds., Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston/ Dordrecht/London (1999) p. 42.

3. Jens Als-Nielsen and Des McMorrow, Elements of modern x-ray physics, John Wiley and Sons, Ltd., New York (2001).

4. D. Louër, Laboratory x-ray powder diffraction, in: Structure determination from powder diffraction data. IUCr monographs on Crystallography 13, W.I.F. David, K. Shankland, L.B. McCusker, and Ch. Baerlocher, Eds., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (2002).

5. P.W. Stephens, D. E. Cox, and A. N. Fitch, Synchrotron radiation powder diffraction, in: Structure determination from powder diffraction data. IUCr monographs on Crystallography 13, W.I.F. David, K. Shankland, L.B. McCusker, and Ch. Baerlocher, Eds., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (2002).

6. R. J. Hill and I. C. Madsen, Sample preparation, instrument selection and data, in: : Structure determination from powder diffraction data. IUCr monographs on Crystallography 13, W.I.F. David, K. Shankland, L.B. McCusker, and Ch. Baerlocher, Eds., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (2002).

7. R. M. Ibberson and W. I. F. David, Neutron powder diffraction, in: : Structure determination from powder diffraction data. IUCr monographs on Crystallography 13, W.I.F. David, K. Shankland, L.B. McCusker, and Ch. Baerlocher, Eds., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (2002).

8. R.J. Hill, Data collection strategies: fitting the experiment to the need, in: The Rietveld method. IUCr monographs on crystallography 5, R.A. Young, Ed., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (1993).

9. D.K. Bowen and B.K. Tanner. High resolution x-ray diffractometry and topography. T.J. International Ltd, Padstow, United Kingdom (1998).

10. Modern powder diffraction. Reviews in mineralogy, v. 20, D.L. Bish and J.E. Post, Eds., Mineralogical Society of America, Washington, DC (1989).

11. L.V. Azaroff and M.J. Buerger, The powder method in x-ray crystallography, McGrow-Hill, New York (1958).

12. H. Lipson and H. Steeple, Interpretation of x-ray powder diffraction patterns, Macmillan, London/St. Martin's Press, New York (1970).

13. H.P. Klug and L.E. Alexander, X-ray diffraction procedures for polycrystalline and amorphous materials, 2nd ed. John Wiley, New York (1974).

14. B.D. Cullity, Elements of x-ray diffraction, 2nd ed. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA (1978).

15. D.C. Creagh and S. Martinez-Carrera, Precautions against radiation injury, in: International Tables for Crystallography, vol. C, Second edition, A.J.C. Wilson and E. Prince, Eds., vol. C, Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston/ Dordrecht/London (1999) p. 949.

16. Accuracy in powder diffraction II. Proceedings of the International Conference, May 26-29, 1992. E. Prince and J.K. Stalick, Eds., National Institute of Standards and Technology, Washington, DC (1992).

17. Accuracy in powder diffraction. Proceedings of a Symposium on Accuracy in Powder Diffraction, June 11-15, 1979. S. Block and C.R. Hubbard, Eds., National Bureau of Standards, Washington, DC (1980).

18. A laboratory manual for x-ray powder diffraction (computer file on a CD), L.J. Poppe, Ed., U.S. Geological Survey, Woods Hole, MA (2001).

19. A.J.C. Wilson, Mathematical theory of x-ray powder diffractometry, Gordon and Breach, New York (1963).

3.9 Problems

Answers to all problems listed below are located in the file Chapter-3-Problems-Solutions.pdf on the CD accompanying this book.

1. True or false? Brief exposure to the incident x-ray beam is harmless, since the tissue is exposed to high energy photons only for a short moment of time.

2. True or false? It is okay to be in a room without wearing an individual dosimeter when the source of x-rays is energized as long you are not involved in the experiment.

3. True or false? As low as is reasonably achievable (ALARA) with respect to individual exposure to ionizing radiation is a fundamental principle of current radiation safety practice.

4. Assume that you are to collect powder diffraction data from a powder with the purpose to establish and refine its crystal structure. Previously you have used the following powder diffractometer:
   (A) Sealed x-ray tube source, curved position sensitive detector, the radius of its goniometer is 150 mm and diffraction data are collected in the transmission mode using cylindrical specimens. You employed this equipment to characterize the phase purity of your materials.
   In addition to this device, other departments at your university have the following powder diffractometer systems:
   (B) Sealed x-ray tube source, Bragg-Brentano goniometer, radius 185 mm, scintillation detector.
   (C) Rotating anode source, Bragg-Brentano goniometer, radius 285 mm, scintillation detector.
   (D) Sealed x-ray tube source, Bragg-Brentano goniometer, radius 250 mm, cooled solid-state detector.
   Establish the order in which you would call people in charge of the diffractometers to arrange for data collection and explain why.

5. Now assume that you have 20 different samples to characterize with respect to their phase composition. Furthermore, each department charges $50.00 per hour for the use of their equipment (the money goes to a special account, which pays for a service contract and routine maintenance). Assuming the availability of the same diffractometers as in problem 4, what would be the order on your calling list and why?

6. When you called the person in charge of the diffractometer D (see problem 4) she told you that the goniometer axis is horizontal and that the x-ray source arm is stationary. Do you need to worry about mixing your powder with a binder?

7. As part of the preparation for your experiment described in problem 4 you used a mortar and pestle to grind the sample. You were completely satisfied with the result since the powder appeared fine and homogeneous to your eyes, but when you discussed the process with your thesis advisor, he asked you to sift the powder through a 25 μm sieve. This discussion happened just before you were about to take off across campus since your allotted time on the powder diffractometer starts in 10 minutes. Describe your course of action and explain why?

8. You made a flat sample in the preparation for a highly precise powder diffraction experiment using diffractometer D (see problem 4). The sample completely fills a cylindrical opening 25 mm in diameter. The lowest Bragg angle during the experiment will be $2\theta = 10°$. The set of divergence slits available on this instrument includes the following apertures: 0.05, 0.1, 0.25, 0.5, 0.75, 1, 2, and 5 mm. Knowing that the distance between the focus of the x-ray tube and the divergence slit is 60 mm, select the most appropriate divergence slit to be used in your experiment and explain why?

9. You are having difficulties with making a flat sample for a high precision powder diffraction experiment – the powder just will not spread evenly in a cylindrical hole ~20 mm diameter and 1 mm deep. You are considering the following options:
   a) compact the powder by pressing against a glass slide;
   b) make a suspension in petroleum ether and pour it into the hole;
   c) compact the powder by pressing against a glass slide with a strip of rough sand paper glued to one of its surfaces;
   d) use a different sample holder and dust the powder on top.

   Arrange these options in the order which should result in the best quality specimen for powder diffraction and explain why.

10. You were able to arrange time on the powder diffractometer C (see problem 4). Several sample holders are available:
    a) powder fills a cylindrical hole 25 mm diameter and 1 mm deep;
    b) powder fills a cylindrical hole 20 mm diameter and 1 mm deep;
    c) powder fills a square hole $30\times30\times1$ mm^3;
    d) powder is dusted on top of a round rough spot 25 mm in diameter.

Arrange these sample holders in the order from the most to the least suitable for a high precision powder diffraction experiment, and explain why. Assume that you are working with a molecular compound.

11. Answer problem 10 if you are working with an intermetallic compound containing a lanthanide element.

12. You are using Fe Kα radiation to collect powder diffraction data employing powder diffractometer C (see problem 4). After several quick scans, you established that the receiving slit with the aperture of 0.03° results in both acceptable resolution and intensity. Bragg peaks appear to have a full width at half maximum between 0.4 and 0.5° 2θ. What is the largest allowable step during data collection and why?

13. You are about to perform a quick scan from 5 to 70° 2θ to verify the crystallinity of your material and to check whether or not the receiving slit is of adequate width. You are planning for the experiment which will take 10 to 15 min overall. Which scanning mode (step scan or continuous scan) is the best to accomplish the task and why?

14. In the preparation for an overnight experiment, you performed a quick scan, which resulted in the powder diffraction pattern shown in *Figure 3.48*. The receiving slit was narrow, RS = 0.01°. You are planning to double the receiving slit aperture and your goal is to measure the highest intensity data point with 1% or better error at the 99.9% confidence level during a step scan. Estimate the counting time parameter for the upcoming overnight experiment.

15. Assume that the overnight experiment described in problem 14 is to be performed using the continuous scanning mode from 8 to 60° 2θ with a sampling step $\Delta 2\theta = 0.005°$. Estimate both the scanning rate and the time it will take to finish the experiment.

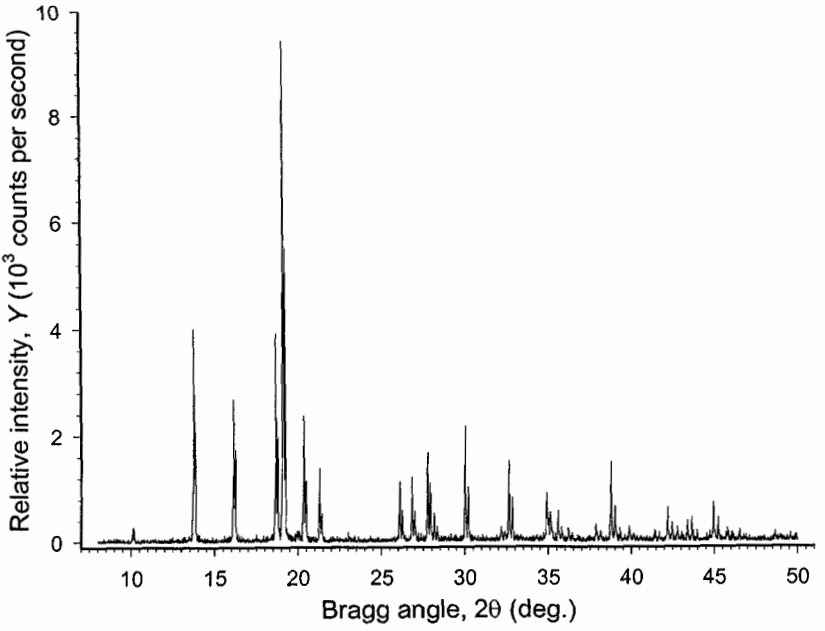


Figure 3.48. The result of a quick scan experiment using a narrow receiving slit to determine correct data collection parameters for a future overnight experiment.

Chapter 4

PRELIMINARY DATA PROCESSING AND PHASE ANALYSIS

4.1 Introduction

In the first three chapters of this book, we considered the fundamentals of crystallographic symmetry, the phenomenon of diffraction from a crystal lattice, and the basics of a powder diffraction experiment. Familiarity with these broad subjects is essential in understanding how waves are scattered by crystalline matter, how structural information is encoded into a three-dimensional distribution of discrete intensity maxima, and how it is convoluted with numerous instrumental and specimen-dependent functions when projected along one direction and measured as the scattered intensity Y versus the Bragg angle 2θ. We already learned that this knowledge can be applied to the structural characterization of materials as it gives us the ability to decode a one-dimensional snapshot of a reciprocal lattice and therefore, to reconstruct a three-dimensional distribution of atoms in an infinite crystal lattice by means of a forward Fourier transformation.

Our experience with applications of the powder method in diffraction analysis was for the most part, conceptual, and in the remainder of this book, we will discuss key issues that arise during the processing and interpretation of powder diffraction data. Despite the apparent simplicity of one-dimensional diffraction patterns, which are observed as series of constructive interference peaks (both resolved and partially or completely overlapped), created by elastically scattered waves and placed on top of a nonlinear background noise, the complexity of their interpretation originates from the complexity of events involved in converting the underlying structure into the experimentally observed data. Thus, nearly every component of data processing in powder diffraction is computationally intense.

The presence of symmetry (Chapter 1) coupled with well-defined analytical relationships determining both the directions and intensities of scattered beams (Chapter 2), in addition to known properties of both the specimen and instrument employed to obtain a powder diffraction pattern (Chapter 3), makes it possible to develop both the general methodology and algorithm(s) suitable for automation. Given the amount of numerical data collected in a typical powder diffraction experiment,[1] their interpretation and processing usually involves a broad use of computers.

We have no intent to comprehensively cover and/or evaluate any specific product among a large variety of available software packages or stand-alone programs (both freeware and commercial). Instead, we will illustrate multifaceted aspects of data processing using just a few computer codes, while paying attention to both the capabilities and limitations of the powder diffraction method, in addition to showing many examples of how the analysis of the powder diffraction pattern may be accomplished in practice.

4.2 Interpretation of powder diffraction data

Given the nature of the powder diffraction method, the resultant experimental data can be employed to obtain and/or confirm the following information:

- Phase composition of a material, including both qualitative and quantitative analyses coupled with searches of various databases.
- Indices of Bragg reflections, observed integrated intensities, and precise lattice parameters.
- Distribution of atoms in the unit cell, i.e. the crystal structure, either to verify that the material has one of the already known types of crystal structures or to solve it from first principles.[2]
- Precise structural details including equilibrium positions of atoms in the unit cell, individual atomic displacement and population parameters by employing the Rietveld method.
- Various microscopic structural characteristics of the specimen.

The first four items in this list represent the most common goals that are usually achieved during characterization of polycrystalline materials using

[1] For example, the range $10 \leq 2\theta \leq 90^\circ$ scanned with a step $\Delta 2\theta = 0.02^\circ$ results in 4001 measured data points.

[2] In the context of this book, structure solution from first principles (also referred to as the *ab initio* structure determination) means that all crystallographic data, including lattice parameters and symmetry, and the distribution of atoms in the unit cell, are inferred from the analysis of the scattered intensity as a function of Bragg angle, collected during a powder diffraction experiment. Additional information, such as the gravimetric density of a material, its chemical composition, basic physical and chemical properties, may be used as well, when available.

powder diffraction data. The results are frequently employed to establish and/or clarify relationships between crystal structures and properties of materials; knowing these is truly critical in modern science and engineering. The most typical sequences of data processing steps (or phases) are therefore, visualized in a general schematic depicted in *Figure 4.1*. Correspondingly, these four major steps are the subjects of this and the following three chapters in the book. As shown in *Figure 4.1*, the three different quality levels of powder diffraction data are usually associated with the expected outcomes of the experiment.[1]

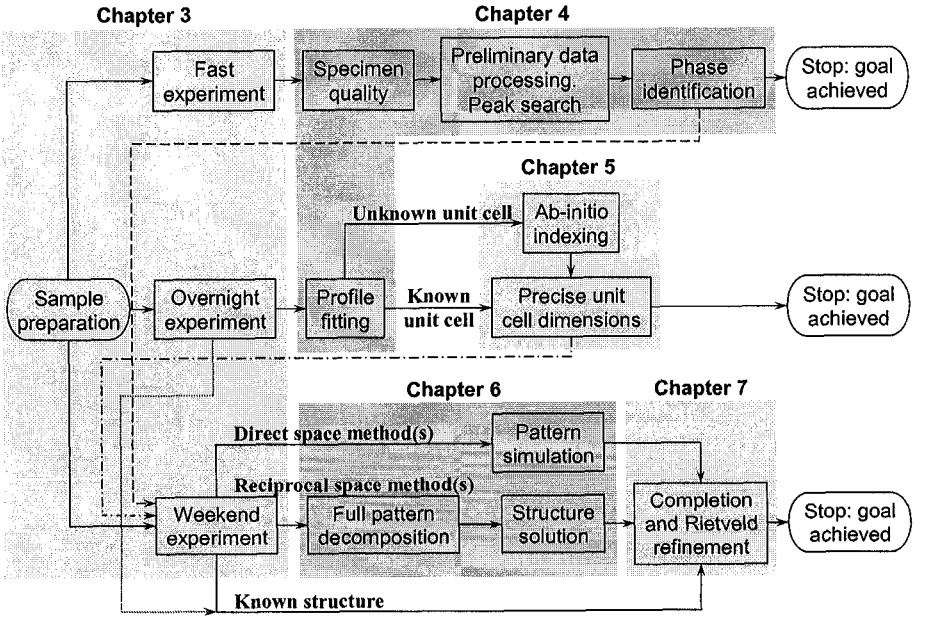


Figure 4.1. The flowchart illustrating common steps employed in a structural characterization of materials by using the powder diffraction method. It always begins with the sample preparation as a starting point, followed by a properly executed experiment; both are considered in Chapter 3. Preliminary data processing and profile fitting are discussed in this chapter in addition to common issues related to phase identification and analysis. Unit cell determination, crystal structure solution and refinement are the subjects of Chapters 5, 6, and 7, respectively. The flowchart shows the most typical applications for the three types of experiments, although any or all of the data processing steps may be applied to fast, overnight and weekend experiments when justified by their quality and characterization goals.

[1] The classification "fast", "overnight" and "weekend" experiments is usually applied to laboratory powder diffractometers equipped with conventional sealed x-ray tube sources. Obviously, when the brilliance of the available source increases dramatically, the time of the actual experiment decreases. It is worth noting that since specialized beam time (e.g. a synchrotron source) is limited, this normally implies that the majority of samples should undergo a thorough preliminary examination using conventional x-ray sources.

Thus, a fast experiment is routinely suitable for evaluation of the specimen and phase identification, i.e. qualitative analysis. When needed, it should be followed by a weekend experiment for a complete structural determination. An overnight experiment is required for indexing and accurate lattice parameters refinement, and a weekend-long experiment is needed for crystal structure determination and refinement. In some instances, e.g. when a specimen has exceptional quality and its crystal structure is known or very simple, all relevant parameters can be determined using data collected in an overnight experiment. Similarly, fast experiment(s) may be suitable for unit cell determination in addition to phase identification. In any case, one should use his/her own judgment and experience to assess both the suitability of the experimental data and the reliability of the result.

When the sole goal of the experiment is to identify phases present in the polycrystalline material, it may be achieved in a fast experiment, which may be collected in as little as 10 to 15 min depending on the quality of the specimen, brightness of the beam and geometry of the instrument. Another important application of the rapidly collected data is visual examination of $Y(2\theta)$ to evaluate both the crystallinity of the specimen and the complexity of the pattern as illustrated by several distinct examples in *Figure 4.2*.

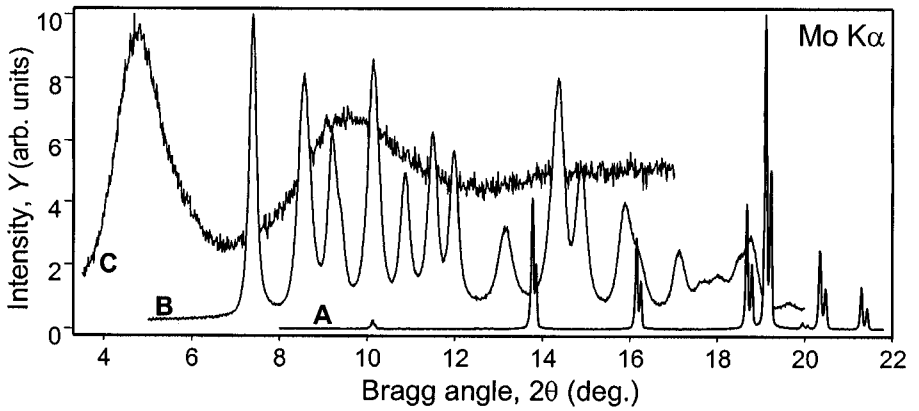


Figure 4.2. Fragments of powder diffraction patterns collected from three different materials on a Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode powder diffractometer using Mo Kα radiation. Pattern A represents a material with excellent crystallinity: narrow and sharp Bragg reflections with $K\alpha_1/K\alpha_2$ doublets becoming partially resolved at $2\theta \cong 14°$, low and nearly linear background. Pattern B is also a crystalline material, however, its crystallinity is poor (and/or grain sizes are extremely small, and/or the material has been strained), which is evident from broad but still distinct Bragg reflections; certain amount of an amorphous component may be present in this sample judging from a minor nonlinearity of the background between ~6 and 20° 2θ. Pattern C is collected from a material, which is clearly non-crystalline in a conventional sense: long-range order and periodicity are absent because no Bragg reflections have been observed. Provided powder C is amorphous, broad halo(s) usually contain information about nearest neighbors in the coordination spheres of atoms. Each pattern has been scaled individually.

Considering the three examples illustrated in *Figure 4.2*, specimen A is suitable for any kind of conventional structural characterization using powder diffraction. Furthermore, judging from the relatively large separation between Bragg reflections at low angles it is easy to conclude that the crystal structure of this material is quite simple.[1] Specimen B in the current state, may or may not be suitable for the determination of its crystal structure. If possible, the material should be recrystallized or heat-treated (depending on its nature) to increase grain sizes and/or relieve strain. If successful, widths of Bragg peaks will be reduced and pattern resolution will be improved. Judging from the number of Bragg peaks observed at low angles and from the fact that the first Bragg reflection in specimen B occurs at a lower angle when compared with specimen A, the crystal structure of the former is more complex that that of the latter.[2] Finally, specimen C is unsuitable for the analysis of its crystal structure and it should be appropriately modified, if possible, to restore the crystallinity of the material.[3]

Provided the specimen produces a satisfactory diffraction pattern and in order to proceed with phase identification, both the positions and intensities of Bragg peaks should be determined. This is usually achieved by an automated peak search procedure using the pattern, which has been processed to eliminate either or both the background and the $K\alpha_2$ components of the peaks. When the pattern is complex, automated peak search procedures may result in numerous missed peaks, and then manual peak hunting or even semi-manual profile fitting algorithms should be employed in order to obtain the list of Bragg reflections suitable for phase identification. The latter is accomplished by comparing the resulting list of Bragg reflections with one or more databases (e.g. the Powder Diffraction File™ maintained and distributed by the ICDD[4]) using different search-match algorithms.

If phase identification was the only purpose of the experiment and the obtained list of Bragg angles and intensities has no known match, the

[1] Pattern A was collected from a $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ powder prepared by high-pressure gas atomization and then heat treated at 950°C for 5 min. The compound has a hexagonal crystal structure with unit cell dimensions $a \cong 5.04$, $c \cong 4.01$ Å.

[2] Pattern B was collected from an anhydrous $FePO_4$ powder obtained by decomposition (holding at 80°C in vacuum for 12 h) of the hydrothermally prepared dihydrate $FePO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$. The compound has a monoclinic crystal structure with unit cell dimensions $a \cong 5.48$, $b \cong 7.48$, $c \cong 8.05$ Å, $\beta \cong 95.7°$.

[3] Pattern C was collected from a molecular compound (Ph_3PCH_2COPh-Br) ball-milled for one hour, which resulted in the complete loss of crystallinity. The appropriate processing in this case would be to slowly recrystallize the compound using a suitable solvent and then gently grind the powder, if necessary, to prepare a specimen for a powder diffraction experiment.

[4] ICDD® - International Centre for Diffraction Data: http://www.icdd.com.

collected data can be used as a fingerprint of a new crystalline substance. The identity of the material should be confirmed using various experimental techniques (e.g. differential thermal analysis, spectroscopic and/or microscopic methods, etc.) to ensure that it is not a mixture of compounds. If phase identification was only the first step in a powder diffraction experiment, the next move is to proceed with the precise determination of lattice parameters. This is easier done when unit cell dimensions are known at least approximately, but they may also be established from first principles.

Since the highest possible accuracy of peak positions is essential, both the indexing of the pattern and lattice parameters refinement impose high demands on the quality of data, and overnight or weekend experiments should be performed. Profile fitting of powder data is typically conducted first and then it is followed by assignment of indices to individual Bragg reflections. The latter can be accomplished using approximately known unit cell dimensions or in a process of the so-called *ab initio* indexing. Subsequent least squares refinement usually yields precise unit cell dimensions. In some cases, when the suspected unit cell is quite accurate, lattice parameters can be obtained in a process known as the full pattern decomposition.

When the unit cell is established and refined, it may be the end of data processing, but it may also be a part of a sequence leading to a solution of the crystal structure from first principles. It is worthy of reminding that the *ab initio* structure determination may be performed in two quite different ways. The first works in reciprocal space, where the intensities of Bragg reflections are employed to recover their phases by applying either heavy atom (Patterson) or direct methods. Both phase angles recovery methods require highly accurate individual integrated intensities that may be obtained from exceptional quality data (usually a weekend experiment) *via* full pattern decomposition. The second group of techniques consists of simulating the crystal structure in real space: from database searches and simple geometrical modeling to energy minimization and random structure generation. It may be necessary to employ several different approaches and/or obtain a more accurate and better resolved powder diffraction pattern, and/or examine different indexing solutions from the previous processing step before the model of the crystal structure is judged acceptable. When the crystal structure is solved, one final step, i.e. Rietveld refinement, is usually needed in order to confirm and complete the structure.

The Rietveld method is employed both to finalize the model of the crystal structure, when necessary, e.g. to locate a few missing atoms in the unit cell by coupling it with Fourier series calculations, and to confirm the crystal structure determination by refining positional and other relevant parameters of individual atoms together with profile variables. The fully refined

structural model must make both physical and chemical sense. If there are doubts, additional investigations should be carried out; they may include a better experiment and testing other feasible structural models in addition to employing various experimental techniques, such as chemical, thermogravimetric, spectroscopic, electron microscopic, neutron scattering, and other. When structure determination is completed, it should be followed by calculation of bond lengths and bond angles, structure drawing, and preparation of the crystallographic data for publication in a suitable journal and/or in a database.

Referring once again to *Figure 4.1*, the flowchart presented there is quite generic. It does not account for many other important applications of powder diffraction such as microstructure analysis and determination of grain sizes and microstrain, low angle scattering and structure of thin films, texture analysis, and diffraction from polymers, fibers, liquids and amorphous materials. Furthermore, Rietveld refinement can be, and is indeed, broadly used for quantitative phase and chemical analyses. The picture drawn in *Figure 4.1* should not be taken as a rigid set of processing steps. Many more links between the boxes can be drawn, largely dependent on the type of the material and the complexity of its crystal structure, quality of the experiment, "non-crystallographic" knowledge about the material, and the expectation or a major goal of a particular diffraction study.

4.3 Preliminary data processing

As we already know (e.g. see *Figure 3.43* in Chapter 3), a typical powder diffraction pattern is collected in a form of scattered intensity as a numerical function of Bragg angle (also see *Figure 4.2* and *Figure 2.32* to *Figure 2.37*). What is required in many applications of the method (e.g. phase analysis, unit cell dimensions, and structure solution), is a list of integrated intensities or equivalent absolute values of structure factors associated with the corresponding Miller indices of the reciprocal lattice points and the observed Bragg angles (e.g., see *Table 2.6* in Chapter 2). Obviously, the availability of such a list eliminates the effects of multiple instrumental and specimen-related parameters from raw data but its creation requires certain numerical processing of the pattern. Thus, raw powder diffraction data converted into the list of observed Bragg angles and intensities are known as the reduced or digitized powder diffraction patterns. It is worth noting that reduced patterns may be employed in crystal structure refinement but only in simple cases, when no substantial overlapping of Bragg reflections occurs.

In order to obtain a reduced pattern, scattered intensity maxima should be located and their relative intensities (either as peak height values or, most commonly, as peak areas) should be established together with the

corresponding values of Bragg angles. Depending on the required accuracy and the availability of crystallographic information, e.g. unit cell dimensions and symmetry, there are three common approaches to extracting intensities and positions of Bragg peaks from raw powder diffraction data:

1. Peak search, which is unbiased by any kind of structural information. This approach is based on automatic recognition of Bragg peaks. The accuracy of peak positions, their intensities, and the completeness of the search are the lowest, especially when weak Bragg reflections are of concern, and it varies depending on both the employed algorithm and quality of raw data. A typical automatic peak search produces reduced patterns suitable for successful identification of phases when coupled with a proper database search-match algorithm. This occurs because all search-match utilities employ just a few of the strongest Bragg peaks; the latter are conclusively detected by the majority of automatic peak search algorithms. When the specimen is well crystallized, the results may become suitable for a quantitative phase analysis, indexing and even for lattice parameters refinement. However, the quality of a typical fast experiment is usually insufficient and it may be necessary to conduct an overnight experiment. In the majority of applications, the unbiased peak search requires additional preliminary processing of the data, which includes background subtraction, $K\alpha_2$ stripping, smoothing, and, sometimes, other corrections, such as Lorenz-polarization and conversion of variable slit data to a fixed slit experiment. All of these additional processing steps may be required to improve the reliability of peak detection.
2. Profile fitting, which is usually biased by the user's decision about whether or not a peak is present at a certain angle or by the results of an automatic peak search. Found or manually marked Bragg peaks are fitted to experimental data using one of the many available peak shape functions (Chapter 2, section 2.9). The fit can be performed using the entire pattern at once or by splitting the pattern into several regions, which are processed separately. Free parameters in these fits usually include peak positions, their integrated intensity, and other relevant variables required to describe peak shape functions. The latter may be peak-specific of they may vary as certain analytical functions of Bragg angle, common for the entire pattern or only a single range. This approach works best when no information about the unit cell is available. It produces highly accurate observed peak positions ($2\theta^{obs}$) and integrated intensities (I^{obs}), provided the quality of experimental data is adequate. The obtained reduced patterns may be used in a quantitative phase analysis, indexing from first principles and lattice parameters refinement, all with higher than average probability of success. Profile fitting results

may be suitable for a crystal structure determination, which however, may be problematic when diffraction patterns are exceedingly complex and contain numerous clusters of heavily overlapped Bragg reflections.

3. Full pattern decomposition, which is fundamentally biased by the chosen unit cell dimensions. It relies on fitting the whole powder pattern at once. In this method, positions of Bragg peaks are established from lattice parameters and symmetry. Only unit cell dimensions are refined and the resulting peak positions are not "observed" but rather they are calculated from the refined lattice parameters. Peak shapes are dependent on a few free variables in relevant analytical functions of Bragg angle, as was described in Chapter 2, section 2.9. The integrated intensities, however, are determined individually for each Bragg reflection. This method extracts quite reliable individual intensities and, hence, is a typical data processing step that precedes the structure solution from first principles, as will be discussed in Chapter 6. It is worth noting that the full pattern decomposition approach is used increasingly often to obtain accurate lattice parameters when a powder pattern has been indexed but the crystal structure remains unknown or is not of interest for a specific application.

Preliminary treatment of powder diffraction data and their conversion into reduced powder patterns for phase identification and a database search are nearly always included as parts of data processing software suites, which are available with the purchase of a powder diffractometer. Perhaps this is the main reason explaining the lack of comparable freeware. Thus, the majority of examples found in this chapter have been obtained using the DMSNT[1] software distributed by Scintag, Inc.[2] We note, that software developers use a range of data processing algorithms and therefore, we will only be concerned with generic issues without getting into software-specific details, which may be found in the corresponding manuals.

4.3.1 Background

Background (e.g. see *Figure 4.2* and *Figure 4.3*) is unavoidable in powder diffraction, and each powder pattern has a different level of background noise. The latter originates from inelastic scattering, scattering from air, sample holder and particle surfaces, x-ray fluorescence, incomplete monochromatization, detector noise, etc. As a result, the background must be accounted for, which is usually done by either subtracting it during preliminary processing of the data, or by adding its contribution (e.g. see Eq. 2.48 in Chapter 2) to the calculated intensity, $Y(\theta)^{calc}$, during profile fitting.

[1] DMSNT: Data Management Software for Windows NT/2000 from Scintag Inc. Now WinXRD: Data Collection and Analysis Package from Thermo ARL.

[2] Formerly Scintag, Inc. of Cupertino, CA, now a subsidiary of Thermo ARL.

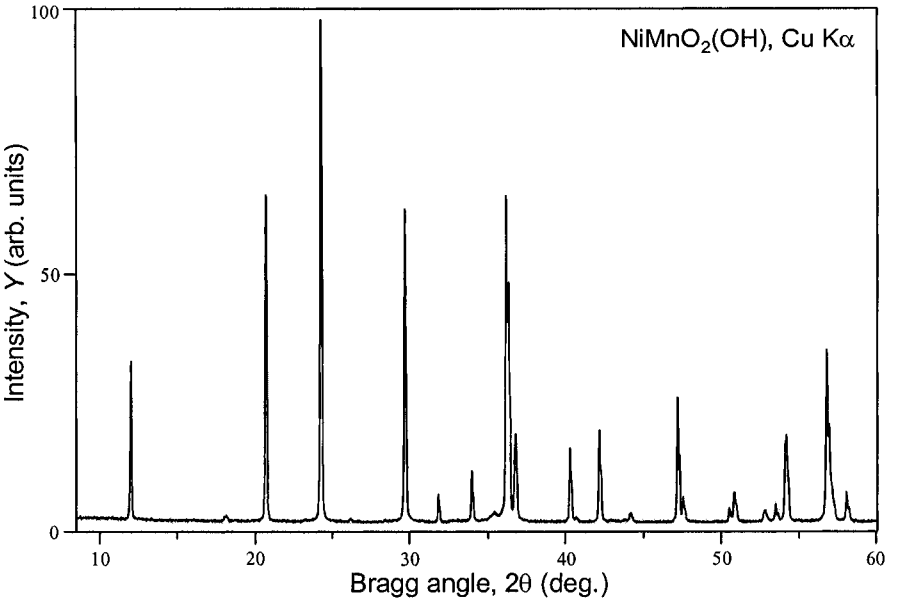


Figure 4.3. Powder diffraction pattern of the orthorhombic $NiMnO_2(OH)$ collected on a Scintag XDS2000 powder diffractometer using Cu Kα radiation. In this example, the background noise contributes a few percent to the highest measured scattered intensity.

Subtracting the background is considered mandatory during preliminary data processing before eliminating (stripping) $K\alpha_2$ contributions for a subsequent peak search. The background should be removed because $K\alpha_2$ stripping is based on the fixed $K\alpha_1$ to $K\alpha_2$ intensity ratio, which is 2:1 (see Chapter 2, section 2.2.4), in addition to Bragg angle splitting due to the difference in the wavelengths of these two components of the characteristic x-ray spectrum. The 2:1 intensity ratio includes elastic scattering on reciprocal lattice points, but not the background noise.

The background *should never be* subtracted prior to full pattern decomposition and full profile-based Rietveld refinement.[1] In these cases it is approximated using various analytical functions with coefficients, which are refined along with other parameters. Thus computed background is then added to the intensity calculated as a function of Bragg angle.

[1] The only exception is the subtraction of a constant component of the background, i.e. the lowest observed intensity, to improve the visibility and enhance contributions from Bragg peaks, if required. Constant background subtraction can be described by the following analytical expression: $Y_i' = Y_i - \min(Y_i) + 1$, where Y_i is the measured intensity, Y_i' is the intensity with constant background subtracted, unity is added to avoid zero intensity and a potential for a division by 0, and i varies from 1 to n, where n is the total number of collected data points.

In the majority of preliminary data processing algorithms, the background is handled in two different ways:

- Automatic, when the background points are chosen based on certain criteria and then these points are employed to approximate the background by means of certain smooth analytical function.
- Manual, when the user selects points that belong to the background (i.e. they do not belong to any of the visible Bragg peaks), which are then used in the same way as in automatic background removal.

Both approaches have their advantages and disadvantages. Manual subtraction is slow but generally yields a more accurate or reasonable background approximation, while an automatic algorithm is faster and easier but sometimes lacks the required accuracy. A typical background is enhanced at low Bragg angles. It has a broad minimum in the mid-angles range and then gradually increases towards high Bragg angles. Actual behavior, however, depends on many factors, such as the material of the sample holder, incident beam and monochromator geometry, sample chemistry and microstructure, and other parameters. In the powder diffraction pattern shown in *Figure 4.3*, the background looks nearly linear but in reality, this is not the case as can be seen in *Figure 4.4*, where the ordinate has been rescaled to reveal low-intensity details.

As seen in *Figure 4.4*a, the background determined automatically using the default box value of 1.5 is far from the best choice in this case because greater than needed curvature results in accepting broad bases of the strongest peaks as the background. This distorts intensities of Bragg peaks and therefore, $K\alpha_2$ stripping or other following treatments cannot be performed satisfactorily. In the next example (*Figure 4.4*b), the background was also treated automatically, but this time with box value increased to 4.0. The result is a much better approximation but a careful examination of the bases of the strong peaks indicates that the background remains overestimated in these critical regions. Manual selection of points for a background approximation is shown in *Figure 4.4*c, which appears to be the best choice for this particular powder diffraction pattern. Both examples b and c are suitable for a subsequent $K\alpha_2$ stripping. It is worth noting that neither the automatic nor the manual background subtraction works well when there is a substantial overlapping and clustering of Bragg reflections.

Once again, the background should be eliminated only when the next step involves the removal of the $K\alpha_2$ components or other unwanted peaks from the pattern to perform a peak search using algorithms that do not account for its presence (e.g. as in the DMSNT). Other methods that also yield both peak positions and their intensities with a better precision (e.g. profile fitting), do not require $K\alpha_2$ stripping and, therefore, background subtraction in these cases should be avoided. The background is interpolated using various

analytical functions and their coefficients are refined simultaneously with other profile parameters, including structural parameters during Rietveld refinement. Hence, the background is accounted in a more flexible way, and experimental data are not subjected to an irreversible modification.[1]

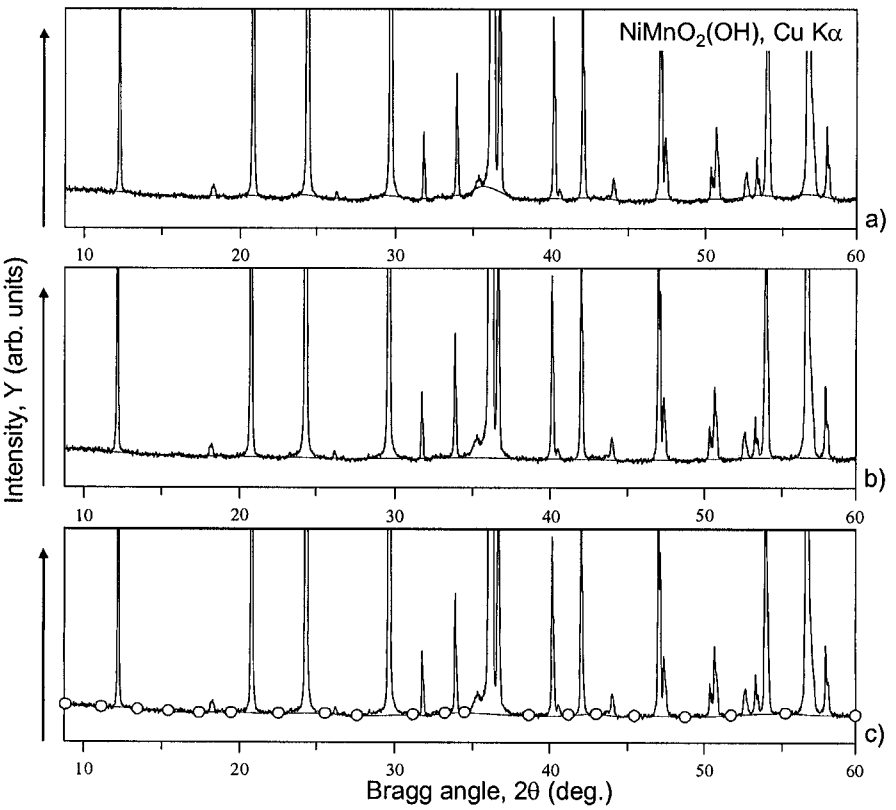


Figure 4.4. The powder diffraction pattern from *Figure 4.3* shown with a different intensity scale. The background (thin lines at the bottom of each plot) has been approximated by means of a) an automatic algorithm with the default box width[2] of 1.5°; b) an automatic algorithm with a 4.0° box width; c) background points selected manually as indicated by small circles. Background approximations have been performed using the DMSNT software.

[1] Indeed, it is possible and always recommended to save a backup copy of the unmodified experimental data file. If for any reason the background should be reevaluated, it is easy to do so, provided a copy of the original data file exists.

[2] Width (in degrees 2θ) of the box (window) used in the Box Car Curve Fit method for background removal. The window determines how close the background curve follows the data. An underestimated box width results in humps under the peaks, as seen in (a). An overestimated box width translates in the background that does not follow the data. A proper box width (usually established experimentally) results in the background that follows the data closely without following the peaks, as seen in (b).

The following functions are commonly used in background (b_i) interpolation,[1] where i varies from 1 to n and n is the total number of data points measured in a whole powder diffraction pattern or in the region included in the processing:

- Polynomial function, which approximates the background as

$$b_i = \sum_{m=0 \text{ or } -1}^{N} B_m (2\theta_i)^m \tag{4.1}$$

  Here and below, B_m, are background parameters that can be refined and N is the order of the polynomial. The summation in Eq. 4.1 is usually carried out beginning from $m = 0$. However, to account for the often increased background at low angles, an additional (hyperbolic) factor with $m = -1$ may also be included.
- Chebyshev polynomial (type I or type II, either shifted or not). It is represented as a function of an argument x_i, which is defined as

$$x_i = \frac{2(2\theta_i - 2\theta_{\min})}{2\theta_{\max} - 2\theta_{\min}} - 1 \tag{4.2}$$

  where $2\theta_{\min}$ and $2\theta_{\max}$ are the minimum and maximum Bragg angles in the powder diffraction pattern. The background is calculated as:

$$b_i = \sum_{m=0}^{N} B_m t_m(x_i) \tag{4.3}$$

  and the Chebyshev function, t_m, is defined such that

$$t_{n+1}(x) + 2x \cdot t_n(x) + t_{n-1}(x) = 0 \tag{4.4}$$

  where $t_0 = 1$ and $t_1 = x$. Values of the function t are calculated using tabulated coefficients.
- Fourier polynomial, in which the background is represented as the following sum of cosines:

$$b_i = B_1 + \sum_{m=2}^{N} B_m \cos(2\theta_{m-1}) \tag{4.5}$$

[1] Many other functions can be used to approximate the background. All of them should be continuous functions of Bragg angle in the processed range.

– Diffuse background function to account for a peculiar scattering from amorphous phases (e.g. see *Figure 4.2*, specimen C) or from a non-crystalline sample holder:

$$b_i = B_1 + B_2 Q_i + \sum_{m=1}^{N-2} \frac{B_{2m+1} \sin(Q_i B_{2m+2})}{Q_i B_{2m+2}} \tag{4.6}$$

where $Q_i = 2\pi/d_i$ and the "d-spacing" is calculated for each point, $2\theta_i$, of the powder diffraction pattern.

In Eqs. 4.1 to 4.6, N typically varies from 6 to 12 when the entire powder diffraction pattern is of concern. In some instances, when profile fitting is applied to short fragments of the powder diffraction pattern, the most suitable background function is that given by Eq. 4.1 with $N = 1$ or 2, i.e. a linear or parabolic background.

4.3.2 Smoothing

Smoothing is a numerical conditioning procedure employed to suppress statistical noise, which is present in any powder diffraction pattern as a result of random intensity measurement errors (Eq. 3.8 in Chapter 3). It improves the appearance of the powder diffraction pattern. For example, smoothing can make quickly collected data (say in a 15 min experiment) look similar to a pattern collected in a longer (e.g. in an overnight) experiment, and may help with certain automatic procedures, such as background subtraction, $K\alpha_2$ stripping and unbiased peak search.

Numerical conditioning, however, does not improve data quality. Moreover, it causes broadening of Bragg peaks and loss of resolution (e.g. see *Figure 3.38* and *Figure 3.39* in Chapter 3, which illustrate broadening caused by the varying receiving slit) and may result in the disappearance of weak peaks when overdone. On the contrary, increasing experiment time improves the pattern since it reduces statistical spreads.[1] An example of the original and smoothed patterns is shown in *Figure 4.5*.

The most typical smoothing approach is often called box car smoothing. It involves averaging intensities of current and neighboring data points using different weights. The weight is the largest for the point being smoothed and it decreases rapidly for points located farther away. For example, when five points are employed, the weights (w_i) can be set at 1 for the point in the middle (Y_0), 0.5 for the nearest neighbors ($Y_{\pm1}$), and 0.25 for the next nearest neighbors ($Y_{\pm2}$).

[1] As described in Chapter 3, section 3.7.1, a two-fold reduction of relative statistical errors requires a four-fold increase of data collection time.

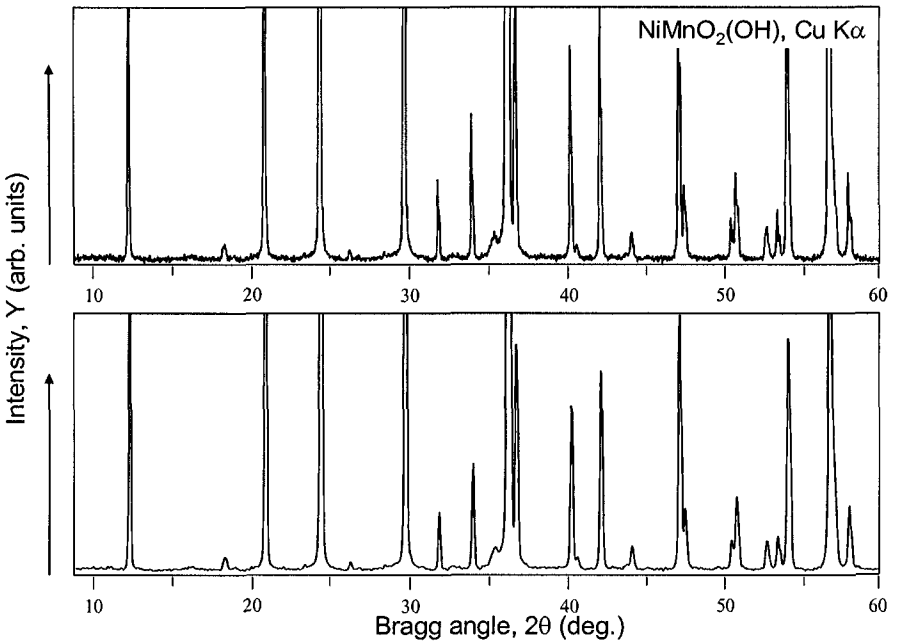


Figure 4.5. The powder diffraction pattern from *Figure 4.3* with subtracted background prior to (top) and after (bottom) smoothing by using an analogue of Eq. 4.7 with 7 sequential data points.

Thus, the smoothed intensity of each point is the weighted sum of the intensities of 5 sequential data points divided by the sum of weights:[1]

$$Y_0^{smoothed} = \frac{w_2 Y_{-2} + w_1 Y_{-1} + w_0 Y_0 + w_1 Y_1 + w_2 Y_2}{2w_2 + 2w_1 + w_0} \tag{4.7}$$

where w_0, w_1 and w_2 are 1, 0.5 and 0.25, respectively. In this example, the weights change linearly (weight of the next data point is reduced by two, although different linear dependencies may be used as well). Furthermore, nonlinear weighting schemes may be employed, e.g. a Gaussian distribution of weights. The number of points and smoothing coefficients (weights) varies for different smoothing attempts. Generally, the smoother pattern is obtained when more points are employed or when the weights change less drastically from one point to the next.

Another commonly used smoothing approach is based on the fast Fourier transformation (FFT) algorithm. The number of Fourier coefficients in the

[1] Except for the first (the last) few points in the pattern, where smoothing is either truncated to include only the points after (or before) Y_0, or the point remains "unconditioned".

original pattern is equal to the total number of the observed data points. In this case, the reverse Fourier transformation results in the original pattern. Each Fourier coefficient corresponds to a signal of specific frequency observed in the original pattern: the higher order coefficients represent the higher frequency signals. Thus, when high order coefficients are set to zero or lowered, the reverse FFT produces a pattern similar to the original but with removed or reduced high frequency noise, or in other words, a smoother pattern. Setting more high order coefficients at zero produces stronger smoothing. As a result, the removal of high frequency noise "improves" the pattern but at the same time, more and more fine details (weak or narrowly split peaks) are lost. The loss of weak features in a pattern is a common problem in any smoothing algorithm.

Similar to background removal, smoothing *should never be* applied to a powder diffraction pattern, which will be later used for profile fitting or Rietveld refinement.[1] When performed, smoothing may improve certain figures of merit (e.g. R_p, R_{wp} and χ^2, see Eqs. 6.18, 6.19 and 6.22 in Chapter 6, below), but it will likely and considerably distort lattice parameters and most certainly all intensity-sensitive structural parameters, including coordinates, displacement and population parameters of the individual atoms. The only reliable and justifiable way to improve the true quality of the full profile fit is to perform a more accurate (i.e. careful sample preparation and/or longer counting time) powder diffraction experiment.

4.3.3 $K\alpha_2$ stripping

The presence of dual wavelengths in conventional x-ray sources, or in other words the presence of the $K\alpha_2$ component in both the incident and diffracted beams, complicates powder diffraction patterns by adding a second set of reflections from every reciprocal lattice point. They are located at slightly different Bragg angles when compared with those of the main ($K\alpha_1$) component. This decreases resolution and increases overlapping of Bragg peaks, both of which have adverse effect on an unbiased peak search.

Since every $K\alpha_1/K\alpha_2$ double peak is caused by scattering from a single reciprocal lattice point, the *d*-spacing remains constant and the scattered intensity is proportional to the intensities of the two components in the characteristic spectrum. Using Braggs' law the following equation reflects the relationship between the positions of the diffraction peaks in the doublet:

$$\sin\theta_1 \Big/ \lambda_{K\alpha_1} = \sin\theta_2 \Big/ \lambda_{K\alpha_2} \tag{4.8}$$

[1] Unlike background removal, where the subtraction of a constant background is permissible (see the footnote on page 348), this statement has no exceptions.

Furthermore, the integrated intensities of the two peaks are related as:

$$I_{K\alpha_1} : I_{K\alpha_2} = 2:1 \tag{4.9}$$

Assuming that peaks in the doublet have identical shapes, which is reasonable because the separation between the two is usually small, although it increases with increasing Bragg angle, Eqs. 4.8 and 4.9 may be applied to every point of the observed peak shape, but not to the background. The $K\alpha_2$ stripping usually starts from the lowest Bragg angle point of the first observed peak, which should not be in the range of any other diffraction maximum, and moves towards the last point in the pattern. An example of $K\alpha_2$ stripping is shown in *Figure 4.6.*

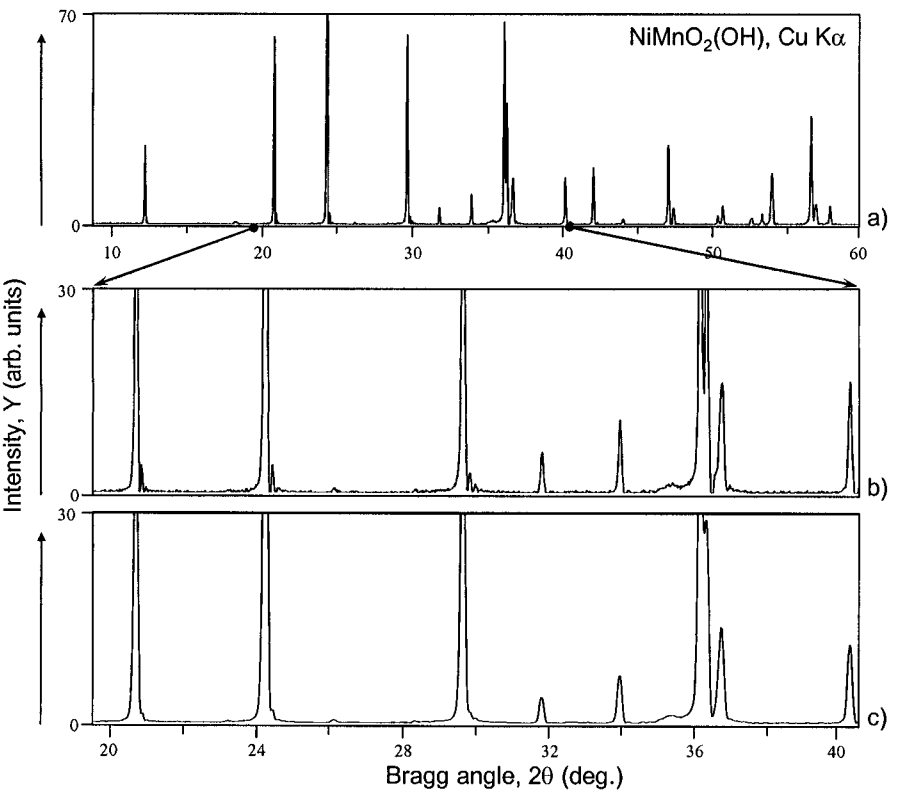


Figure 4.6. An illustration of $K\alpha_2$ stripping (a). The expanded view of the range between ~20 and 40° 2θ highlighting inaccuracies on the high Bragg angle sides of the strongest peaks (b). The expanded view of the same region when the background subtraction and $K\alpha_2$ stripping was preceded by a 7 point-smoothing (c). Although inaccuracies on high Bragg angle sides are less visible after smoothing, the "improvement" is accompanied by the loss of resolution, which is easily seen from comparison of the two peaks at ~36° in (b) and (c).

It is easy to see that this simple approach is far from ideal and the removal of the $K\alpha_2$ contributions is far from perfect. The inaccuracies occur because it is difficult to eliminate the background precisely. A higher quality pattern usually results in a better $K\alpha_2$ stripping as illustrated in *Figure 4.6*c where the same pattern was smoothed before removing the background and $K\alpha_2$ components. Visible peak broadening due to the smoothing treatment is noteworthy.

One of the unfortunate results of $K\alpha_2$ elimination is the distortion of the high angle slopes of all Bragg reflections. Therefore, $K\alpha_2$ stripping is a valid step in the preparation of the powder pattern for the following automatic peak search, but it *should never be* performed as a part of data conditioning of the powder diffraction pattern for fitting and/or Rietveld refinement.

4.3.4 Peak search

Fast and reliable peak search or peak localization is needed in order to conduct either or both qualitative and quantitative phase analysis or database search for matching pattern(s). One of the most reliable (in terms of peak recognition), but far from the fastest techniques, is locating peaks manually, i.e. visually. This can be done in two ways: using the position of the peak maximum or the mid-point of the peak's full width at half maximum. Both cases require removing the $K\alpha_2$ contribution. If the latter is not done, positions of both low angle peaks (where $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ contributions essentially coincide) and high angle peaks (where these components are nearly completely resolved) will be determined for the $K\alpha_1$ components. However, locations of peaks in the mid-angle range will be determined somewhere between those of the $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ components. Ideally, they should correspond to the weighted average $K\alpha$ wavelength (see *Table 2.1* in Chapter 2) but in reality this is difficult to achieve, especially when peak tops are used as their positions. When $K\alpha_2$ components are stripped before locating peaks, this problem is avoided and the positions of all peaks correspond to the $K\alpha_1$ part of the characteristic spectrum.

An automatic peak search is actually the simplest (one-dimensional) case in the more general two- or three-dimensional image recognition problem. Image recognition is easily done by a human eye and a brain but is hard to formalize when random errors are present and, therefore, difficult to automate. Many different approaches and methods have been developed; two of them are most often used in peak recognition and will be discussed here. These are: the second derivative method and the profile scaling technique.

The *second derivative method* is actually a combination of background subtraction, $K\alpha_2$ stripping and, if needed, smoothing, which are followed by

the calculation of the derivatives. This method is extremely sensitive to noise. As a result, when fast measured patterns with substantial random errors are employed, smoothing becomes practically mandatory. The second derivative method consists of calculating first and then second derivatives of $Y(2\theta)$ with respect to 2θ, and utilizing them in the determination of peak positions. The derivatives can be easily computed numerically as:

$$\frac{\partial Y_i}{\partial 2\theta_i} = \frac{Y_{i+1} - Y_i}{s} \text{ and } \frac{\partial^2 Y_i}{(\partial 2\theta_i)^2} = \frac{Y_{i+2} - 2Y_{i+1} + Y_i}{s^2} \tag{4.10}$$

where Y_i, Y_{i+1} and Y_{i+2} are the intensities of three consecutive data points and s is the data collection step. Instead of smoothing, it is possible to use a polynomial fit in the vicinity of every data point with the point in question located in the middle of a sequence. Once the coefficients of the polynomial are determined, both the first and second order derivatives are easily calculated analytically. For example, for a third order polynomial (a minimum of five sequential data points should be employed)

$$y = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d \tag{4. 11}$$

the first and second derivatives, respectively, are

$$y' = 3ax^2 + 2bx + c \tag{4.12}$$

and

$$y'' = 6ax + 2b \tag{4.13}$$

where x is the Bragg angle. When the argument of the polynomial is selected such that a point Y_i (for which the derivatives are calculated) is chosen in the origin of coordinates along the 2θ axis, i.e. when $x = 2\theta - 2\theta_i$, then the corresponding derivatives are simply c (Eq. 4.12) and $2b$ (Eq. 4.13).

Some peak search algorithms use the first derivative, which is reliable only for simple, well resolved patterns. The second derivative method works better with complex data. An example in *Figure 4.7*, top shows the profile representing two partially resolved Bragg peaks together with the first (middle) and second (bottom) derivatives. The first derivative is zero at the peak maximum and it changes sign from positive to negative when the Bragg angle increases. The second derivative reveals each peak in a much more reliable fashion, i.e. as a sequence of negative values of the function, which are hatched in *Figure 4.7* for clarity.

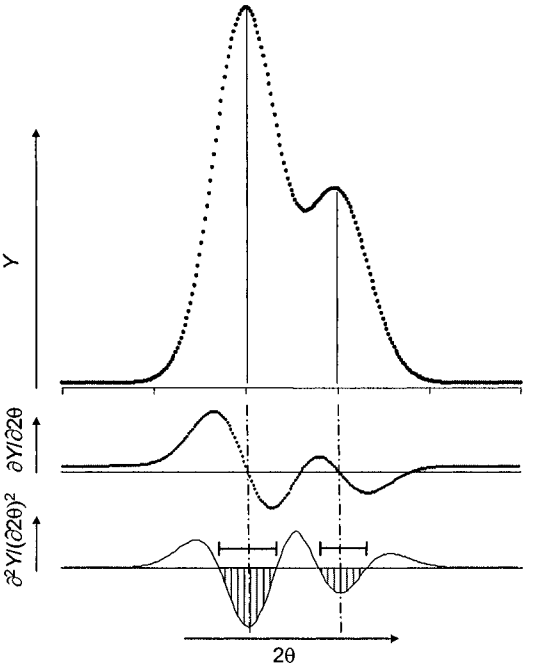


Figure 4.7. Intensity distribution in two partially resolved Bragg peaks (top) and the corresponding first (middle) and second (bottom) derivatives. The second derivative forms series of sequential negative regions (hatched), which represent both the maximum of each Bragg peak (coinciding with the minimum of the corresponding negative region) and the estimate of peak width near its half maximum (the width of the associated negative sequence).

To improve the detection, negative sequences in the second derivative are usually fitted to a parabolic function, thus resulting in a better precision of Bragg peak positions. The width of a Bragg peak can be estimated as the range of the associated negative region, since the second derivative changes its sign at each inflection point.

The example from *Figure 4.7* is simulated and therefore, unaffected by noise. Thus, the ranges where the second derivative becomes negative can be detected with confidence. When processing real data, false peaks will be found, especially in the background regions. To avoid finding an excessive number of false peaks, an automatic peak search is usually coupled with several limiting parameters, which should be established empirically for a given quality and complexity of the data. For example, the minimum observed intensity above which the search will be conducted excludes incompletely removed background; the minimum intensity above which a detected maximum would be considered as a peak excludes weak peaks; the minimum number of sequential negative values of the second derivative, which would be considered as the manifestation of a peak, excludes noise.

The results of an automatic peak search can be further improved by adding real and/or removing false peaks manually. An example of such a peak search is shown in *Figure 4.8.*

The *profile scaling* peak search algorithm employs a realistic analytical peak shape, e.g. Pearson VII or pseudo-Voigt functions. This approach does not require $K\alpha_2$ stripping or smoothing. Background subtraction may still be necessary if the fitting algorithm does not account for its presence. The simplest method uses the chosen peak shape function with preset parameters, which may be adjusted manually. An improved approach is to use a well resolved and strong Bragg peak to determine the peak shape parameters, which are better suited to the actual data. The resulting normalized analytical shape is then moved along the diffraction pattern and its intensity (which is simply a multiplier, i.e. scale factor) is calculated by means of a linear least squares technique (see Chapter 5, section 5.13.1) to produce the best fit. Regions, which meet certain criteria, are stored as observed peaks.

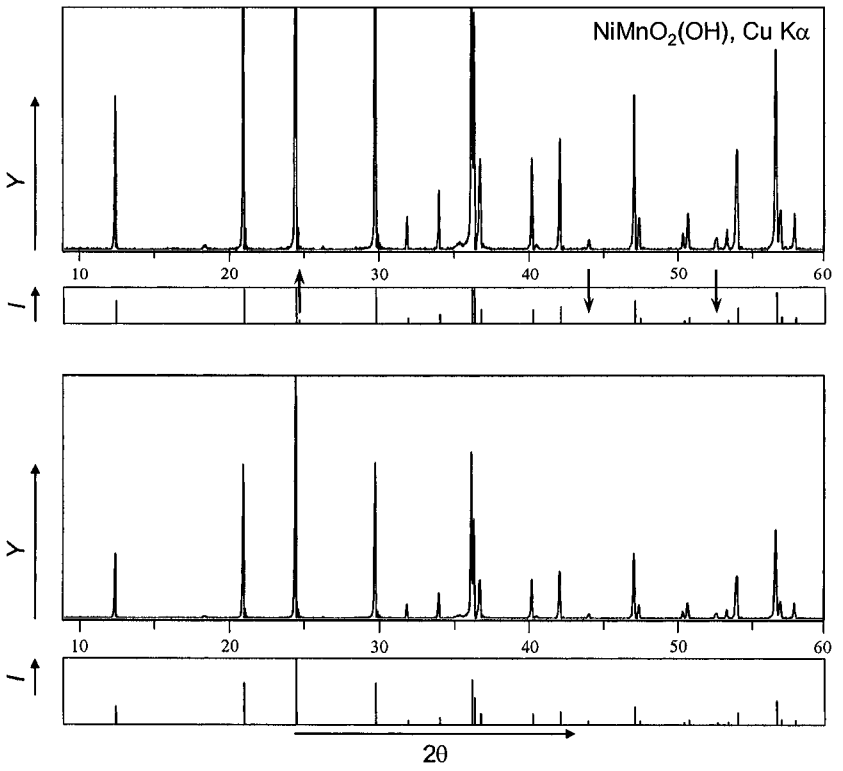


Figure 4.8. Automatic peak search conducted using a second derivative method (top) and manually corrected reduced pattern (bottom). The upward arrow placed on the digitized pattern shows a false peak (which was eliminated manually) and the downward arrows show the missed peaks (which were added manually).

If necessary, an automatic peak search may be repeated using the difference between the observed data and the sum of profiles of all detected peaks. As a result, weak and/or poorly resolved Bragg reflections, missed in the previous search, may be found. This simple profile scaling method yields relatively accurate peak positions and integrated intensities and, if anticipated by the algorithm and realized in a computer code, their FWHM's. Its use is growing proportionally to the increasing computer speed. Since the search remains automatic it may still require the adjustment of several empirical parameters to exclude the excessive appearance of false peaks or to improve the detection of weak Bragg reflections.

4.3.5 Profile fitting

Profile fitting is the most accurate, although the slowest and the most painstaking procedure resulting in observed peak positions, full widths at half maximum, and integrated intensities of individual Bragg reflections. It is based on minimization of the difference between observed and calculated profiles using a non-linear least squares technique (see Chapter 6, section 6.6). The calculated profile is represented as a sum of scaled profiles of all individual Bragg reflections detected in the whole pattern or in any part of the pattern plus an appropriate background function (see section 4.3.1). Individual peak profiles are described by one of the common peak shape functions, typically pseudo-Voigt or Pearson-VII (see Chapter 2, section 2.9). For conventional neutron diffraction data, a pure Gaussian function may be employed.[1] Generally, three types of parameters can be adjusted during the least squares fit:

- Peak positions (2θ), are normally refined for the $K\alpha_1$ components. If present, the locations of the $K\alpha_2$ constituents are established by Eq. 4.8.
- Peak shape parameters, which include full width at half maximum (H), asymmetry (α), and exponent (β) for Pearson-VII or mixing parameter (η) for pseudo-Voigt functions. All peak shape parameters are typically refined for $K\alpha_1$ reflections. The corresponding $K\alpha_2$ components are assumed to have H, α, β (or η) identical to $K\alpha_1$. In some applications, peak shape parameters may be fixed at certain commonly observed values, or they may only be adjusted manually.
- Integrated intensity (I), which is simultaneously a scaling factor for each individual peak shape, see Eq. 2.48 in Chapter 2. Typically the integrated intensity of the $K\alpha_1$ reflection is a free parameter and the intensity of the $K\alpha_2$ part (if present) is restricted as given in Eq. 4.9.

[1] It is worth noting, that when software on hand does not employ a Gauss peak shape function, it can be easily modeled by the pseudo-Voigt function using the fixed mixing parameter, $\eta = 1$.

Overall, up to five parameters per diffraction peak can be refined: 2θ, I, H, α, and β (or η). In order to proceed with profile fitting using non-linear least squares refinement, all parameters should be assigned reasonable initial values. This is usually achieved in the following way:

- Approximate peak positions can be obtained using visual localization, or from the automatic peak search, or they may be calculated from unit cell dimensions, if the latter are known.
- Approximate peak shape parameters can be preset to some practical or default values. They may be visually estimated from the pattern (the easiest is the full width at half maximum) and/or determined from a single, well resolved strong Bragg peak.
- Approximate integrated intensity is easily established automatically: when only "scale factors" of individual peak shapes are of concern, a linear least squares technique can be employed to find them relatively precisely (see Chapter 5, section 5.13.1 for a description of the method and Eq. 2.48 in Chapter 2, which indicates that the governing equations are indeed linear with respect to I).

All initial parameters can be approximate but they should be sufficiently precise to ensure that the non-linear least squares minimization converges. Approximate peak positions are among the most important, and they should fall within the range of each peak, or better yet, in the range of their full widths at half maximum. Usually this relatively vague localization of Bragg reflections is not a problem even when peak tops are chosen to represent initial peak positions. However, when processing clusters of Bragg reflections with considerable overlapping, the approximate peak locations should be as precise as possible to ensure the stability of the least squares minimization.

Depending on the quality of the pattern, profile fitting can be conducted in several different ways. They differ in how peak positions and peak shape parameters are handled, assuming that integrated intensities are always refined independently for each peak, and a single set of parameters describes a background within the processed range:

1. All possible variables (positions and shapes) are refined independently for each peak or with some constraints. For example, an asymmetry parameter is usually a variable, common for all peaks; full width at half maximum or even all peak shape function parameters may be common for all peaks, especially if a relatively narrow range of Bragg angles is processed. When justified by the quality of data, an independent fit of all or most parameters produces best results. A major problem in this approach (i.e. all parameters are free and unconstrained) occurs when clusters of reflections include both strong and weak Bragg peaks. Then, peak shape parameters corresponding to weak Bragg peaks may become

unreasonable. Furthermore, when several strong reflections heavily overlap (typically, when the difference in peak positions is only a small fraction of the full width at half maximum), their positions and especially integrated intensities strongly correlate. As a result, a non linear least squares minimization may become unstable.

2. Positions of Bragg peaks are refined independently but the peak shape function parameters except asymmetry, which is usually identical for all peaks, are treated as corresponding functions of Bragg angle (see Chapter 2, section 2.9.1, Eqs. 2.49 to 2.52 and the following explanations). A major benefit of this approach is a more stable refinement of both the positions and intensities of weak Bragg peaks when they are randomly intermixed with strong reflections. A major drawback is its inability to correctly determine peak shape parameters when only weak peaks are present in the region included in the processing, or when a few strong peaks are grouped together, thus preventing a stable determination of relevant nonlinear dependencies over a broad range of Bragg angles.
3. Peak locations are defined by lattice parameters, which are refined, while peak positions are calculated using Eqs. 2.29 to 2.37 (see Chapter 2, section 2.8). Peak shape parameters are handled as described in item 2, above, and rarely as in item 1. This approach is possible only when unit cell dimensions are known at least approximately. Therefore, this is no longer an unbiased preliminary data processing but it rather becomes a full pattern decomposition using Pawley or Le Bail methods, which are discussed later (Chapter 6). This refinement is often used to obtain accurate lattice parameters without employing other structural details. A major benefit here is relatively precise integrated intensities, which are usable for solving the crystal structure from first principles (see Chapter 2, section 2.14). A major drawback is that any full pattern decomposition approach requires knowledge of the lattice parameters and symmetry, and therefore, is unsuitable for an unbiased determination of both the positions and integrated intensities of Bragg reflections.

Examples of profile fitting shown below were obtained using the DMSNT software. It employs two peak shape functions: the Pearson-VII for symmetric peaks and the split Pearson-VII to treat the asymmetric peaks. All peak shape parameters can be refined independently; all or any of them can be fixed. There is no mechanism to constrain peak shape parameters, e.g. to make some or all of them common for several peaks, or to treat them as corresponding functions of 2θ. Therefore, in many cases when substantial peak overlapping is observed, and/or when data are of relatively low quality and resolution, profile fitting becomes unstable and does not converge. Moreover, background must be subtracted prior to profile fitting, as its refinement is not implemented and, therefore, not allowed.

The following examples were obtained using powder diffraction data collected from a polycrystalline sample of the orthorhombic polymorph of $NiMnO_2(OH)$. Data collection was carried out by using Cu Kα radiation on a Scintag XDS2000 powder diffractometer with a step $\Delta 2\theta = 0.02°$. The background was subtracted by manually specifying background points (see *Figure 4.4*c) and Bragg reflections were located using an automatic peak search. No $K\alpha_2$ stripping/smoothing of the data had been performed.

Figure 4.9 illustrates initial observed and calculated profiles between ~29 and ~43° 2θ obtained without refinement of peak shape parameters; integrated intensities were determined from linear least squares. A symmetrical Pearson-VII peak shape function, accounting for both $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ components, was employed. This and the following figures describing profile fitting consist of three parts: the box on top illustrates the observed and calculated patterns; the histogram in the middle shows positions and heights of the accounted Bragg peaks; and the bottom chart illustrates the difference between the observed and calculated intensities. The bottom box is of fixed height and the graph is scaled to this height to clarify the details. The difference plot may also be drawn using a scale identical to the observed and calculated patterns, which makes them easy to compare.

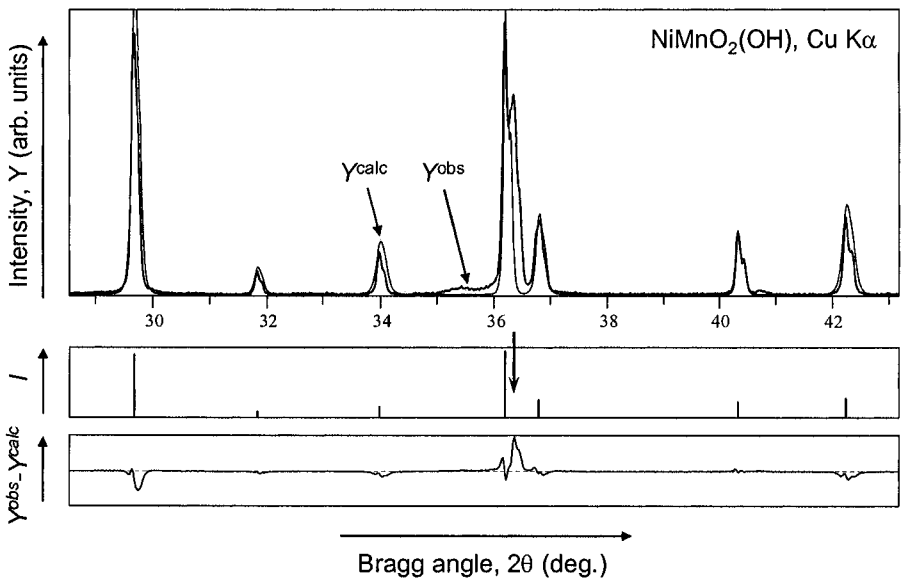


Figure 4.9. Observed (thick line) and calculated (thin line) intensity profiles in a fragment of the powder diffraction pattern of $NiMnO_2(OH)$. The position of the missing peak is indicated by a downward facing arrow. Symmetrical Pearson-VII function with default peak shape parameters was used in this example.

As indicated in *Figure 4.9*, one strong peak in the middle (around 36.3°) had been overlooked during the automatic search. Its absence is easily detected from the analysis of the difference plot. The peak was included into the next step and the result is shown in *Figure 4.10*.

Profile fitting was performed using both unit weights and weights based on statistical spreads of intensity data.[1] The resulting plots are shown in *Figure 4.11* and *Figure 4.12*, respectively. Unit weights result in a good fit only at peak tops. When the contribution of both low and high intensity data points have been equalized by introducing an appropriate weighting scheme, both peak tops and bases are represented equally well. It is easy to see by comparing *Figure 4.11* with *Figure 4.12*, that weights based on intensity errors make the least squares fit more reliable (remember, that the scales in these two difference plots are different and they have been scaled to fit the entire chart for better visibility). This weighting scheme was retained through the end of the profile fitting.

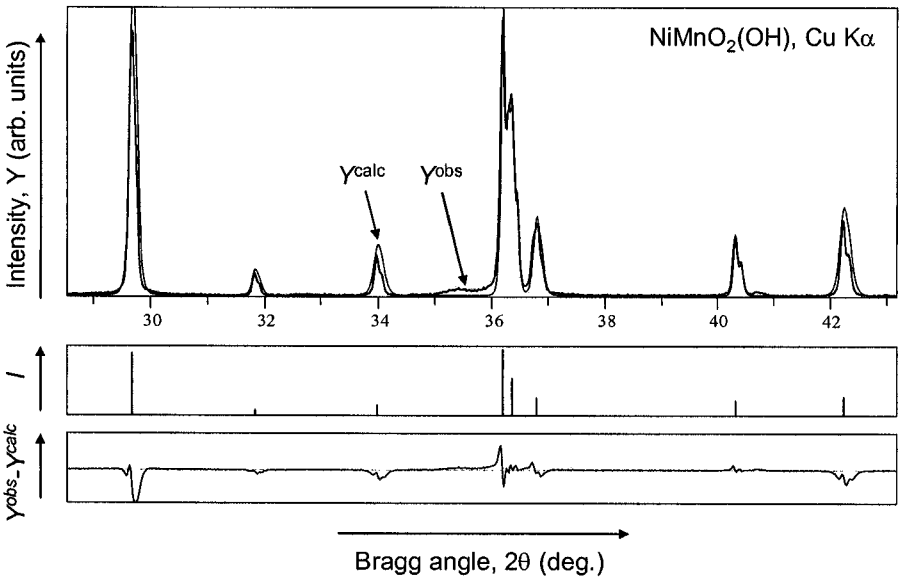


Figure 4.10. Observed and calculated intensity in a fragment of the powder diffraction pattern of $NiMnO_2(OH)$ after adding the missing peak (compare with *Figure 4.9*).

[1] Weighting in both linear and non-linear least squares is described in section 5.13.1, Chapter 5 and section 6.6, Chapter 6, respectively. When unit weights are employed, each data point contributes to the least squares solution equally. When weights are based on statistical spreads, this usually means that each data point is included into the least squares minimization with the weight inversely proportional to the square of the corresponding statistical error. Thus, $w_i = 1/Y_i$ (also see Eq. 3.8 in Chapter 3). Another weighting scheme commonly used in profile fitting is $w_i = 1/(Y_i + \sqrt{Y_i})$.

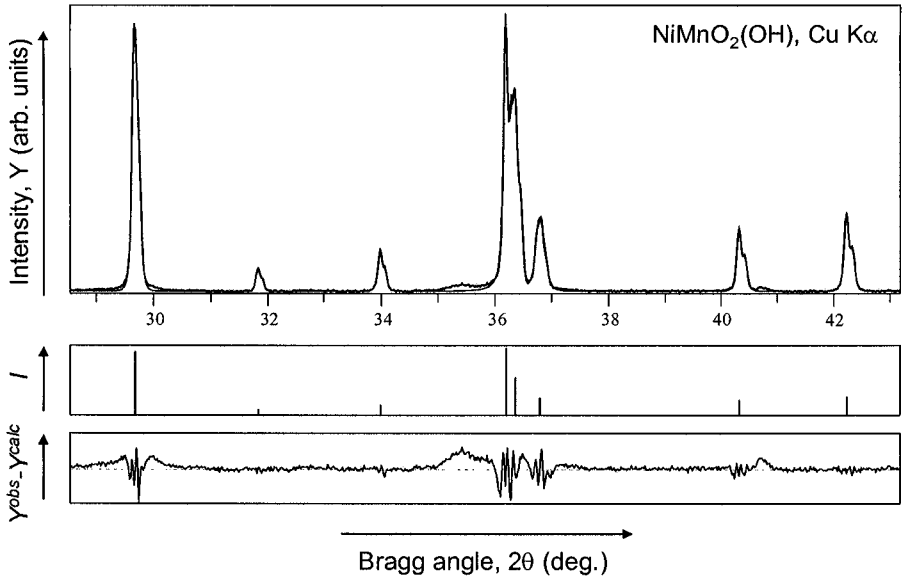


Figure 4.11. Observed and calculated intensity in a fragment of the powder diffraction pattern of $NiMnO_2(OH)$ after least squares refinement using unit weights (compare with *Figure 4.10*).

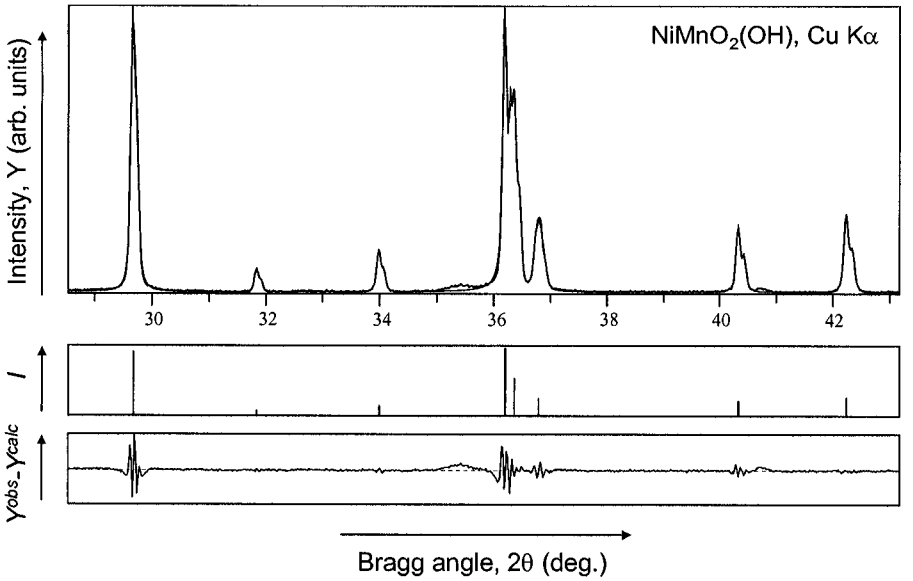


Figure 4.12. Observed and calculated intensity in a fragment of the powder diffraction pattern of $NiMnO_2(OH)$ after least squares refinement using weights inversely proportional to Y_i^{obs}.

The difference plots in *Figure 4.11* and *Figure 4.12* point to the presence of two broad peaks near 35 and 41° 2θ. The overall improvement after these peaks were included in the fit is shown in *Figure 4.13*. We note that absolute differences between the observed and calculated profiles in the vicinities of strong reflections are usually greater when compared to those in the background and weak peaks regions. However, relative variances ($\Delta Y_i/Y_i$) do not differ substantially.

The $Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc}$ under peaks change sign several times, and they are distributed nearly evenly both above and below the zero difference line. This behavior indicates that the discrepancies between Y_i^{obs} and Y_i^{calc} are due to random intensity errors. If this is the case, profile fitting is likely correct, and the discrepancies can be reduced (i.e. the quality of fit can be improved), if desired, by employing better quality data, for example, collected in a longer experiment. Distinct non-randomness in the distribution in $Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc}$ under the peaks points to one or several problems with profile fitting, which may be due to the wrong peak shape function, excessive asymmetry when axial divergence was too high, a small amount of second phase if the sample was inhomogeneous or, perhaps, peak splitting that manifests pseudo symmetry. Then, the measured Bragg reflections' profiles should be visually examined and analyzed to identify the reasons and properly account for the observed systematic discrepancies.

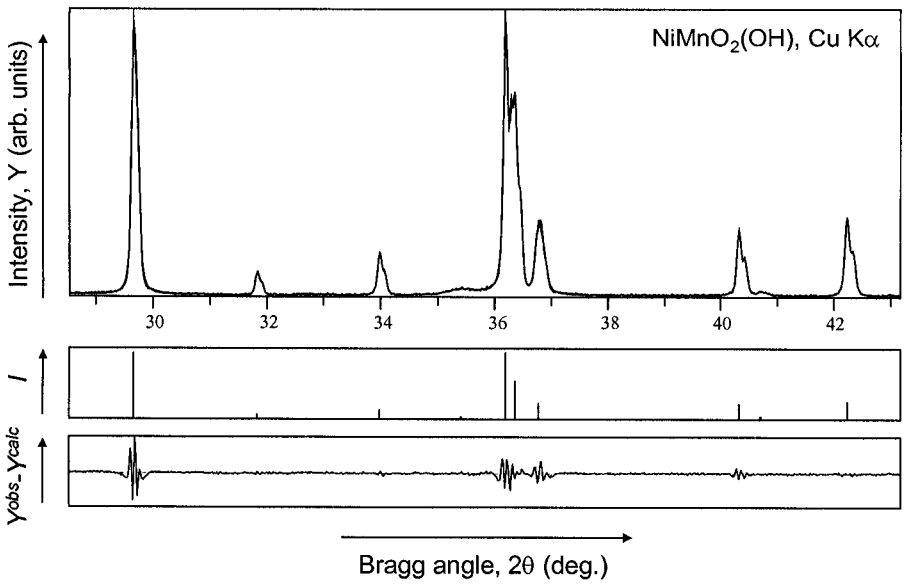


Figure 4.13. Observed and calculated intensity in a fragment of the powder diffraction pattern of $NiMnO_2(OH)$ after adding two broad peaks at $2\theta \cong 35.4$ and ~40.8°.

Examples of fitting a whole profile simultaneously are shown in *Figure 4.14* and *Figure 4.15*. The former depicts the observed and calculated intensities after initial fitting has been performed using a Pearson VII function, proper weights ($w_i = 1/Y_i$), and peak positions found during an automatic peak search. The difference plot clearly reveals six weak peaks that were overlooked. The latter figure illustrates the result after all distinguishable peaks have been included in the fit.

To illustrate small differences, which may occur in profile fitting, consider the example shown in *Figure 4.16*. Here, the fit was performed using the same experimental data but employing a different algorithm, i.e. which is realized in the WinCSD[1] software. This algorithm uses a different peak shape function (pseudo-Voigt) and it also allows refinement of a whole pattern or any fraction of the pattern. The full width at half maximum can be constrained to a single parameter common for all peaks within the range or it may be refined for each peak individually. The asymmetry (α) and mixing parameter (η) are always common for all peaks within the range included into the fit. The background is refined using a polynomial function. In this particular example, full widths at half maximum were refined separately for each individual peak, while α and η were common for all peaks.

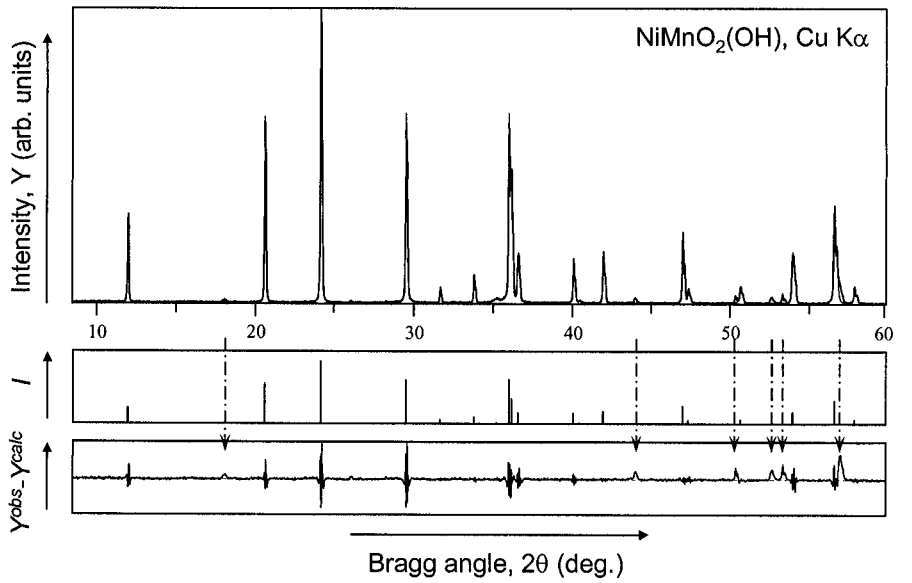


Figure 4.14. Observed and calculated intensity in the powder diffraction pattern of $NiMnO_2(OH)$ after fitting using a Pearson-VII function. Downward facing dash-dotted arrows indicate the positions of six weak Bragg peaks not included in the fit.

[1] Available from STOE & Cie, Gmbh (http://www.stoe.com/products/index.htm).

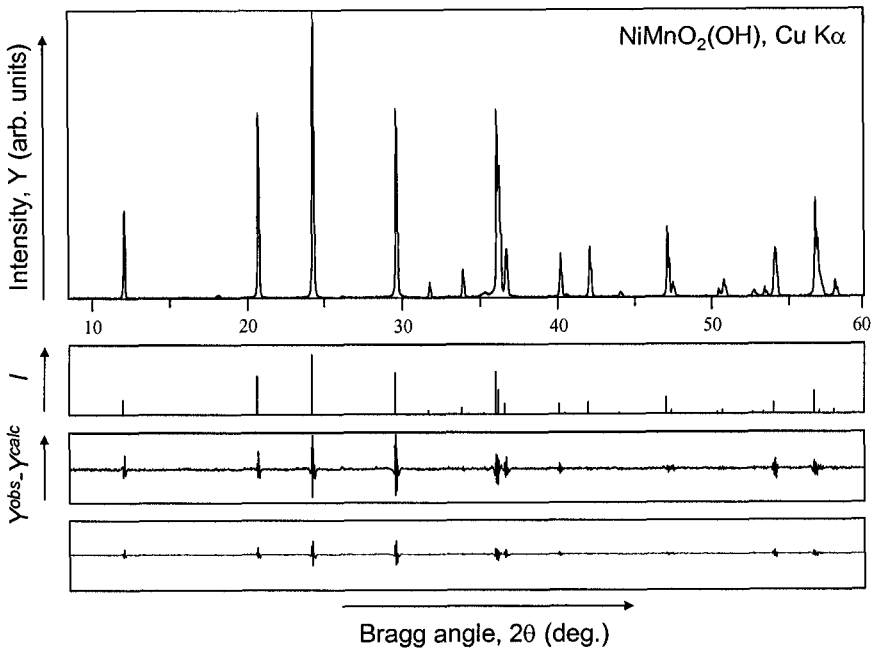


Figure 4.15. Observed and calculated intensity in the powder diffraction pattern of $NiMnO_2(OH)$ after the completion of profile fitting using the DMSNT program. A symmetrical Pearson-VII function was employed and all present Bragg peaks were included in the fit. The box at the bottom shows the difference between the observed and calculated intensities using the same scale as on the plot of both Y^{obs} and Y^{calc}.

The values of the observed Bragg angles, full widths at half maximum, and integrated intensities obtained using both the DMSNT and WinCSD programs are assembled in *Table 4.1.* The differences in Bragg angles and intensities of sharp peaks are statistically insignificant. The average FWHM varies from ~0.08° at the beginning to ~0.14° at the end of the pattern. Thus, the broad peak at $2\theta \cong 35.4°$ likely belongs to an impurity phase.[1] Full widths at half maximum of several weak Bragg reflections are noticeably inflated, which often happens when weak peaks are fitted using individual FWHM's. As seen in *Figure 4.17*, the general trend in the two distributions of FWHM as functions of Bragg angle is normal. However, the deviations from dependencies discussed in section 2.9.1 are substantial, especially for weak peaks. The spread in FWHM's can be reduced by increasing quality of the data (by improving counting statistics) and/or by improving the stability of non-linear least squares using a choice of FWHM constraints.

[1] Weak Bragg reflection at $2\theta \cong 18.1°$ also belongs to an impurity, present in this powder sample. Its full width at half maximum determined using DMSNT is nearly identical to those of neighboring peaks, while WinCSD indicates a much broader peak shape.

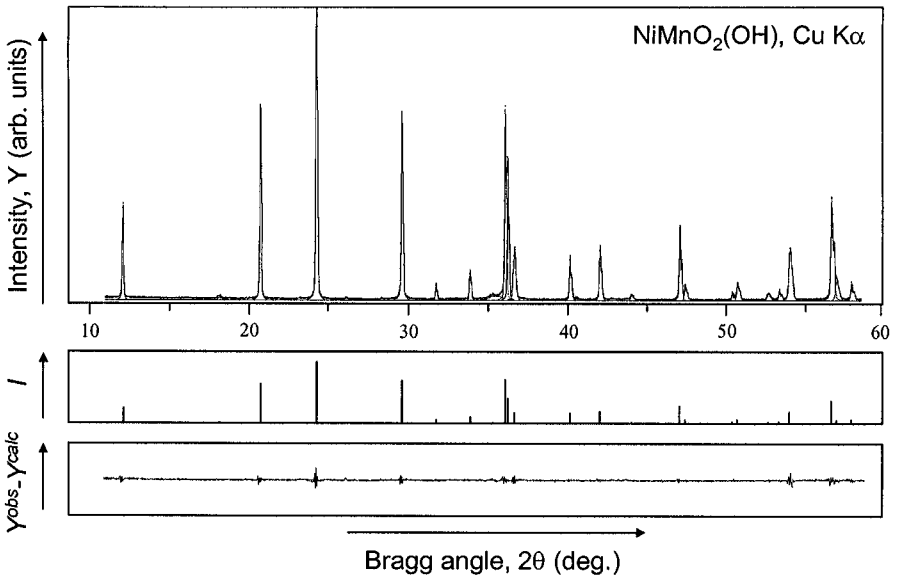


Figure 4.16. Observed and calculated intensity in the powder diffraction pattern of $NiMnO_2(OH)$ after the completion of profile fitting employing the WinCSD program. Pseudo-Voigt function was employed and all present Bragg peaks were included in the fit. The box at the bottom shows the difference between the observed and calculated intensities using the scale identical to that on the plot of both Y^{obs} and Y^{calc}.

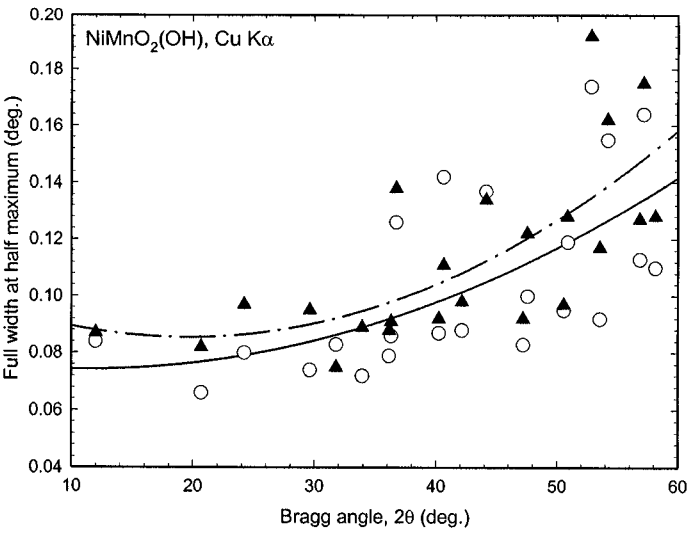


Figure 4.17. The distribution of full widths at half maximum as a function of Bragg angle obtained using DMSNT (open circles, solid line) and WinCSD (filled triangles, dash-dotted line) algorithms. The lines represent parabolic fit of the two sets of data to illustrate the trend.

Table 4.1. Results of profile fitting of the powder diffraction pattern of $NiMnO_2(OH)$ using DMSNT and WinCSD software as shown in *Figure 4.15* and *Figure 4.16*, respectively.

DMSNT				WinCSD		
2θ (°)	*Y*(max)[a]	FWHM (°)	Area[b]	2θ (°)	FWHM (°)	Area[b]
11.998	235	0.084	226	12.007	0.087	236
18.098[c]	**10**	**0.089**	**15**	**18.095**[c]	**0.221**	**16**
20.678	641	0.066	544	20.683	0.082	534
24.219	1000	0.080	1000	24.222	0.097	1000
29.624	678	0.074	656	29.625	0.095	646
31.789	53	0.083	46	31.792	0.075	45
33.937	106	0.072	103	33.939	0.089	96
35.395[c]	**11**	**0.708**	**118**	**35.533**[c]	**1.070**	**120**
36.144	672	0.079	687	36.144	0.088	626
36.312	397	0.086	359	36.312	0.091	419
36.726	160	0.126	246	36.728	0.138	237
40.257	156	0.087	159	40.259	0.092	157
40.637	8	0.142	15	40.641	0.111	9
42.159	192	0.088	210	42.159	0.098	203
44.148	18	0.137	36	44.157	0.134	25
47.212	270	0.083	277	47.214	0.092	268
47.570	52	0.100	72	47.566	0.122	64
50.567	28	0.095	31	50.568	0.097	29
50.893	62	0.119	87	50.893	0.128	86
52.834	20	0.174	36	52.840	0.192	43
53.557	34	0.092	46	53.555	0.117	40
54.213	176	0.155	292	54.213	0.162	312
56.864	367	0.113	513	56.864	0.127	503
57.178	60	0.164	118	57.176	0.175	125
58.145	59	0.110	82	58.146	0.128	82

[a] Peak heights normalized to 1000.
[b] Area represents integrated intensity; normalized to 1000.
[c] Impurity peaks are shown in bold.

The most significant differences in the algorithms employed in both DMSNT and WinCSD are listed in *Table 4.2*. Overall, DMSNT results in slightly narrower peaks than WinCSD, while the difference in peak positions is in thousands of a degree. The largest observed difference is 0.009° for the first peak (disregarding the impurity peaks at 2θ ≅ 18.1 and ~35.4°), most likely due to a different treatment of asymmetry.[1] The stability of the refinement is better in WinCSD because fewer parameters per peak vary independently.

[1] Profile fitting using DMSNT has been performed employing a symmetrical Pearson VII function. Thus, asymmetry, which has the greatest effect on low Bragg angle peaks, was not accounted for. On the contrary, WinCSD employs a simple but effective model (as long as asymmetry is not severe), in which full widths are different on both sides of the peak maximum, see section 2.9.2 in Chapter 2.

Table 4.2. Major differences in profile fitting algorithms realized in DMSNT and WinCSD.

Property	DMSNT	WinCSD
Peak shape function	Pearson VII or split Pearson VII	pseudo-Voigt
Parameters per peak	4 (Pearson VII) or 6 (split Pearson VII)	3
Common parameters	0	5
Background	Must be subtracted	Refined as a second order polynomial
FWHM	Individual	Individual or common for all peaks
Exponent (β)	Individual	N/A
Mixing parameter (η)	N/A	Common for all peaks
Asymmetry	Individual using split Pearson VII	Common for all peaks

4.4 Phase identification and analysis

Each powder diffraction pattern is characterized by a unique distribution of both positions and intensities of Bragg peaks, where peak positions are defined by the unit cell dimensions and reflection intensities are established by the distribution of atoms in the unit cell of every crystalline phase present in the sample (see *Table 2.7* in Chapter 2). Thus, every individual crystalline compound has its own "fingerprint", which enables the utilization of powder diffraction data in phase identification.[1]

A digitized representation of powder data is quite compact and is especially convenient for comparison with other patterns, provided a suitable database is available. In addition to a digitized pattern, each entry in such a database may (and usually does) contain symmetry, unit cell dimensions, and other useful information: phase name, chemical composition, references, basic physical and chemical properties, etc. Powder diffraction databases find substantial use in both simple identification of compounds (qualitative analysis) and in quantitative determination of the amounts of crystalline phases present in a mixture (quantitative analysis).

[1] The diffraction pattern from a single crystal is also unique but due to the complexity of a three-dimensional distribution of intensities, phase recognition is difficult to formalize. Powder data are one-dimensional, and they can be converted into digitized patterns, which are in a way, unique barcodes enabling automated pattern recognition.

4.4.1 Crystallographic databases

Phase identification using powder diffraction data requires a comparison of several key features[1] present in its digitized pattern with known compounds/phases. This is usually achieved by searching powder diffraction database(s) for records, which match experimentally measured and digitized pattern. Thus, a powder diffraction database or at least its subset should be available in addition to a suitable search-and-match algorithm.

The most complete and most often used powder diffraction database is the Powder Diffraction File™ (PDF), which is maintained and periodically updated by the International Centre for Diffraction Data (ICDD®). PDF is a commercial database, and complete information about both the ICDD and Powder Diffraction File is available on the Web at http://www.icdd.com. This database is quite unique: it contains either or both the experimentally measured and calculated digitized powder patterns for hundreds of thousands of compounds, including minerals, metals and alloys, inorganic materials, organic compounds and pharmaceuticals. The PDF is available as a whole or in subsets. Each record in the database is historically called the card.[2]

An example of a PDF record is shown in *Figure 4.18*. There are eight fields on the card; they contain the following information (the numbers listed below are identical to the numbering of the fields in *Figure 4.18*):

1. Card number (48-1152[3]) on the left and data quality (Indexed) on the right. Quality assignments are made by the ICDD editors using stringent criteria.

[1] It is unfeasible to include the entire digitized powder pattern in the search and comparison because of inevitable random errors in both peak positions and intensities. Therefore, most often search-and-match is accomplished by using positions of several of the strongest Bragg reflections, which are least affected by variations in data collection and processing parameters. A method in which the initial match is based on three strongest Bragg peaks present in a powder diffraction pattern, known as the "Hanawalt search" [J.D. Hanawalt, H.W. Rinn, and L.K. Frevel, Chemical analysis by x-ray diffraction, Ind. Eng. Chem., Anal. Ed. **10**, 457 (1938)], remains in use today. For more details see R. Jenkins and R.L. Snyder, Introduction to x-ray powder diffractometry, John Wiley & Sons, NY (1996).

[2] Early versions of the Powder Diffraction File (also known as the JCPDS file) were distributed on index cards. The first edition of the file dates back to the 1941 release containing 4,000 cards describing powder diffraction patterns of ~1,300 compounds. It was compiled by the Joint Committee on Chemical Analysis by X-ray Powder Diffraction Methods and published by the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM). In 1969, the Joint Committee on Powder Diffraction Standards (JCPDS) was registered as a Pennsylvania nonprofit corporation and the current name (International Centre for Diffraction Data) was adopted in 1978. See W. Wong-Ng, H.F. McMurdie, C.R. Hubbard, and A.D. Mighell, JCPDS-ICDD research associateship (cooperative program with NBS/NIST), J. Res. Natl. Inst. Stand. Technol. **106**, 1013 (2001).

[3] Card (record) number consists of two parts: set number (48 in this example) and sequential number of the entry in the set (1152 for this particular card).

(1) 48-1152 Quality: Indexed

Li0.6 V1.67 O3.67 ! H2 O

(2) Lithium Vanadium Oxide Hydrate

(3) Rad:CuKa1 Lambda:1.54056 Filter: d sp:Diffractometer
Cutoff: Int:Diffractometer I/Icor:
Ref:Whittingham, M., SUNY at Binghamton, MaterialsResearch Center, NY, USA.Chyrayil, T., Zavalij, P., Whittingham, M., (1

(4) Sys:Tetragonal S.G.:I4/mmm
a:3.7047±0.0003 b: c:15.804±0.002
α: β: γ: Z:2 mp
Ref2
Dx:2.53 Dm:2.541 SS/FOM: F30=46.5(0.0161,40) Volume[CD]:216.91

(5) εα: ηωβ: εγ: Sign: 2V:
Ref3

(6) Color:

(7) Prepared by hydrothermal treatment of tetramethylammonium hydroxide, vanadium pentoxide and \Li O H\ acidified to pH 2-5 for 3 days at 200 C. Pattern taken at 23(1) C.

32 reflections in pattern.

(8)

2θ	Int.	h k l	2θ	Int.	h k l	2θ	Int.	h k l	2θ	Int.	h k l
11.2026	100	0 0 2	50.5721	8	0 2 2	72.0262	4	2 2 0	83.7228	1	0 1 13
22.4967	19	0 0 4	54.6668	3	0 2 4	73.1843	2	2 2 2	84.1343	1	0 3 5
24.6618	9	0 1 1	55.7443	2	1 2 1	76.5173	1	2 2 4			
29.4652	50	0 1 3	58.0669	3	0 1 9	77.4598	1	0 3 1			
33.9955	1	0 0 6	58.3367	13	1 2 3	79.4091	2	1 2 9			
34.2095	14	1 1 0	58.3367	13	0 0 10	79.6864	4	0 3 3			
36.0710	1	1 1 2	58.4543	4	1 1 8	79.6864	4	0 2 10			
37.3772	4	0 1 5	63.3383	3	1 2 5	81.7407	2	1 1 12			
47.1058	19	0 1 7	69.4008	10	1 1 10	82.1813	2	1 3 0			
49.1443	16	0 2 0	70.4377	7	1 2 7	83.3159	1	1 3 2			

Figure 4.18. Example of a record extracted from the ICDD Powder Diffraction File.[1]

2. General information about the compound:
   - Chemical, moiety or structural formula;
   - Compound name and moiety, mineral or other names, if any.
3. Experimental conditions:
   - Radiation, wavelength and experimental details;
   - Reference for the source of diffraction data.
4. Crystallographic data:
   - Crystal system and space group;
   - Unit cell dimensions, number of formula units in the unit cell (Z), melting point, if known;
   - Reference 2 – source of crystallographic data if different from the source of diffraction data;
   - Calculated and measured gravimetric density, F_N ($N \leq 30$) figure of merit (see section 5.5.1 in Chapter 5) and unit cell volume in Å^3.
5. Properties and corresponding reference, if any.

[1] The output shown here was obtained using LookPDF routine, which is available with the DMSNT software (Scintag Inc. and Radicon). Other programs may display PDF cards in different format. This card and records shown in *Figure 4.21* and *Figure 4.22* are courtesy of the ICDD.

6. Color.
7. Comments, which include:
   - Source and preparation of the compound;
   - Temperature, pressure and other preparation conditions.
8. Digitized pattern. Each observed Bragg reflection is listed with:
   - ^/-spacing or 29 angle;
   - Intensity normalized to 100;
   - Miller indices *hkl,* if the pattern has been indexed.

The ICDD's PDF is well suited for identifying digitized powder patterns, and many manufacturers of powder diffractometers offer optional software for searching this database. Nonetheless, the PDF is not a complete database, which is nearly impossible to achieve anyway. The information included in the PDF is mostly collected from published powder data and from records produced upon ICDD request.[1] At the time of writing this book, the ICDD database exists in two formats: PDF-2 preserves a classic text-based format that allows one to search-match using positions and intensities of several strong Bragg peaks in addition to searching a limited number of other fields; PDF-4 is build on relational database technology that provides searchable access to all data fields.

In addition to a vast number of included entries and a comprehensive quality control, the usefulness of the Powder Diffraction File is established by the ability to perform searches based strictly on the digitized patterns, i.e. without prior knowledge of the unit cell dimensions and/or other crystallographic and chemical data. Similar searches may also be carried out using several different existing databases: e.g. Pauling File and Mineralogy Database and, perhaps, a few others (see *Table 4.3),* which are, however, not as comprehensive as the PDF. For example, the Pauling File is currently limited to binary compounds,[2] while the Mineralogy Database is dedicated to naturally occurring and synthetic minerals. More detailed and recent (as of 2002) information about a variety of crystallographic databases can be found in a special joint issue of Acta Crystallographica, Sections B and D (also see references 6 through 13 in section 4.5).[3]

[1] ICDD makes limited funds available to researchers interested in processing and submitting new experimental patterns for incorporation into the Powder Diffraction File. More information about the ICCD's Grant-in-Aid program can be found at http://www.icdd.com.

[2] A multinary edition of the Pauling File is planned for the year 2005.

[3] Acta Crystallographica is an international journal published by the International Union of Crystallography in five sections: Section A (Foundations of Crystallography); Section B (Structural Science); Section C (Crystal Structure Communications); Section D (Biological Crystallography), and Section E (Structure Reports Online). Special joint issue: Acta Cryst. **B58,** 317-422 (2002) and Acta Cryst. **D58,** 879-920 (2002). Table of contents is available at http://journals.iucr.org/index.html.

Table 4.3. Common computer searchable crystallographic databases.

Database	Content/Compounds	No. of entries
ICDD[a] - Powder Diffraction File	PDF-2 or PDF-4 Full File. Both experimental and calculated from ICSD data.	~149,000: ~90,000^{EXPER} ~69,000^{CALC}
	PDF-4 Organics: organic and metal organic compounds. Both experimental and calculated from CSD data.	>137,000: ~122,000^{CALC} ~25,000^{EXPER}
NIST[b] - Crystal Data	Unit cell, symmetry and references.	>200,000
Pauling File[c]	All inorganic (i.e. compounds without C-H bonds) ordered solid materials. Contains structural, diffraction, constitutional (phase diagrams), and physical property data.	28,300 structures, 30,000 patterns, 8,000 diagrams 17,300 property data
ICSD[d] - Inorganic Crystal Structure Data	Inorganic crystal structures, with atomic coordinates, 1915 to date.	64,734
CSD[e] - Cambridge Structural Database	Crystal structures of organic and metal organic compounds (carbon containing molecules with up to 1000 atoms)	257,162
CRYSMET[f] - Metals and Alloys Database	Critically evaluated crystallographic data for metals, including alloys, intermetallics and minerals.	~70,000
PDB - Protein Data Bank;[g] Nucleic Acids Database[h]	Structures of proteins. Structures of oligonucleotides and nucleic acids.	18,566 1,904
IZA[i] - Zeolite database	All zeolite structure types: crystallographic data, drawings, framework, and simulated patterns	136 types
Mineralogy Database[j]	Mineral species descriptions with links to structure and properties. X-ray diffraction list (3 strongest peaks).	4,255

[a] Release 2002. The International Centre for Diffraction Data (http://www.icdd.com).

[b] Release 1997. National Institute of Standards and Technology (http://www.nist.gov/srd/nist3.htm). Distributed by ICDD.

[c] Release 2002. The Binaries edition database developed in cooperation between JST (Japan Science and Technology Corporation, Tokyo, Japan) and MPDS (Material Phases Data System, Vitznau, Switzerland); http://www.paulingfile.com/.

[d] Release December 2002. The ICSD is produced by FIZ (Fachsinformationzentrum) Karlsruhe, Germany (http://www.fiz-informationsdienste.de/en/DB/icsd/produkte.html), in collaboration with NIST, U.S.A.

[e] Release April 2002. Produced by Cambridge Crystallographic Data Centre (CCDC) (http://www.ccdc.cam.ac.uk/prods/csd/csd.html).

[f] CRYSTMET® is maintained by Toth Information Systems, 2045 Quincy Avenue, Gloucester, Ontario K1J 6B2, Canada. (http://www.tothcanada.com/Crystmet.htm).

[g] Release August 2002. PDB is maintained by the Research Collaboratory for Structural Bioinformatics (http://www.rcsb.org/pdb/holdings.html).

[h] Release July 2002. Rutgers University, NJ, U.S.A. (http://ndb-mirror-2.rutgers.edu/)

[i] IZA (International Zeolite Association) zeolite database is maintained by IZA structure commission. Available on-line at http://www.iza-structure.org/databases/.

[j] Update July 2002. Mineralogy Database is available on-line at http://webmineral.com/.

When experimental data remain unidentified using a digitized pattern-based search-match, different databases should be checked before drawing a conclusion that a material is new. Continuing searches, however, usually require unit cell dimensions and therefore, a powder pattern should be indexed prior to the search. There are a variety of databases dedicated to different classes of compounds and containing different information as shown in *Table 4.3*.[1]

For example, two comprehensive databases, ICSD and CSD, contain crystallographic data and structural information about inorganic, and organic and metal organic compounds, respectively, while NIST database encompasses all types of compounds but provides only crystal data with references. Other databases are dedicated to specific classes of materials, such as metals and alloys, proteins and macromolecules, minerals or zeolites. Search-match utilities are usually provided with databases or they may be obtained separately.

Given a large variety and differences in the contents of existing databases, a material can be identified from its powder diffraction pattern by first, searching an appropriate powder diffraction database/file using a digitized powder diffraction pattern. If a search was successful, the identification may be considered complete after matching the entire digitized pattern, not just the few key features included in the search. If a search was unsuccessful, the pattern should be indexed and unit cell dimensions should be determined (see Chapter 5). When both symmetry and unit cell are known, all relevant databases should be searched.[2] In the case of a suspected match, the powder diffraction pattern should be modeled from the known crystal structure of a material found in a database. Both the observed and computed patterns should be compared as a whole, in order to ensure proper identification.

Recently the ICDD Powder Diffraction File underwent a substantial and useful upgrade: calculated patterns based on single crystal data from the ICSD file have been included into the PDF-2/PDF-4 Full File; calculated patterns of structures stored in the CSD file, have been included into the PDF-4 Organics (see *Table 4.3*). These additions make it possible to conduct searches and find matches with computed digitized powder patterns in addition to experimentally measured powder diffraction data, thus improving automation, simplifying phase identification process and considerably expanding the applicability of the powder method for a qualitative phase analysis.

[1] Full list of databases related to crystallography can be found at http://www.iucr.org/cww-top/data.index.html.

[2] It makes little sense to search organic and metal organic structures database if the material from which powder diffraction data were collected is inorganic, and *vice versa*.

4.4.2 Phase identification and qualitative analysis

Qualitative and quantitative phase analyses are, basically, the two sides of a coin because they answer two questions: "What?" and "How much?", respectively, applicable to crystalline phases present in a powder. No matter how straightforward phase identification, i.e. qualitative analysis, may appear (it simply implies comparison of positions and intensities of observed Bragg reflections with those stored in a database), the problem is far from trivial. The complexity in finding the right pattern arises from unavoidable experimental errors that are present in all patterns, i.e. the analyzed and those located in a database, and from ambiguities that are intrinsic to comparing images. Thus, phase identification may be performed either or both visually and/or using automatic searches. In reality, qualitative analysis is nearly always a combination of both.

The manual approach is simple and doable when a small subset of database entries is singled out as potential matches with the observed powder pattern. Practically always, it is employed as a final step to finalize the automatic search and to select the best among several feasible matching patterns. A manual search may be done visually, by comparing a plot representing raw or digitized experimental pattern with digitized patterns found in a database, or it may be performed digitally, by comparing lists of a few strong, usually low Bragg angle reflections. Strictly manual searches are justified when there are a few unidentified reflections in a pattern, a case when an automatic search is ineffective and usually fails.

Manual phase identification can be performed using searchable or alphabetical PDF indexes, available from the ICDD. These indexes include detailed instructions about what information is required and how to accomplish the search. A searchable index is split into groups (classes) according to the d-spacing of the second strongest line, and phases inside the same group are sorted according to the d-spacing of the strongest line. An alphabetical index is usually employed when exact or at least approximate elemental composition of the phase is known.

An automatic search-and-match can be done much faster, and most importantly, using multiple Bragg reflections by seeking through enormous arrays of data, which a typical database contains. The algorithms employed to conduct automatic searches vary extensively, however, parameters that are critical in any search include the following:

- The number of Bragg reflections that should match in their positions (d-spacings, Q-values, or Bragg angles), and sometimes in their relative intensities.
- The number of strongest reflections from a database record included in the comparison.

- Window (or tolerance) – a difference in positions between the observed and database peaks: as long as the deviation remains below the tolerance (i.e. within the window), peaks are considered matching. The window may be specified as a range or 2θ, d-spacing, or other means commonly used to express peak positions.

Automatic searches may generate, and often do, a massive number of matches from which the right solution, if any, should be selected manually (more exactly – visually) by the user. To help in visual selection, matching patterns are usually sorted in order of a certain numerical figure of merit that includes an average difference in peak positions, number of matching reflections and, optionally, matching relative intensities. For example, the DMSNT search-match utility generates a list of up to 200 potentially similar patterns and the user may easily display histograms extracted from the Powder Diffraction File together with the observed powder pattern, as shown in *Figure 4.19*.

Depending on both the complexity and quality of the powder pattern, the number of found "matches" may become overwhelming. For example, if more than 200 similar patterns are found when using the DMSNT search utility, they cannot be stored for visual analysis and search parameters should be adjusted to narrow the range within which the patterns are accepted as similar. The number of hits can be reduced by using a narrower window, or by requesting more reflection positions to coincide, or use only the strongest reflections. An adjustment of parameters, however, should not be done from the very beginning because the correct solution may be easily overlooked. A common practice is to start from default search-match parameters and if the search was unsuccessful, increase the window or decrease the request for the number of matching reflections.

A powerful way to narrow the searching field is to include restrictions on the elemental composition. For example, the list of chemical elements can be specified and used in combination with the following search options:

1. "Inclusive OR" limits the search to phases containing at least one of the listed elements and any other elements, not included in the list;
2. "Inclusive AND" considers only phases containing all listed elements plus any chemical element not included in the list;
3. "Exclusive OR" checks phases containing any combination of the listed elements but no other chemical elements are allowed;
4. "Exclusive AND" seeks only patterns from phases containing all listed elements and nothing else.

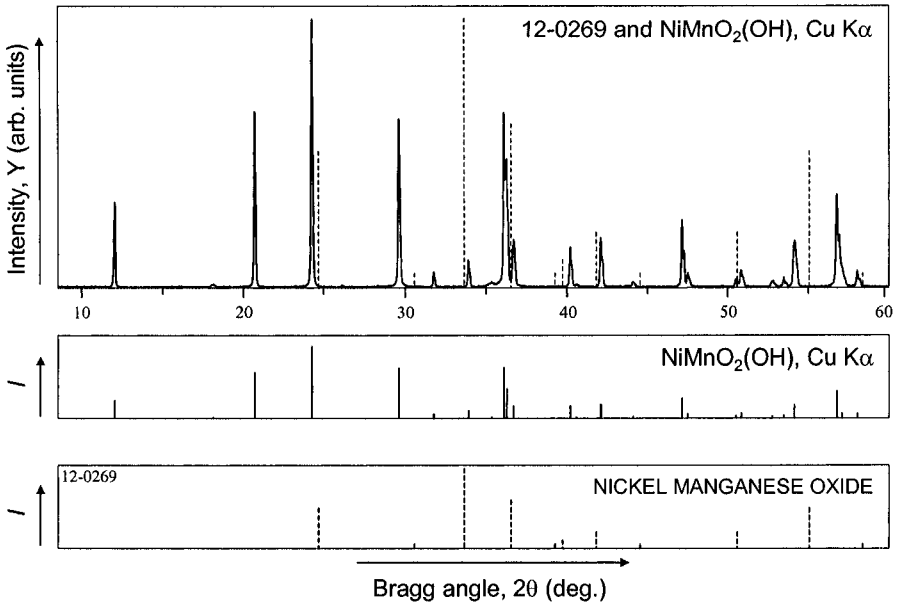


Figure 4.19. Illustration of an incorrect match: Bragg peaks observed in the experimental diffraction pattern of $NiMnO_2(OH)$, shown on top and in the middle (solid lines), do not match those present in the nickel manganese oxide, ICDD PDF card No. 12-0269 shown at the bottom and overlapped with the plot on top (dashed lines).

The last option is the most restrictive, while the first alternative is the most relaxed. For example, when V and O are included in the list, then "Exclusive AND" limits the search only to oxides of vanadium, while compounds containing other elements (e.g. vanadium hydroxides, vanadates, etc.) will not be considered and analyzed. On the other hand, "Inclusive AND" searches among all compounds containing both V and O in combination with any other chemical elements. The latter option may be useful, for example, when intercalates of vanadium oxides are suspected or studied.

When visually comparing potentially identical patterns, the following important issues should always be considered:

1. When there are a few strong reflections in the database record, all should be present in the analyzed experimental pattern. When even one of the strong peaks is missing in the analyzed pattern or it is present but has very low intensity, this match is likely incorrect, unless an extremely strong preferred orientation is possible in either pattern (but not in the both) and there is a legitimate reason for the two to be different.
2. Relative intensities should be analyzed carefully because significant discrepancies between experimental data and database entries may occur

due to different wavelengths, diffractometer geometry, sample shape, or the presence and extent of preferred orientation. Preferred orientation is an important factor, and in many cases, it is unavoidable. Furthermore, texture may be substantially different in different experiments, e.g. yours and that present in the database. Thus, the following rule should be applied when comparing intensities: a strong reflection in the database record should correspond to a strong peak in the analyzed pattern, and a weak reflection in the database record should correspond to a less intense peak in the analyzed pattern.

Even though all automatically found patterns are ranked according to certain matching criteria, visual analysis of at least several solutions (better yet, all that appear reasonable) is always recommended.

Once again, we will consider experimental data used as an example throughout this chapter (*Figure 4.3*). They were converted into a digitized pattern by background subtraction, $K\alpha_2$ stripping and smoothing, followed by automatic peak detection. The PDF search-match was restricted to phases containing Ni, Mn and O with the "Inclusive AND" option. Since relatively rigid restrictions were imposed on the chemical composition, search parameters were quite relaxed: the window was 0.06° of 2θ and only 2 Bragg reflections were required to coincide within the tolerance established by the window. About 20 matching patterns total were found. One of the suspected matches [$NiMnO_3$, card No. 12-0269] is shown in *Figure 4.19*. This record is far from the best match according to a calculated figure of merit and we use it as an example to illustrate the difference between good (*Figure 4.20*) and poor (*Figure 4.19*) matches.

It is easy to see from *Figure 4.19* that most Bragg reflections coincide only approximately (within a few tenths of a degree). Several strong peaks present in the database record have no match in the experimental pattern, e.g. the reflection at $2\theta \cong 55°$. The strongest peak at ~33.7° matches only approximately, but its intensity is much greater than that observed experimentally. Thus, this "match" may be easily dismissed, especially taking into account that better matches with much higher figures of merit were found.

Two PDF records coincide with the experimental pattern much better among all others, including both peak positions and their intensities. They are shown in *Figure 4.20*: $NiMnO_2(OH)$ (card No. 43-0318, *Figure 4.21*) and $NiMnO_3$ (card No. 49-1170, *Figure 4.22*). Actually, the latter two are isostructural compounds and, therefore, their patterns should be practically identical. The first record 43-0318 is, however, unindexed and consequently, the digitized pattern has doubtful quality (see the upper right corner in *Figure 4.21*).

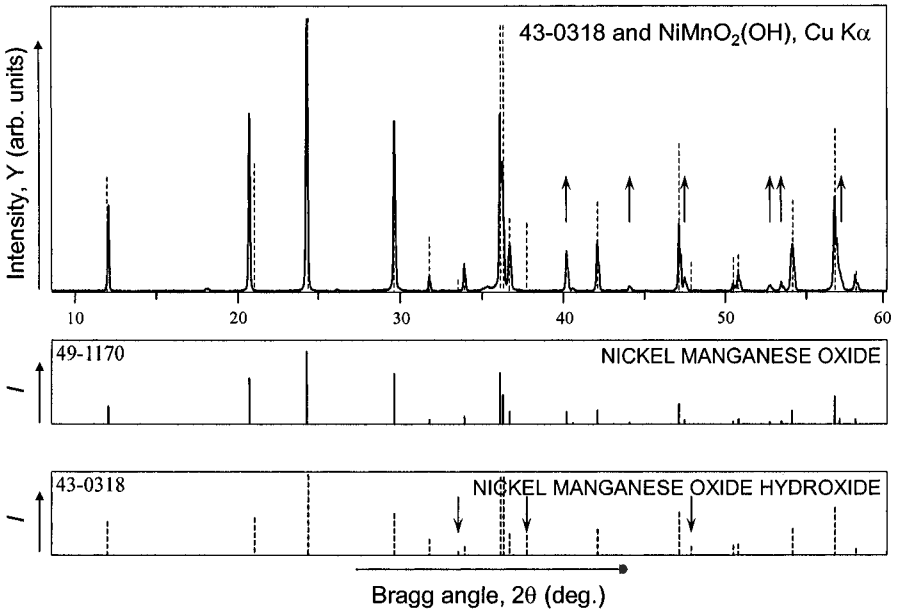


Figure 4.20. Experimental powder diffraction pattern of $NiMnO_2(OH)$ (top) compared with the digitized PDF records 49-1170 (middle, solid lines) and 43-0318 (bottom, dashed lines). Downward arrows indicate peaks present in the latter record but absent in the measured pattern. Upward arrows shown on the experimental pattern indicate observed Bragg peaks that are missing in the nickel manganese oxide hydroxide, ICDD record No. 43-0318.

Careful analysis of *Figure 4.20* indicates that six peaks in this card (43-0318) are clearly missing and three weak to medium intensity peaks have no match in the experimental pattern. The second record 49-1170, is almost a perfect match, but a hydrogen atom is missing in its chemical formula, as was determined later from neutron diffraction data.[1]

Achieving success in qualitative analysis by employing any search-match utility becomes more and more challenging as the complexity of the powder diffraction pattern increases, especially when a material is a mixture of several phases. Positive phase identification can be performed by removing peaks corresponding to all already known phases from the list and continuing searches of the database. Nevertheless, matching all possible records with the whole diffraction pattern may also work well. The first approach increases chances to detect and identify minor phases, whereas the second method avoids overlooking suitable records due to nearly complete peak overlaps.

[1] R. Chen, P.Y. Zavalij, M.S. Whittingham, J.E. Greedan, N.P. Raju, and M. Bieringer, The hydrothermal synthesis of the new manganese and vanadium oxides, $NiMnO_3H$, MAV_3O_7 and $MA_{0.75}V_4O_{10}{\cdot}0.67H_2O$ (MA = CH_3NH_3), J. Mater. Chem. **9**, 93 (1999).

43-0318 Quality: Doubtful quality

Ni Mn O2 (O H)
Nickel Manganese Oxide Hydroxide

Rad:FeKa Lambda:1.9373 Filter: d sp:Diffractometer
Cutoff: Int:Diffractometer I/Icor:
Ref:Yamamoto, N., 33 48, (1986)

Sys: S.G.:
a: b: c:
α: β: γ: Z: mp
Ref2
Dx: Dm: SS/FOM: Volume[CD]:0

εα: ηωβ: εγ: Sign: 2V:
Ref3

Color:

Prepared by hydrothermal treatment at 200-320 C and 100 MPa of an equimolar mixture of \Ni (O H)2\ and $GG-MnOOH in a 1N \N H4 O H\ solution. Chemical analysis (wt.%): Ni 36.0, Mn 34.0, H 0.58, O 29.4. O assigned because unindexed.

21 reflections in pattern.

2 θ	Int.	h k l	2 θ	Int.	h k l	2 θ	Int.	h k l	2 θ	Int.	h k l
11.9241	41.3		37.8012	24.5		63.4445	12				
21.0048	46.2		42.1740	32.1							
24.3059	99.9		47.2279	53.3							
29.6253	51.6		47.9692	10.3							
31.7969	19.6		50.5841	12							
33.5754	4		50.8863	13							
33.9689	10		54.2674	32.6							
36.1914	97.3		56.8980	58.7							
36.3582	97.3		58.1954	7							
36.7434	26.1		61.6166	18.5							

Figure 4.21. Example of the unindexed PDF card (also see *Figure 4.20*, bottom). In this case, all observed reflections are identified by their Bragg angles and relative intensities but without the Miller indices. As a result, the "Doubtful quality" mark has been assigned to this record by one of the ICDD editors. This usually points to the need for an independent verification before the listed digitized pattern can be relied upon in a positive identification of a polycrystalline material. Note that the original experimental data were collected using Fe Kα radiation (see field No. 3). Bragg angles, however, are listed for Cu Kα radiation, and these were recalculated by the LookPDF utility using the Braggs equation.

Regardless of the chosen approach, specifying elemental composition of the material is always helpful, as it imposes much needed constraints and limits the number of feasible solutions for a visual analysis.

An example of successful phase identification in a multiple phase sample is shown in *Figure 4.23*. The search was conducted using the following restrictions: 2θ window of 0.06°, two matching lines minimum, chemical composition was restricted to all inorganic compounds containing silicon and oxygen. No single match was adequate to interpret all strong observed Bragg peaks. However, two records simultaneously, i.e. lithium silicate Li_2SiO_3 and quartz SiO_2, cover the majority of strong reflections. Most of the remaining Bragg peaks correspond to a tridymite (SiO_2), which is present in a lower concentration than both Li_2SiO_3 and quartz. A few weak reflections

in this pattern remain unidentified, likely due to the low quality of data (the experimental pattern shown in *Figure 4.23* has been smoothed) or a small amount of an impurity phase, which does not contain both silicon and oxygen.

Overall, phase identification in a multiple-phase material, which consist of more than two phases is difficult and often has no reasonable solution in a "blind" search, especially when none of the phases have been positively identified prior to the search using a different experimental technique. Furthermore, chances for success decrease proportionally to the increased complexity of the measured powder diffraction pattern, unless the number of possible components with different crystal structures in the mixture is limited to just a few.

49-1170 Quality: Quality Data

Ni Mn O3
Nickel Manganese Oxide

Rad:CuKa1 Lambda:1.54056 Filter: d sp:Diffractometer
Cutoff: Int:Diffractometer I/Icor:
Ref:Whittingham, S., SUNY at Binghamton, MaterialsResearch Center, NY, USA., (1997)

Sys:Orthorhombic S.G.:A21am
a:2.8609±0.0001 b:14.6482±0.0005 c:5.2703±0.0002
α: β: γ: Z:4 mp
Ref2
Dx:4.861 Dm:4.861 SS/FOM: F30=103.1(0.0081,36) Volume[CD]:220.86
εα: ηωβ: εγ: Sign: 2V:
Ref3

Color:

Prepared by hydrothermal treatment of tetramethylammonium permanganate, nickel acetate and lithium carbonate for 2 days at 200 C. Pattern taken at 23(1) C.

55 reflections in pattern.

2θ	Int.	h k l	2θ	Int.	h k l	2θ	Int.	h k l	2θ	Int.	h k l
12.0679	25	0 2 0	47.6194	6	1 5 1	66.2340	1	0 10 1	80.4338	2	1 1 4
20.7417	55	0 2 1	50.6172	3	1 3 2	68.6303	14	1 9 1	80.7356	16	0 12 1
24.2722	100	0 4 0	50.9411	9	0 6 2	69.1962	2	2 2 1	80.7356	16	2 4 2
29.6756	65	0 4 1	52.8898	3	0 8 1	70.6260	5	2 4 0	81.7659	3	1 11 1
31.8434	5	1 1 0	53.6083	3	0 2 3	71.5591	12	0 0 4	83.0093	10	1 3 4
33.9955	10	0 0 2	54.2640	27	1 7 0	72.8763	3	0 2 4	83.2543	6	0 6 4
36.1914	62	0 2 2	56.9133	50	1 5 2	73.2173	4	2 4 1	88.1190	12	1 5 4
36.3735	43	1 3 0	57.2185	12	1 7 1	74.8306	3	0 8 3	88.1190	12	0 12 2
36.7901	23	0 6 0	58.1954	8	0 4 3	75.5715	1	2 0 2	88.6939	6	1 9 3
40.3213	16	1 3 1	61.6257	44	0 8 2	76.3434	3	1 9 2	89.1644	11	1 11 2
40.7014	1	0 6 1	62.2876	6	1 1 3	76.8677	11	2 2 2	93.0153	3	2 4 3
42.2153	22	0 4 2	65.1455	21	2 0 0	77.2366	3	2 6 0	95.6870	10	1 7 4
44.2102	2	1 5 0	65.3921	2	0 6 3	78.4823	4	1 7 3	96.0050	11	2 8 2
47.2644	28	1 1 2	65.6043	1	1 7 2	79.2909	4	1 11 0			

Figure 4.22. Indexed PDF card (also see *Figure 4.20*, middle).[1] Every observed Bragg reflection has been indexed and the corresponding F_{30} figure of merit (see section 5.5.1 in Chapter 5) is excellent. Based on these and other established criteria, the quality mark assigned by the ICDD editor is "Quality Data", which usually is a good indicator that the included digitized pattern may be trusted in positive phase identification.

[1] Space group symmetry is listed as $A2_1am$, which has been transformed into $Cmc2_1$ in a standard setting to produce the list of Miller indices.

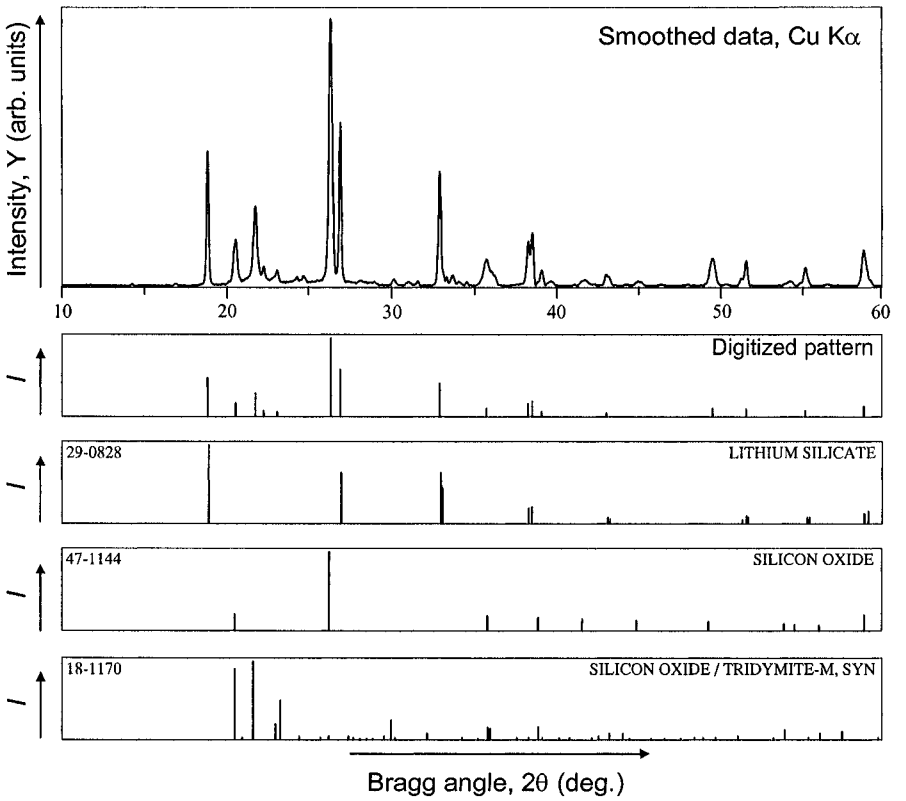


Figure 4.23. The results of a qualitative analysis of a multiple phase sample. Three crystalline phases are clearly identifiable: lithium silicate – Li_2SiO_3, silicon oxide – SiO_2 (quartz), and a different polymorph of silicon oxide – tridymite. A low quality diffraction pattern collected during a fast experiment was employed in this example. The data shown on top were smoothed, the background was subtracted, and the $K\alpha_2$ components were stripped before the digitized pattern (shown below the smoothed profile) was obtained using an automatic peak search. Note, that many weak Bragg reflections were missed in the peak search.

4.4.3 Quantitative analysis

Quantitative phase analysis is used to determine the concentration of various phases that are present in a mixture after the identity of every phase has been established. Overall, the task may be quite complicated since several critical requirements and conditions should be met in order to achieve satisfactory accuracy of the analysis.

Proper alignment, and especially calibration of the diffractometer are very important. Calibration should be performed by examining one or several different mixtures arranged from carefully prepared and well characterized materials. In general, any of the many available standard

reference materials (SRM) may be used,[1] including a specially developed standard for phase identification and analysis. The latter is the SRM-674a,[2] a standard for powder diffraction intensity, which is a mixture of five stable oxides: α-Al_2O_3 (corundum structure), CeO_2 (fluorite structure), Cr_2O_3 (corundum structure), TiO_2 (rutile structure) and ZnO (wurtzite structure).

In addition to instrumental factors, specimen preparation and properties introduce several key features that may have a detrimental influence on the accuracy of quantitative phase analysis. Sample-related factors cannot be avoided completely, but their effects should be minimized as much as possible and/or accounted for in all calculations. The main problems in quantitative analysis, borne by the nature and form of the employed sample are as follows:

- Preferred orientation, which may have a substantial effect on relative intensities of various groups of Bragg reflections (see section 2.10.6, Chapter 2). It should be minimized during sample preparation of both the investigated sample and the standard, if the latter is employed;
- Absorption (see section 2.10.5, Chapter 2), which is generally different for phases with different chemical composition and gravimetric density. It should always be accounted for.

Several different methods of the quantitative analysis have been developed and extensively tested. They may be grouped into several broad categories, and the most commonly used approaches are described below.

1. *The absorption-diffraction method* employs a standard intensity (I^0_{hkl}) from a pure phase and the intensity of the same Bragg peak (I_{hkl}) observed in the mixture. The phase concentration in a mixture can be calculated by using Klug's equation:

$$X_a = \frac{\left(I_{a,hkl}/I^0_{a,hkl}\right)\left(\mu/\rho\right)_b}{\left(\mu/\rho\right)_a - \left(I_{a,hkl}/I^0_{a,hkl}\right)\left[\left(\mu/\rho\right)_a - \left(\mu/\rho\right)_b\right]} \qquad (4.14)$$

where:

- X_a is the mass fraction of phase a in the mixture;
- $I_{a,hkl}$ and $I^0_{a,hkl}$ are intensities of the selected Bragg reflection, *hkl*, for phase a in the mixture and in the pure state, respectively;

[1] E.g., see: Standard reference materials catalog 1992-93. NIST, Special publication 260, NIST, Gaithersburg, MD, U.S.A. (1992), p.122. Up to date information about availability and pricing of x-ray diffraction standards for powder diffraction may be found at http://srmcatalog.nist.gov/.

[2] SRM-674a has been discontinued. Replacement should be available in the fall of 2002 as SRM-674b.

- $(\mu/\rho)_{a,b}$ are the mass absorption coefficients for phases *a* and *b*, respectively.

Equation 4.14 makes use of the fact that the scattered intensity is proportional to the amount of a particular phase, e.g. see Eqs. 2.17 to 2.19 in Chapter 2, with a correction to account for different absorption of x-rays by two components in the mixture. Since the ratio of intensities from a pure phase and a mixture is employed, diffraction patterns from both the pure material and from the analyzed mixture must be measured at identical instrumental settings, in addition to identical sample characteristics such as preparation, shape, amount, packing density, surface roughness, etc. Klug's equation becomes a simple intensity ratio when two phases have identical absorption coefficients, i.e. when $\mu/\rho_a = \mu/\rho_b$. We note that the composition of the second phase (or a mixture of all other phases) should be known in order to determine its mass absorption coefficient. Otherwise, mass absorption should be determined experimentally. When absorption effects are ignored, the accuracy of quantitative analysis may be lowered drastically.

2. *Method of standard additions* or spiking method consists of adding known amounts of pure component *a* to a mixture containing X_a and X_b of *a* and *b* phases. It requires the preparation of several samples and measurement of several diffraction patterns containing different yet known additions (Y_a) of phase *a*. Other phases in the mixture are not analyzed but at least one of them (*b*) should have a reference Bragg peak (*hkl*)', which does not overlap any reflection from phase *a*. The intensity ratio for this method is given as:

$$\frac{I_{a,hkl}}{I_{b,hkl'}} = K' \frac{X_a + Y_b}{X_b} \tag{4.15}$$

Assuming constant mass of phase *b* ($K=K'/X_b$), Eq. 4.15 is converted into:

$$\frac{I_{a,hkl}}{I_{b,hkl'}} = K(X_a + Y_b) \tag{4.16}$$

where:

- K is the slope of the plot of $I_{a,hkl}$ versus $I_{b,hkl'}$ established during measurements of mixtures with known additions of phase *a*.
- $I_{a,hkl}$ is the intensity of the selected peak for phase *a*.
- $I_{b,hkl'}$ is the intensity of the selected peak for phase *b*.

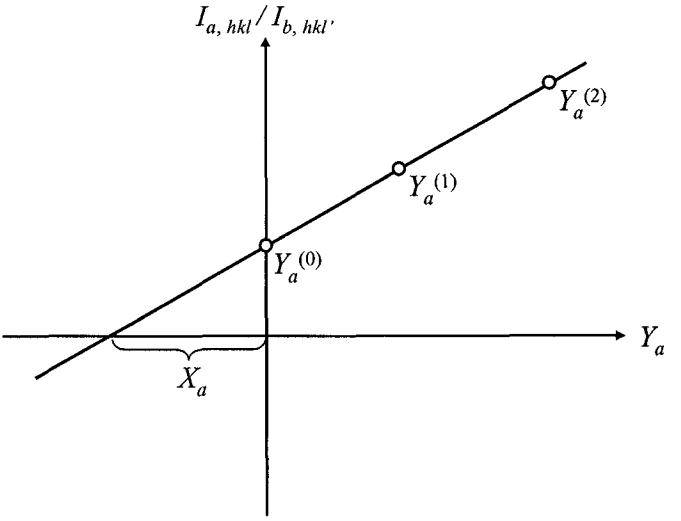


Figure 4.24. Illustration of standard addition method of quantitative analysis. The plot of the $I_{a,\,hkl}/I_{b,\,hkl'}$ intensity ratio as a function of the known amount (Y_a) of added phase *a*. The point marked $Y_a^{(0)}$ corresponds to the original two-phase mixture. The unknown amount of phase *a* in the original sample is X_a.

Thus, the unknown amount of phase *a*, X_a, is determined from the intercept of the calibration line with the Y_a axis as shown in *Figure 4.24*. The major advantage of this technique is that it enables quantitative analysis in the presence of unknown phase(s) without the need to know (or measure) absorption coefficients.

3. *Internal standard method* is likely the most commonly used approach in a quantitative phase analysis. It is based on the following relationship:

$$\frac{I_{a,hkl}}{I_{b,hkl'}} = K\frac{X_a}{Y_b} \tag{4.17}$$

where K is the slope of the plot of $I_{a,\,hkl}/I_{b,\,hkl'}$ versus X_a/Y_b. In Eq. 4.17, X_a is the unknown amount of the analyzed phase *a*, and Y_b is the known amount of the added standard phase *b* that is different from that present in the sample. In the same way as in the standard addition method, several measurements are needed to determine the slope K individually for each analyzed phase. The calibration line of Eq. 4.17 is then used to determine the content of phase *a* by measuring the $I_{a,\,hkl}/I_{b,\,hkl'}$ intensity ratio for a mixture of the analyzed sample with the known amount of the added internal standard Y_b.

4. *The reference intensity ratio method* is based on the experimentally established intensity ratio between the strongest Bragg peaks in the examined phase and in a standard reference material. The most typical reference material is corundum, and the corresponding peak is (113). The reference intensity ratio (k) is quoted for a 50:50 (wt. %) mixture of the material with corundum, and it is known as the "corundum number". The latter is commonly accepted and listed for many compounds in the ICDD's Powder Diffraction File. Even though this method is simple and relatively quick, careful account and/or experimental minimization of preferred orientation effects are necessary to obtain reliable quantitative results.
5. *Rietveld refinement* (Chapter 7, section 7.3.5 and the example in section 7.3.8) of multiple phase samples may be used for relatively accurate quantitative analysis. It requires knowledge of the atomic structure for each phase present in the mixture. Structural data are needed to calculate corresponding intensities. Scale factors for every phase present in the mixture, which are determined quite accurately during Rietveld refinement, are proportional to the fraction of the unit cells present in the irradiated volume of the sample. The latter directly follows from Eqs. 2.18 and 2.19 after recalling that the proportionality coefficient, C, is constant in any given powder diffraction experiment. Thus, the scale factors can be easily converted into weight, molar or volume fractions of the respective phase. This method appears to be one of the fastest and, perhaps, the most reliable tool in quantitative phase analysis, especially because it offers a possibility to introduce a preferred orientation correction in addition to quantitative analysis with respect to all present phases.
6. *Full pattern decomposition* using Le Bail's or Pawley's techniques (see Chapter 6) does not require the atomic structure to be known and it produces intensities of individual Bragg peaks. Thus, multiple reflections from each phase can be used to compute intensity ratios required in methods described in items 1 through 4 above, which increases the accuracy of the analysis. The use of multiple Bragg peaks in evaluating an average intensity ratio, to some extent diminishes the detrimental influence of preferred orientation as long as it remains small to moderate. This method, however, requires lattice parameters and therefore, is applicable to indexed patterns only. The phase composition is actually determined using any of the first four methods listed above by using intensities of several strong or all Bragg peaks instead of a single reflection.

Both the accuracy and limits of detection in a quantitative analysis are dependent on the method used, the quality of the experimental data, and

other factors. A lower limit of detection is usually accepted as the concentration equivalent of two standard deviations of the observed background level. For example, if the average background is at 100 counts and the maximum observed Bragg peak has a peak intensity of 1100 counts, then two standard deviations of the background are: $2\times\sqrt{100} = 20$. Thus, the detection limit for this phase is estimated at $20/(1100-100)\times100\% = 2\%$. The accuracy of the quantitative phase analysis is difficult to estimate rigorously. It varies considerably and is often claimed to be between 1 and 5%. The Rietveld profile fitting method is probably the best for a realistic estimate of the accuracy because standard uncertainties in calculated concentrations can be easily estimated from standard uncertainties in the corresponding scale factors.

4.5 Additional reading

1. L.S. Zevin and G. Kimmel, Quantitative x-ray diffractometry, Springer, New York (1995).

2. R. Jenkins and R.L. Snyder, Introduction to x-ray powder diffractometry, John Wiley and Sons, New York (1996).

3. R.J. Hill, Data collection strategies: fitting the experiment to the need, in: R.A. Young, Ed., The Rietveld method. IUCr monographs on crystallography, 5, Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (1993).

4. H.P. Klug, and L.E. Alexander, X-ray diffraction procedures for polycrystalline and amorphous materials, 2nd ed. John Wiley, New York (1974).

5. B.D. Cullity, Elements of x-ray diffraction, 2nd ed. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA (1978).

6. J. Faber and T. Fawcett, The Powder Diffraction File: present and future, Acta Cryst. **B58**, 325 (2002).

7. S.N. Kabekkodu, J. Faber, and T. Fawcett, New Powder Diffraction File (PDF-4) in relational database format: advantages and data-mining capabilities, Acta Cryst. **B58**, 333 (2002).

8. M.A. Van Hove, K. Hermann and P.R. Watson, The NIST Surface Structure Database - SSD version 4, Acta Cryst. **B58**, 338 (2002).

9. P.S. White, J.R. Rodgers, and Y. Le Page, CRYSTMET: a database of the structures and powder patterns of metals and intermetallics, Acta Cryst. **B58**, 343 (2002).

10. A. Belsky, M. Hellenbrandt, V.L. Karen, and P. Luksch, New developments in the Inorganic Crystal Structure Database (ICSD): accessibility in support of materials research and design, Acta Cryst. **B58**, 364 (2002).

11. F.H. Allen, The Cambridge Structural Database: a quarter of a million crystal structures and rising, Acta Cryst. **B58**, 380 (2002).

12. H.M. Berman, T. Battistuz, T.N. Bhat, W.F. Bluhm, P.E. Bourne, K. Burkhardt, Z. Feng, G.L. Gilliland, L. Iype, S. Jain, P. Fagan, J. Marvin, D. Padilla, V. Ravichandran, B. Schneider, N. Thanki, H. Weissig, J.D. Westbrook, and C. Zardecki, The Protein Data Bank, Acta Cryst. **D58**, 899 (2002).

13. H.M. Berman, J.D. Westbrook, Z. Feng, L. Iype, B. Schneider, and C. Zardecki, The Nucleic Acid Database, Acta Cryst. **D58**, 889 (2002).

4.6 Problems

Answers to all problems listed below are located in the file Chapter-4-Problems-Solutions.pdf on the CD accompanying this book.

1. Consider three powder diffraction patterns, which are shown in *Figure 4.25* to *Figure 4.27*. For each pattern select all applicable processing steps and explain your reasoning assuming that the goal is to produce digitized (reduced) powder patterns for phase identification.

a) Smooth the data (Yes/No/Probably),

b) Eliminate background (Yes/No/Probably),

c) Strip $K\alpha_2$ contributions (Yes/No/Probably).

2. A powder diffraction pattern collected from a metallic alloy was processed into two digitized patterns. The background was eliminated first, as illustrated in *Figure 4.28* and second, as shown in *Figure 4.29*. Assume that in both cases preliminary processing was continued as follows: $K\alpha_2$ components were stripped and Bragg peak positions and intensities were determined using an automatic peak search. Compare the reliability of thus obtained digitized patterns and explain your reasoning.

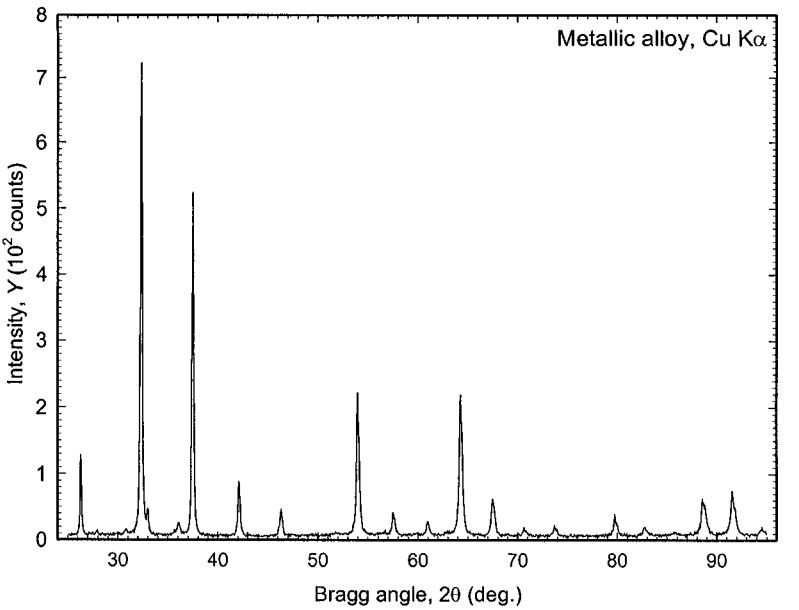


Figure 4.25. Powder diffraction pattern collected using a conventional x-ray source.

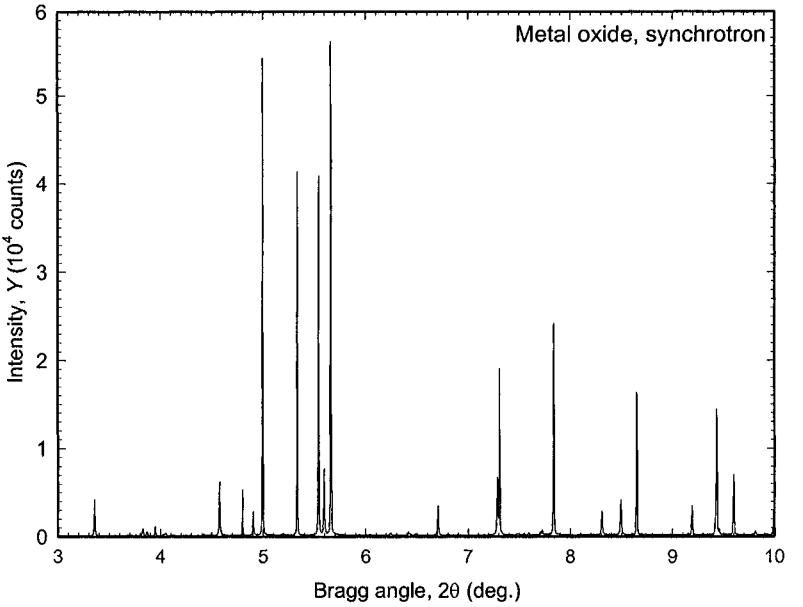


Figure 4.26. Powder diffraction pattern collected using a synchrotron x-ray source. (Data courtesy of Dr. M.J. Kramer.)

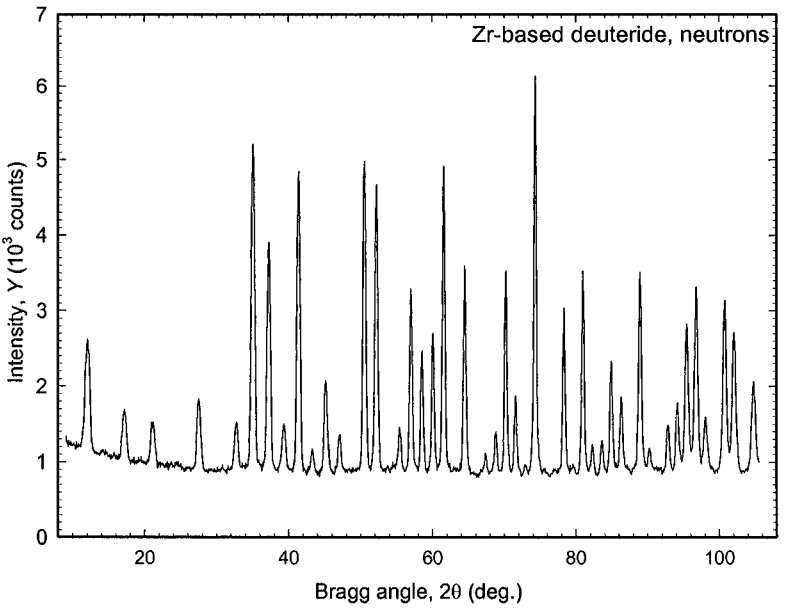


Figure 4.27. Powder diffraction pattern collected using a reactor-based neutron source. (Data courtesy of Dr. W.B. Yelon.)

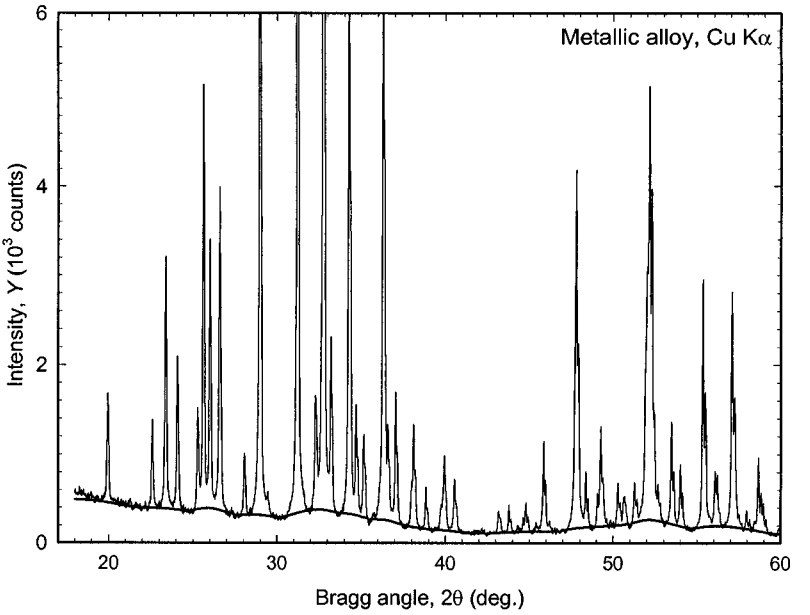


Figure 4.28. Example of the automatically determined background (thick line at the bottom of the plot shown using the scale identical to the experimental data).

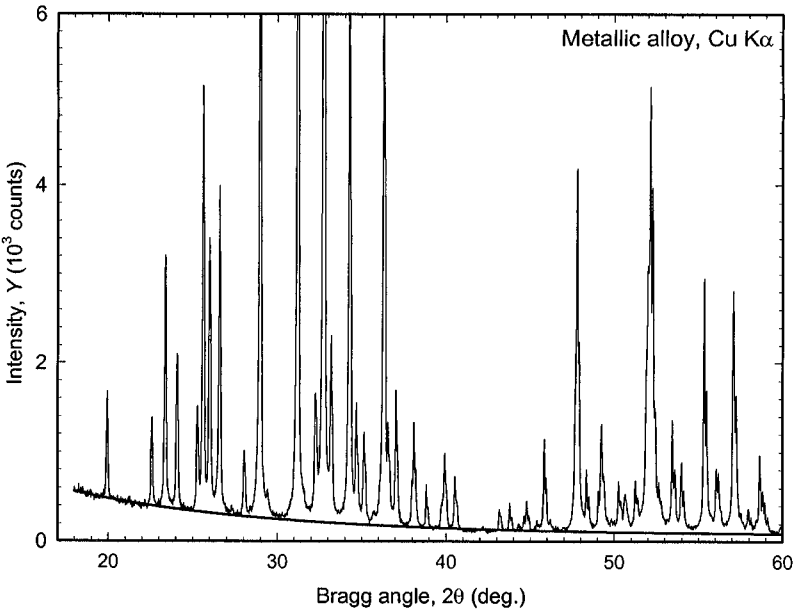


Figure 4.29. Example of the background represented by a polynomial (thick line at the bottom of the plot shown using the scale identical to the experimental data).

3. Consider the powder diffraction pattern shown in *Figure 4.30* and answering Yes/No/Maybe: Is this pattern suitable for phase identification? Is the material suitable for crystal structure determination using powder diffraction? Explain your reasoning. What other conclusions (if any) can be made from a visual analysis of this pattern?

4. Diffraction data[1] (*Table 4.4*) were collected from a white ceramic plate. Using the Mineral Database[2] and 3 strongest of the 15 observed peaks identify the material.

Table 4.4. Digitized pattern representing data collected from a white ceramic plate.

I/I_0	2θ, °	d, Å	I/I_0	2θ, °	d, Å	I/I_0	2θ, °	d, Å
57	25.556	3.4827	99	57.465	1.6023	9	77.202	1.2346
88	35.125	2.5528	8	61.268	1.5117	7	80.648	1.1903
39	37.747	2.3812	38	66.481	1.4052	8	88.949	1.0995
100	43.324	2.0867	57	68.165	1.3745	10	91.139	1.0787
49	52.514	1.7412	17	76.834	1.2396	20	95.203	1.0431

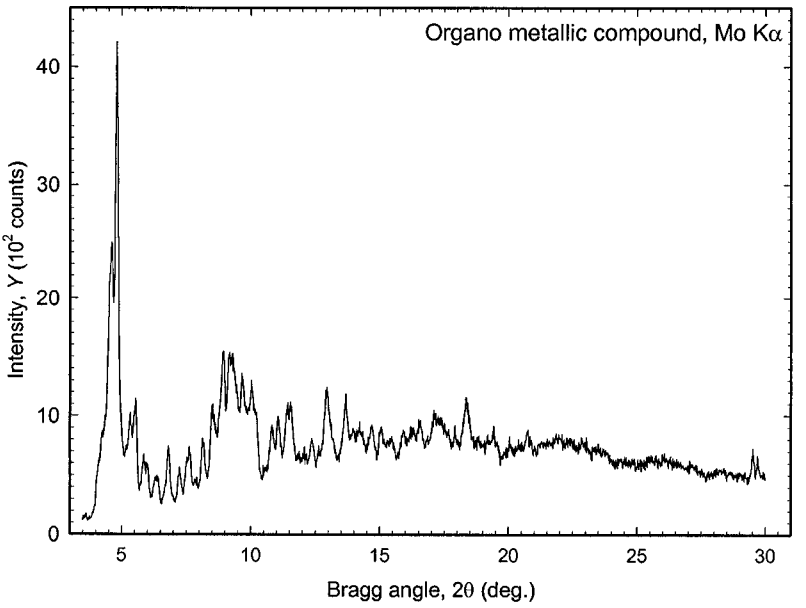


Figure 4.30. Powder diffraction pattern collected from an organo metallic compound on a Rigaku TTRAX powder diffractometer using Mo Kα radiation. The data were collected in a continuous scanning mode: scan rate was 5 deg/min, sampling step 0.01°.

[1] In problems 4 – 8, the data were collected on a powder diffractometer with Bragg-Brentano geometry using Cu Kα radiation. Errors in d-spacing should not exceed 0.02 Å for $d > 3$ Å, otherwise they should be less than 0.01 Å.

[2] This is a freely accessible database available at http://webmineral.com/X-Ray.shtml.

5. Diffraction data (*Table 4.5*) were collected from a light-blue colored powder. Using the Mineral Database and 3 strongest of the 15 observed peaks identify the material.

Table 4.5. Digitized pattern representing data collected from a light-blue colored powder.

I/I_0	2θ, °	*d*, Å	I/I_0	2θ, °	*d*, Å	I/I_0	2θ, °	*d*, Å
100	12.778	6.9223	4	41.846	2.1570	6	53.388	1.7147
36	25.724	3.4603	10	43.508	2.0784	3	57.955	1.5900
10	33.514	2.6717	3	49.088	1.8543	2	58.613	1.5737
11	36.438	2.4637	3	51.238	1.7815	2	62.381	1.4873
6	39.753	2.2656	3	52.856	1.7307	3	62.764	1.4792

6. Diffraction data (*Table 4.6*) were collected from a powder containing fluorine. Using the Mineral Database and 3 strongest of the 15 observed peaks identify the material. Additional information about the powder: no weight loss has been detected during a thermogravimetric experiment carried out between ~25 and ~500°C.

Table 4.6. Digitized pattern representing data collected from a powder containing fluorine, which is stable between room temperature and ~500°C.

I/I_0	2θ, °	*d*, Å	I/I_0	2θ, °	*d*, Å	I/I_0	2θ, °	*d*, Å
41	25.850	3.4438	68	33.080	2.7057	37	49.555	1.8380
14	28.123	3.1704	26	34.120	2.6256	18	50.743	1.7977
17	29.081	3.0680	26	40.017	2.2512	17	51.554	1.7713
100	31.905	2.8026	29	46.858	1.9372	13	52.288	1.7482
43	32.235	2.7747	14	48.259	1.8842	19	53.154	1.7217

7. Diffraction data (*Table 4.7*) were collected from a powder containing manganese. Using the Mineral Database and 3 strongest of the 15 observed peaks identify the material.

Table 4.7. Digitized pattern representing data collected from a manganese-containing powder.

I/I_0	2θ, °	*d*, Å	I/I_0	2θ, °	*d*, Å	I/I_0	2θ, °	*d*, Å
100	28.630	3.1153	66	56.560	1.6258	18	72.249	1.3066
52	37.296	2.4090	16	59.275	1.5577	7	86.457	1.1246
13	40.947	2.2022	7	64.736	1.4388	9	93.578	1.0569
15	42.744	2.1137	13	67.136	1.3931	20	100.604	1.0011
5	46.026	1.9703	15	72.125	1.3085	5	102.886	0.9850

8. Diffraction data (*Table 4.8*) were collected from a two-phase powder containing Mn, Al and O. Results of mass spectroscopic analysis with respect to all known chemical elements show that there are no other elements present in concentration exceeding 100 parts per million by weight. Using the Mineral Database and 6 strongest of the 13 observed peaks identify both compounds that are present in the mixture.

Table 4.8. Digitized x-ray diffraction pattern representing data collected from a two-phase powder containing Al, Mn and O.

I/I_0	2θ, °	*d*, Å	I/I_0	2θ, °	*d*, Å	I/I_0	2θ, °	*d*, Å
33	25.460	3.4956	13	40.947	2.2022	66	56.560	1.6258
100	28.630	3.1153	15	42.744	2.1137	58	57.379	1.6045
52	35.031	2.5594	59	43.233	2.0909	16	59.275	1.5577
52	37.296	2.4090	5	46.026	1.9703			
23	37.654	2.3869	29	52.426	1.7439			

Chapter 5

UNIT CELL DETERMINATION AND REFINEMENT

5.1 Introduction

As we established in Chapter 1, crystal lattices, used to portray periodic three-dimensional crystal structures of materials, are constructed by translating an identical elementary parallelepiped – the unit cell of a lattice – in three dimensions. Even when a crystal structure is aperiodic, it may still be represented by a three-dimensional unit cell in a lattice that occupies a superspace with more than three dimensions. In the latter case, conventional translations are perturbed by one or more modulation functions with different periodicity.

Given the fact that the unit cell remains unchanged throughout the infinite lattice, the crystal structure of a material may be considered solved when both the shape and the content of the unit cell of its lattice, including the spatial distribution of atoms in the unit cell, have been established. Unavoidably, the determination of any crystal structure starts from finding the shape and the symmetry of the unit cell together with its dimensions, i.e. the lengths of the three unit cell edges (a, b and c) and the values of the three angles (α, β and γ) between the pairs of the corresponding unit cell vectors, e.g. see *Figure 1.4* in Chapter 1.

5.2 The indexing problem

In powder diffraction, the very first step in solving the crystal structure, i.e. finding the true unit cell, may present considerable difficulties because the experimental data are a one-dimensional projection of the three-dimensional reciprocal lattice recorded as a function of a single independent

variable – the Bragg angle. Thus, the directions are lost and only the lengths of the reciprocal lattice vectors are measurable in a powder diffraction experiment. This is quite different from scattering by a single crystal where both the length and direction of each vector in reciprocal space are preserved, provided the intensity of a corresponding Bragg peak exceeds the background and is measurable.

The loss of directions is illustrated in *Figure 5.1* for a two-dimensional case. It is easy to see that when different vectors from the two-dimensional reciprocal lattice are projected on the $1/d$ axis (which may be chosen arbitrarily as long as it intersects the origin of the reciprocal lattice), they all have the same direction and are distinguishable only by their lengths. It is worth reminding one's self that the distribution of points along the $1/d$ axis in *Figure 5.1* determines the Bragg angles at which scattered intensity maxima can be observed in a powder diffraction experiment, as directly follows from the Braggs' law: $d^* = 1/d = 2\sin\theta/n\lambda$.

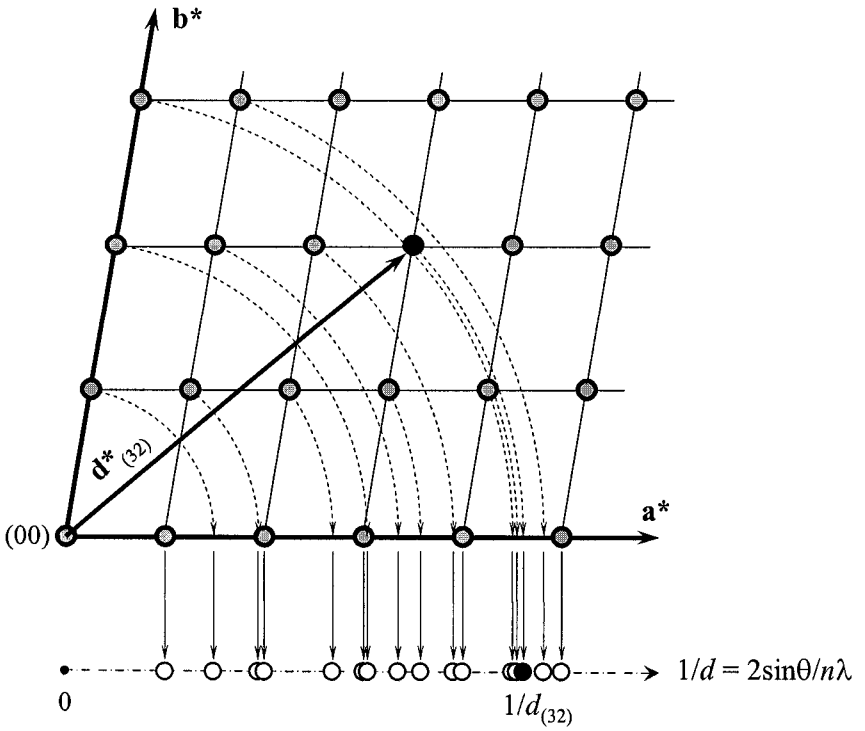


Figure 5.1. An illustration of a two-dimensional reciprocal lattice (top) and its one-dimensional projection on the $1/d$ axis (bottom). The scales in the two parts of the drawing are identical because $1/d = d^*$. The $1/d$ axis is shifted downwards from the origin of the reciprocal lattice for clarity. The reciprocal lattice point (32) is shown as a filled black circle both in the lattice and in its projection together with the corresponding reciprocal vector $\mathbf{d}^*_{(32)}$.

Regardless of the nature of the diffraction experiment, finding the unit cell in a conforming lattice is a matter of selecting the smallest parallelepiped in reciprocal space, which completely describes the array of the experimentally registered Bragg peaks. Obviously, the selection of both the lattice and the unit cell should be consistent with crystallographic conventions (see section 1.12, Chapter 1), which impose certain constraints on the relationships between unit cell symmetry and dimensions.

Since each point in reciprocal space represents a series of crystallographic planes, the description of diffraction data by means of any lattice may therefore, be reduced to assigning triplets of Miller indices to every observed Bragg peak based on the selected unit cell. Recalling the definitions of both the direct and reciprocal lattices (Eqs. 1.1 and 1.16, respectively) and considering *Figure 5.1* (or *Figure 2.40* in Chapter 2, which illustrates a three-dimensional case), the assignment of indices in a periodic lattice is based on Eq. 5.1.[1] The latter establishes relationships between the unit vectors $\mathbf{a}^*$, $\mathbf{b}^*$ and $\mathbf{c}^*$ and the corresponding reciprocal vectors $\mathbf{d}^*_{(hkl)}$ in terms of triplets of integers h, k and l.

$$\mathbf{d}^*_{hkl} = h\mathbf{a}^* + k\mathbf{b}^* + l\mathbf{c}^* \qquad (5.1)$$

This process is commonly known as indexing of diffraction data and in three dimensions it usually has a unique and easy solution when both the lengths and directions of reciprocal vectors, $\mathbf{d}^*_{hkl}$, are available. On the contrary, when only the lengths, d^*_{hkl}, of the vectors in the reciprocal space are known, the task may become extremely complicated, especially if there is no additional information about the crystal structure other than the array of numbers representing the observed $1/d_{hkl}$ [$\equiv d^*_{hkl}$] values.

The difficulty and reliability of indexing are closely related to the absolute accuracy of the array of d^*_{hkl} values, i.e. to the absolute accuracy with which positions of Bragg reflections have been determined. For

[1] Conventional lattices may be perturbed by functions with different periodicity, e.g. by sinusoidal or saw-tooth-like modulations, see section 1.21 in Chapter 1. In the simplest case (one-dimensional modulation), Eq. 5.1 becomes $\mathbf{d}^*_{hkl} = h\mathbf{a}^* + k\mathbf{b}^* + l\mathbf{c}^* + m\mathbf{q}$ assuming that the perturbation function is periodic and has the modulation vector $\mathbf{q}$. In a case of three-dimensional modulation, a total of six indices (h, k, l, m, n, and p) are required to identify every point observed in reciprocal space: $\mathbf{d}^*_{hkl} = h\mathbf{a}^* + k\mathbf{b}^* + l\mathbf{c}^* + m\mathbf{q}_1 + n\mathbf{q}_2 + p\mathbf{q}_3$, where $\mathbf{q}_1$, $\mathbf{q}_2$ and $\mathbf{q}_3$ are the modulation vectors of the corresponding perturbation functions. If this is the case, vectors $\mathbf{q}_1$, $\mathbf{q}_2$ and $\mathbf{q}_3$ should be established in addition to $\mathbf{a}^*$, $\mathbf{b}^*$ and $\mathbf{c}^*$ before assignment of indices can be performed. Since even the three-dimensional diffraction pattern of a modulated structure is a projection of four- to six-dimensional superspace, indexing of single crystal diffraction data is quite complex. It is rarely, if ever, successful from first principles when only powder diffraction data are available.

example, when the accuracy is nearly ideal, e.g. when the calculated rather than the experimental Bragg angles are used to determine d^*_{hkl}, indexing is usually straightforward and consistent even for large and low symmetry unit cells. However, the presence of systematic errors combined with multiple and sometimes severe overlaps of Bragg reflections (the latter are often observed in complex crystal structures characterized by low symmetry, high unit cell volume lattices) reduces the accuracy of peak positions and therefore, decreases the chances of successful indexing from first principles.[1]

As established earlier (see section 2.8, Chapter 2), the interplanar distances, d, are related to both the unit cell dimensions and Miller indices of the families of crystallographic planes by means of a well defined function, which in general form can be written as follows:

$$d_{hkl} = f(h, k, l, a, b, c, \alpha, \beta, \gamma) \tag{5.2}$$

Peak positions, θ_{hkl}, are measurable from a powder diffraction experiment, for example using any of the approaches discussed in Chapter 4. Thus, the observed d-spacing for any given combination (hkl) is established by means of the Braggs' equation, in which λ is the wavelength used to collect the data and $n = 1$, i.e. only the first order reflections are included into the consideration:

$$d_{hkl}^{obs} = \frac{\lambda}{2\sin\theta_{hkl}^{obs}} \tag{5.3}$$

By combining Eqs. 5.2 and 5.3, the observed positions of Bragg peaks may be used to calculate the corresponding unit cell dimensions, but first, the triplets of integer indices, h, k and l, should be assigned to all observed diffraction maxima or in other words, all observed Bragg peaks should be indexed in agreement with Eqs. 5.1 to 5.3. The algorithm of the indexing process in powder diffraction is usually dependent on whether or not the shape and dimensions of the unit cell are known at least approximately.

5.3 Known versus unknown unit cell dimensions

Indexing of powder diffraction data when unit cell dimensions are known with certain accuracy includes:

[1] Similar to structure solution from first principles, the *ab initio* indexing implies that no prior knowledge about symmetry and approximate unit cell dimensions of the crystal lattice exists. Indexing from first principles, therefore, usually means that Miller indices are assigned based strictly on the relationships between the observed Bragg angles.

1. Generating a list of all possible combinations of symmetrically independent *hkl* triplets, which can be observed within the studied range of Bragg angles.
2. Calculating interplanar distances using the generated list of *hkl*, the best estimate of the unit cell dimensions (*a*, *b*, *c*, α, β, and γ) and the appropriately simplified form of Eq. 5.2 (see Eqs. 2.29 to 2.34).
3. Assigning *hkl* triplets to the observed Bragg peaks based on the minimum difference between d^{obs} and $d^{calc}{}_{hkl}$ (or θ^{obs} and $\theta^{calc}{}_{hkl}$).
4. Refining the unit cell dimensions using θ^{obs} coupled with the assigned *hkl* triplets, i.e. using $\theta^{obs}{}_{hkl}$.

Although the indexing process may take several iterations, each resulting in a more accurate assignment of indices and in a better approximation of the unit cell, finding the best solution is usually trivial.

When both the symmetry of the lattice and unit cell dimensions are unknown, the *ab initio* indexing of powder diffraction data often becomes a trial-and-error process and finding the correct unit cell may be a challenge. This occurs because the assignment of *hkl* triplets to each observed Bragg peak is done without prior knowledge of the unit cell parameters (a total of six in the most general case). Clearly, this task is equivalent to restoring the directions of all observed reciprocal vectors based only on their lengths, so to say one needs to restore a three-dimensional image from a single one-dimensional projection. Referring to *Figure 5.1*, it is nearly as easy to obtain the lower part of the figure from its upper part, as it is difficult to reconstruct the latter if only the former is known.

The difficulty of the *ab initio* indexing may be further illustrated using a non-crystallographic geometrical example by considering a cone, a cylinder and a sphere, all of which have identical radii. Under certain conditions, it is possible that their projections are reduced to identical circles in two dimensions and then to indistinguishable lines in one dimension,[1] as shown in *Figure 5.2*. Assuming that there is no additional information about these objects and their projections, it is impossible to restore the correct shape of the object in three dimensions based on a single one-dimensional projection.

The problem of indexing powder diffraction data is intricate but not as hopeless as it may appear from *Figure 5.2* due to the presence of governing laws, i.e. Eqs. 5.1 to 5.3. They define a set of rules for the reconstruction of the reciprocal lattice, in which a vector of a given length may only realize a limited number of orientations. The *ab initio* indexing is, therefore, possible because vector directions should be such that their ends form a three-dimensional lattice. A two-dimensional example is found in *Figure 5.3*,

[1] Strictly speaking, the shape of each figure could be restored from two-dimensional shadows (projections) if the objects are semitransparent. Recognition becomes impractical from one-dimensional projections.

where the reciprocal lattice is identical to that shown in *Figure 5.1* and is depicted with both the positive and negative directions of the two basis lattice vectors **a*** and **b***.

In the absence of numerous overlapping Bragg peaks, which is the same as the absence of numerous independent reciprocal lattice vectors with identical lengths, the solution of the *ab initio* indexing problem is relatively straightforward. This is, however, the case only in the highest symmetry crystal system, i.e. cubic. As the symmetry of the lattice lowers, and especially when the unit cell volume of the direct lattice increases, multiple vectors with equal lengths but different directions will appear in the reciprocal lattice, e.g. $\mathbf{d}^*_{(32)}$ and $\mathbf{d}^*_{(4\bar{2})}$ where $d^*_{(32)} = d^*_{(4\bar{2})}$ in *Figure 5.3*. Furthermore, numerous vectors will have nearly identical lengths but different directions, e.g. $\mathbf{d}^*_{(03)}$, $\mathbf{d}^*_{(41)}$, $\mathbf{d}^*_{(2\bar{3})}$ and $\mathbf{d}^*_{(1\bar{3})}$ in addition to $\mathbf{d}^*_{(32)}$ and $\mathbf{d}^*_{(4\bar{2})}$. Since both the resolution of the instrument and the accuracy of Bragg angle measurements are finite, the proper indexing of complex powder diffraction pattern(s) may be difficult or nearly unattainable from first principles.

We conclude this section with a simple notion: it is impossible to solve the crystal structure of a material using an incorrect unit cell. Thus, proper indexing of the experimental powder diffraction pattern is of utmost importance, and in this chapter we shall consider various strategies leading to the solution of the indexing problem and how to find the most precise unit cell dimensions.

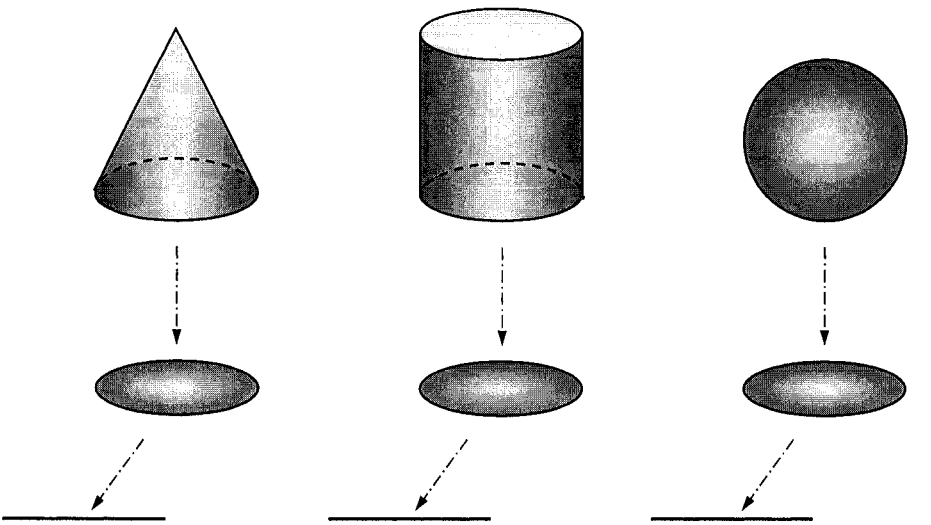


Figure 5.2. The illustration of three indistinguishable one- and two-dimensional projections obtained from three different three-dimensional objects. The projection directions are shown by dash-dotted arrows.

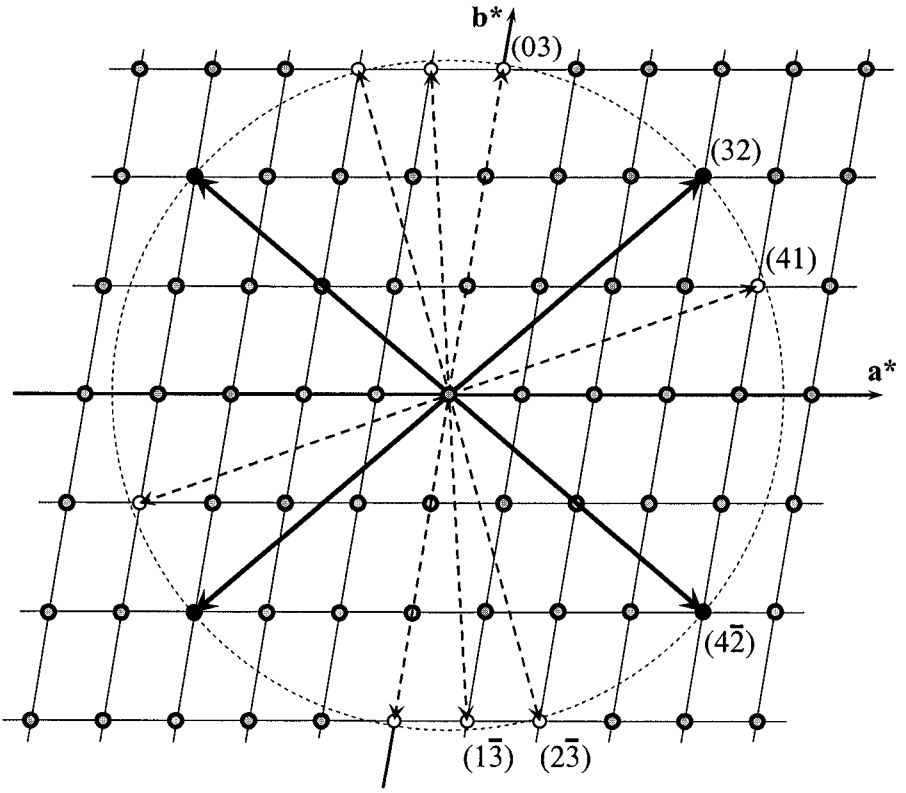


Figure 5.3. An illustration of the reciprocal lattice indicating both the length and orientation of the reciprocal vector $\mathbf{d}^*_{(32)}$. A second vector in this lattice with identical length but different orientation is $\mathbf{d}^*_{(4\bar{2})}$ and the identity of their lengths is coincidental, i.e. not mandated by lattice symmetry. In addition, there are several vectors [$\mathbf{d}^*_{(03)}$, $\mathbf{d}^*_{(41)}$, $\mathbf{d}^*_{(2\bar{3})}$ and $\mathbf{d}^*_{(1\bar{3})}$] with their lengths nearly identical to those of $\mathbf{d}^*_{(32)}$ and $\mathbf{d}^*_{(4\bar{2})}$. Note, that since this two-dimensional reciprocal lattice has a two-fold symmetry axis perpendicular to the plane of the projection and intersecting the origin of coordinates, each vector has its symmetrical equivalent in the opposite direction (the indices of any pair of the two symmetrically equivalent vectors have the same values but opposite signs).

5.4 Indexing: known unit cell

As mentioned above, indexing or assignment of *hkl* triplets using known unit cell dimensions is usually a trivial task. It may be completely formalized and therefore, handled by a computer program automatically or nearly automatically with minimal intervention by the user. However, it is often true that the unit cell dimensions are known only approximately or they are simply guessed. If this is the case, indexing is usually performed in several iterations following the algorithm described below:

1. Expected Bragg peak positions, $2\theta^{calc}_{hkl}$, shall be computed for all possible combinations of Miller indices using the best available estimate of the unit cell dimensions coupled with the appropriate form of Eq. 5.2, suitably simplified to reflect the symmetry of the reciprocal lattice. Only those combinations of *h*, *k* and *l* that are allowed by symmetry of the crystal lattice should be included in the calculations. The proper computation process is illustrated by a flowchart in *Figure 5.4*. When available, Bragg peak positions coupled with known *hkl* triplets taken from a literature reference or from a database (e.g. the ICDD's Powder Diffraction File[1]) can be used instead of a computed list of $2\theta^{calc}_{hkl}$.
2. Assignment of indices should always start from a peak observed at the lowest Bragg angle and proceed towards the higher Bragg angles. The low Bragg angle peaks are usually well resolved and are located far apart from one another (e.g. see *Figure 5.1*) and therefore, it is relatively easy to decide which triplet of indices corresponds to which observed peak. The indexing should only continue as long as there is no ambiguity in the assignment of indices.

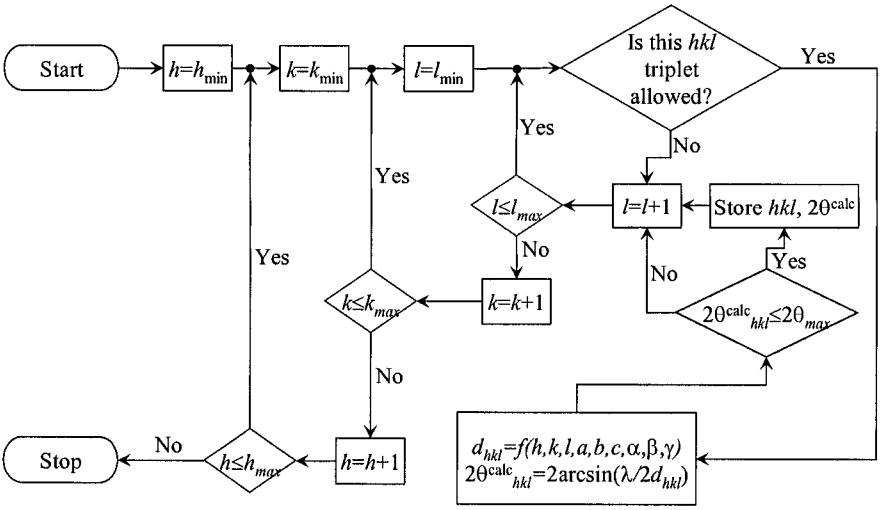


Figure 5.4. The flowchart illustrating a generic algorithm designed to generate all allowed combinations of Miller indices and compute Bragg angles from known unit cell dimensions. Only the values with $2\theta^{calc}_{hkl}$ not exceeding the maximum observed 2θ are retained for further use. Both minimum and maximum *h*, *k* and *l* values are calculated from the maximum observed 2θ.

[1] See section 4.4 in Chapter 4 and http://www.icdd.com/ for more information about the Powder Diffraction File.

3. Using all Bragg peaks which have been indexed and the associated observed Bragg angles, more accurate unit cell dimensions and, if applicable, systematic experimental errors, e.g. sample displacement, sample transparency, or zero shift, which are described in section 2.8.2, Chapter 2, should be refined by means of a least squares technique (see section 5.13, below).
4. Using the improved unit cell dimensions obtained in step 3, the process is repeated from step 1 until all observed Bragg peaks have been indexed.[1] The indexing is considered complete when index assignments and the refined lattice parameters remain unchanged after the last iteration in comparison with the same from the previous cycle.

5.4.1 High symmetry indexing example

We will illustrate the indexing approach described above by using the experimental diffraction data collected from a $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ sample shown in *Figure 5.5*. Same data are found in the ASCII data file **Ch5Ex01_CuKa.xy** on the CD. The observed positions of Bragg peaks were determined using a profile fitting procedure and these are listed in *Table 5.1* together with their relative integrated intensities (I/I_0) and full widths at half maximum (FWHM). The least squares standard deviations in the observed Bragg angles did not exceed 0.003°. The content of *Table 5.1* can be found in the file **Ch5Ex01_CuKa.pks** on the CD.

Table 5.1. Relative integrated intensities (I/I_0), Bragg angles and full widths at half maximum (FWHM) of Bragg peaks observed in the $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ powder diffraction pattern collected using Cu Kα radiation in the range $18 \leq 2\theta \leq 83°$ (see *Figure 5.5*).

I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)	I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)
20	20.288	0.070	136	58.742	0.117
43	22.105	0.077	149	60.584	0.112
513	30.198	0.076	210	62.824	0.123
305	35.548	0.078	54	63.866	0.115
394	41.285	0.082	213	68.485	0.124
1000	42.272	0.085	35	74.050	0.140
18	44.211	0.099	7	74.353	0.140
274	45.130	0.106	153	75.298	0.140
89	47.332	0.091	4	78.958	0.175
4	49.965	0.109	9	79.629	0.175
10	51.517	0.140	123	81.357	0.175
6	55.621	0.094	55	81.632	0.175

[a] Bragg angles are listed for the location of the $K\alpha_1$ component in the doublet, $\lambda = 1.540593$ Å.

[1] When a powder diffraction pattern contains a few weak impurity reflections, indexing of all Bragg peaks may be impossible. Generally, all unindexed peaks should be explained by identifying impurity phase(s) or by shape anomalies when compared to the main phase.

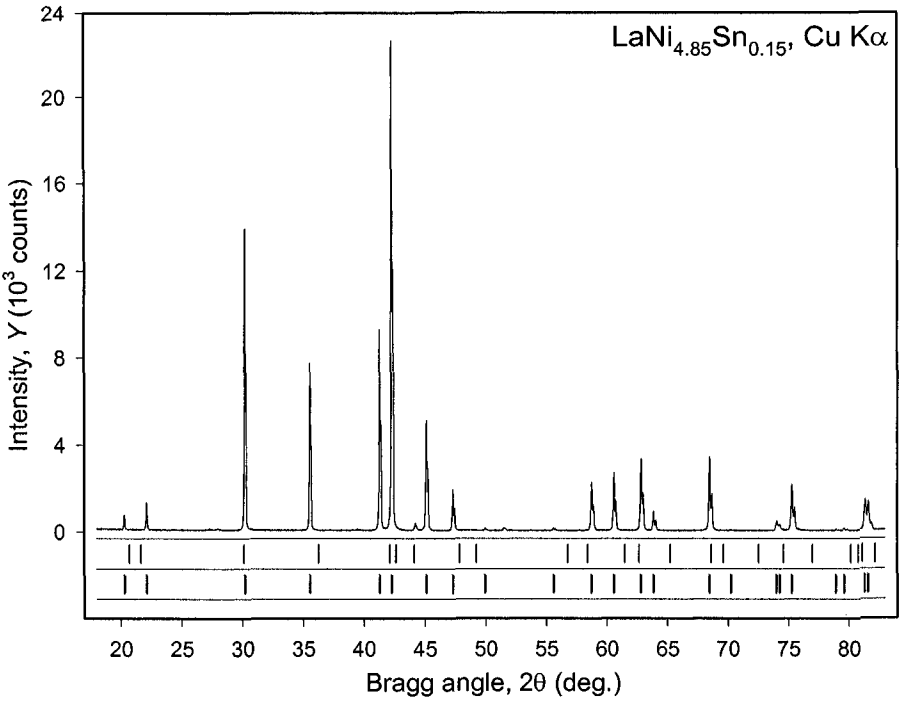


Figure 5.5. A fragment of the diffraction pattern collected from a $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ powder on a Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode powder diffractometer using Cu Kα radiation. The data were collected in a step scan mode with a step 0.02° of 2θ and counting time 4 sec. As explained below (see *Table 5.2* and *Table 5.4*, respectively), the two sets of vertical bars indicate locations of Bragg peaks calculated using the first (the upper set of bars) and the second (the lower set of bars) approximations of the unit cell dimensions.

The crystal structure of the powder is hexagonal: space group is P6/mmm and the lattice parameters are a = 5.04228(6), c = 4.01170(5) Å, as determined from Rietveld refinement using diffraction data with $2\theta_{max}$ = 120°. To better illustrate the indexing process we will employ a spreadsheet in the calculation of Bragg angles using both the approximate and refined unit cell dimensions rather than any kind of crystallographic software. Assume that we only know lattice parameters of this material to within ~0.1 Å, and that the best available approximation to begin with is a = 4.95 and c = 4.10 Å.

The simplified form of Eq. 5.2 in the hexagonal crystal system is

$$\frac{1}{d^2} = \frac{4}{3} \times \frac{h^2 + hk + k^2}{a^2} + \frac{l^2}{c^2} \qquad (5.4)$$

After combining Eqs. 5.4 and 5.3 we get the following equation relating Bragg angles, lattice parameters and Miller indices:

$$2\theta_{hkl} = 2\arcsin\left(\lambda\sqrt{\frac{1}{3}\times\frac{h^2+hk+k^2}{a^2}+\frac{1}{4}\times\frac{l^2}{c^2}}\right) \tag{5.5}$$

To ensure that no possible combination of indices have been missed (see *Figure 5.4*) it is best to create a spreadsheet, in which the columns are labeled with values of l varying from $l_{min} = -l_{max}$ to l_{max}. The value of l_{max} is determined from Eq. 5.5 by substituting $2\theta_{max}$ for 2θ and letting $h = k = 0$. The rows are labeled with the values of h and k. In general, both h and k should vary between their respective minimum and maximum values determined in the same way as l_{min} and l_{max}.[1] In the hexagonal crystal system, however, there is no need to include negative values of indices due to limitations imposed by symmetry of the reciprocal lattice, and the smallest values of all three indices are set at 0. Furthermore, reciprocal lattice points that are different from one another by a permutation of h and k are symmetrically equivalent in this hexagonal lattice. As a result, we have an additional restriction, i.e. $h \leq k$ (or $h \geq k$) that limits the possible combinations of indices. No other limitations are imposed on the allowed combinations of indices in the case of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$, since the space group symmetry of the material is P6/mmm, which according to *Table 2.15*, has no forbidden reflections.

The spreadsheet, used to calculate *Table 5.2*, may be found on the CD, the file name is **Ch5Ex01_BraggAngles.xls**. The calculated Bragg peak positions from *Table 5.2* are plotted as the upper set of vertical bars in *Figure 5.5*. It is easy to recognize that only four lowest Bragg angle peaks can be decidedly indexed using the first approximation of the unit cell dimensions. The corresponding assignment of the triplets of indices is shown in *Table 5.3*, which is the result of combining the experimental data listed in *Table 5.1* with the calculated Bragg peak positions listed in *Table 5.2*.

Based on the results of the first round of indexing the least squares refinement of the lattice parameters yields the following values: a = 5.047(1), c = 4.017(2) Å. The recalculated Bragg angles are shown in *Table 5.4* and they are plotted in *Figure 5.5* as the lower set of vertical bars. It is clear that nearly all observed Bragg peaks may now be unambiguously indexed as shown in *Table 5.5*, where all differences between the observed

[1] A more precise definition of $|h_{max}|$, $|k_{max}|$ and $|l_{max}|$ can be given in terms of the maximum reciprocal lattice vector length, which is $|\mathbf{d}^*_{hkl}|_{max} \leq 2/\lambda$.

and calculated 2θ are smaller than a fraction of the peaks' full width at half maximum.

Table 5.2. Bragg angles[a] calculated using the first approximation of the unit cell dimensions for $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$: a = 4.95, c = 4.10 Å. Empty cells in the table correspond to the combinations of indices, which cannot be observed in the range $0 < 2\theta \leq 83°$.

hk \ *l*	0	1	2	3
00	-	21.658	44.142	68.615
01	20.703	30.137	49.229	72.539
02	42.124	47.848	62.657	-
03	65.240	69.622	82.159	-
11	36.267	42.636	58.407	80.159
12	56.772	61.486	74.598	-
22	76.992	81.113	-	-
13	80.764	-	-	-

[a] Bragg angles are listed for the location of the $K\alpha_1$ component in the doublet, λ = 1.540593 Å.

Table 5.3. Index assignments in the powder diffraction pattern of for $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ after the first iteration assuming a = 4.95, c = 4.10 Å.

I/I_0	*hkl*	$2\theta^{calc}$	$2\theta^{obs}$	$2\theta^{obs} - 2\theta^{calc}$	$FWHM^{obs}$
20	010	20.703	20.288	-0.415	0.070
43	001	21.658	22.105	0.447	0.077
513	011	30.137	30.198	0.061	0.076
305	110	36.267	35.548	-0.719	0.078

Table 5.4. Bragg angles[a] calculated using the second approximation of the unit cell dimensions for $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ obtained after a least squares refinement of lattice parameters employing the data from *Table 5.3*: a = 5.047, c = 4.017 Å. Empty cells in the table correspond to the combinations of indices, which cannot be observed in the range $0 < 2\theta \leq 83°$.

hk \ *l*	0	1	2	3
00	-	22.111	45.104	70.238
01	20.301	30.193	49.931	73.979
02	41.277	47.314	62.783	-
03	63.836	68.445	81.561	-
11	35.546	42.260	58.703	81.271
12	55.586	60.552	74.276	-
22	75.251	79.570	-	-
13	78.903	-	-	-

[a] Bragg angles are listed for the location of the $K\alpha_1$ component in the doublet, λ = 1.540593 Å.

Table 5.5. Assignment of indices after the unit cell dimensions of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ have been refined using four lowest Bragg angle peaks: a = 5.047, c = 4.017 Å.

I/I_0	*hkl*	$2\theta^{calc}$	$2\theta^{obs}$	$2\theta^{obs} - 2\theta^{calc}$	$FWHM^{obs}$
20	010	20.301	20.288	-0.013	0.070
43	001	22.111	22.105	-0.006	0.077
513	011	30.193	30.198	0.005	0.076
305	110	35.546	35.548	0.002	0.078
394	020	41.277	41.285	0.008	0.082
1000	111	42.260	42.272	0.012	0.085
18[a]	-	-	44.211	-	0.099
274	002	45.104	45.130	0.026	0.106
89	021	47.314	47.332	0.018	0.091
4	012	49.931	49.965	0.034	0.109
10[b]	-	-	51.517	-	0.140
6	120	55.586	55.621	0.035	0.094
136	112	58.703	58.742	0.039	0.117
149	121	60.552	60.584	0.032	0.112
210	022	62.783	62.824	0.041	0.123
54	030	63.836	63.866	0.030	0.115
213	031	68.445	68.485	0.040	0.124
-	003	70.238	-	-	-
35	013	73.979	74.050	0.071	0.140
7	122	74.276	74.353	0.077	0.140
153	220	75.251	75.298	0.047	0.140
4	130	78.903	78.958	0.055	0.175
9	221	79.570	79.629	0.059	0.175
123	113	81.271	81.357	0.086	0.175
55	032	81.561	81.632	0.071	0.175

[a] The 111 Bragg reflection of an impurity phase (a solid solution of Sn in Ni).
[a] The 002 Bragg reflection of an impurity phase (a solid solution of Sn in Ni).

A least squares refinement of the unit cell dimensions of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ based on the observed Bragg angles and indices listed in *Table 5.5* yields the following unit cell: a = 5.0421(1), c = 4.0118(1) Å. The lattice parameters have been refined together with a zero shift correction, which was determined to be 0.032°. The final indexing of this diffraction pattern is shown in *Table 5.6*, where the observed Bragg angles have been corrected for the zero shift error by adding 0.032° to each observed 2θ.

There are two weak Bragg peaks in this diffraction pattern, which could not be indexed since they do not belong to the hexagonal crystal lattice with the established unit cell. As we will find out later (Chapters 6 and 7), these two peaks manifest the presence of a small amount of an impurity phase – a solid solution of Sn in Ni, which has a face-centered cubic crystal structure with the space group symmetry Fm3m and a = 3.543 Å. Only one theoretically possible Bragg peak of the major hexagonal phase (003) is unobserved in this powder diffraction pattern because its intensity is below the limits of detection.

Table 5.6. Final assignment of indices for the powder diffraction pattern of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$. The refined unit cell dimensions are: $a = 5.0421(1)$, $c = 4.0118(1)$ Å, zero shift is 0.032°.

I/I_0	*hkl*	$2\theta^{calc}$	$2\theta^{obs}$	$2\theta^{obs} - 2\theta^{calc}$	$FWHM^{obs}$
20	010	20.321	20.320[a]	-0.001	0.070
43	001	22.140	22.137	-0.003	0.077
513	011	30.228	30.230	0.002	0.076
305	110	35.582	35.580	-0.002	0.078
394	020	41.319	41.317	-0.002	0.082
1000	111	42.307	42.304	-0.003	0.085
18	-	-	44.243	-	0.099
274	002	45.165	45.162	-0.003	0.106
89	021	47.366	47.364	-0.002	0.091
4	012	49.997	49.997	0.000	0.109
10	-	-	51.549	-	0.140
6	120	55.644	55.653	0.009	0.094
136	112	58.779	58.774	-0.005	0.117
149	121	60.620	60.616	-0.004	0.112
210	022	62.864	62.856	-0.008	0.123
54	030	63.906	63.898	-0.008	0.115
213	031	68.524	68.517	-0.007	0.124
-	003	70.343	-	-	-
35	013	74.088	74.082	-0.006	0.140
7	122	74.372	74.385	0.013	0.140
153	220	75.337	75.330	-0.007	0.140
4	130	78.995	78.990	-0.005	0.175
9	221	79.665	79.661	-0.004	0.175
123	113	81.392	81.389	-0.003	0.175
55	032	81.668	81.664	-0.004	0.175

[a] The observed Bragg angles are listed as $2\theta^{meas.} + 0.032°$, where $2\theta^{meas.}$ is the as-measured Bragg angle, to account for the determined zero shift error.

The column containing full widths at half maximum of the observed Bragg peaks is a useful tool in deciding whether or not the final differences between the observed and calculated Bragg angles are satisfactory – their absolute values should be lower than a small fraction of the corresponding FWHM's. Furthermore, the observed FWHM's can be used in a computerized indexing procedure. Usually since the resolution of a well aligned laboratory powder diffractometer is high enough to distinguish a pair of overlapped Bragg peaks with comparable intensities when their positions are different only by ~1/2 to ~1/4 of their FWHM's, a fraction of the experimentally determined FWHM may be used instead of a random tolerance parameter during the indexing. When the difference $|2\theta^{obs} - 2\theta^{calc}|$ is less than the tolerance, the index triplet is assigned to the peak, otherwise the assignment is not performed.

We note that in the example considered in this section, the initial approximation of the unit cell dimensions was quite inaccurate. Nonetheless, the indexing was easy because a small unit cell has high symmetry.

Consequently, only a small number of reflections were possible in the range of measured Bragg angles and, for the most part, neighboring Bragg peaks were clearly resolved in the diffraction pattern.

Rather inaccurate lattice parameters can result from a comparison with known structures, serving as a basis for the initial guess. Considerable differences between the real and guessed unit cell dimensions can make indexing quite difficult, especially when large unit cells and/or low symmetry crystal structures are of concern. In many real cases, the best possible accuracy in the initial unit cell dimensions is critical in order to complete the indexing task in reasonable time, i.e. in a reasonable number of iterations. The whole pattern can rarely be indexed using the initial and imprecise approximation of lattice parameters due to inaccuracies in both the unit cell dimensions and in the measured peak positions, especially when systematic errors in the measured Bragg angles (e.g. zero shift, sample displacement and/or transparency effects) are present.

5.4.2 Other crystal systems

Indexing of powder diffraction data in crystal systems other than hexagonal when unit cell dimensions are known approximately, follows essentially the same path as described in the previous section, except that the proper form of Eq. 5.2 should be used in Eqs. 5.4 and 5.5. In low symmetry crystal systems, i.e. triclinic and monoclinic, two indices or one index, respectively, should include negative values, i.e. they should vary from $-i_{max}$ to $+i_{max}$, where $i = h$, k, or l, for a complete generation of the list of possible *hkl*. Referring to the example of the two-dimensional reciprocal lattice shown in *Figure 5.3*, it is easy to see that for completeness, the list of possible Bragg angles should include a set of reciprocal points with index h varying from $-h_{max}$ to h_{max} and k varying from 0 to k_{max}. In other words, this describes the upper half of the circle drawn in this reciprocal lattice. We note that all symmetrically independent combinations (*hk*) will also be generated when h varies from 0 to h_{max} but k varies from $-k_{max}$ to k_{max}, which corresponds to a semi-circle on the right of *Figure 5.3*.

The minimum and maximum values of Miller indices in three dimensions are fully determined by the symmetrically independent fraction of the reciprocal lattice as shown schematically in *Figure 5.6* for the six distinguishable "powder" Laue classes. The same conditions are also listed in *Table 5.7*.[1]

[1] Both *Table 5.7* and *Figure 5.6* account for the differences among "powder" Laue classes, which are distinguishable at this stage, and are suitable for indexing of powder diffraction patterns. For example, in Laue classes 6/m and 4/m ("powder" Laue classes 6/mmm and 4/mmm, respectively), the intensities of *hkl* and *khl* reflections are different, although the

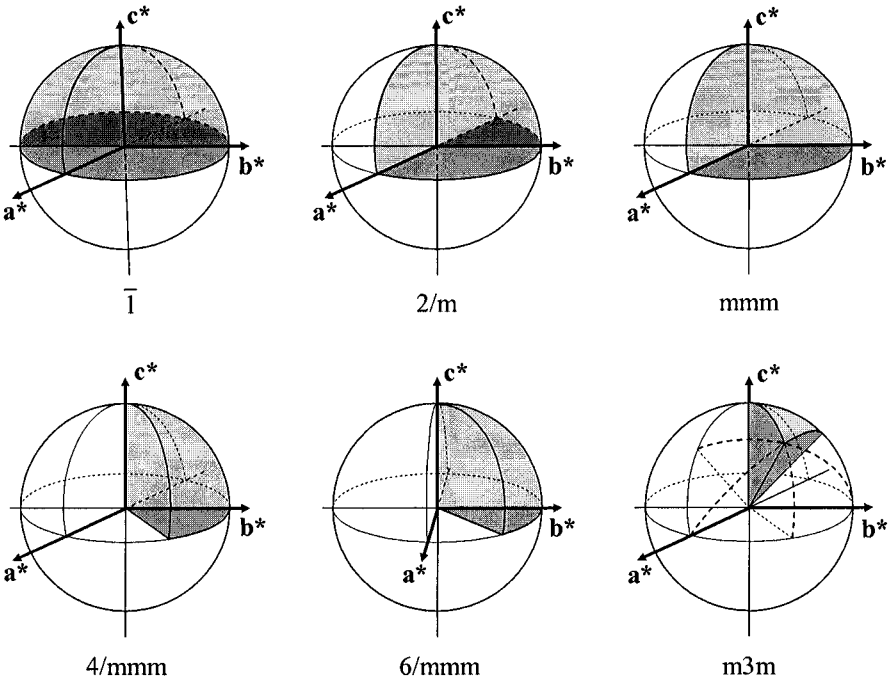


Figure 5.6. Schematic representations of the fractions of the volume of the sphere ($r = 1/\lambda$) in the reciprocal space in which the list of *hkl* triplets should be generated in six "powder" Laue classes to ensure that all symmetrically independent points in the reciprocal lattice have been included in the calculation of Bragg angles using a proper form of Eq. 5.2. The monoclinic crystal system is shown in the alternative setting, i.e. with the unique two-fold axis parallel to **c*** instead of the standard setting, where the two-fold axis is parallel to **b***.

Table 5.7. Symmetrically independent combinations of indices in six "powder" Laue classes.

"Powder" Laue class	Range of indices and limiting conditions[a]	Independent fraction of sphere volume[b]
Triclinic, $\bar{1}$	$-h \ldots +h$; $-k \ldots k$; $0 \ldots +l$	1/2
Monoclinic, 2/m	$-h \ldots +h$; $0 \ldots k$; $0 \ldots +l$	1/4
Orthorhombic, mmm	$0 \ldots +h$; $0 \ldots +k$; $0 \ldots +l$	1/8
Tetragonal, 4/mmm	$0 \ldots +h$; $0 \ldots +k$; $0 \ldots +l$; $h \le k$	1/16
Hexagonal (=Trigonal), 6/mmm	$0 \ldots +h$; $0 \ldots +k$; $0 \ldots +l$; $h \le k$	1/24
Cubic, m3m	$0 \ldots +h$; $0 \ldots +k$; $0 \ldots +l$; $h \le k$; $k \le l$	1/48

[a] Range and limiting conditions match the illustrations depicted in *Figure 5.6.*

[b] In general, any fraction of the sphere volume, symmetrically equivalent to that shaded in *Figure 5.6*, is acceptable.

corresponding Bragg angles remain identical. Consult the International Tables for Crystallography, vol. A, for proper intensity relationships in other Laue classes.

Instead of using a spreadsheet for generating the list of possible *hkl*'s and calculating Bragg angles using known or approximately known unit cell dimensions, it is possible to use one of several computer programs that can be downloaded from the International Union of Crystallography[1] or from the Collaborative Computational Project No. 14[2] Web sites. Nearly all of them are simple to use and they require minimum data input. The latter typically includes symmetry in the form of space group symbol or crystal system name, unit cell dimensions, wavelength and maximum Bragg angle to limit the amount of output data. Furthermore, nearly every commercially available crystallographic software product includes a procedure for generating a complete list of possible *hkl*'s along with the corresponding interplanar distances and Bragg angles calculated from the known unit cell dimensions.

5.5 Reliability of indexing

Regardless of which tools were used in the indexing of the powder diffraction pattern, the most reliable solution should result in the minimum discrepancies in the series of simultaneous equations (Eq. 5.5 or its equivalent for a different crystal system) constructed with the observed 2θ substituted into the left hand side and the assigned index triplets and refined unit cell dimensions substituted into the right hand side of each equation. While the minimum combined discrepancy is easily established algebraically, e.g. as the sum of the squared differences

$$\varepsilon = \sum_{i=1}^{N} \left(2\theta_{h_i k_i l_i}^{obs} - 2\theta_{h_i k_i l_i}^{calc} \right)^2 \tag{5.6}$$

usually it is not enough to achieve the minimum ε and assume that the correct unit cell has been found. In Eq. 5.6, N represents the number of the observed Bragg peaks. Obviously, when the unit cell dimensions are increased (e.g. see Eq. 5.5) or its symmetry is lowered (see *Table 5.7*), this results in an increased number of possible combinations of indices in the same range of Bragg angles. Ultimately, infinitesimal ε can be reached when the total number of possible combinations of *hkl* triplets approaches infinity but N remains constant.

Because of this ambiguity, several other criteria shall be considered before an indexing result is accepted, i.e. a final unit cell selection is made, especially during the *ab initio* indexing. The somewhat related to one another norms are as follows (all other things are assumed equal):

[1] http://www.iucr.org
[2] http://www.ccp14.ac.uk

a) The preference generally is given to the unit cell with the highest symmetry because high symmetry translates into a low number of symmetrically independent reciprocal lattice points (see *Figure 5.6*) and, therefore, the lowest number of possible Bragg reflections. For example, when the following three unit cells (*Table 5.8*) result in the successful indexing, the best of the three is represented by a tetragonal symmetry.

Table 5.8. Example of three unit cells with nearly identical volumes but different symmetry.

Crystal system	*a* (Å)	*b* (Å)	*c* (Å)	β (°)	Bravais lattice
Monoclinic	7.128	9.253	7.127	89.98	P
Orthorhombic	9.253	7.127	7.129	90	P
Tetragonal (best)	7.127	7.127	9.255	90	P

b) The unit cell with the smallest volume usually represents the best solution because it leaves the smallest number of possible index triplets unassigned to at least one of the observed Bragg peaks. In the example shown in *Table 5.9*, the third row is likely the best solution.

Table 5.9. Example of three unit cells with identical symmetry but different volumes.

Crystal system	*a* (Å)	*b* (Å)	*c* (Å)	*V* (Å^3)	Bravais lattice
Orthorhombic	7.128	9.253	5.613	370.21	P
Orthorhombic	9.253	7.128	11.226	740.42	P
Orthorhombic (best)	4.627	5.613	7.128	185.12	P

c) The preference shall be given to a solution, which results in the smallest number of possible *hkl* triplets in the examined range of Bragg angles. In other words, if among several solutions, which are otherwise equivalent, one has a centered lattice and all the others are primitive, the centered lattice is typically the best (see *Table 5.10*).

Table 5.10. Example of two unit cells with identical symmetry and volumes but different Bravais lattices.

Crystal system	*a* (Å)	*b* (Å)	*c* (Å)	*V* (Å^3)	Bravais lattice
Tetragonal (best)	7.127	7.127	9.255	470.28	I
Tetragonal	7.127	7.127	9.255	470.28	P

d) Finally, the resulting ε (Eq. 5.6) or a similar algebraic measure should be at its minimum for the most preferred indexing solution.

We note that the benchmarks listed above must be applied altogether. For example, it is nearly always possible to choose the highest symmetry crystal system (i.e. cubic) and a large unit cell to dubiously assign index triplets to all observed Bragg peaks and obtain acceptable ε. This happens because the density of points in the reciprocal lattice is proportional to the volume of the

unit cell in the direct space. As shown in *Figure 5.7*, all Bragg peaks observed in the powder diffraction pattern of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ can be indexed in a primitive cubic unit cell with $a \cong 24.74$ Å. Generally, large unit cells result in a massive number of unobserved Bragg peaks and more often than not such indexing is fictitious and the unit cell is incorrect.[1]

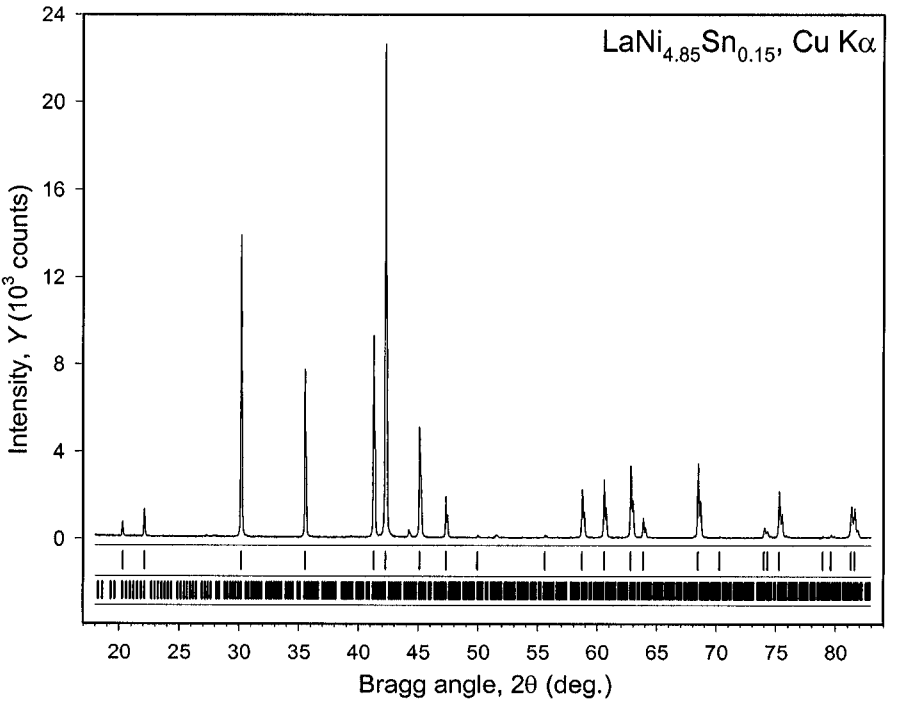


Figure 5.7. The illustration of an incorrect indexing of the powder diffraction pattern of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$. The upper set of vertical bars corresponds to the locations of Bragg peaks calculated using the correct hexagonal lattice with $a = 5.0421$, $c = 4.0118$ Å. The lower set of bars represents dubious indexing using a large primitive cubic unit cell with $a = 24.74$ Å, which has an overwhelming number of possible reflections, only a few percent of which correspond to observed Bragg reflections.

[1] In real structures, unit cell volumes vary by several orders of magnitude. For example, among metallic materials, the volume of the unit cell may be as small as ~20 Å^3 for a pure metal (Fe) containing two atoms in a body-centered cubic unit cell. It may also be as large as ~20,000 Å^3 for some complex intermetallic compounds, such as β-Mg_2Al_3 [S. Samson, The crystal structure of the phase beta Mg_2Al_3, Acta Cryst. **19**, 401 (1965)] and $Tb_{117}Fe_{52}Ge_{112}$ [V.K. Pecharsky, O.I. Bodak, V.K. Bel'sky, P.K. Starodub, I.R. Mokra, and E.I. Gladyshevsky, Crystal structure of $Tb_{117}Fe_{52}Ge_{112}$, Kristallografiya **32**, 3348 (1987); Engl. transl.: Sov. Phys. Crystallogr. **32**, 194 (1987)], both containing over 1,000 atoms in the face-centered cubic unit cells. The majority of crystalline materials, however, have volumes of their unit cells from several hundreds to several thousands cubic angströms except proteins, where unit cell volumes from ~10^5 to ~10^7 Å^3 are common.

It is worth noting, however, that when the true crystal structure is derived from a minor distortion of a small unit cell, e.g. when the so-called superstructure has been formed or when the real structure is perturbed by a long period, small amplitude modulation function, many Bragg peaks and often the majority of them, may have extremely low intensity and become unobserved. These cases require special attention during the indexing, and detailed consideration of related subjects exceeds the scope of this book.

The quality and the reliability of indexing, therefore, is routinely characterized by means of various numerical figures of merit (FOM's), and their significance becomes especially high when indexing is performed using a computer program. Numerous FOM's have been introduced and used with variable success in the powder diffraction data indexing process. We will consider two of the most frequently used figures of merit. Both have been adopted by the International Centre for Diffraction Data to characterize the quality of indexing of patterns included into the Powder Diffraction File.

5.5.1 The F_N figure of merit

The so-called F_N figure of merit has been introduced by Smith and Snyder.[1] It is defined as

$$F_N = \frac{N}{N_{poss}} \times \frac{1}{|\overline{\Delta 2\theta}|} = \frac{N^2}{N_{poss} \sum_{i=1}^{N} |2\theta_i^{obs} - 2\theta_i^{calc}|} \tag{5.7}$$

where

- N is the number of the observed Bragg peaks.
- N_{poss} is the number of independent Bragg reflections possible up to the N^{th} observed diffraction peak, and
- $|\overline{\Delta 2\theta}| = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{i=1}^{N}|\Delta 2\theta_i| = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{i=1}^{N}|2\theta_i^{obs} - 2\theta_i^{calc}|$ is the average absolute difference between the observed and calculated $2\theta_{hkl}$.

In other words, N_{poss} is the number of symmetrically independent points in the reciprocal lattice limited by a sphere with the diameter d^*_N (= $1/d_N$) as established by Eq. 5.3 after substituting the Bragg angle, θ_N, of the N^{th} observed Bragg peak for θ_{hkl}. Additional restrictions are imposed on N_{poss} in high symmetry crystal systems: when reciprocal lattice points are not related by symmetry but when they have identical reciprocal vector lengths due to specific unit cell shape (e.g. $h05$ and $h34$ in the cubic, or $05l$ and $34l$ in the

[1] G.S. Smith and R.L. Snyder, F_N: a criterion for rating powder diffraction patterns and evaluating the reliability of powder pattern indexing, J. Appl. Cryst. **12**, 60 (1979).

tetragonal crystal systems), then only one is included into calculating N_{poss}. On the contrary, when the identity of the reciprocal lattice vectors lengths is coincidental [e.g. as shown for $d_{(32)} = d_{(4\bar{2})}$ in *Figure 5.3*], both are included into the calculated N_{poss}. The F_N figure of merit is usually reported in the form

$$F_N = Value(|\overline{\Delta 2\theta}|, N_{poss.}) \tag{5.8}$$

For example, in the indexed powder diffraction pattern of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ shown in *Table 5.6* after the unit cell dimensions have been refined, the resulting F_N, excluding the two impurity peaks, is F_{22} = 208.4(0.005, 23). The same figure of merit, calculated using the indexing results and unrefined unit cell dimensions (*Table 5.5*), is F_{22} = 26.1(0.037, 23). The best FOM, F_{22} = 208.4(0.005, 23), is interpreted as follows: the figure of merit for the 22 observed Bragg peaks is 208.4, the average absolute 2θ difference is 0.005°, and the total number of possible symmetrically inequivalent Bragg peaks is 23. The best indexing result usually has the highest F_N. Although it is difficult to establish strict guidelines on the values of F_N corresponding to a reasonable indexing, the F_N usually should be greater than 10; the lowest average 2θ difference should be lower than 0.02°, and the number of possible Bragg peaks, N_{poss}, should be the same or slightly larger than the number of the observed peaks, N.

5.5.2 The M_{20} figure of merit

The second frequently used figure of merit, M_{20}, has been introduced by de Wolff[1] and it is defined as

$$M_{20} = \frac{1}{N_{poss}} \times \frac{Q_{20}}{2|\overline{\Delta Q}|} = \frac{10Q_{20}}{N_{poss}\sum_{i=1}^{20}\left|Q_i^{obs} - Q_i^{calc}\right|} \tag{5.9}$$

where:

- N_{poss} has the same meaning as in the F_N, except it is computed for $\theta_{max} = \theta_{20}$, i.e. it is the number of symmetrically independent points in the reciprocal lattice up to the 20th observed Bragg peak.
- $Q = d^{*2} = 1/d^2$ represents the square of the length of the reciprocal vector.

[1] P.M. de Wolff, A simplified criterion for the reliability of a powder pattern indexing, J. Appl. Cryst. **1**, 108 (1968).

- Q_{20} is the corresponding Q-value for the 20th observed Bragg peak, and
- $|\overline{\Delta Q}| = \frac{1}{20}\sum_{i=1}^{20}|\Delta Q_i| = \frac{1}{20}\sum_{i=1}^{20}\left|Q_{i=1}^{obs} - Q_{i=1}^{calc}\right|$ is the average absolute difference between the observed and calculated Q_{hkl} for the first 20 Bragg peaks.

The M_{20} FOM is nearly always calculated for the first 20 observed reflections, unless the total number of the observed Bragg peaks is less than 20. Sometimes, when $N > 20$, the value of M_N can be reported instead of M_{20}. In these cases, Eq. 5.9, is converted into

$$M_N = \frac{1}{N_{poss}} \times \frac{Q_N}{2|\overline{\Delta Q}|} = \frac{NQ_N}{2N_{poss}\sum_{i=1}^{N}\left|Q_i^{obs} - Q_i^{calc}\right|} \tag{5.10}$$

Once again referring to the two examples of indexing (*Table 5.5* and *Table 5.6*) the respective M_{20} values are 39.1 and 278.1. Similar to F_N, the more reliable indexing yields the higher M_{20}. However, it is even harder to specify an "acceptable" range of the M_{20} values: when compared to F_N, the M_{20} FOM is strongly dependent on both the complexity of the pattern and unit cell volume. Therefore, one should look for a solution with the M_{20} figure of merit, which is distinctly larger than the others. If all solutions have about the same and low M_{20} FOM's, e.g. all are between 5 and 6, it is highly likely that none of them is a correct solution of the indexing problem.

5.6 Introduction to *ab initio* indexing

The complexity of indexing powder diffraction data without prior knowledge of either or both the symmetry and dimensions of the unit cell (i.e. assignment of indices from first principles, based strictly on the relationships between the measured lengths of the reciprocal lattice vectors) is inversely proportional to the symmetry of the lattice – the higher the symmetry, the simpler the indexing process. Although today the actual indexing is hardly ever performed without employing one or several freely available or commercial computer programs,[1] we believe that it is important to consider essential mathematical background, which for many years was employed successfully to find solutions of indexing problems "manually".

[1] The most comprehensive collections of various crystallographic software products are found at the International Union of Crystallography Web site at http://www.iucr.org and at the Collaborative Computational Project No. 14 for Single Crystal and Powder Diffraction Web site at http://www.ccp14.ac.uk.

We will begin with the cubic crystal system, where the assignment of indices is nearly transparent and then consider the theory behind the *ab initio* indexing in crystal systems with tetragonal and hexagonal symmetry.[1] Indeed, as with any kind of experimental work, experience is paramount, and we hope that the contents of this section may help the reader to achieve accurate solutions of real life indexing tasks successfully.

Accurate indexing from first principles rests on the four cornerstones:

1. The availability of Bragg peaks observed at the lowest possible Bragg angles. These peaks are critically important because they have the simplest indices (usually $-2 \leq h \leq 2$, $-2 \leq k \leq 2$ and $-2 \leq l \leq 2$), which considerably limits the possibilities of locating the corresponding vectors in the reciprocal lattice and therefore, simplifies the whole process of restoring reciprocal lattice vector directions from their lengths.
2. The absence of a large number of extinct Bragg peaks, especially at low Bragg angles. For example, if due to a variety of reasons all observed Bragg peaks taken into account during the indexing have one of the indices divisible by two, then the resulting unit cell dimension will be 1/2 of the true value.
3. The high absolute accuracy including the absence of any kind of a systematic error affecting the measured Bragg angles. This requirement is obvious as only the lengths, but not the directions of the reciprocal vectors are measurable in powder diffraction. The presence of even a small systematic error (e.g. sample displacement and/or zero shift errors) may considerably affect the outcome of the indexing because it usually has the strongest influence on the lowest Bragg angle peaks, which are critical for successful indexing (see item 1 in this list, and Eq. 5.29 and *Figure 5.18*, below). In any case, systematic experimental errors should be minimized by proper alignment of the instrument. If necessary, an additional set of experimental data can be collected with a well-characterized internal standard added to the studied powder thus enabling one to eliminate the present systematic errors from the data before attempting *ab initio* assignment of indices.
4. The absence of impurity Bragg peaks in the array of experimental data. If this requirement is not met and one or more impurity peaks are included in the indexing attempt, it is nearly always true that the reciprocal vectors from the impurity phase do not fit within the correct reciprocal lattice of the major crystalline phase. The resulting unit cell, if a solution is ever found, more often than not will be incorrect as it describes both the vectors from the major phase and the impurity phase(s) in the same

[1] An excellent description of the *ab initio* indexing in all crystal systems can be found in H. Lipson and H. Steeple, Interpretation of x-ray powder diffraction patterns, Macmillan, London; St. Martin's Press, New York (1970).

reciprocal lattice. Certain *ab initio* indexing procedures, e.g. those that are incorporated into TREOR and ITO (see sections 5.11.1 and 5.11.3 below), automatically skip some Bragg peaks that do not fit in a trial lattice. This feature may help in indexing patterns containing some impurities but on the other hand, it may also result in the incorrect, usually overly simplified solution when Bragg peaks from a major phase are accidentally excluded.

5.7 Cubic crystal system

Cubic symmetry of a material is always a good guess when a powder diffraction pattern contains just a few peaks, or when there are sequences of observed Bragg peaks that appear nearly equally spaced, especially at low Bragg angles. Clearly, some experience in working with powder diffraction data is needed to make this judgment from a visual analysis of $Y(\theta)$. However, the *ab initio* indexing algorithm is so simple in the case of cubic symmetry, that nearly always it is justifiable to attempt cubic indexing and either confirm or dismiss this option.

When the crystal system is cubic, the general form of equation 5.2 is simplified to

$$\frac{1}{d_{hkl}^2} = \frac{h^2 + k^2 + l^2}{a^2} \tag{5.11}$$

or in terms of the reciprocal lattice parameter

$$\frac{1}{d_{hkl}^2} = d_{hkl}^{*\,2} = (h^2 + k^2 + l^2)a^{*2} \tag{5.12}$$

Since h, k and l are integers, the sums of their squares, $(h^2 + k^2 + l^2)$, are also integer numbers. Thus, equation 5.12 can be written as follows

$$Q_{hkl} = A_{hkl}a^{*2} \tag{5.13}$$

where $Q_{hkl} = d^{*2}{}_{hkl} = 1/d^2{}_{hkl}$ and $A_{hkl} = (h^2 + k^2 + l^2)$. The former is established from the experiment for each Bragg peak using Eq. 5.3 and the latter is a positive integer, which depends on the values of h, k and l in the index triplet. Certain whole numbers, e.g. 7, 15 and others, given by

$$A = i^2(8j - 1) \tag{5.14}$$

where i and j are positive integers, cannot be represented as a sum of squares of any three integers and therefore, are forbidden in Eq. 5.13.

Assume that we have a set of experimental data where the observed Bragg angles have been converted into an array of Q-values. Then, if the crystal lattice is cubic, the following system of simultaneous equations can be written to associate each Bragg peak with a certain combination of *hkl* triplets:

$$\begin{aligned} Q_{h_1k_1l_1} &= A_{h_1k_1l_1}a^{*2} & Q_{h_1k_1l_1}/a^{*2} &= A_{h_1k_1l_1} \\ Q_{h_2k_2l_2} &= A_{h_2k_2l_2}a^{*2} \quad \Rightarrow & Q_{h_2k_2l_2}/a^{*2} &= A_{h_2k_2l_2} \\ \ldots & & \ldots & \\ Q_{h_Nk_Nl_N} &= A_{h_Nk_Nl_N}a^{*2} & Q_{h_Nk_Nl_N}/a^{*2} &= A_{h_Nk_Nl_N} \end{aligned} \tag{5.15}$$

As follows from the second form of Eq. 5.15, the observed array of Q-values should have a common divisor, which results in the array of integers or nearly integers, considering the finite accuracy of the measured Bragg angles. This common divisor is nothing else than the inverse of the square of the edge of the cubic unit cell in the direct space since $a^* = 1/a$.

The algorithm of indexing to test for cubic symmetry is shown in the form of a flowchart in *Figure 5.8*. After the array of Bragg angles have been converted to Q-values, the next step is to normalize it and find the integers A^1, A^2, ..., A^N. The simplest way to do so is to divide all Q-values by the smallest number present in the array, i.e. $Q_{h_1k_1l_1} = Q^1$. If the resulting array of A^1, A^2, ..., A^N contains whole numbers (to within a few hundredth's), the lattice parameter is calculated and the corresponding values of the $h_ik_il_i$ triplets are determined based on the values of A^i after verification that no forbidden integers (e.g. 7, 15, etc., see Eq. 5.14) are present in the array A.

When the first normalization step results in clearly non-integer values in the array A, indexing still may be completed when the obtained A^1, A^2, ..., A^N are multiplied by 2, 3, 4, etc. If the crystal system is truly cubic, a simple visual analysis of the array A after the first normalization usually enables one to determine the needed integer multiplier easily. For example, when decimal fractions of all A-values are close to 0 and 0.5, multiplying every number in the array A by 2 will result in all integers. Similarly, when the fractions are ~0, ~0.33 and ~0.66, the multiplier is 3, and so on. When the algorithm shown in *Figure 5.8* is realized as a computer program then visual analysis of data in A is usually impractical and the value of n is determined automatically, based on somewhat arbitrary tolerances that establish which value is taken as a whole number and which is not.

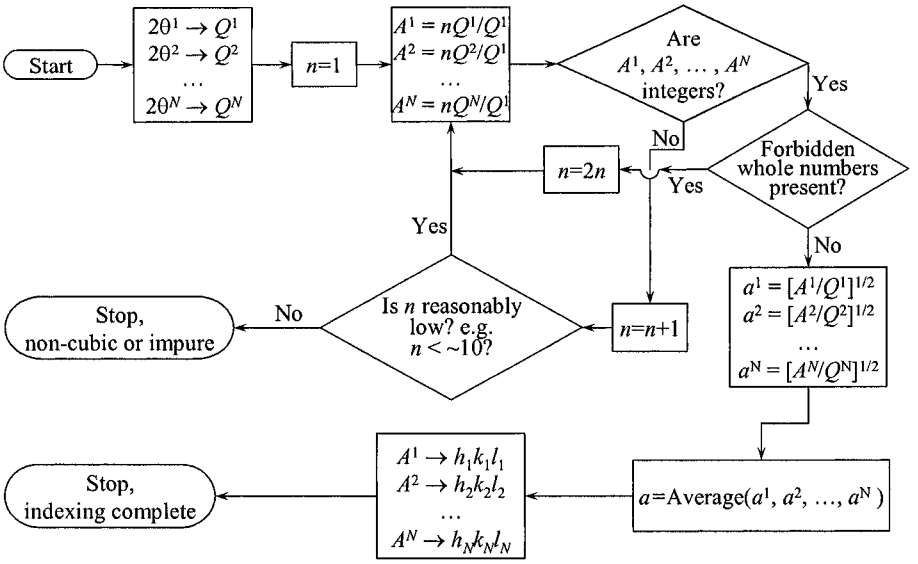


Figure 5.8. The flowchart illustrating the algorithm of the *ab initio* indexing when cubic symmetry of the reciprocal lattice is suspected. It is assumed that the array of Q-values is sorted in the ascending order from Q^1 to Q^N.

In some cases, the resulting array A may contain forbidden integer(s) . Considering Eq. 5.14 and *Table 5.11* two of the first 20 positive integers, i.e. 7 and 15, cannot be represented as sums of squares of any three integers. Their presence signals that the crystal lattice is body-centered. In a body-centered lattice, the simplest sequence of integers, which can be obtained using the indexing algorithm based on finding a common divisor, is shown in the corresponding column in *Table 5.11* in parenthesis (1, 2, ..., **7**, 8, 9, ...). The correct A-values are then found by doubling every integer, which results in the combination of indices where $h + k + l$ are even.

Table 5.11. The first 20 positive integers and the corresponding *hkl* triplets in the primitive, body-centered and face-centered cubic lattices.

Centering / Integer	P		I		F	
	hkl	*A*	*hkl*	*A*[a]	*hkl*	*A*
1	001	1				
2	011	2	011	2 (1)		
3	111	3			111	3
4	002	4	002	4 (2)	002	4
5	012	5				
6	112	6	112	6 (3)		
7	-		-		-	
8	022	8	022	8 (4)	022	8
9	003, 122	9				
10	013	10	013	10 (5)		

Integer \ Centering	P		I		F	
	hkl	*A*	*hkl*	*A*[a]	*hkl*	*A*
11	113	11			113	11
12	222	12	222	12 (6)	222	12
13	023	13				
14	123	14	123	14 (7)		
15	-		-		-	
16	004	16	004	16 (8)	004	16
17	014, 223	17				
18	114, 033	18	114, 033	18 (9)		
19	133	19			133	19
20	024	20	024	20 (10)	024	20

[a] The numbers in parenthesis indicate the simplest sequence of integers, which describes the relationships between the sums of h^2, k^2, and l^2 in the body-centered cubic lattice. The presence of forbidden integers (e.g. 7, which is highlighted in bold) enables one to differentiate between the primitive and body-centered cubic lattices during the *ab initio* indexing.

5.7.1 Primitive cubic unit cell: LaB_6

We now consider the application of the indexing algorithm described above using experimental powder diffraction data collected from two different cubic materials. The first one is the standard reference material LaB_6, which was available from the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) under the catalogue number SRM-660.[1] The experimental powder diffraction pattern is shown in *Figure 5.9* and the certified lattice parameter of the material is $a = 4.15695(6)$ Å. The observed Bragg peak positions were determined using a profile fitting procedure and the least squares standard deviations in the observed Bragg angles did not exceed 0.001° of 2θ. These are listed in *Table 5.12* and can be found in Excel spreadsheet data file **Ch5Ex02_PrimitiveCubic.xls** on the CD.

Table 5.12 shows how the indexing has been performed. First, Q^{obs} are calculated for each $2\theta^{obs}$:

$$Q^{obs} = \frac{1}{d^2} = \frac{4\sin^2\theta^{obs}}{\lambda^2} \tag{5.16}$$

Second, the values from this column are normalized by dividing them by the smallest observed Q, i.e. by 0.05740. This yields the column of data marked as Q^{obs}/Q^1.

[1] SRM-660 has been replaced by SRM-660a and the latter is available from NIST. Consult http://srmcatalog.nist.gov/ for details.

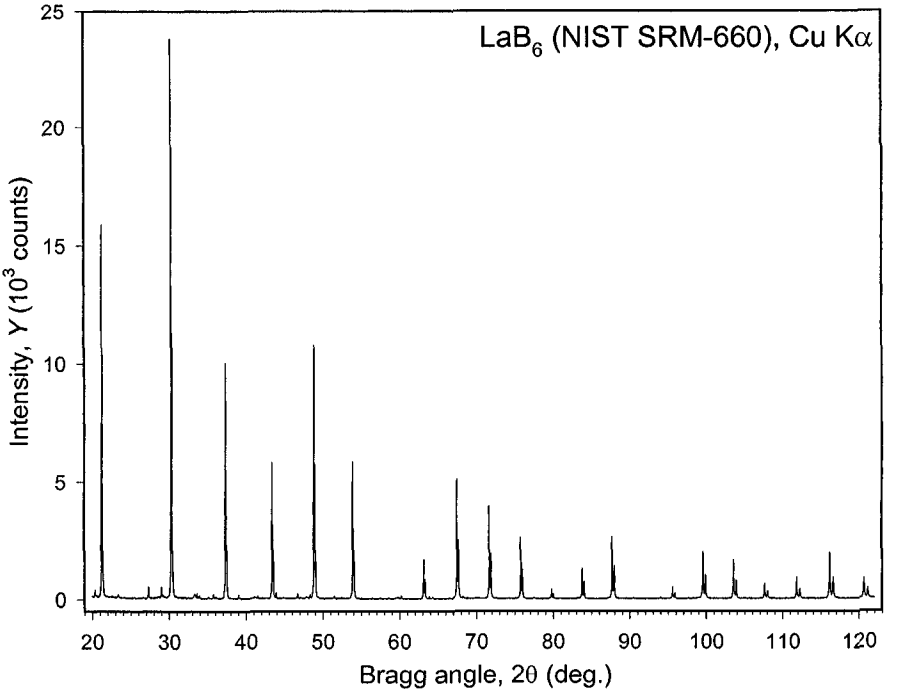


Figure 5.9. The x-ray powder diffraction pattern collected from SRM-660 LaB_6 powder on a Scintag XDS2000 powder diffractometer using Cu Kα radiation. The data were collected in a step scan mode with a step 0.02° of 2θ. The ASCII data file with diffraction data is available on the CD, file name **Ch5Ex02_CuKa.xy**. Weak peaks visible at low Bragg angles (~20.5, 27, 29, 34.5, ..., 60.2°) belong to an unidentified impurity.

Analysis of this column indicates that it contains nearly integer numbers from 1 to 22 and that the deviations from the whole increase systematically with the increasing Bragg angle. The latter is generally observed due to the low accuracy of the first Q-value (the divisor) but it also may be due to the presence of a systematic error in the observed Bragg angles. Proceeding according to the algorithm depicted in *Figure 5.8*, we find the corresponding integers in column A_{hkl} by rounding the values in the previous column and establish the respective *hkl* triplets for each observed Bragg peak.

The last column contains the values of the lattice parameter calculated from individual Bragg peaks by means of

$$a = \sqrt{\frac{A^i}{Q^i}} \tag{5.17}$$

Table 5.12. Example of the *ab initio* indexing in the cubic crystal system using all observed Bragg peaks present in the pattern shown in *Figure 5.9.* Excel spreadsheet file **Ch5Ex02_PrimitiveCubic.xls** is available on the CD.

I/I_0	$2\theta^{obs}$	$FWHM^{obs}$	Q^{obs}	Q^{obs}/Q^1	A_{hkl}	hkl	a, Å
632	21.270[a]	0.065	0.05740	1.000	1	001	4.1739
1000	30.304	0.063	0.11514	2.006	2	011	4.1677
429	37.357	0.062	0.17286	3.011	3	111	4.1660
250	43.423	0.062	0.23064	4.018	4	002	4.1645
485	48.874	0.064	0.28843	5.025	5	012	4.1636
276	53.905	0.066	0.34623	6.032	6	112	4.1629
84	63.134	0.070	0.46186	8.046	8	022	4.1619
269	67.461	0.071	0.51966	9.053	9	003, 122	4.1616
204	71.661	0.070	0.57753	10.061	10	013	4.1611
141	75.758	0.074	0.63535	11.069	11	113	4.1609
26	79.788	0.081	0.69327	12.078	12	222	4.1605
80	83.761	0.079	0.75109	13.085	13	023	4.1603
173	87.703	0.084	0.80889	14.092	14	123	4.1602
31	95.576	0.079	0.92454	16.107	16	004	4.1600
146	99.547	0.092	0.98242	17.115	17	014, 223	4.1598
122	103.560	0.095	1.04024	18.122	18	114, 033	4.1598
53	107.649	0.109	1.09815	19.131	19	133	4.1596
71	111.836	0.106	1.15609	20.141	20	024	4.1593
172	116.145	0.111	1.21398	21.149	21	124	4.1591
87	120.625	0.127	1.27193	22.159	22	233	4.1589
						$a_{Average}$	= 4.1621
						Standard deviation	= 0.0037

[a] Bragg angles are listed for the location of the $K\alpha_1$ component in the doublet, $\lambda = 1.540593$ Å.

When one uses the indexing results shown in *Table 5.12* to perform a least squares refinement of both the lattice parameter and sample displacement or zero shift, the resulting values are as follows: $a = 4.1574(1)$ Å and the zero shift is 0.078°. The corresponding F_N figure of merit is $F_{20} = 384.6(0.003, 20)$. The difference between the obtained lattice parameter and that which is considered a standard value ($a = 4.15695$ Å, see above), is acceptable considering the absence of special procedures adopted by NIST in certifying the lattice parameter of the standard.

5.7.2 Body-centered cubic unit cell: $U_3Ni_6Si_2$

The second example is shown in *Figure 5.10* and *Table 5.13.* The observed Bragg peak positions were determined using a profile fitting procedure and the least squares standard deviations in the observed Bragg angles did not exceed 0.003° of 2θ. Considering the results shown in *Table 5.13*, the column labeled Q^{obs}/Q^1 contains nearly whole numbers, but unlike

the identical column in *Table 5.12*, here one finds forbidden integer values: 7, 15 and 23 (all three are highlighted in bold in *Table 5.13*).

Thus, the column labeled A_{hkl} is obtained by rounding the values from the previous column and multiplying them by 2. The corresponding *hkl* triplets confirm a body-centered lattice ($h + k + l = 2n$), and the last column contains the values of the lattice parameter calculated from the individual Bragg peaks using Eq. 5.17.

Even though the numbers in the column Q^{obs}/Q^1 still show a systematic increase in the deviations from whole numbers (the reason is the low absolute accuracy of the divisor, $Q^1 = 0.02682$), the lattice parameters listed in the last column do not reveal the presence of any kind of a systematic error in the observed Bragg angles. Using the average lattice parameter, a = 8.6443 Å, the indexing result listed in *Table 5.13* yields F_{20} = 194.7(0.005, 22): two of the first 22 Bragg peaks are not observed in this diffraction pattern (233 and 062) and one whole number (28) is forbidden. A least squares refinement yields the unit cell dimension nearly identical to the

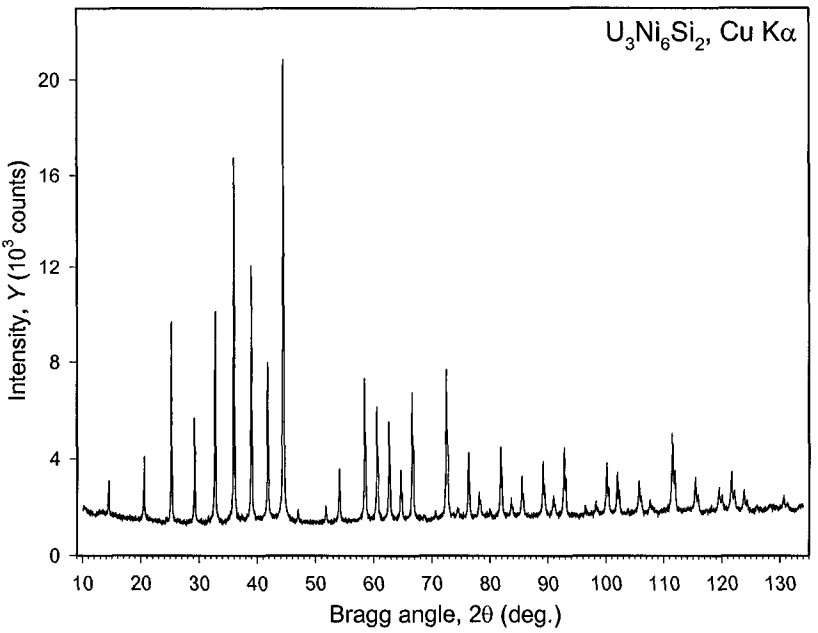


Figure 5.10. The x-ray powder diffraction pattern of $U_3Ni_6Si_2$ collected on an HZG-4a powder diffractometer using filtered Cu Kα radiation. The data were collected in a step scan mode with a step 0.02° of 2θ and counting time 25 sec. The ASCII data file with the diffraction data is available on the CD, file name **Ch5Ex03_CuKa.xy**. Data courtesy of Dr. L.G. Akselrud. When compared, for example, with *Figure 5.5* and *Figure 5.9*, the increased background is noteworthy, which occurs as a result of its incomplete elimination when using a β-filter.

average value shown above and results in a negligible zero shift correction. We leave the least squares refinement as an exercise to the reader.

Table 5.13. Example of the *ab initio* indexing in the cubic crystal system using first 20 Bragg peaks present in the pattern shown in *Figure 5.10.* Excel spreadsheet file **Ch5Ex03_BodyCenteredCubic.xls** is available on the CD.

I/I_0	$2\theta^{obs}$	$FWHM^{obs}$	Q^{obs}	Q^{obs}/Q^{1}	A_{hkl}	hkl	a, Å
58	14.493[a]	0.165	0.02682	1.000	2	011	8.6363
115	20.530	0.138	0.05352	1.996	4	002	8.6452
338	25.216	0.120	0.08030	2.995	6	112	8.6441
178	29.196	0.122	0.10706	3.992	8	022	8.6445
427	32.733	0.138	0.13382	4.990	10	013	8.6446
696	35.961	0.117	0.16060	5.989	12	222	8.6441
462	38.953	0.121	0.18736	**6.987**	14	123	8.6443
328	41.761	0.145	0.21410	7.984	16	004	8.6448
1000	44.425	0.134	0.24086	8.982	18	033, 114	8.6448
29	46.954	0.133	0.26747	9.975	20	024	8.6472
29	51.754	0.133	0.32102	11.972	24	224	8.6465
124	54.044	0.133	0.34788	12.973	26	134, 015	8.6451
348	58.425	0.147	0.40143	**14.970**	30	125	8.6448
271	60.544	0.143	0.42828	15.972	32	044	8.6439
232	62.613	0.141	0.45504	16.970	34	334, 035	8.6440
125	64.638	0.161	0.48172	17.965	36	244, 006	8.6448
321	66.641	0.155	0.50855	18.965	38	235, 116	8.6442
15	70.542	0.173	0.56196	20.957	42	145	8.6451
442	72.464	0.173	0.58876	21.957	44	226	8.6448
26	74.375	0.173	0.61570	**22.961**	46	136	8.6436
						$a_{Average}$	= 8.6443
						Standard deviation	= 0.0021

[a] Bragg angles are listed for the location of the $K\alpha_1$ component in the doublet, $\lambda = 1.540593$ Å.

5.8 Tetragonal and hexagonal crystal systems

The quadratic form of Eq. 5.2 in the hexagonal crystal system is found in Eq. 5.4 and its analogue in the tetragonal crystal system is

$$\frac{1}{d^2} = \frac{h^2 + k^2}{a^2} + \frac{l^2}{c^2} \tag{5.18}$$

Following the approach illustrated using Eqs. 5.11 to 5.13 and maintaining similar notations, Eqs. 5.4 and 5.18 can be written as

$$Q_{hkl} = A_{hk}^{t,h} a^{*2} + C_l c^{*2} \tag{5.19}$$

where $Q_{hkl} = d^{*2}_{hkl} = 1/d^2_{hkl}$, $A^t_{hk} = (h^2 + k^2)$, $A^h_{hk} = (h^2 + hk + k^2)$ and $C_l = l^2$ and noting that in the hexagonal crystal system $a^* = 2/a\sqrt{3}$. Hence, positions of Bragg peaks found in the diffraction patterns of materials that belong to either the tetragonal or hexagonal crystal systems can be represented by the following series of simultaneous equations, where A^t_{hk} and A^h_{hk} are substituted by A_{hk}:

$$\begin{aligned} Q_{h_1k_1l_1} &= A_{h_1k_1}a^{*2} + C_{l_1}c^{*2} \\ Q_{h_2k_2l_2} &= A_{h_2k_2}a^{*2} + C_{l_2}c^{*2} \\ &\cdots \\ Q_{h_Nk_Nl_N} &= A_{h_Nk_N}a^{*2} + C_{l_N}c^{*2} \end{aligned} \tag{5.20}$$

The solution of Eq. 5.20 could be found after calculating all possible differences between the observed pairs of Q_{hkl}. This leads to the following series of equations:

$$\begin{aligned} Q_{h_2k_2l_2} - Q_{h_1k_1l_1} &= (A_{h_2k_2} - A_{h_1k_1})a^{*2} + (C_{l_2} - C_{l_1})c^{*2} \\ &\cdots \\ Q_{h_Nk_Nl_N} - Q_{h_1k_1l_1} &= (A_{h_Nk_N} - A_{h_1k_1})a^{*2} + (C_{l_N} - C_{l_1})c^{*2} \\ Q_{h_3k_3l_3} - Q_{h_2k_2l_2} &= (A_{h_3k_3} - A_{h_2k_2})a^{*2} + (C_{l_3} - C_{l_2})c^{*2} \\ &\cdots \\ Q_{h_Nk_Nl_N} - Q_{h_{N-1}k_{N-1}l_{N-1}} &= (A_{h_Nk_N} - A_{h_{N-1}k_{N-1}})a^{*2} + (C_{l_N} - C_{l_{N-1}})c^{*2} \end{aligned} \tag{5.21}$$

As follows from Eq. 5.21, when two Bragg peaks have the same value of l, e.g. h_ik_i0 and h_jk_j0, or h_ik_i1 and h_jk_j1, or h_ik_i2 and h_jk_j2 and so on, the resulting difference is only a function of A_{hk} and a^*:

$$Q_{h_ik_il_i} - Q_{h_jk_jl_j} = (A_{h_ik_i} - A_{h_jk_j})a^{*2} \tag{5.22}$$

Similarly, when h and k are identical but l is different, e.g. $01l_i$ and $01l_j$, or $11l_i$ and $11l_j$, or $12l_i$ and $12l_j$, and so on, some of the equations in 5.21 are transformed into:

$$Q_{h_ik_il_i} - Q_{h_jk_jl_j} = (C_{l_i} - C_{l_j})c^{*2} \tag{5.23}$$

Solving the indexing problem becomes a matter of identifying the differences that result in whole numbers when divided by a common divisor (a^{*2} and c^{*2}, respectively). The expected whole numbers are shown in *Table 5.14* through *Table 5.16* for several small h, k and l. It only makes sense to consider these small values because successful indexing is critically dependent on the availability of low Bragg angle peaks, which usually have small values of indices.

The resulting whole numbers, expected as multipliers for the differences in Q-values given by Eq. 5.23 (*Table 5.14*), are dissimilar from those expected for Eq. 5.22 (*Table 5.15* and *Table 5.16*), and this property is used to distinguish between c^{*2} and a^{*2}.

Given the background considered above, the indexing of experimental powder diffraction data assuming tetragonal or hexagonal symmetry may be carried out using the algorithm illustrated in *Figure 5.11*. First, all possible differences between the observed Q-values are computed for several low Bragg angle peaks. Second, the array of the obtained differences is analyzed to find the most frequently occurring small values. Third, the found values are tested with respect to whether or not the indexing of all observed Bragg peaks is possible assuming that one of the quantities is a^{*2} and another is c^{*2}.

If the indexing is successful, both the crystal system and lattice parameters are determined. If not, the found small values can be tested after they have been divided by a whole number, usually between 2 and 4. Again, if indexing is possible, the problem is solved but if the indexing is impossible, one or both found small values suspected as a^{*2} and c^{*2} should be discarded and the search for a suitable pair of a^{*2} and c^{*2} continues. When all potential candidates have been tested and no solution has been found, then likely the assumption of tetragonal or hexagonal symmetry is wrong, or the powder diffraction data contain impurity Bragg peaks at low angles, which makes reasonable indexing impossible.

Table 5.14. Possible values of integer multipliers for the differences defined in Eq. 5.23 for both tetragonal and hexagonal crystal systems

l^2_j \ l^2_i	0	1	4	9	16
0	-	1	4	9	16
1		-	3	8	15
4			-	5	12
9				-	7
16					-

Table 5.15. Possible values of integer multipliers for the differences defined in Eq. 5.22 for the tetragonal crystal system

(h_jk_j) \ (h_ik_i)	(00); $A_{hk}=0$	(01); $A_{hk}=1$	(11); $A_{hk}=2$	(02); $A_{hk}=4$	(12); $A_{hk}=5$
(00); $A_{hk}=0$	-	1	2	3	4
(01); $A_{hk}=1$		-	1	3	4
(11); $A_{hk}=2$			-	2	3
(02); $A_{hk}=4$				-	1
(12); $A_{hk}=5$					-

Table 5.16. Possible values of integer multipliers for the differences defined in Eq. 5.22 for the hexagonal crystal system

(h_jk_j) \ (h_ik_i)	(00); $A_{hk}=0$	(01); $A_{hk}=1$	(11); $A_{hk}=3$	(02); $A_{hk}=4$	(12); $A_{hk}=7$
(00); $A_{hk}=0$	-	1	3	4	7
(01); $A_{hk}=1$		-	2	3	6
(11); $A_{hk}=3$			-	1	4
(02); $A_{hk}=4$				-	3
(12); $A_{hk}=7$					-

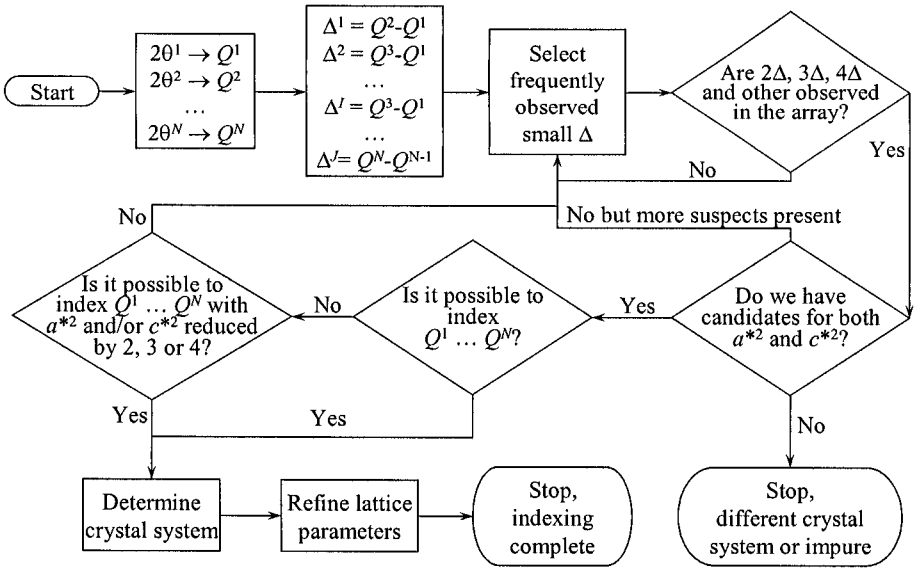


Figure 5.11. The flowchart illustrating the algorithm of the *ab initio* indexing assuming tetragonal or hexagonal symmetry of the reciprocal lattice.

5.8.1 Indexing example: $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$

We will illustrate the use of the technique described above by indexing the powder diffraction pattern of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ (*Figure 5.5* and *Table 5.1*). Note that in the process we make no assumptions about the exact symmetry of the material except that we suspect that it may be either tetragonal or hexagonal. In our indexing attempt we will limit all calculations to the first seven observed Bragg peaks excluding the weak impurity peak observed at $2\theta = 44.211°$ as shown in *Table 5.17*. The observed Bragg angles as determined directly from a profile fitting procedure are employed without correcting for any kind of a systematic error.[1]

Table 5.17. Relative integrated intensities (I/I_0), Bragg angles and full widths at half maximum (FWHM) of first eight Bragg peaks observed in the $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ powder diffraction pattern, see *Figure 5.5*. The impurity Bragg peak shown using a strike-through font has been excluded from the indexing attempt.

I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)	I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)
20	20.288	0.070	394	41.285	0.082
43	22.105	0.077	1000	42.272	0.085
513	30.198	0.076	~~18~~	~~44.211~~	~~0.099~~
305	35.548	0.078	274	45.130	0.106

[a] Bragg angles are listed for the position of the $K\alpha_1$ component in the characteristic Cu Kα spectrum, $\lambda = 1.540593$ Å.

The values of Bragg angles listed in *Table 5.17* have been converted into the Q-values using Eq. 5.3. Possible differences (Eq. 5.21) have been calculated and listed in *Table 5.18*. They are sorted and analyzed as shown in *Table 5.19*. The first column in this table includes the Q-values of the seven observed Bragg peaks (in **bold**) in addition to all calculated differences.

Table 5.18. Differences in Q-values for the first seven observed Bragg peaks in the powder diffraction pattern of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$.

Q_j \ Q_i	0.0523	0.0619	0.1144	0.1570	0.2095	0.2191	0.2482
0.0523	-	0.0097	0.0621	0.1048	0.1572	0.1668	0.1959
0.0619		-	0.0524	0.0951	0.1475	0.1572	0.1862
0.1144			-	0.0427	0.0951	0.1048	0.1338
0.1570				-	0.0524	0.0621	0.0911
0.2095					-	0.0097	0.0387
0.2191						-	0.0290
0.2482							-

[1] Although the presence of a systematic error may, in general, hinder an indexing attempt, neglecting a small zero shift error in this case (see *Table 5.6*) is forgivable because only a small region of Bragg angles (from 20 to 45° 2θ) is employed. When larger arrays of data are included in an *ab initio* indexing, they should be corrected for all known systematic errors, if any, for example by employing an internal standard.

Table 5.19. Illustration of the indexing of the first seven Bragg peaks observed in the powder diffraction pattern of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ using Eqs. 5.20 to 5.23.

Q_{obs}, Diff.	Mean[a]	×2[a]	×3[a]	×4[a]	a^{*2}, c^{*2}	Eq. 5.19	Q_{calc}	*hkl*
0.0097								
0.0097	0.0097	0.0193	0.0290	0.0387	?			
0.0290								
0.0387								
0.0427								
0.0523								
0.0524	0.0524	*0.1047*	0.1571	0.2095	a^{*2}	$1a^{*2}$	**0.0524**	**010**
0.0524								
0.0619								
0.0621	0.0620	0.1241	0.1861	0.2481	c^{*2}	$1c^{*2}$	**0.0620**	**001**
0.0621								
0.0911								
0.0951								
0.0951								
0.1048								
0.1048								
0.1144						$1a^{*2}+1c^{*2}$	**0.1144**	**011**
0.1338								
0.1475								
0.1570						$3a^{*2}$	**0.1571**	**110**
0.1572								
0.1572								
0.1668								
0.1862								
0.1959								
0.2095						$4a^{*2}$	**0.2095**	**020**
0.2191						$3a^{*2}+1c^{*2}$	**0.2191**	**111**
0.2482						$4c^{*2}$	**0.2481**	**002**

[a] All values in the table are listed with four digits after decimal point but the actual computations were performed with a better accuracy.

Considering Eqs. 5.22 and 5.23, *Table 5.14* through *Table 5.16*, and *Figure 5.11* it is quite clear that all computed differences should be analyzed for the occurrence of nearly identical small values, which potentially may correspond to the differences resulting in a^{*2} and c^{*2} or their whole multiples. Once the repetitive numbers are found, the next step is to find out whether or not the array of differences and observed Q-values contains whole multiples or whole fractions of the found quantities. The tested whole numbers should be correlated with *Table 5.14* through *Table 5.16*.

The initial candidate in the first column of *Table 5.19* is 0.0097, which occurs twice. The average and the results of its multiplication by 2, 3 and 4 – the simplest whole numbers that are present in *Table 5.14* through *Table 5.16* – are shown in columns 2, 3, 4 and 5. If the computed average corresponds to either a^{*2} or c^{*2} then these products should also be often

observed in the array combining both the differences and observed Q-values. As seen from *Table 5.19*, this is not the case since only one occurrence of triple and quadruple multiples of the suspected value are found, and 0.0097 as a candidate for a^{*2} or c^{*2} is dismissed as unsuitable. Furthermore, this value appears too small because it results in $d \cong 10$ Å, which is too large considering the simplicity of the powder diffraction pattern (*Figure 5.5*).

The next possibility is 0.0524, which occurs three times for the differences between pairs of first seven observed Bragg peaks. Not only this value is itself more frequently occurring than any other smaller quantity found in the table, but when multiplied by two it yields 0.1047, which occurs in the array twice – these nearly identical numbers are shown in *italic*. Testing 0.0524 multiplied by three (0.1571) has three additional occurrences (all are shown underlined). There is also one occurrence of $4\times0.0524 = 0.2095$, both are double underlined. Hence, this value seems to be an excellent candidate for one of the reciprocal lattice parameters. After consulting *Table 5.14* through *Table 5.16* it is clear that $2\times c^{*2}$ is not expected to be seen but $2\times a^{*2}$ should be observed quite frequently in both the tetragonal and hexagonal crystal systems.

Proceeding in a similar fashion with the triple occurrence of the next small value (the average is 0.0620) we find that the array of differences and observed Q-values has no occurrences of $2\times0.0620 = 0.1241$ but both $3\times0.0620 = 0.1861$ and $4\times0.0620 = 0.2481$ have one occurrence in the table. Hence, as follows from *Table 5.14* the value of 0.0620 is an outstanding candidate for c^{*2}.

The next step is to verify whether or not the found candidates for a^{*2} and c^{*2} (both are shaded in *Table 5.19*) result in the complete indexing of the existing seven Bragg peaks. By using Eq. 5.19, all observed Q-values are nearly equal to the sums of Aa^{*2} and Cc^{*2}, where A and C are whole numbers, which are listed in the corresponding column in *Table 5.19* in bold. Strictly speaking, the whole diffraction pattern should be indexed following the same approach, but we leave this to the reader as an exercise.

At this point (or after the whole pattern has been indexed) the analysis of the observed values of A enables one to establish whether we deal with the tetragonal or hexagonal crystal systems. As seen in *Table 5.19*, the whole multipliers of a^{*2} are 1 and 3, and 3 is only possible in the hexagonal crystal system for $h = 1$, $k = 1$. After a simple calculation using the average values of a^{*2} and c^{*2} listed in *Table 5.19* we find approximate values of a and c as 5.046 and 4.015 Å, respectively. A least squares refinement of the lattice parameters using the entire array of indexed Bragg peaks obviously yields the same lattice parameters as were established before (see *Table 5.6*).

It is worth noting that the considered example is relatively easy because first, the lattice is primitive and second, there were no extinct Bragg

reflections among the first seven observed diffraction maxima. If some Bragg peaks are missing, then the list of the generated differences (column 1 in *Table 5.19*) becomes incomplete and the task of identifying the quantities corresponding to a^{*2} and c^{*2} becomes considerably more complex. This is especially true when the material has a Bravais lattice other than primitive since additional lattice translations cause multiple systematic absences in the list of possible *hkl*'s. In any case, the final indexing should always be checked by calculating one or more figures of merit after refinement of lattice parameters, which for this pattern has been done above (see sections 5.5.1 and 5.5.2)

5.9 Automatic *ab initio* indexing algorithms

The complexity of finding a solution of the indexing problem increases rapidly as the symmetry of the lattice decreases. For instance, in the orthorhombic crystal system the reciprocal unit cell dimensions, which affect the governing reciprocal lattice equation (Eq. 5.1), depend on three unknown parameters (*a*, *b* and *c*), while in the monoclinic and triclinic crystal systems the number of unknown parameters becomes four (*a*, *b*, *c* and β) and six (*a*, *b*, *c*, α, β and γ), respectively. As a result, manual indexing of low-symmetry powder diffraction patterns becomes extremely difficult and time consuming. Therefore, automatic indexing using various algorithms and software is essential in the case of low symmetry. The use of computers also speeds up high symmetry cases, and at the end, allows one to perform a comprehensive search for indexing solution in all crystal systems.

The solution of the indexing problem can be found using several different computational algorithms, which have been realized in a variety of automatic indexing programs. All of them use one of the two fundamentally different approaches to the *ab initio* indexing by treating either direct space parameters (i.e. unit cell dimensions) or reciprocal space parameters (i.e. reflection indices) as free variables in order to describe all or almost all observed diffraction peaks using a reasonable crystal lattice.

The first approach employs unit cell dimensions varying with a certain increment within certain limits. An attempt to index the entire diffraction pattern is made after every incremental step in lattice parameters. The increments depend on both the accuracy and complexity of the diffraction pattern but ~0.01 Å for the unit cell edges (*a*, *b* and *c*) and ~0.1° for the angles (α, β and γ) should be sufficient in most cases.

The maximum size of the unit cell edges can be estimated from the *d*-spacing of the first Bragg peak (d_{max}) observed in the diffraction pattern. In the majority of low symmetry cases (triclinic through orthorhombic crystal systems), the maximum size of the unit cell edge should not exceed $2d_{max}$,

while in the high symmetry cases it should be set at 4 (tetragonal/cubic) to 6 (hexagonal/trigonal) d_{max}. When indexing superlattices, in which many possible reflections are missing, higher limits on the maximum unit cell dimensions may be required.

This is the simplest but also the slowest indexing method. Obviously, each crystal system should be tested separately, as the number of free variables has a critical influence on the computation time. For example, a total of 4×10^6 unit cells must be checked assuming a tetragonal or hexagonal crystal system with unit cell dimensions in the range between 2 and 22 Å using 0.01 Å increment. In a triclinic crystal system, with unit cell edges between 2 and 12 Å and angles between 90 and 120°, a total of 2.7×10^{15} combinations should be tested using 0.01 Å and 0.1° increments, respectively. Assuming that 1,000,000 unit cells can be tested in 1 second,[1] an unrestricted and exhaustive search in the tetragonal or hexagonal case will take ~4 seconds, but one will have to wait nearly 860 years to test all possible combinations and see the answer in a triclinic crystal system.

Modern high-speed computers can handle the problem in high symmetry cases, especially taking into account that other restrictions are applicable. For example, the maximum expected unit cell volume can be evaluated from the density of diffraction peaks observed in a certain range of Bragg angles. Furthermore, the following additional restrictions can be imposed: in the monoclinic crystal system $a \leq c$ and in the orthorhombic and triclinic crystal systems $a \leq b \leq c$, because in these cases the solution is invariant to a permutation of unit cell edges, except for the need to convert to a standard setting after the indexing was judged successful.

The most effective is the reciprocal space approach, in which several low Bragg angle peaks are chosen as a basis set, and then an exhaustive permutation-based assignment of various combinations of *hkl* triplets to each peak from the basis set is carried out. Index permutation algorithms are more complex in realization than direct space algorithms but the former are many orders of magnitude faster than the latter.[2] This occurs because the indices of

[1] This assumption is unrealistic using even the most powerful single processor PC available in late 2002. A more rational estimate is between ~10^2 and ~10^3 unit cells per second for a well optimized computer code.

[2] Consider a triclinic crystal system, where a minimum of six independent Bragg reflections are required to determine the unit cell. Assuming that the maximum value of each of the three indices is 1 and recalling that two of them should vary from -1 to 1 (see *Table 5.7*), a total number of possible combinations for one Bragg reflection is $3\times3\times2 - 1 = 17$ [the set (000) cannot be observed and is excluded from the consideration]. In an exhaustive search without imposing any limitations, a total of $\sim17^6 \cong 2.4\times10^7$ combinations among all six reflections result. This represents about 8 orders (!) of magnitude reduction in the computation time when compared to the mentioned above unrestricted exhaustive search in direct space. The same example also highlights the critical role of the lowest Bragg

low Bragg angle peaks, which are varied, are three relatively small integers. Today, index permutation is the most common technique used in various indexing computer programs and it will be discussed in this book.

The reciprocal space indexing can be implemented in several different ways. Two of them are *trial-and-error* and *zone search* methods. The first one is more efficient in high symmetry crystal systems (from cubic to orthorhombic) but becomes slow for low symmetry crystal systems (especially triclinic), while the second method works quite effectively and is fast with low symmetries (from triclinic to orthorhombic).

5.9.1 Trial-and-error method

The trial-and-error method is based on assigning indices to a minimum required number of low Bragg angle peaks – the so-called basis set. The minimum number of peaks in the basis set is equal to the number of the individual unit cell parameters, which varies from 1 to 6, depending on the crystal system. The values of indices in the triplets vary between certain pre-selected minimum and maximum values of h, k and l. Each permutation is followed by the determination of a trial unit cell and by an attempt to index ~10 to 30 consecutive reflections at higher Bragg angles in the resulting unit cell. Successful solutions, i.e. those, which produce the fully or almost fully indexed diffraction pattern, are stored along with the computed figure(s) of merit for further analysis and automatic or manual selection of the best indexing solution.

The success of this approach is critically dependent on the selection of the basis set, which generally should contain more Bragg peaks than the number of the unknown unit cell dimensions. Potential caveats include but are not limited to the following: the selected basis set contains reciprocal vectors which are collinear or coplanar (see *Figure 5.12*); there is one or more impurity peak(s) in the basis set or in the list of Bragg peaks included into the consideration during the indexing attempt, and improper selection of the minimum and maximum h, k and l values for index permutations.

The exhaustive permutation technique may be improved by eliminating collinear reciprocal lattice vectors from the basis set, which can be done by analysis of the relationships between the observed low Bragg angle Q-values. As follows from Eq. 5.1, when two different $1/d = \sqrt{Q}$ are related to one another by a whole multiplier, there is a high probability that the two are collinear, and only the smallest is usually retained in the basis set.

---

angle reflections in finding a solution of the indexing problem: when the maximum index to be considered is increased to 2, the total number of combinations to be tested in an unrestricted exhaustive search rises to $\sim 1.6\times10^{11}$, and it becomes $\sim 2.1\times10^{14}$ when the maximum value of index increases to 3.

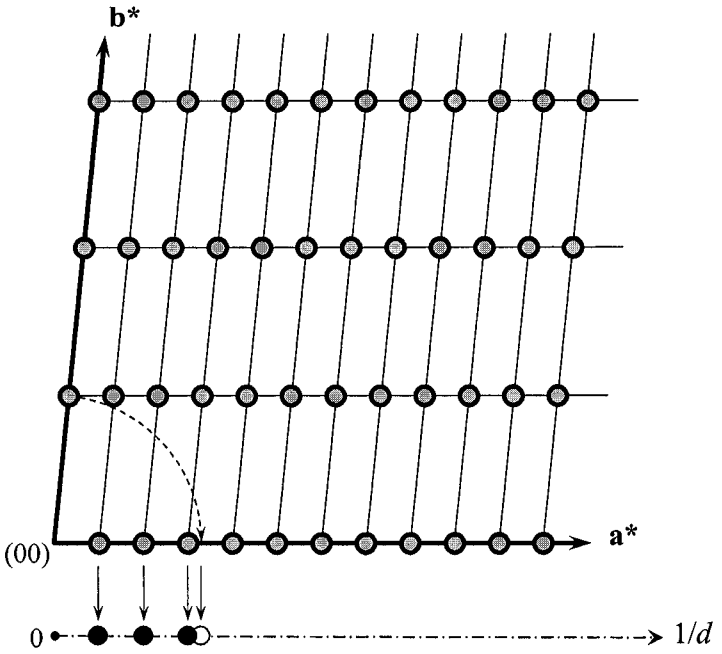


Figure 5.12. The illustration of the two-dimensional lattice with one long (**b***) and one short (**a***) reciprocal lattice vectors. If the three lowest Bragg angle peaks (filled circles) are selected as a basis set for indexing, all of them are collinear and only depend on a^*. The remaining two lattice parameters (b^* and γ^*) cannot be determined from this basis set.

Needless to say, different crystal systems should be tested from the highest to the lowest symmetry until a satisfactory solution is found. More often than not, automatic indexing yields multiple solutions, generally with different figures of merit, and the final decision is still up to the researcher.

5.9.2 Zone search method

Zone search method begins with searching for one-dimensional and two-dimensional zones and then builds three-dimensional zones using common rows in two-dimensional lattices. When a three-dimensional zone (lattice) is found, it is used in an attempt to index all observed Bragg reflections. This automatic indexing technique is more sophisticated when compared to a trial-and-error approach, but it is still based on Eq. 5.1. First, the analysis of numerical relationships between the observed Q-values is made to identify zones that are invariant with respect to two indices, for example $h00$, $h10$, $0k0$ and so on. Second, these are combined to identify zones which are invariant with respect to one index and, finally zones where all three indices

in the triplets vary independently are found and analyzed. To a certain extent, zone searching resembles the algorithm described above for the manual indexing in the tetragonal and hexagonal crystal systems; for example, zones that are invariant to both k and l should satisfy Eq. 5.24.

$$\mathbf{d}^*_{(hkl)} = h\mathbf{a}^* + const \tag{5.24}$$

The zone search indexing method does not require an assumption about the crystal system and therefore, it results in a primitive lattice in most cases. When the lattice is confirmed by the subsequent indexing of all observed Bragg peaks, it shall be converted to one of the 14 standard Bravais lattices. The latter is achieved in a process known as the reduction of the unit cell.

5.10 Unit cell reduction algorithms

Low symmetry unit cells can be selected in a variety of ways regardless of which method was used to find the unit cell suitable to index the entire diffraction pattern. For example, in the case of an orthorhombic crystal system, all three vectors **a**, **b**, and **c** can be permuted; in a monoclinic crystal system, **a**, **c** and $\mathbf{d} = \pm(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c})$ can be switched in a setting with $\beta \neq 90°$, while in a triclinic case, lattice vectors may be selected in a number of different ways. In order to compare and analyze different indexing solutions, the lattice must be reduced to a certain unique, preferably standard form. It is usually achieved by applying the following rules (which sometimes are already incorporated in the indexing process itself by imposing specific restrictions on the assigned indices):

- In the orthorhombic crystal system the unit cell dimensions should be such that $a \leq b \leq c$.
- In the monoclinic crystal system, $a \leq c$, assuming a standard setting with b as the unique axis.
- In the triclinic crystal system, the reduction becomes more complicated due to possible multiple choices of the basis vectors in the lattice.

The first two reduction rules are normally employed only during the indexing. They usually do not produce a standard choice of the unit cell since at this stage the space group symmetry, and often even the lattice type, are not involved. For example, in the orthorhombic space group symmetry Pnma (a standard setting) the condition $a \leq b \leq c$ is not necessarily obeyed.

There are two broadly accepted methods of unit cell reduction. One of them was introduced by Delaunay[1] and then applied to a transformation of a

[1] B. Delaunay. Neue Darstellung der geometrischen Kristallographie. Z. Kristallogr. **84**, 109 (1933).

randomly selected unit cell by Ito.[1] This technique is known as the Delaunay-Ito method. In order to achieve complete standardization, a different method should be employed in the reduction of the unit cell. This approach, originally introduced by Niggli,[2] results in the so-called Niggli-reduced unit cell.

5.10.1 Delaunay-Ito reduction

The Delaunay-Ito reduction is performed on three lattice vectors $\mathbf{v}_1$, $\mathbf{v}_2$ and $\mathbf{v}_3$, and a fourth vector, $\mathbf{v}_4 = -\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2 - \mathbf{v}_3$ (an inverted body diagonal of a parallelepiped) as shown in *Figure 5.13*, left. In this figure, four vectors $\mathbf{v}_i$ are associated with the corners of a tetrahedron, while six scalar products, $s_{ij} = \mathbf{v}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_j = |\mathbf{v}_i||\mathbf{v}_j|\cos\alpha_{ij}$ (for $i \neq j$), are associated with the edges of the same tetrahedron. The unit cell is considered reduced when angles α_{ij} between each pair of vectors $\mathbf{v}_i$ are greater than or equal to 90° and therefore, all scalar products s_{ij} are negative or zero.

The reduction is achieved by changing the sign of any scalar product that is greater than zero, simultaneously with modifying other relevant parameters of the tetrahedron as shown in *Figure 5.13*, right. This procedure is equivalent to adding vectors and is repeated until all scalar products, s_{ij}, become negative or zero.

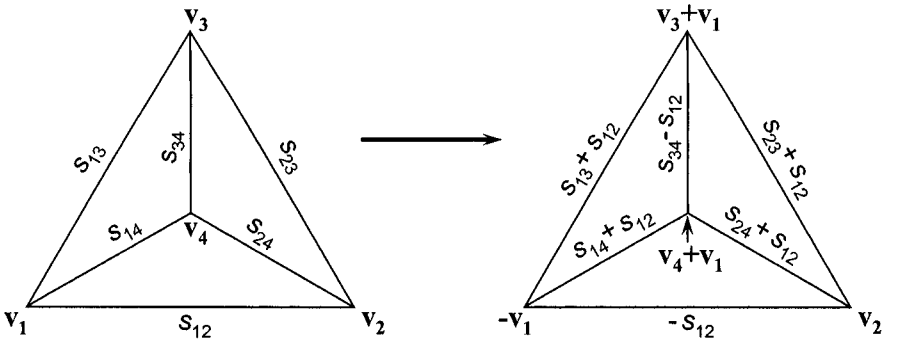


Figure 5.13. The schematic of Delaunay-Ito transformation. Left – the four unit cell vectors ($\mathbf{v}_1$, $\mathbf{v}_2$, $\mathbf{v}_3$ and $\mathbf{v}_4 = -\mathbf{v}_1-\mathbf{v}_2-\mathbf{v}_3$) are associated with the corners of the tetrahedron, while the six scalar products between the corresponding pairs of the vectors (s_{12} through s_{34}) are linked to the edges of the tetrahedron. Assuming that $s_{12} > 0$, the transformation is carried out as shown on the right: the sign of s_{12} is changed; its value is subtracted from that on the opposite edge and added to those on all adjacent edges; the direction of $\mathbf{v}_1$ (or $\mathbf{v}_2$) is reversed and the new vectors $\mathbf{v'}_3$ and $\mathbf{v'}_4$ are determined as $\mathbf{v}_3+\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_4+\mathbf{v}_1$ (or $\mathbf{v}_3+\mathbf{v}_2$ and $\mathbf{v}_4+\mathbf{v}_2$, respectively).

[1] T. Ito, A general powder x-ray photography, Nature **164**, 755 (1949).

[2] P. Niggli. Krystallographische und strukturtheoretische Grundbegriffe. Band 7, 1. Teil, Handbuch der Experimentalphysik, Akademische Verlagsgesellschaft, 108 (1928).

From the four possible triplets of resulting vectors ($\mathbf{v}_1$, $\mathbf{v}_2$, $\mathbf{v}_3$ to $\mathbf{v}_2$, $\mathbf{v}_3$, $\mathbf{v}_4$), the one that has shortest vectors is selected because the angles among these vectors are closest to 90°. The Delaunay-Ito reduced primitive cells can be classified into 24 types according to the relationships between unit cell vectors and their scalar products. They are easily converted into one of the 14 Bravais lattices. For example, if $v_1 = v_2$ and $s_{13} = s_{23} = 0$ ($\alpha_{13} = \alpha_{23} = 90°$), the standard unit cell is orthorhombic C-centered, with lattice vectors, $\mathbf{v}_i^{\text{ortho}}$, calculated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v}_1^{\text{ortho}} &= \mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2 \\ \mathbf{v}_2^{\text{ortho}} &= -\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2 \\ \mathbf{v}_3^{\text{ortho}} &= \mathbf{v}_3 \end{aligned} \tag{5.25}$$

The unit cell reduction using Delaunay-Ito method can be easily automated as is done in the ITO indexing computer code, which is discussed in section 5.11. The Delaunay-Ito reduced unit cell, however, may not be the one with the shortest possible vectors, although the latter is conventionally defined as a standard reduced unit cell.

5.10.2 Niggli reduction

The Niggli approach defines the reduced unit cell in terms of the shortest possible vectors.[1] In other words:

$$v_1 + v_2 + v_3 = \text{minimum} \tag{5.26}$$

Unfortunately, this simple condition cannot be evaluated directly, and in order to find a properly reduced unit cell it should be replaced by a total of five simultaneous inequalities:[2]

$$\begin{aligned} &1)\ v_1 \le v_2 \le v_3 \\ &2)\ |s_{12}| \le v_1/2 \\ &3)\ |s_{23}| \le v_2/2 \\ &4)\ |s_{13}| \le v_1/2 \\ &5)\ |s_{23} \pm s_{13}| \le (v_1 + v_2 \pm 2s_{12}) \end{aligned} \tag{5.27}$$

[1] P.M. de Wolff, B. Gruber, Niggli lattice characters: Definition and graphical representation, Acta Cryst. **A47**, 29 (1991)

[2] L. Zuo, J. Muller, M.-J. Phillippe, and G. Esling, A refined algorithm for the reduced-cell determination, Acta Cryst. **A51**, 943 (1995).

All angles between lattice vectors are then obtuse or are acute. The unit cell defined by Eq. 5.27 is unique but the reduction algorithm is not as straightforward as in the Delaunay-Ito method.[1] It is worth mentioning than if all angles are obtuse, the Niggli unit cell coincides with the Delaunay-Ito unit cell. When all angles are acute, the Delaunay-Ito unit cell contains only two of the shortest vectors and the third vector is one of the diagonals in the Niggli unit cell. In a similar way as Delaunay-Ito unit cells, the Niggli cells form 44 classes (called characters) and each class is related to one of the 14 Bravais lattices.

Regardless of which indexing method was employed, the resulting unit cell (especially when it is triclinic) shall be reduced using either Delaunay-Ito or Niggli method in order to enable the comparison of different solutions and to facilitate database and literature searches. Furthermore, the relationships between reduced unit cell parameters must be used to properly determine the Bravais lattice. The Niggli-reduced cell is considered standard and therefore, is preferable.

It is worth noting that not all automatic indexing computer codes perform unit cell reduction and even when they do, the reduced unit cell may not be standard. Therefore, it is advisable to always check/reduce the obtained unit cell using specialized software, for example the WLepage program,[2] which is available on-line.[3] This program not only reduces the unit cell but also performs subcell and supercell search, which allows one to detect larger unit cells with superlattice reflection extinctions, etc. This program is included into the ChekCell software,[4] which also compares all possible unit cells against the list of the observed Bragg peaks and evaluates the results in easy-to-use graphical format.

5.11 Automatic *ab initio* indexing: computer codes

A variety of first principles indexing methods has been implemented in many different computer programs with various modifications. For example, a total of eight different indexing routines are combined into a single suite

[1] I. Křivý, B. Gruber, A unified algorithm for determining the reduced (Niggli) cell, Acta Cryst. **A32**, 297 (1976).

[2] A.L. Spek, LEPAGE – an MS-DOS program for the determination of the metrical symmetry of a translation lattice, J. Appl. Cryst. **21**, 578 (1988).

[3] Available at http://www.ccp14.ac.uk/tutorial/lmgp/chekcell_lepage.html

[4] Available at http://www.ccp14.ac.uk/tutorial/lmgp/index.html#chekcell. LMGP suite of programs for the interpretation of X-ray experiments, by Jean Laugier and Bernard Bochu, ENSP/Laboratoire des Matériaux et du Génie Physique, BP 46. 38042 Saint Martin d'Hères, France. WWW: http://www.inpg.fr/LMGP and http://www.ccp14.ac.uk/tutorial/lmgp/.

called CrysFire[1] that can be downloaded from the International Union of Crystallography or Collaborative Computational Project No. 14 Web sites along with many other indexing programs.[2] According to its developer, CrysFire is designed for a non-specialist but may be also useful for experts. Another software suite is LMGP (see footnote No. 4 on page 443). It is available with a tutorial and handles peak search, profile fitting, unit cell refinement, and space group determination/evaluation in addition to indexing. CrysFire, which lacks a graphical user interface, may be used concurrently with LMGP and ChekCell, assuming that there are some trial unit cells from CrysFire in the output file.

Here we consider several of the most commonly used automatic indexing programs: TREOR, DICVOL, and ITO in an attempt to make a novice familiar with the *ab initio* indexing capabilities and limitations in addition to illustrating practical indexing examples. The following four sections are not intended and should not be taken as substitutes for manuals to any of these indexing utilities – each has a detailed manual describing format of input data. Complete descriptions of indexing algorithms can be found in the corresponding original references provided below.

All three computer codes (TREOR, DICVOL, and ITO) have been extensively tested by hundreds of researchers. They have undergone multiple revisions by both the original developers and experienced crystallographers, and therefore, are quite reliable, provided adequate quality powder diffraction data are employed. As already noted above, the following are the keys to successful indexing from first principles: *precision*, *precision*, and *precision*.

5.11.1 TREOR[3]

TREOR90 is a semi-exhaustive trial-and-error indexing program, which is based on the permutation of indices in a selected basis set of lowest Bragg angles peaks.[4,5] TREOR90 includes an analysis of the dominant axial zones (i.e. $h00$, $0k0$ and $00l$). In the case of a monoclinic crystal system, the so-

[1] R. Shirley, The CRYSFIRE System for automatic powder indexing: user's manual, The Lattice Press, 41 Guildford Park Avenue, Guildford, Surrey GU2 7NL, England (2000). Available http://www.ccp14.ac.uk/tutorial/crys/index.html.

[2] Available at http://www.ccp14.ac.uk/solution/indexing/.

[3] P.-E. Werner, L. Eriksson and M. Westdahl, A semi-exhaustive trial-and-error powder indexing program for all symmetries, J. Appl. Cryst. **18**, 367 (1985).

[4] The algorithm is called semi-exhaustive because certain limitations on the possible permutations of indices are incorporated into the program in order to increase its speed.

[5] The numeral included after the name of the program (in this case 90) usually indicates version number of year when the program was released as a public domain (in this case the program was released in 1990).

called short-axis test and (020)-finding algorithm are employed to increase chances of indexing when unit cell edges have unusually different lengths. This program works with any crystal system but it is most effective in high and medium symmetries: cubic, hexagonal, tetragonal and orthorhombic. Triclinic indexing employs lower index limits and is exceedingly time consuming. The basis set consists of up to six reflections, and the peaks suspected to represent collinear reciprocal lattice vectors are automatically excluded. The default combinations of peaks in the basis sets, maximum values of indices and sums of indices are listed in *Table 5.20.*

Table 5.20. Order of peaks in basis sets and limitations imposed on the values of indices for the basis-set peaks used in TREOR.

Crystal system	Basis set (in terms of peak number)	max h,k,l [a]	max $h + k + l$ [a]
Cubic	(1), (2)	4,4,4	6
Tetragonal	(1,2), (1,3), (2,3)	4,4,4	4
Hexagonal		4,4,4	4
Orthorhombic	(1,2,3), (1,2,4), (1,2,5),	2,2,2	3
	(1,3,4), (2,3,4), (1,2,6)	2,2,2	4
	or (N,1,2), (N,1,3), (N,2,3)[b]	2,2,2	4
Monoclinic	(1,2,3,4), (1,2,3,5), (1,2,4,5)	2,2,2	2
	or (N,1,2,3) (N,1,2,4), (N,1,3,4)[b]	2,2,2	3
	and additionally	2,2,2	3
	(1,3,4,5), (1,2,3,6), (2,3,4,5), (1,2,3,7)[c]	2,2,2	4
Triclinic	(1,2,3,4,5,6), (1,2,3,4,5,7), (1,2,3,4,5,8),	1,1,1	1
	(1,2,3,4,6,7), (1,2,3,4,6,8), (1,2,3,5,6,8),	1,1,1	2
	(1,2,3,5,6,7), (1,2,3,5,7,8), (1,2,3,4,5,9)[d]	1,1,1	2
		1,1,1	2
		1,1,1	3
		1,1,1	3

[a] Absolute value of h, k, and l is assumed. Max $h + k + l$ values are provided for each basis set reflection, respectively.

[b] N is defined as a non-zero value in the keyword SELECT, e.g. in the orthorhombic crystal system SELECT=5 results in the following basis sets (1,2,5), (1,3,5), and (2,3,5).

[c] Additional sets that are added to the basis set when MONOSET keyword value is greater than 3, 4, 5 or 6, respectively.

[d] The 1st observed peak is always 100 and the 2nd observed peak always has positive indices.

The limiting values of indices may be freely modified by the user as described in TREOR's manual, while the sequence of peaks in the basis set may only be changed to a certain extent as described in the footnotes to *Table 5.20.* In the majority of cases, program defaults work quite well and any changes in them should be attempted only when no acceptable solution has been found.

Although no strict limits have been set, usually no more than 25 lowest Bragg angle peaks total should be used in the indexing attempt. TREOR90

may successfully index powder diffraction patterns containing a few impurity peaks by automatically skipping up to three Bragg reflections, which do not fit into a found unit cell. If some peaks were skipped, one should always remember the very important statement (capitalized in the manual): do not accept unindexed peaks unless you are able to explain them.

The key to a successful indexing is not a complete absence of impurity peaks (a few may be present) but it is the accuracy with which peak positions have been determined and the absence of significant systematic errors. Yet another important piece of advice, given in the manual, should always be followed: do not waste computer time on bad data. Since the cost of computer time continuously lowers, but the cost of labor continuously rises, this statement could be rephrased: do not waste *your* time on bad data. The latter is indeed applicable to any type of data analysis.

Several other items should be considered while using TREOR. Indexing starts from the cubic crystal system and may proceed through all crystal systems down to triclinic. By default, however, the indexing stops at the orthorhombic symmetry. Therefore, in order to check monoclinic solutions, the value of a keyword MONO should be set to the maximum desired monoclinic angle, e.g. MONO = 130 will result in searching for solutions with angles β varying from 90 to 130°. Indexing in a triclinic unit cell can be attempted by including the instruction TRIC = 1. Another way of testing all crystal systems is to specify a negative value of the maximum unit cell volume using keyword VOL, e.g. VOL = –2000. TREOR reduces the triclinic unit cell only for the best solution and therefore, numerous non-reduced variations of the same unit cell may be produced.

When an acceptable solution is found, the program terminates and therefore, indexing in lower symmetry unit cells will not be performed. A solution is considered acceptable if the minimum figure of merit, M_N, where N is the smallest of 20 and the number or present peaks, is reached or exceeded. It is advisable to check lower symmetry indexing in order to avoid situations when accidental relationships between the real unit cell parameters result in successful high symmetry indexing. In the majority of cases, the incorrect high symmetry unit cell has a large volume that cannot be explained by the increased symmetry of the lattice. This can be done by disabling any of the high symmetry crystal systems: for example, cubic indexing can be suppressed by using the keyword KS = 0, and tetragonal and hexagonal indexing are not attempted when THS = 0 (consult the manual).

An alternative way of continuing the indexing in low symmetry lattices is to increase the minimum figure of merit, M_N, by adding or changing the keyword MERIT. If this keyword is missing (default), the minimum M_N is set to 6, which is quite low given the accuracy of both the modern diffractometers and data processing algorithms (e.g. see the corresponding

figures of merit described in section 5.5.2). Any solution with M_N greater than 10 is considered to be a true unit cell and the program execution terminates. In order to continue the search for other possible solutions, the value of MERIT should be increased, e.g. by setting MERIT = 50 or higher.

By default, TREOR adjusts the data for possible systematic errors in the first seven peaks by using higher order peaks. Sometimes this procedure may be not quite right, and when no solution has been found, it is recommended to suppress this correction by adding the instruction IDIV = 0.

The successful indexing result (if any) – the one with M_N greater than a set minimum – is stored in a condensed output file. All intermediate solutions with M_N less than the specified minimum but greater than 6 and no more than 3 unindexed lines (unless different limits are specified) are stored in a general output file. Therefore, using unrealistically high MERIT = 1000 and VOL = –2000 would result in checking all crystal systems and unit cells with volumes smaller than 2000 Å^3.

5.11.2 DICVOL[1]

DICVOL91 is an exhaustive trial-and-error indexing program with variation of parameters by successive dichotomy and partitioning of the unit cell volume. This program works with all crystal systems, however, low symmetry monoclinic and especially triclinic indexing may take some time. The indexing strategy is based on searching for a solution from high to low symmetry using partitioning of the unit cell volume in 400 Å^3 increments, except for a triclinic case, when the maximum volume is estimated from the density of diffraction peaks in the pattern.

Similar to TREOR, any crystal system can be included or excluded from the indexing process, and increasing a minimum figure of merit, M_N (the default is 5), can be used to generate low symmetry results. Input data may also be used to set maximum lengths of the unit cell edges, monoclinic angle and unit cell volume. Errors in peak positions can be supplied with each Bragg reflection separately or assumed identical for all peaks. The default is 0.03° of 2θ, which is somewhat excessive for good quality diffractometer data, and the value of 0.01 or 0.02°, depending on the resolution, is recommended. For more details, consult the manual available along with the program. As a rule, indexing should be performed in three steps by selecting the following crystal systems: cubic through orthorhombic; monoclinic; and finally triclinic, if needed.

When powder diffraction data, included in the indexing, contain impurity Bragg peaks, the likely outcome of this program will be the incorrect unit

[1] A. Boutlif and D. Louër, Indexing of powder diffraction patterns for low symmetry lattices by the successive dichotomy method, J. Appl. Cryst. **24**, 987 (1991).

cell as no attempt to skip one or more non-conforming peaks is foreseen. In addition, DICVOL does not perform any systematic error correction and if zero shift, sample displacement or other errors are significant, they should be minimized beforehand. No formal limits on the amount of input Bragg peaks has been established in this program, but it is recommended that 20 or more lowest Bragg angle peaks are used for a reliable indexing. It is worth noting that if the true unit cell belongs to one of the high symmetry crystal systems (e.g. tetragonal), an attempt to index the diffraction pattern in lower symmetry crystal systems (e.g. orthorhombic, monoclinic and triclinic) will usually result in the solution with $a \cong b$ (orthorhombic), $a \cong b$ and $\beta \cong 90°$ (monoclinic) and/or $a \cong b$ and $\alpha \cong \beta \cong \gamma \cong 90°$ (triclinic). Independent unit cell reduction (see section 5.10) should be employed to test any resulting low symmetry unit cell in order to compare it with the literature of database records.

5.11.3 ITO[1]

This algorithm realizes a zone search indexing method combined with the Delaunay-Ito technique (see section 5.10.1) for the reduction of the most probable unit cell. The most commonly used versions of computer codes are ITO13 and ITO15. The program arrives at a solution by using the following algorithm:

- Finds and reduces potential zones always using 20 lowest Bragg angle peaks, tests them, and refines by using a least-square method.
- Builds lattices by finding zones with a common row, and calculating angles between them.
- Reduces the resultant unit cell by using the Delaunay-Ito method and then transforms it into one of the 14 Bravais lattices if the lattice is not primitive.
- Finally, attempts to index all available peaks and if the indexing is successful, calculates the figure(s) of merit.

The program works quite effectively with low symmetry crystal systems: triclinic, monoclinic and orthorhombic. The resulting centered lattice in the monoclinic and orthorhombic symmetry (if centering has been found) is an important argument in accepting such a solution, since it is less likely to be a random unit cell when compared with any primitive lattice. Lattice centering analysis is not performed in higher symmetry cases; nevertheless, they are suggested at the end of the output list and should be carefully analyzed, even though the list often contains large high symmetry unit cells.

[1] J.W. Visser, A fully automatic program for finding the unit cell from powder data, J. Appl. Cryst. **2**, 89 (1969).

The program requires at least 20 lowest Bragg angle peaks for finding a reasonable solution and it will not work with fewer Bragg peaks. A total of 30 to 35 consecutive Bragg reflections are recommended. The maximum number of peaks is 40. Peaks in excess of 20 are indexed using only the best found solution. Similar to TREOR, ITO may successfully index powder diffraction patterns, which contain several impurity peaks. The maximum number of skipped unindexed peaks is one of the user-specified parameters. ITO can check for potential zero-shift errors (by default no checking is performed), and allows a zero-shift correction that will be applied to all peaks before indexing. In addition, in the final least squares refinement of the unit cell dimensions, the zero-shift error in Bragg angles can be determined (by default).

The program works in a straightforward fashion, and only a few parameters can be varied in the case of failure. These are: several tolerances, the number of peaks for zone search, and the zero-shift correction. As a last resort, low intensity (potential impurity peaks) and/or high angle peaks (if they were included in the unsuccessful run) may be removed from the list one-by-one. The default values for tolerances for two- and three-dimensional zone search are set to 3.0 and 4.5, respectively, in the units of Q, which are defined in this program as $10^4/d^2$. However, it is recommended to set them as low as 2.0 and 2.5 when the accuracy in peak positions is at or better than 0.01° of 2θ. The final advice, given by the author (J.W. Visser) should always be remembered: "Finding the unit cell depends for 95% on the quality of the input data. A random error of 0.03° 2θ can usually be tolerated, but a systematic zero point error of 0.02° is probably disastrous".

5.11.4 Selecting a solution

TREOR and ITO programs have an option to input intensity for each observed diffraction peak but they are included only for informative purposes and are never analyzed by the code. Nevertheless, it is often helpful to see the intensity next to indices when analyzing the results, especially for those Bragg peaks, which do not fit into the selected lattice.

All three programs TREOR, DICVOL and ITO allow optional input of the information about the measured gravimetric density and formula weight in order to estimate the number of formula units expected in the found unit cell (see section 6.3 in Chapter 6). The latter should be an integer number compatible with the unit cell symmetry, e.g. in a primitive monoclinic lattice it normally should be a multiple of 2 or 4. The agreement between the number of formula units in the unit cell and lattice symmetry may be used as an additional stipulation when selecting the most probable solution.

Automatic indexing programs usually produce more than one solution and the following criteria should be considered when deciding which one is the best, or in other words, which solution we believe represents the true unit cell:

1. The correct solution must result in a high figure of merit (although not necessarily the highest) and most, if not all diffraction peaks should be indexed. Unindexed Bragg reflections must be explained, for example, by low intensity, by noticeably different peak widths, or they should be identified as corresponding to an impurity phase.
2. As is stated in the DICVOL manual: "... a solution from the first 20 (or N) lines ... must index the complete powder diffraction pattern ...". The best way to evaluate the quality of the indexing is to perform lattice parameters refinement and to calculate a figure of merit using all measured and indexed Bragg peaks.
3. The presence of distinct systematic absences and an unambiguous determination of the diffraction group makes a particular indexing solution especially probable. Exceptionally encouraging are centered lattices and, for example, such space groups as $P2_1/c$, Pbca, $I4_1/amd$, $R\bar{3}c$, and many others, which contain multiple glide planes and/or screw axes, distinguishable from the list of unobserved (extinct or forbidden) Bragg reflections.
4. When the unit cell is found, it can be used to search multiple databases in addition to the ICDD's Powder Diffraction File. A positive search result usually confirms indexing, while a negative outcome does not necessarily mean that the indexing is wrong – a particular crystal structure may be novel and/or not yet included in a database.
5. Finally, in the case of a new material, the correctness of the *ab initio* indexing is only ensured by solving and refining the crystal structure, which makes both chemical and physical sense, i.e. has correct bond distances and angles, reasonable coordination polyhedra, oxidation states, etc.

All three of the briefly described computer programs may only work consistently when the quality of input data is very high. This implies that the accuracy of peak positions is outstanding, normally at least 0.02° or better, which is usually achieved by maintaining a well aligned goniometer and by using a proper profile fitting procedure. It is important to ensure that all possible systematic errors are eliminated beforehand, since they can lead to unpredictable results and/or failure to find a solution. When experimental data are affected by a small systematic error, reducing the number of Bragg peaks in the initial indexing attempt may be helpful.

Each program is distributed with ready to use files containing test/demo example(s). We encourage the reader to familiarize him/herself with them

after reading the manuals before trying to perform an *ab initio* indexing of a new diffraction pattern.

In order to minimize hand input when creating source data files for use by any of the three programs described above, a simple conversion utility (**pks2ind.exe**) is included on the CD accompanying this book. The *pks2ind* utility converts any ASCII table containing at least one column with Bragg angles of observed peaks (2θ) into formats acceptable by TREOR90, DICVOL91 and ITO programs. It also enables correction of experimental data for a sample displacement error, if the latter is known. A short manual (**pks2ind.pdf**) describing this conversion utility is included on the CD.

Slightly modified versions of TREOR90, DICVOL91 and ITO15 may be downloaded from the website of one of the authors.[1] The modifications enable acceptance of the input data by specifying source file name as a parameter of an MS DOS command line or by dragging-and-dropping files over an appropriate program icon placed on the desktop, thus simplifying the dialog.

5.12 *Ab initio* indexing examples

Below we describe three practical indexing examples. The first one will be considered in detail, with all input data files included on the CD accompanying this book. The remaining two examples are illustrated without providing all input data files since we expect that the reader should be able to use existing data and reproduce indexing results independently.

5.12.1 Hexagonal indexing: $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$

Experimental data from the $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ sample are especially useful for this illustration because as established earlier, this diffraction pattern has been successfully indexed manually. We also know that the data are affected by a small systematic error, which can be eliminated by introducing a zero shift correction of 0.032°, and that there are two low intensity Bragg peaks, which belong to an impurity phase (see sections 5.4 and 5.8).

5.12.1.1 TREOR90

The input data file for the TREOR90 program (**Ch5Ex04_Treor90-All.dat**) is found on the CD and it contains the following information, where the comments after the exclamation symbols are for information purpose only and are not included in the data file:

[1] Peter Zavalij's web site at http://materials.binghamton.edu/zavalij; follow the "Software" link.

```
Sample: LaNi4.85Sn0.15   ! Title line
20.288                   ! Bragg angle of the first observed peak
22.105                   ! Bragg angle of the second observed peak
...                      ! Bragg angles in ascending order
81.632                   ! Bragg angle of the last observed peak
                         ! Blank line terminating experimental data
CHOICE=3,                ! Instruction specifying input as 2θ angles
WAVE=1.540593,           ! Instruction specifying the wavelength
END*                     ! End of instructions
0.000                    ! The value of the zero shift, if known
```

In our first indexing attempt we will use all observed Bragg peaks, including the two peaks from an impurity phase at $2\theta = 44.211°$ and 51.517° (see *Figure 5.5*), without correcting experimental data for the known zero shift error. Automatic indexing results in the following solution: $a = 18.537$, $c = 4.3681$ Å in the hexagonal crystal system with $F_{24} = 16(0.008, 205)$ and $M_{20} = 21$. One weak Bragg peak at $2\theta = 78.958°$ (relative intensity is 0.4%) remains unindexed. This solution is likely incorrect, which is easily concluded from the F_N figure of merit indicating that only ~12% of the possible Bragg peaks have been observed.

After removing the two impurity Bragg peaks (data file **Ch5Ex04_Treor90-Clean.dat**, found on the CD), the indexing result is $a = 6.179$, $c = 10.097$ Å in the tetragonal crystal system with $F_{22} = 12(0.019, 98)$ and $M_{20} = 16$. Both figures of merit are lower than in the first solution, and this is also an incorrect indexing result.

Even though it appears that this program cannot find an indexing solution in this relatively simple case, we should note that so far the program was used only with default settings, including the minimum acceptable figure of merit. The default value is set at $M_{20} = 10$, and once the solution with M_{20} exceeding 10 is found, no further attempt to test lattices with lower (i.e. next in the line: cubic, tetragonal, hexagonal, orthorhombic, monoclinic and triclinic) symmetry is made. This is the reason of the incorrect solution when all but the two impurity peaks were included in the data file **Ch5Ex04_Treor90-Clean.dat**.

A simple modification of the default figure of merit by including the instruction MERIT=40, which is nearly double the best M_{20} observed so far (data file **Ch5Ex04_Treor90-HighMerit.dat** is found on the CD) yields a correct solution: hexagonal lattice with $a = 5.0443$, $c = 4.0135$ Å and the corresponding figures of merit are as follows: $F_{22} = 126$ (0.008, 23) and $M_{20} = 189$. The lattice parameters and figures of merit are slightly different from what has been established earlier (see *Table 5.6* and associated text), which

is the result of the incomplete refinement of the lattice parameters carried out by the program after the solution has been found.

It is interesting to point out that the same modification (adding the instruction MERIT=40 to the original data file **Ch5Ex04_Treor90-All.dat**) results in a different solution in the hexagonal crystal system: a = 8.7371, c = 4.0135 Å with the corresponding figures of merit: F_{24} = 59 (0.008, 53) and M_{20} = 77. One of the two impurity peaks was left unindexed, but the second impurity peak accidentally fits into this enlarged unit cell. A simple analysis of Miller indices of all indexed Bragg peaks, which can be found in the output file produced by the program, indicates that in all cases except one, the sums $h^2 + hk + k^2$ are divisible by three. Considering Eq. 5.4, the reduction of the a lattice parameter by a factor of $\sqrt{3}$ produces the correct unit cell with a = 5.0444 Å. The only peak with the sum $h^2 + hk + k^2 \neq 3n$ (where n is an integer) is the impurity peak observed at 2θ = 51.517°.

5.12.1.2 ITO13

The input data file for the ITO13 program (**Ch5Ex04_ITO13-All.dat**, found on the CD) contains the following information (the comments after the exclamation symbols are for information purpose only and are not included in the data file):

```
Sample: LaNi4.85Sn0.15      ! Title line
                            ! Parameter line (may be completely blank)
                            ! Second parameter line (may be blank)
20.288                      ! Bragg angle of the first observed peak
22.105                      ! Bragg angle of the second observed peak
...                         ! Bragg angles in ascending order
81.632                      ! Bragg angle of the last observed peak
0                           ! 0 or blank line terminating this set of data
END                         ! End of data file
```

The complete description of how to modify various default values by using different fields in the two parameter lines in the file is found in the documentation to the program. Even if all parameters are left at their defaults, the two blank lines must precede the first Bragg peak. The program can process multiple sets of data placed in the same file, and these sets are separated by a single blank line or by a line containing 0 in the first position. The line containing the word END indicates the end of the input data file. The ITO13 program finds the correct unit cell: hexagonal crystal system, a = 5.0423, c = 4.0119 Å. They are equal to those found before (*Table 5.6*) within one standard deviation. The program used the default value of the

wavelength (λ = 1.5406 Å), which can be modified by inserting the corresponding value in positions 21-30 of the first parameter line.

5.12.1.3 DICVOL91

The input data file for the DICVOL91 program (**Ch5Ex04_Dicvol91-All.dat**, found on the CD) contains the following information (the comments after the exclamation symbols are for information purpose only and are not included in the data file):

```
Sample: LaNi4.85Sn0.15      ! Title line
24 2 1 1 1 1 0 0            ! Parameter line 1
0 0 0 0 0 0 0               ! Parameter line 2
1.540593 0 0 0              ! Parameter line 3
0 0 0                       ! Parameter line 4
20.288                      ! Bragg angle of the first observed peak
22.105                      ! Bragg angle of the second observed peak
...                         ! Bragg angles in ascending order
81.632                      ! Bragg angle of the last observed peak
                            ! Blank line terminating data file
```

The first parameter line contains the following information: number of consecutive Bragg peaks to use counting from the first (24), type of input data (2 = 2θ in degrees), then six single digit flags specifying which crystal systems should be examined in the following order: cubic, tetragonal, hexagonal, orthorhombic, monoclinic and triclinic. When the switch is set to 1, the crystal system will be tested, and when it is set to 0, no solution in this crystal system will be attempted. The first parameter line in the example data file is set to search for a solution in all crystal systems except monoclinic and triclinic.

The second parameter line is used to specify the maximum possible values of *a*, *b* and *c* (first three quantities in the line with the defaults set at 20 Å), then minimum and maximum unit cell volume (next two values with the defaults 0 and 1500 Å^3) and finally, minimum and maximum β if the monoclinic crystal system is to be tested (the last two values, defaults are set at 90 and 125°, respectively). The second parameter line in our example selects all corresponding parameters as their default values.

The third parameter line contains the following information: the first number is the wavelength of the used radiation in angströms, the second, third and fourth quantities represent the molecular weight of the formula unit in atomic mass units (a.m.u.), the measured density in g/cm^3 and the error in the measured density, respectively. The defaults are set at zero meaning that none of these characteristics of the material is known.

The last (fourth) parameter line should contain three numbers (with zeros representing the selection of default values) and their meaning is as follows. The first value indicates how the errors in the experimental data are handled. By default, the measurement errors are assumed constant at 0.03° or 2θ. The second value specifies the minimum acceptable M_N figure of merit, where N is the number of used Bragg peaks, i.e. it is identical to the first number in the first parameter line, and its default is 5. The last number in this line is the value of the zero shift to be added to the observed experimental data.

The attempt to find an indexing solution using all available data results in the best figures of merit, F_{24} = 10(0.010, 248) and M_{24} = 13 for a large orthorhombic unit cell with a = 17.475, b = 7.569 and c = 4.013 Å. The failure of indexing using the array of Bragg peaks containing two impurity data points was expected because this program cannot leave any of the data points unindexed. It is worth noting, however, that there is one correct unit cell dimension in this incorrect solution, i.e. the value of the c lattice parameter has been found accurately. Furthermore, this solution results in nearly all Bragg peaks having index h divisible by 4 and index k divisible by 3. This outcome is a very good indication that input data do contain several impurity peaks and that the solution is false.

To obtain a proper solution it is necessary to eliminate the impurity Bragg peaks from the indexing process. Although it is easy to do in this case since we know which peaks do not belong to the major component, in real life situations it may not be as simple unless the structure of the impurity phase(s) is(are) known. Provided the impurity phase is a minority phase in the specimen, the best way to eliminate impurity peaks is to proceed with the gradual elimination of the weakest Bragg peaks from the indexing attempt.

We will begin by first eliminating all peaks with intensity less than 1% of the strongest Bragg peak. This produces the truncated array of data (file **Ch5Ex04_Dicvol91-99%.dat**, found on the CD), and a still incorrect but different solution in the orthorhombic crystal system as the first impurity peak has intensity ~1.8% of the strongest. A second iteration is to eliminate all Bragg peaks with intensity lower than 2% of the strongest (data file **Ch5Ex04_Dicvol91-98%.dat** is also found on the CD). This leaves only 16 Bragg peaks in the file and the indexing attempt produces two solutions with very high figures of merit. These are as follows:

1. Hexagonal crystal system with a = 5.0448, c = 4.0137 Å, F_{16} = 74(0.009, 23) and M_{16} = 159, and

2. Orthorhombic crystal system with a = 4.3687, b = 4.0137, c = 2.5230 Å, F_{16} = 77(0.008, 28) and M_{16} = 167.

Given the rules described above (see section 5.5) and the insignificant difference in the figures of merit, the preference should be given to the

highest symmetry crystal system, i.e. to the solution No.1, even if we did not know the correct lattice parameters of this material. Furthermore, the value of the lattice parameter c in the orthorhombic solution is too small considering the size of one of the components in the $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ compound: r_{La} = 1.87 Å, which restricts the shortest unit cell dimension to $2 \times r_{La}$ = 3.74 Å or higher.

The indexing process in this case should be finalized by using the found lattice parameters to assign indices to the weak Bragg reflections that have been eliminated from the indexing and by refinement of the lattice parameters employing all available experimental data. This can be easily done following the procedure described earlier in section 5.4.

The two solutions (hexagonal and orthorhombic) are actually similar, since any hexagonal lattice can also be described in the lower symmetry orthorhombic base-centered lattice, as shown schematically in *Figure 5.14*. Obviously, the orthorhombic solution, found by DICVOL91, represents the primitive orthorhombic unit cell with 1/4 the volume of the conforming base-centered orthorhombic unit cell with the following unit cell dimensions: $a_O = 1/2a_H\sqrt{3}$; $b_O = c_H$, and $c_O = 1/2b_H$.

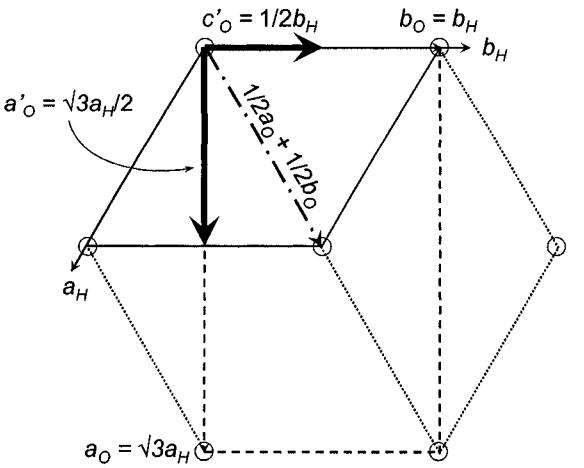


Figure 5.14. The relationship between the lattice parameters of the hexagonal unit cell (solid and dotted lines) and the related orthorhombic unit cell (dashed lines). The unit cell parameter perpendicular to the plane of the projection is identical in both crystal systems. The smaller orthorhombic unit cell found using the DICVOL91 indexing program is indicated by the thick solid vectors (a'_O and c'_O). Open circles show lattice points and the dash-dotted vector illustrates the C-translation in the conforming orthorhombic lattice.

5.12.2 Monoclinic indexing: $(CH_3NH_3)_2Mo_7O_{22}$

In this example, we consider the *ab initio* indexing of the diffraction pattern collected from $(CH_3NH_3)_2Mo_7O_{22}$ powder. Profile fitting of the powder diffraction data (*Figure 5.15*) resulted in 30 peaks observed below 30° of 2θ (*Table 5.21*). The indexing has been conducted using TREOR, DICVOL and ITO. Attempts to use TREOR produce no reasonable solution in high symmetry crystal systems, including orthorhombic. Because of the complexity of the pattern, the maximum unit cell volume was increased from a default (1500) to 2500 Å^3 by adding the instruction VOL=2500.

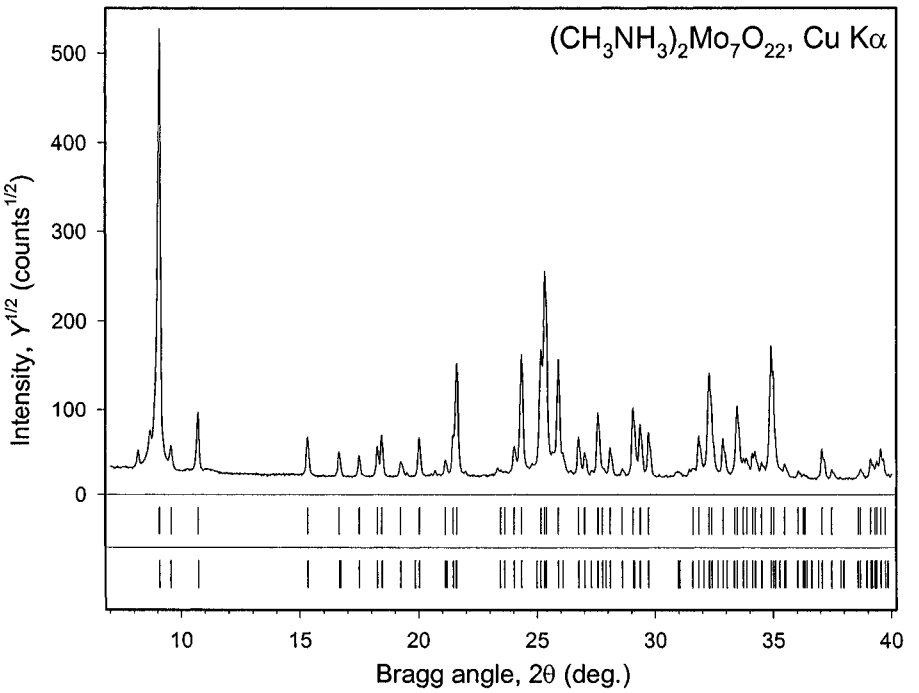


Figure 5.15. Powder diffraction pattern of $(CH_3NH_3)_2Mo_7O_{22}$ collected on a Scintag XDS2000 diffractometer using Cu Kα radiation in a step scan mode with $\Delta 2\theta = 0.02°$ and counting time 30 sec. The square root of intensity is plotted as a function of Bragg angle for clarity. The two sets of vertical bars illustrate the following: top – positions of the observed Bragg peaks, bottom – the same calculated in the space group C2/c for the solution No. 1 from *Table 5.22*. The two weak Bragg peaks preceding the strongest peak at $2\theta \cong 9°$ have been excluded from the indexing because their presence yields unreasonably large unit cells.[1]

[1] These peaks probably belong to an impurity phase. It is quite possible because the $(CH_3NH_3)_2Mo_7O_{22}$ powder was prepared hydrothermally (see section 6.15), which sometimes results in the presence of several metastable phases in the material.

Table 5.21. Relative integrated intensities (I/I_0), Bragg angles (listed for the location of the $K\alpha_1$ component in the doublet, $\lambda = 1.540593$ Å) and full widths at half maximum (FWHM) of Bragg peaks observed in the range $7 \leq 2\theta \leq 30°$ in the $(CH_3NH_3)_2Mo_7O_{22}$ powder diffraction pattern collected using Cu K_α radiation (see *Figure 5.15*).

I/I_0	2θ (deg)	FWHM (deg)	I/I_0	2θ (deg)	FWHM (deg)
1000	9.077	0.089	10	24.033	0.077
10	9.574	0.089	109	24.343	0.077
34	10.716	0.085	110	25.162	0.080
17	15.328	0.084	257	25.321	0.080
8	16.653	0.084	68	25.394	0.080
6	17.496	0.084	98	25.896	0.080
10	18.264	0.084	16	26.758	0.081
18	18.449	0.084	8	27.016	0.081
4	19.240	0.084	38	27.581	0.081
17	20.030	0.084	1	27.771	0.081
4	21.130	0.081	11	28.093	0.081
15	21.466	0.081	1	28.600	0.081
89	21.614	0.081	45	29.069	0.081
1	23.466	0.081	29	29.368	0.081
1	23.641	0.081	21	29.725	0.081

Keeping the maximum unit cell volume at 2500 Å^3, indexing attempts using TREOR were extended to include the monoclinic crystal system by adding the instruction MONO=130 (data file **Ch5Ex05_Treor90.dat** is found on the CD). The program finds several solutions, and the one listed in the first row in *Table 5.22* appears reasonable. Despite the relatively low figure of merit ($M_{20} = 9$) it is promising because all Bragg peaks are indexed in the base-centered lattice.

To confirm the feasibility of this monoclinic unit cell, indexing was attempted using both DICVOL and ITO. The latter gives no acceptable solution, while the former results in three unit cells. The best of the three is listed in the second row in *Table 5.22*. All Bragg peaks can be indexed, but this time in a body-centered lattice. The two remaining solutions correspond to base-centered unit cells with all peaks indexed. They have slightly lower figures of merit but the same unit cell volume and parameter *b*. As an exercise use experimental data provided on the CD or in *Table 5.21* and run DICVOL to see all unit cells.

The unit cell edges, *a* and *c*, and angle β in all three solutions are related to one another as shown in *Figure 5.16*. Here, **a**, **c** and angle β correspond to those in the first row in *Table 5.22*. The inverse of the body diagonal of the parallelogram **ac**, **d** = **–a** – **c**, can be used as the third choice of the unit cell edge giving a total of three possible selections of the unit cell: **a** and **c**, **a** and **d**, and **d** and **c**. Since the first pair produces a base-centered lattice, then the second combination remains base-centered, but the third unit cell should be body-centered, which is not standard in the monoclinic crystal system. The

transformation to a standard setting (**a'**, **b'** and **c'**) is shown in *Table 5.22* in column 6 with the resulting unit cell dimensions shown in columns 7 and 8.

Table 5.22. Indexing solutions describing powder diffraction data of $(CH_3NH_3)_2Mo_7O_{22}$.

Solution number	*a*, *b*, *c*	β, *V*	M_N	Lattice centering	**a',b',c'**	*a',b',c'*	β'	Source
1	20.624	109.93	9_{20}	C				TREOR
	5.525							
	19.592	2098.7						
2	23.105	127.11	9.9_{30}	I	**-a**	23.105	122.95	DICVOL
	5.524				**b**	5.524		
	20.626	2099.3			**a+c**	19.601		
3	20.589	109.94	40_{20}[a]	C	**a+2c**	23.060	122.93	TREOR[b]
	5.514				**b**	5.514		
	9.7790	1044.9			**-2c**	19.561		
4	23.060	127.12	20.5_{30}	I	**-a**	23.060	122.93	DICVOL[b]
	5.514				**b**	5.514		
	20.590	2087.7			**a+c**	19.561		
5[c]	20.564	109.92	10.6_{20}	C	**a+c**	23.043	122.97	ITO[b]
	5.512				**b**	5.512		
	19.546	2082.9			**-c**	19.546		

[a] 4 peaks unindexed; found volume is half that from other solutions.

[b] 2θ corrected for a sample shift error, δ, as $2\theta^{corr} = 2\theta^{obs} - 180/\pi \cdot 2\delta \cdot \cos\theta/R$ ($\delta = -0.1$ mm; goniometer radius R = 250 mm).

[c] Second best solution according to the figure of merit. The best FOM is 39.4 with half the unit cell volume and only 17 of 20 reflections indexed; also see solution No. 3.

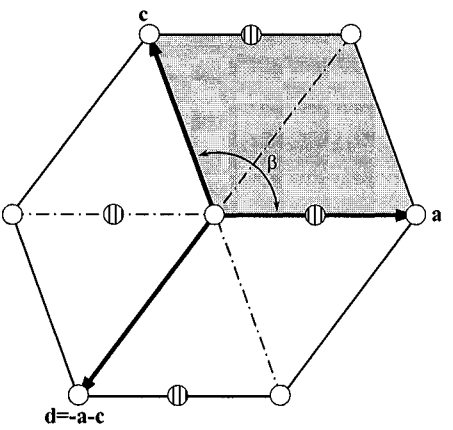


Figure 5.16. Alternative axes selection in the monoclinic crystal system. Open and hatched points represent lattice points. The open points are located in the plane, while the hatched points are raised by 1/2 of the full translation in the direction perpendicular to the plane of the projection. Unit cells based on the vectors **a** and **c** or **a** and **d** correspond to a base-centered (C) lattice, while the unit cell based on the vectors **c** and **d** corresponds to a body-centered lattice.

As can be seen from *Figure 5.15*, the calculated positions of Bragg peaks match the observed diffraction pattern quite well. The lack of reflections *h*0*l* with $l = 2n + 1$ in addition to base-centered systematic absences clearly points to space groups C2/c or Cc. Because of relatively low figures of merit, indexing with different sample shift corrections was conducted and sample shift of -0.1 mm results in the improved figures of merit as shown in *Table 5.22* in rows 3, 4 and 5 for TREOR, DICVOL and ITO, respectively. Interestingly, TREOR finds a unit cell with good figure of merit and half the volume but leaves some reflections unindexed, which is a disadvantage of the algorithm that allows skipping Bragg peaks. DICVOL and ITO find the unit cell identical to that established previously but with a better fit. In the case of ITO, however, this solution was not the best according to figure of merit: the best solution had merit $M_{20} = 39.4$, body-centered lattice and was similar to that found by TREOR, with half the volume but with only 17 out of 20 lowest angle Bragg peaks indexed.

Other attempts, including eliminating some weak and suspicious Bragg peaks, did not result in a better indexing solution. Thus, this unit cell was considered as true after it was additionally confirmed by refinement of lattice parameters using all Bragg peaks observed up to $2\theta = 60°$. The final confirmation of the indexing solution was obtained after the crystal structure was determined and refined as will be discussed in Chapters 6 and 7.

5.12.3 Triclinic indexing: $Fe_7(PO_4)_6$

Indexing in a triclinic crystal system generally should be attempted if no solution or only highly questionable solutions exist in higher symmetry crystal systems. In this example, we will use diffraction data collected from an iron phosphate powder (*Figure 5.17*). A total of 34 individual Bragg peaks observed below 32° 2θ (*Table 5.23*) were identified as a result of profile fitting and included into the indexing process.

Indexing this powder diffraction pattern using TREOR and DICVOL assuming any symmetry higher than triclinic produces no solution. The ITO algorithm also fails using the data listed in *Table 5.23* and, therefore, the observed Bragg angles were corrected assuming the presence of a certain sample displacement error followed by repetitive indexing attempts. When the observed Bragg angles were modified to account for a sample displacement $\delta = -0.15$ mm using the goniometer radius 250 mm, a good indexing solution has been obtained. It is shown in the first row of *Table 5.24* and is found on the CD in the file **Ch5Ex06_ITO-Indexed.out**. The presence of a considerable systematic error, which may occur due to an improperly aligned specimen and/or due to intrinsic reasons (e.g. a weakly absorbing sample), explains why the first indexing attempt failed even

though the algorithm incorporated into the ITO program foresees this kind of an error. It is worth mentioning that a sample displacement or a corresponding zero shift error can be estimated by comparing positions of several lowest Bragg peaks with the corresponding second order peaks.[1]

The complete list of solutions obtained in this indexing run (**Ch5Ex06_ITO-Indexed.out**) contains five different unit cells with the following M_{20} figures of merit: 57, 40, 12, 5 and 4, from which the first two are markedly higher than the others (also see the first two rows in *Table 5.24*). The first solution indexes the first 20 and all 34 Bragg peaks, has the highest figure of merit, the smallest unit cell, and there are only 23 possible reflections in the range of Bragg angles corresponding to the first 20 observed peaks (see the indexing result in *Table 5.25*).

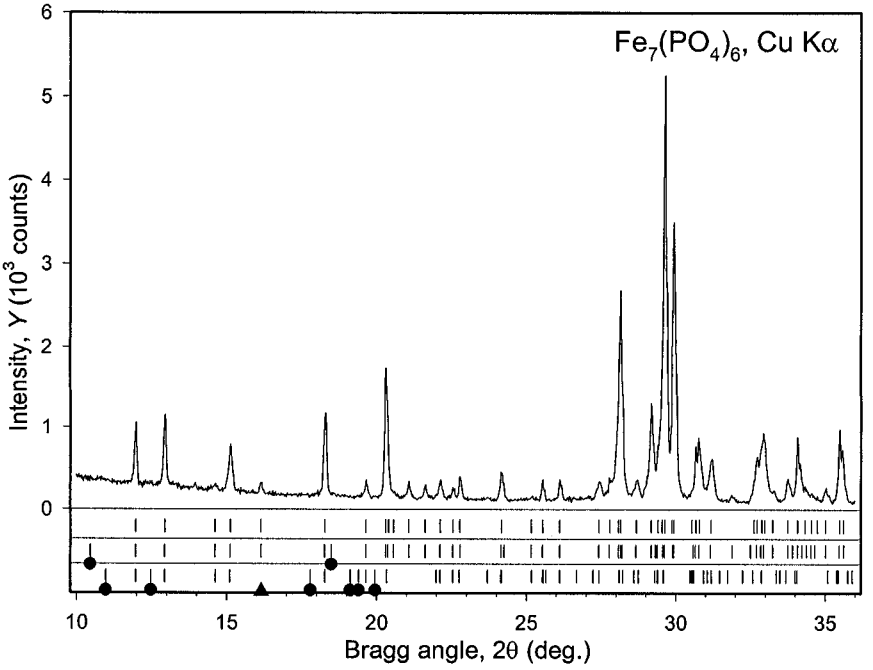


Figure 5.17. Powder diffraction pattern of $Fe_7(PO_4)_6$ collected on a Scintag XDS2000 diffractometer using Cu Kα radiation in a step scan mode with $\Delta 2\theta = 0.02°$ and counting time 30 sec. The three sets of vertical bars illustrate the following: top – positions of the observed Bragg peaks, middle – positions of Bragg peaks calculated using ITO solution No. 1 (correct), and bottom – the same calculated using ITO solution No. 2 (incorrect); both solutions are listed in *Table 5.24*. Filled circles indicate unobserved reflections and filled triangle indicates the only observed reflection below $2\theta = 20°$, which was left unindexed in the solution No. 2.

[1] The *d*-spacings of the first and second order Bragg peaks should be related as 2:1 in the absence of sample displacement and/or zero shift errors. If this ratio is different, the related systematic error can be computed from the Braggs' law (see Eqs. 2.39 to 2.44).

Table 5.23. Relative integrated intensities (I/I_0), Bragg angles and full widths at half maximum (FWHM) of Bragg peaks observed in the range $10 \leq 2\theta \leq 32°$ in the $Fe_7(PO_4)_6$ powder diffraction pattern collected using Cu K_α radiation (see *Figure 5.17*).

I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)	I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)
133	11.977	0.082	44	25.545	0.075
168	12.946	0.087	52	26.119	0.075
14	14.619	0.125	52	27.435	0.078
151	15.132	0.137	47	27.798	0.078
25	16.149	0.082	177	28.084	0.078
212	18.277	0.088	467	28.156	0.078
35	19.652	0.088	59	28.686	0.078
343	20.306	0.088	284	29.174	0.078
26	20.402	0.088	128	29.408	0.078
10	20.569	0.088	269	29.546	0.078
37	21.071	0.088	1000	29.636	0.078
31	21.622	0.088	87	29.874	0.078
46	22.129	0.088	757	29.938	0.078
27	22.547	0.088	12	30.543	0.078
55	22.781	0.088	136	30.673	0.078
77	24.166	0.075	138	30.796	0.078
8	25.168	0.075	142	31.182	0.078

[a] Bragg angles are listed for the location of the $K\alpha_1$ component in the doublet, $\lambda = 1.540593$ Å.

Table 5.24. Indexing solutions describing $Fe_7(PO_4)_6$ powder diffraction data obtained using ITO15, DICVOL91 and TREOR90 followed by a reduction of the unit cell using WLepage program (see the footnote on page 443).

No.	*a*, *b*, *c*	α, β, γ	V	M_N	**a',b',c'**	*a'*, *b'*, *c'*	α', β', γ '	Source
1	7.9791	111.045	424.77	56.8_{20}	**-c**	6.475	104.68	ITO
	9.5752	101.620			**-a**	7.977	108.78	
	6.4736	67.321			**b+c**	9.434	101.59	
2	8.1990	99.955	462.61	40.1_{20}	**c**	7.169	111.60	ITO[a]
	8.9216	100.503			**a**	8.199	99.96	
	7.1689	111.595			**b**	8.922	100.50	
3	9.8147	111.056	424.51	30.8_{34}	**-c**	6.474	104.66	DICVOL
	9.5710	79.219			**-a**	7.979	108.76	
	6.4750	131.423			**b+c**	9.438	101.62	
4	6.4662	123.000	424.51	36_{20}	**a**	6.466	104.65	TREOR[b]
	9.4427	79.305			**a+b+c**	7.979	108.72	(defaults)
	9.8219	71.281			**-b**	9.443	101.66	
5	6.4780	67.307	424.54	56_{20}	**-a**	6.478	104.67	TREOR
	7.9764	68.916			**b**	7.976	108.77	(MERIT=50)
	9.5697	78.386			**a-c**	9.431	101.61	
6	6.4902	104.330	425.65	-	**a**	6.4902	104.33	single crystal
	7.9634	109.028			**b**	7.9634	109.03	data
	9.4521	101.642			**c**	9.4521	101.64	

[a] An example of the incorrect indexing (second best solution according to M_N): only 14 out of 20 lowest Bragg angle peaks are indexed.

[b] Despite an acceptable FOM, seven peaks remain unindexed and the unit cell is correct.

Table 5.25. The best solution from indexing the powder diffraction pattern of $Fe_7(PO_4)_6$ using Ito method: a = 7.9791 Å, b = 9.5752 Å, c = 6.4736 Å, α = 111.045°, β = 101.620°, and γ = 67.321°.

$2\theta_{obs}$	√Intensity[a]	$2\theta_{corr}$[b]	$2\theta_{calc}$	$2\theta_{corr} - 2\theta_{calc}$	h	k	l
-			10.539		0	1	0
11.977	36	12.035	12.050	-0.015	1	0	0
12.946	40	13.005	13.009	-0.004	1	1	0
14.619	11	14.677	14.686	-0.009	0	0	1
15.132	38	15.191	15.182	0.009	0	1	-1
16.149	15	16.207	16.219	-0.012	1	1	-1
18.277	45	18.335	18.339	-0.004	1	0	-1
-			18.577		-1	1	0
19.652	18	19.710	19.708	0.002	1	0	1
20.306	58	20.364	20.365	-0.001	1	2	-1
20.402	16	20.460	20.445	0.015	1	2	0
20.569	10	20.627	20.632	-0.005	0	1	1
21.071	19	21.128	21.159	-0.031	0	2	0
21.622	17	21.679	21.693	-0.014	0	2	-1
22.129	21	22.186	22.183	0.003	-1	1	-1
22.547	16	22.604	22.605	-0.001	1	1	1
22.781	23	22.839	22.851	-0.012	2	1	0
24.166	27	24.223	24.226	-0.003	2	0	0
-			24.317		2	1	-1
25.168	9	25.225	25.240	-0.015	-1	1	1
25.545	20	25.602	25.604	-0.002	2	2	-1
26.119	22	26.176	26.179	-0.003	2	2	0
27.435	22	27.491	27.492	-0.001	2	0	-1
27.798	21	27.854	27.854	0.000	-1	2	0
28.084	41	28.141	28.140	0.001	0	1	-2
28.156	67	28.213	28.224	-0.011	1	3	-1
-			28.262		1	1	-2
28.686	24	28.743	28.736	0.007	-1	2	-1
29.174	52	29.230	29.225	0.005	1	2	-2
-			29.366		2	0	1
-			29.397		1	2	1
29.408	35	29.465	29.459	0.006	0	2	1
29.546	51	29.603	29.611	-0.008	0	0	2
29.636	100	29.692	29.697	-0.005	-2	1	0
29.874	29	29.930	29.948	-0.018	2	1	1
29.938	86	29.994	30.003	-0.009	1	3	0
30.543	10	30.600	30.628	-0.028	0	2	-2
30.673	36	30.729	30.731	-0.002	0	3	-1

[a] Normalized to 100.

[b] Corrected for a sample shift $\delta = -0.15$ mm: $2\theta_{corr} = 2\theta_{obs} - 180/\pi \cdot 2\delta \cdot \cos\theta/R$ and goniometer radius R = 250 mm.

The second solution appears much worse: despite the high figure of merit and only slightly higher volume it leaves 6 out of the first 20 reflections unindexed even though there are a total of 28 calculated Bragg peaks in this

range of angles. Other solutions have much lower figures of merit, higher volume and too many unindexed peaks along with a large number of calculated Bragg reflections that are unobserved.

Some of the unreliable solutions can be eliminated by decreasing the tolerances in 2θ for zone searches. However, there is a danger of choosing a tolerance that is too low, and by using it, the true solution can be missed. To avoid this, the tolerance should be reduced gradually and only when excessive amounts of different and unreliable solutions emerge. In our example, the tolerance that was set by default between 3 and 4 appears to be a good choice.

Table 5.24 also contains the results of triclinic indexing using the DICVOL and TREOR algorithms. With all crystal systems tested, DICVOL results in a single solution, shown in the third row. All reflections were indexed and the figures of merit are quite high: M_{34} = 30.8 and F_{34} = 104.5(0.0081, 40). Employing TREOR with all parameters set to their default value (except instruction TRIC = 1) three solutions where found. Two of them with unit cell volume of ~800 Å^3 have very low figures of merit and leave many peaks unindexed. The third one has the same cell volume (~424 Å^3) as the earlier solutions, and is listed in row 4. This solution has 6 out of 34 Bragg reflections unindexed, which is due to the low accuracy of the determined unit cell. To check other possible solutions, the keyword MERIT = 50 was inserted in the input data file. This modification results in more than 20 different solutions with a unit cell volume of ~424 Å^3. The best solution has all 34 reflections indexed, high figures of merit, and it is listed in row 5.

As is obvious from columns 2 and 3 in *Table 5.24*, different indexing algorithms result in different choices of the unit cell for the same lattice and, therefore, unit cell reduction is especially important to compare the results in triclinic symmetry. The unit cell dimensions, reduced using the WLepage program, are listed in *Table 5.24* in columns 6–8. Obviously, all of them are represented by the same unit cell, except the incorrect solution shown in row 2. The triclinic unit cell was confirmed by a single crystal diffraction experiment, as shown in row 6.

5.13 Precise lattice parameters and linear least squares

After the powder diffraction pattern has been successfully indexed, the next step is to establish the unit cell dimensions with the highest possible precision. By combining Eqs. 5.2 and 5.3 one can see that the errors in the lattice parameters only depend on the errors in the measured Bragg angles assuming that Miller indices and λ are known exactly:

$$f(h,k,l,a,b,c,\alpha,\beta,\gamma) = \frac{\lambda}{2\sin\theta_{(hkl)}} \tag{5.28}$$

By differentiating the right hand side of Eq. 5.28 we find that the absolute error in the interplanar distance, σd, is a function of both the error in Bragg angle, $\sigma\theta$, and Bragg angle:

$$\sigma d = \frac{\lambda\cos\theta}{2\sin^2\theta}\sigma\theta \tag{5.29}$$

The dependence of σd on Bragg angle for several constant $\sigma\theta$ is shown in *Figure 5.18*, which clearly illustrates that to achieve maximum absolute precision in the lattice parameters it is necessary to collect powder diffraction data at the highest possible Bragg angles.

Ideally, the Bragg angles close to $\theta = 90°$ ($2\theta = 180°$) should be available to claim the precision of the unit cell dimensions equivalent to that of the precision of the used wavelength. Unfortunately, measurements at $2\theta = 180°$

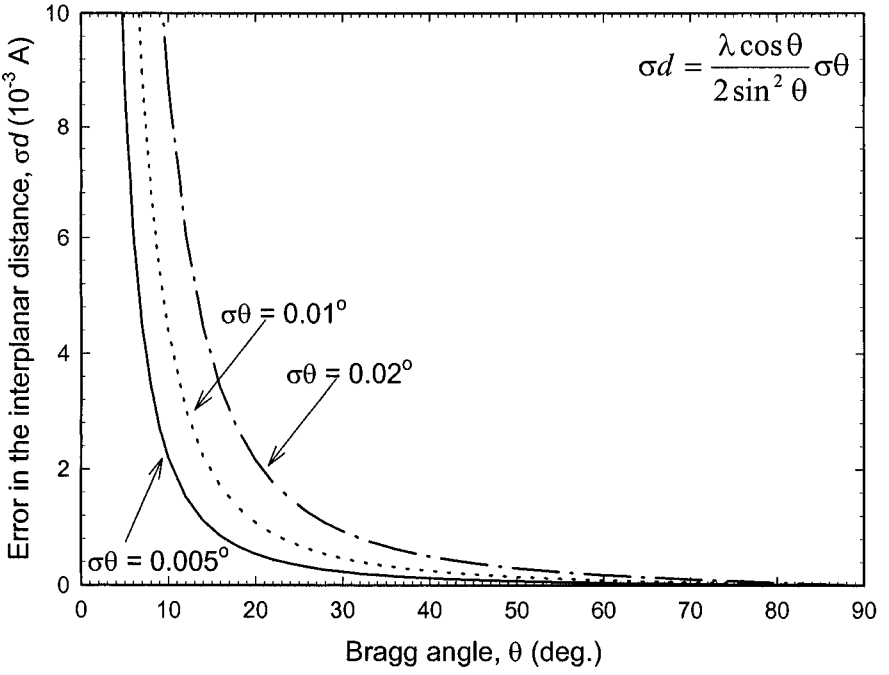


Figure 5.18. The dependence of the absolute error in the interplanar distance, σd, on Bragg angle for several different constant errors in the measured Bragg angle when using Cu $K\alpha_1$ radiation, $\lambda = 1.540593$ Å.

are impossible and in most commercial powder diffractometers the highest reachable Bragg angle is limited by $2\theta = 140$ to 150°. Thus, in nearly every instance, all available data are used to determine lattice parameters using least squares refinement. The use of the least squares technique is fully justifiable as it also allows one to refine the most critical corrections to the observed Bragg angles that arise from the presence of systematic errors in the experimental data due to sample displacement or zero shift.

5.13.1 Linear least squares

Assume that we need to find a solution of the system of n simultaneous linear equations with m unknown parameters. In general form, this system of equations can be represented as

$$\begin{aligned} &a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \ldots + a_{1m}x_m = y_1 \\ &a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \ldots + a_{2m}x_m = y_2 \\ &\ldots \\ &a_{n1}x_1 + a_{n2}x_2 + \ldots + a_{nm}x_m = y_n \end{aligned} \tag{5.30}$$

In a matrix and vector notation, Eq. 5.30 becomes

$$\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{y} \tag{5.31}$$

where

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \ldots & a_{1m} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \ldots & a_{2m} \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \ldots & a_{nm} \end{pmatrix}; \quad \mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \ldots \\ x_m \end{pmatrix}; \quad \mathbf{y} = \begin{pmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ \ldots \\ y_n \end{pmatrix} \tag{5.32}$$

When $n < m$, Eq. 5.30 has an infinite number of solutions with respect to a set of n unknowns, and each particular solution depends on certain assumptions which were made about the values of the remaining $m - n$ parameters. When $n = m$, Eq. 5.30 has one exact solution, if it exists when $\det(\mathbf{A}) \neq 0$. On the other hand, when $n > m$, the solution of Eq. 5.30 can be obtained in two fundamentally different ways.

First, it is possible to randomly select m equations and find m parameters, if any, that exactly satisfy each of the m selected equations. This solution,

however, will likely be far from the best for the remaining n - m equations (e.g. see the varying lattice parameter determined in this way in *Table 5.12*).

Second, it is possible to find vector **x**, which would be the best solution for all n existing equations using the least squares technique. The least squares solution of Eq. 5.30 is obtained by rearranging it into the following form

$$\begin{aligned} &a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \ldots + a_{1m}x_m - y_1 = \varepsilon_1 \\ &a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \ldots + a_{2m}x_m - y_2 = \varepsilon_2 \\ &\ldots \\ &a_{n1}x_1 + a_{n2}x_2 + \ldots + a_{nm}x_m - y_n = \varepsilon_n \end{aligned} \tag{5.33}$$

and then finding the minimum of the following function

$$\Phi(x_1, x_2, \ldots x_m) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \varepsilon_i^2 \tag{5.34}$$

The best solution of Eq. 5.33 (and Eq. 5.30) is found by calculating partial derivatives of the function defined in Eq. 5.34 with respect to x_1, x_2, ..., x_m and equating each to zero, which are the conditions of the minimum of $\Phi(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_m)$:

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{\partial\Phi(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_m)}{\partial x_1} = 0 \\ &\frac{\partial\Phi(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_m)}{\partial x_2} = 0 \\ &\ldots \\ &\frac{\partial\Phi(x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_m)}{\partial x_m} = 0 \end{aligned} \tag{5.35}$$

Obviously, Eq. 5.35 has a single solution, if any, since we replaced the system containing n equations and m unknowns (Eqs. 5.30 and 5.33) with the system that has the same number of equations as there are free parameters. After calculating partial derivatives, grouping the coefficients near the same x_i and rearranging each of the equations, we get the following equivalent of Eq. 5.35:

$$
\begin{aligned}
&x_1\sum_{i=1}^{n}a_{i1}^2 + x_2\sum_{i=1}^{n}a_{i1}a_{i2} + \ldots + x_m\sum_{i=1}^{n}a_{i1}a_{im} = \sum_{i=1}^{n}a_{i1}y_i \\
&x_1\sum_{i=1}^{n}a_{i2}a_{i1} + x_2\sum_{i=1}^{n}a_{i2}^2 + \ldots + x_m\sum_{i=1}^{n}a_{i2}a_{im} = \sum_{i=1}^{n}a_{i2}y_i \\
&\ldots \\
&x_1\sum_{i=1}^{n}a_{im}a_{i1} + x_2\sum_{i=1}^{n}a_{m}a_{i2} + \ldots + x_m\sum_{i=1}^{n}a_{im}^2 = \sum_{i=1}^{n}a_{im}y_i
\end{aligned}
\tag{5.36}
$$

The coefficients in the left hand side of Eq. 5.36 are nothing else than the product of the transpose of matrix **A** (Eq. 5.31) and the matrix **A** itself, and the coefficients in the right hand side of Eq. 5.36 can be represented as the product of the transpose of matrix **A** and vector **y** (Eq. 5.31). Thus, letting $\mathbf{A}^T$ be the transpose of matrix **A**

$$
\mathbf{A}^T = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{21} & \ldots & a_{n1} \\ a_{12} & a_{22} & \ldots & a_{n2} \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ a_{1m} & a_{2m} & \ldots & a_{nm} \end{pmatrix} \tag{5.37}
$$

Eq. 5.36 can be written in a matrix and vector notation as

$$
(\mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{A})\mathbf{x} = (\mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{y}) \tag{5.38}
$$

Its solution (and simultaneously the least squares solution of Eq. 5.30) is found from

$$
\mathbf{x} = (\mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{A})^{-1}(\mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{y}) \tag{5.39}
$$

where $(\mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{A})^{-1}$ is the inverse of a square matrix, which is the product of $\mathbf{A}^T$ and **A**. Equations 5.35, 5.36 and 5.38 are identical and they represent different notations of the so-called normal equations in the least squares method. Two noteworthy properties of the elements of the normal equation matrix $(\mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{A})$ or, which is the same, the coefficients near the unknowns in normal equations (Eq. 5.36) are:

- The elements located on the main (principal) diagonal of the matrix are always positive, and
- The matrix is symmetrical with respect to the main diagonal.

5.13.2 Precise lattice parameters from linear least squares

We now consider the most general form of Eq. 5.28, i.e. that which relates the unit cell dimensions, Miller indices, wavelength and Bragg angles in the triclinic crystal system. In a quadratic form, it can be written as

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{V^2}[&h^2b^2c^2\sin^2\gamma + k^2a^2c^2\sin^2\beta + l^2a^2b^2\sin^2\alpha + \\ &+ 2hkabc^2(\cos\alpha\cos\beta - \cos\gamma) + \\ &+ 2hlab^2c(\cos\alpha\cos\gamma - \cos\beta) + \\ &+ 2kla^2bc(\cos\beta\cos\gamma - \cos\alpha)] = \frac{4\sin^2\theta}{\lambda^2}\end{aligned} \tag{5.40}$$

where V is the volume of the unit cell, which is given as

$$V = abc\sqrt{1 - \cos^2\alpha - \cos^2\beta - \cos^2\gamma + 2\cos\alpha\cos\beta\cos\gamma} \tag{5.41}$$

By comparing Eq. 5.40 with Eq. 5.30, it is easy to see that the linear least squares technique is not directly applicable in this case since the former equation is clearly non linear with respect to the unknowns (a, b, c, α, β and γ). If, however, Eq. 5.40 is rewritten it terms of the reciprocal lattice parameters

$$\begin{aligned}&(h^2a^{*2} + k^2b^{*2} + l^2c^{*2} + 2hka^*b^*\cos\gamma^* + \\ &2hla^*c^*\cos\beta^* + 2klb^*c^*\cos\alpha^*) = \frac{4\sin^2\theta}{\lambda^2}\end{aligned} \tag{5.42}$$

it becomes linear with respect to a different set of the unknowns:

$$\begin{aligned}&(S_{11}h^2 + S_{22}k^2 + S_{33}l^2 + 2S_{12}hk + 2S_{13}hl + 2S_{23}kl) = \\ &= \frac{4\sin^2\theta}{\lambda^2}\end{aligned} \tag{5.43}$$

where the new parameters, S_{ij}, are defined as follows:

$$
\begin{aligned}
S_{11} &= a^{*2} = \frac{b^2c^2\sin^2\gamma}{V^2} \\
S_{22} &= b^{*2} = \frac{a^2c^2\sin^2\beta}{V^2} \\
S_{33} &= c^{*2} = \frac{a^2b^2\sin^2\alpha}{V^2} \\
S_{12} &= a^*b^*\cos\gamma^* = \frac{abc^2(\cos\alpha\cos\beta-\cos\gamma)}{V^2} \\
S_{13} &= a^*c^*\cos\beta^* = \frac{ab^2c(\cos\alpha\cos\gamma-\cos\beta)}{V^2} \\
S_{23} &= b^*c^*\cos\alpha^* = \frac{a^2bc(\cos\beta\cos\gamma-\cos\alpha)}{V^2}
\end{aligned}
\tag{5.44}
$$

By comparing Eq. 5.43 with Eqs. 5.30 to 5.32 it is easy to see that matrix **A** and vector **y** are constructed as follows:

$$
\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix}
h_1^2 & k_1^2 & l_1^2 & 2h_1k_1 & 2h_1l_1 & 2k_1l_1 \\
h_2^2 & k_2^2 & l_2^2 & 2h_2k_2 & 2h_2l_2 & 2k_2l_2 \\
\cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\
h_n^2 & k_n^2 & l_n^2 & 2h_nk_n & 2h_nl_n & 2k_nl_n
\end{pmatrix}
\tag{5.45}
$$

$$
\mathbf{y} = \begin{pmatrix}
4\sin^2\theta_1/\lambda^2 \\
4\sin^2\theta_2/\lambda^2 \\
\cdots \\
4\sin^2\theta_n/\lambda^2
\end{pmatrix}
\tag{5.46}
$$

and that the least squares solution according to Eq. 5.39 results in a vector

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} S_{11} \\ S_{22} \\ S_{33} \\ S_{12} \\ S_{13} \\ S_{23} \end{pmatrix} \tag{5.47}$$

from which the unit cell dimensions of the direct lattice are calculated using Eq. 5.44.

So far, we considered the application of a liner least squares technique in the case when no systematic error has been present in the observed powder diffraction data. However, as we already know, in many cases the measured Bragg angles are affected by a systematic sample displacement or zero shift error. The first systematic error affects each data point differently and considering Eq. 3.4 (section 3.5.5), when a sample displacement error, s, is present in the data, Eq. 5.43 becomes

$$\begin{aligned} &(S_{11}h^2 + S_{22}k^2 + S_{33}l^2 + 2S_{12}hk + 2S_{13}hl + 2S_{23}kl) = \\ &= \frac{4\sin^2(\theta + \frac{s}{R}\cos\theta)}{\lambda^2} \end{aligned} \tag{5.48}$$

In Eq. 5.48, R is the radius of the goniometer. The second systematic error adds a small constant value, $\delta\theta_0$, to each observed Bragg angle, which results in the following equivalent of Eq. 5.43:

$$\begin{aligned} &(S_{11}h^2 + S_{22}k^2 + S_{33}l^2 + 2S_{12}hk + 2S_{13}hl + 2S_{23}kl) = \\ &= \frac{4\sin^2(\theta + \delta\theta_0)}{\lambda^2} \end{aligned} \tag{5.49}$$

Both Eqs. 5.48 and 5.49 introduce one additional parameter in the least squares refinement, i.e. sample displacement divided by the goniometer radius, s/R, or zero shift, $\delta\theta_0$, respectively. Regardless of the fact that the contribution from both parameters is nonlinear, the linear least squares technique can still be applied after the following simplifications.

From trigonometry, we know that

$$\sin(\alpha+\beta)=\sin\alpha\cos\beta+\cos\alpha\sin\beta$$
$$\sin 2\alpha=2\sin\alpha\cos\alpha \tag{5.50}$$

Hence

$$\sin^2(\theta+x)=\sin^2\theta\cos^2 x+\cos^2\theta\sin^2 x+\frac{1}{2}\sin 2\theta\sin 2x \tag{5.51}$$

Recall that x, which represents an error in the Bragg angle, is usually quite small, then $\cos^2 x \cong 1$, $\sin^2 x \cong 0$ and $\sin 2x \cong 2x$. Whence, Eq. 5.51 is simplified to

$$\sin^2(\theta+x)\cong\sin^2\theta+x\sin 2\theta \tag{5.52}$$

By substituting the result obtained in Eq. 5.52 into Eqs. 5.48 and 5.49 they are transformed into

$$(S_{11}h^2+S_{22}k^2+S_{33}l^2+2S_{12}hk+2S_{13}hl+2S_{23}kl)-$$
$$-\frac{s}{R}\frac{4}{\lambda^2}\cos\theta\sin 2\theta=\frac{4\sin^2\theta}{\lambda^2} \tag{5.53}$$

and

$$(S_{11}h^2+S_{22}k^2+S_{33}l^2+2S_{12}hk+2S_{13}hl+2S_{23}kl)-$$
$$-\delta\theta_0\frac{4}{\lambda^2}\sin 2\theta=\frac{4\sin^2\theta}{\lambda^2} \tag{5.54}$$

Matrix **A** is then modified to

$$\mathbf{A}=\begin{pmatrix} h_1^2 & k_1^2 & l_1^2 & 2h_1k_1 & 2h_1l_1 & 2k_1l_1 & \frac{4\cos\theta_1\sin 2\theta_1}{\lambda^2} \\ h_2^2 & k_2^2 & l_2^2 & 2h_2k_2 & 2h_2l_2 & 2k_2l_2 & \frac{4\cos\theta_2\sin 2\theta_2}{\lambda^2} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ h_n^2 & k_n^2 & l_n^2 & 2h_nk_n & 2h_nl_n & 2k_nl_n & \frac{4\cos\theta_n\sin 2\theta_n}{\lambda^2} \end{pmatrix} \tag{5.55}$$

or

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} h_1^2 & k_1^2 & l_1^2 & 2h_1k_1 & 2h_1l_1 & 2k_1l_1 & \frac{4\sin 2\theta_1}{\lambda^2} \\ h_2^2 & k_2^2 & l_2^2 & 2h_2k_2 & 2h_2l_2 & 2k_2l_2 & \frac{4\sin 2\theta_2}{\lambda^2} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ h_n^2 & k_n^2 & l_n^2 & 2h_nk_n & 2h_nl_n & 2k_nl_n & \frac{4\sin 2\theta_n}{\lambda^2} \end{pmatrix} \tag{5.56}$$

to account for the sample displacement and zero shift errors, respectively, and the least squares solution produces the following vectors

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} S_{11} \\ S_{22} \\ S_{33} \\ S_{12} \\ S_{13} \\ S_{23} \\ S/R \end{pmatrix} \tag{5.57}$$

or

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} S_{11} \\ S_{22} \\ S_{33} \\ S_{12} \\ S_{13} \\ S_{23} \\ \delta\theta_0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{5.58}$$

When the symmetry of the material is higher than triclinic, Eqs. 5.53 and 5.54 contain fewer unknowns and the least squares procedure is simplified.

The least squares technique described above assumes that each data point (i.e. Bragg peak) is measured with the same experimental error and therefore, equally contributes into the resulting solution that represents the refined unit cell dimensions and/or correction for a systematic error, if any. When a realistic estimate of individual errors in Bragg angles is available, it

is possible to adjust the contributions from the individual Bragg peaks to reflect higher or lower precision in the determination of Bragg angles. This is realized by introducing individual weights into the calculation of the normal equations.

Thus, each row of matrix **A**, each element of vector **y** (see Eq. 5.32) and each column of the transpose matrix $\mathbf{A}^T$ (see Eq. 5.37) is changed by the multiplier that is inversely proportional to the square root of the experimental error in the corresponding experimental data point. Alternatively, the weighted least squares solution may be expressed as follows

$$\mathbf{x} = (\mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{W}\mathbf{A})^{-1}(\mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{W}\mathbf{y}) \tag{5.59}$$

where **W** is the square matrix representing individual weights for each of the available n data points:

$$\mathbf{W} = \begin{pmatrix} w_1^2 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & w_2^2 & \dots & 0 \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & w_n^2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{5.60}$$

The standard uncertainties (or standard deviations) for each parameter determined according to the least squares method are calculated from

$$\sigma(x_j) = \sqrt{\frac{(\mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{W}\mathbf{A})_{jj}^{-1}\sum_{k=1}^{n} w_k (Q_k^{obs} - Q_k^{calc})^2}{n-m}}, \quad j = 1, \dots, m \tag{5.61}$$

where:

- n is the number of equations (Bragg peaks),
- m is the number of unknown parameters (from two to seven assuming that sample displacement or zero shift error is always refined),
- $(\mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{W}\mathbf{A})_{jj}^{-1}$ is the corresponding diagonal element of the inverse normal equation matrix,
- w_k is the corresponding weight if any,
- $(Q_k^{obs} - Q_k^{calc})$ is the difference between the observed and calculated $1/d^2$.

There are many different stand-alone software programs available through the International Union of Crystallography[1] or Collaborative Computational Project No. 14[2] Web sites in addition to various commercially available least squares utilities. We will illustrate the least squares refinement of the lattice parameter of the LaB_6 compound, which was fully indexed earlier, see *Table 5.12*.

Least squares refinement of lattice parameter (Eq. 5.39) assuming unit weights and using all 20 available Bragg peaks results in a = 4.1599(3) Å. The obtained differences between the observed and calculated 2θ are shown in *Figure 5.19* and it is quite obvious that there is a systematic dependence of Δ2θ on the Bragg angle. A similar behavior is always indicative of a systematic error, namely the presence of zero shift or sample displacement errors, or a combination of both.

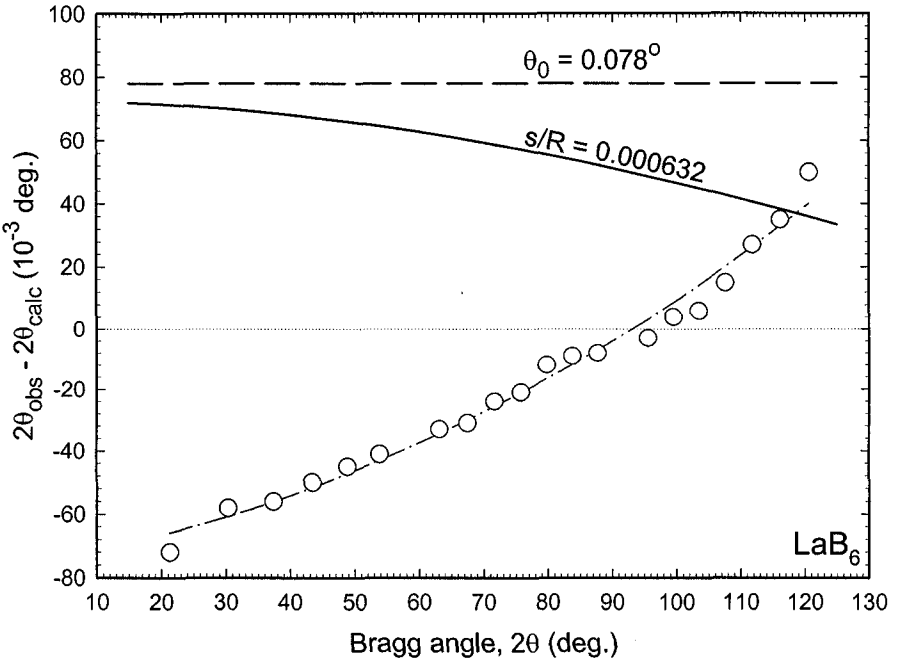


Figure 5.19. The differences between the observed and calculated Bragg angles after least squares refinement of the lattice parameter of LaB_6 without accounting for the presence of any kind of systematic error (open circles) using a = 4.1599(3) Å. The dash-dotted line drawn through the data points is a guide for the eye. The solid line represents corrections of the observed Bragg angles using the refined in the next step sample displacement error (s/R = 0.00632) and the dashed line represents a similar correction by using the determined zero shift error ($\delta\theta_0 = 0.078°$).

[1] http://www.iucr.org
[2] http://www.ccp14.ac.uk

The fact that the difference between the observed and calculated Bragg angles changes sign (*Figure 5.19*), is intrinsic to a least squares technique, which simply minimizes the function defined in Eq. 5.34. As a result, the refined lattice parameter of LaB_6, a = 4.1599(3) Å, is far from its standard value of a = 4.15695(6) Å. When the sample displacement error has been refined together with the lattice parameter, this yields a = 4.1583(1) Å and s/R = 0.00632. On the other hand, when zero shift error is refined instead of sample displacement, the resultant unit cell dimension becomes a = 4.1574(1) Å and zero shift $\delta\theta_0$ = 0.078°. The corresponding corrections of the observed Bragg angles are shown in *Figure 5.19* and the respective sets of differences between the observed and calculated Bragg angles are depicted in *Figure 5.20*.

It is easy to recognize that the effect of a systematic error has been removed from the experimental data in each case since in *Figure 5.20* the differences are distributed nearly randomly around zero and they are much smaller when compared to those in *Figure 5.19*. The F_{20} figures of merit (see *Figure 5.20*) are only different by a few percent.

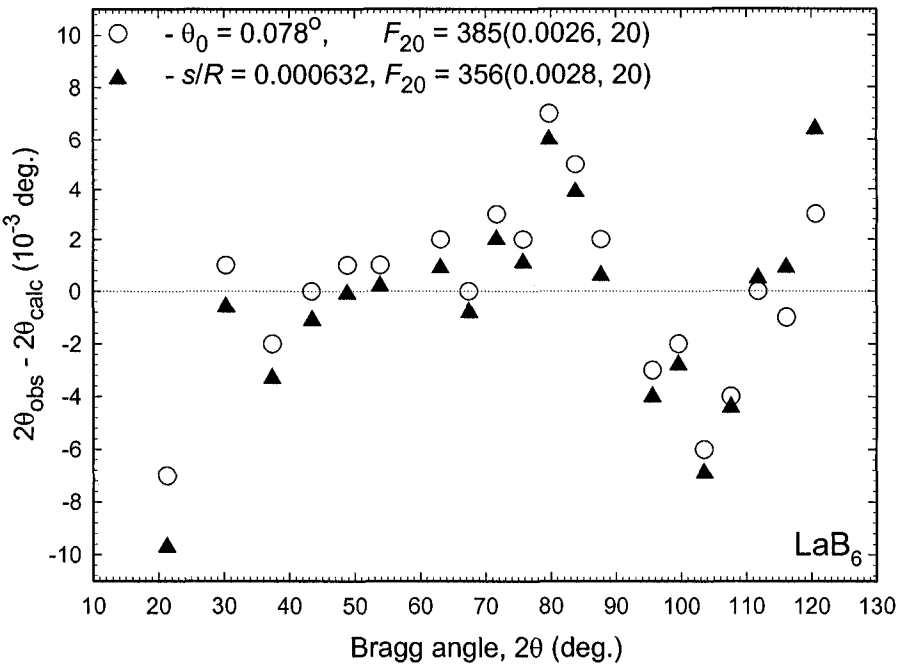


Figure 5.20. The differences between the observed and calculated Bragg angles after the least squares refinement of the lattice parameter of LaB_6 simultaneously with the zero shift error (open circles) or simultaneously with the sample displacement error (filled triangles).

However, if one compares the values of the lattice parameter obtained when a different kind of a systematic error was assumed and accounted for in the data, the difference between the two is statistically significant (4.1583 vs. 4.1574 Å for sample displacement and zero shift effects, respectively). This is expected given the different contribution from different errors as seen in *Figure 5.19*. Usually, both effects are present in experimental data. The refinement of two contributions simultaneously is, however, not feasible due to strong correlations between sample displacement and zero shift parameters as shown in *Figure 5.21*.

Considering the resultant unit cell dimensions, it appears that the zero shift error has the largest influence on the discussed experimental data, since the refined lattice parameter (a = 4.1574 Å) is the closest match with the standard value of a = 4.15695 Å.

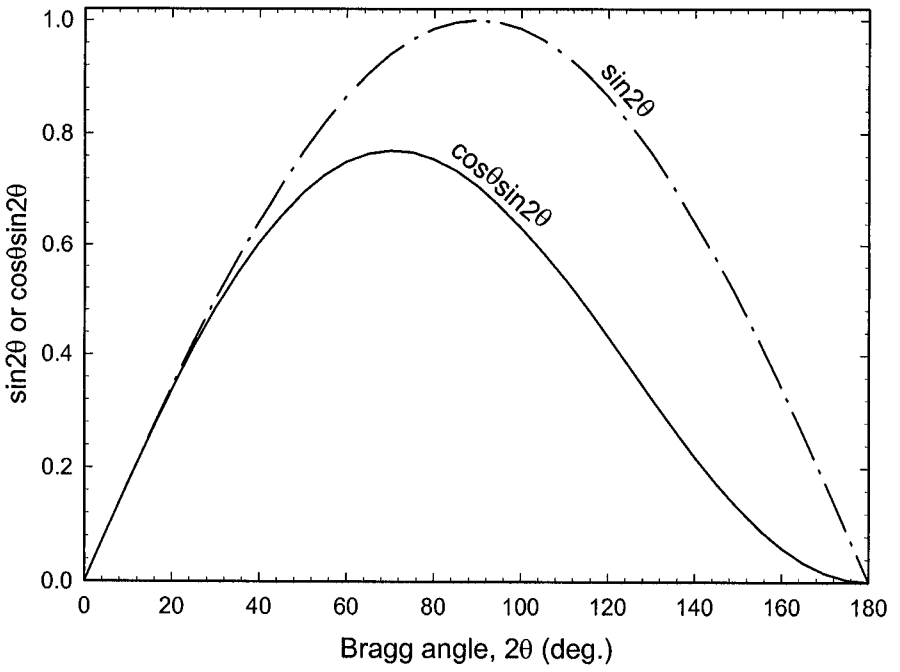


Figure 5.21. The behavior of cosθsin2θ (sample displacement, Eq. 5.55) and sin2θ (zero shift, Eq. 5.56) as functions of Bragg angle. The two functions show similar behavior, especially at low Bragg angles and therefore, the two parameters strongly correlate with one another when both are simultaneously included in the least squares refinement.

Lattice parameters, determined by any of the three indexing programs considered in this chapter, are usually refined using the least squares method. On one hand, their accuracy is quite satisfactory if the unit cell dimensions will be employed in database searches or in full pattern decomposition by using either Le Bail or Pawley technique (Chapter 6), or in Rietveld refinement (Chapter 7). Both full profile approaches result in the highest precision of lattice parameters, which can be achieved for a specific dataset. On the other hand, lattice parameters refined during the indexing are imprecise because of missed or improperly handled systematic errors. Furthermore, only a limited subset of Bragg reflections, usually at low angles, and therefore, most affected by various systematic errors, is employed during *ab initio* indexing. When precise unit cell dimensions are required, their accuracy after automatic indexing can be improved by including additional Bragg reflections into the least squares procedure without involving full profile methods. The entire pattern should be indexed as described in section 5.4, and all resolved Bragg peaks should be included in the least squares minimization.

Considering the pattern of $(CH_3NH_3)_2Mo_7O_{22}$, which is shown in *Figure 5.15*, its complexity is due to the relatively large unit cell and monoclinic symmetry coupled with a typical resolution of a conventional laboratory diffractometer. As a result, a substantial Bragg peak overlap is observed, especially at high angles. The first 30 resolved peaks below $2\theta = 30^\circ$ were indexed as shown in section 5.12.2. The remaining 57 resolvable Bragg peaks between 30 and 51° 2θ were indexed manually, using a solution with the highest figure of merit from *Table 5.22*. A least squares refinement employing all 87 Bragg peaks resulted in the following lattice parameters:

$$a = 23.0875(9),\ b = 5.5191(5),\ c = 19.5789(9)\ \text{Å},\ \beta = 122.924(3)^\circ$$

The differences between the observed and calculated Bragg angles are shown in *Figure 5.22* as open squares. They clearly indicate the presence of a systematic error. Furthermore, several differences are far away from the gradually varying $2\theta_{obs} - 2\theta_{calc}$ behavior. These peaks are marked with large circles in the figure, and all of them are weak and/or are heavily overlapped with strong neighboring Bragg reflections. A second least squares refinement of the lattice parameters together with sample displacement optimization after excluding the five marked reflections produces

$$a = 23.0641(8),\ b = 5.5131(2),\ c = 19.5601(6)\ \text{Å},\ \beta = 122.930(1)^\circ$$

and sample displacement parameter, s/R = -0.00042(1). Much lower discrepancies between the observed and calculated 2θ are noteworthy.

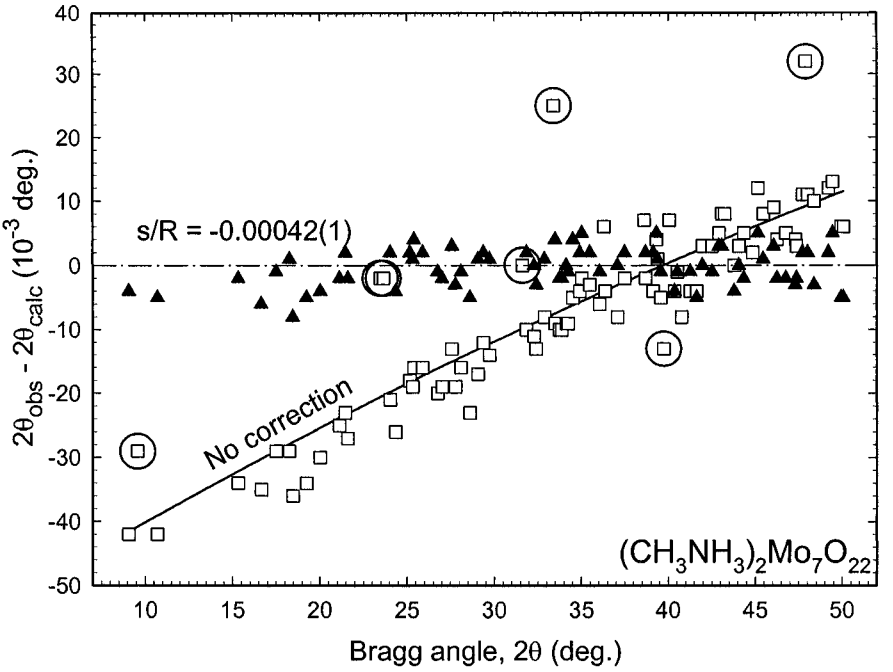


Figure 5.22. Differences between the observed and calculated Bragg angles after the least squares refinement of lattice parameters of the monoclinic $(CH_3NH_3)_2Mo_7O_{22}$. The open squares and filled triangles correspond to refinements without and with the sample displacement correction, respectively. The data points enclosed inside large circles were excluded from the second refinement due to the low intensity, strong overlap and, therefore, low accuracy of the corresponding observed Bragg angles.

Standard uncertainties of lattice parameters are also reduced when the sample displacement was accounted for. Adding more Bragg reflections, i.e. those that are located above $2\theta = 51°$, produces even lower standard deviations, but the resultant unit cell dimensions become biased by subjective assignments of Miller indices due to severe overlapping, which causes low accuracy in the observed peak positions. Ambiguities occur despite narrow peaks, which have full widths at half maximum under ~0.1° of 2θ. The list of 87 resolved Bragg peaks is found in the ASCII data file **Ch5Ex07_CuKa.pks** on the CD.

5.14 Epilogue

The reliability and precision of the established unit cell dimensions are not only functions of the quality of the collected experimental data, but they also depend on the presence of measurable diffraction peaks in certain

ranges of Bragg angles. As illustrated in *Figure 5.23*, the availability of low Bragg angle reflections is critical for successful assignment of indices. High Bragg angle peaks are required to determine lattice parameters with the greatest possible precision. In reality, the entire range of Bragg angles is used in routine least squares refinements of the unit cell dimensions, especially when the data are affected by small systematic instrumental and specimen-related errors.

Hence, when only lattice parameters are of concern and given the choice of available x-ray energies, medium to long wavelengths, i.e. Cu, Fe, Co, or Cr anodes, should be employed when using conventional x-ray sources. The range of wavelengths from ~1.5 to ~2.3 Å ensures that both low and high Bragg angle reflections are measured with adequate accuracy, thus resulting in the most precise unit cell dimensions.

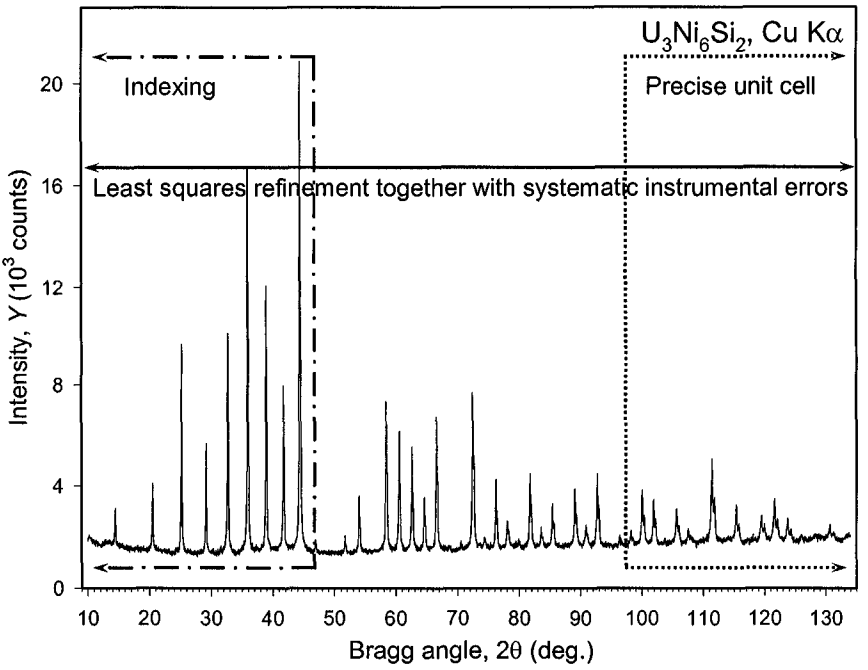


Figure 5.23. The x-ray powder diffraction pattern of $U_3Ni_6Si_2$ (also see *Figure 5.10*), schematically illustrating regions, which are critical for successful indexing and precise unit cell dimensions. The boundaries of both the low and high Bragg angle regions are diffuse and they vary from one pattern to another.

5.15 Additional reading

1. P.-E. Werner, Autoindexing, in: : Structure determination from powder diffraction data. IUCr monographs on crystallography 13. W. I. F. David, K. Shankland, L.B. McCusker, and Ch. Baerlocher, Eds., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (2002).

2. H. Lipson and H. Steeple, Interpretation of x-ray powder diffraction patterns, MacMillan, London (1970).

3. P.-E. Werner, L. Eriksson and M. Westdahl, A semi-exhaustive trial-and-error powder indexing program for all symmetries, J. Appl. Cryst. **18**, 367 (1985).

4. A. Boutlif and D. Louër, Indexing of powder diffraction patterns for low symmetry lattices by the successive dichotomy method, J. Appl. Cryst. **24**, 987 (1991).

5. J.W. Visser, A fully automatic program for finding the unit cell from powder data, J. Appl. Cryst. **2**, 89 (1969).

6. E. Prince and P.T. Boggs, Least squares, in: International Tables for Crystallography, Vol. C, Second edition, Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston/Dordrecht/London, p.672 (1999) and references therein.

5.16 Problems

Answers to all problems listed below are located in the file Chapter-5-Problems-Solutions.pdf on the CD accompanying this book.

1. Consider the x-ray powder diffraction pattern of $LaNi_{11.6}Ge_{1.4}$ shown in *Figure 5.24* and found in the file **Ch5Pr01_CuKa.xy** on the CD. A total of 27 individual Bragg peaks are measurable up to $2\theta = 91°$. They are listed in *Table 5.26* and also found in the file **Ch5Pr01_CuKa.pks** on the CD. Peak positions, intensities, and full widths at half maximum have been determined using a profile fitting procedure. The observed Bragg angles are listed for the $K\alpha_1$ component in the doublet, $\lambda = 1.540593$ Å.

a) Using a spreadsheet perform indexing of the powder diffraction pattern assuming cubic crystal system.

b) Analyze the combinations of Miller indices of the observed reflections, and determine possible space groups of the material.

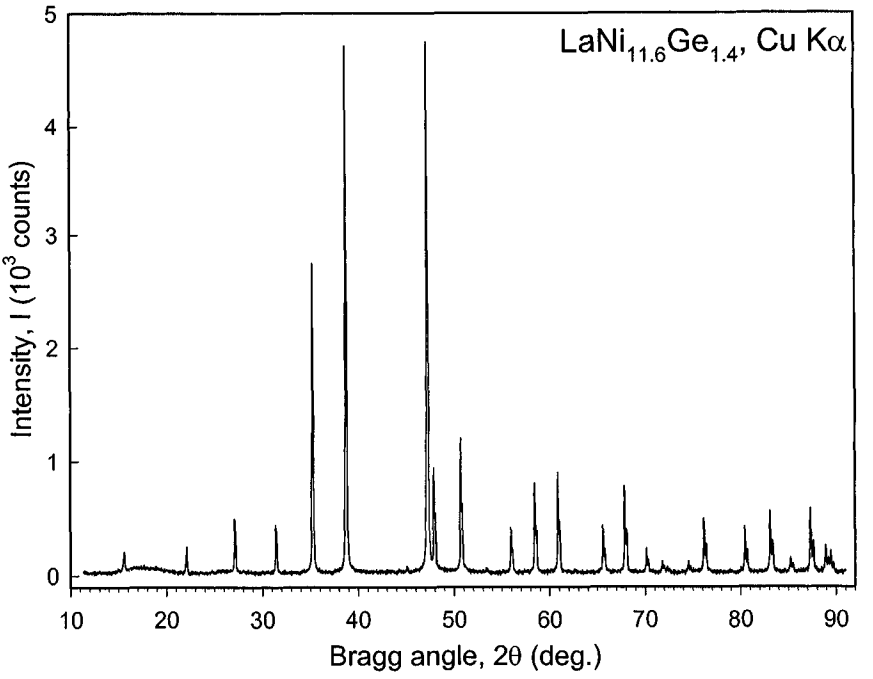


Figure 5.24. The x-ray powder diffraction pattern of $LaNi_{11.6}Ge_{1.4}$ collected on an HZG-4a powder diffractometer using Cu Kα radiation. Numerical data are available in the file **Ch5Pr01_CuKa.xy** on the CD. (Data courtesy of Dr. L.G. Akselrud.)

Table 5.26. Relative integrated intensities (I/I_0), Bragg angles and full widths at half maximum (FWHM) of Bragg peaks observed in the $LaNi_{11.6}Ge_{1.4}$ powder diffraction pattern collected using Cu K_α radiation in the range $11 \leq 2\theta \leq 91°$ (see *Figure 5.24*).

I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)	I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)
33	15.561	0.165	47	70.133	0.119
31	22.099	0.128	25	71.796	0.130
87	27.131	0.122	11	72.343	0.118
80	31.423	0.116	23	74.542	0.119
487	35.255	0.104	127	76.172	0.132
847	38.745	0.100	4	76.691	0.132
1000	47.232	0.114	3	78.887	0.132
191	47.945	0.114	97	80.467	0.128
228	50.716	0.105	147	83.114	0.141
86	55.950	0.116	32	85.233	0.138
172	58.455	0.117	158	87.336	0.151
194	60.890	0.118	65	88.909	0.157
90	65.596	0.113	45	89.434	0.137
172	67.882	0.118			

[a] Bragg angles are listed for the location of the $K\alpha_1$ component in the doublet, $\lambda = 1.540593$ Å.

c) Using the average value of the lattice parameter calculate both F_N and M_{20} figures of merit for your indexing result. Is the determined unit cell realistic?

d) Perform least squares refinement of the unit cell parameter using Eq. 5.39 and a spreadsheet (do not use any freely or commercially available software). Note, that the normal equation matrix for the case of a single parameter is a single number.

2. Consider the x-ray powder diffraction pattern of $CeRhGe_3$ shown in *Figure 5.25* and found in the file **Ch5Pr02_MoKa.xy** on the CD. A total of 55 individual Bragg peaks are measurable up to $2\theta = 46.5°$ and these are listed in *Table 5.27* and also found in the file **Ch5Pr01_MoKa.pks** on the CD. Peak positions, intensities, and full widths at half maximum have been determined using a profile fitting procedure. The observed Bragg angles are listed for the $K\alpha_1$ component in the doublet, $\lambda = 0.709317$ Å.

a) Using TREOR, ITO and DICVOL perform indexing of the powder diffraction pattern. Make sure that you obtain a solution in each of the three programs.

b) Analyze the combinations of Miller indices of the observed Bragg reflections and determine possible space groups describing symmetry of the material.

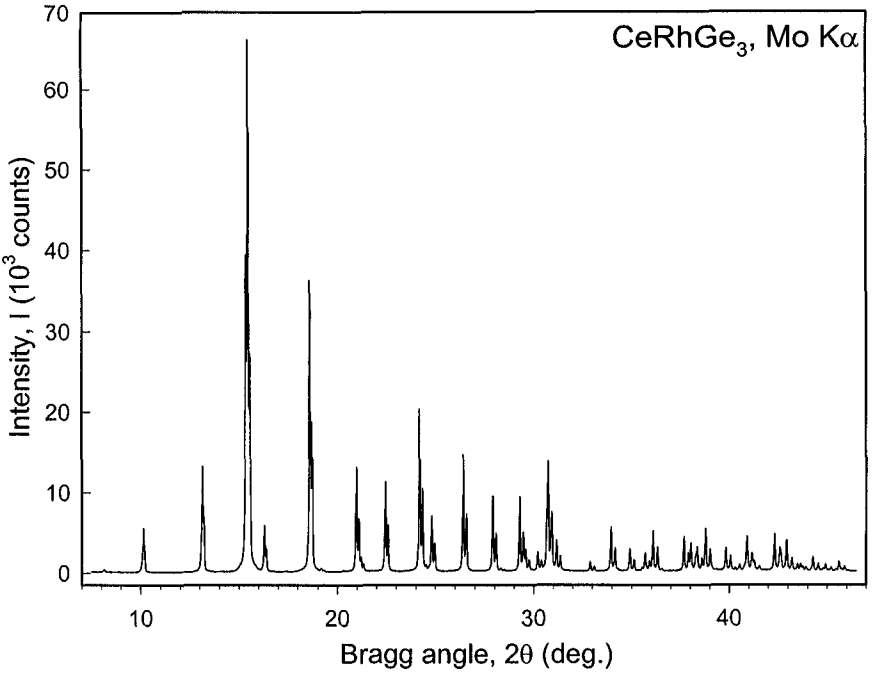


Figure 5.25. The x-ray powder diffraction pattern of $CeRhGe_3$ collected on a Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode powder diffractometer using Mo Kα radiation. Numerical data are available in the file **Ch5Pr02_MoKa.xy** on the CD.

c) Perform least squares refinement of the unit cell dimensions using all available data without refining any kind of a systematic error.[1] Analyze the differences between the observed and calculated 2θ and decide whether the refinement of a zero shift or sample displacement error is warranted. If it is, refine lattice parameters together with a zero shift or sample displacement error.

3. Consider the x-ray powder diffraction pattern of $SrSi_2$ shown in *Figure 5.26* and found in the file **Ch5Pr03_MoKa.xy** on the CD. A total of 20 individual Bragg peaks are measurable up to $2\theta = 33°$. They are listed in *Table 5.28* and also found in the file **Ch5Pr03_MoKa.pks** on the CD. Peak positions, intensities, and full widths at half maximum have been determined using a profile fitting procedure. The observed Bragg angles are listed for the $K\alpha_1$ component in the doublet, $\lambda = 0.709317$ Å.

[1] If you do not have a preferred least squares refinement software you may download multiple programs through IUCr or CCP14 Web sites at http://www.iucr.org or http://www.ccp14.ac.uk, respectively. One of the simplest to use program, which also enables one to refine a zero shift parameter, is the UNITCELL.

a) Conduct *ab initio* indexing of the powder diffraction pattern manually, i.e. using a spreadsheet rather than any kind of crystallographic software. Compute the F_N and M_{20} figures of merit and discuss both the probability of the determined unit cell and the accuracy of the observed Bragg angles.

b) Now, perform the indexing of the same pattern using TREOR, ITO and DICVOL. Make sure that you obtain a solution in each of the three programs.

c) Analyze the combinations of Miller indices of the observed reflections and determine possible space groups, which characterize the symmetry of the material.

Table 5.27. Relative integrated intensities (I/I_0), Bragg angles and full widths at half maximum (FWHM) of Bragg peaks observed in the $CeRhGe_3$ powder diffraction pattern collected using Mo Kα radiation in the range $7.5 \leq 2\theta \leq 46.5°$ (see *Figure 5.25*).

I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)	I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)
5	8.100	0.091	9	35.507	0.071
110	10.091	0.073	49	35.654	0.071
270	13.086	0.068	112	36.055	0.070
789	15.303	0.070	10	36.288	0.078
1000	15.413	0.064	92	37.633	0.067
115	16.245	0.065	81	37.997	0.073
774	18.555	0.069	63	38.316	0.070
4	20.283	0.065	129	38.737	0.074
269	20.928	0.065	4	39.060	0.061
32	21.172	0.065	64	39.776	0.070
227	22.399	0.064	10	40.005	0.061
418	24.143	0.065	14	40.483	0.071
13	24.483	0.085	81	40.848	0.078
157	24.766	0.073	41	40.888	0.071
303	26.362	0.066	23	41.236	0.072
206	27.866	0.071	1	41.379	0.074
5	28.296	0.058	113	42.270	0.074
200	29.249	0.067	47	42.599	0.082
60	29.547	0.075	77	42.893	0.075
54	30.167	0.075	20	43.446	0.076
87	30.625	0.069	22	43.606	0.081
301	30.682	0.074	43	44.232	0.074
18	30.905	0.070	6	44.758	0.072
76	31.129	0.068	20	44.883	0.073
24	32.844	0.070	5	45.413	0.080
120	33.905	0.068	31	45.573	0.078
9	34.057	0.090	4	45.721	0.087
66	34.872	0.072			

[a] Bragg angles are listed for the location of the $K\alpha_1$ component in the doublet, $\lambda = 0.709317$ Å.

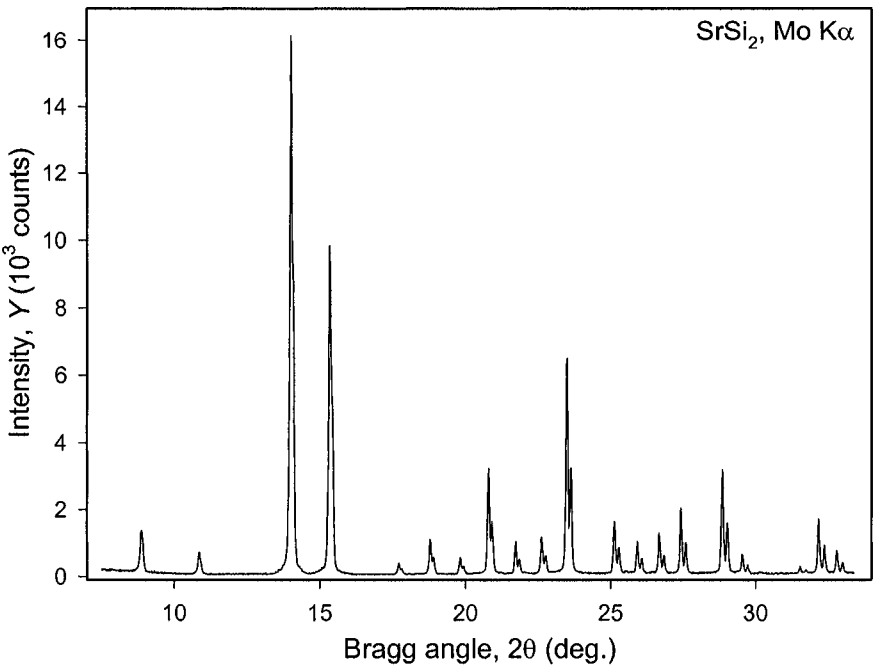


Figure 5.26. The x-ray powder diffraction pattern of $SrSi_2$ collected on a Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode powder diffractometer using Mo Kα radiation. Numerical data are available in the file **Ch5Pr03_MoKa.xy** on the CD.

Table 5.28. Relative integrated intensities (I/I_0), Bragg angles and full widths at half maximum (FWHM) of Bragg peaks observed in the powder diffraction pattern of $SrSi_2$ collected using Mo Kα radiation in the range $8 \leq 2\theta \leq 33°$ (see *Figure 5.26*).

I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)	I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)
80	8.872	0.091	396	23.484	0.079
38	10.851	0.080	101	25.128	0.084
1000	13.999	0.080	57	25.912	0.080
626	15.337	0.081	72	26.672	0.080
20	17.713	0.081	114	27.418	0.076
64	18.794	0.080	200	28.848	0.081
29	19.815	0.079	34	29.540	0.079
203	20.791	0.081	12	31.533	0.081
54	21.724	0.076	104	32.170	0.077
70	22.621	0.084	43	32.797	0.076

[a] Bragg angles are listed for the location of the Mo $K\alpha_1$ component in the doublet, $\lambda = 0.709317$ Å.

4. Consider the x-ray powder diffraction pattern of $Li_2Sn(OH)_6$ shown in *Figure 5.27* and found in the file **Ch5Pr04_CuKa.xy** on the CD. A total of 38 individual Bragg peaks are measurable up to $2\theta = 51°$ and these are listed in *Table 5.29*. The values in *Table 5.29* have been corrected for the sample displacement error. All 88 (uncorrected) peaks observed below $2\theta = 71°$ can be found in the file **Ch5Pr04_CuKa.pks** on the CD. Peak positions (listed for the $K\alpha_1$ component in the doublet, $\lambda = 1.540593$ Å), intensities, and full widths at half maximum have been determined using a profile fitting procedure.

   a) Using data from *Table 5.29* and TREOR, ITO and DICVOL, perform indexing of the powder diffraction pattern. Try to obtain solution in each of the three programs.

   b) Analyze the observed Miller indices and determine possible space groups of the material.

   c) Perform the least squares refinement of the unit cell dimensions using all available data (file **Ch5Pr04_CuKa.pks** on the CD) without refining any kind of a systematic error and then refine lattice parameters together with a zero shift or a sample displacement error.

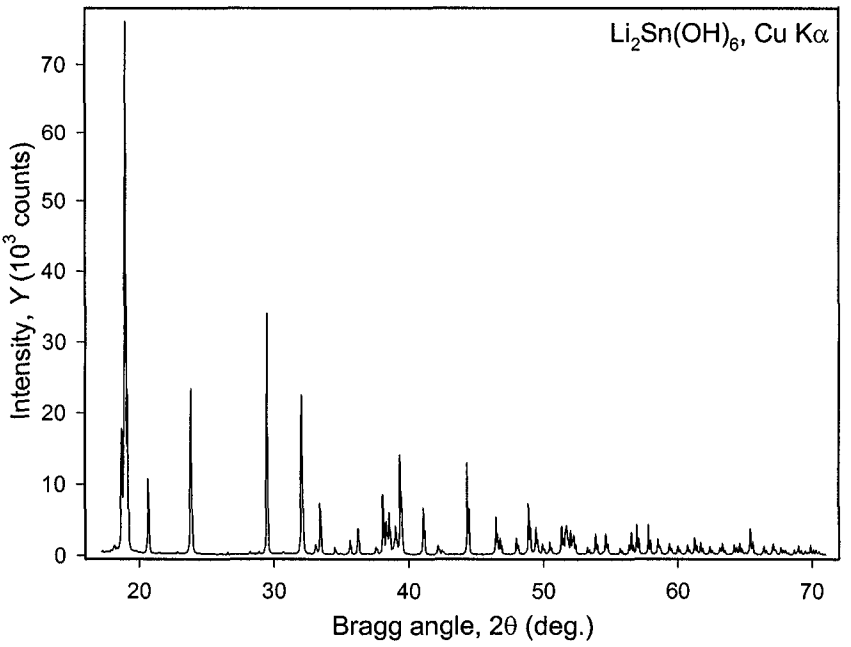


Figure 5.27. The x-ray powder diffraction pattern of $Li_2Sn(OH)_6$ collected on a Scintag XDS2000 powder diffractometer using CuKα radiation. Numerical data are available in the file **Ch5Pr04_CuKa.xy** on the CD.

Table 5.29. Relative integrated intensities (I/I_0), Bragg angles and full widths at half maximum (FWHM) of Bragg peaks observed in the powder diffraction pattern of $Li_2Sn(OH)_6$ collected using Cu Kα radiation in the range $18 \leq 2\theta \leq 51°$ (see *Figure 5.27*).

I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)	I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)
197	18.802	0.096	18	38.990	0.069
1000	19.041	0.108	47	39.070	0.069
288	19.213	0.107	193	39.428	0.069
150	20.740	0.090	29	39.503	0.069
337	23.916	0.083	96	41.137	0.075
1	25.361	0.083	1	41.721	0.075
344	29.541	0.054	19	42.211	0.075
334	32.114	0.074	3	42.565	0.075
18	33.143	0.074	1	43.545	0.075
103	33.478	0.074	7	42.508	0.075
12	34.576	0.074	158	44.405	0.063
1	34.980	0.074	79	46.520	0.076
28	35.689	0.074	33	46.825	0.076
55	36.275	0.074	36	48.045	0.076
16	37.620	0.069	106	48.948	0.076
105	38.141	0.069	3	49.132	0.076
63	38.375	0.069	64	49.489	0.076
83	38.589	0.069	23	49.981	0.076
9	38.845	0.069	26	50.517	0.076

[a] Bragg angles are listed for the location of the $CuK\alpha_1$ component in the doublet, $\lambda = 1.540593$ Å. Peak positions are already corrected for the sample shift -0.15 mm assuming goniometer radius of 250 mm.

5. Consider the x-ray powder diffraction pattern of $tea_2Mo_6O_{19}$ (*tea* is tetraethylammonium, $[N(C_2H_5)_4]^+$), which is shown in *Figure 5.28* and found in the file **Ch5Pr05_CuKa.xy** on the CD. A total of 44 individual Bragg peaks are measurable up to $2\theta = 49.5°$ and these are listed in *Table 5.30* and also found in the file **Ch5Pr05_CuKa.pks** on the CD. Peak positions, intensities, and full widths at half maximum have been determined using a profile fitting procedure. The observed Bragg angles are listed for the $CuK\alpha_1$ component in the doublet, $\lambda = 1.540593$ Å.

   a) Using TREOR, ITO and DICVOL perform *ab initio* indexing of the powder diffraction pattern. Try to obtain solution in each of the three programs. Figure out a systematic error using different orders of the same reflections. *Indexing hint*: the unit cell is relatively large, therefore, increase maximum volume if no acceptable solution is found and use only 20 lowest Bragg angle peaks.

   b) Analyze the combinations of Miller indices of the observed Bragg reflections and determine possible space groups describing symmetry of the material.

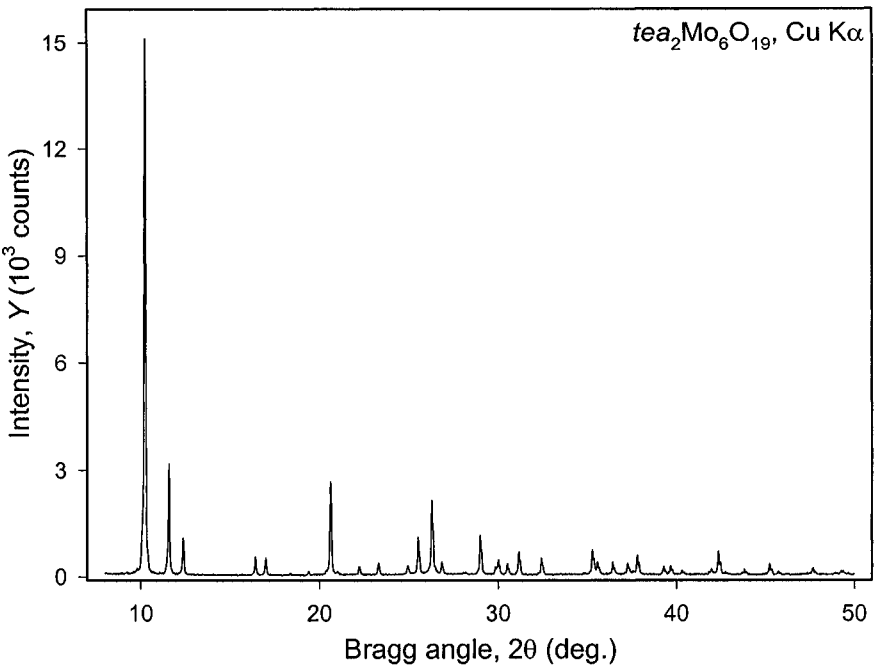


Figure 5.28. The x-ray powder diffraction pattern of $tea_2Mo_6O_{19}$ collected on a Scintag XDS2000 powder diffractometer using CuKα radiation. Numerical data are available in the file **Ch5Pr05_CuKa.xy** on the CD.

Table 5.30. Relative integrated intensities (I/I_0), Bragg angles and full widths at half maximum (FWHM) of Bragg peaks observed in the $tea_2Mo_6O_{19}$ powder diffraction pattern collected using Cu Kα radiation in the range $10 \leq 2\theta \leq 49.5°$ (see *Figure 5.28*).

I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)	I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)
1000	10.241	0.085	52	35.282	0.075
182	11.573	0.070	6	35.425	0.075
65	12.376	0.073	24	35.567	0.075
30	16.408	0.076	24	36.419	0.075
30	16.986	0.076	24	37.259	0.075
4	19.393	0.050	4	37.531	0.075
163	20.615	0.074	41	37.798	0.075
14	22.217	0.074	16	39.282	0.071
20	23.297	0.074	19	39.667	0.071
17	24.933	0.074	8	40.316	0.071
73	25.523	0.074	5	41.842	0.082
155	26.286	0.074	9	41.972	0.082
6	26.479	0.074	55	42.355	0.082
22	26.851	0.074	4	42.747	0.082
3	28.138	0.074	3	43.698	0.082
78	28.991	0.074	9	43.824	0.082

I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)	I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)
13	29.842	0.074	24	45.242	0.081
28	30.004	0.074	6	45.725	0.081
20	30.508	0.074	15	47.671	0.081
45	31.153	0.074	3	48.911	0.081
32	32.427	0.074	7	49.244	0.081
2	34.830	0.075	5	49.357	0.081

[a] Bragg angles are listed for the location of the $CuK\alpha_1$ component in the doublet, $\lambda = 1.540593$ Å.

c) Perform least squares refinement of the unit cell dimensions using all available data without refining any kind of a systematic error. Analyze the differences between the observed and calculated 2θ and decide whether the refinement of zero shift or sample displacement error is warranted. If it is, refine lattice parameters together with a zero shift or a sample displacement error.

6. Consider the x-ray powder diffraction pattern of MnV_2O_5 shown in *Figure 5.29* and found in the file **Ch5Pr06_CuKa.xy** on the CD. A total of 53 individual Bragg peaks are measurable up to $2\theta = 62°$ and these are listed in *Table 5.31* and also found in the file **Ch5Pr06_CuKa.pks** on the CD. Peak positions, intensities, and full widths at half maximum have been determined using a profile fitting procedure. The observed Bragg angles are listed for the $K\alpha_1$ component in the doublet, $\lambda = 1.540593$ Å.

a) Using TREOR, ITO and DICVOL perform *ab initio* indexing of the powder diffraction pattern. Try to obtain solution in each of the three programs.

b) Analyze the combinations of Miller indices of all observed Bragg reflections and determine possible space groups describing symmetry of the material.

c) Perform least squares refinement of the unit cell dimensions using all available data without refining any kind of a systematic error. Analyze the differences between the observed and calculated 2θ and decide whether the data are affected by a zero shift or a sample displacement error. If a systematic error is substantial, refine lattice parameters together with a zero shift or a sample displacement error.

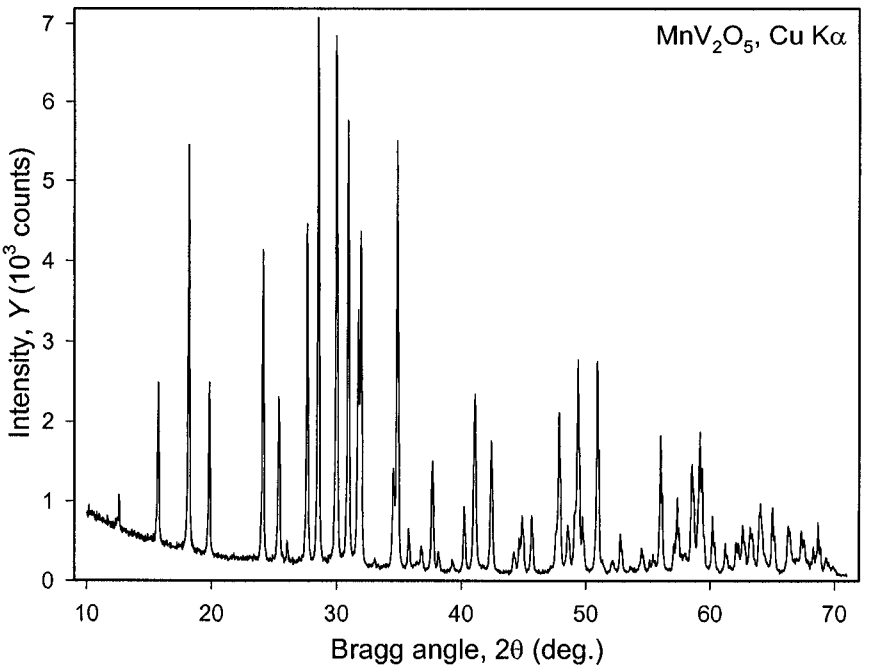


Figure 5.29. The x-ray powder diffraction pattern of MnV_2O_5 collected on a Scintag XDS2000 powder diffractometer using CuKα radiation. Numerical data are available in the file **Ch5Pr06_CuKa.xy** on the CD.

Table 5.31. Relative integrated intensities (I/I_0), Bragg angles and full widths at half maximum (FWHM) of Bragg peaks observed in the MnV_2O_5 powder diffraction pattern collected using Cu Kα radiation in the range $12 \leq 2\theta \leq 62°$ (see *Figure 5.29*).

I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)	I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)
36	12.595	0.062	82	47.584	0.123
261	15.710	0.124	363	47.828	0.123
681	18.152	0.113	107	48.546	0.123
281	19.801	0.109	125	49.100	0.123
519	24.091	0.113	464	49.335	0.123
307	25.367	0.113	106	49.720	0.123
31	26.049	0.113	484	50.890	0.123
592	27.630	0.113	10	51.336	0.123
1000	28.520	0.113	28	52.091	0.123
988	29.972	0.113	88	52.774	0.123
829	30.912	0.113	13	53.593	0.123
443	31.715	0.113	51	54.474	0.123
578	31.935	0.113	23	55.132	0.123
172	34.542	0.111	29	55.407	0.123
786	34.856	0.111	320	55.983	0.123
78	35.778	0.111	63	57.063	0.131

I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)	I/I_0	2θ (deg)[a]	FWHM (deg)
51	36.788	0.111	182	57.339	0.131
229	37.673	0.111	35	57.698	0.131
34	38.157	0.111	41	57.965	0.131
27	39.268	0.152	325	58.526	0.131
136	40.215	0.152	116	59.021	0.131
456	41.035	0.152	296	59.156	0.131
314	42.378	0.152	124	59.367	0.131
40	44.182	0.126	148	60.186	0.131
63	44.630	0.126	78	61.212	0.131
123	44.877	0.126	15	61.610	0.131
123	45.631	0.126			

[a] Bragg angles are listed for the location of the $CuK\alpha_1$ component in the doublet, $\lambda = 1.540593$ Å.

Chapter 6

CRYSTAL STRUCTURE SOLUTION

6.1 Introduction

Assuming that both the crystal system, i.e. the "powder" Laue class, and lattice parameters of a material have been established, the next step to be undertaken is the solution of its crystal structure to find the distribution of atoms in the unit cell. The problem is generally far from trivial and many structure solutions in powder diffraction remain unique, yet all of them have much in common because they connect reciprocal and direct spaces, i.e. a powder pattern and a distribution of the electron or nuclear density in a crystal lattice. Although traveling a structure determination path in a powder diffraction vehicle is nothing like cruising down an interstate in a latest model Cadillac, knowing where to enter, how to proceed, and where and when to exit is equally vital. Familiarity with crystallographic features of related materials along with basic chemical and physical properties of the material in question, such as probable oxidation and coordination states of atoms together with the expected shortest interatomic distances is highly desirable and, in some instances, may be required to complete the journey.

Below we will examine some practical applications of the theory of kinematical diffraction to solving crystal structures from powder diffraction data. When considering several rational examples in reciprocal space, we shall implicitly assume that the crystal structure of each sample is unknown and that it must be solved based solely on the information that can be obtained directly from a powder diffraction experiment and from a few other, quite basic properties of a polycrystalline material. The solution of a number of crystal structures in direct space will be based on the previously known structural data and supported by the results of powder diffraction analysis, such as unit cell dimensions and symmetry.

6.2 *Ab initio* methods of structure solution

The crystal structure solving process (*Figure 6.1*) usually begins with analyzing systematic absences to find the space group symmetry of a material or at least to identify all probable space groups, if the corresponding diffraction class combines more than one group (see sections 2.12.3 and 2.12.4). The next step requires determining the content of the unit cell, i.e. one must establish or estimate how many atoms of each kind, molecules or groups of atoms are expected to be present in one unit cell. In some cases, it is possible to narrow the space group selection based on this simple information, especially when the multiplicities of the site positions are high (e.g. in high symmetry groups) and a site with the lowest multiplicity still places more atoms of a given type than necessary inside the unit cell.

Once the content of the unit cell has been established, a model of the crystal structure should be created using either direct or reciprocal space techniques, or a combination of both. Direct space approaches do not mandate immediate use of the observed integrated intensities, while reciprocal space methods are based on them.

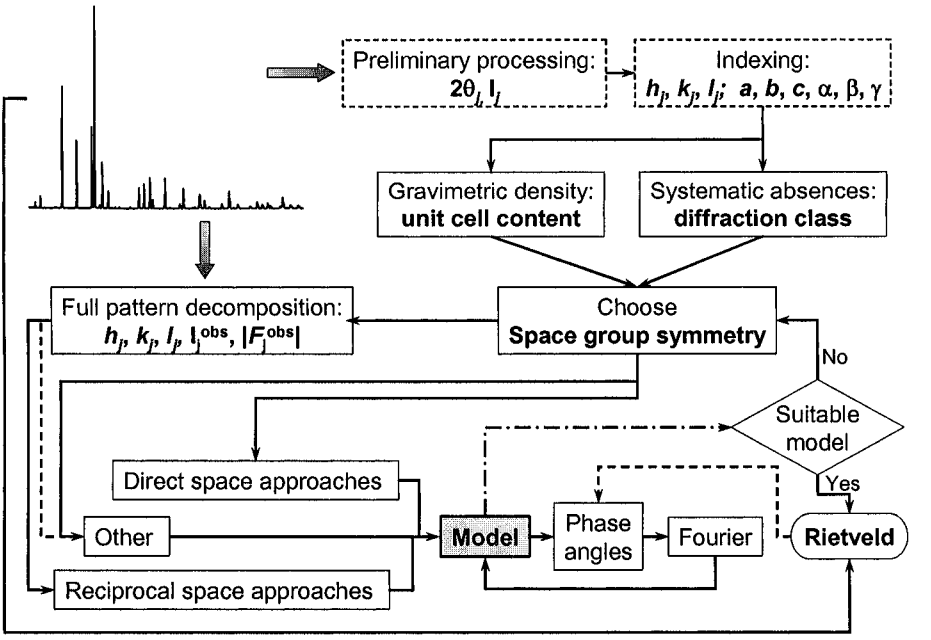


Figure 6.1. The flowchart illustrating crystal structure determination from powder diffraction data. Preliminary processing and indexing are described in Chapters 4 and 5, respectively, and have been assumed accomplished at an earlier stage. Structure completion and Rietveld refinement are described in Chapter 7.

6.2.1 Conventional reciprocal space techniques

In any of the reciprocal space methods, which are based exclusively on the use of the observed structure factors, the powder diffraction pattern must be deconvoluted and the integrated intensities of all, or as many as possible, individual Bragg reflections determined with a maximum precision. Only then, Patterson or direct phase angle determination techniques may be employed to create a partial or compete structural model. Theoretical background supporting these two methods was reviewed in section 2.14.

The Patterson technique is often called the heavy atom method because it works best when a few atoms in the unit cell are markedly heavier than the others and, therefore, have much stronger scattering ability in x-ray diffraction. Squared structure amplitudes are employed as coefficients in the Fourier transformation, and the resulting Patterson map yields a distribution of the interatomic vectors in the unit cell. A structure model is then obtained in direct space by analyzing the Patterson function. Direct phase determination methods are based on generating probable phases that were lost during the diffraction experiment. Observed structure amplitudes, which have been normalized, are employed together with computed phases in the Fourier transformation yielding the so-called E-maps, which contain direct images of the electron density distribution, where maxima correspond to positions of atoms in the unit cell.

Currently, Patterson and direct methods are the most frequently employed "classical" structure solution approaches. The direct phase determination methods are especially successful in solving structures from single crystal data, but their use in powder diffraction increases progressively as the quality of powder data improves, better deconvolution techniques are developed and more precise individual structure factors become available.

6.2.2 Conventional direct space techniques

As an example of a direct space approach, consider a material, which is an intermetallic compound. Many intermetallics form series of closely related structures, the so-called isostructural compounds, where the coordinates of atoms in the unit cell remain nearly identical and only the distribution of different kinds of atoms varies among available crystallographic sites. If this is the case, then the crystal structure may be solved *via* a comparison with known structure types, by searching for matching symmetry, lattice centering, unit cell contents including chemical similarity of the components, and analogous relationships among the unit cell dimensions. Another example is an organic compound with the well-know configuration of its molecule. In some cases it may be relatively easy

to model the packing of the identical molecules in the unit cell, and perhaps, optimize their positions, orientations and, if required, conformations by using energy minimization or other principles.

There are many ways to build a model of the crystal structure of a polycrystalline material without first using the intensities of individual Bragg reflections, which are hidden in powder diffraction due to partial or complete overlapping. Most of the direct space approaches are, in effect, trial-and-error methods and they include some or all of the following components:

- Obtaining a structural model from the analysis of potentially isostructural compounds with partially or completely different chemical composition but identical or similar stoichiometry. The search for isostructural compounds may be conducted using a digitized powder pattern, unit cell dimensions, stoichiometry, and/or other suitable parameters.[1]
- Obtaining a partial structural model from known similar or closely related compounds, e.g. those with an identical framework or layers. Similar structures are usually found from close relationships among all or some unit cell dimensions. For example, layered intercalates with the same type of the host layer should have two similar unit cell dimensions.
- In the case of simple structures or known building blocks, geometrical modeling of a trial structure or several possible structures can be performed (e.g. modeling of zeolites from polyhedra or building blocks that are more complex). The resulting model may be further optimized or immediately tested by using powder diffraction data.
- Direct space modeling may be an especially powerful tool in the case of intermetallic and related structures, many of which are derived from close packing of incompressible spheres. Thus, when positions of large atoms in the unit cell are known, the smaller atoms will likely occupy voids of sufficient size.

Obviously, trial-and-error techniques require some, and often extensive, chemical, crystallographic and physical knowledge about a specific class of materials in addition to the availability of a structural database and some experience in structural analysis.

6.2.3 Unconventional reciprocal and direct space strategies

No matter how advanced, every numerical data processing technique has intrinsic limitations, especially when the complexity of the data increases or when the required information is partially missing, as for example in single crystal diffraction from macromolecules and proteins or in powder

[1] Five examples of using the ICSD database in solving crystal structure form powder diffraction data by structural analogy are discussed in: J.A. Kaduk, Use of the Inorganic Crystal Structure Database as a problem solving tool, Acta Cryst. **B58**, 370 (2002).

diffraction from conventional materials when the unit cell volume is large and/or when the symmetry is low. Poor crystallinity and an excess of weakly scattering elements in macromolecular compounds on one side and heavy Bragg reflections overlaps on the other, affect both the quality and quantity of the available diffraction data and, therefore, cause problems in both cases that are similar in many ways. As a result, the conventional phase angle determination methods may become, and often turn out to be ineffective.

Therefore, novel techniques potentially applicable to solving crystal structures are under continuous testing and development. A recent collective monograph on the structure determination from powder diffraction data provides an excellent discussion of the problem and introduces different approaches that may be used in its solution.[1] In this chapter, unconventional structure solution methods are only briefly reviewed: most of them are still controversial and do not always work well with different kinds of compounds and data, although solutions of several complex structures have been demonstrated. Summarized below are the genetic algorithm, maximum entropy, maximum likelihood, and simulated annealing methods.

Genetic algorithm is the direct space optimization method based on the evolution principle, in which only the members that fit best into the environment survive. The improved subsequent generation is obtained by considering the current state of a complex system and events that are equivalent to mating, mutation and natural selection. In powder diffraction, the fit is defined as profile residual, R_P (see section 6.7). The system, represented by a crystal structure, is split into fragments; each "survives" or "dies" depending on how it affects the fit. In addition to structure solution,[2] this method can be, and has been applied to unit cell determination from powder data.[3] Another example is application of the genetic algorithm method to solving protein structures by deconvoluting a Patterson function.[4]

Maximum entropy method is a powerful numerical technique, which is based on Bayesian estimation theory and is often applied to derive the most

[1] Structure determination from powder diffraction data. IUCr monographs on crystallography 13. W. I. F. David, K. Shankland, L.B. McCusker, and Ch. Baerlocher, Eds., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (2002).

[2] K.D.M. Harris, R.L. Johnston and B.M. Kariuki, The genetic algorithm: Foundations and applications in structure solution from powder diffraction data, Acta Cryst. **A54**, 632 (1998); K. Shankland, B. David, and T. Csoka, Crystal structure determination from powder diffraction data by the application of a genetic algorithm, Z. Kristallogr. **212**, 550 (1997).

[3] B.M. Kariuki, S.A. Belmonte, M.I. McMahon, R.L. Johnston, K.D.M. Harris, and R.J. Nelmes, A new approach for indexing powder diffraction data based on whole-profile fitting and global optimization using a genetic algorithm, J. Synchrotron Rad. **6**, 87 (1999).

[4] G. Chang and M. Lewis, Using genetic algorithms for solving heavy-atom sites, Acta Cryst. **D50**, 667 (1994).

probable values of missing data. For example, rolling a dice with six faces numbered 1 through 6 gives equal probability to see each face up, $p_i = 1/6$, assuming a completely random distribution. In this case, the average value of multiple observations is (1+2+3+4+5+6)/6 = 3.5. The problem is in finding the probability of events (faces up) when the distribution is not random and only the average is known, e.g. when the average is 2.5. The maximum entropy method results in the highest unbiased unique probability of events (e.g. faces up in the case of a dice) using the entropy function, $\Sigma p_i \log p_i$. This method, similar to the genetic algorithm approach, finds applications in various fields of scientific analysis, especially in image processing and reconstruction.[1] In powder diffraction, the maximum entropy technique can be and is successfully employed both to restore the lost phase angles[2] and to determine the relative intensities of the overlapped reflections.[3] Crystal structure determination using the maximum entropy approach results in solving the phase problem and therefore, it is a reciprocal space method.

Maximum likelihood method, similar to maximum entropy, works in reciprocal space and results in finding a raw model that has the best chance to be improved by applying small steps to achieve full agreement between the observed and calculated structure amplitudes,[4] rather than the final structure. Maximum likelihood and maximum entropy techniques are often combined together.[3,5]

Various energy minimization methods that work in direct space may be employed in order to optimize positions, orientations and conformations of molecules or structural fragments. The problem is the presence of multiple local minima on the way to a global minimum of energy that requires an initial structure model to be in the range of the global minimum, thus making the search for the lowest energy exceedingly slow. Different approaches and optimization functions may be employed to speed up the process. Typically, the potential energy of a system is used in combination with some other criteria. Thus, the **simulated annealing** method is used to explore local minima quickly by generating multiple trial models using Monte Carlo or

[1] Examples of image processing can be found at http://www.maxent.co.uk/examples.htm.

[2] C.J. Gilmore, Maximum entropy and Bayesian statistics in crystallography: a review of practical applications, Acta Cryst. **A52**, 561 (1996).

[3] W. Dong and C.J. Gilmore, The *ab initio* solution of structures from powder diffraction data: the use of maximum entropy and likelihood to determine the relative amplitudes of overlapped reflections using the pseudophase concept, Acta Cryst. **A54**, 438 (1998).

[4] A.J. Markvardsen, W.I.F. David, and K. Shankland, A maximum-likelihood method for global-optimization-based structure determination from powder diffraction data, Acta Cryst. **A58**, 316 (2002).

[5] G. Bricogne, A multisolution method of phase determination by combined maximization of entropy and likelihood. III. Extension to powder diffraction data, Acta Cryst. **A47**, 803 (1991).

grid search methods. Simulated annealing resembles the physical process of annealing by virtually heating a sample to a certain temperature, and it includes several control parameters defining the search of the global minimum that are analogous to the real annealing process. They are the initial temperature, the rate of its decrease and the magnitude of random atomic jumps. The initial temperature should be set high, somewhere near the melting point; if it is too low, no changes occur or they occur very slowly and when it is too high, the structure may "melt" and become amorphous.[1]

It is worth noting that practically all non-traditional methods for solving crystal structures have been initially developed for both powder and single crystal diffraction data to manage intrinsic incompleteness or poor quality that cannot be improved experimentally. Despite a variety of structure solution approaches, traditional direct phase determination methods appear to be the most common and successful when powder diffraction data are adequate.[2] Patterson methods also work quite well but they require the presence of a heavy atom and, perhaps, more extensive crystallographic expertise. The non-traditional methods are generally employed when other techniques fail and their use is somewhat restricted by both the complexity and limited availability of computer codes.

6.2.4 Validation and completion of the model

Regardless of how the model was created it must be validated and/or completed by computing the electron or nuclear (if neutron diffraction data are available) density distribution(s) in the unit cell to confirm the placement of known atoms and locate missing atoms, if any (see sections 2.13 and 2.14). The observed structure factors and, therefore, intensities of individual Bragg peaks are required at this stage of the structure solution process. Fourier map calculations may be repeated several times using observed structure amplitudes and calculated phase angles that have been refined by including additional atoms found from previous distributions of electron (nuclear) densities and by modifying the coordinates of the existing atoms to match those of the corresponding peaks on the Fourier maps.

A crystal structure solution does not end with the development of a plausible model: after the model has been built completely,[3] multiple structural and profile parameters should be refined to achieve the best

[1] A.A. Coelho, Whole-profile structure solution from powder diffraction data using simulated annealing, J. Appl. Cryst. **33**, 899 (2000).

[2] C. Giacovazzo, Direct methods and powder data: state of the art and perspectives, Acta Cryst. **A52**, 331 (1996).

[3] Especially when powder data are complex, it may be necessary to use Rietveld technique to re-determine individual intensities before all structural details can be established using Fourier or differential Fourier maps.

possible agreement between the observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns or, in other words, between the crystal structure and the observed reciprocal space image. At the same time, the crystal structure should make both chemical (e.g. oxidation states, charge balance, valence, coordination, etc.) and physical (e.g. interatomic distances, valence and torsion angles, coordination polyhedra, etc.) sense. Rietveld refinement employing powder diffraction data, which will be considered in the next chapter, is an important step in both the validation and completion of the model.

6.3 The content of the unit cell

Consider *Figure 6.2*, which illustrates the crystal structure of elemental copper. If the lattice parameters are known, so is the volume of its unit cell. Furthermore, if we know the total number of atoms located in this or any other unit cell, it is easy to calculate the gravimetric density of a material by dividing the mass of all atoms located in one unit cell by its volume.

The inverse calculation is also possible: the content of the unit cell may be determined from the known chemical composition, lattice parameters and density of a material. Assume that the total mass of all atoms located in one unit cell is m. Also, assume that the unit cell volume is V. The latter is known from diffraction analysis as soon as lattice parameters have been established (see Eq. 5.41) Thus, provided the gravimetric density (ρ) of the crystalline material has been measured, the mass of one unit cell can be easily calculated:

$$m = \rho V \tag{6.1}$$

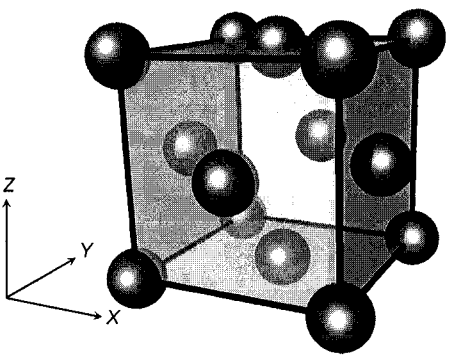


Figure 6.2. One unit cell in the crystal structure of elemental copper illustrating that a point located in a corner contributes 1/8 of an atom, and a point located on a face contributes 1/2 of an atom to the overall content of the unit cell. Similarly, a point located on an edge would contribute 1/4 of an atom. The overall content of this unit cell is $8\times1/8 + 6\times1/2 = 4$ Cu atoms.

It is usually the case that the chemical composition of a material is known as the stoichiometry of its molecule, or in general, as its formula unit. Molecular mass or formula unit mass, M, is given as

$$M = \sum_{j}^{n} x_j A_j \tag{6.2}$$

where n is the number of different atom types in a molecule or in a formula unit; x_j is the total number of atoms of type j, and A_j is the molar mass of atoms of type j. The number of molecules or formula units, Z, in the unit cell is, therefore, found from

$$\mathrm{Z} = \frac{m}{M} = \frac{\rho V}{M} \tag{6.3}$$

Equation 6.3 may be transformed into a more useful form, where the mass of the formula unit is given in a.m.u., the unit cell volume is in Å^3, and the density is in g/cm^3:

$$\mathrm{Z} = \frac{\rho V / 10^{24}}{M / 6.023 \times 10^{23}} = 0.6023 \frac{\rho V}{M} \tag{6.4}$$

For example, the experimentally measured density of copper is 8.92 g/cm^3, the unit cell dimension of its cubic unit cell is a = 3.615 Å, and the molecular mass of a formula unit is 63.55 a.m.u., which is the molar mass of copper, one atom per formula unit. Thus, Eq. 6.4 results in Z = 3.99 ≅ 4 atoms per unit cell. The same equation may be used to calculate the density of a material when its crystal structure has been established. It is worth noting that the computed value of the material's gravimetric density is known as the x-ray density, and it is usually slightly higher than the measured density because real materials always have some defects and porosity that are not accounted in Eq. 6.4.

This method of calculating the contents of the unit cell requires experimentally measured density,[1] which is not always available.

[1] The two methods, most commonly used to measure gravimetric density, are pycnometric and flotation. In a pycnometric technique, the volume of the material is determined from the volume of a fluid displaced by the known mass of a material. In a flotation approach, a small particle, which can be a single crystal, is placed in a low-density fluid, where it

Nonetheless, even when the gravimetric density cannot be measured, Eq. 6.4 still can be used, especially when the chemical composition of the material is known precisely or when working with molecular compounds. In these cases, Z can be estimated from restrictions imposed by symmetry and from approximately known range of densities for a specific class of compounds. For example, Eq. 6.4 is easily rearranged as

$$\rho = 1.66\frac{ZM}{V} = 1.66\frac{nzM}{V} \tag{6.5}$$

where n is the minimum number of molecules per unit cell, which is usually the multiplicity of a general site position[1] and z is a variable integer, which corresponds to the number of molecules with mass M in the asymmetric (1/n-th) part of the unit cell. For instance, in the space group $P2_1/m$, n = 4, and by varying z, the acceptable value of density ρ can be achieved.

Consider tetraphenylphosphonium (TPP) tetravanadate, which crystallizes in the monoclinic crystal system in the space group $P2_1/c$. Its unit cell volume is V = 6806.6(6) Å^3. The molecular weight of $[(C_6H_5)_4P]_2V_4O_{11}$ is 1058.55 a.m.u. The density range for this class of compounds (not the easiest case but certainly a good example) may be estimated between 1.2 and 1.6 g/cm^3 given the presence of both the metal oxide core and large organic molecule. The multiplicity of the general site position in this space group is 4. The V_4O_{11} unit, however, can be centrosymmetric because it has four V and ten O atoms plus an additional O atom that can be located in the center of inversion, and there are two TPP molecules in the formula unit. Therefore, a minimum multiplier for the number of molecules per unit cell (n) should be set to 4/2 = 2. We now consider densities while varying z. When z = 1 and z = 2 the densities are 0.516 and 1.033 g/cm^3, respectively, which are too low. When z = 4, the density is 2.065 g/cm^3, which is too high. Therefore, z = 3 is the only possibility left and it results in the density of 1.549 g/cm^3. The latter value falls into the expected range, so the resulting total number of the formula units in the unit cell Z = nz = 6. Considering that the multiplicity of the general site is 4, there are 1.5 formula units in the asymmetric part of the

---

sinks. A high-density fluid is then slowly added until neutral buoyancy of the particle is reached. The gravimetric density of the particle is then determined from the density of the mixture of two fluids, provided their amounts are known. Obviously, the two fluids should form an ideal solution, i.e. volume effects of mixing should be negligible.

[1] In general, n in Eq. 6.5 can be the multiplicity of a general or any special position or their sum. The latter makes it complicated, but still keeps the solution integer with respect to z. Note that symmetry of any special position and the molecule should agree; furthermore, some special positions, i.e. those at the center of inversion where all three coordinates are fixed, can be occupied by only one atom.

unit cell. Thus, there should be 3 TPP ions in the general position, while the vanadate molecules (V_4O_{11}) may occupy 1 general and 1 special, or 3 special positions, where special positions are such that one of the O atoms are located in the centers of inversion.

6.4 Pearson's classification

As noted in section 6.2, when the material of interest is an intermetallic alloy, the solution of its crystal structure may be simplified because intermetallics often form series of isostructural compounds. In contrast to conventional inorganic and molecular compounds, stoichiometries of the majority of intermetallic phases are not restricted by "normal" valence and oxidation states of atoms and ions; therefore, crystal structures of metallic alloy phases are conveniently coded using the classification suggested by W.B. Pearson.[1] According to Pearson, each type of the crystal structure is assigned a specific code (symbol), which is constructed from three components as follows:

- The first position in a structure type symbol is occupied by a small letter designating the crystal system of the material: *c* for cubic, *t* for tetragonal, *h* for hexagonal, trigonal and rhombohedral, *o* for orthorhombic, *m* for monoclinic, and *a* for triclinic (anorthic).
- The second position in the symbol is occupied by a standard notation of Bravais lattice. Thus, the first two elements in the Pearson's symbol are letters and they classify all available alloy structures according to 14 Bravais lattices, as shown in *Table 6.1*.
- The third (and last) position in Pearson's symbols is occupied by the total number of atoms located in one unit cell of the compound.

For example, considering the crystal structure of copper, which has cubic face-centered lattice (*Figure 6.2*) and a total of 4 atoms in the unit cell, its Pearson's symbol is *c*F4. On the other hand, if the material has Pearson's symbol *o*I32, this means that its crystal structure is orthorhombic, and one body-centered unit cell contains a total of 32 atoms.

Pearson's classification is insensitive to both chemical compositions and stoichiometries of metallic alloys. It is quite useful because all known intermetallic crystal structures are grouped according to their structural symbols, which are quite simple. Thus, once the symmetry and the content of the unit cell of a new alloy phase have been established, it only makes sense to search for potentially isostructural compounds among those that have identical Pearson's symbols.

[1] W.B. Pearson, Handbook of lattice spacings and structures of metals, vol. 2, Pergamon Press, New York (1967); W.B. Pearson, The crystal chemistry and physics of metals and alloys, Wiley-Interscience, New York (1972).

Table 6.1. Pearson's symbols used to designate 14 types of Bravais lattices.

Crystal system	Bravais lattice	First two parts of Pearson's symbol
Cubic	Primitive, P	*c*P
	Body-centered, I	*c*I
	Face-centered, F	*c*F
Tetragonal	Primitive, P	*t*P
	Body-centered, I	*t*I
Hexagonal/Trigonal	Primitive, P	*h*P
Hexagonal/Rhombohedral	Rhombohedral, R	*h*R
Orthorhombic	Primitive, P	*o*P
	Base-centered, C	*o*C
	Body-centered, I	*o*I
	Face-centered, F	*o*F
Monoclinic	Primitive, P	*m*P
	Base-centered, C	*m*C
Triclinic (anorthic)	Primitive, P	*a*P

Tens of thousands of intermetallic phases have been systematized and classified using Pearson's symbols. They are listed in a source commonly known as Pearson's Handbook,[1] which is periodically updated and published by ASM International.[2] The Handbook also provides detailed information about the coordinates of atoms in unit cells of all known structure types of metals, alloys and related phases, which makes it a valuable tool in the structure solution of metallic materials.

6.5 Structure factors from powder diffraction data

When the *ab initio* solution of a crystal structure is attempted from powder diffraction data, eventually integrated intensities and structure factors of individual Bragg reflections will be required, see *Figure 6.1.* A simple numerical integration (Eq. 2.64) is rarely applicable and nearly always intensities can be determined only after decomposition (or deconvolution) of partially overlapped Bragg reflections. Sometimes decomposition is carried out peak by peak or group by group as was described in Chapter 4, but more often individual observed structure factors are determined by using the so-called full pattern decomposition techniques.

In addition to the determination of individual observed structure factors, the full pattern deconvolution carries several supplementary functions:

– First, is to verify the correctness of indexing, which is easily established by visually comparing the observed and "calculated" patterns to ensure that every observed peak has a matching calculated Bragg reflection.

[1] Pearson's handbook of crystallographic data for intermetallic phases, P. Villars and L.D. Calvert, Eds., 2nd edition, ASM International, Materials Park, OH (1991).

[2] ASM International on the Web: http://www.asm-intl.org/.

- Second, is to precisely determine the unit cell dimensions without performing a semi-manual profile fitting (see Chapter 4).
- Third, is to estimate the best figures of merit (see section 6.7), achievable in a Rietveld refinement using the existing set of diffraction data.

The two related full pattern decomposition methods in common use today were suggested by Pawley[1] and by Le Bail *et al.*[2] Pawley's approach is based on Eq. 2.48 and full pattern decomposition in the case of dual wavelength data, when $K\alpha_1/K\alpha_2$ doublets are present, is performed by solving the following system of equations using a least squares minimization:

$$\begin{aligned} Y_1 &= b_1 + \sum_{k=1}^{m} I_k \left[y_k(x_k) + 0.5 y_k(x_k + \Delta x_k) \right] \\ Y_2 &= b_2 + \sum_{k=1}^{m} I_k \left[y_k(x_k) + 0.5 y_k(x_k + \Delta x_k) \right] \\ &\cdots \\ Y_n &= b_n + \sum_{k=1}^{m} I_k \left[y_k(x_k) + 0.5 y_k(x_k + \Delta x_k) \right] \end{aligned} \tag{6.6}$$

The notations used in Eq. 6.6 are identical to Eq. 2.48. Individual integrated intensities (I_k) are treated as free least squares parameters. Peak shape function parameters are represented as described in section 2.9, and Bragg peak positions, which affect the values of x_k, are established by the unit cell dimensions, see section 2.8. The background, b_i, where $1 \leq i \leq n$ and n is the total number of measured data points, is modeled by one of the several functions described in Chapter 4 (see Eqs. 4.1 to 4.6).

When peak shape functions and their parameters, including Bragg reflection positions, are known precisely and the background is modeled by a polynomial function with j coefficients, the solution of Eq. 6.6 is trivial because all equations are linear with respect to the unknowns (B_j, see Eq. 4.1, and I_k). It facilitates the use of a linear least squares algorithm described in section 5.13.1. In practice, it is nearly always necessary to refine both peak shape and lattice parameters in addition to B_j and I_k to achieve a better precision of the resultant integrated intensities. Thus, a non-linear least squares minimization technique (see next section) is usually employed during full pattern decomposition using Eq. 6.6.

[1] G.S. Pawley, Unit-cell refinement from powder diffraction scans, J. Appl. Cryst. **14** , 357 (1981).

[2] A. Le Bail, H. Duroy, and J.L. Fourquet, *Ab initio* structure determination of $LiSbWO_6$ by x-ray powder diffraction, Mat. Res. Bull. **23**, 447 (1988). The method is also commonly known as Le Bail extraction.

Pawley's method works best when the complexity of a powder diffraction pattern is relatively low (few hundreds or so Bragg peaks total). When the number of independent Bragg peaks (m) exceeds several thousand, the size of the least squares normal equation matrix increases proportionally to m^2. As a result, Pawley's algorithm may become unstable, especially if there are multiple Bragg reflections with low intensity and/or when there is a severe overlap. The latter is quite normal when the total number of measurable Bragg peaks exceeds ~1000 in the scanned range. In the case of complex patterns, this algorithm has problems in keeping values of all integrated intensities I_k non-negative, which is obvious from Eq. 6.6.

Le Bail's approach is also based on Eq. 6.6 and it differs from the Pawley's method in that the individual intensities remain unaltered during each least squares cycle. They are extracted from a total observed intensity of the pattern between the least squares cycles after subtraction of the background. The extraction is performed using a decomposition approach that has been employed in the Rietveld method since its development,[1] in which intensity observed in every point of the powder pattern is divided among different reflections proportionally to their calculated intensities:

$$y_{k,i}^{obs} = p_{k,i}\left(Y_i^{obs} - b_i\right), \text{ where } p_{k,i} = \frac{y_{k,i}^{calc}}{\sum_{k=1}^{m} y_{k,i}^{calc}} \tag{6.7}$$

In Eq. 6.7, ${y_{k,i}}^{obs}$ is the pseudo-observed intensity of the k^{th} reflection in the i^{th} point, $p_{k,i}$ is the fractional contribution of the k^{th} reflection to the i^{th} point, Y_i^{obs} is the observed total intensity in the i^{th} point, ${y_{k,i}}^{calc}$ is the calculated intensity of the k^{th} reflection in the i^{th} point. The main difference between Rietveld and Le Bail decompositions is in the calculated intensities. The former technique uses intensities computed from the model of the crystal structure, while the latter approach uses intensity obtained from the previous cycle during the decomposition. Initially, all "calculated" intensity values in the Le Bail's method are set to arbitrary identical quantities, typically unity.

It is worth noting that in the Le Bail's decomposition, the number of free least squares variables becomes independent of the number of Bragg reflections and only background, peak shape and lattice parameters are refined during each least squares cycle. A small inconvenience of Le Bail's approach is that the unit cell dimensions should be known with a greater precision than in Pawley's method. It also takes more least squares

[1] H.M. Rietveld, Line profiles of neutron powder-diffraction peaks for structure refinement, Acta Cryst. **22**, 151 (1967); H.M. Rietveld, A profile refinement method for nuclear and magnetic structures, J. Appl. Cryst. **2**, 65 (1969).

refinement cycles to complete but the fit converges in much more complex cases. The disadvantage of the approach suggested by Le Bail is the separate handling of intensities for $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ peaks during the decomposition according to Eq. 6.7 and correction for the proper intensity ratio after the decomposition, which increases the time required for the completion of the fitting process. As far as suitable software is of concern, it is essential to check the manual and find out how the presence of the $K\alpha_1/K\alpha_2$ doublet is handled because some computer codes do not address this issue and the resulting intensities of $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ components may become unreasonable.

There is a variety of freely available software, which enables one to deconvolute a powder diffraction pattern and determine either or all: individual intensities, lattice and peak shape function parameters, and observed structure factors of all possible Bragg reflections. Freeware codes include EXPO, FullProf, GSAS, LHPM-Rietica, and others.[1] In addition to free programs, nearly all manufacturers of commercial powder diffractometers offer software for sale either as a package with the sale of the equipment or as stand-alone products.[2]

6.6 Non-linear least squares

Both the full pattern decomposition and Rietveld refinement are based on the non-linear least squares minimization of the differences between the observed and calculated profiles. Therefore, the non-linear least squares method is briefly considered here. Assume that we are looking for the best solution of a system of n simultaneous equations with m unknown parameters ($n >> m$), where each equation is a non-linear function with respect to the unknowns, x_1, x_2, ..., x_m. In a general form, this system of equations can be represented as

$$\begin{aligned} &f_1(x_1, x_2, ..., x_m) = y_1 \\ &f_2(x_1, x_2, ..., x_m) = y_2 \\ &... \\ &f_n(x_1, x_2, ..., x_m) = y_n \end{aligned} \tag{6.8}$$

[1] The most extensive sources of various software links are found at the International Union of Crystallography (www.iucr.org) and/or Collaborative Computational Project No. 14 (http://www.ccp14.ac.uk) Web sites.

[2] Commercial manufacturers, which offer a variety of software products for processing powder diffraction data are: Bruker (http://www.bruker-axs.com/production/indexnn.htm), Philips (http://www-us.analytical.philips.com/products/xrd/), Rigaku/Molecular Structure Corporation (http://www.rigaku.com/xrd/index.jsp), STOE & Cie, Gmbh (http://www.stoe.com/products/index.htm) and many others.

Obviously, a linear least squares algorithm described in section 5.13.1 is not directly applicable to find the best solution of Eq. 6.8. In some instances, it may be possible to convert each equation in (6.8) into a linear form by appropriate substitutions of variables and thus reduce the problem to a linear case. In general, the least squares solution of Eq. 6.8 is obtained by expanding the left hand side of every equation using Taylor's series and truncating the expansion after the first partial derivatives of the respective functions.[1] Hence, Eq. 6.8 may be converted into:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{\partial f_1(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0)}{\partial x_1}\Delta x_1 + \ldots + \frac{\partial f_1(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0)}{\partial x_m}\Delta x_m \cong y_1 - f_1(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0) \\
&\frac{\partial f_2(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0)}{\partial x_1}\Delta x_1 + \ldots + \frac{\partial f_2(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0)}{\partial x_m}\Delta x_m \cong y_2 - f_2(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0) \\
&\ldots \\
&\frac{\partial f_n(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0)}{\partial x_1}\Delta x_1 + \ldots + \frac{\partial f_n(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0)}{\partial x_m}\Delta x_m \cong y_n - f_n(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0)
\end{aligned} \tag{6.9}$$

as long as the corresponding derivatives exist and are finite. Equation 6.9 is linear with respect to Δx_1, Δx_2, ..., Δx_n and its solution is obtained by applying conventional linear least squares technique as

$$\mathbf{\Delta x} = (\mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{W}\mathbf{A})^{-1}(\mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{W}\mathbf{y}) \tag{6.10}$$

The notations in Eq. 6.10 are as follows:

$$\mathbf{\Delta x} = \begin{pmatrix} x - x_1^0 \\ x - x_2^0 \\ \cdots \\ x - x_m^0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \Delta x_1 \\ \Delta x_2 \\ \cdots \\ \Delta x_m \end{pmatrix} \tag{6.11}$$

[1] Taylor's series is an expansion of a real function about a point. In the case of a function of one variable, $f(x)$, the expansion about a point $x = x^0$ is given as

$$f(x) = f(x^0) + \Delta x f'(x^0) + \frac{\Delta x^2}{2!} f''(x^0) + \ldots + \frac{\Delta x^n}{n!} f^n(x^0) + R_n$$

where $\Delta x = (x\text{-}x^0)$ and R_n is a remainder. When $f(x_1, x_1, \ldots x_k)$ is a function of k variables, the expansion about a point $(x_1^0, x_2^0, \ldots x_k^0)$ is obtained by substituting each derivative in the equation above with the sum of partial derivatives multiplied, respectively, by Δx_1, Δx_2, ... Δx_k taken to the appropriate power and divided by the corresponding $n!$.

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} \dfrac{\partial f_1(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0)}{\partial x_1} & \dfrac{\partial f_1(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0)}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \dfrac{\partial f_1(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0)}{\partial x_m} \\ \dfrac{\partial f_2(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0)}{\partial x_1} & \dfrac{\partial f_2(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0)}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \dfrac{\partial f_2(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0)}{\partial x_m} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ \dfrac{\partial f_n(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0)}{\partial x_1} & \dfrac{\partial f_n(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0)}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \dfrac{\partial f_n(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0)}{\partial x_m} \end{pmatrix} \tag{6.12}$$

$$\mathbf{y} = \begin{pmatrix} y_1 - f_1(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0) \\ y_2 - f_2(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0) \\ \cdots \\ y_n - f_n(x_1^0,\ldots,x_m^0) \end{pmatrix} \tag{6.13}$$

$$\mathbf{W} = \begin{pmatrix} w_1^2 & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\ 0 & w_2^2 & \ldots & 0 \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ 0 & 0 & \ldots & w_n^2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{6.14}$$

where **W** is a square matrix representing individual weights (w_i) for each of the available n data points, and $\mathbf{A}^T$ is the transpose of **A**.

The refined parameters are computed by using both the set of the original $x_1^0, x_2^0, \ldots, x_m^0$, which represents the initial approximation of the unknowns, and the vector $\Delta\mathbf{x}$, which has been obtained from least squares (Eq. 6.10), as:

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^0 + \Delta\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} x_1^0 + \Delta x_1 \\ x_2^0 + \Delta x_2 \\ \cdots \\ x_m^0 + \Delta x_m \end{pmatrix} \tag{6.15}$$

The standard deviations[1] for each refined parameter according to the least squares method are calculated from

[1] Recently, the term "standard uncertainty" (s.u.) is becoming more common than the "standard deviation".

$$\sigma(x_j) = \sqrt{\frac{(\mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{W}\mathbf{A})^{-1}_{jj} \sum_{i=1}^{n} w_i (y_i)^2}{n-m}}, \quad j = 1,...,m \tag{6.16}$$

where:

- n is the number of equations in Eq. 6.9,
- m is the number of unknown parameters in Eq. 6.9,
- $(\mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{W}\mathbf{A})_{jj}^{-1}$ is the corresponding diagonal element of the inverse normal equation matrix,
- w_i is the corresponding weight,
- y_i is the corresponding element of the vector $\mathbf{y}$.

The major differences between the non-linear least squares technique and the linear least squares method, described in section 5.13.1, are as follows:

- The substitution of the original Eq. 6.8 with Eq. 6.9 requires the knowledge of initial (i.e. approximate) values of parameters to be refined, which are represented by the set $x_1^0, x_2^0, \ldots, x_m^0$.
- The least squares solution (Eq. 6.10) results in the shifts (vector $\Delta\mathbf{x}$, Eq. 6.11), which shall be added to the corresponding initial parameters, as shown in Eq. 6.15.
- Because Eq. 6.9 is not exact, usually more than one cycle of a least squares refinement is necessary to achieve a full convergence: during the second and following least squares cycles, the new set of parameters as obtained in the previous step from Eq. 6.15 is used as the initial approximation. Thus, non-linear least squares refinement is an iterative process, where the result of the next iteration depends on the result obtained during the prior iteration.
- Because of the iterative nature of non-linear least squares, convergence may be difficult to achieve, especially when the initial approximation is far from correct (*Figure 6.3*, left) or when the minimized function (see Eqs. 5.33, 5.34 and 6.9) is poorly defined. The latter often occurs when certain least squares parameters correlate.[1] Instead of converging, non-linear least squares may diverge and become unstable, as illustrated in *Figure 6.3*, right. Therefore, various numerical conditioning techniques should be employed to improve both the convergence and stability of the method. Their detailed consideration exceeds the scope of this book and the reader is referred to a large amount of special literature covering this subject.

[1] Considering, for example, Eqs. 2.65 and 2.89, when the phase scale (K) is refined together with the population parameters of all atoms (g^j), a complete correlation results: an increase of the phase scale by a factor k will be completely offset by the reduction of all population parameters by the factor $\sqrt{k}$.

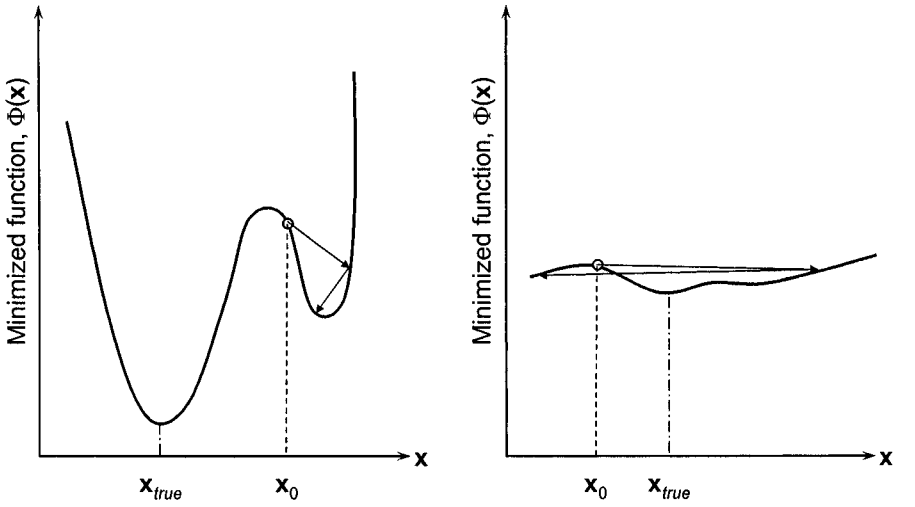


Figure 6.3. Two examples when the non-linear least squares technique may fail in finding the best solution of Eq. 6.9: left – the initial approximation ($\mathbf{x}_0$) is located near a false minimum; right – the minimum is poorly defined. The arrows represent the possible outcomes of two least squares cycles. In the case on the left the minimization ends in a false minimum. In the case on the right the obtained shifts have correct signs but wrong magnitudes and instead of converging (i.e. instead of all $|\Delta x_i|$ becoming smaller), their absolute values continue to increase. True solutions (i.e. global minima) are marked as $\mathbf{x}_{true}$.

The inverse of the normal equation matrix, $(\mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{W}\mathbf{A})^{-1}$, may be used to evaluate the correlation coefficients (ρ_{ij}) among the pairs of free least squares variables (x_i and x_j):

$$\rho_{ij} = (\mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{W}\mathbf{A})^{-1}_{ij} \Big/ \sqrt{(\mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{W}\mathbf{A})^{-1}_{ii}(\mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{W}\mathbf{A})^{-1}_{jj}} \qquad (6.17)$$

The correlation coefficients vary from 0 to 1 (absolute) and when they are in the range from -0.5 to 0.5, the associated parameters show little to no correlation. When $|\rho_{ij}|$ is unity, the corresponding variables (x_i and x_j) are fully (100 %) correlated and one of them should be excluded from the refinement. It is useful to check the matrix of the correlation coefficients during the refinement, especially when the non-linear least squares process appears unstable, which is usually detected as continuous worsening of one or more numerical figures of merit (see section 6.7) in addition to erratic changes of the values of some free variables included into the refinement. The analysis of correlation coefficients may help in identifying the non-obvious and serious problems, and show which parameters strongly correlate, i.e. depend on each other, and therefore, cannot be successfully refined together.

6.7 Figures of merit in full pattern decomposition

Since both Pawley and Le Bail full pattern decompositions are based on finding a least squares solution of Eq. 6.6, the problem may be considered solved and a pattern deconvoluted when the best possible fit between the calculated, Y_i^{calc}, and observed intensities, Y_i^{obs}, is achieved. Indeed, the left hand sides of each equation in Eq. 6.6 represent Y_i^{obs}, and the right hand sides represent Y_i^{calc}.

It is, therefore, of utmost importance to have certain numerical figures of merit that quantify the quality of the least squares fit and therefore, may be used to estimate the reliability of the extracted integrated intensities and observed structure factors. The following figures of merit are customarily used to characterize both the full pattern decomposition and Rietveld refinement quality.

The profile residual (or reliability) factor, R_p:

$$R_p = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} \left| Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc} \right|}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} Y_i^{obs}} \times 100\% \tag{6.18}$$

The weighted profile residual, R_{wp}:

$$R_{wp} = \left[\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} w_i \left(Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc} \right)^2}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} w_i (Y_i^{obs})^2} \right]^{1/2} \times 100\% \tag{6.19}$$

The Bragg residual, R_B (this figure of merit is quite important in Rietveld refinement but has little to no use during full pattern decomposition because only observed Bragg intensities are meaningful in both Pawley and Le Bail methods):

$$R_B = \frac{\sum_{j=1}^{m} \left| I_j^{obs} - I_j^{calc} \right|}{\sum_{j=1}^{m} I_j^{obs}} \times 100\% \tag{6.20}$$

The expected profile residual, R_{exp}:

$$R_{exp} = \left[\frac{n-p}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} w_i (Y_i^{obs})^2} \right]^{1/2} \times 100\% \qquad (6.21)$$

The goodness of fit, χ^2 (sometimes referred as chi-squared):

$$\chi^2 = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} w_i \left(Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc} \right)^2}{n-p} = \left[\frac{R_{wp}}{R_{exp}} \right]^2 \qquad (6.22)$$

In Eqs. 6.18 to 6.22, the following notations have been used:

- n is the total number of points measured in the experimental powder diffraction pattern.
- Y_i^{obs} is the observed intensity of the i^{th} data point, i.e. the left hand side of the i^{th} equation in Eq. 6.6.
- Y_i^{calc} is the calculated intensity of the i^{th} data point, i.e. the right hand side of the i^{th} equation in Eq. 6.6.
- w_i is the weight of the i^{th} data point, which is usually taken as $w_i = 1/\sigma_i^2 = 1/Y_i^{obs}$ (see Eq. 3.8 in section 3.7.1 for the definition of spread, σ_i).
- m is the number of independent Bragg reflections.
- I_j^{obs} is the "observed" integrated intensity of the j^{th} Bragg peak, which has been calculated after the observed intensity of every data point in the powder diffraction profile has been partitioned according to the calculated intensities of the contributing Bragg peaks (see Eq. 6.7).
- I_j^{calc} is the calculated integrated intensity of the j^{th} Bragg peak.
- p is the number of free least squares parameters.

All figures of merit except one (Eq. 6.20) include a contribution from the background. This raises an interesting problem about the "reliability of profile reliability factors" (pardon the tautology) when the correctness of the structural model is of concern, which will be further discussed in Chapter 7.

A simple analysis of Eqs. 6.18 to 6.20 and 6.22 indicates that a better fit results in lower values of all residuals. Unfortunately, there are no exact thresholds for R_p, R_{wp} and/or R_B, below which a fit is acceptable, good or excellent. To a certain degree, the "absolute quality" of the result is established by the relationship between R_{wp} and R_{exp}, i.e. by the value of χ^2. The expected residual (Eq. 6.21) characterizes the quality of experimental data because a larger denominator means a better counting statistics (see

section 3.7.1). The last figure of merit – the goodness of fit – should therefore, approach unity when R_{wp} approaches R_{exp}. In practice, this is rarely achieved even with high-quality powder diffraction data when R_{exp} are quite low, which is usually due to the inadequacy of peak shape and background functions.

Another useful figure of merit is the Durbin-Watson *d*-statistic:

$$d = \frac{\sum_{i=2}^{n}\left(\Delta Y_i/\sigma_i - \Delta Y_{i-1}/\sigma_{i-1}\right)^2}{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\Delta Y_i/\sigma_i\right)^2} \tag{6.23}$$

where $\Delta Y_i = Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc}$ and σ_i is the corresponding statistical error (see Eq. 3.8). According to Hill and Flack,[1] the weighted Durbin-Watson statistic may be used to provide a sensitive measure of refinement progress and to quantify serial correlation between adjacent least squares residuals in a full pattern decomposition or Rietveld refinement based on step-scan experimental data. It remains discriminating when other residuals fail, e.g. when comparing the results obtained at different step sizes. Ideally, the *d*-parameter (Eq. 6.23) should be close to 2, thus indicating the absence of serial correlation, although in practice it often deviates considerably from this ideal value. In general, if correlation is insignificant, *d* is closer to 2 than another parameter, *Q*, which is defined as:

$$Q = 2\left[\frac{n-1}{n-p} - \frac{3.0902}{\sqrt{n+2}}\right] \tag{6.24}$$

where *n* and *p* are the number of experimental observations and free least squares parameters, respectively. When $d < Q < 2$ serial correlation is positive and sequential observations have the same sign, while in the case of $d > 4 - Q > 2$, serial correlation is negative and sequential observations have opposite signs.[2]

[1] R.J. Hill and H.D. Flack, The use of the Durbin-Watson *d*-statistic in Rietveld analysis, J. Appl. Cryst. **20**, 356 (1987).

[2] Ideally, experimental data (intensity) should be randomly distributed both above and below the calculated intensity profile. If there are multiple sequences with all observed points above or all below the calculated intensity values, it is said that serial correlation occurs. In other words, the *d*-statistic reflects correlation between adjacent least-squares residuals and it can be used as an indicator that refined parameters are unbiased.

6.8 Structure solution from powder data

In the remainder of this chapter, we will consider multiple practical structure solution examples. For the most part, individual intensities and structure factors will be extracted by using Le Bail's algorithm of full pattern decomposition. This technique is chosen instead of Pawley's approach because the former algorithm is usually more stable and it has been incorporated into several freely available software programs, which are coupled with Patterson and Fourier calculations. These are: LHPM-Rietica[1] and GSAS,[2] although other well-developed and tested computer codes are available.[3] In some of the more complex examples, however, we will employ manual profile fitting. The latter approach is less "user-friendly" in terms of automation, but it avoids the unrestricted and sometimes unrealistic determination of the intensities of $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ peaks.

By solving crystal structures of different classes of materials,[4] we will illustrate only a few of the possible approaches to the *ab initio* structure solution from powder diffraction data. Whenever possible the structure factors obtained from full pattern decompositions should be used until the coordinates of all atoms are established. In some cases it may be necessary to re-determine individual structure factors based on the nearly completed structural model, especially when locations of lightly scattering atoms are of concern after all strongly scattering species have been correctly positioned in the unit cell. This re-determination may be routinely performed during Rietveld refinement and will be briefly discussed in Chapter 7.

[1] LHPM-Rietica (authors B.A. Hunter and C.J. Howard) may be downloaded from ftp://ftp.ansto.gov.au/pub/physics/neutron/rietveld/Rietica_LHPM95/ or *via* a link at http://www.ccp14.ac.uk.

[2] GSAS (authors A.C. Larsen and R.B. Von Dreele) may be downloaded from http://public.lanl.gov/gsas/ or *via* a link at http://www.ccp14.ac.uk. A convenient graphic user interface for GSAS (author Brian Toby) may be downloaded from http://www.ncnr.nist.gov/programs/crystallography/ or *via* http://www.ccp14.ac.uk.

[3] One of these is EXPO – an integrated package for full pattern decomposition and for solving crystal structure by direct methods (authors A. Altomare, B. Carrozzini, G. Cascarano, C. Giacovazzo, A. Guagliardi, A.G.G. Moliterni, R. Rizzi, M.C. Burla, G. Polidori, and M. Camalli). For information on how to obtain the program, contact sirware@area.ba.cnr.it or visit http://www.irmec.ba.cnr.it/.

[4] There is a variety of software that can be used to process "pseudo-single crystal" experimental diffraction data represented in a form of individual structure factors or their squares (consult http://www.iucr.org and/or http://www.ccp14.ac.uk). The most commonly used software products are SHELXS-90 and SHELXL-97 (author G.M. Sheldrick), which are distributed free for academic use (consult SHELX home page at http://shelx.uni-ac.gwdg.de/SHELX/index.html for details). Unless noted otherwise, processing of the individual structure factor data, direct phase determination, Patterson-, Fourier- and E-map calculations shown in this chapter were performed using WinCSD software, which is available from STOE & Cie, Gmbh (http://www.stoe.com/products/index.htm).

6.9 Crystal structure of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$[1]

Consider a powder diffraction pattern of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$, which is shown in *Figure 6.4*. Files **Ch6Ex01_CuKa.dat** and **Ch6Ex01_CuKa.xy**, which contain the same experimental data saved in two different formats, are found on the CD accompanying this book. From Chapter 5 we already known that the alloy is hexagonal and the lattice parameters are a = 5.0421, c = 4.0118 Å. Analysis of *Table 5.6* indicates that there are no forbidden reflections, and from *Table 2.14* and *Table 2.15* the possible space group symmetries for this material are as follows: P6/mmm, P$\bar{6}$m2, P$\bar{6}$2m, P6mm, P622, P6/m, P$\bar{6}$, P6, P$\bar{3}$1m, P31m, P312, P$\bar{3}$m1, P3m1, P321, P$\bar{3}$, and P3.

The fact that a total of 16 (!) space groups are possible for this material could make it a complicated choice for the *ab initio* structure solution. However, its unit cell is quite small. Furthermore, $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ is an intermetallic compound and therefore, the highest symmetry space group (P6/mmm) is quite probable.

The measured gravimetric density of the alloy is 8.21 g/cm^3. After calculating the mass of its formula unit, M = 441.4 a.m.u., and the unit cell volume, $V = \sqrt{3}a^2c/2$ = 88.327 Å^3, Eq. 6.4 results in Z = 0.99 ≅ 1. Thus, one unit cell of the compound contains 1 La, 4.85 Ni and 0.15 Sn atoms. Because of the fractional amounts in the unit cell, the Ni and Sn atoms are likely distributed statistically in their respective crystallographic sites (they have similar atomic radii: r_{Ni} = 1.35, r_{Sn} = 1.45 Å), but much larger La atoms (r_{La} = 1.95 Å) should occupy a separate crystallographic site. Thus, before proceeding with the full pattern decomposition it is advisable to check whether some of the space groups that are possible for this compound can be eliminated.[2] Analysis of the multiplicities of site positions of the 16 possible space groups indicates that none of the groups can be excluded outright because every space group symmetry has 1-, 2- and 3-fold sites (some of the trigonal space groups have only 1- and 3-fold sites), which are sufficient to accommodate one La and a total of five Ni+Sn atoms.

[1] J. Ting, I.E. Anderson, and V.K. Pecharsky, unpublished.

[2] Generally, it is unnecessary to have the exact space group symmetry information during the full pattern decomposition. In fact, it is more practical to select the most symmetrical space group in the established diffraction group and avoid multiple and complete Bragg peak overlaps. For example when both trigonal and hexagonal symmetry (primitive lattice) groups are possible, full pattern decomposition is best performed in the hexagonal crystal system assuming Laue class 6/mmm. This eliminates Bragg doublets (e.g. *hkl* and *khl*, which are present in the Laue class 6/m) and quadruplets (e.g. *hkl*, *hk* $\bar{l}$, *khl* and *kh* $\bar{l}$, which should be taken into account in the Laue class $\bar{3}$), which are indistinguishable using both Le Bail and Pawley techniques. For structure solution, it may be necessary to add the missing combinations of indices to the array of structure amplitudes obtained in the highest symmetry space group.

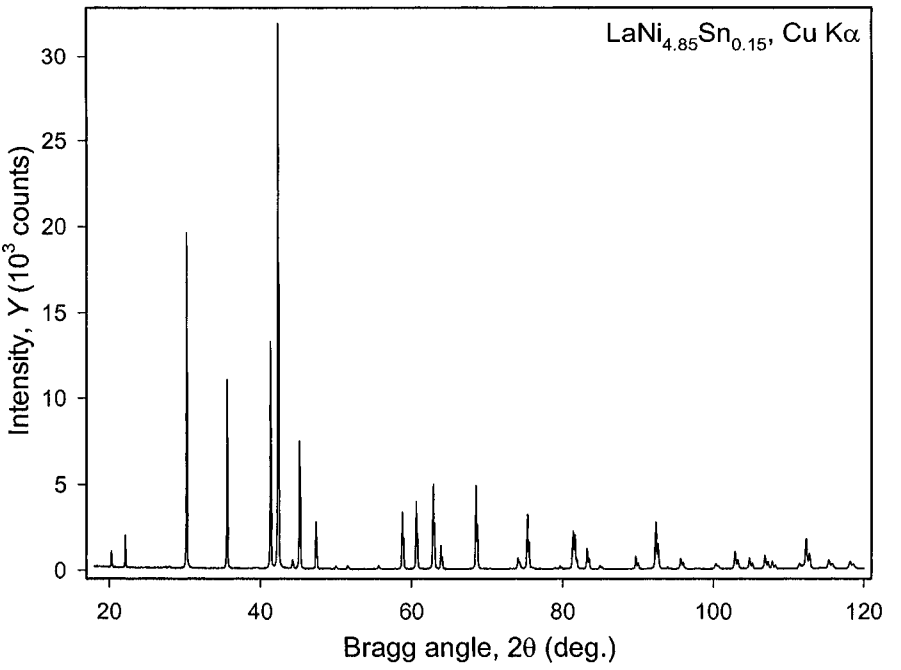


Figure 6.4. The powder diffraction pattern collected from a sample of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ using Cu Kα radiation on a Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode diffractometer. The divergence slit was 0.75° and the receiving slit was 0.03°. The experiment was carried out in a continuous scanning mode with a rate 0.5 deg/min and with a sampling step 0.02°. The powder used in this experiment was prepared by gas atomization from the melt and therefore, particles were nearly spherical (see inset in *Figure 3.32*).

In this example,[1] we will use LHPM-Rietica. For readers that have no experience with the program, we suggest using both the manual, which is available for download with the software, and a Web-based tutorial[2] in combination with the experimental data found on the CD. Ideally, the results presented below should be reproduced nearly exactly, although small deviations may occur due to the nature of the non-linear least squares.

Full pattern decomposition usually begins with the refinement of the background while keeping peak shape and instrumental parameters fixed at their default values, and unit cell dimensions fixed at their best-known values. We begin with only two parameters representing the background as a

[1] Due to its simplicity, this example is purely academic, however, it is an excellent sample to gain initial experience in deconvoluting powder diffraction patterns using Le Bail's technique. Therefore, it will be considered in detail.

[2] Brett Hunter, LHPM-Rietica Rietveld for Win95/NT. Tutorial is accessible *via* http://www.ccp14.ac.uk/, then "Tutorials" on the site map, then "LHPM-Rietica_Rietveld".

straight line, which is sufficient as a first approximation (see *Figure 6.4*). Peak shapes are represented using a pseudo-Voigt function.[1] The progression of the full pattern decomposition is illustrated by the corresponding figures of merit, which are assembled in *Table 6.2*.

Initial refinement of just two background parameters serves an important function: it enables preliminary determination of the individual integrated intensities, which are initially set to unity (see section 6.5), and the calculated diffraction pattern begins to resemble the observed diffraction data (*Figure 6.5*). When this initial refinement step is completed and the refinement appears stable, it is possible to begin releasing other relevant parameters. The refinement has been performed in the order shown in *Table 6.2*; the results are illustrated in *Figure 6.6* to *Figure 6.11* and in *Table 6.3*.

The initial refinement of a linear background (*Figure 6.5*) is far from an ideal fit. Although the unit cell dimensions are quite precise, we know that the experimental data are affected by a small systematic error in Bragg angles (see *Table 5.6*, which indicated a zero shift of 0.032° or an equivalent sample displacement error). Furthermore, peak shape parameters have been set at their defaults, which may be unsuitable to describe the observed profile quite well. A relatively poor fit is reflected in high residuals as seen in row two of *Table 6.2*. When major peak shape (U, V, W, and η_0) and lattice parameters were refined along with zero shift, the fit improves considerably as seen in rows 3 and 4 in *Table 6.2* and visualized in *Figure 6.6* and *Figure 6.7*, respectively. For such a simple pattern, the order in which these parameters have been refined is practically irrelevant, but for the cases that are more complex it may be necessary to examine the differences, $Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc}$, and to decide which set of parameters is more likely to have the largest effect on the improved fit: they should be refined first.

Table 6.2. Figures of merit obtained at different stages during the full pattern decomposition of the powder diffraction pattern of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ using Le Bail approach incorporated in LHPM-Rietica. Wavelengths used: $\lambda K\alpha_1 = 1.54059$ Å, $\lambda K\alpha_2 = 1.54441$ Å; $R_{exp} = 5.24\%$.

Refined parameters	Illustration	R_p[a]	R_{wp}[a]	χ^2
Experimental data	*Figure 6.4*	-	-	-
Background (linear)	*Figure 6.5*	22.75	28.25	29.02
+ U, V, W, η_0	*Figure 6.6*	19.40	24.13	21.20
+ a, c, zero shift	*Figure 6.7*	7.75	12.23	5.44
+ Background (3rd order), asymmetry	*Figure 6.8*	5.61	9.16	3.06
All, plus broader base width	*Figure 6.10*	4.82	8.31	2.52
Second phase, all parameters	*Figure 6.11*	4.38	6.47	1.53

[a] Here and in all other similar tables, the residuals are listed in percent and χ^2 is dimensionless (see Eqs. 6.18 to 6.20 and 6.22).

[1] Asymmetry was treated in the approximation given by: C.J. Howard, The approximation of asymmetric neutron powder diffraction peaks by sums of Gaussians, J. Appl. Cryst. **15**, 615 (1982). See also Eq. 2.63.

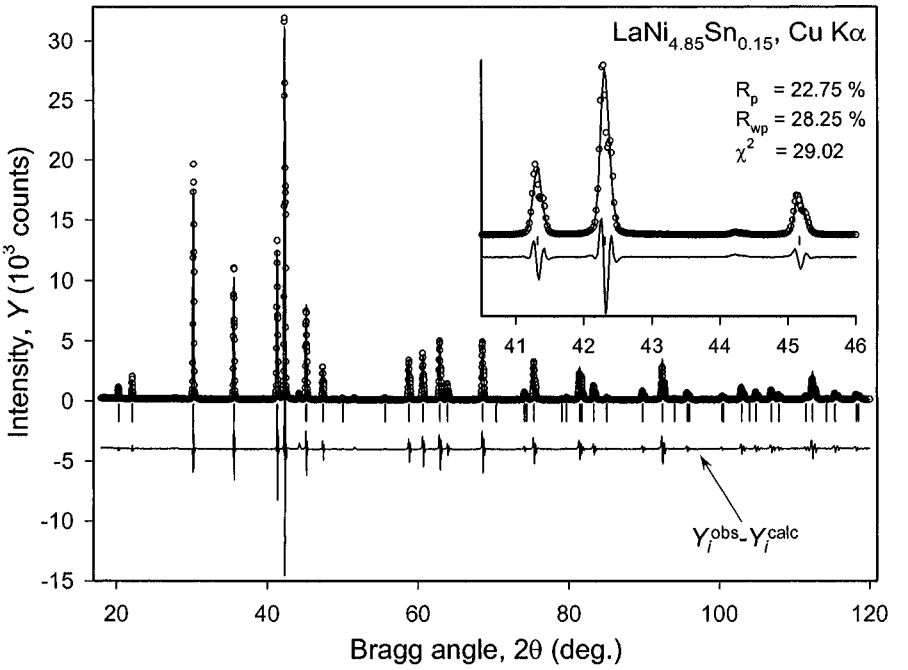


Figure 6.5. The observed (circles) and calculated (lines) powder patterns of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ after a linear background has been refined. Peak shape parameters were kept at their default values and lattice parameters were fixed at $a = 5.0421$, $c = 4.0118$ Å. The vertical bars located just below the background level indicate calculated positions of Bragg peaks for λ $K\alpha_1$. The curve in the bottom part of the plot represents the difference $Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc}$. The scales for the observed, calculated and difference plots are identical. The inset clarifies details in the vicinity of the strongest Bragg peak. Same notations are maintained in all similar figures below and throughout the book.

In this example, lattice parameters and the zero shift correction have a substantial impact on the quality of the fit and the weighted profile residual, R_{wp}, decreases nearly two-fold (from ~24 to ~12 %), while the refinement of peak shape parameters decreases R_{wp} by only ~4 %. Therefore, in this case lattice parameters should have been refined first. However, it is not always obvious which parameters are more important and should be released at a particular stage of the least squares refinement. Because of this, in complex cases a trial-and-error approach is often employed.[1]

[1] A specific of the Le Bail's approach nearly always requires that early refinement includes the simplest suitable background function with all other relevant parameters kept fixed at their default or approximately known values. This ensures the proper determination of the individual integrated intensities, which are initially set to identical values, and the overall success of the full pattern decomposition.

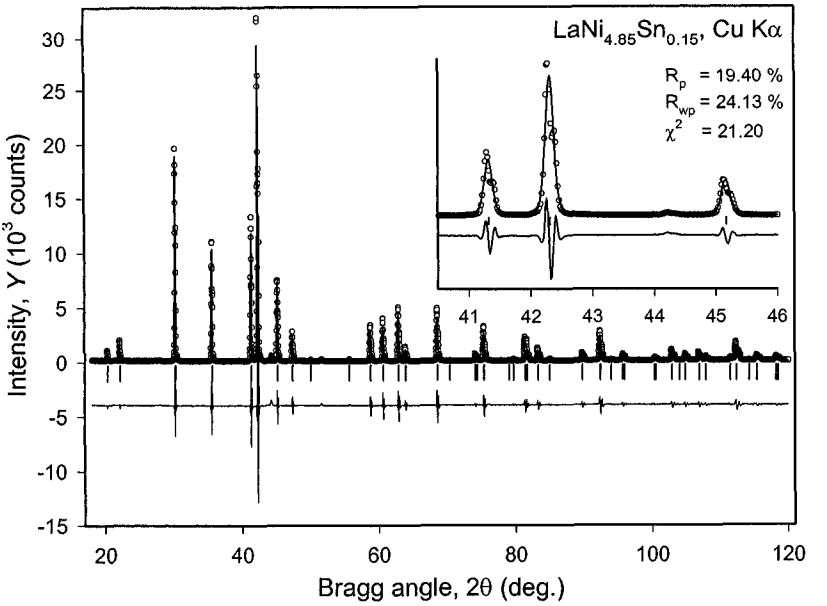


Figure 6.6. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ after peak shape parameters, *U*, *V*, *W* and η_0, were refined together with linear background.

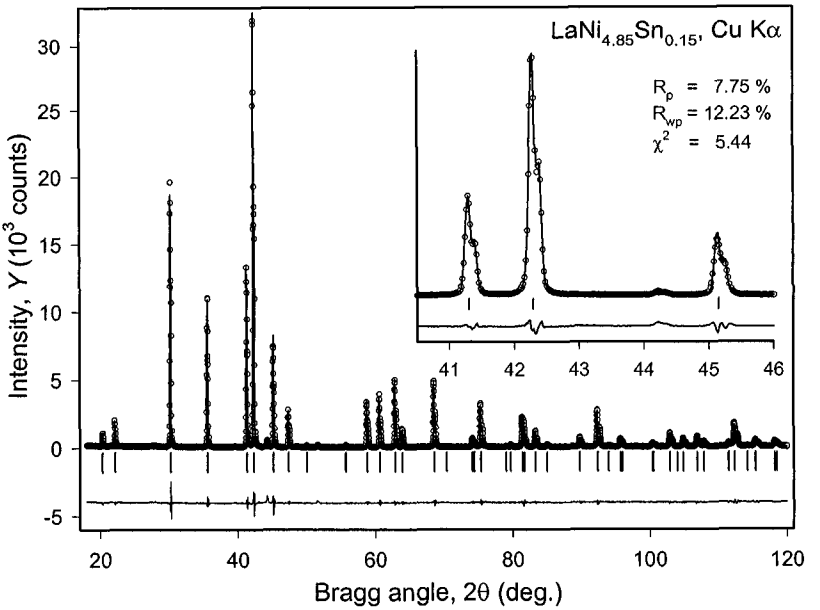


Figure 6.7. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ after zero shift and lattice parameters were included in the refinement.

The result illustrated in *Figure 6.7* shows a satisfactory fit and the next groups of parameters included in the refinement were: a more complex background (third order polynomial instead of a linear function) and peak asymmetry. The fit further improves and when the calculated and observed profiles match quite well (i.e. $Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc}$ approach 0), as shown in *Figure 6.8*, it is useful to examine the bases of the strongest Bragg peaks to establish whether or not the selected peak range is adequate. The peak width at the base was 7 FWHM's so far (default) and, as seen in *Figure 6.9*, it is too narrow. Therefore, from this point on it was increased to 12 FWHM's, which further improves the fit (*Figure 6.10* and row six in *Table 6.2*). The proper selection of peak widths at the base is best established visually, i.e. it should be gradually increased until "steps", which are indicated by arrows in *Figure 6.9* become indistinguishable. While it is possible to select an even larger peak width at the base, it is always better to choose a realistic minimum value because as the complexity of the pattern increases, the excessive widths of peaks may have a deleterious effect on the background function, especially at high Bragg angles.

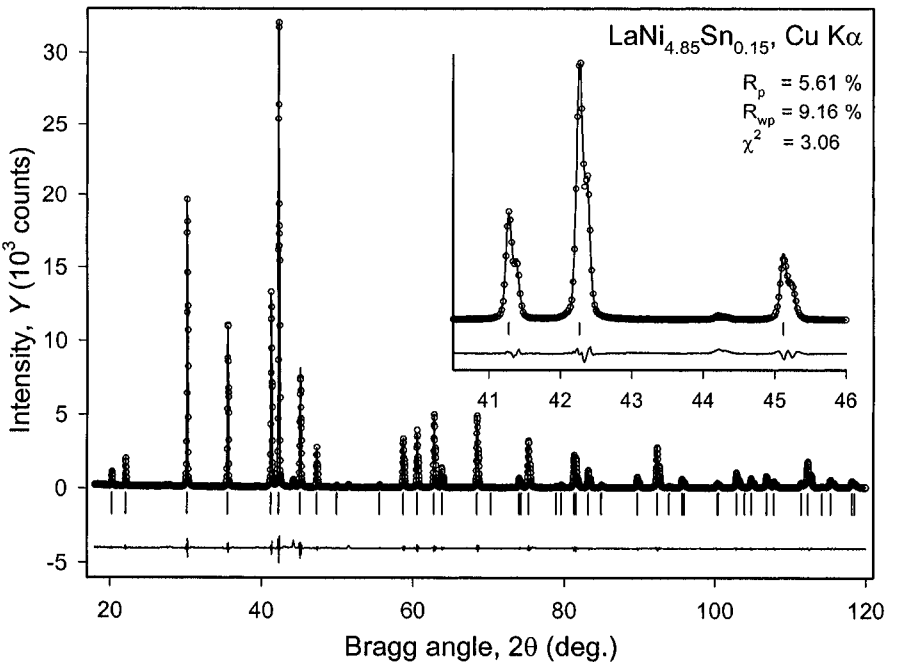


Figure 6.8. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ after the polynomial background and asymmetry were refined together with lattice parameters, zero shift and peak shape parameters (U, V, W and η_0).

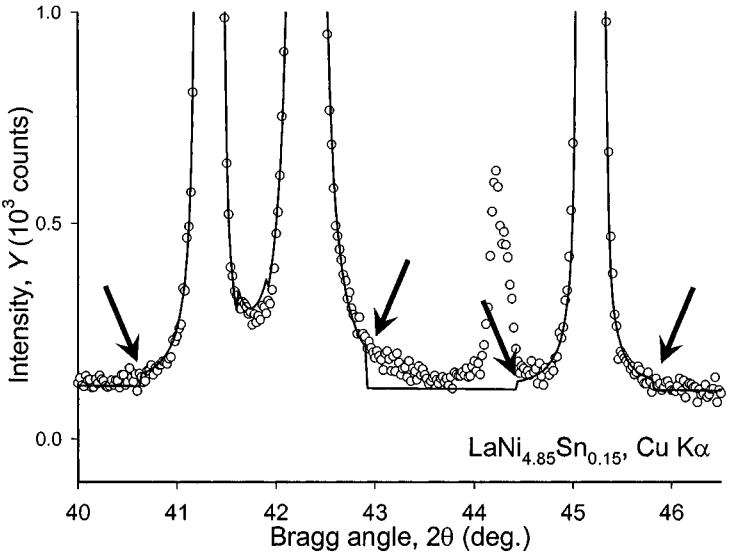


Figure 6.9. Expanded view of the bases of the strongest Bragg peaks indicating that peak ranges should be increased. The additional Bragg peak at $2\theta \cong 44.2°$ is from Ni impurity.

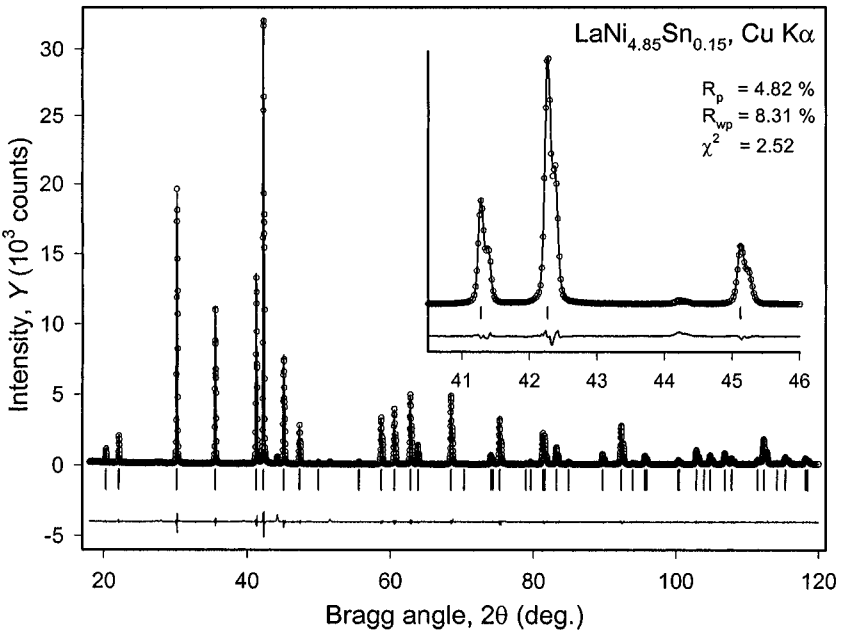


Figure 6.10. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ after all parameters have been refined with the increased peak base widths.

The powder diffraction pattern is contaminated by a small amount of an impurity phase, which is a solid solution of Sn in Ni. Its structure is cubic, space group Fm3m and approximate lattice parameter is a = 3.54 Å. When its presence is accounted,[1] the fit and all residuals further improve. The corresponding parameters, as obtained after each refinement step, are assembled in *Table 6.3*. The inclusion of an impurity phase at the last step is not critical, yet noticeable (see *Table 6.2* and *Figure 6.11*), because the amount of this phase is quite small, totaling ~2 vol. % according to a microstructural analysis, or ~2.5 wt. % according to the Rietveld refinement (see section 7.3.8).

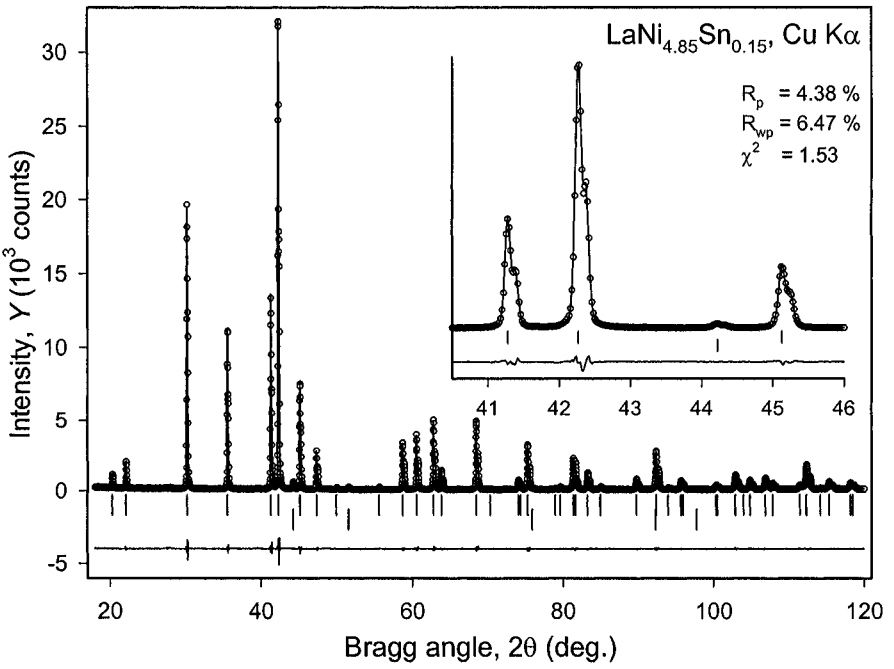


Figure 6.11. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ after a second phase (solid solution of Sn in Ni) was included in the refinement. Considering the low background (the peak-to-background ratio exceeds 200 for the strongest Bragg reflection at $2\theta \cong 42.3°$), the final residuals are excellent.

[1] When the crystal structure of the impurity (or at least its lattice parameters) is unknown, the contaminated ranges of the powder diffraction pattern may be simply excluded from the least squares refinement. In this example, the following ranges may be excluded to improve the fit: 43.6 – 44.6°, 51 – 52°, 75 – 77°, and 97 – 99° of 2θ. One impurity Bragg peak (at $2\theta = 92.3°$) nearly completely overlaps with the peak from the major phase in the sample. Hence, exclusion may not be a suitable alternative if there are multiple overlaps of Bragg peaks that belong to the main and impurity phases, especially when the amount of the latter is significant.

The results of the full pattern decomposition are shown in *Table 6.3* as a list of peak shape and lattice parameters, and also in *Table 6.4* as a list of Miller indices with the corresponding individual $|\mathbf{F}^{obs}|^2$ and their standard deviations. The array of intensity data can now be processed by any suitable crystallographic software and used to calculate a Patterson function, or in a combination with direct phase angle determination algorithm(s) to solve the crystal structure of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$.

Table 6.3. Parameters obtained at different stages during the full pattern decomposition of the powder diffraction pattern of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$.

Free parameters	Refined values
Initial (default) parameters	Background: $b_0 - b_4$ and b_{-1}, all zero $U = 0.0100$; $V = -0.0050$; $W = 0.0200$; $\eta_0 = 0.2000$; $\eta_1 = 0.0000$; $\eta_2 = 0.0000$ Asymmetry = 0.020; Anisotropy (001) = 0.0000 $a = 5.0421$ Å; $c = 4.0118$ Å; $\delta 2\theta = 0.000°$
Background (linear)	$b_0 = 146.58$; $b_1 = -0.448$
Background (linear), U, V, W, η_0	$b_0 = 154.24$; $b_1 = -0.699$ $U = 0.0164$; $V = 0.0599$; $W = -0.0023$; $\eta_0 = 0.2614$
Background (linear), U, V, W, η_0, a, c, zero shift	$b_0 = 157.95$; $b_1 = -0.698$ $U = 0.0403$; $V = -0.0081$; $W = 0.0056$; $\eta_0 = 0.4064$; $a = 5.0432$ Å; $c = 4.0126$ Å; $\delta 2\theta = 0.02°$
Background (3rd order polynomial plus hyperbolic term, b_{-1}), U, V, W, η_0, a, c, zero shift, asymmetry	$b_0 = 41.921$; $b_1 = -0.112$; $b_2 = 4\times10^{-4}$; $b_3 = 3\times10^{-5}$; $b_{-1} = 3332.1$; $U = 0.0311$; $V = 0.0022$; $W = 0.0031$; $\eta_0 = 0.4152$; Asymmetry = -0.025; $a = 5.0419$ Å; $c = 4.0115$ Å; $\delta 2\theta = 0.049°$
Background (3rd order), U, V, W, η_0, η_1, η_2, a, c, zero shift, asymmetry, anisotropy plus broader peak bases (12 FWHM's)	$b_0 = 37.941$; $b_1 = -0.272$; $b_2 = 3\times10^{-3}$; $b_3 = 1\times10^{-5}$; $b_{-1} = 3470.6$; $U = 0.0283$; $V = -0.0046$; $W = 0.0058$; $\eta_0 = 0.1066$; $\eta_1 = 0.0086$; $\eta_2 = 0.0000$; Asymmetry = -0.016; Anisotropy (001) = 0.0165 $a = 5.0421$ Å; $c = 4.0116$ Å; $\delta 2\theta = 0.044°$
Same as above plus a second phase included. Peak shape parameters of a second phase were constrained to be identical to those of the majority phase due its small amount.	$b_0 = 31.562$; $b_1 = -0.423$; $b_2 = 7\times10^{-3}$; $b_3 = 7\times10^{-6}$; $b_{-1} = 3654.2$; $U = 0.0281$; $V = -0.0042$; $W = 0.0056$; $\eta_0 = 0.1256$; $\eta_1 = 0.0080$; $\eta_2 = 0.0000$; Asymmetry = -0.016; Anisotropy (001) = 0.0165 $a = 5.0419$ Å; $c = 4.0114$ Å; $\delta 2\theta = 0.044°$ $a = 3.5416$ Å (second phase, $Ni_{1-x}Sn_x$)

Strictly speaking, in this case it is not necessary to solve the crystal structure from first principles, because after finding that the Pearson's symbol of the material is *h*P6, it is easy to identify the correct structure type of this alloy by consulting Pearson's Handbook. Furthermore, in such a small and high symmetry unit cell the possibilities to place different atoms

are quite limited due to geometrical constraints, and chances are quite high that this type of crystal structure is already known. Nonetheless, this example is useful to illustrate how a simple combination of available data about the chemical composition, unit cell contents and symmetry provides required information, which may be used to locate all atoms in the unit cell.

Table 6.4. The list of Bragg reflections with their corresponding observed structure factors squared determined from Le Bail's full pattern decomposition of the powder diffraction pattern of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$. Only the data for the major phase are listed.

h	k	l	$\|F^{obs}\|^2$	$\sigma\|F^{obs}\|^2$	h	k	l	$\|F^{obs}\|^2$	$\sigma\|F^{obs}\|^2$
0	1	0	85	1	0	3	2	1040	6
0	0	1	617	5	1	3	1	678	5
0	1	1	2012	6	0	2	3	255	4
1	1	0	3328	13	0	4	0	1846	17
0	2	0	5604	19	2	2	2	3862	19
1	1	1	7488	16	0	4	1	124	2
0	0	2	13440	54	1	2	3	500	4
0	2	1	816	6	1	3	2	73	1
0	1	2	50	1	0	0	4	3436	36
1	2	0	75	2	2	3	0	87	1
1	1	2	1713	10	0	3	3	1842	13
1	2	1	1003	5	0	1	4	42	1
0	2	2	2979	14	2	3	1	548	5
0	3	0	1559	14	0	4	2	1509	12
0	3	1	3503	16	1	4	0	749	7
0	0	3	201	4	1	1	4	682	7
0	1	3	641	6	1	4	1	1787	9
1	2	2	60	1	2	2	3	129	2
2	2	0	5592	30	0	2	4	1291	10
1	3	0	78	2	1	3	3	502	4
2	2	1	166	3	2	3	2	91	1
1	1	3	2611	15					

As established above, a total of 16 space groups are possible for $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ but the highest symmetry is quite likely because the material is an intermetallic compound. Hence, we will first concentrate our attention on the space group P6/mmm. If the structure is solved in this space group symmetry, then there is no need to test lower symmetry groups. However, if the solution could not be found, the symmetry should be gradually lowered until the crystal structure is solved, see *Figure 6.1.*

We already know that we must locate a total of one La, and five Ni+Sn atoms in the unit cell. According to the International Tables for Crystallography,[1] only two sites in this space group symmetry have

[1] International Tables for Crystallography, vol. A, Fifth revised edition, Theo Hahn, Ed., Published for the International Union of Crystallography by Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston/Dordrecht/London (2002).

multiplicity one and, therefore, are suitable to accommodate the La atom (*Table 6.5*). These are: 1(a) with coordinates of a point in 0,0,0, and 1(b) – 0,0,1/2. Considering the fact that La is the strongest scattering atom in this crystal structure, it has the largest contribution to the phase angles of all reflections. Hence, Ni atoms should be easily located from a Fourier map.[1]

Table 6.5. Low multiplicity sites available in the space group P6/mmm.

Site	Coordinates of symmetrically equivalent points			
1(a)	0,0,0			
1(b)	0,0,1/2			
2(c)	1/3,2/3,0;	2/3,1/3,0		
2(d)	1/3,2/3,1/2;	2/3,1/3,1/2		
2(e)	0,0,z;	0,0,$\bar{z}$		
3(f)	1/2,0,0;	0,1/2,0;	1/2,1/2,0	
3(g)	1/2,0,1/2;	0,1/2,1/2;	1/2,1/2,1/2	
4(h)	1/3,2/3,z;	2/3,1/3,z;	1/3,2/3,$\bar{z}$;	2/3,1/3,$\bar{z}$

As is easy to verify by calculating interatomic distances, the La atoms can be accommodated in 1(a) or 1(b) sites, which differ only by a shift of the origin of coordinates, and La–La distances are identical regardless of where the La atom is placed. We place La in the 1(a) site. Calculation of phase angles always involves calculation of $|\mathbf{F}_{hkl}^{calc}|$ and therefore, it is also possible to compute the corresponding figure of merit, R_F,[2] which is similar to the Bragg residual (Eq. 6.20) except that the integrated intensities are substituted with the absolute values of structure factors. After a La atom is placed in the 1(a) site, the $R_F = 54.8\%$, which is quite good considering that five atoms are still missing from our model.

The coordinates and heights[3] of the electron density peaks after calculating a three-dimensional electron density distribution (*Figure 6.12*) are listed in *Table 6.6*. The strongest peak (No. 1) confirms the placement of a La atom in the unit cell. It is easy to see that two additional and distinct peaks (No. 2 and 3) appeared on the Fourier map. Their heights are about 1/2 of the expected number of electrons in pure Ni, which is normal given the incomplete accuracy of reflection phases, which were calculated using only the La atom. Between peaks No. 3 and 4, there is a sharp reduction in the heights of the electron density maxima, and this feature usually indicates that no more atoms are located in the unit cell.

[1] The amount of Sn in the alloy is small and assuming random distribution of Ni and Sn in the corresponding sites, the mixture is nearly pure nickel: 97 at.% Ni and 3 at.% Sn.

[2] This figure of merit is customarily used in single crystal diffraction, where individual $|\mathbf{F}_{hkl}^{obs}|^2$ are determined directly from the experiment.

[3] Peak heights are usually used instead of integrated peak volumes for simplicity.

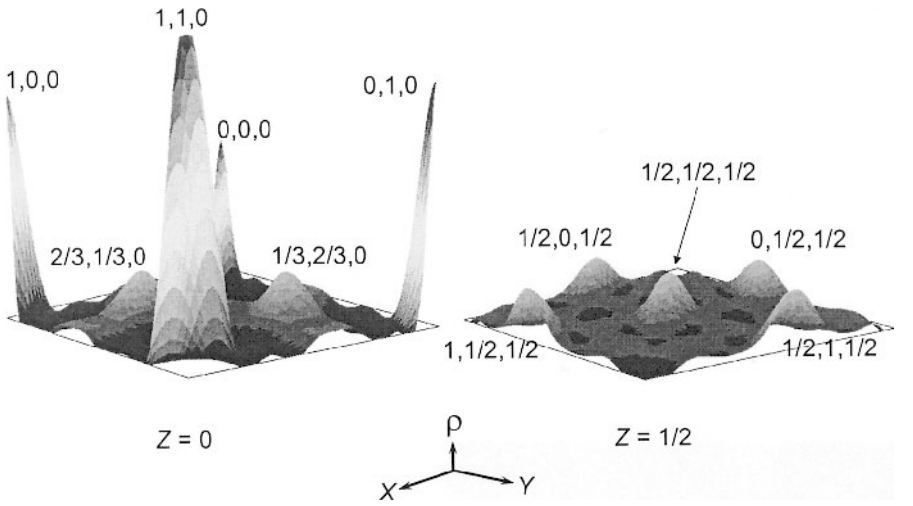


Figure 6.12. The cross-sections of the three-dimensional Fourier map of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ at Z = 0 (left) and at Z = 1/2 (right) calculated using structure amplitudes listed in *Table 6.4* and phase angles determined by the La atom placed in the 1(a) site. The triplets of numbers indicate the coordinates of the strongest peaks in the unit cell. The following groups of peaks are symmetrically equivalent to one another: 0,0,0; 1,0,0; 0,1,0 and 1,1,0 (all four correspond to the La atom in 1(a) and peak No. 1 in *Table 6.6*); 1/3,2/3,0 and 2/3,1/3,0 (peak No. 2 in *Table 6.6*), and 1/2,0,1/2; 0,1/2,1/2; 1/2,1/2,1/2; 1,1/2,1/2 and 1/2,1,1/2 (peak No. 3 in *Table 6.6*).

Table 6.6. The three-dimensional electron density distribution in the symmetrically independent part of the unit cell of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ calculated using the observed structure factors determined from Le Bail's extraction (*Table 6.4*) and phase angles determined by the La atom placed in the 1(a) site of the space group P6/mmm (R_F = 54.8 %).

Fourier map peak number	*x*	*y*	*z*	Peak height[a]
1	**0**	**0**	**0**	**58**
2	**0.6667**	**0.3333**	**0**	**14**
3	**0.5**	**0**	**0.5**	**14**
4	0.5	0	0	4
5	0	0	0.288	3
6	0.462	0.124	0.240	2
7	0.540	0.249	0.512	2
8	0.211	0.075	0.516	1
9	0.231	0.200	0.151	1

[a] Peak heights have been normalized to represent approximate number of electrons in the site occupied by La.

A simple calculation of the interatomic distances between the La atom in the 1(a) site and all peaks listed in *Table 6.6* shows that only the distances for peaks 2 and 3 are a good match for La–Ni distances. The distance

between peaks 2 and 3 corresponds to the sum of radii of Ni atoms. Furthermore, peak No. 2 represents coordinates of the 2(c) sites, and peak No. 3 corresponds to the 3(g) sites in space group P6/mmm. Thus, a total of 6 atoms have been placed in the unit cell of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$, i.e. exactly as many as established from the gravimetric density of the alloy.

It is important to emphasize that La in the 1(a) site has been confirmed by the electron density calculation, although it is worth noting that in a heavy atom approach it is often the case, that a single strongly scattering atom always appears on the Fourier map even when it has been placed incorrectly. However, if the location of the heavy atom is wrong, additional strong peaks in the electron density distribution will normally be incorrect as can be easily established by the computation of the interatomic distances. Such a model of the crystal structure will be impossible to complete, i.e. the missing atoms typically will not appear on the subsequent Fourier maps due to incorrectly determined phase angles.

After all three independent atoms (peaks 1 through 3 in *Table 6.6*) have been included in computations assuming identical displacement parameters in an isotropic approximation (B = 0.5 Å^2), the resulting R_F = 6.9% without refinement. This value is excellent because i) the powder diffraction pattern is relatively simple with minimum overlap, and ii) the powder particles used in the diffraction experiment were nearly ideal (spherical), thus preferred orientation effects were also minimized. The following electron density distribution (*Figure 6.13* and *Table 6.7*) was obtained using the newly determined set of phase angles.

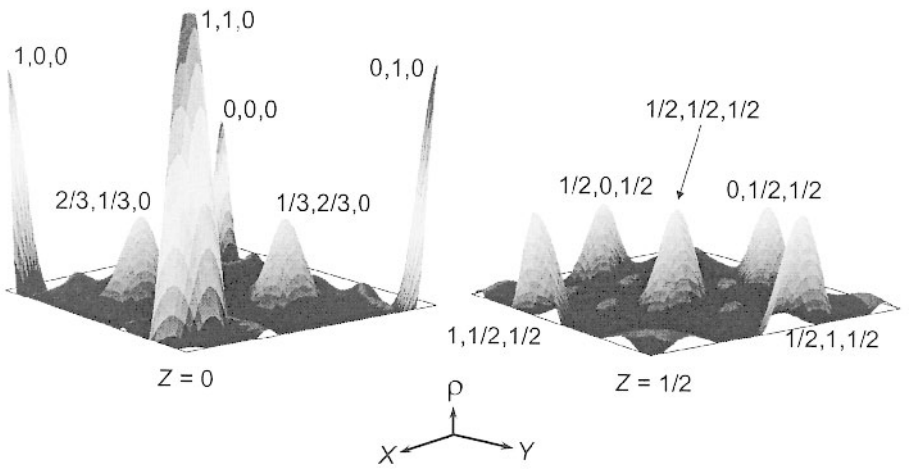


Figure 6.13. The cross-sections of the three-dimensional Fourier map of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ at Z = 0 (left) and at Z = 1/2 (right) calculated using structure amplitudes listed in *Table 6.4* and phase angles determined by the La atom placed in the 1(a) site and Ni atoms placed in the 2(c) and 3(g) sites. The notations are identical to *Figure 6.12*.

Table 6.7. The three-dimensional electron density distribution in the symmetrically independent part of the unit cell of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ calculated using the observed structure factors determined from Le Bail's extraction (*Table 6.4*) and phase angles determined by the La atom placed in the 1(a), and Ni atoms placed in the 2(c) and 3(g) sites of the space group P6/mmm (R_F = 6.9 %).

Fourier map peak number	*x*	*y*	*z*	Peak height
1	**0**	**0**	**0**	**70**
2	**0.5**	**0**	**0.5**	**27**
3	**0.6667**	**0.3333**	**0**	**25**
4	0	0	0.304	3
5	0.141	0.067	0.5	2

The major difference between the two Fourier maps shown in *Figure 6.12*, *Figure 6.13*, *Table 6.6*, and *Table 6.7* is that peak heights of the correctly placed atoms are much stronger than the heights of false peaks.[1] Furthermore, the coordinates of false peaks vary but the coordinates of true maxima remain the same. As is easy to verify by the calculation of distances, none of the peaks listed below peak No. 3 in *Table 6.7* has a reasonable distance to the La and Ni atoms already located in the unit cell.

Considering the low R_F, the absence of new peaks on the second Fourier map, which may correspond to additional atoms, and the fact that the contents of the unit cell matches that established from the gravimetric density of the material, we conclude that all atoms in the unit cell of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ have been located. It makes no sense to proceed with the least squares refinement of atomic parameters using structure factors determined from Le Bail's extraction, and the refinement of the crystal structure should be completed using the Rietveld technique (see Chapter 7). The coordinates and possible distribution of atoms are listed in *Table 6.8* and the crystal structure of the material is illustrated in *Figure 6.14*.

Table 6.8. Coordinates of atoms in the unit cell of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ as determined from powder diffraction data. All coordinates are fixed by symmetry of the corresponding sites and only population and displacement parameters can and should be refined using Rietveld technique.

Atom	Site	*x*	*y*	*z*
La	1(a)	0	0	0
0.97Ni+0.03Sn	2(c)	1/3	2/3	0
0.97Ni+0.03Sn	3(g)	1/2	0	1/2

[1] False peaks (e.g. peak No. 4 in *Table 6.6*, which is easily recognizable in *Figure 6.12*) appear on Fourier maps due to a variety of reasons: i) the largest contribution comes from the truncation of the Fourier summation (Eq. 2.133) because only a limited amount of diffraction data is available (see *Table 6.4*); ii) the structure amplitudes are not exact, especially when powder diffraction data were used in combination with Le Bail's extraction, and iii) phase angles calculated using atomic parameters, which are not fully refined, are still imprecise because we used randomly assigned displacement parameters and assumed completely random distribution of Ni and Sn in two possible sites.

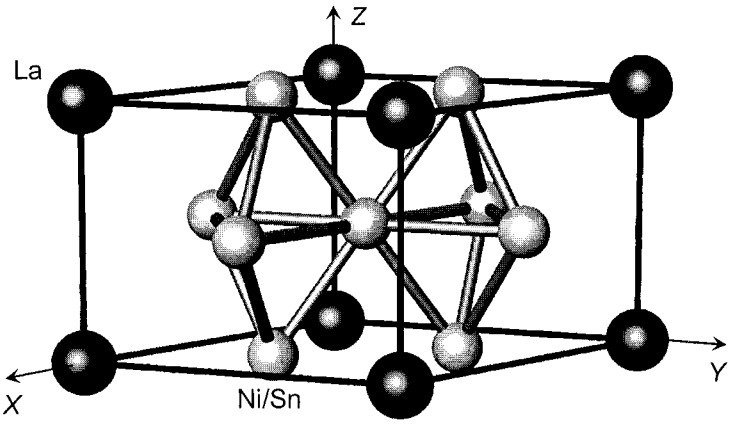


Figure 6.14. One unit cell in the crystal structure of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$.

It is easy to verify that if we would start with the La atom in the 1(b) site with coordinates 0,0,1/2, then the missing five Ni+Sn atoms will appear on a subsequent Fourier map in 2(d) – 1/3,2/3,1/2, and 3(f) – 1/2,0,0 sites.[1] The two crystal structures are indeed identical to one another because they are only different by a translation vector (0,0,1/2), i.e. they correspond to a different choice of the unit cell origin.

According to Pearson's Handbook, this crystal structure is commonly known as the $CaCu_5$-type structure.[2] The parent $LaNi_5$ alloy is well known for its unique hydrogen storage properties, and many closely related alloys with the same crystal structure have been commercialized as electrode materials in rechargeable nickel-metal hydride batteries.

6.10 Crystal structure of $CeRhGe_3$ from x-ray data[3]

In this example, we consider a powder diffraction pattern of $CeRhGe_3$, collected using Mo Kα radiation. We already discussed a part of this pattern in problem 2, Chapter 5. The alloy crystallizes in a tetragonal crystal system with $a = 4.3979(1)$ and $c = 10.0329(3)$ Å. Files with experimental data saved

[1] We leave verification of this statement to the reader as a self-exercise.

[2] W.Z. Haucke, Kristallstruktur von $CaZn_5$ and $CaCu_5$, Z. Anorg. Chem. **244**, 17 (1940).

[3] V.K. Pecharsky and K.A. Gschneidner, Jr., unpublished. The alloy was prepared by arc-melting a stoichiometric mixture of pure components and then heat treated at 900°C for one week. Metallographic examination indicated that the alloy was essentially a single phase material.

in two different formats (**Ch6Ex02_MoKa.dat** and **Ch6Ex02_MoKa.xy**) are found on the CD accompanying this book.

Analysis of possible systematic absences indicates a body-centered lattice with no additional forbidden reflections. Thus, one the following eight space groups is to be expected: I4/mmm, $I\bar{4}m2$, $I\bar{4}2m$, I4mm, I422, I4/m, $I\bar{4}$ or I4. The measured gravimetric density of the alloy is 7.79 g/cm^3. One unit cell (V = 194.05 Å^3) contains two formula units of $CeRhGe_3$ ($Z = 1.98 \cong 2$) or a total of two Ce, two Rh and six Ge atoms. Similar to the previous example, none of the eight space groups can be excluded because all contain 2- and 4-fold sites suitable to accommodate all three types of atoms in an ordered or disordered fashion. Both Rh and Ge atoms have similar atomic volumes and may occupy same sites simultaneously, while Ce atoms are much larger and should occupy their own sites.

Full pattern decomposition has been performed using LHPM-Rietica. Peak shapes have been represented using a pseudo-Voigt function. The progression of the full pattern decomposition is shown by the corresponding figures of merit, which are assembled in *Table 6.9*, and the results are illustrated in *Figure 6.15*, *Figure 6.16*, and *Table 6.10*.

Table 6.9. Figures of merit obtained during Le Bail decomposition of the powder diffraction pattern of $CeRhGe_3$. Wavelengths used: $\lambda K\alpha_1$ = 0.70932 Å, $\lambda K\alpha_2$ = 0.71361 Å; R_{exp} = 2.96 %.

Refined parameters	Illustration	R_p	R_{wp}	χ^2
Background (linear)	-	32.68	44.44	226.1
+ a, c	-	27.35	35.45	143.9
+ U, V, W, η_0, asymmetry	-	7.63	10.74	13.23
+ Background (4th order), broader base	-	4.89	7.03	5.67
All, with Howard's[1] asymmetry	*Figure 6.15*	4.71	6.87	5.41
All, with FCJ[2] asymmetry	*Figure 6.16*	4.45	6.52	4.88

The use of Mo Kα radiation shifts all diffraction peaks to lower Bragg angles and therefore, asymmetry effects are more severe than in the previous example, where Cu Kα radiation was used. As a result, the order in which parameters were refined was changed to avoid potential least squares instability problems. When all parameters were refined in essentially the same approximation as in the previous example (see row 5 in *Table 6.9*), the resultant figures of merit were satisfactory, but a careful analysis of *Figure 6.15* indicates that the selected peak shape function does not adequately describe the observed peak shapes at low Bragg angles.

[1] See the footnote on page 518.

[2] Asymmetry was treated in the two-parameter approximation given by L.W. Finger, D.E. Cox, and A.P. Jephcoat, A correction for powder diffraction peak asymmetry due to axial divergence, J. Appl. Cryst. **27**, 892 (1994).

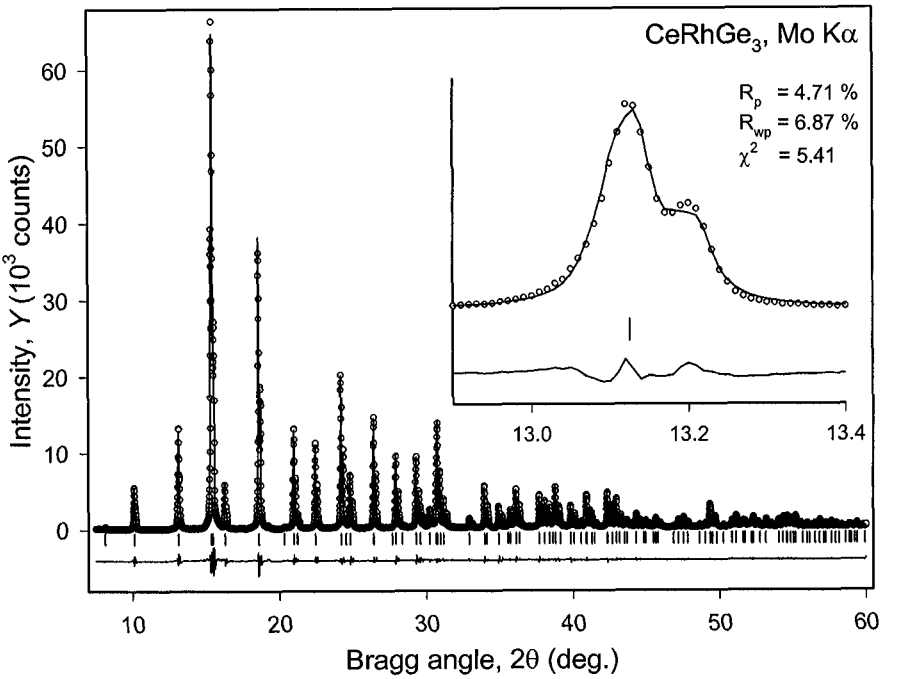


Figure 6.15. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $CeRhGe_3$ after all parameters were refined in the same approximation as in the previous example. The powder diffraction data were collected from a ground sample of $CeRhGe_3$ using Mo Kα radiation on a Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode diffractometer. The divergence slit was 0.38°; the receiving slit was 0.03°. The experiment was carried out in a step scan mode with a step 0.01° and counting time 4 sec per step. The inset illustrates an inadequate asymmetry approximation.

An improvement of the peak shape function (*Figure 6.16*) was obtained by choosing a different asymmetry correction, i.e. that suggested by Finger, Cox and Jephcoat (FCJ, see the footnote on page 531 and section 2.9.1), where the effects of axial divergence are treated by introducing a two-parameter asymmetry function. The residuals show some improvement (see *Table 6.9*), and this modification has an effect on the lattice parameters: the unit cell dimensions and zero shift refined using Howard's asymmetry approximation are $a = 4.3986$, $c = 10.0331$ Å, $\delta 2\theta = 0.044°$, while they become $a = 4.3981$, $c = 10.0320$ Å, $\delta 2\theta = 0.038°$ in the FCJ approximation. Given the fact that the least squares standard deviations of lattice parameters are smaller than 10^{-4} Å, this difference is statistically significant and the result shown in *Figure 6.16* should be considered as a better outcome of the full pattern decomposition.

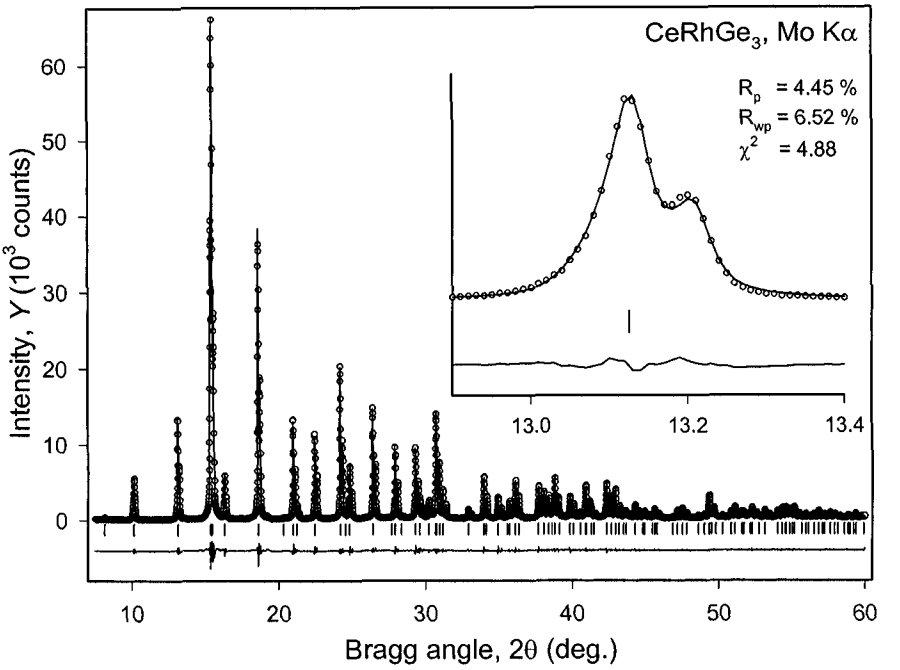


Figure 6.16. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $CeRhGe_3$ after refinement of all parameters with an asymmetry correction in the Finger, Cox and Jephcoat approximation. The inset illustrates an adequately treated asymmetry (compare with the inset in *Figure 6.15*).

Table 6.10. The list of Bragg reflections with their corresponding observed structure factors squared determined after Le Bail's full pattern decomposition of the x-ray powder diffraction pattern of $CeRhGe_3$.

h	*k*	*l*	$\|F^{obs}\|^2$	$\sigma\|F^{obs}\|^2$	*h*	*k*	*l*	$\|F^{obs}\|^2$	$\sigma\|F^{obs}\|^2$
0	0	2	13	0[a]	2	3	7	146	1
0	1	1	94	0	0	4	6	76	1
1	1	0	756	2	2	4	4	229	2
0	1	3	1435	2	0	2	10	39	0
1	1	2	1984	2	0	1	11	44	1
0	0	4	1054	4	0	3	9	273	2
0	2	0	4329	7	3	3	6	428	3
0	2	2	6	0	0	5	1	22	0
1	1	4	929	3	3	4	1	22	0
1	2	1	53	0	1	5	0	151	1
0	1	5	895	3	1	4	7	104	1
1	2	3	950	2	0	5	3	298	1
0	0	6	185	1	3	4	3	298	1
0	2	4	720	3	1	5	2	301	1
2	2	0	3276	8	2	4	6	54	0

h	*k*	*l*	$\|F^{obs}\|^2$	$\sigma\|F^{obs}\|^2$	*h*	*k*	*l*	$\|F^{obs}\|^2$	$\sigma\|F^{obs}\|^2$
2	2	2	2	0	2	2	10	0	0
1	1	6	1249	4	0	0	12	568	5
0	3	1	37	0	1	2	11	86	1
1	2	5	664	2	0	4	8	315	2
1	3	0	382	2	2	3	9	385	2
0	1	7	363	2	1	5	4	189	1
0	3	3	756	2	2	5	1	23	0
1	3	2	1006	2	1	3	10	170	1
0	2	6	141	1	1	1	12	272	2
2	2	4	558	3	0	5	5	226	1
0	0	8	806	6	3	4	5	226	1
1	3	4	520	2	3	3	8	53	1
2	3	1	19	0	2	5	3	271	2
0	3	5	593	3	0	2	12	612	4
1	1	8	78	1	4	4	0	1346	8
1	2	7	240	1	0	3	11	48	0
2	3	3	549	2	2	4	8	382	2
2	2	6	107	1	1	4	9	329	2
0	4	0	2012	9	4	4	2	7	0
0	2	8	871	4	1	5	6	390	2
0	1	9	696	3	0	1	13	50	0
0	4	2	343	2	2	5	5	193	1
1	3	6	724	3	3	5	0	149	1
1	4	1	33	0	0	5	7	107	1
2	3	5	407	2	3	4	7	107	1
3	3	0	502	3	3	5	2	309	2
0	3	7	212	2	4	4	4	181	1
1	4	3	492	2	0	4	10	69	1
3	3	2	564	2	2	2	12	556	4
0	4	4	316	2	0	6	0	764	6
0	0	10	113	1	2	3	11	51	0
2	4	0	1530	6	0	6	2	45	0
2	2	8	541	3	3	5	4	162	1
1	2	9	383	2	1	6	1	0	0
2	4	2	25	0	3	3	10	153	1
3	3	4	277	2	1	2	13	27	0
1	1	10	306	2	0	0	14	9	0
1	4	5	317	2	1	3	12	129	1
1	3	8	46	0	1	5	8	101	1

[a] Some of the errors are listed as zeros because of automatic rounding to integers.

Just as in the previous example, $CeRhGe_3$ is an intermetallic compound and it makes sense to assume the highest symmetry space group – I4/mmm – as a first attempt to solve the crystal structure. Once again, we are looking for a total of 10 atoms, 2 Ce, 2 Rh and 6 Ge; Ce is the strongest scattering atom (58 electrons), while Ge is the weakest (32 electrons). Considering the simplicity of the unit cell and the presence of only two heavy atoms (Ce), the

Patterson technique should be an adequate tool to solve this crystal structure.[1]

The file with the observed structure factors (*Table 6.10*) was processed accordingly, and the resultant distribution of the interatomic vectors in the asymmetric part of the unit cell in the space group I4/mmm is listed in *Table 6.11*. A cross section of the three-dimensional distribution of the interatomic vectors in the unit cell of $CeRhGe_3$ at $V = 0$ is also illustrated in Chapter 2, *Figure 2.61*, left. It only makes sense to take into consideration those vectors, which have reasonable lengths, i.e. which are approximately equal or longer than the expected shortest interatomic distance. In the case of $CeRhGe_3$ they should exceed ~2.5 Å, and these are the six strongest peaks, in the Patterson function which are highlighted in bold in *Table 6.11* (r_{Ce} = 1.85, r_{Rh} = 1.35, and r_{Ge} = 1.25 Å).

Table 6.11. The three-dimensional distribution of the interatomic vectors (the Patterson function) in the symmetrically independent part of the unit cell of $CeRhGe_3$ calculated using the observed structure factors determined from Le Bail's extraction (*Table 6.10*).

Peak number	*u*	*v*	*w*	Peak height
1	**0**	**0**	**0**	**6000**
2	**0.5**	**0**	**0.253**	**1673**
3	**0**	**0**	**0.341**	**1666**
4	**0**	**0**	**0.5**	**1424**
5	**0**	**0**	**0.239**	**926**
6	**0.5**	**0**	**0.390**	**829**
7	0.5	0.271	0.474	112
8	0.266	0	0.301	62
9	0.268	0	0.433	41
10	0.176	0.176	0.322	20

After consulting the International Tables for Crystallography (see *Table 6.12*) there are two sites in the unit cell with I4/mmm symmetry that may accommodate 2 Ce atoms: 2(a) with the coordinates 0,0,0; and 2(b) with the coordinates 0,0,1/2. Both sites differ only by a (0,0,1/2) shift of the whole structure and produce no additional peaks on the Patterson map except 0,0,0 and its symmetrical equivalent 1/2,1/2,1/2. We note that since there are only 2 Rh atoms in the unit cell, they can be accommodated in the second two-fold position. The corresponding Ce-Rh interatomic vector is 0,0,1/2 $[(0,0,0)_{Ce} - (0,0,1/2)_{Rh} = (0,0,1/2)_{Ce\text{-}Rh}]$, and it is peak No. 4 in *Table 6.11*. Thus, it appears that we have to test only one possible model: 2 Ce in 2(a) and 2 Rh in 2(b) because switching the occupancy of these two sites is the

[1] Patterson method has a high success rate when applied to intermetallic structures mainly because of the high resolution of the resultant three-dimensional distribution of interatomic vectors. The latter is due to noticeably greater minimal interatomic distances and lower atomic displacement parameters when compared to other classes of compounds.

result of shifting the entire structure by 0,0,1/2. The interatomic distance Ce–Rh (3.11 Å) is slightly shorter than the sum of the corresponding atomic radii, but it remains within normal limits.[1]

Table 6.12. Low multiplicity sites available in the space group I4/mmm.

Site	Coordinates of symmetrically equivalent points			
2(a)	0,0,0;	1/2,1/2,1/2		
2(b)	0,0,1/2;	1/2,1/2,0		
4(c)	0,1/2,0;	1/2,0,0;	1/2,0,1/2;	0,1/2,1/2
4(d)	0,1/2,1/4;	1/2,0,1/4;	1/2,0,3/4;	0,1/2,3/4
4(e)	0,0,*z*;	0,0,$\bar{z}$;	1/2,1/2,1/2+*z*;	1/2,1/2,1/2-*z*
8(f)	1/4,1/4,1/4; 3/4,3/4,1/4;	1/4,3/4,1/4; 3/4,1/4,1/4;	3/4,3/4,3/4; 1/4,1/4,3/4;	3/4,1/4,3/4; 1/4,3/4,3/4
8(g)	0,1/2,*z*; 0,1/2,$\bar{z}$;	1/2,0,*z*; 1/2,0,$\bar{z}$;	1/2,0,1/2+*z*; 1/2,0,1/2-*z*;	0,1/2,*z*; 0,1/2,1/2-*z*
8(h)	*x*,*x*,0; $\bar{x}$,$\bar{x}$,0;	*x*,$\bar{x}$,0; $\bar{x}$,*x*,0;	1/2+*x*,1/2+*x*,1/2; 1/2-*x*,1/2-*x*,1/2;	1/2+*x*,1/2-*x*,1/2; 1/2-*x*,1/2+*x*,1/2;
8(i)	*x*,0,0; $\bar{x}$,0,0;	0,*x*,0; 0,$\bar{x}$,0;	1/2+*x*,1/2,1/2; 1/2-*x*,1/2,1/2;	1/2,1/2+*x*,1/2; 1/2,1/2-*x*,1/2
8(j)	*x*,1/2,0; $\bar{x}$,1/2,0;	1/2,*x*,0; 1/2,$\bar{x}$,0;	1/2+*x*,0,1/2; 1/2-*x*,0,1/2;	0,1/2+*x*,1/2; 0,1/2-*x*,1/2

Phase angles were calculated using the model where Ce is in the 2(a) and Rh is in the 2(b) sites. The R_F = 55.6% is nearly identical to the previous example, and the resultant electron density distribution is listed in *Table 6.13*. Analysis of *Table 6.13* immediately indicates that the Rh atom, which was placed in the 2(b) site with coordinates 0,0,1/2, was not confirmed on the Fourier map because there is no peak with the coordinates 0,0,1/2 or 1/2,1/2,0, which are symmetrically equivalent due to the presence of the body-centered translation. Thus, our reasoning may have been flawed, and Rh and Ge could be distributed statistically between two four-fold sites or in a single eight-fold site in this space group symmetry instead of being ordered. The second strongest peak in the Fourier map has coordinates 1/2,0,1/4, which corresponds to the 4(d) site in space group I4/mmm. After placing 25% Rh and 75% Ge in this site and removing Rh from the 2(b) site, the corresponding R_F = 44.0% and the subsequent three-dimensional Fourier map is shown in *Table 6.14*.[2]

[1] When compared to sums of empirical atomic radii, 5 to 10% reduction of the interatomic distances is common in intermetallic phases.

[2] Another possibility would be to place 2 Rh and 2 Ge (i.e. a 50:50 mixture of Rh and Ge in this site) assuming that the remaining four-fold site is fully occupied by Ge, and we leave this exercise to the reader.

Both atoms have been confirmed on the Fourier map and it appears that the next missing atom is located in the 4(e) site with coordinates 0,0,0.368. All interatomic distances are normal and after including this atom into the computation of structure factors and phase angles, the corresponding R_F = 32.2%. This value is quite high, but it is still worthwhile to calculate a third Fourier map, which is shown in *Table 6.15*.

Table 6.13. The three-dimensional electron density distribution in the symmetrically independent part of the unit cell of $CeRhGe_3$ calculated using the observed structure factors determined from Le Bail's extraction (*Table 6.10*) and phase angles determined by Ce atoms placed in the 2(a), and Rh atoms placed in the 2(b) sites of the space group I4/mmm (R_F = 55.6%).

Peak number	*x*	*y*	*z*	Peak height
1	0	0	0	72
2	0.5	0	0.250	13
3	0	0	0.3424	11
4	0	0	0.434	11
5	0	0	0.243	7
6	0.5	0	0.372	5
7	0.5	0.25	0.472	2

Table 6.14. The three-dimensional electron density distribution in the symmetrically independent part of the unit cell of $CeRhGe_3$ calculated using the observed structure factors determined from Le Bail's extraction (*Table 6.10*) and phase angles determined by Ce atoms placed in the 2(a), and 0.25Rh+0.75Ge atoms placed in the 4(d) sites of the space group I4/mmm (R_F = 44.0%).

Peak number	*x*	*y*	*z*	Peak height
1	0	0	0	58
2	0.5	0	0.250	43
3	0	0	0.368	15
4	0.5	0	0	9
5	0.5	0	0.413	5

All atoms present in the model have been confirmed (peaks No. 1 to 3 in *Table 6.15*). The fourth peak, however, is only ~1/3 of peak No. 3 and, therefore, it corresponds to more than 10 electrons. Assuming that an atom or a fraction of atom is located in this position, it has prohibitively short distances (δ) with all other atoms, already located in the unit cell: δ_{1-4} = 2.12 Å; δ_{2-4} = 1.57 Å and δ_{3-4} = 2.22 Å. This result combined with a high R_F (compare R_F = 32.2% obtained in the last iteration with R_F = 6.9% when all atoms were found in the crystal structure of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$) is usually a strong indicator that the symmetry of the material has been overestimated.

Table 6.15. The three-dimensional electron density distribution in the symmetrically independent part of the unit cell of $CeRhGe_3$ calculated using the observed structure factors determined from Le Bail's extraction (*Table 6.10*) and phase angles determined by Ce atoms placed in the 2(a), and 0.25Rh+0.75Ge atoms placed in the 4(d) and 4(c) [z = 0.368] sites of the space group I4/mmm (R_F = 32.2%).

Peak number	x	y	z	Peak height
1	0	0	0	47
2	0	0	0.363	25
3	0.5	0	0.250	23
4	0	0	0.211	8
5	0	0	0.100	5

It is possible to use this model of the crystal structure and attempt Rietveld refinement (as will be illustrated in Chapter 7), but we will proceed with testing other space groups from the list of 8 possible (I4/mmm, $I\bar{4}m2$, $I\bar{4}2m$, I4mm, I422, I4/m, $I\bar{4}$ and I4). Analysis of space groups $I\bar{4}m2$ and $I\bar{4}2m$ indicates that available low-multiplicity sites are essentially identical to those of the space group I4/mmm. When these two groups are tested as described above, the resultant models are also quite suspicious.

The next space group on the list is I4mm (*Table 6.16*). This group has no fixed origin along the Z-axis: one available two fold site 2(a) has coordinates 0,0,z, and the only available 4-fold site has coordinates 1/2,0,z. We note that there is no reason to recalculate the Patterson function, because its symmetry remains I4/mmm. To ensure that we do not place any of the atoms incorrectly we now position only 2 Ce atoms in the 2(a) site in this space group. Because the origin along the Z-axis can be chosen arbitrarily in this space group, it does not matter which z-coordinate is chosen for Ce. After placing 2 Ce in 2(a) with z = 0.000, the R_F is 42.6 %, and the resultant electron density distribution is shown in *Table 6.17*.

Table 6.16. Low multiplicity sites available in the space group I4mm.

Site	Coordinates of symmetrically equivalent points			
2(a)	0,0,z;	1/2,1/2,1/2+z		
4(b)	0,1/2,z;	1/2,0,z;	1/2,0,1/2+z;	0,1/2,1/2+z
8(c)	x,x,z;	$\bar{x}$,x,z;	1/2+x,1/2+x,1/2+z;	1/2-x,1/2+x,1/2+z;
	$\bar{x}$, $\bar{x}$,z;	x, $\bar{x}$,z;	1/2-x,1/2-x,1/2+z;	1/2+x,1/2+x,1/2+z
8(d)	x,0,z;	0,x,z;	1/2+x,1/2,1/2+z;	1/2,1/2+x,1/2+z;
	$\bar{x}$,0,z;	0, $\bar{x}$,z;	1/2-x,1/2,1/2+z;	1/2,1/2-x,1/2+z;

There is no sharp reduction of peak heights between any pair of peaks in *Table 6.17* except after the first, and therefore, we proceed by adding just one two fold-site for the next iteration. Choosing peak No.2 and assuming that it is the next strongest scattering atom, i.e. Rh, the distance between this peak and Ce atom in 2(a) with z = 0.000 is normal. The residual did not

change after Rh in 2(a) with z = 0.662 has been added to the model (R_F = 42.3 %). The subsequent Fourier map is shown in *Table 6.18*.

Table 6.17. The three-dimensional electron density distribution in the symmetrically independent part of the unit cell of $CeRhGe_3$ calculated using the observed structure factors determined from Le Bail's extraction (*Table 6.10*) and phase angles determined by the Ce atom placed in the 2(a) site of the space group I4mm with z = 0.000 (R_F = 42.6 %).

Peak number	x	y	z	Peak height
1	0	0	0	60
2	0	0	0.662	9
3	0.5	0	0.253	9
4	0	0	0.341	9
5	0	0	0.500	7
6	0	0	0.429	7

Table 6.18. The three-dimensional electron density distribution in the symmetrically independent part of the unit cell of $CeRhGe_3$ calculated using the observed structure factors determined from Le Bail's extraction (*Table 6.10*) and phase angles determined by the Ce and Rh atoms placed in the 2(a) sites of the space group I4mm with z = 0.000 and 0.662, respectively (R_F = 42.3 %).

Peak number	x	y	z	Peak height
1	0	0	0	55
2	0	0	0.665	27
3	0	0	0.427	9
4	0.5	0	0.259	9
5	0	0	0.242	8
6	0	0	0.495	6

Proceeding slowly, we add the third peak as Ge and change the z-coordinate of Rh from 0.662 to 0.665 as had been determined from the latest electron density map (*Table 6.18*). All distances remain normal and the residual lowers to R_F = 32.1 %; the Fourier map calculated using phase angles determined by all three independent atoms is shown in *Table 6.19*.

The fourth peak is now about twice as high as the fifth, and all atoms already present in the unit cell have been confirmed. After changing z-coordinates of Rh and the first Ge atom to 0.666 and 0.429, respectively, and adding the coordinates of the fourth peak as Ge in 4(b) with z = 0.262 the R_F = 9.7 %, which is a much lower value when compared to that achieved in the space group I4/mmm. The Fourier map calculated using phase angles determined by all four independent atoms is shown in *Table 6.20*. As follows from this Fourier map, all four atoms have been confirmed and in addition, there is a sharp reduction in peak heights after the fourth maximum in *Table 6.20*. The latter is a clear indication that the structure solution is completed. Therefore, the model (*Table 6.21*), built in the non-centrosymmetric space group I4mm, may be considered a correct solution of the problem and all

structural parameters of $CeRhGe_3$ should be finalized by Rietveld refinement (see section 7.4).

Table 6.19. The three-dimensional electron density distribution in the symmetrically independent part of the unit cell of $CeRhGe_3$ calculated using the observed structure factors determined from Le Bail's extraction (*Table 6.10*) and phase angles determined by Ce in 2(a) with z = 0.000, Rh in 2(a) with z = 0.665 and Ge in 2(a) with z = 0.427 in the space group I4mm (R_F = 32.1 %).

Peak number	x	y	z	Peak height
1	0	0	0	47
2	0	0	0.666	33
3	0	0	0.429	23
4	0.5	0	0.262	9
5	0.5	0	0.400	5
6	0	0	0.177	3

Table 6.20. The three-dimensional electron density distribution in the symmetrically independent part of the unit cell of $CeRhGe_3$ calculated using the observed structure factors determined from Le Bail's extraction (*Table 6.10*) and phase angles determined by Ce in 2(a) with z = 0.000, Rh in 2(a) with z = 0.666, Ge in 2(a) with z = 0.429 and Ge in 4(b) with z = 0.262 in the space group I4mm (R_F = 9.7%). See also *Figure 2.59*, left, in Chapter 2, where this Fourier map is visualized, although with a different selection of the origin of coordinates.

Peak number	x	y	z	Peak height
1	**0**	**0**	**0**	**42**
2	**0**	**0**	**0.665**	**32**
3	**0**	**0**	**0.428**	**22**
4	**0.5**	**0**	**0.265**	**20**
5	0	0	0.173	2
6	0.25	0	0.700	2

Table 6.21. Coordinates of atoms in the unit cell of $CeRhGe_3$ as determined from x-ray powder diffraction data in the space group symmetry I4mm.

Atom	Site	x	y	z
Ce	2(a)	0	0	0.000
Rh	2(a)	0	0	0.665
Ge1	2(a)	0	0	0.428
Ge2	4(b)	1/2	0	0.265

Pearson symbol of this crystal structure is *t*I10 and after consulting Pearson's Handbook it easy to find that it belongs to the $BaNiSn_3$-type structure.[1] The model of this crystal structure is shown in *Figure 6.17*.

[1] W. Doerrscheidt and H. Schaefer, The structure of barium-platinum-tin ($BaPtSn_3$), barium-nickel-tin ($BaNiSn_3$) and strontium-nickel-tin ($SrNiSn_3$) and their relation to the thorium-chromium-silicon ($ThCr_2Si_2$) structure type, J. Less-Common Met. **58**, 209 (1978).

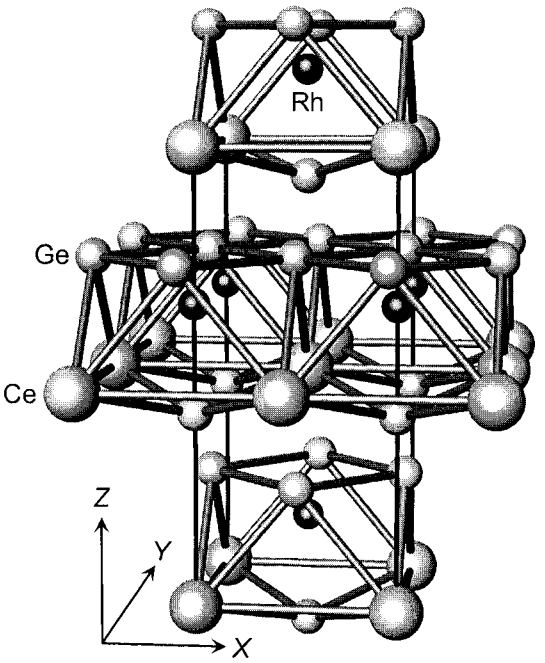


Figure 6.17. The model of the crystal structure of $CeRhGe_3$ as determined from x-ray powder diffraction data.

6.11 Crystal structure of $CeRhGe_3$ from neutron data[1]

We now consider a neutron powder diffraction pattern of $CeRhGe_3$. The file with experimental data (**Ch6Ex03_Neut.dat**) is found on the CD accompanying this book. The full pattern decomposition has been conducted using LHPM-Rietica and peak shapes have been represented by means of the pseudo-Voigt function with asymmetry in Howard's approximation (see the footnote on page 518). The progression of the Le Bail refinement is shown by the corresponding figures of merit, which are listed in *Table 6.22*. The obtained result is illustrated in *Figure 6.18* and the individual structure factors are listed in *Table 6.23*. A few additional intensity maxima appear between 35.2 and 39.1° 2θ due to instrumental contribution, and this region of the powder diffraction pattern was excluded from calculations.

[1] O. Zaharko, V.K. Pecharsky and K.A. Gschneidner, Jr., unpublished. Neutron diffraction data were collected using the High Resolution Position Sensitive Detector Powder Diffractometer for Thermal Neutrons at the Paul Scherrer Institute, Switzerland (http://sinq.web.psi.ch/sinq/instr/hrpt.html). The same alloy was used in the two experiments (x-ray data in section 6.10, and neutron data in this section).

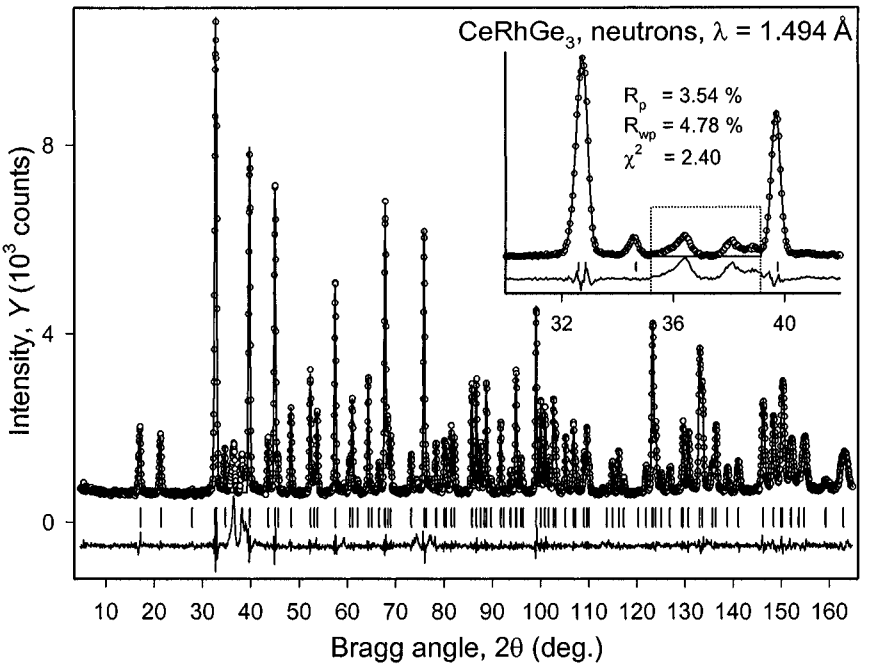


Figure 6.18. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $CeRhGe_3$ after refinement of all parameters. The region $35.2 < 2\theta < 39.1°$ (outlined in the inset) was excluded from the refinement because it contains three additional peaks due to instrumental contribution. The powder diffraction data were collected with a step 0.05° of 2θ.

Table 6.22. Figures of merit obtained at different stages during the full pattern decomposition of the powder diffraction pattern of $CeRhGe_3$ collected using thermal neutrons with the wavelength $\lambda = 1.494$ Å; $R_{exp} = 3.09$ %. The temperature of the experiment was 200 K.

Refined parameters	Illustration	R_p	R_{wp}	χ^2
Background (linear)	-	27.11	34.38	124.0
+ *a*, *c*	-	20.57	27.18	77.52
+ *U*, *V*, *W*, η_0, asymmetry	-	3.87	5.33	2.99
All, background (4^{th} order).	*Figure 6.18*	3.54	4.78	2.40

Table 6.23. The list of Bragg reflections and observed structure factors squared determined after Le Bail's full pattern decomposition of the neutron powder diffraction data of $CeRhGe_3$.

h	*k*	*l*	$\lvert F^{obs}\rvert^2$	$\sigma\lvert F^{obs}\rvert^2$	*h*	*k*	*l*	$\lvert F^{obs}\rvert^2$	$\sigma\lvert F^{obs}\rvert^2$
0	0	2	1667	10	2	4	0	14985	71
0	1	1	537	3	2	2	8	7328	44
1	1	0	0	0	1	2	9	3329	21
0	1	3	2372	9	2	4	2	1299	10
1	1	2	8241	24	3	3	4	7445	44
0	0	4	3567	27	1	1	10	5300	34
0	2	0	17951	65	1	4	5	2360	17
0	2	2	1564	11	1	3	8	2813	18
1	1	4	9641	36	2	3	7	1213	9

h	k	l	$\|F^{obs}\|^2$	$\sigma\|F^{obs}\|^2$	h	k	l	$\|F^{obs}\|^2$	$\sigma\|F^{obs}\|^2$
1	2	1	466	4	0	4	6	3318	25
0	1	5	2992	18	2	4	4	2834	18
1	2	3	2318	13	0	2	10	2225	17
0	0	6	3320	28	0	1	11	0	0
0	2	4	3301	21	0	3	9	2854	22
2	2	0	18709	84	3	3	6	3603	27
2	2	2	1467	12	0	5	1	357	3
1	1	6	4597	27	3	4	1	357	3
0	3	1	512	5	1	5	0	0	0
1	2	5	3060	17	1	4	7	1123	9
1	3	0	210	2	0	5	3	1934	9
0	1	7	1584	13	3	4	3	1930	9
0	3	3	2250	10	1	5	2	5994	26
1	3	2	7326	28	2	4	6	3082	18
0	2	6	3616	23	2	2	10	1802	14
2	2	4	3038	21	0	0	12	10617	78
0	0	8	9660	75	1	2	11	18	0
1	3	4	8333	34	0	4	8	6892	40
2	3	1	496	4	2	3	9	3171	19
0	3	5	3310	24	1	5	4	7187	30
1	1	8	3286	23	2	5	1	2825	13
1	2	7	1460	11	1	3	10	2458	11
2	3	3	2065	14	1	1	12	3134	20
2	2	6	3821	27	0	5	5	2415	13
0	4	0	15318	89	3	4	5	2415	13
0	2	8	7911	45	3	3	8	2621	18
0	1	9	3449	25	2	5	3	1712	11
0	4	2	1217	10	0	2	12	11012	47
1	3	6	4074	23	4	4	0	16837	76
1	4	1	375	4	0	3	11	366	2
2	3	5	2611	18	2	4	8	6659	25
3	3	0	0	0	1	4	9	3265	15
0	3	7	1366	12	4	4	2	1146	6
1	4	3	1916	11	1	5	6	3428	15
3	3	2	6705	37	0	1	13	931	5
0	4	4	2635	21	2	5	5	2513	10
0	0	10	1453	14					

Ignoring the dissimilarities in the values of both the scattered intensity and structure factors for x-rays (*Figure 6.16* and *Table 6.10*, respectively) and neutrons, which are due to the differences in the scattering factors,[1] the

[1] Coherent neutron scattering lengths (b) are 4.84, 5.88, and 8.185 fm for Ce, Rh and Ge, respectively. Since for these three elements the neutron scattering ability accidentally increases with the decreasing atomic number, Ge is determined from neutron data with better accuracy than Ce. On the contrary, the x-ray scattering factors are proportional to the atomic number, and therefore, Ce is determined from x-ray diffraction with a better precision than Ge.

most significant difference between the x-ray and neutron diffraction profiles is in the widths of Bragg peaks and the mixing parameter of the pseudo-Voigt function as illustrated in *Figure 6.19*. The Bragg peaks in the x-ray experiment are narrow and they are well described by a nearly pure Lorentzian. On the other hand, Bragg peaks are much broader and they are closer to a pure Gaussian distribution in the neutron diffraction experiment.

Since we established in the previous section that the correct space group symmetry for this material is I4mm, we will not try any other space groups. The distribution of peaks in the Patterson function calculated using the observed structure factors obtained in the neutron powder diffraction experiment is shown in *Table 6.24*. The *U0W* cross-section of the three-dimensional Patterson function using the same powder diffraction data is illustrated in Chapter 2, *Figure 2.61*, right. The height of an interatomic vector between two atoms of type i and j is proportional to the product of their scattering power, which in this case is proportional to the product of the corresponding coherent scattering lengths, $b_i b_j$. For example, Ce-Ce vectors should be proportional to b^2_{Ce} ($\sim 23\times10^{-30}$ fm^2), while Ge-Ge vectors should be almost three times stronger: $b^2_{Ge} \cong 69\times10^{-30}$ fm^2.

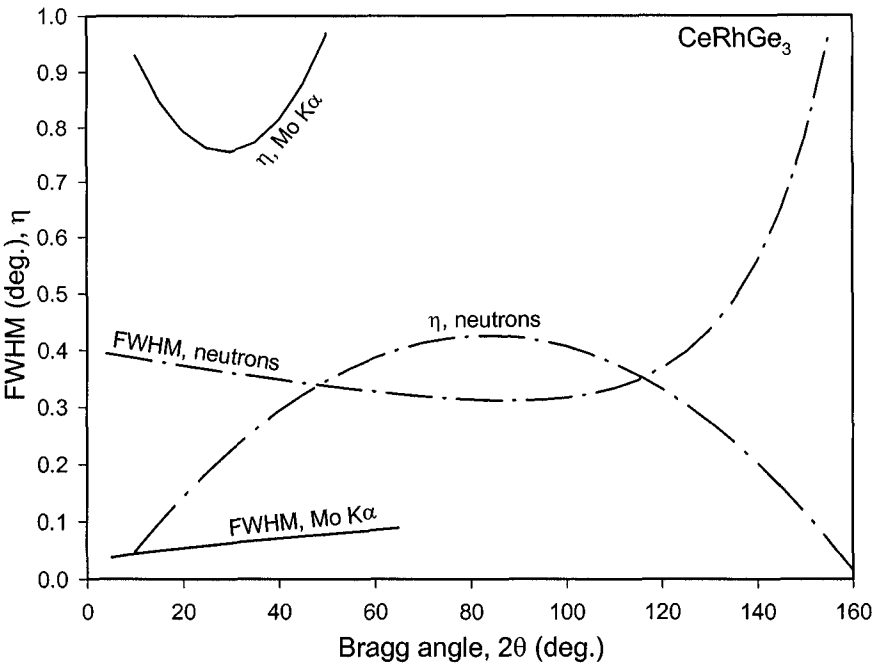


Figure 6.19. Full widths at half maximum (FWHM) and mixing parameters (η) of the pseudo-Voigt function used to approximate peak shapes in the x-ray (*Figure 6.16*) and neutron (*Figure 6.18*) powder diffraction patterns collected from the same $CeRhGe_3$ powder.

Table 6.24. The three-dimensional distribution of the interatomic vectors in the symmetrically independent part of the unit cell of $CeRhGe_3$ calculated using the observed structure factors determined from Le Bail's extraction employing neutron diffraction data (*Table 6.23*).

Patterson map peak number	*u*	*v*	*w*	Peak height
1	**0**	**0**	**0**	**6000**
2	**0**	**0**	**0.5**	**2675**
3	**0.5**	**0**	**0.355**	**1500**
4	**0.5**	**0**	**0.145**	**1500**
5	**0.5**	**0**	**0.250**	**1500**
6	**0**	**0**	**0.237**	**1124**
7	**0**	**0**	**0.346**	**687**
8	**0**	**0**	**0.404**	**489**
9	0.125	0.125	0.088	266
10	0.218	0.218	0.457	260

Only the eight strongest independent peaks in *Table 6.24* (highlighted in bold) have meaningful lengths between ~2.4 and 5 Å. The differences in the heights of Patterson peaks between *Table 6.24* and *Table 6.11* are expected because now Ge atoms are the strongest scattering species (see previous paragraph). Between the two sites (see *Table 6.16*) that may accommodate six Ge atoms, the 2(a) site results in the 0,0,0 vector, and the 4(b) site yields one additional 1/2,1/2,0 vector. Indeed, the second strongest vector found in *Table 6.24* is identical to the latter (0,0,1/2 + 1/2,1/2,1/2 = 1/2,1/2,0). Thus, the Patterson function points to a strongly scattering atom in the 4(b) site of the space group I4mm. Since the origin of coordinates here is not fixed along the *Z*-axis, we may choose any *z*-coordinate for the Ge atom in this site.

Assume that four Ge atoms are located in 4(b) with $z = 0.000$. Let's try to use the Patterson function (*Table 6.24*) and locate a second Ge, which should be in a two-fold site because there is a total of six Ge atoms in the unit cell. The coordinates of a point in 2(a) are 0,0,z. Hence, the corresponding vector between the two independent Ge atoms should be $1/2,0,0 - 0,0,z = 1/2,0,-z \equiv 1/2,0,z$ due to a mirror plane perpendicular to *Z* at $z = 1/2$, which is present in the space group I4/mmm that describes Patterson symmetry. A second vector can be found from $1/2,0,0 + 1/2,1/2,1/2 - 0,0,z = 0,1/2,1/2-z$. Given the presence of a four-fold axis parallel to *Z*, this vector is identical to $1/2,0,1/2-z$. These are vectors No. 3 and 4 in *Table 6.24* assuming $z = 0.355$ (or $z = 0.145$). Without other atoms in the model of the crystal structure, the two choices are equivalent, and any of the two *z*-coordinates may be selected to represent Ge atom in the 2(a) site. Thus, the two independent Ge atoms, according to the Patterson function, are as follows: 4Ge1 in 4(b): 1/2,0,0.000, and 2Ge2 in 2(a): 0,0,0.355. The corresponding residual R_F = 29.0 %. The coordinates of peaks found on the three-dimensional Fourier map calculated using phase angles determined from this partial model of the crystal structure are listed in *Table 6.25*.

Table 6.25. The three-dimensional nuclear density distribution in the symmetrically independent part of the unit cell of $CeRhGe_3$ calculated using the observed structure factors determined from Le Bail's extraction (*Table 6.23*) and phase angles determined by Ge in 4(b) with $z = 0.000$ and Ge in 2(a) with $z = 0.355$ in the space group I4mm ($R_F = 29.0$ %).

Fourier map peak number	*x*	*y*	*z*	Peak height
1	0	0	0.355	73
2	0.5	0	0	63
3	0	0	0.754	18
4	0	0	0.587	15
5	0	0	0.119	11
6	0	0	0.921	10

The next strongest peak (No. 3) also belongs to the 2(a) site with the coordinate z = 0.754. Its shortest interatomic distances are $\delta_{3\text{-}Ge1} = 3.30$ and 3.36 Å and $\delta_{3\text{-}Ge2} = 3.27$ Å. All three correspond to Ce rather than to Rh, even though Ce is a light scattering atom when compared to Rh. Thus, after placing 2Ce in 2(a) with $z = 0.754$, the $R_F = 19.8$ % and the subsequently calculated Fourier map is illustrated in *Table 6.26*.

Table 6.26. The three-dimensional nuclear density distribution in the symmetrically independent part of the unit cell of $CeRhGe_3$ calculated using the observed structure factors determined from Le Bail's extraction (*Table 6.23*) and phase angles determined by Ge in 4(b) with $z = 0.000$, Ge in 2(a) with $z = 0.355$, and Ce in 2(a) with $z = 0.754$ in space group I4mm ($R_F = 19.8$ %).

Fourier map peak number	*x*	*y*	*z*	Peak height
1	0	0	0.353	61
2	0.5	0	0	55
3	0	0	0.758	29
4	0	0	0.580	13
5	0	0	0.113	10
6	0.5	0	0.258	7

So far three atoms have been confirmed, and the fourth strongest peak points to an atom that also belongs to the 2(a) site with $z = 0.580$. The only atom, which is missing from our model, is Rh. When 2 Rh atoms are placed in this site, the interatomic distance $\delta_{Rh\text{-}Ce} = 1.75$ Å, which is too short. The fourth peak is therefore, a false maximum and it should be discarded.[1] After the next strongest peak (No. 5) is tested, all distances are normal. The R_F = 16.3 % and the subsequent Fourier map is listed in *Table 6.27*, which now displays a sharp drop in peak heights after peak No. 4. The cross-section of

[1] False peaks may sometimes be stronger than the real peaks on the Fourier map, especially when a structural model is incomplete and/or structure factors accuracy is relatively low, which is the case here. One atom, which is still missing from the model, is Rh; it is the second strongest scattering atom and, therefore, phase angles are relatively imprecise thus causing the appearance of a strong false peak.

the nuclear density distribution in the *X*0*Z* plane calculated using the same powder diffraction data is shown in *Figure 2.59*, right, in Chapter 2. It is worth noting that *Figure 2.59* represents a different origin of coordinates since its selection along the *Z*-axis is arbitrary in this space group symmetry.

Table 6.27. The three-dimensional nuclear density distribution in the symmetrically independent part of the unit cell of $CeRhGe_3$ calculated using the observed structure factors determined from Le Bail's extraction (*Table 6.23*) and phase angles determined by Ge in 4(b) with $z = 0.000$, Ge in 2(a) with $z = 0.355$, Ce in 2(a) with $z = 0.754$, and Rh in 2(a) with $z = 0.113$ in the space group I4mm ($R_F = 16.3$ %).

Fourier map peak number	*x*	*y*	*z*	Peak height
1	0	0	0.349	48
2	0.5	0	0	47
3	0	0	0.108	33
4	0	0	0.759	24
5	0	0	0.233	6
6	0	0	0.000	3

Since we did not change the coordinates of atoms to those refined from the previous Fourier map computations, we will do it now and assume the distribution of atoms in the unit cell of $CeRhGe_3$ as shown in *Table 6.28*. All atoms were assigned identical isotropic displacement parameters $B = 0.5$ Å^2. The resulting $R_F = 9.8$%, which is quite close to that obtained using x-ray diffraction data (see previous section). The coordinates of all atoms may be further refined by calculating another Fourier map. This is, however, unnecessary since the model of the crystal structure (*Figure 6.20*) appears complete and all relevant structural parameters should and will be refined using the Rietveld technique based on the available neutron powder diffraction data (see Chapter 7).

Table 6.28. Coordinates of atoms in the unit cell of $CeRhGe_3$ as determined from neutron powder diffraction data in the space group symmetry I4mm. $R_F = 9.8$%.

Atom	Site	*x*	*y*	*z*
Ge1	4(b)	0.5	0	0.000
Ge2	2(a)	0	0	0.349
Ce	2(a)	0	0	0.759
Rh	2(a)	0	0	0.108

A comparison of *Table 6.21* and *Table 6.28* indicates that the coordinates of the atoms are different in the two models. Nonetheless, the models are identical: the two crystallographic bases are related to one another by the center of inversion and by different origins of coordinates, which is easily seen in *Figure 6.20*.

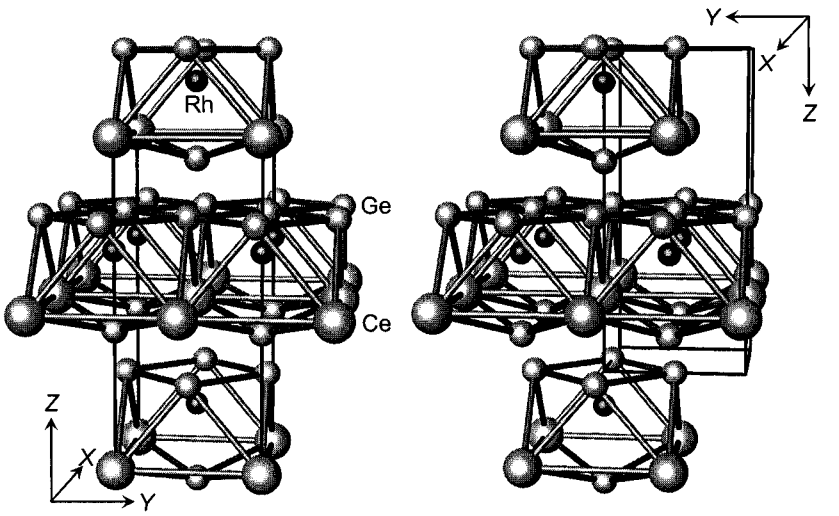


Figure 6.20. The comparison of the crystal structure of $CeRhGe_3$ as determined from x-ray (left) and neutron (right) powder diffraction data. The two models are identical except for the inversion of the coordinate system and differently chosen origin of the unit cell.

6.12 Crystal structure of Nd_5Si_4[1]

The next example is also an intermetallic compound, Nd_5Si_4, which is the most complex among those considered so far. The powder diffraction pattern (*Figure 6.21*, data files **Ch6Ex04_CuKa.dat** and **Ch6Ex04_CuKa.xy** are found on the CD) has been indexed in a tetragonal crystal system with a = 7.871 and c = 14.812 Å. Analysis of the systematic absences indicates that reflections $h00$ with $h \neq 2n$ and $00l$ with $l \neq 4n$ are extinct and points to two possible space groups: $P4_12_12$ or $P4_32_12$. The complexity of this example arises from a large primitive unit cell of the material, which yields over 440 Bragg reflections possible between 18 and 120° 2θ when using Cu Kα radiation. One of the major difficulties in the full pattern decomposition here is in the uncertainty of the background at high Bragg angles, where multiple reflections heavily overlap. Therefore, the background baseline should be monitored at all times during the refinement.

The progression of the Le Bail full pattern decomposition is illustrated in *Table 6.29* and the results are shown in *Figure 6.21*. Bragg peaks were represented by the pseudo-Voigt function with Howard's asymmetry correction.

[1] A.O. Pecharsky, K.A. Gschneidner, Jr., and V.K. Pecharsky, unpublished. The alloy was prepared by arc-melting a stoichiometric mixture of pure components.

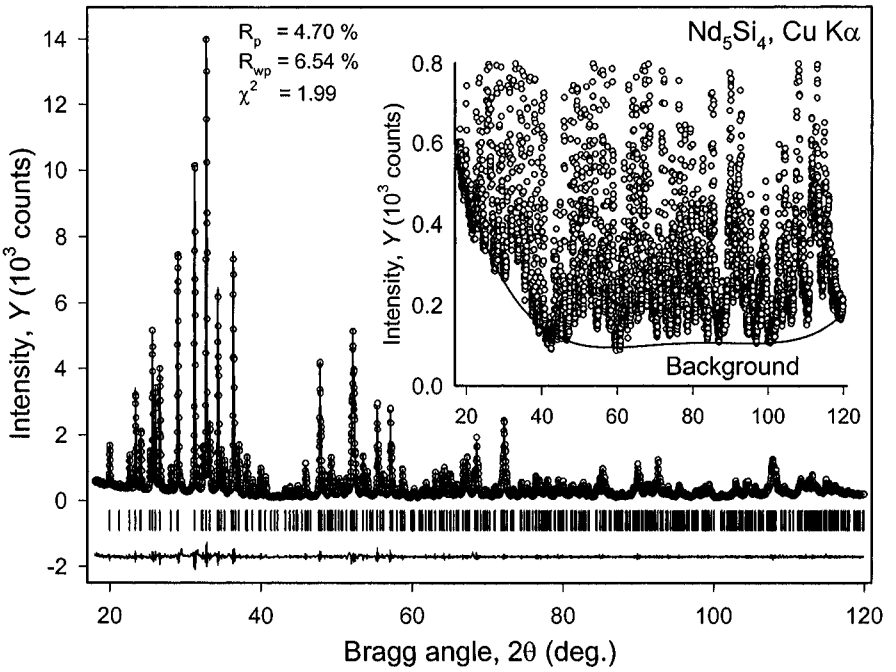


Figure 6.21. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of Nd_5Si_4 after refinement of all parameters. The powder diffraction data were collected from a ground sample of Nd_5Si_4 using Cu Kα radiation on a Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode diffractometer. The divergence slit was 0.75° and the receiving slit was 0.03°. The experiment was carried out in a continuous scanning mode with a sampling step 0.02° and a scan rate of 0.5 deg/min. The inset shows the low intensity region of the powder diffraction pattern with a properly determined background (solid line).

Table 6.29. Figures of merit obtained at different stages during the full pattern decomposition of the powder diffraction pattern of Nd_5Si_4. Wavelengths used: $\lambda K\alpha_1$ = 1.54059 Å, $\lambda K\alpha_2$ = 1.54441 Å; R_{exp} = 4.64 %.

Refined parameters	Illustration	R_p	R_{wp}	χ^2
Background (linear)	-	13.70	19.06	16.86
Background (5^{th} order)	-	10.42	14.15	9.29
+ *a*, *c*, *U*, *V*, *W*, η_0, asymmetry	-	5.14	7.03	2.30
All	*Figure 6.21*	4.70	6.54	1.99

The measured gravimetric density of the alloy is 5.96 g/cm^3 and one unit cell contains Z = 3.95 ≅ 4 formula units of Nd_5Si_4. The two possible space groups symmetry are enantiomorphous and they cannot be distinguished using powder diffraction data. The results shown in *Table 6.29* and *Figure*

6.21 are obtained in the space group $P4_12_12$. Due to a large number of Bragg reflections, the list of individual structure factors squared is found on the CD in the data file **Ch6Ex04_F2.dat**.

The complexity of this crystal structure precludes easy interpretation of the Patterson function because there is a total of 20 Nd atoms in the unit cell. Therefore, we will try to solve the crystal structure of this alloy using direct methods. The space group symmetry $P4_12_12$ contains only two possible sites, which are listed in *Table 6.30*.

Table 6.30. Sites available in space group symmetry $P4_12_12$.

Site	Coordinates of symmetrically equivalent points			
4(a)	$x,x,0$;	$\bar{x},\bar{x},1/2$;	$1/2-x,1/2+x,1/4$;	$1/2+x,1/2-x,3/4$
8(b)	x,y,z;	$\bar{x},\bar{y},1/2+z$;	$1/2-y,1/2+x,1/4+z$;	$1/2+y,1/2-x,3/4+z$;
	$y,x,\bar{z}$;	$\bar{y},\bar{x},1/2-z$;	$1/2-x,1/2+y,1/4-z$;	$1/2+x,1/2-y,3/4-z$

The array of the individual structure factors determined from Le Bail's full pattern decomposition was processed using WinCSD (see footnote No. 4 on page 515) and, according to a combined figure of merit, one of the possible solutions was notably better than the others. The subsequently calculated E-map is listed in *Table 6.31*.

The first two peaks in *Table 6.31* correspond to atoms in the general site position 8(b) of the space group $P4_12_12$, and the third peak indicates an atom in the 4(a) site. Interatomic distances among peaks No. 1 to 3 vary from ~3.4 to ~3.7 Å, which match well the atomic radius of Nd (~1.85 Å). Thus, it appears that the direct phase angles determination results in finding all Nd atoms, which are expected to be in one unit cell of the compound (8 + 8 + 4 = 20). Recalling that Nd is the strongest scattering atom in this crystal structure, it makes little, if any, sense to further analyze the E-map: the locations of Si atoms should be easily revealed on a subsequent Fourier map (*Table 6.32*) after calculating reflection phases using the coordinates of the first three peaks as three independent Nd atoms. At this point $R_F = 31.1$ %.

Table 6.31. The three-dimensional E-map in the symmetrically independent part of the unit cell of Nd_5Si_4 calculated using the observed structure factors determined from Le Bail's extraction and directly determined phase angles in the space group $P4_12_12$.

E-map peak number	*x*	*y*	*z*	Peak height
1	0.3698	0.0021	0.4543	36
2	0.1268	0.9925	0.8768	28
3	0.8118	0.1882	0.7500	19
4	0.2089	0.1725	0.6881	8
5	0.8661	0.9856	0.2168	7
6	0.1218	0.0046	0.0224	7
7	0.6805	0.1999	0.4311	7

Table 6.32. The three-dimensional Fourier map in the symmetrically independent part of the unit cell of Nd_5Si_4 calculated using the observed structure factors determined from Le Bail's extraction and phase angles determined by three Nd atoms: 8Nd1 in 8(b) with $x = 0.3698$, $y = 0.0021$, $z = 0.4543$; 8Nd2 in 8(b) with $x = 0.1268$, $y = 0.9925$, $z = 0.8768$ and 4Nd3 in 4(a) with $x = 0.3118$ in the space group $P4_12_12$ ($R_F = 31.1$ %).

Fourier map peak number	x	y	z	Peak height
1	0.3713	0.0053	0.4564	75
2	0.1276	0.9908	0.8780	72
3	0.8107	0.1893	0.7500	63
4	0.4238	0.1989	0.8100	13
5	0.1799	0.2036	0.3114	12
6	0.2322	0.0429	0.4980	10
7	0.1282	0.0793	0.1500	9
8	0.7451	0.0777	0.4221	9

All three Nd atoms were confirmed on the Fourier map. Even though there is no sharp reduction of peak heights among peaks 4 through 8, calculation of the interatomic distances indicates that only peaks No. 4 and 5 can be used as positions of silicon atoms. Both coordinate triplets correspond to the general site in the space group $P4_12_12$. Assuming that these are the missing Si atoms, the Nd–Si distances vary between ~2.9 and ~3.3 Å, and Si–Si distances are 2.50 Å ($r_{Si} = 1.10$ Å). The calculated $R_F = 27.3$ % when all five atoms are placed as determined from the E-map (Nd) and the Fourier map (Si), and the coordinates of the electron density peaks on the subsequent Fourier map are shown in *Table 6.33*.

The entire model of the crystal structure has been confirmed by the last Fourier map, which in addition has a two-fold reduction in the heights of the observed electron density maxima after peak No. 5. After the coordinates of all atoms have been changed as determined by the latest electron density distribution, the model of the crystal structure, which is shown in *Table 6.34*, results in $R_F = 27.1$ %.

Table 6.33. The three-dimensional Fourier map in the symmetrically independent part of the unit cell of Nd_5Si_4 calculated using the observed structure factors determined from Le Bail's extraction and phase angles determined by three Nd and two Si atoms: 8Nd1 in 8(b) with $x = 0.3698$, $y = 0.0021$, $z = 0.4543$; 8Nd2 in 8(b) with $x = 0.1268$, $y = 0.9925$, $z = 0.8768$; 4Nd3 in 4(a) with $x = 0.3118$; 8Si1 in 8(b) with $x = 0.4238$, $y = 0.1989$, $z = 0.8100$ and 8Si2 in 8(b) with $x = 0.1799$, $y = 0.2036$, $z = 0.3114$ in the space group $P4_12_12$ ($R_F = 27.3$ %).

Fourier map peak number	x	y	z	Peak height
1	0.3714	0.0057	0.4561	61
2	0.1280	0.9903	0.8779	59
3	0.8103	0.1897	0.7500	52
4	0.4220	0.2004	0.8095	17
5	0.1778	0.2070	0.3108	15
6	0.2371	0.0395	0.5003	7
7	0.8345	0.1294	0.3169	7
8	0.1239	0.0444	0.1529	7

Table 6.34. Coordinates of atoms in the unit cell of Nd_5Si_4 as determined from x-ray powder diffraction data in the space group symmetry $P4_12_12$ (R_F = 27.1%).

Atom	Site	*x*	*y*	*z*
Nd1	8(b)	0.3714	0.0057	0.4561
Nd2	8(b)	0.1280	0.9903	0.8779
Nd3[a]	4(a)	0.3103	0.3103	0
Si1	8(b)	0.4220	0.2004	0.8095
Si2	8(b)	0.1778	0.2070	0.3108

[a] The coordinates of Nd3 were modified from 0.8103, 0.1897, 3/4 (*Table 6.33*) to represent the triplet in a standard notation, i.e. *x*, *x*, 0 (see *Table 6.30*), by using the following transformation: *x*-1/2, 1/2-*y*, *z*-0.75.

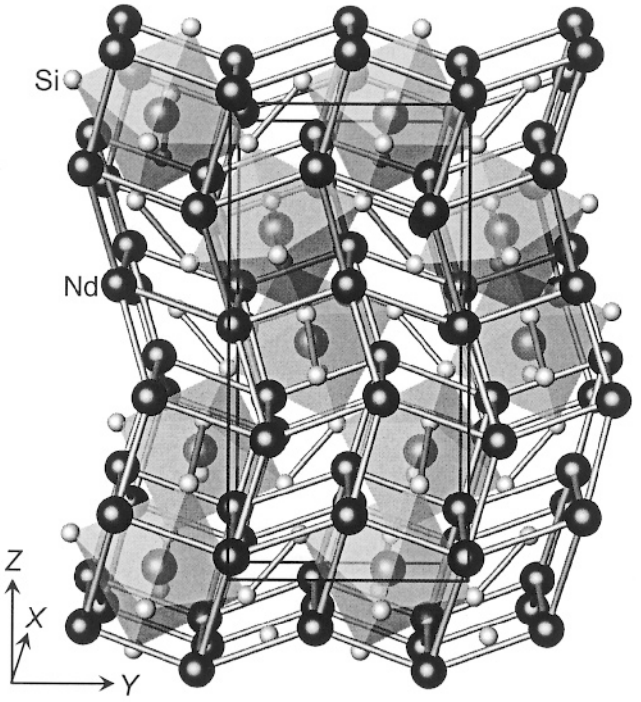


Figure 6.22. The model of the crystal structure of Nd_5Si_4 as determined from x-ray powder diffraction data.

The value of the residual is higher than any of the R_F's we have seen so far. This is associated with the multiple overlapping Bragg peaks at high angles, which becomes especially severe at $2\theta > \sim 70°$ (see *Figure 6.21*). As a result, the full pattern decomposition produces individual intensities and squared structure factors, which are affected by larger than usual errors. This is easy to verify by eliminating high Bragg angle reflections: when only reflections below 70° 2θ are included in the computation, the corresponding R_F becomes 20.3%.

The Pearson symbol of this crystal structure is *t*P36 and after consulting Pearson's Handbook, it is easy to find that the crystal structure of Nd_5Si_4 belongs to the Zr_5Si_4-type.[1] Its model is shown in *Figure 6.22*. The solution of this crystal structure must be completed by Rietveld refinement and it will be discussed in the next chapter.

6.13 Crystal structure of $NiMnO_2(OH)$[2]

This is an example of a quite simple inorganic compound, nickel manganese oxide hydroxide $NiMnO_2(OH)$, with relatively good but far from perfect crystallinity. Due to a peculiar shape of the crystallites, which grow as well-defined and elongated faceted needles (see inset in *Figure 6.23*), the powder exhibits a tendency toward a complex preferred orientation. The latter is always a complicating factor especially when a structure solution from first principles should be undertaken.[3] This example also illustrates how to detect and refine hydrogen atoms from powder data (see Chapter 7), which may be a difficult and often impossible task to accomplish using x-rays.

Powder diffraction data were collected using a specimen prepared from a thoroughly ground powder screened through a 38 μm sieve. First, a fast experiment was conducted in the range $2 \leq 2\theta \leq 70°$ using a continuous scan with a sampling step of 0.03° and a scan rate of 1 deg/min. Positions of 23 individual Bragg reflections at $2\theta \leq 60°$ were determined using a semi-manual profile fitting. Indexing was performed using TREOR, which resulted in an orthorhombic base-centered lattice with 24 possible reflections, $F_{20} = 135$ (0.003, 47).

In order to proceed with the structure solution, a high quality powder diffraction pattern to $2\theta_{max} = 110°$ was collected in a weekend experiment (*Figure 6.23*, data files **Ch6Ex05_CuKa.xy** and **Ch6Ex05_CuKa.raw** are located on the CD). The unit cell dimensions were refined using all 75 observed Bragg peaks resulting in $a = 2.8609(1)$ Å, $b = 14.6482(5)$ Å, $c = 5.2703(2)$ Å, $V = 220.86(2)$ Å^3, and sample displacement of –0.123(6) mm for a 250 mm goniometer radius.

[1] H.U. Pfeifer and K. Schubert, Crystal structure of Zr_5Si_4, Z. Metallk. **57**, 884 (1966).

[2] R. Chen, P.Y. Zavalij, M.S. Whittingham, J.E. Greedan, N.P. Raju, and M. Bieringer, The hydrothermal synthesis of the new manganese and vanadium oxides, $NiMnO_3H$, MAV_3O_7 and $MA_{0.75}V_4O_{10}{\cdot}0.67H_2O$ (MA = CH_3NH_3), J. Mater. Chem. **9**, 93 (1999). The polycrystalline material was prepared by hydrothermally treating a mixture of Li_2CO_3, $N(CH_3)_4MnO_4$, and $Ni(CH_3COO)_2$ taken in a molar ratio 1:1.5:1 at 200°C for 2 days.

[3] When preferred orientation effects are strong, the intensities of Bragg reflections become biased by systematic errors. A correction is nearly impossible before the crystal structure is solved and the preferred orientation refined using an acceptable model. These errors are in addition to the errors introduced by deconvolution of the overlapped Bragg peaks.

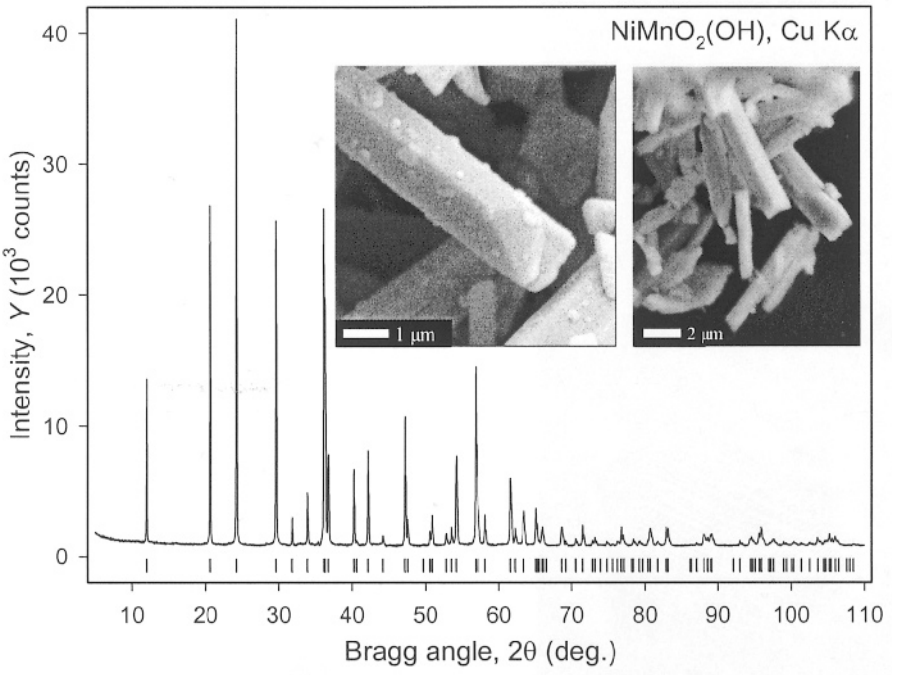


Figure 6.23. Powder diffraction pattern collected from the $NiMnO_2(OH)$ powder using Cu Kα radiation on a Scintag XDS2000 diffractometer. The experiment was carried out in a step scan mode with a step 0.02° and counting time 30 sec per step. The vertical bars indicate calculated positions of the $K\alpha_1$ components of all possible Bragg reflections. The inset shows the scanning electron microscopy image of particle morphology in the as-received state.

Analysis of the systematic absences indicated three possible space groups: Cmcm or one of its non-centrosymmetric subgroups $Cmc2_1$ or C2cm (Ama2 in a standard setting). The pattern decomposition was carried out by using a profile fitting procedure over manually selected small ranges of Bragg angles.[1] For each group of peaks, present in the processed range, a least squares profile fitting was conducted while refining both the positions and full widths at half maximum of potentially resolvable Bragg reflections. A parabolic background, a mixing parameter of the pseudo-Voigt function, and an asymmetry parameter were identical for all peaks within each

[1] Semi-manual profile fitting was chosen over the full pattern decomposition to facilitate a better control over the resultant integrated intensities extracted from groups of overlapped Bragg peaks due to significant anisotropic peak broadening (see *Figure 6.24*). Small fitting ranges were chosen visually such that they contained one or more distinct Bragg reflections clearly delimited by the background. Full pattern decomposition of this pattern can be carried out using Le Bail or Pawley techniques. Both should converge to $R_p \cong 4.2$ %, $R_{wp} \cong 5.5$ %, and $\chi^2 \cong 4.1$. We encourage the reader to undertake this effort and use thus extracted intensities to solve the crystal structure as a self-exercise.

selected range. The average R_p was ~2.5 %.[1] In order to maintain stability of the non-linear least squares, the FWHM was constrained to be identical for all peaks only in a few ranges at high Bragg angles. As can be seen from *Figure 6.24*, the distribution of full widths at half maximum is rather broad, which is associated with the anisotropic peak broadening due to peculiar shapes of the particles.

In illustrating the solution of this crystal structure, we will use the extracted intensities of 30 observed peaks at $2\theta \leq 70°$ with a total of 36 possible Bragg reflections. Only two pairs of reflections overlap nearly completely in this range of Bragg angles and cannot be decisively resolved.[2] Four unobserved reflections were assigned some small intensity values, each totaling about 1% of the intensity of the nearest observed peak, because the presence of all, even near-zero-intensity, Bragg reflections increases the chances of solving the structure using direct phase determination methods. The absence of zero-intensity reflections is especially important when data sets are small, as is the case here with only 36 possible reciprocal lattice points.

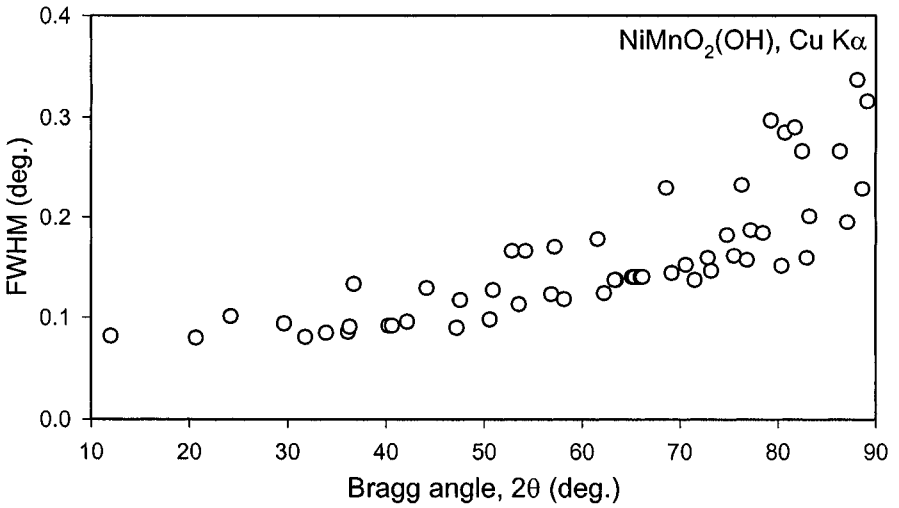


Figure 6.24. Full width at half maximum as a function of Bragg angle, observed in the powder diffraction pattern of $NiMnO_2(OH)$.

[1] This value is considerably lower than R_p reachable during full pattern decomposition because the extended background-only ranges are usually excluded from the semi-manual profile fitting. Furthermore, an independent treatment of positions and full widths at half maximum of Bragg peaks observed within the processed range enables a better fit between the observed and calculated intensities.

[2] The ability to see which Bragg peaks are resolvable with acceptable accuracy and those which are not resolvable, is a benefit available in a semi-manual profile fitting.

The indexed list of the individual structure factors $|\mathbf{F}_{obs}|$ is found on the CD in the file **Ch6Ex05.hkl** and the corresponding crystal data in the file **Ch6Ex05.ins**, both are in the SHELX format. The intensities of all observed Bragg reflections may also be employed in the solution of this crystal structure, even with a greater success. Thus, the corresponding list is found in the file **Ch6Ex05_full.hkl**, and we encourage the reader to use it as a practical self-exercise.

Chemical composition of the crystals was established from microprobe and thermogravimetric (TGA) analyses. According to microprobe data, the ratio of Mn to Ni is 1:1. From TGA results, the amount of oxygen was determined to be 1.5 times that of both metals, thus suggesting a 1:1:3 stoichiometry, i.e. $NiMnO_3$. The amount of hydrogen cannot be accurately established due to the complexity of the TGA trace, which has several different weight losses in both oxygen and nitrogen atmospheres.

The gravimetric density of the crystals was not measured but the content of the unit cell may be established by using Eq. 6.5 and the expectation that the reasonable value of ρ should be between 4 and 5 g/cm^3. The estimated density assuming $NiMnO_3$ composition has a reasonable value of 4.86 g/cm^3 when $Z = 4$. The two closest numbers of formula units ($Z = 3$ or 5) are impossible due to the restrictions imposed by symmetry: in a base-centered lattice, sites with odd multiplicities are impossible. The next two closest numbers ($Z = 2$ or 6) result in unrealistically low and high densities, respectively. Thus, we assume that there are 4 Mn, 4 Ni and 12 O atoms in the unit cell.

Considering space group Cmcm first, the multiplicity of the general site here is 16. The group also includes several 8- and 4-fold sites, suggesting that at least one special position with the multiplicity 4 is occupied by oxygen. Both Mn and Ni atoms should occupy 4-fold sites. The remaining 8 O atoms can occupy one position with the multiplicity 8 or two 4-fold sites. The very short unit cell dimension, $a \cong 2.86$ Å, and the presence of mirror planes perpendicular to it further limits possible locations of atoms in this unit cell: all atoms should be located in the mirror planes. Thus, only the following sites 4(a): 0,0,0; 4(b): 0,1/2,0; 4(c): 0,*y*,1/4; and 8(f): 0,*y*,*z* may be occupied. If x accepts a non-zero value, the distance between symmetrically related atoms becomes ~1.43 Å or shorter,[1] which is unrealistic. Another possibility is to use the non-centrosymmetric groups. The space group C2cm does not look promising because the absence of the mirror plane perpendicular to X, which is a very short unit cell edge, is highly unlikely as

[1] Mirror planes are spaced at $1/2a$. Thus, every atom with the coordinates x,y,z has nearest symmetrically equivalent atoms at $-x,y,z$ and $1-x,y,z$. The pairs of atoms are separated by $2xa$ and $(1-2x)a$, respectively. The distances are at maximum when $x = 1/4$, i.e. the spacings are $a/2 \cong 1.43$ Å.

discussed above. The non-centrosymmetric space group $Cmc2_1$ looks more promising as it has a 4-fold special position in the mirror plane perpendicular to *X*: 4(a) with coordinates 0*yz*, where all atoms can be located.

The structure was solved[1] using SHELXS-90 and partial least squares refinement using SHELXL-97 programs.[2] The centrosymmetric space group symmetry Cmcm was tested first, however, several attempts with varying parameters produced no acceptable model. It may be difficult to recognize the incorrect selection of space group symmetry based on a few failures to find the model, especially when relatively low quality or truncated structure factor data are employed (e.g. those extracted from the powder pattern). If a solution at certain conditions in the selected space group symmetry was not found, this does not necessarily mean that it does not exist. Often, it may be tricky to identify a true solution.

Taking into account that the number of formula units per cell ($Z = 4$) gives a preference to the space group $Cmc2_1$, it was chosen for the next attempt. At first, the direct phase angles determination using SHELXS-90 was attempted with all default parameters. The program automatically assigns heavy atoms to the peaks from the E-map, and in this case, the first three peaks were treated as Mn. Analysis of interatomic distances indicated, however, that the second strongest peak cannot be a metal and therefore, this solution was abandoned.[3]

The following step, which is usually recommended when working with powder data and when the default parameters do not result in an acceptable solution, is to decrease the minimum normalized structure amplitude (E_{min}) employed in the generation of phases. In general, this reduction decreases the probability of phase relationships (see Eqs. 2.144, 2.147, and 2.148) but it increases the number of reflections included in the process. In our case, decreasing E_{min} from the default 1.2 to $E_{min} = 1.1$, increases the number of reflections from 11 to 14. The best solution, shown in *Table 6.35*, contains the first two peaks that are suitable as metals and the next three can be suitable as oxygen atoms.[4] Peaks beginning from Q4 and below are unacceptable because they are too close to the already assigned peaks.

[1] Ready to use reflection file **Ch6Ex05.hkl** and crystal data file **Ch6Ex05.ins** are found on the CD. Both can be used as input files for SHELXS-90.

[2] G. M. Sheldrick, Phase annealing in SHELXS-90: direct methods for larger structures, Acta Cryst. **A46**, 467 (1990); G. M. Sheldrick, SHELXL-97. University of Göttingen, Germany, (1997). See the footnote on page 515 on how to obtain the programs.

[3] Generally, a situation like that does not necessarily mean that the model of the crystal structure cannot be completed using this solution. It may take longer and it may be harder to make decisions about which peaks should be included, and what atom types should be assigned to them.

[4] The suitability of peaks as atoms has been judged based on the relative heights of the peaks on the E-map and from the shortest interatomic distances. The distance Mn2 – Q2

Table 6.35. Maxima localized from the E-map refined for the best solution obtained by SHELXS-97 using 14 reflections with $E_{min} = 1.1$ employing intensity data at $2\theta \leq 70°$.

Peak[a]	*x*	*y*	*z*	Height	Bond distances, Å		Comment
					Mn1[b]	Mn2[b]	
Mn1	0.0000	0.3018	0.4909	711.5			
Mn2	-0.5000	0.4934	0.7409	508.9			
Mn3	-1.0000	0.4550	1.0060	343.3		2.04, 2.08	O1
Q1	0.0000	0.4109	0.7040	162.3	1.96	1.89	O2
Q2	-0.5000	0.3482	0.4986	154.5	1.59	2.48	O3
Q3	-0.5000	0.4254	1.0030	103.6			
Q4	-0.5000	0.2987	0.1932	86.4			
Q5	-0.5000	0.2276	0.3901	60.1			

[a] Mn is indistinguishable from Ni at this stage because the former contains 25 electrons, while the latter has 28 electrons, i.e. both atoms have similar scattering factors.

[b] This column lists the distances to the indicated atom in Å.

The obtained model was refined by using SHELXL-97 to $R_F = 25$ %, which resulted in the coordinates listed in *Table 6.36.* Two oxygen atoms, O2 and O3, converged into locations that are too close to Mn1 and therefore, were eliminated from the model. A difference Fourier map was calculated using phase angles determined by Mn1, Mn2, and O1 and the first two strongest maxima are at reasonable distances to both metal atoms.

This is a good place to comment on a nearly blind inclusion of O2 and O3 in the previous step: it was done without the proper analysis of the geometry of the model, i.e. bond angles and coordination polyhedra should be always analyzed in addition to bond distances.[1] The insertion of "incorrect" atoms could be more detrimental than the simple removal of these atoms at a later point. Indeed, this may disable solving a structure as a whole. Therefore, only those atoms, which are rational from chemical and physical points of view, should be included/added to the model. If there is a suspicion about a partially built model, a conventional Fourier map should be computed and used to improve the coordinates of already known atoms and verify their positioning in the unit cell (e.g. see section 6.10, where the improper positioning of the Rh atom was easily detected from a Fourier map calculated in the space group I4/mmm).

Two new oxygen atoms improve the geometry of the model and the following refinement lowers R_F to 9.5% (*Table 6.37*). Overall, this result gives a great confidence in the correctness of the model. All peaks on the

(1.59 Å) is quite short, but at this point in the structure solution it may be acceptable considering a small number of reflections included into the computation of both the phases and E-map.

[1] Analysis of bond angles is usually unnecessary in the case of intermetallic structures, where bonding is predominantly metallic. However, knowing bond angles is critical when solving structures with principally covalent bonding.

subsequent difference Fourier map (only two are listed in *Table 6.37*) are too close to the already present atoms.

Table 6.36. Results of structure refinement (SHELXL-97) and the difference Fourier peaks computed using all reflection data below $2\theta = 70°$ (R_F = 25 %).

Atom/ Peak	*x*	*y*	*z*	U_{iso}/ Height	Bond distances, Å				Comment
					Mn1[a]	Mn2[a]	O2[a]	O3[a]	
Mn1	0.0000	0.3021	0.4777						
Mn2	0.5000	0.4904	0.7232						
O1	0.0000	0.4384	1.0096			2.10,2.21			
O2	1.0000	0.3822	0.4185		1.22	2.67			[b]
O3	0.5000	0.3255	0.5629		1.54	2.56			[b]
Q1	0.5000	0.3961	0.4660	4.5	1.99	1.94	1.47	1.16	O2
Q2	0.5000	0.2192	0.4574	4.0	1.88			1.66	O3
Q3	0.0000	0.3931	0.7511	2.9					
Q4	1.0000	0.2146	0.7047	2.8					

[a] This column lists the distances to the indicated atom in Å.
[b] Deleted.

Table 6.37. Results of structure refinement (SHELXL-97) and the difference Fourier peaks computed using all reflection data below $2\theta = 70°$ (R_F = 9.5 %).

Atom/ Peak	*x*	*y*	*z*	U_{iso}/ Height	Bond distances, Å				Com- ment
					Mn1[a]	Mn2[a]	O1[a]	O2[a]	
Mn1	0.0000	0.3047	0.4759	0.022					
Mn2	0.5000	0.5004	0.7235	0.032					
O1	0.0000	0.4496	0.9497	0.000		2.01,2.16			
O2	0.5000	0.3920	0.4445	0.029	1.93	1.96,2.17			
O3	0.5000	0.2177	0.5605	0.007	1.97,2.22				
Q1	-0.500	0.4302	0.9673	1.9		1.65	1.46		[b]
Q2	0.5000	0.4249	0.6171	1.5		1.24		1.03	[b]

[a] This column lists the distances to the indicated atom in Å.
[b] Distances are unreasonably short.

Thorough readers who try to use the full array of diffraction data in order to verify the solution of this simple crystal structure will easily find out how important is the completeness of the data: the whole model may be obtained from an E-map employing phase angles, generated by using $E_{min} = 1.1$.[1] The refinement of atomic parameters, however, converges to $R_F = 27$ %, which is much higher than $R_F = 9.5$ % obtained for the data array truncated at $2\theta =$

[1] The full array of the individual structure factors is located on the CD in the file **Ch6Ex05_full.hkl**. Identical Bragg reflections have slightly different values of $|F_{hkl}^{obs}|$ when compared to **Ch6Ex05.hkl** because two files were created during two independent profile-fitting attempts. Readers can use this file, or they can create their own list of the observed structure factors by using Le Bail or Pawley full pattern decomposition approaches. In this example, the anisotropic peak broadening should be refined to achieve good convergence between the observed and calculated powder diffraction profiles.

70°. This increase in R_F is associated with the weaker and broader peaks and with a substantial overlap at high Bragg angles, which disable accurate determination of the individual integrated intensities. A similar situation was observed in the intermetallic Nd_5Si_4, see section 6.12.

It is critical to realize that low R_F alone, cannot be taken as a sufficient evidence for the rationality of the structural model.[1] Far more important measures of whether the model is correct, are its geometry (bond distances, angles, coordination polyhedra) and electroneutrality of the crystal. In this example, the structure consists of square pyramids for Mn1 and octahedra for Mn2, which share oxygen atoms and form a three-dimensional framework as shown in *Figure 6.25*. Furthermore, this figure clearly illustrates that there are no mirror planes perpendicular to *Z* and confirms the correctness of the space group $Cmc2_1$. The resulting model appears reasonable and complete except Mn and Ni atoms must be distinguished, and locations of hydrogen atoms should be established. The latter may require a different type of experimental data, while the former should be doable during Rietveld refinement of the structural parameters using the existing x-ray diffraction data, as will be discussed in Chapter 7, section 7.7.

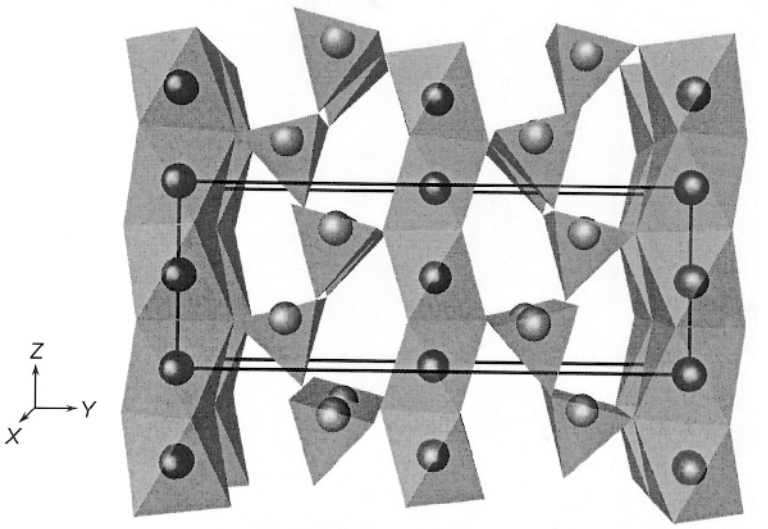


Figure 6.25. Polyhedral representation of the three-dimensional framework in the crystal structure of $NiMnO_2(OH)$ shown along the *X*–axis as the packing of square pyramids [MeO_5] and octahedra [MeO_6], where Me = Mn or Ni. Oxygen atoms are located in the corners of the polyhedra around the metal atoms. The latter are shown as large dark spheres.

[1] R_F and profile residuals (Eqs. 6.18 to 6.22) can be easily lowered by increasing the number of adjustable parameters in a completely unreasonable structural model. Thus, relevant residuals should be employed to gauge the fit between the observed and experimental data rather than as an exclusive measure of the rationality of the underlying crystal structure.

6.14 Crystal structure of *tma*V_3O_7[1]

This example illustrates an unconventional case of solving a crystal structure that shows relatively broad and therefore, substantially overlapped at high angles Bragg peaks in addition to a significant preferred orientation. The latter occurs due to a distinct platelet-like shape of the crystallites. The powder diffraction pattern (*Figure 6.26*) was collected from a tetramethylammonium (*tma*) trivanadate powder – a black graphite-like crystalline material – that was thoroughly ground and screened. The

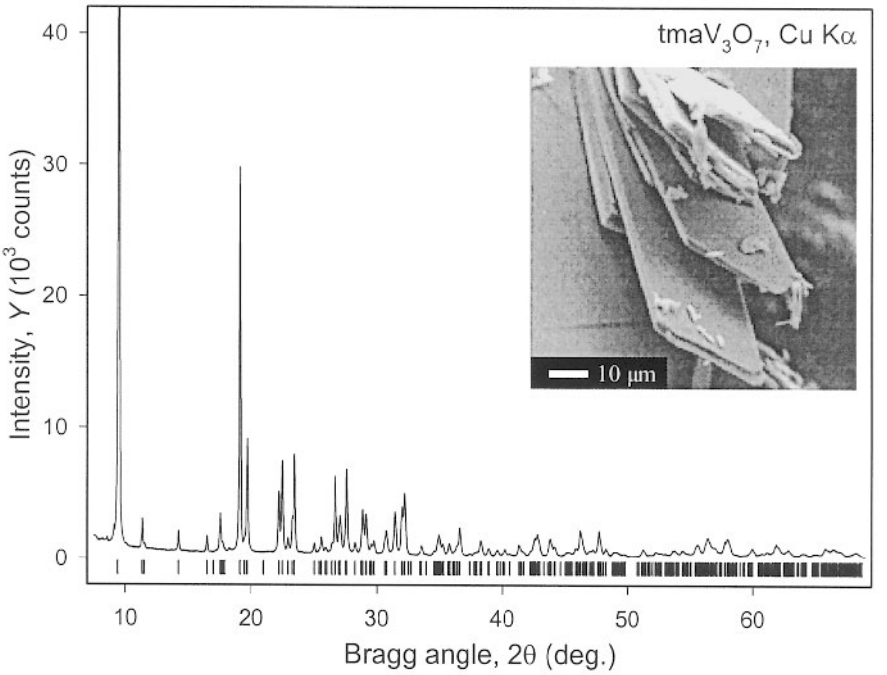


Figure 6.26. Powder diffraction pattern collected from the *tma*V_3O_7 powder using Cu Kα radiation on a Scintag XDS2000 diffractometer. The experiment was carried out in a step scan mode with a step 0.02° and counting time 60 sec per step. The vertical bars indicate calculated positions of the $K\alpha_1$ components of all possible Bragg reflections. The inset shows the scanning electron microscopy image of particle morphology in the as-received state. Experimental data are available in the files **Ch6Ex06_CuKa.xy** and **Ch6Ex06_CuKa.raw** on the CD.

[1] P.Y. Zavalij, T. Chirayil, and M.S. Whittingham, Layered tetramethylammonium vanadium oxide $[N(CH_3)_4]V_3O_7$ by x-ray Rietveld refinement, Acta Cryst. **C53**, 879 (1997); *tma* – tetramethylammonium $[N(CH_3)_4]^+$. The material in a form of a black crystalline powder was prepared by hydrothermal treatment at 185°C of a mixture of V_2O_5, *tma*OH, and LiOH taken in 1:2:1 molar ratio and acidified with CH_3COOH to pH = 6.5.

specimen was prepared by filling a 1 mm deep cavity of a sample holder without applying any pressure (see section 3.5) to minimize preferred orientation effects.

Regardless of all precautions in the sample preparation, the pattern (*Figure 6.26*) contains two distinct Bragg peaks, which are substantially stronger than all others. The first peak at ~9.4° (d = 9.308 Å) is shown at one fourth of its height, and the second at ~19.1° (d = 4.640 Å) has intensity ~4 times lower than the first, yet it is ~3 times higher than any other Bragg reflection. The intensities of the remaining Bragg reflections are below 10% of the strongest. The d-spacing ratio for the two strongest peaks is 2.006, which clearly indicates that they belong to the same zone, for example, 001 and 002 in the 00l zone. Combined with the markedly planar shape of the crystallites (inset in *Figure 6.26*), these features strongly suggest the presence of a substantial preferred orientation, which may create problems in solving the structure and in refining structural and profile parameters. On the other hand, the fact that the two strongest reflections belong to the same zone can be used to correct the observed peak positions for the sample displacement or zero shift errors during the *ab initio* indexing, as was actually done in the original work.[1]

Semi-manual profile fitting was conducted using WinCSD (see the footnote on page 515). The first 41 peaks in the range below $2\theta = 39°$ were indexed using the ITO program in a monoclinic unit cell ($M_{20} = 37$), which was the best and the only solution with all peaks indexed. The unit cell refinement resulted in a = 18.453 Å, b = 6.560 Å, c = 8.437 Å, $\beta = 91.12°$, and V = 1021.1 Å^3. Analysis of the systematic absences results in $h + l = 2n$ for $h0l$ reflections and $l = 2n$ for 00l reflections, which unambiguously points out to $P2_1/n$ ($P2_1/c$ in standard setting) as the only possible space group symmetry. Moreover, $P2_1/c$ is one of the most common groups observed among natural and man-made materials.

Due to the complexity of the pattern, multiple overlaps (e.g. about 90 Bragg reflections are possible in the range of the first 40 observed peaks below $2\theta = 40°$) and the relatively broad peaks, the pattern decomposition was carried out using a semi-manual profile fitting. For each group of Bragg reflections, located within the manually selected ranges of the powder

[1] This example can be used to illustrate an interesting approach that may be helpful in the indexing from first principles. Assume that two patterns were collected from the same powder. The first, using a specimen with minimum or no preferred orientation, and the second with artificially induced strong texture. Provided the texture axis coincides with one of the principal crystallographic directions (e.g. [001], [010], or [001]), the comparison of two patterns may provide critical information about the indices of certain peaks, whose intensity was affected (increased or reduced) the most. Once their indices are determined by analyzing the ratios between the corresponding d-spacings, the problem of finding the remaining lattice parameters is simplified by eliminating one unknown.

diffraction pattern as described in the footnote on page 554, the least squares profile fitting was conducted by refining the individual 2θ position and integrated intensity of each peak. Common for each range were parabolic background, full width at half maximum, and the mixing and asymmetry parameters of the pseudo-Voigt function. The average R_p was ~2.5%. When 2θ exceeds 35°, peak widths increase over 0.15°. Together with the increasing density of peaks, this makes it quite difficult to refine both profile and positional parameters independently. Therefore, full widths at half maximum were linearly extrapolated from previous ranges (*Figure 6.27*) and only individual intensities and positions of Bragg peaks were included as free least squares parameters.

This type of profile fitting is actually a modification of the Pawley decomposition technique performed without restricting peak positions by unit cell dimensions, and in small ranges instead of a full pattern. The observed intensities of 236 individual peaks up to 2θ = 69° were determined in this way with a total of 425 Bragg reflections possible in this range of Bragg angles. Unobserved reflections were assigned small intensity values (equal to about 1% of the intensity of the nearest observed peaks) to improve the chances of solving the structure using direct methods. Experimental data are found on the CD in the following files: GSAS and tabular (XY) formats, files **Ch6Ex06_CuKa.raw** and **Ch6Ex06_CuKa.xy**, respectively; the indexed list of the individual structure factors $|F_{obs}|$ is in the file **Ch6Ex06.hkl**, and relevant crystal data are in the file **Ch6Ex06.ins**. The two latter files are in SHELX format.

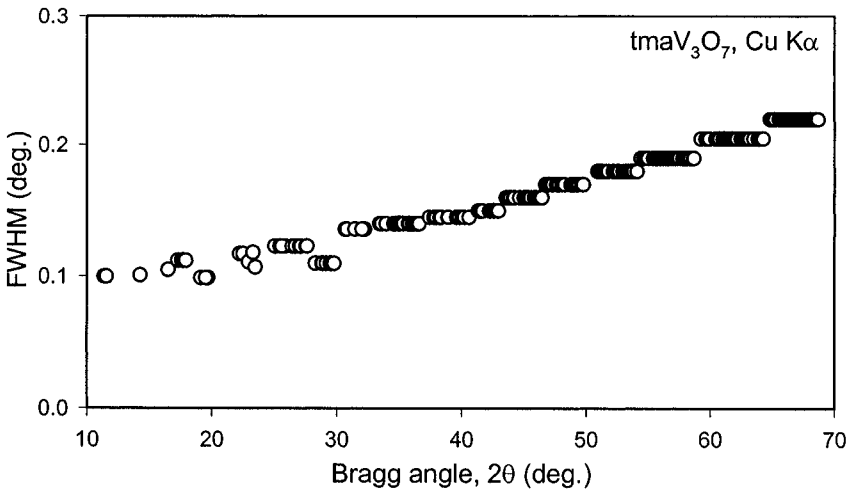


Figure 6.27. Full width at half maximum as a function of Bragg angle observed (below 2θ = 35°) and linearly interpolated (above 2θ = 35°) in the powder diffraction pattern of *tma*V_3O_7 shown in *Figure 6.26.*

Chemical composition of the powder was established from the following data: thermogravimetric analysis in an oxygen atmosphere shows a ~4 % weight gain around 200°C and then a sharp weight loss (19.2 %) at ~320°C. The orange product, obtained after the TGA, was identified from a powder diffraction pattern using the Powder Diffraction File as vanadium pentaoxide, V_2O_5. The decomposition temperature, as detected from the weight loss, is typical for the loss of tetramethylammonium. Thus, the chemical composition of the residue, temperature and weight changes were used to deduct a possible formula of the material, the simplest of which is $tma V_3O_7$, giving a calculated weight loss of 19.5 wt. %. The latter is in good agreement with the experimentally observed 19.2 %. The oxidation states of vanadium in $[V_3O_7]^-$ are 4+ for two vanadium atoms and 5+ for the third one. A weight gain of 4 % in an O_2 atmosphere can be explained by the oxidation of all vanadium to V^{5+} and by the formation of $tma V_3O_8$. The theoretical weight gain of 4.7 % is slightly higher than that observed experimentally (4 %) because the oxidation reaction was not completed before the decomposition began.

The gravimetric density was not measured but assuming Z = 4, which is reasonable for the $P2_1/n$ space group symmetry where the multiplicity of the general site position is 4, the calculated density is 2.20 g/cm^3. Other Z values either do not agree with site multiplicities (e.g. Z = 3 or 5) or they result in the unrealistically high density (e.g. Z = 8). Thus, the final chemical composition, $tma V_3O_7$, appears to be the only feasible choice, and it was employed in the structure determination by using direct phase recovery methods.

As mentioned above, pattern decomposition resulted in 236 distinguishable observed peaks and, therefore, there is a substantial number of unresolved Bragg reflections, which is partially due to a significant peak broadening.[1] Furthermore, there are 12 light atoms (C, N, and O, not counting 12 hydrogen atoms) per 3 vanadium atoms in the formula unit. The ratio of light to relatively heavy atoms is 4:1. A fraction of electrons in the heavy atoms is 41 %, which may be insufficient to recover the whole structure from the phase angles calculated using only the V atoms positions, especially taking into account relatively poor resolution of the diffraction data. Therefore, it is highly unlikely that the Patterson method is suitable in this case, even though it is less sensitive to the data quality. Thus, this structure solution case is far from trivial. All things considered, direct phase determination methods should be employed to find a more significant portion of the model than just the three independent vanadium atoms.

[1] Structure amplitudes of unresolved Bragg reflections were determined by dividing the total intensity among all overlapped reflections equally.

The structure was solved using SHELXS-90 based on the extracted structure amplitudes of 425 possible reflections below 2θ = 70°. The direct phase determination with E_{min} = 1.1 resulted in the E-map containing an acceptable model with three "heavy" peaks (*Table 6.38*) that were automatically assigned to vanadium. The distances from the vanadium atoms to all but one from the list of nine strongest peaks are a good match for V–O bonds. The only exception is Q4, which is too far from all V atoms and too close to Q6 (1.32 Å). The Q4–Q6 distance is not listed in *Table 6.38*.

Since the Q6 distance to V3 is nearly ideal (1.89 Å), the Q6 but not the Q4 peak was included into the trial model. One of the peaks, Q5, is not in contact with vanadium or oxygen atoms, and it was treated as nitrogen. Peaks following Q9 have conflicting distances with the first 12 strongest maxima. The analysis of bond angles and coordination polyhedra confirms the reasonableness of this model. Its composition, V_3O_7 plus one isolated light atom (presumably nitrogen from the tetramethylammonium molecule), agrees well with the TGA data, symmetry restrictions and estimated density.

Table 6.38. Maxima localized from the E-map refined for the best solution obtained by SHELXS-90 using 425 reflections data below 70° 2θ; E_{min}=1.1.

Atom/ Peak	*x*	*y*	*z*	U_{iso}/ Height	Bond distances, Å			Comments[b]
					V1[a]	V2[a]	V3[a]	
V1	0.794	0.176	0.019	429.9				
V2	0.722	0.683	0.069	342.8				
V3	0.785	-0.112	-0.252	281.2				
Q1	0.797	0.189	-0.211	178.5	1.94		2.01	O1a
Q2	0.736	0.482	-0.031	151.7	2.31	1.59	1.96	O2a
Q3	0.892	0.192	0.068	137.1	1.85			O3a
Q4	0.664	0.019	-0.193	133.3			2.46	Deleted
Q5	1.040	0.270	-0.308	132.3				N5a
Q6	0.862	-0.295	-0.284	124.2			1.89	O6a
Q7	0.815	-0.129	0.037	121.1	2.05	2.15		O7a
Q8	0.760	0.263	0.242	116.8	2.07	1.71		O8a
Q9	0.685	0.118	0.040	114.7	2.06			O9a

[a] This column lists the distances to the indicated atom in Å.

[b] The names assigned to atoms consist of the chemical symbol of the element, E-map or Fourier map peak number, and a letter (if any), which indicates the sequential number of the calculated Fourier map: a – corresponds to the first iteration, b – second, and so on.

The least squares refinement of this model using SHELXL-97 yields R_F = 42 % as shown in *Table 6.39*. All oxygen atoms and the isolated nitrogen atom look reasonable because their distances to the vanadium atoms are within acceptable limits. What is not shown in *Table 6.39* is that the coordination polyhedra of V atoms make both chemical and physical sense: vanadium oxide forms a layer, composed of VO_5 pyramids and tetrahedral VO_4, as illustrated in *Figure 6.28*. This layer is similar to layers known for

other vanadates. Thus, the model shown in *Table 6.39* may be considered as a good approximation for the following Rietveld refinement, which will be discussed in section 7.8. Since the difference Fourier map was calculated, analysis of the existing maxima leads to a conclusion that four peaks (not all are the strongest) can be interpreted as carbon atoms: they have reasonable bond distances and form a distorted tetrahedral surrounding of the already found nitrogen atom, which is expected for the tetramethylammonium $[N(CH_3)_4]^+$ cation.

The result of structure refinement after including carbon atoms is shown in *Table 6.40*. Neither the residual nor the distances improve, and one carbon atom, C8b, moves too far away from the nitrogen. The inconsistency in the location of C8b can be detected even without the refinement from a careful analysis of the nitrogen environment and or from C-N-C bond angles. Yet again, this example emphasizes the importance of chemical, physical and geometrical criteria in the process of solving and refining crystal structures when quality, resolution and/or completeness of the data are limited by the technique or by the properties of the specimen.

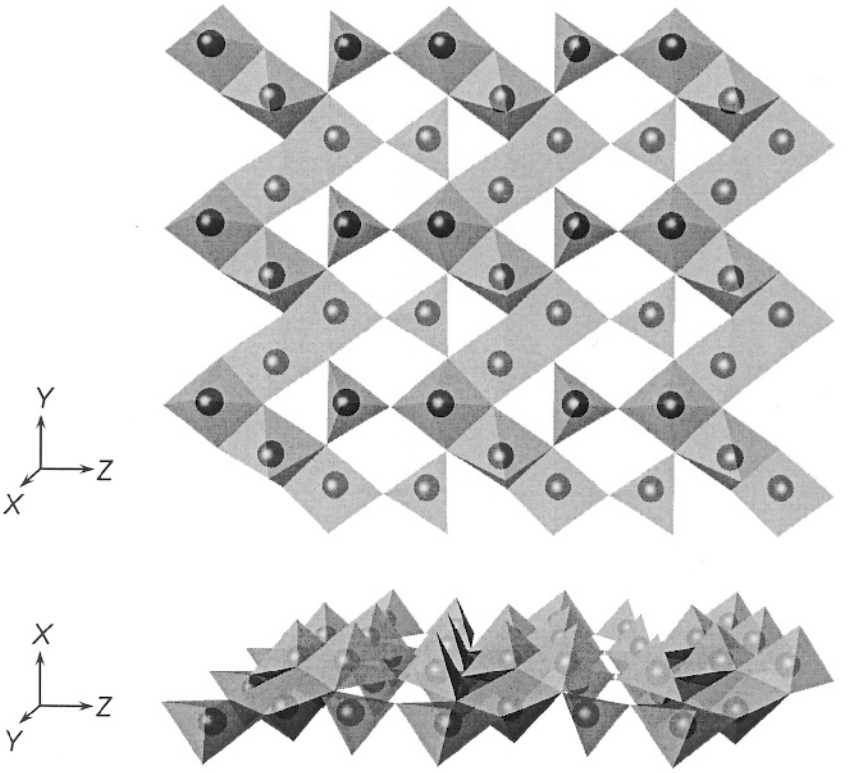


Figure 6.28. Metal oxide layer, shown in two different orientations, in the crystal structure of *tma*V_3O_7, which contains VO_5 pyramids and VO_4 tetrahedra.

Table 6.39 Coordinates of atoms after structure refinement using SHELX and peaks found on the difference Fourier map, which may correspond to possible locations of carbon atoms. All data below 2θ = 70° were used; R_F = 42 %.

Atom/ Peak	*x*	*y*	*z*	U_{iso}/ Height	Bond distances, Å V1[a]	V2[a]	V3[a]	N5a	Comments
V1	0.791	0.178	1.015	0.016					
V2	0.722	0.669	1.088	0.046					
V3	0.782	-0.106	0.759	0.039					
O1a	0.793	0.164	0.797	0.003	1.84		1.81,2.10		
O2a	0.755	0.450	0.993	0.000	1.91	1.75	2.24		
O3a	0.884	0.224	1.052	0.005	1.76				
O6a	0.846	-0.192	0.757	0.008			1.31		
O7a	0.781	-0.159	0.968	0.089	2.25	1.87			
O8a	0.759	0.154	1.230	0.012	1.93	1.58			
O9a	0.698	0.156	1.000	0.108	1.72				
N5a	0.014	0.259	0.793	0.005					
Q3	0.060	0.301	0.903	2.6				1.27	C3b
Q8	0.064	0.247	0.630	2.4				1.66	C8b
Q9	-0.036	0.440	0.761	2.1				1.53	C9b
Q11	-0.001	0.072	0.736	2.1				1.34	C11b

[a] This column lists the distances to the indicated atom in Å.

Table 6.40 Results of structure refinement by using SHELX; R_F = 42 %. Coordinates of all atoms were shifted by a vector (-1/2, 0, -1/2) when compared to *Table 6.39*.

Atom/ Peak	x	y	z	U_{iso}/ Height	Bond distances, Å V1[a]	V2[a]	V3[a]	N5a[a]	Comments
V1	0.292	0.182	0.513	0.011					
V2	0.224	0.665	0.585	0.042					
V3	0.277	-0.108	0.257	0.050					
O1a	0.291	0.193	0.298	0.000	1.81		1.86, 2.02		
O2a	0.257	0.462	0.485	0.000	1.96	1.70	2.17		
O3a	0.389	0.230	0.546	0.018	1.82				
O6a	0.339	-0.181	0.249	0.051			1.24		
O7a	0.272	-0.137	0.473	0.068	2.15	1.84	1.84		
O8a	0.262	0.152	0.727	0.000	1.91	1.60			
O9a	0.191	0.189	0.503	0.030	1.87				
N5a	-0.493	0.241	0.310	0.000					
C3b	-0.449	0.308	0.373	0.000				1.05	
C8b	-0.425	0.223	0.142	0.070				1.90	Incorrect
C9b	-0.507	0.353	0.206	0.010				1.17	
C11b	-0.508	0.078	0.226	0.000				1.31	

[a] This column lists the distances to the indicated atom in Å.

The high value of R_F and poor convergence of the model (for example, the C–N and O6a–V3 bond distances are getting worse instead of improving) are due to both the low resolution and the suspected strong preferred orientation, which was discussed at the beginning of this section but not

confirmed at this point. Actually, in the original paper (see the footnote on page 561), an arbitrary scale factor of 2/3 was applied to the intensities of all *h*00 reflections in order to reduce preferred orientation effects. In Chapter 7 we will see that the preferred orientation here is quite strong. No correction has been applied in this example, yet the model of the crystal structure is reasonable. Geometrical, chemical and physical considerations play a far more important role in this conclusion than the residual at this stage of the crystal structure determination process.

6.15 Crystal structure of *ma*$_2$Mo$_7$O$_{22}$[1]

A white crystalline powder, prepared by hydrothermal treatment at 200°C of a mixture of molybdic acid, H_2MoO_4, and methylammonium (*ma*) chloride, CH_3NH_3Cl, taken in a 1:2 molar ratio and acidified with hydrochloric acid, HCl, to pH = 3.5, resulted in a complex powder diffraction pattern shown in *Figure 6.29*. It was indexed in the monoclinic crystal system as was discussed in section 5.12.2. The space group C2/c (or its acentric subgroup Cc) was established from the analysis of the systematic absences, and the unit cell dimensions were refined using 120 resolved reflections below $2\theta = 60°$: a = 23.0648(6) Å, b = 5.5134(2) Å, c = 19.5609(5) Å, $\beta = 122.931(1)°$, and the sample displacement $\delta = -0.098(3)$ mm for a 250 mm goniometer radius. The unit cell volume is 2087.8 Å^3.

The Powder Diffraction File search was unsuccessful and therefore, further analysis and a structure solution were undertaken. Thermogravimetric analysis in an oxygen atmosphere reveals sharp 7.3 wt. % weight loss at 300°C and the powder diffraction pattern, collected from a solid residue after the TGA, confirms the formation of molybdenum oxide, MoO_3. Assuming the following decomposition reaction:

$$(CH_3NH_3)_mMo_nO_{3n+k} \rightarrow nMoO_3 + mCO_2 + m/2N_2 + 3mH_2O \qquad (6.25)$$

it can be shown that the observed weight loss nearly precisely corresponds to m:n ratio 2:7 and k = m/2 = 1. The latter ratio also follows from the white color of the substance under investigation, which implies that Mo is in the 6+ oxidation state. Thus, the chemical composition of the material is $(CH_3NH_3)_2Mo_7O_{22}$.

A relatively large volume of the monoclinic unit cell translates into a considerable complexity of the diffraction pattern even in the case of a base-centered lattice, as can be seen from *Figure 6.29*. There are ~10 reflections per degree at $2\theta \cong 50°$ and about 20 reflections per degree at $2\theta \cong 100°$.

[1] P.Y. Zavalij and M.S. Whittingham, The crystal structure of layered methylammonium molybdate $(CH_3NH_3)_2Mo_7O_{22}$ from X-ray powder data, Acta Cryst. **C53**, 1374 (1997).

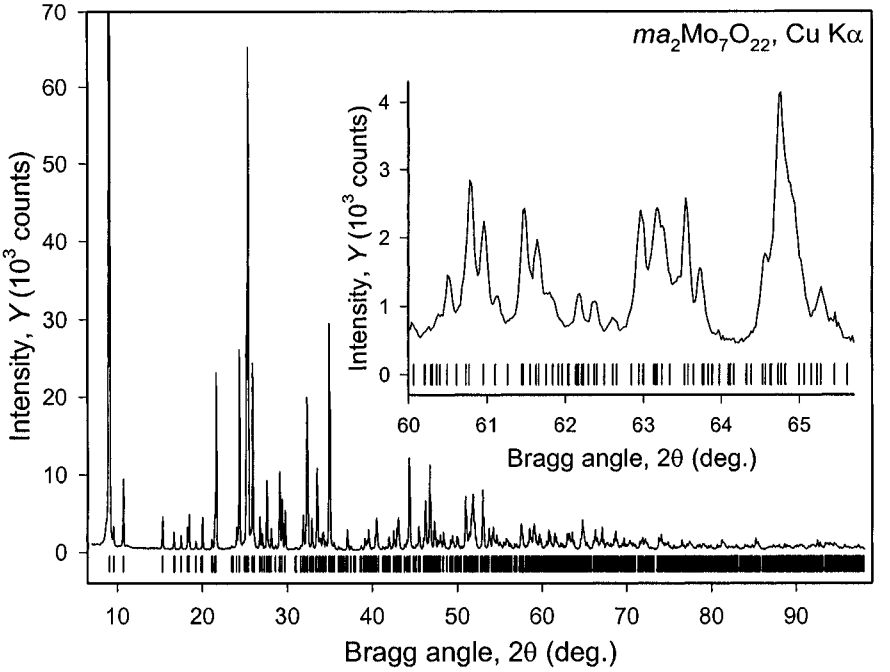


Figure 6.29. Powder diffraction pattern collected from a ground $ma_2Mo_7O_{22}$ powder using Cu Kα radiation on a Scintag XDS2000 diffractometer in a step scan mode with a step 0.02°. The counting time was 30 sec/step in the range $7 \leq 2\theta \leq 67°$ and 60 sec/step for $67 \leq 2\theta \leq 98°$. The counting time was increased at high Bragg angles to improve the counting statistics for a large number of weak Bragg peaks possible in this range. To ensure consistency of intensity measurements, the high Bragg angle part of the diffraction pattern has been scaled to 30 sec/step counting time for further processing. The vertical bars indicate calculated positions of the $K\alpha_1$ components of all possible Bragg reflections. The inset shows the expanded view from 60° to 65.7°, which contains 76 possible reflections.

The total number of possible Bragg reflections below $2\theta = 98°$ is 1032. Therefore, before attempting a structure solution from first principles, a more thorough search of the relevant databases was performed. A search based on the unit cell dimensions and volume produced no results, but after searching the ICSD database for a matching stoichiometry of the molybdate anion,[1] two compounds, both with the space group symmetry C2/c, were found and they are listed together with the title compound in *Table 6.41.*

[1] First, 1174 compounds containing Mo and O were found. Second, the list was narrowed to 151 structures that have monoclinic base-centered or body-centered lattices. Third, "Mo_7O_{22}" text in the chemical formula was searched. Searching all ICSD records for a specific text would be very slow.

Table 6.41. Unit cell dimensions for Mo_7O_{22}–containing compounds present in the ICSD database.

Compound	*a*, Å	*b*, Å	*c*, Å	β, °	*V*, Å^3	ICSD	Ref.
$Cs_2Mo_7O_{22}$	21.54(1)	5.537(3)	18.91(1)	122.71(3)	1897.7	1887	[1]
$Tl_2Mo_7O_{22}$	20.512(6)	5.526(2)	19.460(6)	125.20(3)	1802.4	343	[2]
$ma_2Mo_7O_{22}$	23.0648(6)	5.5134(2)	19.5609(5)	122.931(1)	2087.8		

Considering the unit cell dimensions listed in *Table 6.41*, the title compound is likely to have a structure, which is closely related to both cesium and thallium heptamolybdates. Perhaps they are isostructural to the extent where methylammonium substitutes for metal cations in the crystal lattice. A thallium compound can be also found in the Powder Diffraction File, record No. 30-1349. It is clear why all powder pattern and unit cell dimensions searches failed: unit cell volumes are quite different due to the differences in *a*. The latter is not surprising taking into account that methyl ammonium ions should occupy larger cavities both due to their size and weaker interactions of a hydrophobic methyl group with oxygen atoms. In view of the expected similarity among the three crystal structures listed in *Table 6.41*, the atomic coordinates of the Mo_7O_{22} layer from the Tl compound were used as the initial model of the metal-oxygen framework for the methylammonium compound (*Table 6.42* and *Figure 6.30*).

Table 6.42. Coordinates of Mo and O atoms in the unit cell of $ma_2Mo_7O_{22}$ as assumed from the model of the crystal structure of $Tl_2Mo_7O_{22}$. The space group symmetry is C2/c.

Atom	Site	*x*	*y*	*z*
Mo1	4(e)	1/2	0.1375	1/4
Mo2	8(f)	0.4081	0.0553	0.4751
Mo3	8(f)	0.3732	0.5000	0.0935
Mo4	8(f)	0.0533	0.1061	0.1378
O1	8(f)	0.3140	0.0880	0.3882
O2	8(f)	0.1496	0.1560	0.2199
O3	8(f)	0.0779	0.1750	0.4549
O4	8(f)	0.3995	0.1770	0.0266
O5	8(f)	0.3906	0.2330	0.1641
O6	8(f)	0.0393	0.3870	0.0677
O7	8(f)	0.0234	0.4480	0.1977
O8	8(f)	0.4960	0.4500	0.3196
O9	8(f)	0.4361	0.3800	0.4157
O10	8(f)	0.1395	0.2290	0.3577
O11	8(f)	0.2820	0.4630	0.0033

[1] B.M. Gatehouse and B.K. Miskin, The crystal structures of cesium pentamolybdate, $Cs_2Mo_5O_{16}$, and cesium heptamolybdate, $Cs_2Mo_7O_{22}$, Acta Cryst. **31**, 1293 (1975).

[2] P. Tolédano, M. Touboul, and P. Herpin, Structure crystalline de l'heptamolybdate de thallium(I), $Tl_2Mo_7O_{22}$, Acta Cryst. **B32**, 1859 (1976).

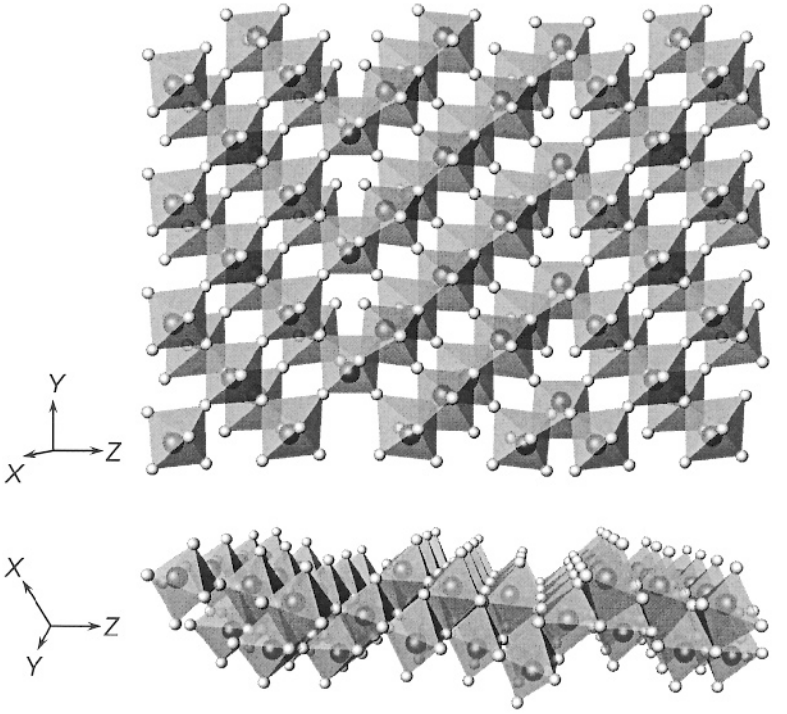


Figure 6.30. Metal oxide layer in the crystal structure of *ma*Mo_7O_{22}, shown in two different orientations. The Mo atoms are shown as large dark grey spheres, and the O atoms as small grey spheres.

If our hypothesis about the relationship between the crystal structures of $Tl_2Mo_7O_{22}$ and *ma*$_2$$Mo_7O_{22}$ is correct, refining relevant atomic parameters and completing the model, i.e. finding the coordinates of missing methylammonium groups should be easier done after the Rietveld refinement, which will de described in the next chapter, section 7.9. Experimental data are found on the CD in the data files **Ch6Ex07_CuKa.xy** and **Ch6Ex07_CuKa.raw**.

6.16 Crystal structure of $Mn_7(OH)_3(VO_4)_4$[1]

A diffraction pattern (*Figure 6.31*) collected using a powder prepared from brown rod-like hollow crystals produced hydrothermally[2] (*Figure 6.31*,

[1] Idealized composition without vacancies; F. Zhang, P.Y. Zavalij, and M.S. Whittingham, Synthesis and characterization of a pipe-structure manganese vanadium oxide by hydrothermal reaction, J. Mater. Chem., **9**, 3137 (1999).

[2] The material was prepared by hydrothermal treatment of V_2O_5, $Mn(CH_3COO)_2$ and $N(CH_3)_4Cl$ taken in 1:1:4 molar ratio at 165 °C for 3 days.

inset) was indexed employing TREOR and using 16 peaks below $2\theta = 40°$ in the hexagonal crystal system with a = 13.255, c = 5.265 Å, V = 801.1 Å^3. The F_N figure of merit, F_{16} = 335(0.0021, 23), is extremely high. ITO indexing produces the same result but in a C-centered orthorhombic lattice with $a_{ortho} = a_{hex}$, $c_{ortho} = c_{hex}$, and $b_{ortho} = \sqrt{3}a_{hex}$. Unit cell refinement using 150 reflections observed below $2\theta = 130°$ results in highly accurate unit cell parameters (see *Table 6.43* on page 574) and a sample displacement of -0.112(3) mm for a 250 mm goniometer radius.[1] The analysis of systematic absences points to the following possible space groups $P6_3/mmc$, $P6_3mc$, $P\bar{6}2c$, P31c or $P\bar{3}1c$.

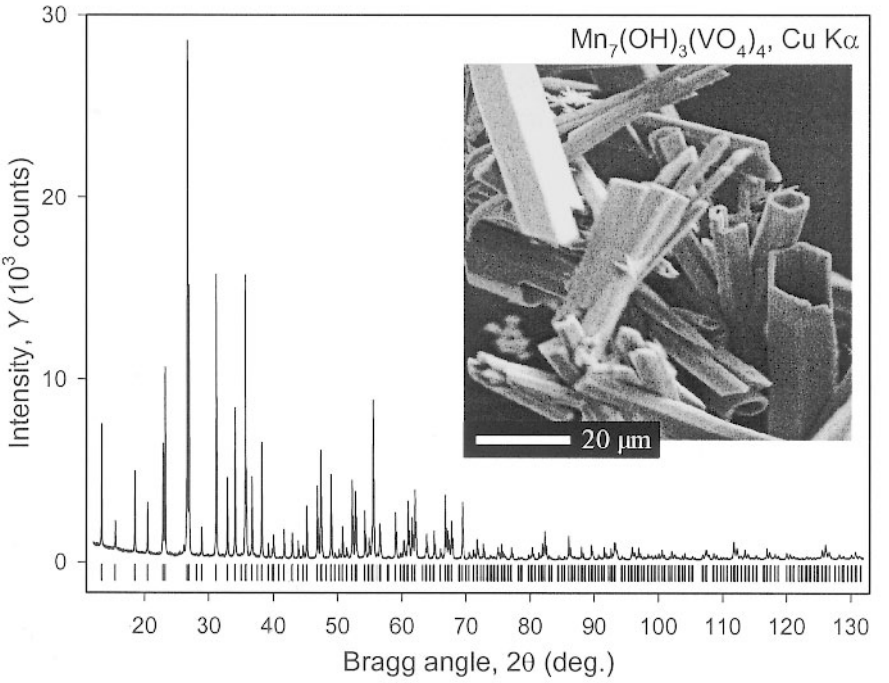


Figure 6.31. Powder diffraction pattern collected from a ground $Mn_7(OH)_3(VO_4)_4$ powder (screened through a 38 μm sieve) using Cu Kα radiation on a Scintag XDS2000 diffractometer in a step scan mode with a step 0.01° and counting time 15 sec/step in the range of $7 \leq 2\theta \leq 70°$ and 30 sec/step for $70 < 2\theta \leq 132°$ to improve counting statistics of weak reflections observed at high Bragg angles. The high Bragg angle range has been scaled to a constant counting time of 15 sec/step for further use of the data. The vertical bars indicate calculated positions of the $K\alpha_1$ components of all possible Bragg reflections. The inset shows the scanning electron microscopy image of peculiar empty hexagonal-pipe particle morphology in the as-received state. Diffraction data are located in the files **Ch6Ex8_CuKa.xy** and **Ch6Ex8_CuKa.raw** on the CD.

[1] The maximum absolute difference between the observed and calculated 2θ was 0.005°, which is an exceptionally low value.

Thermogravimetric analysis resulted in complex traces in both the oxygen and nitrogen atmospheres with gradual ~2 and ~4 % weight losses, respectively. The powder diffraction pattern of the thermal decomposition product can be identified as a mixture of $Mn_2V_2O_7$ and Mn_2O_3. Available data only allow a qualitative assumption about the absence of organic or water molecules, simultaneously pointing to the presence of a small amount of hydroxyl groups because of the continuous weight loss.[1] In general it may be assumed that this compound contains Mn cations, OH^- groups and individual or shared corner $[VO_4]^{3-}$ tetrahedra, as in V_2O_7, V_4O_{12} or $(VO_3)_n$. The latter conclusion is based on the color, since all other oxidation states or coordinations of V would result in black, dark green or dark blue crystals. This reasoning is provided here to show how various chemical and physical information may be used when considering composition, predicting, proposing, or solving the structure.

An identification attempt using the Powder Diffraction File failed as no acceptable matches were found. Undoubtedly, such high quality of the powder diffraction data should be sufficient to solve the structure from first principles using either Patterson or direct methods. Yet, a structure solution is not fully automated and therefore, the ICSD database was searched in the following order:

- All compounds containing oxygen and one or both of the metals, Mn and V, resulted in 3413 entries.
- All hexagonal and primitive trigonal systems were considered, thus reducing the number of entries to 204.
- Search for the unit cell volume in the range between 700 and 900 $Å^3$, i.e. within ~100 $Å^3$ of the title compound, shortened the list to 16 compounds.
- 12 of them belong to a different diffraction class and two have different *c*/*a* ratios, where *c* is much greater than *a*.
- Two remaining entries belong to the $P6_3mc$ space group symmetry and have similar unit cell dimensions as shown in *Table 6.43*.

Note that $Mn_{6-x}(OH)_3(HPO_3)_4$ has a unit cell volume and dimensions close to those of the title material. In fact, much closer than the Zn-containing compound, and it is also present in the PDF file. Theoretically, it may have been found by a powder pattern search-match. The search, conducted among all inorganic compounds with a narrow (0.04°) window and 5 matching reflections, failed in this example because of the relatively large discrepancies in the unit cell dimensions and, therefore, peak positions.

The Zn-containing structure may be easily modified to represent the crystal structure of Mn-OH-VO_4 (the composition derived above) by

[1] Compounds containing organic molecules or water of crystallization usually demonstrate rapid weight loss, while hydroxyl groups are lost slowly over a broad temperature range.

substituting Zn with Mn and S with V. Therefore, it was chosen as the initial model in the Rietveld refinement (see *Figure 6.32* and *Table 6.44*). The second structure does not look promising, because it consists of Mn cations, hydroxyl and HPO_3 groups; the latter have a different geometry. It was not tested at all because the first model results in a successful solution as will be discussed in the next chapter, in section 7.10.

Table 6.43. Unit cell dimensions of potentially closely related compounds identified as a result of searching the ICSD database.

Compound	*a*, Å	*c*, Å	*V*, Å^3	ICSD	PDF	Ref.
$Zn_7(OH)_3(VO_4)_3SO_4$	12.8130(6)	5.1425(2)	731.15	402-888		[1]
$Mn_{6-x}(OH)_3(HPO_3)_4$	13.1957(6)	5.1770(3)	780.68	75-269	47-868	[2]
Title compound	13.2294(1)	5.25529(7)	796.54	Refined from profile fitting		

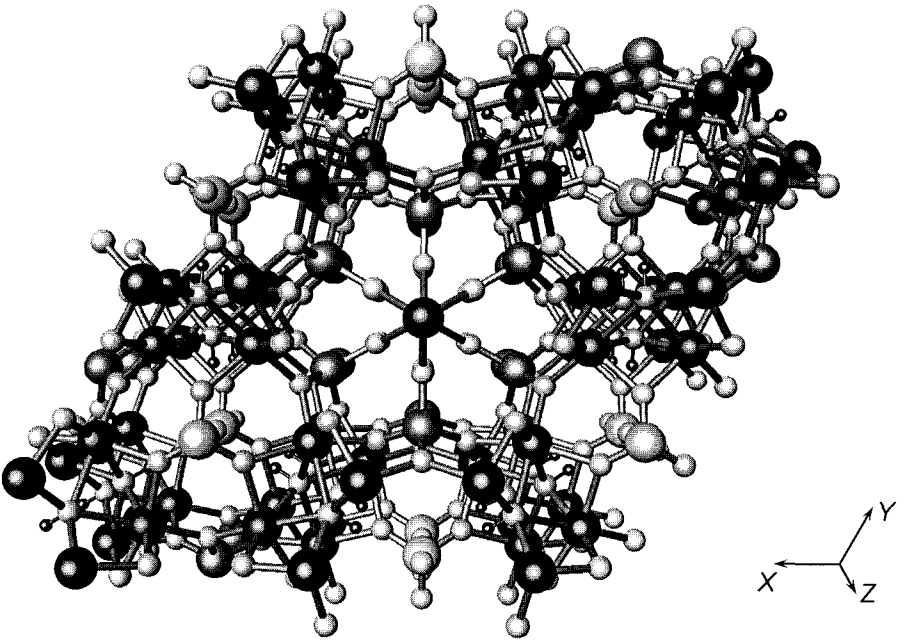


Figure 6.32. The model of the crystal structure of $Mn_7(OH)_3(VO_4)_4$ derived from $Zn_7(OH)_3(VO_4)_3SO_4$ assuming that Mn atoms substitute for Zn (large black spheres), and V atoms occupy positions of both V (large dark-grey spheres) and S (large light-grey spheres). Oxygen atoms are shown as medium size light-grey spheres and hydrogen atoms are depicted using small black spheres.

[1] K. Kato, Y. Kanke, Y. Oka, and T. Zao, Crystal structure of zinc hydroxide vanadate(V) $Zn_7(OH)_3(SO_4)(VO_4)_3$, Z. Kristallogr. **213**, 26 (1998).

[2] M.P. Attfield, R.E. Morris, and A.K. Cheetham, Synthesis and structures of two isostructural phosphites, $Fe_{11}(HPO_3)_8(OH)_6$ and $Mn_{11}(HPO_3)_8(OH)_6$, Acta Cryst. **C50**, 981 (1994).

Table 6.44. Coordinates of Mn, V and O atoms in the unit cell of $Mn_7(OH)_3(VO_4)_4$ as assumed from the model of the crystal structure of $Zn_7(OH)_3(VO_4)_3SO_4$. The space group symmetry is $P6_3mc$.

Atom[a]	Site	*x*	*y*	*z*
Mn1 (Zn1)	12(d)	0.4266	0.0802	0
Mn2 (Zn2)	2(a)	0	0	0.8217
V1 (V1)	6(c)	0.1513	-0.1513	0.0257
V2 (S1)	2(b)	1/3	2/3	0.7479
O1	12(d)	0.0676	0.3460	0.8469
O2	6(c)	0.8090	-0.8090	0.815
O3	6(c)	0.5280	-0.5280	0.715
O4	6(c)	0.3967	-0.3967	0.642
O5	6(c)	0.9243	-0.9243	0.571
O6	2(b)	1/3	2/3	0.024

[a] Symbols in parentheses indicate the corresponding atoms in the parent $Zn_7(OH)_3(VO_4)_3SO_4$ structure.

6.17 Crystal structure of $FePO_4$[1]

This example illustrates the derivation of a crystal structure based on a suspected analogy with related compounds followed by geometry optimization to enhance and improve the deduced structural model. Such a complex approach in this case has been adopted because of poor crystallinity of the material, which results in a low resolution of its powder diffraction pattern (see *Figure 6.33*), where the full widths at half maximum range from 0.25 to 0.55°. Furthermore, the pattern is relatively complex, with as many as 255 Bragg reflections possible for $2\theta \leq 37.5°$ when Mo Kα radiation is employed.

The title compound was prepared by thermal decomposition of the monoclinic dihydrate $FePO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$. The solid-state preparation reaction is likely responsible for the poor crystallinity, and therefore, peak broadening.[2] The inadequate crystallinity of the material results in the insufficient accuracy of both the peak positions and intensities. A serious lack of resolution in this particular powder diffraction pattern, which occurs due to the physical state of the powder, translates into considerable problems in both the indexing and structure determination. When experimental data collected using Cu Kα radiation were employed in the *ab initio* indexing, ITO and TREOR runs did not result in a reasonable solution.

[1] Y. Song, P.Y. Zavalij, M. Suzuki, and M.S. Whittingham, New iron(III) phosphate phases: Crystal structure, electrochemical and magnetic properties, Inorg. Chem. **41**, 5778 (2002).

[2] This example is also an excellent illustration of a case where the physical state of a material precludes single crystal diffraction analysis, and a powder diffraction experiment becomes the only option for a solution of its crystal structure.

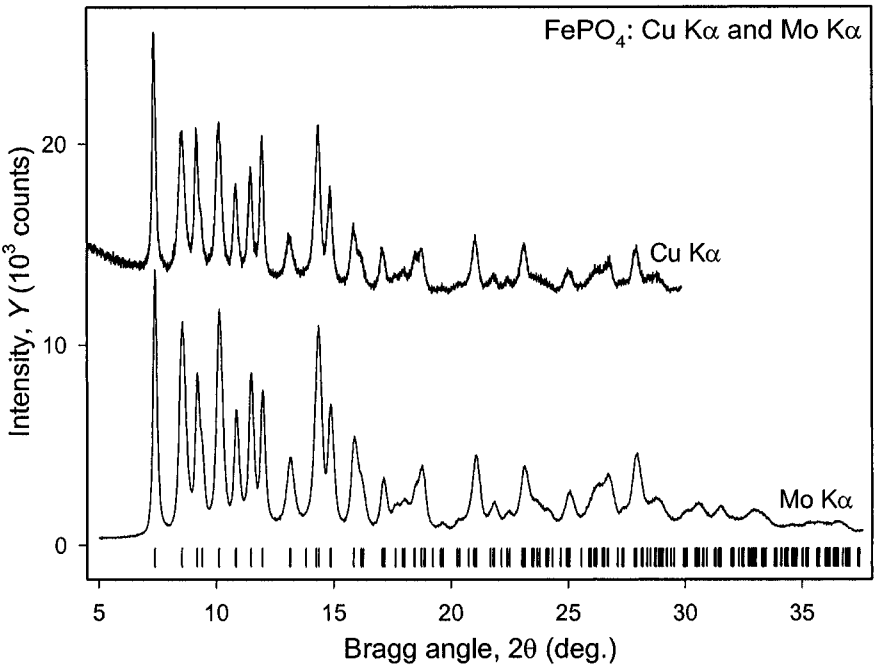


Figure 6.33. Powder diffraction patterns collected from a monoclinic $FePO_4$ using Cu Kα radiation on a Scintag XDS2000 diffractometer (top, step scan, 0.02° step) and Mo Kα radiation on a rotating anode Rigaku TTRAX diffractometer (bottom, step scan, 0.01° step). Bragg angles in the pattern collected using Cu Kα radiation have been converted to match Mo Kα radiation. The two patterns are shown with a substantial displacement along the intensity axis for clarity. The vertical bars indicate calculated positions of Bragg reflections for the locations of $K\alpha_1$ components. Experimental data, collected using Mo Kα radiation, are located in the files **Ch6Ex09_MoKa.xy** and **Ch6Ex09_MoKa.raw** on the CD.

A single crystal diffraction experiment conducted using a small and low quality single crystal yielded only about 20 detectable Bragg reflections, all at low angles. This truncated array of data was insufficient even for a reliable automatic indexing, but after a visual inspection, a monoclinic or an orthorhombic lattice with the unit cell dimensions $a \cong 5.5$, $b \cong 7.5$, and $c \cong 8.0$ Å was clearly noticeable. A solution with similar unit cell dimensions and a monoclinic angle around 95° was found by employing ITO using Mo Kα data with 19 of 20 low Bragg angle peaks indexed. The unit cell dimensions are $a = 5.489(1)$, $b = 7.493(1)$, $c = 8.055(1)$ Å, $\beta = 95.81(1)°$. The monoclinic symmetry of the lattice and the systematic absences (likely those of the space group $P2_1/n$) are the same as in the parent hydrate, $FePO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$.

The identical symmetry and similar unit cell dimensions between the hydrated and anhydrous iron phosphates are found in the two orthorhombic

modifications (see *Table 6.45*). Moreover, the latter have closely related crystal structures, i.e. the same bonding in the $FePO_4$ frameworks except for the water of crystallization in the hydrated compound (see the reference listed in footnote No. 1 on page 575 for more details). This fact can be used to solve the crystal structure of the anhydrous monoclinic compound assuming that $FePO_4$ connectivity remains intact in the two monoclinic modifications as well. As illustrated in *Figure 6.34*, the coordinates of Fe, P and four independent O atoms from the hydrated monoclinic compound were incorporated as the initial model of the crystal structure of the anhydrous phosphate (model A, listed in *Table 6.46*). Water molecules, present in the monoclinic $FePO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$, were ignored in model A.

Table 6.45. The comparison of unit cell dimensions of the orthorhombic and monoclinic modifications of hydrated and anhydrous iron phosphates.

Compound	Space group	*a*, Å	*b*, Å	*c*, Å	β, deg.	*V*, Å^3
$FePO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$	Pbca	9.867	10.097	8.705	-	867.3
$FePO_4$	Pbca	9.171	9.456	8.675	-	752.4
$FePO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$	$P2_1/n$	5.307	9.755	8.675	90.16	449.1
$FePO_4$	$P2_1/n$	5.489	7.493	8.055	95.81	329.7

Unfortunately, a straightforward Rietveld refinement of model A fails because it is far from reality, in addition to the low resolution of powder diffraction data.[1] Therefore, the initial model A must be improved before attempting the Rietveld refinement. The improvement was achieved using the following two approaches to geometry optimization:

1. The first optimization was conducted using DMol3[2] and CASTEP[3] routines that perform energy minimization and geometry optimization using density functional theory. These programs are included in Materials Studio.[4] However, when the $FePO_4$ model A was employed, this optimization was unstable and did not converge in a reasonable number

[1] Note the considerable contraction along the *b*-axis, *Table 6.45*, and the expected distortion of the $FePO_4$ framework upon dehydration, *Figure 6.34*a and *Figure 6.34*b.

[2] DMol3 is a molecular optimization technique based on density functional theory quantum mechanical approach. See B. Delley, J. Chem. Phys. **92**, 508 (1990), B. Delley, J. Chem. Phys. **94**, 7245 (1991), B. Delley, J. Phys. Chem. **100**, 6107 (1996), and B. Delley, J. Chem. Phys. **113**, 7756 (2000).

[3] CASTEP (Cambridge Sequential Total Energy Package) is the *ab initio* quantum mechanical density functional theory approach enabling modeling of properties of solids. See M. C. Payne, M. P. Teter, D. C. Allan, T. A. Arias, and J. D. Joannopoulos, Rev. Mod. Phys. **64**, 1045 (1992), V. Milman, B. Winkler, J. A. White, C. J. Pickard, M. C. Payne, E. V. Akhmatskaya, and R. H. Nobes, Int. J. Quant. Chem. **77**, 895 (2000), and M. D. Segall, P. L. D. Lindan, M. J. Probert, C. J. Pickard, P. J. Hasnip, S. J. Clark, M. C. Payne, J. Phys.: Cond. Matt. **14**, 2717 (2002).

[4] Materials Studio suite of crystallographic programs, Accelrys Inc., San Diego, CA, http://www.accelrys.com/.

of cycles. Therefore, an attempt was made to optimize model A, in which Fe^{3+} is substituted with Al^{3+}. Both the latter and the former often form similar or isostructural compounds because of the same oxidation states and nearly identical radii. The optimization performed by DMol3 successfully converged in 16 cycles resulting in model B.[1] The initial model A, intermediate model B1 obtained after 5 optimization cycles, and final model B are compared in *Figure 6.35*. It is easy to notice the contraction of the octagonal ring where the water molecule was located in the hydrate, which makes excellent chemical and physical sense. Changes in the geometry of coordination polyhedra also make perfect sense, where strongly distorted tetrahedra in model A (which are actually parts of the octahedra in the hydrate) are optimized into almost ideal tetrahedral configurations of oxygen around iron atoms.[2]

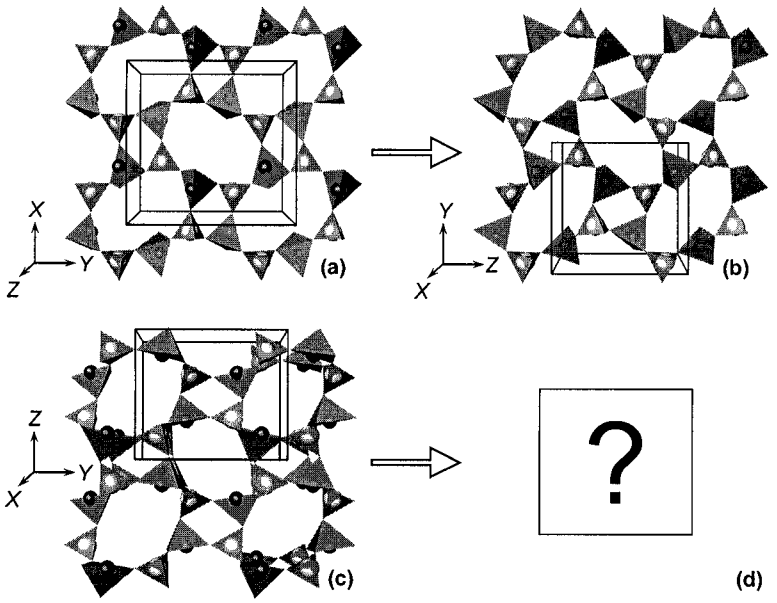


Figure 6.34. Analogy between the crystal structures of the orthorhombic hydrate $FePO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$ (a) and anhydrous orthorhombic $FePO_4$ (b) motivates the use of the monoclinic hydrate $FePO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$ structure (c) as the initial model of the monoclinic anhydrous $FePO_4$ (d). The crystal structures are shown as packing of the corresponding $[XO_4]$ polyhedra of iron (small black spheres) and phosphorus (large white spheres) atoms without the corresponding oxygen atoms from water molecules that complete coordination polyhedra of iron in the hydrates. Oxygen atoms are located in the corners of the corresponding polyhedra.

[1] The optimization run takes approximately 24 hours on a PC equipped with a single 2 GHz processor.

[2] It is worth noting that energy minimization was carried out without applying any geometrical restriction. Nonetheless, quite reasonable geometry resulted.

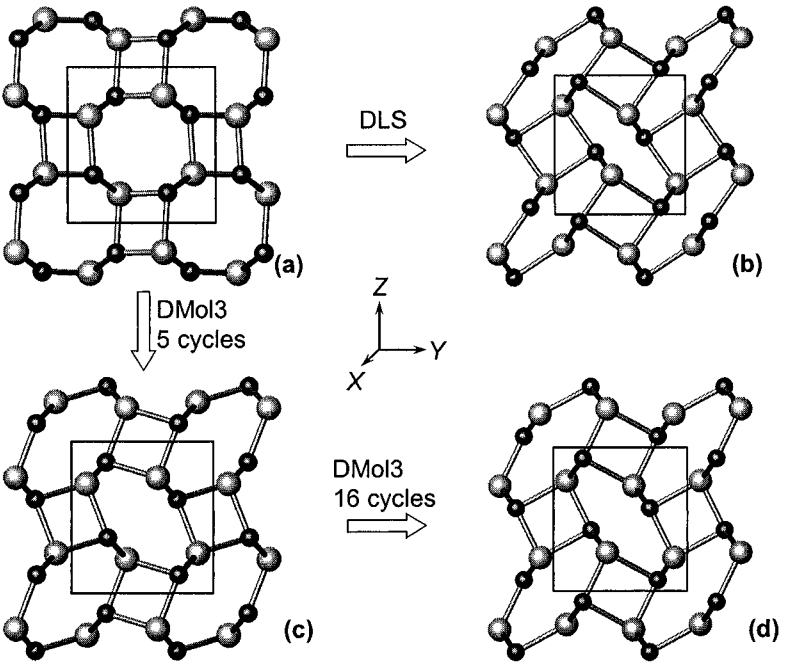


Figure 6.35. Back-bone models of the crystal structure of the anhydrous monoclinic $FePO_4$ projected along the *X*-axis: the initial model A derived from the monoclinic hydrate $FePO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$ (a); model B1 after 5 optimization cycles as $AlPO_4$ using DMol3 (c); model B after final optimization as $AlPO_4$ (16 cycles) using DMol3 (d); model C optimized using DLS-76 (b).

2. In parallel to the quantum-mechanical optimization, in which multiple attempts took many days of computing and analyzing the results, a purely geometrical optimization was attempted using the DLS-76 (Distance Least Squares) program,[1] which is based on minimizing the differences between the existing and desired distances that were set for Fe–O and P–O to 1.88 and 1.53 Å, respectively. Additionally, the O–O distances were set to 3.07 Å and 2.50 Å, respectively, for $[FeO_4]$ and $[PO_4]$ tetrahedra. The process converges very quickly resulting in model C,[2] which is quite similar to model B obtained from DMol3. We note, however, that the latter was achieved without any restrictions imposed on the geometry of the crystal structure. Therefore, if geometrical restrictions in the DLS attempt are wrong or even somehow are far from correct, the algorithm

[1] Ch. Baerlocher, A. Hepp, and W.M. Meier, DLS-76, a program for the simulation of crystal structures by geometric refinement. Institute of Crystallography and Petrography, ETH: Zurich, Switzerland, (1997).

[2] The optimization run takes approximately 0.02 seconds on a PC equipped with a single 2 GHz processor.

may not (and highly likely will not) converge to a reasonable model. The final model C is compared with the initial model A and models B1 and B from the DMol3 optimization in *Figure 6.35*. This model was not tested further because model B was successful.

Model B, obtained as a result of DMol3 optimization, is shown in *Table 6.47* and it will be used as the initial approximation in Rietveld refinement discussed in the next chapter, section 7.11.

Table 6.46. Coordinates of Fe, P and O atoms in the unit cell of $FePO_4$, model A, as assumed from the model of the crystal structure of the monoclinic $FePO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$.

Atom	Site	*x*	*y*	*z*
Fe	4(e)	0.0914	0.6739	0.6916
P	4(e)	-0.0870	0.3509	0.6839
O1	4(e)	-0.1164	0.5068	0.6700
O2	4(e)	0.1659	0.3221	0.7638
O3	4(e)	-0.0944	0.2814	0.5268
O4	4(e)	-0.3002	0.2937	0.7831

Table 6.47. Coordinates of Fe, P and O atoms in the unit cell of the anhydrous $FePO_4$, model B, obtained from DMol3 optimization.[a]

Atom	Site	*x*	*y*	*z*
Fe	4(e)	0.4385	0.7795	0.0764
P	4(e)	0.5544	0.4012	0.2674
O1	4(e)	0.5001	0.5792	0.1797
O2	4(e)	0.7980	0.4120	0.3802
O3	4(e)	0.5793	0.2536	0.1386
O4	4(e)	0.3450	0.3548	0.3720

[a] In order to directly compare models A and B, the atomic coordinates of the former should be transformed as: $x'_A = x_A + 0.5$, $y'_A = y_A$, $z'_A = z_A - 0.5$ because atomic coordinates undergo several transformations during the optimization process.

6.18 Empirical methods of solving crystal structures

In addition to reciprocal and direct space techniques considered in the previous sections, a large variety of approaches may be employed to create a model of the crystal structure in direct space. One of these, i.e. the geometrical method, has been implicitly employed in section 6.9, where the location of a single La atom in the unit cell was established from a simple analysis of the unit cell dimensions and from the availability of low multiplicity sites in the space group symmetry P6/mmm. Here we consider a more complex example, i.e. the solution of several crystal structures occurring in the series of $Gd_5(Si_xGe_{1-x})_4$ alloys.[1] These examples illustrate the power of the powder diffraction method in detecting subtle details of the

[1] V.K. Pecharsky and K.A. Gschneidner, Jr., Phase relationships and crystallography in the pseudobinary system Gd_5Si_4-Gd_5Ge_4, J. Alloys Comp. **260**, 98 (1997).

atomic distribution in the unit cell in addition to highlighting how structural information is an enabling step in establishing critical structure – properties correlations.[1] It is worth noting that nearly always, empirical techniques require extensive literature searches to find out as much as possible about the crystal structures of closely related materials.[2]

According to Smith, Tharp and Johnson,[3] both the silicide and germanide of Gd at 5:4 stoichiometries belong to the same type of crystal structure; the distributions of atoms in their unit cells are essentially identical to the orthorhombic Sm_5Ge_4-type structure.[4] Furthermore, as reported by Holtzberg, Gambino and McGuire,[5] extended solid solutions based on both binary compounds exist in the $Gd_5(Si_xGe_{1-x})_4$ system in addition to the formation of an intermediate phase with an unknown crystal structure near the $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$ stoichiometry. The coordinates of atoms in the unit cell of Sm_5Ge_4 are listed in *Table 6.48*.

Powder diffraction patterns collected from three different samples, which belong to three different phase regions in the $Gd_5(Si_xGe_{1-x})_4$ system are shown in *Figure 6.36*. Both the similarities and differences are noteworthy: the patterns have distinct clusters of Bragg peaks in the regions $\sim 10 < 2\theta < \sim 18°$ and $\sim 21 < 2\theta < \sim 26°$, however, a conspicuous variation in peak intensities from one pattern to another is also observed.

This simple visual analysis of powder diffraction patterns is usually a good indicator that there are detectable changes in the atomic structures of the materials in question but the overall structural motif remains closely related. Based on this conclusion and assuming that at least one of the materials belongs to the Sm_5Ge_4 type, it should be possible to establish details of atomic distributions in these three lattices, provided the quality of diffraction data is sufficient.[6]

[1] V.K. Pecharsky and K.A. Gschneidner, Jr., $Gd_5(Si_xGe_{1-x})_4$: An extremum material, Adv. Mater. **13**, 683 (2001).

[2] Examples considered in this section are also similar to the case of hydrated and anhydrous $FePO_4$ discussed in the previous section. The major difference is in the better crystallinity of the $Gd_5(Si_xGe_{1-x})_4$ materials and in the resulting higher quality of powder diffraction data, which facilitate a straightforward Rietveld refinement of individual atomic and profile parameters without the need for a preliminary quantum mechanical and/or geometrical optimizations.

[3] G.S. Smith, A.G. Tharp, and Q. Johnson, Rare earth – germanium and –silicon compounds at 5:4 and 5:3 compositions, Acta Cryst. **22**, 940 (1967).

[4] G.S. Smith, Q. Johnson, and A.G. Tharp, Crystal structure of Sm_5Ge_4, Acta Cryst. **22**, 269 (1967).

[5] F. Holtzberg, R.J. Gambino, and T.R. McGuire, New ferromagnetic 5:4 compounds in the rare earth silicon and germanium systems, J. Phys. Chem. Solids **28**, 2283 (1967).

[6] Holtzberg *et al.*, J. Phys. Chem. Solids **28**, 2283 (1967), also noted the differences in the powder diffraction patterns of Gd_5Ge_4, $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$, and Gd_5Si_4. However, considering the

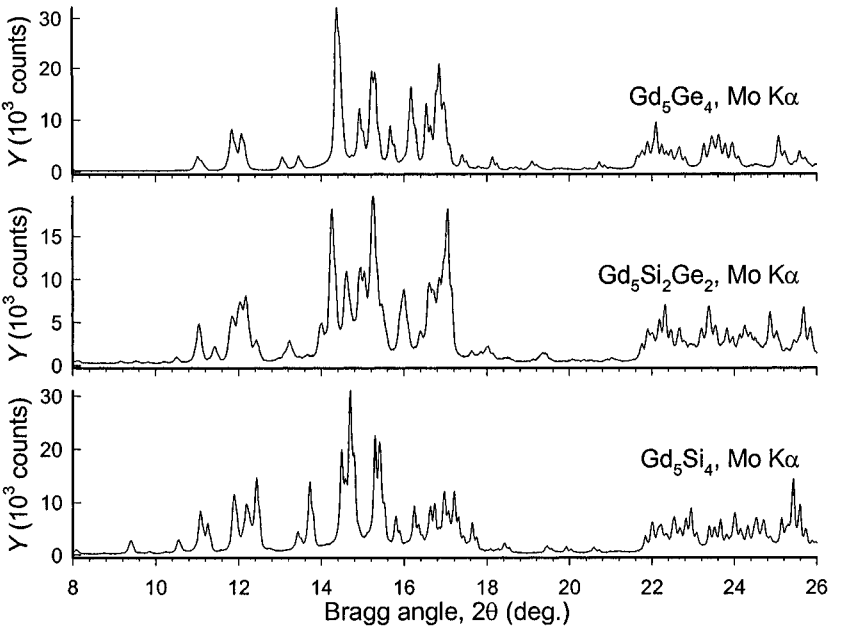


Figure 6.36. Low Bragg angle regions of the powder diffraction patterns of Gd_5Ge_4, $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$, and Gd_5Si_4. The three patterns are representative for materials in the Gd_5Ge_4-based solid solution, the intermediate intermetallic phase, and the Gd_5Si_4-based solid solution, respectively. The experimental data were collected on a Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode powder diffractometer using Mo Kα radiation from 8 to 50° 2θ in a step scan mode with a step $\Delta 2\theta = 0.01°$ and counting time 15 sec/point. Distinct clusters of Bragg peaks observed in the regions $\sim 10 < 2\theta < \sim 18°$ and $\sim 21 < 2\theta < \sim 26°$ point to close relationships between the three crystal structures. Gradual redistribution of peak intensities from one pattern to another, however, cannot be solely associated with the expected change in lattice parameters due to the substitution of smaller Si for larger Ge atoms. Therefore, we conclude that three crystal structures are closely related, yet different.

Table 6.48. Coordinates of atoms in the unit cell of Sm_5Ge_4 as determined from single crystal diffraction data in the space group symmetry Pnma, after Smith *et al.*, Acta Cryst. **22**, 269 (1967).

Atom	Site	*x*	*y*	*z*
Sm1	4(c)	0.2880	1/4	0.0024
Sm2	8(d)	-0.0283	0.1004	0.1781
Sm3	8(d)	0.3795	0.8843	0.1612
Ge1	4(c)	0.1761	1/4	0.3667
Ge2	4(c)	0.9132	1/4	0.8885
Ge3	8(d)	0.2206	0.9551	0.4688

state of the x-ray powder diffraction analysis in 1960's, it was difficult, if at all possible, to establish the details of the distribution of atoms in these complex crystal structures.

6.18.1 Crystal structure of Gd_5Ge_4

As reported by Smith *et al.* (see reference 3 on page 581), pure gadolinium germanide, Gd_5Ge_4, has the following unit cell dimensions: a = 7.69, b = 14.75, c = 7.76 Å. From the similarity of the electronic structure, chemical properties and atomic volumes of Sm and Gd, the assumption about the identity of the crystal structures of Gd_5Ge_4 and Sm_5Ge_4, appears to be quite reasonable. Furthermore, Si and Ge are electronic and crystallographic twins, and it is likely that they may substitute for one another in an extended range of concentrations in metallic alloys. Nonetheless, assumptions like that usually require initial verification by computing the distribution of intensities in the powder diffraction pattern of the compound in question using proper or approximate unit cell dimensions coupled with the distribution of atoms taken from a prototype crystal structure. The result is illustrated in *Figure 6.37*.

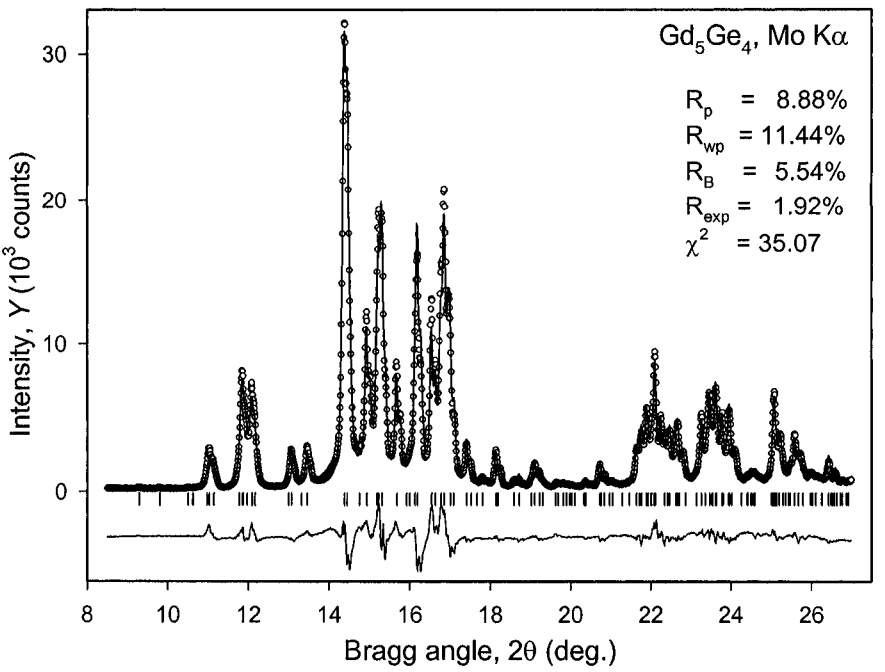


Figure 6.37. The observed and calculated intensities in a fragment of a powder diffraction pattern of Gd_5Ge_4. The calculated intensity has been scaled to match the observed profile. The observed data are available in the data files **Ch6Ex10_MoKa.xy** and **Ch6Ex10_MoKa.dat** on the CD.

The unit cell dimensions for this sample were determined by employing Le Bail's method applied to the fragment of data from 8.5 to 27° 2θ (a = 7.6984, b = 14.8278, c = 7.7849 Å) along with the relevant peak shape and background parameters, the results of which are illustrated in *Figure 6.38*. All of them were used in the modeling of the calculated powder diffraction pattern using coordinates of atoms listed in *Table 6.48* and assuming that Gd atoms occupy Sm-sites. Individual displacement parameters of all atoms were set at $B = 0.5$ Å^2.

Even though some discrepancies between the observed and calculated profiles are obvious from *Figure 6.37*, the overall good agreement and low residuals are solid indicators that the crystal structure of this material indeed belongs to the Sm_5Ge_4 type. All relevant parameters of individual atoms should and will be refined using the Rietveld method applied to the entire measured range of Bragg angles, as will be described in Chapter 7. The experimental powder diffraction pattern is available in the data files **Ch6Ex10_MoKa.xy** and **Ch6Ex10_MoKa.dat** on the CD.

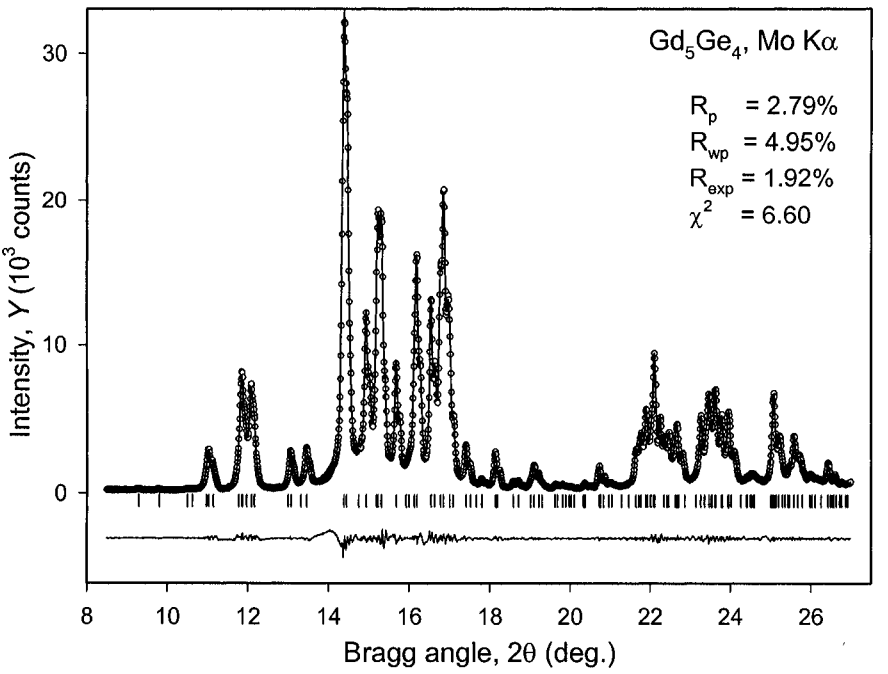


Figure 6.38. The results of Le Bail's full pattern decomposition of the powder diffraction pattern of Gd_5Ge_4. The discrepancies between the observed and calculated profiles are small and all residuals are low, indicating that the unit cell dimensions are accurately determined and that the chosen peak shape function (pseudo-Voigt) is a good choice for this experiment.

6.18.2 Crystal structure of Gd_5Si_4

As reported by Smith *et al.* (see reference 3 on page 581), pure gadolinium silicide, Gd_5Si_4, has the following unit cell dimensions: a = 7.45, b = 14.67, c = 7.73 Å. The reduction of lattice parameters, when compared to the germanide, is expected given the smaller effective radius of Si in comparison with that of Ge.

Following the same approach, i.e. after determining the unit cell dimensions (a = 7.4863, b = 14.7465, c = 7.7503 Å), peak shape and background parameters by means of Le Bail's full pattern decomposition (*Figure 6.39*), the observed and calculated powder diffraction profiles of the Gd_5Si_4 alloy are shown in *Figure 6.40*. The coordinates of atoms listed in *Table 6.48* were used in the computation of the scattered intensity assuming that Gd occupies Sm-sites and Si occupies the corresponding Ge-sites. Unlike in the case of Gd_5Ge_4 (*Figure 6.37*), the match between the observed and calculated intensities in *Figure 6.40* is quite poor.

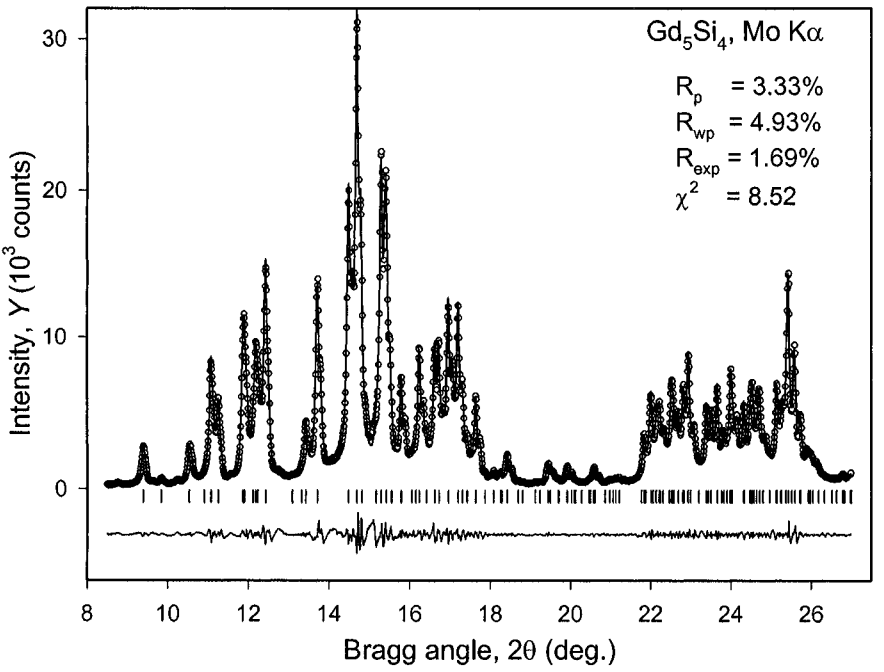


Figure 6.39. The results of Le Bail's full pattern decomposition of the powder diffraction pattern of Gd_5Si_4. The discrepancies between the observed and calculated profiles are small and all residuals are low, indicating that the unit cell dimensions are accurately determined and that the chosen peak shape function (Pearson-VII) is a good choice for this experiment. The observed data are available in the data files **Ch6Ex11_MoKa.xy** and **Ch6Ex11_MoKa.dat** on the CD.

The Fourier map, calculated using this model of the crystal structure, confirms the locations of all Gd and two independent Si atoms simultaneously indicating quite significant deviations from the coordinates listed in *Table 6.48*.[1] Thus, at this point we may conclude that although the structure of the Gd_5Si_4 alloy is closely related to that of the Gd_5Ge_4 alloy, the distributions of atoms in their unit cells are not truly identical. It is feasible that by using Rietveld refinement, we will be able to establish the necessary structural details, and the structure completion process will be described in Chapter 7.

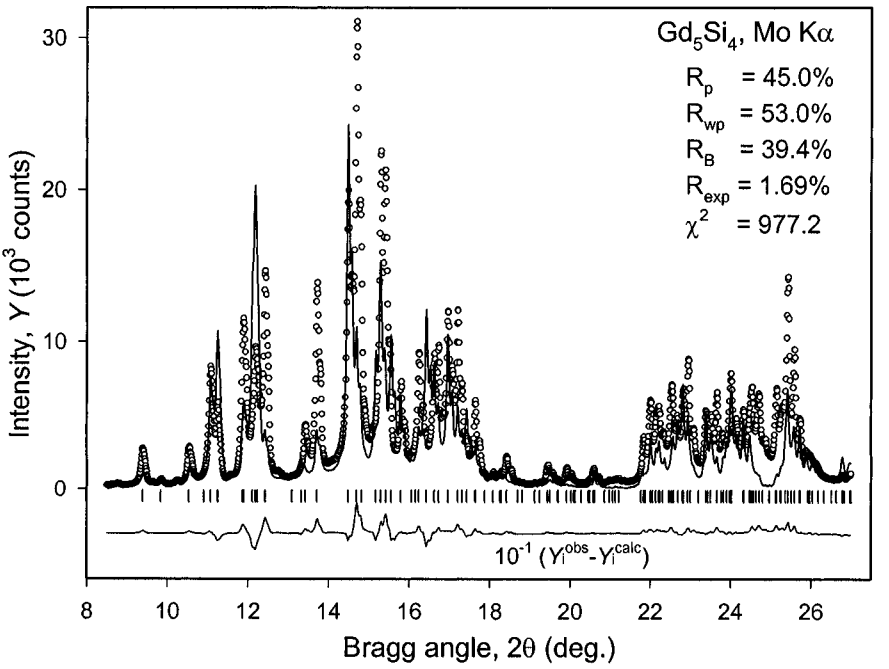


Figure 6.40. The observed (circles) and calculated (lines) intensities in a fragment of powder diffraction pattern of Gd_5Si_4. The calculated intensity has been normalized to match the observed profile. Peak shape, background and lattice parameters employed to compute the calculated profile have been obtained by a full pattern decomposition of the observed data using Le Bail's technique, as shown in *Figure 6.39*. Note, that the difference plot has been compressed ten-fold for clarity.

[1] We leave this as a self-exercise to the reader noting that several sequential Fourier maps, each preceded by the re-determination of the individual intensities, may be required to establish the coordinates of all atoms in the unit cell leading to an acceptable match between the observed and calculated intensities.

6.18.3 Crystal structure of $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$

Attempts to index the powder diffraction pattern of $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$ in any unit cell in the space group symmetry Pnma with dimensions intermediate between those of the Gd_5Ge_4 and Gd_5Si_4 alloys, see the pattern in the middle of *Figure 6.36*, fail because not all peaks even at low Bragg angles can be indexed. Thus, we have to assume that the formation of the intermediate phase is accompanied by the change of the symmetry of the material. The *ab initio* indexing leads to a monoclinic unit cell with lattice parameters a = 7.581, b = 14.809, c = 7.784 Å, γ = 93.19°. The obtained unit cell dimensions are obviously related to those observed in the orthorhombic Gd_5Ge_4, see section 6.18.1 and it is quite reasonable to assume that the intermediate intermetallic phase in the $Gd_5(Si_xGe_{1-x})_4$ system is a monoclinic distortion of the Sm_5Ge_4-type structure.

We begin with establishing the space group symmetry of the material. In this case, a straightforward analysis of the systematic absences is difficult because of the overwhelming number of Bragg reflections, which are possible in the examined range of Bragg angles: a total of ~1500 reflections could be observed up to 2θ = 50° when Mo Kα radiation is employed. Considering a monoclinic distortion of the orthorhombic lattice, the analysis is relatively easy, as illustrated in *Figure 6.41*. When the angle between the **a** and **b** basis vectors is no longer 90°, both the mirror plane m, which is perpendicular to **b**, and the glide plane n, perpendicular to **a**, are no longer possible. However, the glide plane, a, which is perpendicular to **c**, the screw axis 2_1 parallel to **c**, and the center of inversion remain unaffected by this distortion.

Thus, the likely resulting space group symmetry is $P11{2_1}/a$, which is a subgroup of Pnma. As also shown in *Figure 6.41*, any atom located in a general site position of the space group Pnma (the multiplicity of this site is 8) breaks into two symmetrically independent atoms located in two general four-fold sites in the monoclinic symmetry (the open circles and the hatched circles in the right hand part of the figure). Furthermore, atoms located in special sites on mirror planes in the orthorhombic crystal system, where the value of the y-coordinate has been fixed at y = 1/4 (see *Table 6.48*) are no longer special sites and their y-coordinates become free parameters.

Before proceeding with creating a model of the crystal structure of the monoclinically distorted $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$ we will verify the correctness of both the lattice parameters and space group symmetry ($P11{2_1}/a$) by performing Le Bail's refinement of the experimental profile. The result is shown in *Figure 6.42*, which indicates a high probability for this unit cell.

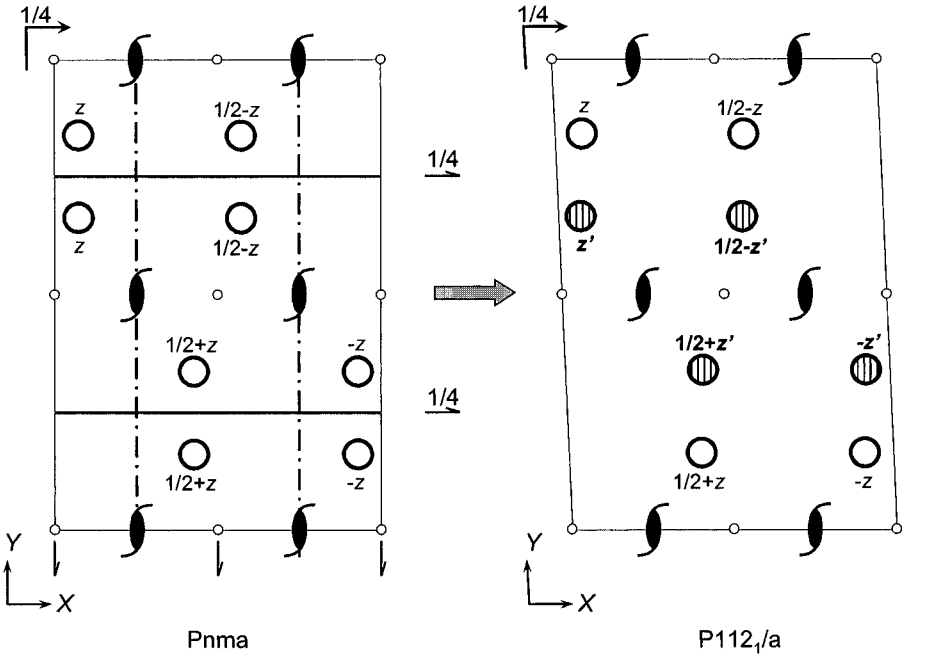


Figure 6.41. The disappearance of mirror planes, m, and glide planes, n, during a monoclinic distortion of the orthorhombic unit cell corresponding to the space group symmetry Pnma (left) when the angle between *a* and *b* unit cell edges deviates from 90° (right). The resulting space group symmetry is P112$_1$/a: centers of inversion, two-fold screw axes perpendicular to the *XY* plane, and glide planes, a, parallel to the *XY* plane remain unaffected by this distortion. The open circles on the left represent symmetrically equivalent atoms located in a general site position, 8(d), in the space group Pnma. The eight-fold site splits into two independent 4(e) four-fold sites in the space group symmetry P112$_1$/a, as indicated by both open and hatched circles on the right, for which $z' \cong z$.

Considering *Table 6.48* and *Figure 6.41*, the approximate model of the crystal structure of $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$ can be easily derived by splitting the coordinates of atoms located in 8(d) sites in the space group symmetry Pnma into two 4(e) sites in the space group P112$_1$/a. The coordinates of atoms in the split positions are approximately related as *x*,*y*,*z* and *x*,1/2-*y*,*z*, where *x*,*y*,*z* are the coordinates of the symmetrically independent atoms in the 8(d) sites. The coordinate triplets of atoms located in 4(c) sites in the space group Pnma remain unchanged except for the fact that the values of their *y*-coordinates are no longer fixed at $y = 1/4$. The positions of all of the independent atoms obtained in this way and which represent the initial model of the $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$ crystal structure are listed in *Table 6.49*.

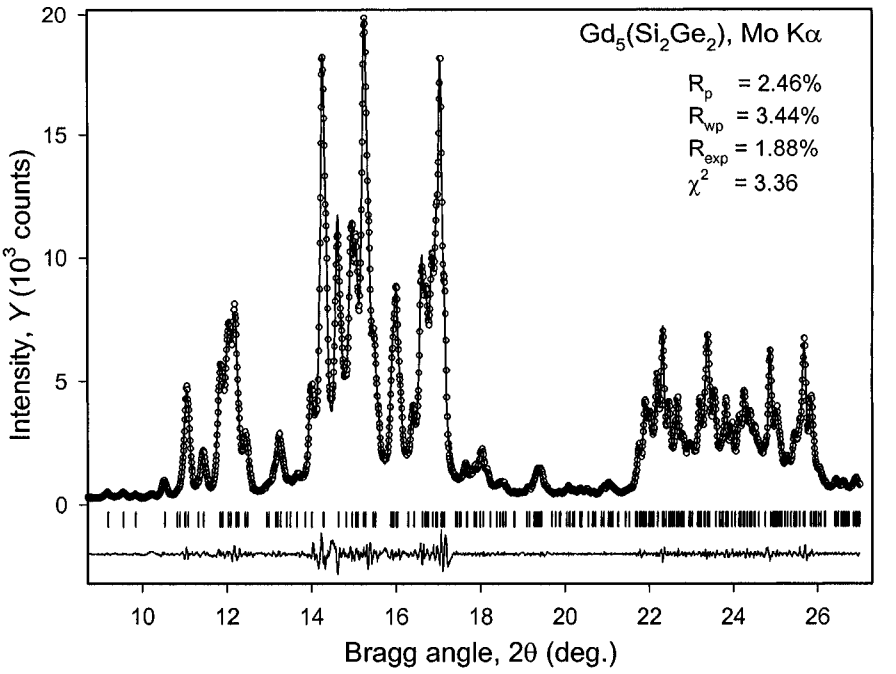


Figure 6.42. The results of Le Bail's full pattern decomposition of the powder diffraction pattern of $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$. The discrepancies between the observed and calculated profiles are small and all residuals are low, indicating that the unit cell dimensions are accurately determined and that the chosen peak shape function (pseudo-Voigt) is a good choice for this experiment. The observed data are available in the data files **Ch6Ex12_MoKa.xy** and **Ch6Ex12_MoKa.dat** on the CD.

Table 6.49. Approximate coordinates of atoms in the unit cell of $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$ as obtained by splitting general site positions from the space group Pnma into two sites in the space group symmetry $P112_1/a$. As a first approximation, a completely random distribution of Si and Ge atoms in the corresponding sites is assumed.

Atom	Site (Pnma)	Site ($P11/2_1a$)	*x*	*y*	*z*
Gd1	4(c)	4(e)	0.29	0.25	0.00
Gd2a	8(d)	4(e)	-0.03	0.10	0.18
Gd2b		4(e)	-0.03	0.40	0.18
Gd3a	8(d)	4(e)	0.38	0.88	0.16
Gd3b		4(e)	0.38	0.62	0.16
(Si,Ge)1	4(c)	4(e)	0.18	0.25	0.37
(Si,Ge)2	4(c)	4(e)	0.91	0.25	0.89
(Si,Ge)3a	8(d)	4(e)	0.22	0.96	0.47
(Si,Ge)3b		4(e)	0.22	0.54	0.47

The feasibility of this model of the crystal structure has been verified by computing scattered intensity using all relevant parameters as determined from Le Bail's decomposition and coordinates of atoms from *Table 6.49*. It is easy to see from *Figure 6.43* that although the discrepancies are considerable, the calculated and observed profiles match better than in the case of Gd_5Si_4 (*Figure 6.40*). Thus, we conclude that not only the model derived by a monoclinic distortion of the orthorhombic lattice is feasible, but also the structure of the $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$ alloy is likely to be an intermediate between those of the gadolinium silicide and germanide. Obviously, this structure, as well as two others considered in this section, should be completed and fully refined using the Rietveld technique, which will be described in Chapter 7. The relationships between these three crystal structures together with their influence on the magnetism of the alloys in the $Gd_5(Si_xGe_{1-x})_4$ system, will be also briefly mentioned in Chapter 7.

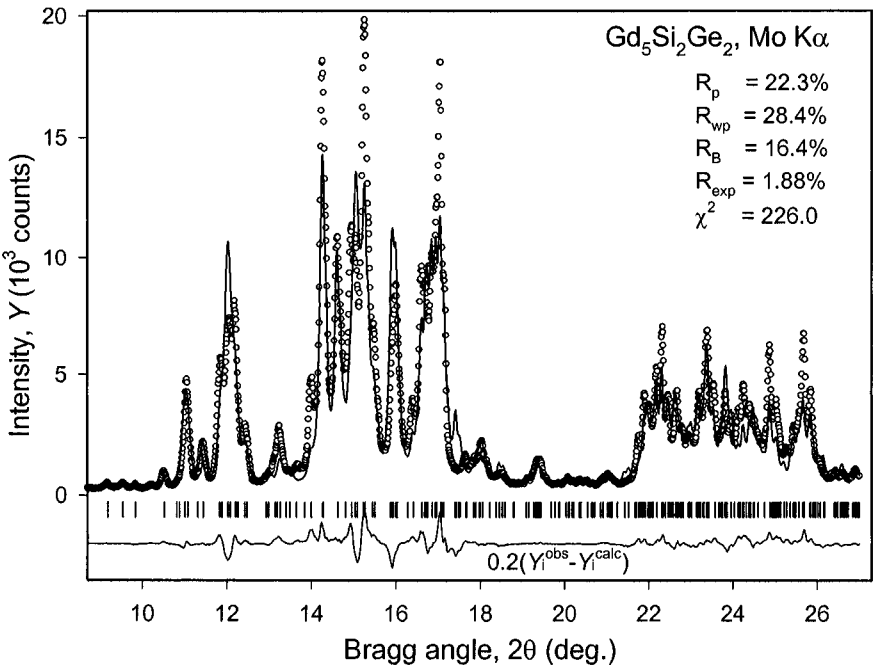


Figure 6.43. The observed (circles) and calculated (lines) intensities in a fragment of powder diffraction pattern of $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$. The calculated intensity has been normalized to match the observed profile. Peak shape, background and lattice parameters employed to compute the calculated profile have been obtained by a full pattern decomposition of the observed data using Le Bail's technique, as shown in *Figure 6.42*. Note, that the difference plot has been compressed five-fold for clarity (the differences are too large to be well seen).

6.19 Additional reading

1. W. I. F. David and D. S. Sivia, Extracting integrated intensities from powder diffraction data, in: Structure determination from powder diffraction data. IUCr monographs on crystallography 13. W. I. F. David, K. Shankland, L.B. McCusker, and Ch. Baerlocher, Eds., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (2002).

2. T. Wessels, Ch. Baerlocher, L. B. McCusker, and W.I.F. David, Experimental methods for estimating the relative intensities of overlapping reflections, in: Structure determination from powder diffraction data. IUCr monographs on crystallography 13. W. I. F. David, K. Shankland, L.B. McCusker, and Ch. Baerlocher, Eds., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (2002).

3. R. Peschar, A. Etz, J. Jansen and H. Schenk, Direct methods in powder diffraction - basic concepts, in: Structure determination from powder diffraction data. IUCr monographs on crystallography 13. W. I. F. David, K. Shankland, L.B. McCusker, and Ch. Baerlocher, Eds., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (2002).

4. C. Giacovazzo, A. Altomare, M. C. Burla, B. Carrozzini, G. L. Cascarano, A. Guagliardi, A. G. G. Moliterni, G. Polidori and R. Rizzi, Direct methods in powder diffraction - applications, in: Structure determination from powder diffraction data. IUCr monographs on crystallography 13. W. I. F. David, K. Shankland, L.B. McCusker, and Ch. Baerlocher, Eds., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (2002).

5. M. A. Estermann and W. I. F. David, Patterson methods in powder diffraction: maximum entropy and symmetry minimum function techniques, in: Structure determination from powder diffraction data. IUCr monographs on crystallography 13. W. I. F. David, K. Shankland, L.B. McCusker, and Ch. Baerlocher, Eds., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (2002).

6. C. J. Gilmore, K. Shankland and W. Dong, A maximum entropy approach to structure solution, in: Structure determination from powder diffraction data. IUCr monographs on crystallography 13. W. I. F. David, K. Shankland, L.B. McCusker, and Ch. Baerlocher, Eds., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (2002).

7. J. Ruis, Solution of Patterson-type syntheses with the direct methods sum function, in: Structure determination from powder diffraction data. IUCr monographs on crystallography 13. W. I. F. David, K. Shankland, L.B. McCusker, and Ch. Baerlocher, Eds., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (2002).

8. K. Shankland and W. I. F. David, Global optimization strategies, in: Structure determination from powder diffraction data. IUCr monographs on crystallography 13. W. I. F. David, K. Shankland, L.B. McCusker, and Ch. Baerlocher, Eds., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (2002).

9. P. G. Bruce and Y. G. Andreev, Solution of flexible molecular structures by simulated annealing, in: Structure determination from powder diffraction data. IUCr monographs on crystallography 13. W. I. F. David, K. Shankland, L.B. McCusker, and Ch. Baerlocher, Eds., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (2002).

10. L. B. McCusker and Ch. Baerlocher, Chemical information and intuition in solving crystal structures. IUCr monographs on crystallography 13. W. I. F. David, K. Shankland, L.B. McCusker, and Ch. Baerlocher, Eds., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (2002).

11. D. Louër, Advances in powder diffraction analysis, Acta Cryst. **A54**, 922 (1998).

12. D.M. Poojary and A. Clearfield, Application of x-ray powder diffraction techniques to the solution of unknown crystal structures, Acc. Chem. Res. **30**, 414 (1997).

13. K.D.M. Harris and M. Tremayne, Crystal structure determination from powder diffraction data, Chem. Mater. **8**, 2554 (1996).

14. C. Giacovazzo, Direct methods and powder data: State of the art and perspectives, Acta Cryst. **A52**, 331 (1996).

15. J.A. Kaduk, Use of the Inorganic Crystal Structure Database as a problem solving tool, Acta Cryst. **B58**, 370 (2002).

16. A. Le Bail, SDPD – Structure Determination from Powder Diffraction - Database of bibliography and methods, http://sdpd.univ-lemans.fr/iniref.html.

17. V. Favre-Nicolin and R. Cerný, FOX, "Free objects for crystallography": a modular approach to *ab initio* structure determination from powder diffraction, J. Appl. Cryst. **35**, 734 (2002).

6.20 Problems

Answers to all problems listed below are located in the file Chapter-6-Problems-Solutions.pdf on the CD accompanying this book.

1. The compound $Mn_5Si_3O_{12}$ crystallizes in the space group Ia3d with lattice parameter a = 11.85 Å. The measured gravimetric density, ρ = 4.4 g/cm^3. Calculate the number of formula units in the unit cell and the number of atoms of each kind. Make a suggestion, which sites can be occupied by the different types of atoms in this unit cell.

2. The compound $Co_2Mn_3O_8$ crystallizes in the space group $Pmn2_1$ with lattice parameters a = 5.743, b = 4.915 and c = 9.361 Å. Assuming a reasonable density of a 3*d*-metal oxide (3 to 6 g/cm^3), find the number of formula units in the unit cell and calculate the x-ray density of the material.

3. Cobalt oxide, CoO, crystallizes in the cubic crystal system, space group Fm3m, a = 4.26 Å. The measured gravimetric density of the oxide is ρ = 6.438 g/cm^3. Using only these data, solve its crystal structure (find positions of atoms that make chemical and physical sense and have reasonable interatomic distances).

4. The compound $TaMn_2O_3$ crystallizes in the hexagonal crystal system and belongs to the space group P6/mmm with a = 5.321, c = 3.578 A. The measured gravimetric density of the material is ρ = 6.30 g/cm^3. Using only these data, solve the crystal structure of the material (find positions of atoms that make chemical and physical sense and have reasonable interatomic distances).

5. Hexamethylenetetramine molecule, $C_6H_{12}N_4$ (*hmta*), has the configuration of a tetrahedron, where the corners are occupied by nitrogen atoms, which are bonded with each other by means of six methylene, CH_2, groups located above the mid points of the edges of the tetrahedron as shown in *Figure 6.44*. The compound crystallizes in the cubic crystal system, space group $I\bar{4}3m$, a = 7.05 Å. The measured gravimetric density is ρ = 1.33 g/cm^3. Assuming that the tetrahedron is ideal and that the C–N distances are 1.49 Å, solve this crystal structure (i.e. determine the coordinates of non-hydrogen atoms) using data provided above including both the symmetry of the lattice and *hmta* molecule. To simplify calculations, consider the following: the distance from the center (X) of the tetrahedron to the C atoms is δ_{X-C} = 1.72 Å, and to the N atoms, δ_{X-N} = 1.49 Å.

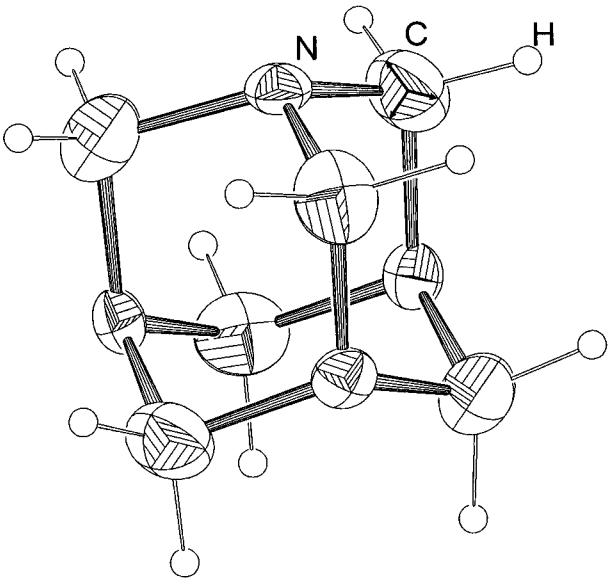


Figure 6.44. The molecule of hexamethylenetetramine, shown using displacement ellipsoids of carbon and nitrogen atoms.

6. Consider the powder diffraction pattern shown in *Figure 6.45*, which was collected from an intermetallic compound with the approximate stoichiometry $SrSi_2$ on a Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode powder diffractometer using Mo Kα radiation. The density of the alloy was measured in a pycnometer and it is 3.3(1) g/cm^3. The pattern was indexed and the possible space groups were established during solution of Problem 3 in Chapter 5. Experimental data are found in the data files **Ch6Pr06_SrSi2.xy** and **Ch6Pr06_SrSi2.dat** on the CD. Solve this crystal structure from first principles.

7. Consider the pattern from problem 1 in Chapter 5 (*Figure 5.24*). Powder diffraction data were collected in the range of Bragg angles from 20 to 140° on an HZG-4a powder diffractometer using filtered Cu Kα radiation. The data are found in the files **Ch6Pr07_La(NiGe)13.xy** and **Ch6Pr07_La(NiGe)13.dat** on the CD accompanying this book. Solve the crystal structure of this material, knowing that its gravimetric density (measured pycnometrically) is $\rho = 7.7$ g/cm^3.

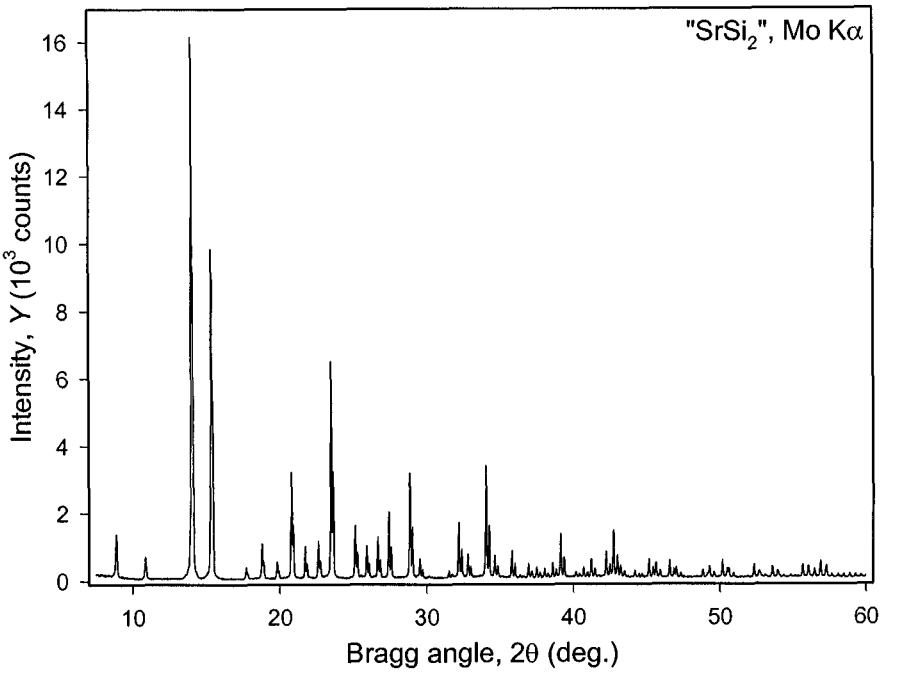


Figure 6.45. Powder diffraction pattern collected from a ground powder with the approximate stoichiometry $SrSi_2$ on a rotating anode Rigaku TTRAX diffractometer. The data were collected with a step $\Delta 2\theta = 0.015°$.

8. Consider the powder diffraction pattern collected from a ground $Hf_2Ni_3Si_4$ powder, which is shown in *Figure 6.46*. The pattern has been indexed in the orthorhombic crystal system and the unit cell dimensions are $a = 5.18$, $b = 13.65$ and $c = 6.85$ Å. An analysis of the systematic absences indicates that the following groups of reflections have non-zero intensity:

   hkl, $h + k = 2n$;
   $hk0$, h and $k = 2n$;
   $h0l$, h and $l = 2n$;
   $0kl$, $k = 2n$;
   $h00$, $h = 2n$;
   $0k0$, $k = 2n$;
   $00l$, $l = 2n$.

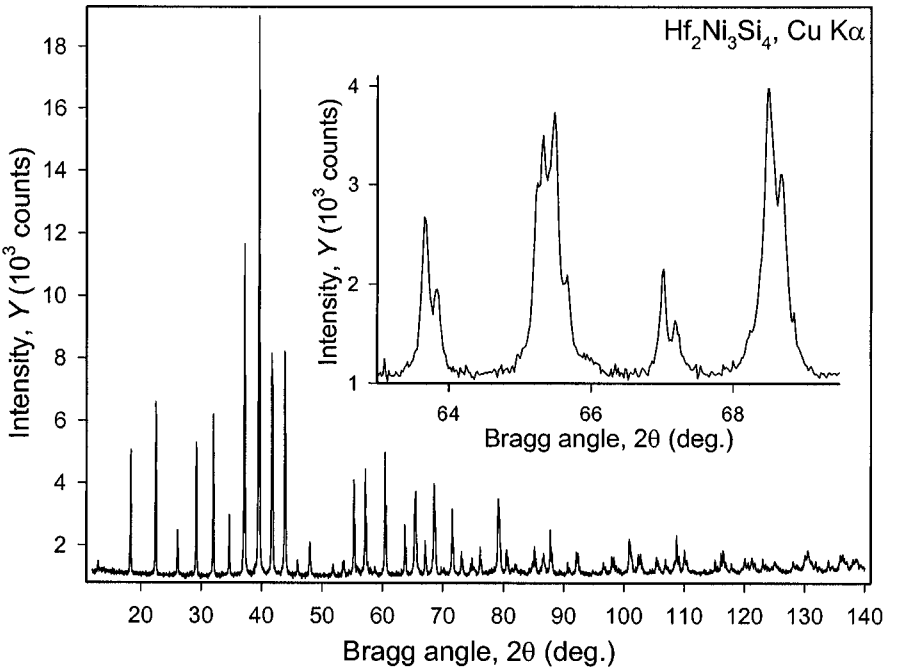


Figure 6.46. Powder diffraction pattern collected from a ground $Hf_2Ni_3Si_4$ powder on an HZG-4a diffractometer. The data were collected with a step $\Delta 2\theta = 0.02°$. The inset shows splitting of some Bragg peaks, which requires relatively large orthorhombic lattice to index this seemingly high-symmetry pattern (low Bragg angle peaks appear regularly spaced). (Data courtesy of Dr. L.G. Akselrud.)

Pycnometric density is 8.8(5) g/cm^3. Solve the crystal structure of this material without using handbooks and/or databases. Powder diffraction data are found in the files **Ch6Pr08_Hf2Ni3Si4.xy** and **Ch6Pr08_Hf2Ni3Si4.dat** on the CD.

9. The compound $VO(CH_3COO)_2$ crystallizes in the orthorhombic crystal system with $a = 14.066$, $b = 6.878$, $c = 6.925$ Å. Its gravimetric density is less than 2 g/cm^3. The powder diffraction pattern (data files **Ch6Pr09_VO-acetate.raw** and **Ch6Pr09_VO-acetate.xy**) is shown in *Figure 6.47*. The extracted structure amplitudes (data file **Ch6Pr09_VO-acetate.hkl**) are also found on the CD. Solve the crystal structure of this material.

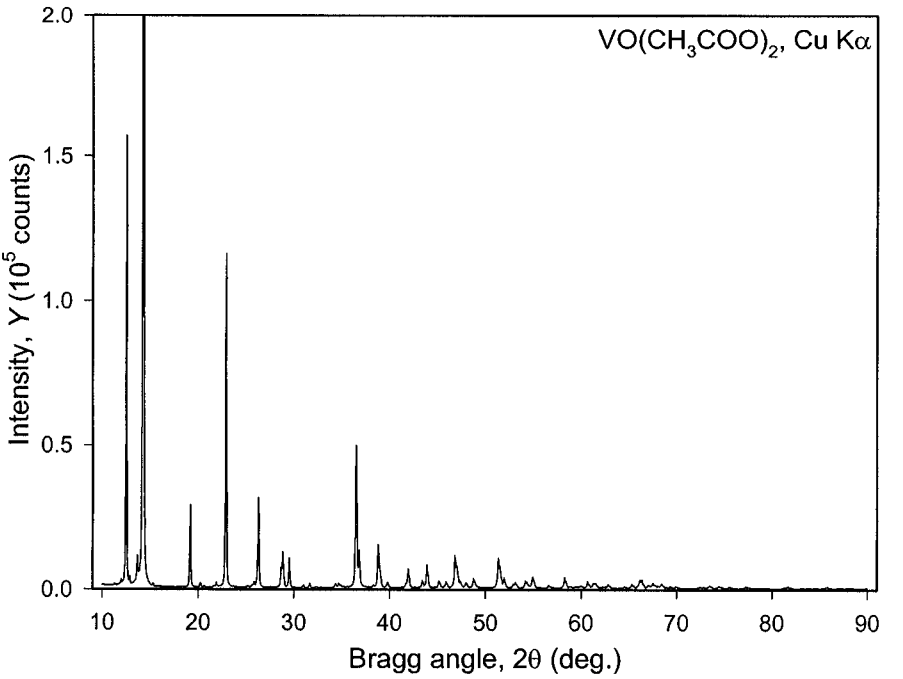


Figure 6.47. Powder diffraction pattern collected from a $VO(CH_3COO)_2$ powder on a Scintag XDS2000 diffractometer. The data were collected with a step $\Delta 2\theta = 0.02°$. The strongest peak is shown at ~1/4 of its intensity.

Chapter 7

CRYSTAL STRUCTURE REFINEMENT

7.1 Introduction

As briefly mentioned in the previous chapter, the determination of a crystal structure may be considered complete only when multiple pattern variables and crystallographic parameters of a model have been fully refined against the observed powder diffraction data. Obviously, the refined model should remain reasonable from both physical and chemical standpoints. The refinement technique, most commonly employed today, is based on the idea suggested in the middle 1960's by Rietveld.[1,2] The essence of Rietveld's approach is that experimental powder diffraction data are utilized without extraction of the individual integrated intensities or the individual structure factors, and all structural and instrumental parameters are refined by fitting a calculated profile to the observed data.

To a certain extent, the Rietveld method (also known as the full pattern or the full profile refinement) is similar to the full pattern decomposition using Pawley and/or Le Bail algorithms, except that the values of the integrated

[1] Hugo M. Rietveld (b. 1932). Dutch physicist, who between 1964 and 1966 demonstrated that accurate determination of crystal and magnetic structures, is possible using neutron diffraction data from powders. His approach was later extended to x-rays. At present, crystal structures of hundreds, if not thousands of polycrystalline materials, are studied and refined every year using the Rietveld method. In recognition of the "Rietveld method", the Royal Swedish Academy of Sciences awarded the author, Dr. Hugo M. Rietveld, the Aminoff prize in 1995. For more information, see http://home.wxs.nl/~rietv025/ or the mirror site at http://ccp14.sims.nrc.ca/ccp/web-mirrors/hugorietveld/~rietv025/index.html.

[2] The following two papers are considered seminal: H.M. Rietveld, Line profiles of neutron powder-diffraction peaks for structure refinement, Acta Cryst. **22**, 151 (1967); H.M. Rietveld, A profile refinement method for nuclear and magnetic structures, J. Appl. Cryst. **2**, 65 (1969).

intensities are no longer treated as free least squares variables (Pawley) or determined iteratively after each refinement cycle (Le Bail).[1] They are included into all calculations as functions of relevant geometrical, specimen and structural parameters (see sections 2.10 and 2.11).

Full profile refinement is computationally intense and employs the non-linear least squares method (section 6.6), which requires a reasonable initial approximation of many free variables. These usually include peak shape parameters, unit cell dimensions and coordinates of all atoms in the model of the crystal structure. Other unknowns (e.g. constant background, scale factor, overall atomic displacement parameter, etc.) may be simply guessed at the beginning and then effectively refined, as the least squares fit converges to a global minimum. When either Le Bail's or Pawley's techniques were employed to perform a full pattern decomposition prior to Rietveld refinement, it only makes sense to use suitably determined relevant parameters (background, peak shape, zero shift or sample displacement, and unit cell dimensions) as the initial approximation.

The successful practical use of the Rietveld method, though directly related to the quality of powder diffraction data (the higher the quality, the better the outcome), largely depends on the experience and the ability of the user to properly select a sequence in which various groups of parameters are refined. Regardless of the relatively long history of the method, it is certainly true that almost everyone familiar with the technique has his/her own set of "unique" secrets about how to make the refinement stable, complete and triumphant. Therefore, in this chapter we will simply introduce the basic theory of Rietveld's approach, followed by a series of hands-on examples to demonstrate the refinement of crystal structures with various degrees of completeness and complexity. Every example considered in this book is supplemented by actual experimental data given on the CD, thus allowing the reader many opportunities to follow our reasoning, as well as to create and test his/her own strategies leading to the successful completion of the crystal structure determination from powder diffraction data.

Just as in the case of full pattern decomposition, we will use two freely available software codes (LHPM-Rietica[2] and GSAS[3]) to carry out Rietveld refinements using either or both x-ray and neutron diffraction data. Many

[1] We introduce this analogy for clarity, even though both Pawley's and Le Bail's techniques were developed following Rietveld's work.

[2] LHPM-Rietica (authors: B.A. Hunter and C.J. Howard) may be downloaded from ftp://ftp.ansto.gov.au/pub/physics/neutron/rietveld/Rietica_LHPM95/ or *via* a link at http://www.ccp14.ac.uk.

[3] GSAS (authors A.C. Larsen and R. Von Dreele) may be downloaded from http://public.lanl.gov/gsas/ or *via* a link at http://www.ccp14.ac.uk. A convenient graphic user interface for GSAS (author: B.H. Toby) may be downloaded from http://www.ncnr.nist.gov/programs/crystallography/ or *via* http://www.ccp14.ac.uk.

more software products, including FullProf, Rietan, XRS-82 and others may be downloaded from the International Union of Crystallography and/or Collaborative Computational Project 14 Web sites.[1] When available, readers may also employ a variety of commercial crystallographic software suites of programs.[2]

It is worth noting that parameters identical to those listed in our examples can be expected only when the same computer codes are used to perform full profile refinement due to small but detectable differences in the implementation of the Rietveld method by various software developers. Furthermore, even when the same version of an identical computer program is employed to treat the same set of experimental data, small deviations may occur due to subjective decisions, such as when to terminate the refinement. In the latter case, however, the differences should be within a few least squares standard deviations.

7.2 The Rietveld method

Consider *Figure 7.1*, which shows both the observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ for a narrow range of Bragg angles. Assuming that

- we have an adequate structural model (see Chapter 6), which makes both physical and chemical sense;
- the model yields correct (i.e. close to experimentally observed) integrated intensities (see Chapter 2), and
- we have suitable peak shape and background functions (see Chapters 2 and 4, respectively),

the fully refined crystal structure of a material should result in a calculated powder diffraction pattern closely resembling collected data. In other words, the difference between the measured and calculated powder diffraction profiles should be close to zero. This basic idea, extended to the entire powder diffraction pattern, is the foundation of the Rietveld method.

The development of the Rietveld method and especially subsequent work that showed its applicability to processing conventional x-ray powder diffraction data,[3] began a remarkable era, which continues today, where

[1] IUCr: http://www.iucr.org; CCP-14: http://www.ccp14.ac.uk.

[2] Rietveld refinement programs are included in software products sold by Bruker (http://www.bruker-axs.com/production/indexnn.htm), Philips (http://www-us.analytical.philips.com/products/xrd/), Rigaku/USA (http://www.RigakuMSC.com/xrd/index.shtml), STOE & Cie, Gmbh (http://www.stoe.com/products/index.htm), Reflex or Reflex+ modules in Materials Studio or Cerius2 suites from Accelrys Inc. (www.accelrys.com), Jade and jPOWD from MDI, Materials Data Inc. (www.materialsdata.com) and others.

[3] J. Malmros and J.O. Thomas, Least-squares structure refinement based on profile analysis of powder film intensity data measured on an automatic microdensitometer, J. Appl. Cryst.

more and more complex crystal structures are routinely solved and fully refined using a very basic experimental technique – powder diffraction. Although the utility of the method is somewhat restricted by both the one-dimensionality of the data and limited instrumental resolution, its power is astonishing: a simple plot of the observed scattered intensity as a function of Bragg angle coupled with the computed powder diffraction profile serves as a sufficient evidence of the correctness of a crystal structure model.

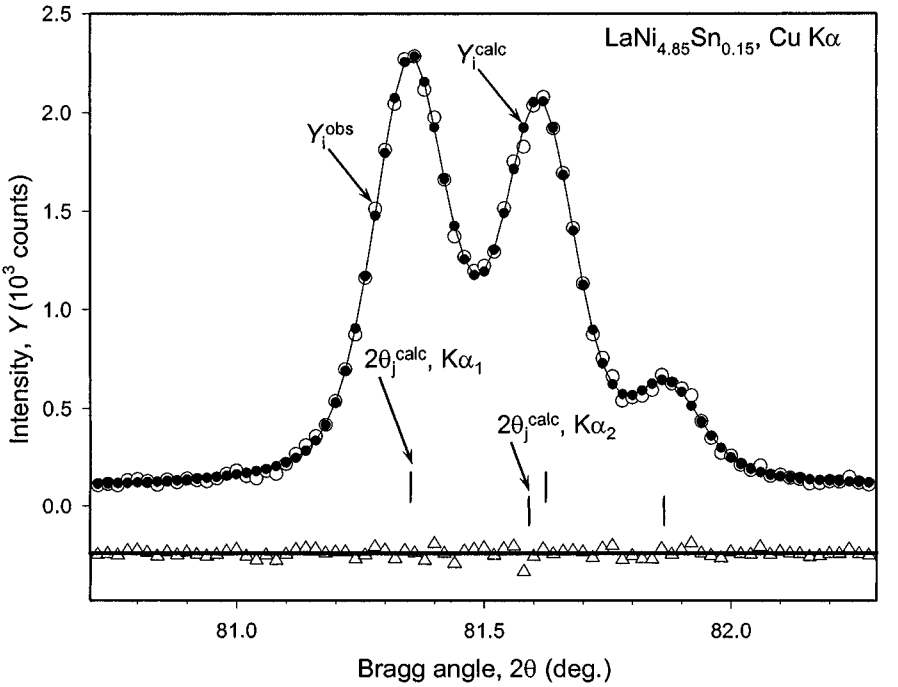


Figure 7.1. A fragment of a powder diffraction pattern of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ collected on a Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode powder diffractometer using Cu Kα radiation with a step $\Delta 2\theta = 0.02°$. The observed scattered intensity (Y_i^{obs}) is shown using the open circles; calculated intensity (Y_i^{calc}) is shown using the filled circles connected with thin solid line. The differences between the observed and calculated intensities are shown using the open triangles. The thick solid line drawn across the open triangles corresponds to $Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc} = 0$. The differences between the observed and calculated intensities are usually plotted using the scale identical to Y_i^{obs} and Y_i^{calc} with a constant displacement for clarity. The vertical tick marks (bars) indicate calculated positions of Bragg peaks.

10, 7 (1977); R.A. Young, P.E. Mackie, and R.B. Von Dreele, Application of the pattern-fitting structure-refinement method of x-ray powder diffractometer patterns, J. Appl. Cryst. **10**, 262 (1977); C.P Khattak and D.E. Cox, Profile analysis of x-ray powder diffractometer data: structural refinement of $La_{0.75}Sr_{0.25}CrO_3$. J. Appl. Cryst. **10**, 405 (1977).

No other technique, including a much more sophisticated single crystal diffraction method, comes close to the Rietveld method in its visual elegance. Yet when applied properly, the latter competes in accuracy and in many instances wins easily over the former, especially when a material is only available in a fine-grained, powdered, untextured thin film or other states making it out of reach for a single crystal diffraction study (e.g. see section 6.17). Furthermore, given several orders of magnitude difference in specimen size – micrograms in single crystal diffraction versus hundreds of milligrams in powder diffraction – the latter is a much better representative of the materials' structure in the bulk.

It is important, however, to remember that the Rietveld method requires a model of a crystal structure and by itself offers no clue on how to create such a model from first principles. Thus, the Rietveld technique is nothing else than a powerful refinement and optimization tool, which may also be used to establish structural details (sometimes subtle) that were missed during a partial or complete *ab initio* structure solution process, i.e. as in the twelve examples described in Chapter 6.

7.2.1 Rietveld method basics

During refinement using the Rietveld method, the following system of equations is solved by means of a non-linear least squares minimization:[1]

$$\begin{aligned} Y_1^{calc} &= kY_1^{obs} \\ Y_2^{calc} &= kY_2^{obs} \\ &\cdots \\ Y_n^{calc} &= kY_n^{obs} \end{aligned} \tag{7.1}$$

Here Y_i^{obs} is the observed and Y_i^{calc} is the calculated intensity of a point i of the powder diffraction pattern, k is the pattern scale factor, which is usually set at $k = 1$ because scattered intensity is measured on a relative scale and k is absorbed by the phase scale factor (e.g. see Eqs. 7.3 and 7.4, below), and n is the total number of the measured data points. Hence, a powder diffraction pattern in a digital format, in which scattered intensity at every

[1] In this section, we are concerned with a powder diffraction experiment, which consists of a single pattern (profile). The Rietveld technique may also be used to conduct refinement of the crystal structure employing multiple patterns collected from the same material. For example, powder diffraction data collected using conventional x-ray sources with different wavelengths, conventional and synchrotron x-rays, conventional or synchrotron x-rays and neutron source may be used simultaneously in a combined Rietveld refinement. The fundamentals of the combined Rietveld refinement are briefly considered in section 7.3.8.

point is measured with high accuracy, is indeed required for a successful implementation of the technique. In the Rietveld method the minimized function, Φ, is therefore, given by

$$\Phi = \sum_{i=1}^{n} w_i (Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc})^2 \tag{7.2}$$

where w_i is the weight assigned to the i^{th} data point and k (Eq. 7.1) is unity. The summation in Eq. 7.2 is carried over all measured data points, n.[1]

Considering Eq. 2.48 and taking into account the one-dimensionality of powder diffraction data, which introduces multiple Bragg reflection overlaps, the expanded form of Eq. 7.2 in the simplest case, i.e. when the powder is a single phase crystalline material, becomes

$$\Phi = \sum_{i=1}^{n} w_i (Y_i^{obs} - [b_i + K \sum_{j=1}^{m} I_j y_j (x_j)])^2 \tag{7.3}$$

for a single wavelength experiment or

$$\Phi = \sum_{i=1}^{n} w_i (Y_i^{obs} - [b_i + K \sum_{j=1}^{m} I_j \{y_j (x_j) + 0.5 y_j (x_j + \Delta x_j)\}])^2 \tag{7.4}$$

for dual wavelength ($K\alpha_1$ + $K\alpha_2$) data. In Eqs. 7.3 and 7.4, b_i is the background at the i^{th} data point, K is the phase scale factor, m is the number of Bragg reflections contributing to the intensity of the i^{th} data point, I_j is the integrated intensity of the j^{th} Bragg reflection, $y_j(x_j)$ is the peak shape function, Δx_j is the difference in positions of $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ components in the doublet, and $x_j = 2\theta_j^{calc} - 2\theta_i$.

A simple analysis of these two equations indicates that the experimental minimization of the background, which generally contains little or no useful

[1] In a typical experiment, n varies from ~10^3 to ~10^4 data points. In powder diffraction, the value of n is determined only by the scanned Bragg angle range and by the data collection step, $\Delta 2\theta$: $n = (2\theta_{max} - 2\theta_{min})/\Delta 2\theta + 1$. It is unrelated to both the complexity of the crystal structure and the number of Bragg reflections, M, which can be observed between $2\theta_{min}$ and $2\theta_{max}$. Obviously, M is proportional to the number of symmetrically independent points in a "visible" fraction of the reciprocal lattice. A simple estimate based on the volumes of the Ewald sphere and the unit cell of a reciprocal lattice, results in $M \propto V/\lambda^3$, where V is the volume of the primitive unit cell in direct space and λ is the wavelength. Thus, as unit cell volume increases, the number of possible Bragg reflections (M) also increases but the number of observations (n) in powder diffraction remains constant, provided experimental conditions (λ, $2\theta_{max}$, $2\theta_{min}$, and $\Delta 2\theta$) remain constant.

structural information, is of utmost importance for a successful outcome of a full profile-based refinement. When the background is low, i.e. when $b_i << K\Sigma I_j y_j(x_j)$, the functions given in both Eqs. 7.3 and 7.4 are defined by contributions from the integrated intensities and peak shape parameters. On the other hand, when the background is high, i.e. when $b_i \cong K\Sigma I_j y_j(x_j)$ and, especially when $b_i >> K\Sigma I_j y_j(x_j)$, the function, which is minimized during a least squares refinement, becomes nearly entirely dependent on the adequacy of the background and not the integrated intensities and peak shapes. Therefore, a structural model cannot be satisfactory refined using data collected in the presence of a large background.

In the absence of a background and assuming that the measured intensity is only affected by statistical errors (see Eqs. 3.8 and 3.9), the weight can be given as

$$w_i = [Y_i^{obs}]^{-1} \tag{7.5}$$

In practice, the weight is usually calculated without subtracting the background, which yet again emphasizes the importance to have the latter at its practical minimum.

When a powder diffraction pattern is collected from a material, which is a mixture of several (p) phases, the contribution from every crystalline phase is accounted for by modifying Eqs. 7.3 and 7.4 as follows:

$$\Phi = \sum_{i=1}^{n} w_i (Y_i^{obs} - [b_i + \sum_{l=1}^{p} K_l \sum_{j=1}^{m} I_{l,j} y_{l,j}(x_{l,j})])^2 \tag{7.6}$$

$$\Phi = \sum_{i=1}^{n} w_i (Y_i^{obs} - [b_i + \sum_{l=1}^{p} K_l \sum_{j=1}^{m} I_{l,j} \{y_{l,j}(x_{l,j}) + 0.5 y_{l,j}(x_{l,j} + \Delta x_{l,j})\}])^2 \tag{7.7}$$

Considering Eqs. 7.6 and 7.7, it is clear that each additional crystalline phase adds multiple Bragg peaks plus a new scale factor along with a set of corresponding peak shape and structural parameters into the non-linear least squares. Even though mathematically they are easily accounted for, the finite accuracy of measurements as well as the limited resolution of even the most advanced powder diffractometer, usually result in lowering the quality and stability of the Rietveld refinement in the case of multiple phase samples. Thus, when the precision of structural parameters is of concern, it is best to work with single-phase materials, where Eqs. 7.3 and 7.4 are applicable. On the other hand, since individual scale factors may be independently

determined, Rietveld refinement of multiple-phase powder diffraction patterns offers an opportunity for a quantitative analysis of a mixture or a multiple phase crystalline material.[1]

7.2.2 Classes of Rietveld parameters

Analytical expressions for the background (Eqs. 4.1 to 4.6), integrated intensity (Eqs. 2.65 to 2.108) and peak shape (Eqs. 2.49 to 2.63) have been considered earlier, and the minimum of the corresponding function defined by one of the relevant formulae (Eqs. 7.3 to 7.7) can be found by applying a non-linear least squares technique (see Eqs. 6.8 to 6.15). Thus, the following groups of independent least squares parameters are usually refined using the Rietveld method:

a) 1 to 12 parameters representing the background, although there may be as many as 36, e.g. in GSAS.
b) Sample displacement, sample transparency or zero-shift corrections.
c) Multiple peak shape function parameters, which usually include full width at half maximum, asymmetry and other relevant variables, and depend on the type of a function selected to represent a peak shape. In a multiple phase diffraction pattern, these may be maintained identical or refined independently for each phase present (generally except for the asymmetry), if warranted both by the quality of the data and considerable differences due to the physical state of various phases in the specimen.
d) Unit cell dimensions, usually from 1 to 6 independent parameters for each crystalline phase present in the specimen.
e) Preferred orientation, and if necessary, absorption, porosity, and extinction parameters, which usually are independent for each phase.
f) Scale factors, one for each phase (K_l), and in the case of multiple sets of powder diffraction data, one per pattern excluding the first, which is fixed at $k = 1$.
g) Positional parameters of all independent atoms in the model of the crystal structure of each crystalline phase, usually from 0 to 3 per atom.
h) Population parameters, if certain site positions are occupied partially or by different types of atoms simultaneously, usually one per site.[2]
i) Atomic displacement parameters, which may be treated as an overall displacement parameter (one for each phase or a group of atoms) or

[1] In this text, we are not specifically concerned with quantitative phase analyses of multiple phase mixtures, except for a single example considered in section 7.3.8, below. Interested reader is referred to an excellent overview given by R.J. Hill, Data collection strategies: fitting the experiment to the need, in: R.A. Young, Ed., The Rietveld method, Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (1993).

[2] When more than two types of atoms occupy the same site, more than one variable per site may be adjusted. However, these cases are usually extremely difficult to refine sensibly.

individual atomic displacement parameters, with the number of independent variables between one (isotropic approximation) and six (anisotropic approximation) per site.

The least squares parameters listed in items a) through d) are identical to those used in Pawley's and Le Bail's full pattern decompositions, as was considered in Chapter 6. Other variables, i.e. those found in items e) through i) in the list above, are specific to the Rietveld method. Although it is nearly impossible to prescribe a universal and rigid sequence in which various groups of physically different parameters should be included in a Rietveld refinement, Young[1] suggests the following parameter turn-on sequence based on their importance and potential for least squares instability:

Table 7.1. A suggested parameter turn-on sequence in a single-phase, single-pattern Rietveld refinement using constant wavelength x-ray or neutron data (adopted from Young).[1]

Parameter or group of parameters	Linear in Eqs. 7.3 to 7.7	Stable	Comment	Sequence
Phase scale	Yes	Yes	a	1
Specimen displacement	No	Yes	b	1
Linear background	Yes	Yes	c	2
Lattice parameters	No	Yes	d	2
More background	Generally no	Yes	c	2 or 3
W	No	Poorly	e	3 or 5
Coordinates of atoms	No	Fairly	f	3
Preferred orientation	No	Fairly	f	4 or not
Population and isotropic displacements	No	Varies	Correlated	5
U, *V*, other profile parameters	No	No	e	Last
Anisotropic displacements	No	Varies		Last
Zero shift	No	Yes	b	1, 5 or not

[a] When the scale factor is far off, or when the model of the crystal structure is wrong or too far from reality, the refined scale factor may become incorrect.

[b] The specimen displacement parameter usually varies from sample to sample and it usually takes up some of the effects of sample transparency. For a properly aligned goniometer, the zero shift error should be negligible. Even if the goniometer is misaligned, the zero shift correction should remain sample independent.

[c] When the background is large, at least its constant component should be estimated and included at the very beginning. In a polynomial approximation, the background parameters are linear. When more than the required background parameters are employed, severe correlations may result.

[d] When one or more lattice parameters are incorrect, one or more calculated Bragg peaks can lock-on to a wrong observed peak, thus leading to a solid false minimum.

[e] *U*, *V*, *W* tend to be highly correlated and various combinations of quite different values can lead to essentially the same peak widths.

[f] When coordinates of all atoms are refined, the plot of the observed and calculated diffraction data should be used to determine whether preferred orientation should be included. Coordinates may strongly correlate in the presence of pseudo-symmetry.

[1] R.A. Young, Introduction to the Rietveld method, in: R.A. Young, Ed., The Rietveld method, Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (1993).

The turn-on sequence described in *Table 7.1* may be and often is altered depending on many variables, which include data quality, accuracy of the initial structural model, and knowledge of the instrumental contributions to profile parameters. It is important to realize that rarely, if ever, it is possible to refine all relevant variables simultaneously from the beginning due to the complexity of the problem and many possibilities for an out-of-control least squares. As noted by Young, a systematic, one-by-one turn-on sequence is nearly always the most effective tool to establish which parameter is causing the trouble when the refinement does not go well and it is not clear why.

7.2.3 Figures of merit and quality of refinement

Similar to both Le Bail's and Pawley's full pattern decompositions, the quality of the refinement using the Rietveld method is quantified by the corresponding figures of merit: profile residual, R_p, weighted profile residual R_{wp}, Bragg residual, R_B, expected residual R_{exp}, and goodness of fit, χ^2 (see Eqs. 6.18 to 6.22). The Durbin-Watson *d*-statistic (Eqs. 6.23, 6.24) may be used to quantify a serial correlation between adjacent least squares residuals in a Rietveld refinement based on step-scan experimental data. As noted before, all but one (R_B) residuals depend on both the profile and structural parameters. The Bragg residual becomes especially significant during Rietveld refinement because it is the only figure of merit, which is nearly exclusively dependent on structural parameters and therefore, primarily characterizes the accuracy of the model of the crystal structure.[1]

Regardless of the importance of various numerical figures of merit used to measure the quality of the Rietveld refinement, none of the residuals is a substitute for the plots of the observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns supplemented by the difference, $\Delta Y_i = Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc}$, plotted on the same scale. A standard in the modern representation of the refinement results also requires inclusion of tick marks indicating the calculated positions of Bragg peaks (e.g. see *Figure 6.5* to *Figure 6.11*). For dual wavelength data, Bragg reflections positions calculated for $K\alpha_1$ or both $K\alpha_1$ and $K\alpha_2$ components in the doublet, may be included (e.g. see *Figure 7.1*).

[1] Bragg residual, Eq. 6.20, as calculated in Rietveld refinement, uses true calculated integrated intensities but the "observed" integrated intensities are never actually measured experimentally. They are simply calculated by prorating the observed experimental profile proportionally to the contributions from multiple overlapped calculated reflection profiles after the background has been subtracted (see Eq. 6.7), followed by the numerical integration (see Eq. 2.64). In this regard, Bragg residual also depends on the profile parameters, although this dependence is far less critical when compared to R_p, R_{wp}, and χ^2. In some references, R_B, which is based on the square roots of the integrated intensities, is used as an equivalent of R_F. The latter employs the absolute values of the observed and calculated structure factors: $R_F = \Sigma(|K|\mathbf{F}_i^{obs}| - |\mathbf{F}_i^{calc}||)/\Sigma(K|\mathbf{F}_i^{obs}|)$.

The need for a graphical representation of the results is especially important because both R_p and R_{wp} absorb the contribution from the background. In extreme cases, when the background is high, it is possible that the corresponding numerical figures of merit appear to be excellent due to extremely large denominators in Eqs. 6.18 and 6.19, but neither the model nor the fit of Bragg peaks make much sense. When the background is unusually high, both the observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns should be plotted after a constant component of the background has been subtracted to enable easy examination of a potential inadequacy of the selected peak shape function and/or other unusual discrepancies not visible on top of a vast background. Truly, the numbers may be biased but the figure can be trusted when it comes to assessing the quality of Rietveld fits.

7.2.4 Termination of Rietveld refinement

Non-linear least squares technique results in finding a set of increments that are added to a set of free variables chosen to represent a certain initial approximation. Parameters, obtained in this ways, are carried over into the next refinement cycle as a more precise initial approximation. In some cases it may take a few refinement cycles to achieve the best fit, i.e. to minimize the corresponding function, while in many instances the number of required least squares steps may be quite large. Especially in Rietveld refinement, where various groups of parameters have a different and often unrelated physical origin, the ability to detect the completion of the minimization, i.e. the complete convergence of the least squares, is essential.

The critical variables to watch during the refinement are indeed, a set of standard figures of merit (FOM's), i.e. R_p, R_{wp}, R_B and χ^2. When the Rietveld algorithm is stable, they should gradually decrease and then level off showing minimal fluctuations about certain minimum values, which are experiment- and structure-specific. In some cases, FOM's may begin to rise. More often than not, their steady or erratic rise indicates the undesired divergence of the non-linear least squares, which is usually associated with severe correlations between two or more variables. If this condition is detected, the refinement should be stopped without saving the results and the array of free variables re-analyzed to introduce proper constraints.

Even if the refinement is stable, it should be terminated at a certain point. Because of the finite accuracy of both the data and computations, it is unrealistic to wait until increments of all least squares parameters become zero. The latter usually never happens anyway due to simplifications introduced in the non-linear least squares algorithm (see Eq. 6.9 in section 6.6). In addition to the stabilization of all figures of merit near their respective minima, another important factor that should be considered is the

relationships between the increments and corresponding standard deviations after each least squares cycle. It is commonly accepted that when all residuals converge and stabilize at their minima, and when the absolute values of all increments become smaller than the estimated standard deviations of the corresponding free variables,[1] the least squares refinement may be considered converged (indeed, the model must remain rational).

7.3 Rietveld refinement of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$[2]

We have seen this powder diffraction pattern several times throughout this text. The histogram collected from the nearly spherical $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ powder, produced by high pressure gas atomization from a melt, was used to illustrate both the quality of x-ray diffraction data and as one of the examples in the *ab initio* crystal structure solution. To demonstrate the Rietveld refinement of this crystal structure we will begin with the profile and unit cell parameters determined from Le Bail's algorithm (*Table 6.3*) and the model of the crystal structure determined from sequential Fourier maps as described in section 6.9 and listed in *Table 6.8*.

To account for the presumably statistical distribution of Ni and Sn atoms in the 2(c) and 3(g) sites in this crystal structure, the initial distribution of atoms in the unit cell has been assumed as listed in *Table 7.2*. The initial profile and structural parameters are found in the input file for LHPM-Rietica on the CD, the file name is **Ch7Ex01a.inp**. Experimental diffraction data, collected on a Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode powder diffractometer using Cu Kα radiation in a continuous scan mode, are located on the CD in the file **Ch7Ex01_CuKa.dat**.

The last column in *Table 7.2* contains site occupancies by all atoms in the format required by LHPM-Rietica.[3] The occupancy of each site (n) is given as a product of the population parameter (g) and site multiplicity (m) divided by the multiplicity of the general site position (M):

$$n = \frac{gm}{M} \tag{7.8}$$

The fractional population parameter, g, varies from 1 (fully occupied site) to 0 (completely unoccupied site). Thus, the fully occupied 1(a) site has occupancy by La: n = 1/24 = 0.04167; the 97% occupancy of 2(c) and 3(g) sites by Ni results in n_{Ni1} = 0.97×2/24 = 0.08083 and n_{Ni2} = 0.97×3/24 =

[1] Usually lower than a small (e.g. $1/10^{th}$) fraction of the standard deviation.

[2] J. Ting, I.E. Anderson, and V.K. Pecharsky, unpublished.

[3] Some software products, e.g. GSAS, require specification of the population parameters as g, while the multiplicities of site positions are automatically included by the program.

0.12125, respectively. The 3% occupancy of the same two sites by Sn yields n_{Sn1} = 0.00250 and n_{Sn2} = 0.00375, respectively. The overall atomic displacement parameter, B = 0.5 Å^2, has been assumed at the beginning of Rietveld refinement. The progression of the refinement using LHPM-Rietica is illustrated in *Table 7.3* and in *Figure 7.2* to *Figure 7.5*.

Table 7.2. Coordinates of atoms (x, y, and z) and site occupancies (n) in the unit cell of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ according to the initial model of the crystal structure (compare with *Table 6.8*).

Atom	Site	x	y	z	n
La	1(a)	0	0	0	0.04167
0.97Ni1	2(c)	1/3	2/3	0	0.08083
0.03Sn1	2(c)	1/3	2/3	0	0.00250
0.97Ni2	3(g)	1/2	0	1/2	0.12125
0.03Sn2	3(g)	1/2	0	1/2	0.00375

Table 7.3. The progress of Rietveld refinement of the crystal structure of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ using powder diffraction data. Wavelengths used: $\lambda K\alpha_1$ = 1.54059 Å, $\lambda K\alpha_2$ = 1.54441 Å. In this and all other tables, the R_p, R_{wp}, and R_B are listed in percent; χ^2 is dimensionless.

Refined parameters	R_p	R_{wp}	R_B	χ^2
Initial residuals: peak shape, background, zero shift and unit cell taken from *Table 6.3*, initial model from *Table 7.2*; see *Figure 7.2*	19.75	25.11	21.11	22.91
Scale factor	11.26	14.47	9.35	7.62
Scale factor, peak shape parameters, background (third order polynomial), zero shift, unit cell; see *Figure 7.3*	10.35	13.21	9.30	6.36
All of the above plus overall atomic displacement parameter	7.90	10.81	5.75	4.26
Individual atomic displacement parameters in isotropic approximation plus all peak shape parameters, background, zero shift, unit cell, scale	6.77	9.95	3.98	3.61
Overall atomic displacement parameter but individual population parameters of 2(c) and 3(g) sites plus peak shape parameters, background, zero shift, unit cell, scale	6.48	9.68	3.55	3.42
Individual atomic displacement parameters in isotropic approximation plus all peak shape parameters, background, zero shift, unit cell, scale	6.44	9.68	3.58	3.42
Individual atomic displacement parameters in anisotropic approximation plus all peak shape parameters, background, zero shift, unit cell, scale (i.e. all free variables)	6.26	9.57	3.10	3.34
Same as above plus a second phase (as Le Bail's extraction) – i.e. all free variables including those of an impurity phase; see *Figure 7.5*	5.85	8.07	3.10	2.38

7.3.1 Scale factor and profile parameters

Initial residuals (row one in *Table 7.3*), calculated using profile parameters determined from the full pattern decomposition employing Le Bail's algorithm and the default value of the scale factor (K = 0.01), are quite

low.[1] The corresponding plot of the observed and calculated powder diffraction data is shown in *Figure 7.2*, from which it is obvious that the intensities of nearly all observed Bragg peaks are lower than those of the calculated reflections. As follows from Eq. 7.4, this is indeed the effect of an overestimated scale factor. Thus, one of the critical parameters, which should be determined at the beginning of every Rietveld refinement, is the scale factor, K (also see *Table 7.1*). Several refinement cycles (all variables except K are fixed) are usually sufficient to reach convergence (row 2, *Table 7.3*) since in this case the least squares procedure, in fact, becomes linear.[2]

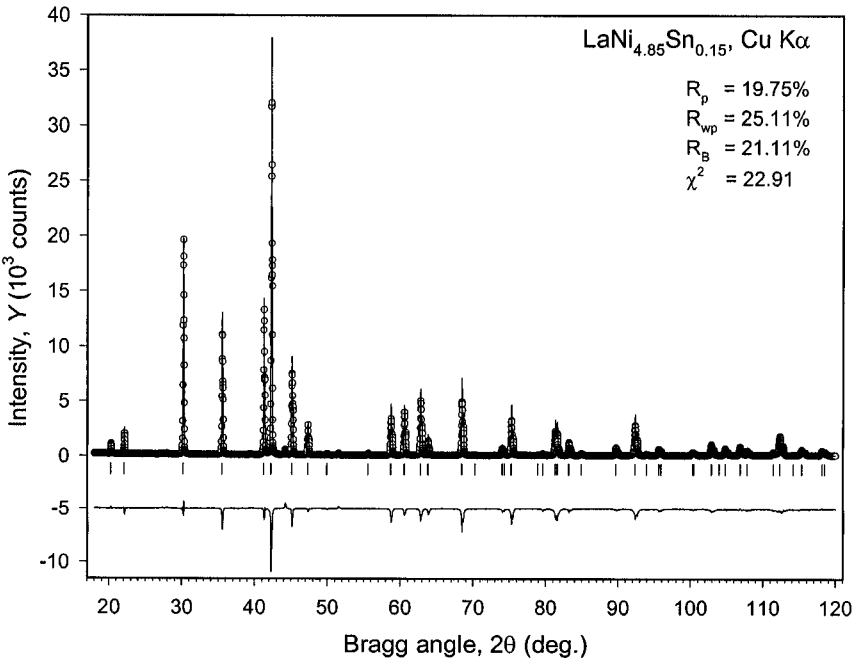


Figure 7.2. The observed (open circles) and calculated (solid line) diffraction patterns of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$. Scattered intensity was calculated using instrumental and lattice parameters determined during Le Bail's refinement and default scale factor ($K = 0.01$). The difference, $Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc}$, is displaced by -5,000 counts for clarity. Vertical bars in the lower part of the figure indicate calculated positions of the $K\alpha_1$ components of Bragg reflections in $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$. The data were collected from nearly spherical powder produced by high pressure gas atomization (see *Figure 3.32*) on a Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode powder diffractometer using Cu Kα radiation.

[1] This is usually not the case in the majority of Rietveld refinements because the default value of the scale factor selected in LHPM-Rietica ($K = 0.01$) is arbitrary. For example, see *Table 7.5*, below, where initial residuals are much higher due to the inadequacy of the default phase scale.

[2] One cycle is usually enough to determine K; additional cycles may be needed for a proper determination of the intensities of overlapped Bragg peaks.

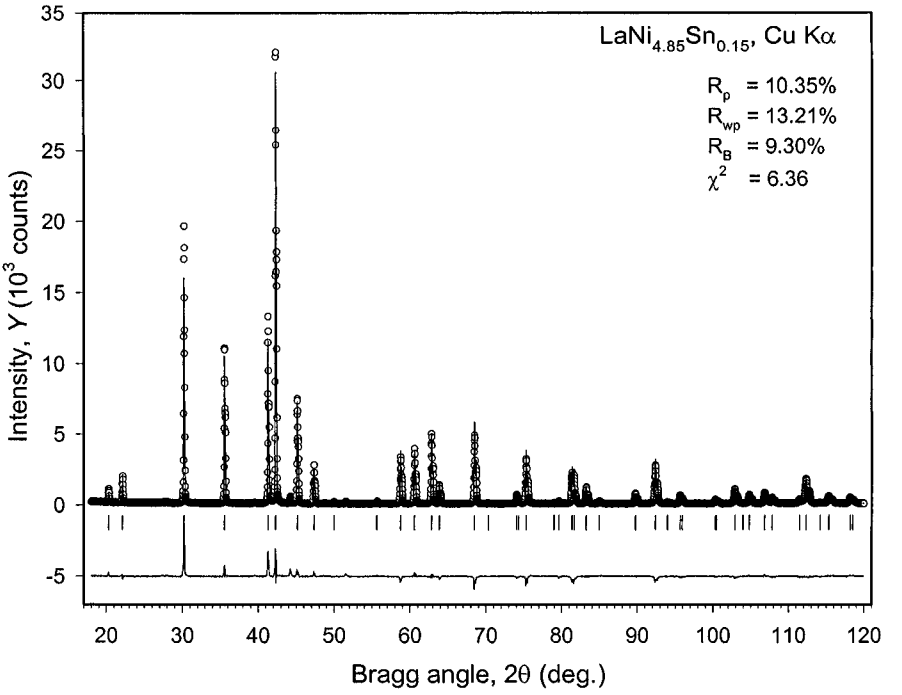


Figure 7.3. The observed and calculated diffraction patterns of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$. The scattered intensity was calculated using scale factor, instrumental and lattice parameters determined during Rietveld refinement, and guessed overall atomic displacement parameter $B = 0.5$ Å^2. All notations are identical to *Figure 7.2*.

Under normal circumstances,[1] the scale factor is one of the few least squares parameters, which is always kept as a free variable in a Rietveld refinement. Since in this particular example, all profile and lattice parameters have been refined using Le Bail's approach, the next reasonable step is to release all associated variables before proceeding with individual atomic parameters (the scale factor remains a least squares free variable).[2] As expected, the resultant change in the figures of merit, listed in third row in *Table 7.3*, is small because the background, peak shape and lattice parameters are already quite accurate.

[1] In rare cases, e.g. when all sites in the crystal structure are partially occupied, the scale factor may become strongly correlated with the population parameters. This requires special attention and detailed consideration of all possibilities exceeds the scope of this text. One of the options is to use the known scale factor as a fixed parameter while refining population parameters of all crystallographic sites. This option is, however, seldom available because relative and not absolute intensities are customarily measured in a powder diffraction experiment.

[2] In this structure, only individual displacement and population parameters can be refined.

7.3.2 Overall atomic displacement parameter

So far, the only "structural" parameter included in the refinement was the scale factor. This particular crystal structure has no free coordinates of individual atoms – all are fixed by the symmetry of the occupied special positions. Thus, given the relatively low values of all residuals and recalling that at the beginning we assumed an arbitrary value for the overall atomic displacement parameter (B = 0.5 Å^2), it is time to include it into the least squares minimization. The inconsistency of the randomly chosen overall atomic displacement parameter is also easily distinguishable from the plot of the observed and calculated intensities, which is shown in *Figure 7.3*. The intensities of the majority of Bragg peaks observed at low angles exceed calculated intensities but at high angles ($2\theta > \sim 65°$) the relationships become just the opposite. Given the effect of the atomic displacement parameters on the integrated intensity as a function of Bragg angle (see Eq. 2.91), it is easy to conclude that the actual overall B is considerably higher than 0.5 Å^2.

The refinement of the overall B results in a significant reduction of all residuals (fourth line in *Table 7.3*), which is also expected since now we have a realistic global estimate of thermal motions of atoms in the crystal lattice of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$. The refined value of the overall atomic displacement parameter is B = 1.32(2) Å^2, where the number in parenthesis indicates a standard deviation in the last significant digit.

7.3.3 Individual parameters, free and constrained variables

At this point, we may begin to refine atomic displacement parameters of the individual atoms. This is done by substituting individual B's (which were kept at 0) by the refined overall atomic displacement parameter. *The overall B after this substitution should be set to* 0. The distribution of atoms in the model of the crystal structure of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ is such that two of the sites, 2(c) and 3(g), see *Table 7.2*, are occupied by different types of atoms simultaneously. Generally, atomic displacement parameters of different atoms occupying the same crystallographic site should be constrained at identical values.[1]

In LHPM-Rietica and almost every other commonly available software product, any dependent parameter, $P_{dependent}$, may be constrained to any free

[1] This is a reasonable simplification especially because it is nearly impossible to differentiate properly between the vibrational motions of different atoms located in the identical environment. Furthermore, individual displacement parameters of atoms occupying the same crystallographic sites have a tendency to strong correlation, thus causing severe instabilities of non-linear least squares. If a site has variable coordinate parameters, the latter should be constrained equal for all atoms occupying the site due to the same reasons.

least squares parameter, P_{free}. The differentiation of the corresponding linear relationship between the two variables results in the numerical constraint, which is employed during the calculation of the normal equations matrix in the least squares and is applied to the shift obtained for the free parameter before adding it to the constrained variable:

$$P_{dependent} = f(P_{free}) \Rightarrow \Delta P_{dependent} = \frac{\partial f(P_{free})}{\partial P_{free}} \Delta P_{free} \qquad (7.9)$$

Considering Eq. 7.9 and assuming than $B_{Ni1} = B_{Sn1}$ and $B_{Ni2} = B_{Sn2}$, the proper constraints will be $\Delta B_{Sn1} = 1 \times \Delta B_{Ni1}$ and $\Delta B_{Sn2} = 1 \times \Delta B_{Ni2}$. This implies that individual isotropic atomic displacement parameters of Ni atoms are maintained as free least squares variables and the same for Sn atoms are taken as constrained parameters.[1] The input file, **Ch7Ex01b.inp**, with all up-to-the-point parameters refined and properly constrained is found on the CD (consult both the LHPM-Rietica manual and the on-line tutorial[2] for details on how to introduce constraints into the input file).

The resulting refinement further reduces the residuals (see row five in *Table 7.3*) and yields the following distribution of the individual atomic displacement parameters:

La in 1(a),	$B = 1.30(1)$ Å^2
0.97Ni+0.03Sn in 2(c),	$B = 1.81(2)$ Å^2
0.97Ni+0.03Sn in 3(g),	$B = 0.98(2)$ Å^2

It is obvious that atoms in the 2(c) site have much larger atomic displacement parameters than identical atoms in the 3(g) site. This situation is quite unusual for a simple intermetallic compound and likely indicates that our assumption about a statistical distribution of Ni and Sn in both crystallographic sites was incorrect. The enhanced isotropic atomic displacement parameter in the 2(c) site points to a lower scattering ability, while the reduced atomic displacement parameter in the 3(g) site points to a higher scattering factor when compared to the current distribution of atoms. Indeed, we may speculate that only 3(g) sites contain Sn atoms, which have greater scattering ability than Ni atoms. Another possibility is that the 2(c)

[1] In the hexagonal crystal system, a and b unit cell parameters are constrained by symmetry. ($a = b$). In LHPM-Rietica, lattice parameters are constrained automatically for all crystal systems.

[2] Brett Hunter, LHPM-Rietica Rietveld for Win95/NT. Tutorial is accessible *via* http://www.ccp14.ac.uk/, then "Tutorials" on the site map, then "LHPM-Rietica_Rietveld".

sites are depleted in Sn, while some Sn atoms are still located there, and the 3(g) sites are enriched in Sn.

When the precision of x-ray diffraction data is high, which appears to be the case here, it is possible to refine the population of different crystallographic sites to eliminate guesses and obtain a quantitative result. The best way to do so is to return to the overall displacement parameter and instead of refining individual atomic displacement parameters, include the refinement of the individual population parameters in the corresponding sites.[1]

Assuming full occupancy of all sites, i.e. $g_{Ni1} = 1 - g_{Sn1}$ and $g_{Ni2} = 1 - g_{Sn2}$, the corresponding constraints (Eq. 7.9) should be set at $\Delta n_{Sn1} = -1 \times \Delta n_{Ni1}$ and $\Delta n_{Sn2} = -1 \times \Delta n_{Ni2}$. The file **Ch7Ex01c.inp**, in which all parameters are properly constrained, is found on the CD. This Rietveld refinement step results in the following occupancies of the two sites in question:

2(c): $n_{Ni1} = 0.085(1)$, $n_{Sn1} = -0.002(1)$
3(g): $n_{Ni1} = 0.118(1)$, $n_{Sn1} = 0.007(1)$

The negative occupancy by Sn of the 2(c) site has no physical sense, especially given that the absolute value of the occupancy is comparable with the standard deviation. Thus, this site appears to be pure Ni. On the other hand, it is confirmed by the refinement that all Sn is segregated in the 3(g) sites. It is worth noting that when the chemical composition of the formula unit is calculated from the refined occupancies, the result is $LaNi_{4.83(2)}Sn_{0.17(2)}$, which matches the as-prepared chemical composition of the material within one standard deviation.[2]

[1] We note that since one of the sites, 1(a) seems to be fully occupied by La, the least squares refinement of the population parameters of the two remaining sites, 2(c) and 3(g) may be carried out together with the scale factor. Only when the population of all sites is in question, special precautions should be taken to avoid severe correlation between the scale factor and all population parameters. When all sites are occupied partially, diffraction data alone normally do not provide an adequate answer because both K and g_j are simple multipliers, which affect the scattered intensity. Other experimental methods should be employed to establish and/or prove that defects exist on all lattice sites. One of these are precise gravimetric density data.

[2] Refinement of the crystal structure is, therefore, a powerful chemical analysis technique. Unlike conventional chemical analysis, which only yields the bulk composition of the sample, powder diffraction analysis facilitates accurate determination of the occupancies of different crystallographic sites by various chemical elements, or in other words, establishes precise chemical composition of the crystal at the atomic resolution. It should be noted that the results may be considered reliable only when the difference in the scattering ability of atoms in question is significant, in addition to a very high quality of experimental data. This is indeed the case here because scattering factors of Sn and Ni are related as ~1.8:1.

Proceeding with the refinement of the individual atomic displacement parameters after removing Sn atoms from the 2(c) site and setting its occupancy to $n_{Ni1} = 0.08333$ (the file **Ch7Ex01d.inp** is located on the CD), we find that the individual isotropic atomic displacement parameters of all atoms become much closer to one another. The resultant residuals are listed in row seven of *Table 7.3*.

7.3.4 Anisotropic atomic displacement parameters

The only remaining degree of freedom in this crystal structure is to refine the displacement parameters of all atoms in the anisotropic approximation (the presence of preferred orientation is quite unlikely since the used powder was spherical and we leave it up to the reader to verify its absence by trying to refine the texture using available experimental data). As noted in Chapter 2, special positions usually mandate certain relationships between the anisotropic atomic displacement parameters of the corresponding atoms. In the space group P6/mmm, the relevant constraints are as follows:

La in 1(a): $\beta_{11}(\text{free}) = \beta_{22} = 2\beta_{12}$; β_{33} – free; $\beta_{13} = \beta_{23} = 0$

Ni in 2(c): $\beta_{11}(\text{free}) = \beta_{22} = 2\beta_{12}$; β_{33} – free; $\beta_{13} = \beta_{23} = 0$

Ni+Sn in 3(g): β_{11}, β_{22}, β_{33} – free; $\beta_{12} = 0.5\beta_{22}$; $\beta_{13} = \beta_{23} = 0$

After the individual isotropic atomic displacement parameters were replaced by the properly constrained individual anisotropic displacement parameters (LHPM-Rietica uses β_{ij}, see Eq. 2.93), the refinement converges to the residuals listed in row 8 of *Table 7.3*. The parameters of the fully refined structure are found in the file **Ch7Ex01e.inp** on the CD.

7.3.5 Multiple phase refinement

The presence of a minor second phase impurity can be added either in the form of the actual structural model of Ni or as a Le Bail's phase, where only the unit cell and peak shape parameters are taken into account. The latter option has been chosen since we are not interested in the crystal structure of this minor impurity, and it may be a difficult task given its small contribution to the total scattered intensity.

The refinement with both crystalline phases contributing to the computation of the scattered intensity (row 9, *Table 7.3*) converges rapidly and yields the residuals, which are only slightly higher than those, obtained when no model of the crystal structure was present during a full pattern

decomposition (see section 6.9 in Chapter 6). The input file after the completion of the refinement (**Ch7Ex01f.inp**) is also included on the CD.

7.3.6 Refinement results

The final parameters in the crystal structure of the $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ as determined from the Rietveld refinement are listed in *Table 7.4*. The refined model of the crystal structure of the $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ compound is shown in *Figure 7.4*. All interatomic distances are normal and the atomic displacement parameters of all atoms show little anisotropy, which is typical for many intermetallic compounds, structures of which are based on the close packing of spheres. The resultant observed and calculated diffraction patterns are plotted in *Figure 7.5* in a standard Rietveld format.

Table 7.4. Structural parameters of the major phase ($LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$), fully refined by the Rietveld technique employing powder diffraction data collected using Cu Kα radiation (see *Figure 7.5*). The refined unit cell dimensions are: $a = 5.04228(6)$, $c = 4.01170(5)$ Å.

Atom	Site	*x*	*y*	*z*	*g*[a]	$10^4\beta_{11}$[b]	$10^4\beta_{22}$[b]	$10^4\beta_{33}$[b]	$10^4\beta_{12}$[b]
La	1(a)	0	0	0	1	156(2)	156(2)	258(3)	78(1)
Ni1	2(c)	1/3	2/3	0	1	227(3)	227(3)	183(5)	113(1)
Ni2	3(g)	1/2	0	1/2	0.944(2)	178(3)	174(4)	187(5)	87(2)
Sn	3(g)	1/2	0	1/2	0.056(2)	178(3)	174(4)	187(5)	87(2)

[a] The population parameters of the 3(g) site are listed as *g*, i.e. they represent fractional occupancies by Ni and Sn, refined assuming full overall occupancy of the site.

[b] The following anisotropic displacement parameters are fixed by symmetry for all sites: $\beta_{13} = \beta_{23} = 0$.

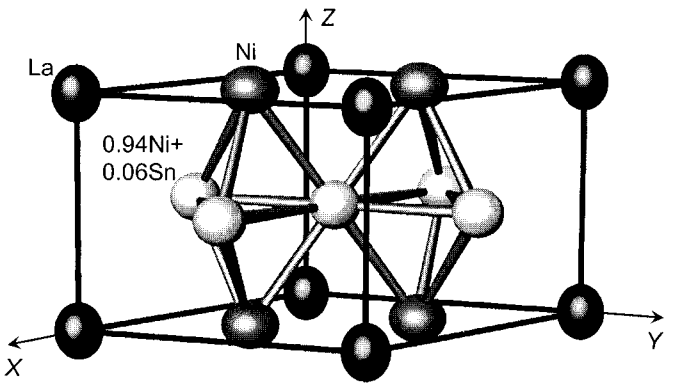


Figure 7.4. One unit cell of the crystal structure of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ as determined from Rietveld refinement. The model reflects different distribution of the Ni and Sn atoms between 2(c) and 3(g) sites (dark- and light-grey, respectively). The displacement ellipsoids are shown at 99% probability. Compare this figure with *Figure 6.14*.

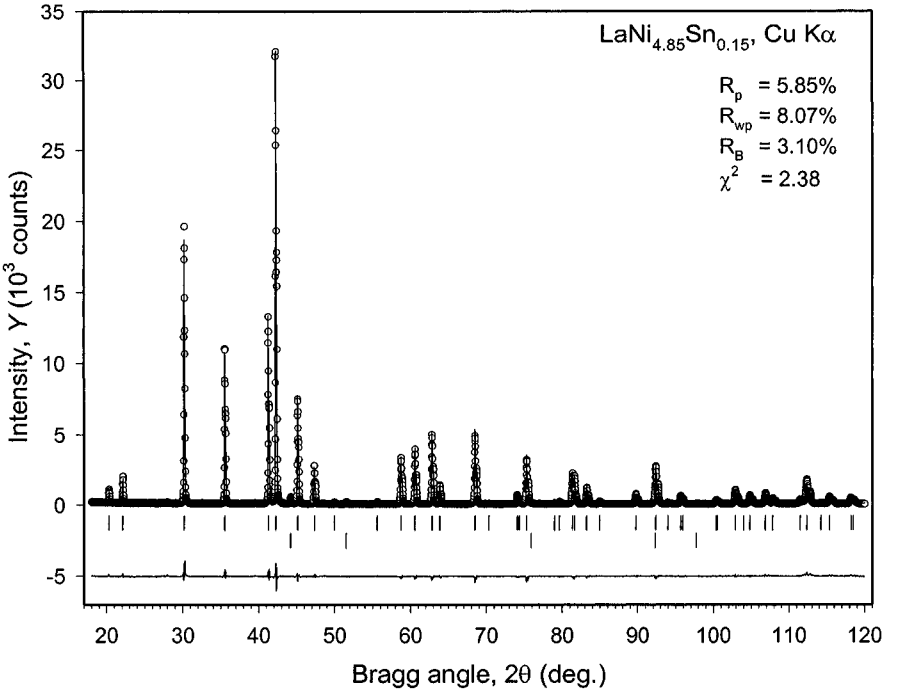


Figure 7.5. The observed and calculated diffraction patterns of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ after the completion of Rietveld refinement. Notations are identical to *Figure 7.2* and the second set of vertical bars indicates the calculated positions of the $K\alpha_1$ components of Bragg peaks in the impurity phase (solid solution of Sn in Ni).

7.3.7 Different radiation

The x-ray powder diffraction data were also collected from the same specimen of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ using Mo Kα radiation. The experimental data are shown in *Figure 7.6.* One of the most obvious benefits of using higher energy photons, is the greater volume of the reciprocal lattice, which can be examined experimentally. An important advantage of including the data measured at higher $\sin\theta/\lambda$ into the Rietveld refinement, is in obtaining more accurate values of the individual atomic displacement parameters together with the more precise site populations in this crystal structure. The better accuracy, when compared to Cu Kα radiation, becomes obvious from a simple analysis of Eqs. 2.89 and 2.91, which indicate that the effect of varying g is independent of the Bragg angle, while the varying B has the largest influence on the intensity, scattered at high $\sin\theta/\lambda$. Thus, by including intensity scattered at high $\sin\theta/\lambda$ we reduce the correlation between the atomic displacement and population parameters.

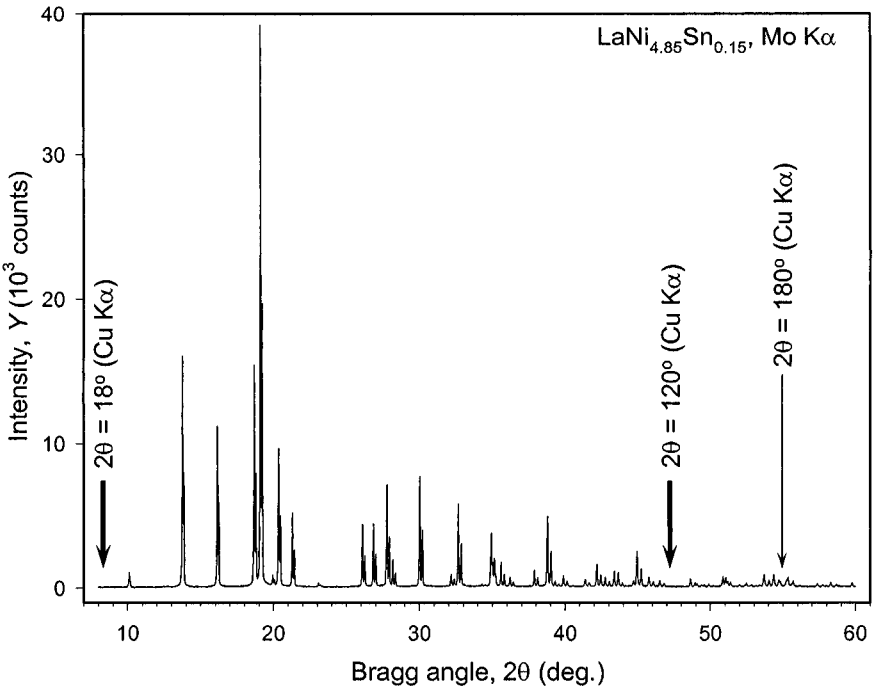


Figure 7.6. The x-ray powder diffraction pattern of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ collected on a Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode powder diffractometer using Mo Kα radiation with a step $\Delta 2\theta = 0.01°$. The nearly spherical $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ powder was produced by high pressure gas atomization. The two short thick vertical arrows show the range of $\sin\theta/\lambda$ examined using Cu Kα radiation (e.g. see *Figure 7.2*), and the long thin vertical arrow indicates the fundamental upper limit of the reciprocal space ($2\theta = 180°$) accessible when using Cu Kα radiation.

Since we did not perform Le Bail's decomposition of this powder diffraction pattern, we will illustrate the Rietveld refinement sequence in this case beginning from all profile parameters selected at their default values and the same starting model of the crystal structure as was used in the case of Cu Kα radiation data. The input file, **Ch7Ex01g.inp**, with initial variables and the experimental data file, **Ch7Ex01_MoKa.dat**, are found on the CD. The progression of the refinement is shown in *Table 7.5*.

When peak shape and background parameters are unknown, the Rietveld refinement strategy usually changes. At the beginning (first nine rows in *Table 7.5*), major attention has been paid to a sensible refinement of the peak shape, background and lattice parameters along with the zero shift to achieve the best possible agreement between the observed and calculated scattered intensity. Only then, the overall displacement and properly constrained individual population parameters were included into the refinement. At this point, the examination of low Bragg angle peak shapes indicated that

Howard's asymmetry approximation is not suitable and asymmetry was changed to a more realistic Finger, Cox and Jephcoat model, as indicated in the footnotes to *Table 7.5.*

Table 7.5. The progress of Rietveld refinement of the crystal structure of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ using powder diffraction data shown in *Figure 7.6.* Wavelengths used: $\lambda K\alpha_1 = 0.70932$ Å, $\lambda K\alpha_2 = 0.71361$ Å.

Refined parameters	R_p	R_{wp}	R_B	χ^2
Initial (all default, model from *Table 7.2*) [a]	617.8	808.3	608.7	3×10^4
Scale factor [a]	52.96	60.34	36.38	172.8
Scale factor plus linear background [a]	39.91	47.28	27.55	106.1
Scale, linear background plus *U*, *V*, *W* [a]	22.85	29.97	12.29	42.67
Scale, linear background, *U*, *V*, *W* plus η_0 [a]	20.44	26.51	10.13	33.39
Scale, linear background, *U*, *V*, *W*, η_0, *a* and *c* [a]	14.93	19.59	9.21	18.24
Scale, linear background, *U*, *V*, *W*, η_0, *a*, *c* plus asymmetry [a]	13.25	17.91	9.15	15.25
Scale, linear background, *U*, *V*, *W*, η_0, *a*, *c*, asymmetry, plus zero shift [a]	13.02	17.77	9.02	15.01
Scale, *U*, *V*, *W*, η_0, *a*, *c*, asymmetry, zero shift, plus background (third order) [a]	11.81	15.75	8.73	11.79
Scale, *U*, *V*, *W*, η_0, *a*, *c*, asymmetry, zero shift, background (third order) plus overall *B* [a]	9.13	12.96	4.33	7.99
Scale, *U*, *V*, *W*, η_0, *a*, *c*, asymmetry, zero shift, background (third order), overall *B* plus individual population parameters [a]	8.47	12.18	2.76	7.06
Scale, *U*, *V*, *W*, η_0, *a*, *c*, zero shift, background (third order), overall *B*, individual population parameters. Asymmetry in FCJ approximation [b]	7.49	11.20	2.47	5.97
Scale, *U*, *V*, *W*, η_0, *a*, *c*, asymmetry, zero shift, background (third order), individual population parameters plus individual anisotropic displacement parameters [b,c]	6.95	10.80	1.52	5.56
Scale, all peak shape, lattice, zero shift, background (third order), individual population and anisotropic parameters [b,c]	6.21	10.28	1.48	5.03
All as above plus a second phase (Le Bail's decomposition) [b,c]	5.71	8.41	1.33	3.38

[a] Pseudo-Voigt peak shape function with Howard's asymmetry, see Eq. 2.63.

[b] Pseudo-Voigt peak shape function. Asymmetry was changed to Finger, Cox and Jephcoat approximation, which better represents peak shapes measured on this powder diffractometer using Mo Kα radiation, see section 6.10.

[c] Population of the 2(c) site was set to pure Ni, while the population of the 3(g) site remained free parameter.

Since the quality of this powder diffraction pattern is excellent, we can immediately switch to the refinement of the individual anisotropic parameters. Furthermore, the presence of diffraction data at high $\sin\theta/\lambda$ enables us to refine the individual displacement and population parameters in the 3(g) site simultaneously. Finally, the presence of an impurity was also accounted as the "Le Bail's" phase. The fully refined input data file,

Ch7Ex01h.inp, is located on the CD. The resultant observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns are shown in *Figure 7.7* and the final parameters of individual atoms are listed in *Table 7.6*.

Table 7.6. Structural parameters of the major phase ($LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$), fully refined by the Rietveld technique using powder diffraction data shown in *Figure 7.7*. The refined unit cell dimensions are: a = 5.04479(3), c = 4.01303(3) Å. The following anisotropic displacement parameters are constrained by symmetry in all sites: $\beta_{13} = \beta_{23} = 0$.

Atom	Site	x	y	z	g[a]	$10^4\beta_{11}$	$10^4\beta_{22}$	$10^4\beta_{33}$	$10^4\beta_{12}$
La	1(a)	0	0	0	1	135(2)	135(2)	252(4)	68(1)
Ni1	2(c)	1/3	2/3	0	1	194(2)	194(2)	130(4)	97(1)
Ni2	3(g)	1/2	0	1/2	0.944(2)	136(2)	104(3)	137(4)	52(2)
Sn	3(g)	1/2	0	1/2	0.056(2)	136(2)	104(3)	137(4)	52(2)

[a] See the corresponding footnote in *Table 7.4*.

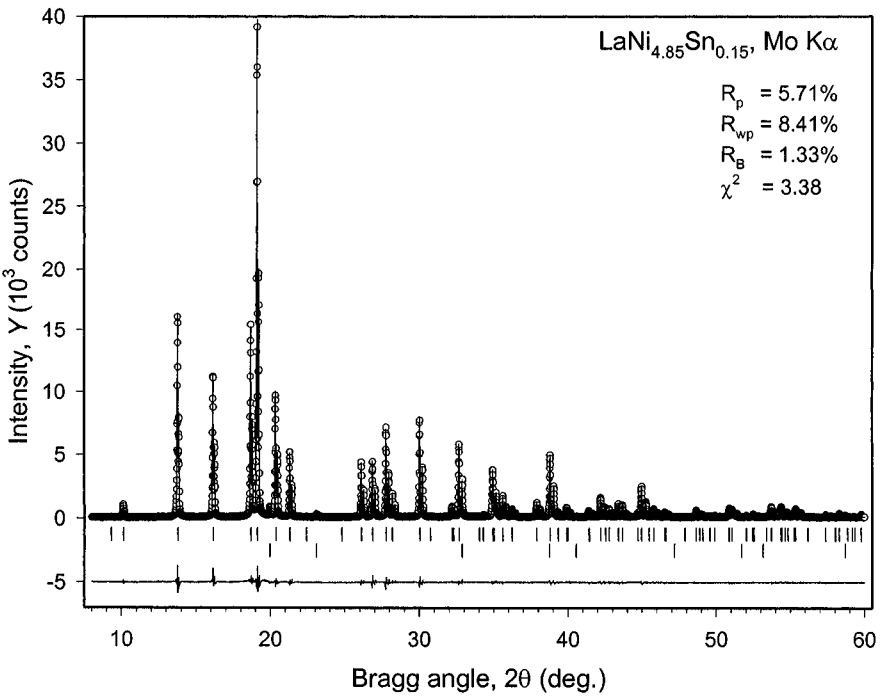


Figure 7.7. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ after the completion of Rietveld refinement. Notations are identical to *Figure 7.2*. The second set of vertical bars indicates the calculated positions of the $K\alpha_1$ components of Bragg peaks in the impurity phase, which is a solid solution of Sn in Ni. The virtual absence of a Bragg peak at $2\theta \cong 9°$ and the presence of the same reflection at $2\theta \cong 20°$ when Cu Kα radiation was employed (see *Figure 7.5*) is the result of differences in the anomalous scattering (see also Eqs. 2.101 and 2.108).

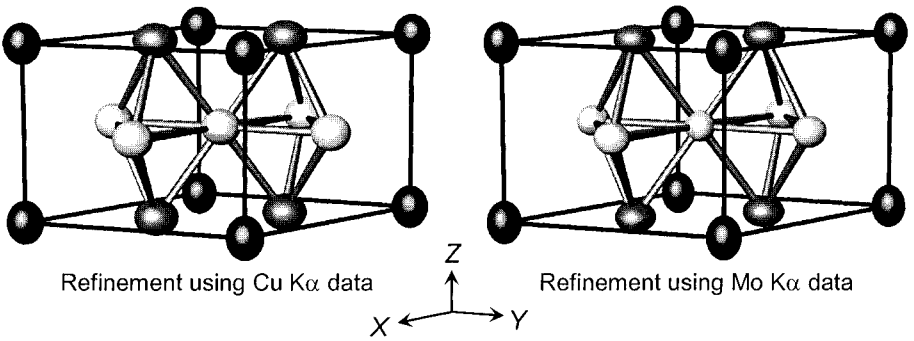


Figure 7.8. Atomic displacement ellipsoids in the crystal structure of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$, shown at 99% probability, as refined using Cu Kα (left) and Mo Kα (right) powder diffraction data.

A comparison of the results presented in *Table 7.6* with those shown in *Table 7.4* indicates no discrepancies in the refined populations of Ni2 and Sn atoms, which simultaneously occupy the 3(g) site, although a small difference in the anisotropic displacement parameters of all atoms is evident. Regardless of this difference, as seen in *Figure 7.8*, displacement ellipsoids have nearly identical orientations and sizes. The preference should be given to the results obtained using Mo Kα radiation because Bragg reflections at higher $\sin\theta/\lambda$ were included into the determination of the individual anisotropic displacement parameters.

On the other hand, the comparison of lattice parameters obtained using Cu Kα (*Table 7.4*) and Mo Kα (*Table 7.6*) data indicates small but statistically significant differences. Considering the fact that the longer wavelength experiment includes reflections at higher Bragg angles, the preference should be given to the unit cell dimensions obtained in the refinement based on Cu Kα radiation data.

Given the observed small variations in the Rietveld refinement results, it is much better to employ all available data while performing the combined least squares fit of the model. This can be done using the majority of available Rietveld refinement programs and is illustrated in the next section.

7.3.8 Combined refinement using different diffraction data

We will begin combined Rietveld refinement of the crystal structure of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ using profile parameters (background, zero shifts and peak shape) determined for each set of diffraction data during independent refinements. The starting unit cell dimensions have been chosen as established from Cu Kα data and the starting population and individual atomic displacement parameters are taken from the Mo Kα result. The

corresponding input data file, **Ch7Ex01i.inp**, is found on the CD. For LHPM-Rietica, a single data file should contain both sets of powder diffraction data, and these are found on the CD in the file **Ch7Ex01_Cu&MoKa.dat**. The progression of Rietveld refinement is illustrated in *Table 7.7*. The initial residuals are shown in the first row in *Table 7.7*, where expectedly, the figures of merit for the second set of data (Mo Kα) are much worse than for the first (see *Table 7.3* and *Table 7.5*).

Table 7.7. The progress of the combined Rietveld refinement of the crystal structure of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ employing two sets of experimental data obtained using Cu Kα and Mo Kα radiations.

Refined parameters	Cu			Mo		
	R_p	R_{wp}	R_B	R_p	R_{wp}	R_B
Initial	11.78	14.45	11.45	523.6	612.5	589.1
Scale factors [a]	6.97	10.08	4.40	22.44	27.02	8.12
Scale factors plus *a*, *c* and zero shifts	8.00	11.38	4.60	7.55	11.39	1.40
As above plus peak shape, background	7.44	10.51	4.35	6.38	10.27	1.42
As above plus β_{ij} (all) and population parameter, *n*, in 3(g) site	7.29	10.39	4.13	6.43	10.30	1.53
All plus an impurity phase	6.87	9.02	4.13	5.99	8.62	1.40

[a] When multiple sets of data are used in a combined Rietveld refinement, the first set has a fixed scale, $k = 1$, but all other sets have their own scales in addition to a phase scale. Thus, in our case when we have two sets of diffraction data and one crystalline phase, two scale factors (K and $k_{Mo\ K\alpha}$) have been refined independently (see Eq. 7.10, below).

When more than one set of experimental diffraction data is employed in the combined Rietveld refinement, the minimized function (in the simplest case of Eq. 7.3) becomes

$$\Phi = \sum_{s=1}^{h} \sum_{i=1}^{n_s} w_{s,i} [k_s (Y_{s,i}^{obs} - b_{s,i}) - K \sum_{j=1}^{m} I_j y_{s,j}(x_{s,j})]^2 \qquad (7.10)$$

In Eq. 7.10, h is the number of different sets of powder diffraction data, n_s is the number of data points collected in the s^{th} set, and k_s is the scale factor for the s^{th} diffraction pattern, which appears because scattered intensity is measured on a relative scale. Other notations are identical to Eq. 7.3. Different scale factors, k_s and K, are simple multipliers. Hence, they strongly correlate, and usually are not refined simultaneously. Constraining one of the scale factors (usually k_1, for the first diffraction data set) at 1 enables successful refinement of the phase scale (K) and scale factors of all remaining sets of diffraction data (k_2, k_3, ..., k_h). Equations 7.4, 7.6 and 7.7 are modified in the same way as Eq. 7.3 for a combined Rietveld refinement. Furthermore, it is often the case that x-ray and neutron, or conventional x-ray and synchrotron data are used in combined refinements, therefore, the

corresponding groupings of Eqs. 7.3, 7.4, 7.6 and 7.7, modified as shown in Eq. 7.10, are employed to express the minimized function.

Hence, the subsequent step is to refine both the phase scale factor and the scale factor of the Mo Kα experiment. As shown in row two of *Table 7.7*, these two variables have a tremendous effect on the resulting figures of merit. The residuals for Mo Kα data, however, remain far from the best and a simple examination of the Rietveld plot (*Figure 7.9*) indicates that this is due to the inadequacy of the unit cell parameters determined from the Cu Kα experiment.

Thus, the next refinement step includes releasing unit cell dimensions and zero shift parameters. The latter are usually different for different sets of diffraction data. As seen in row three of *Table 7.7*, overall the fit becomes much better, although residuals for Cu Kα data are slightly increased. After including all possible variables into the refinement (rows four and five in *Table 7.7*) the fit improves for both sets of experimental data. The fully refined model of the crystal structure of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ without including the impurity phase is found in the file **Ch7Ex01j.inp** on the CD.

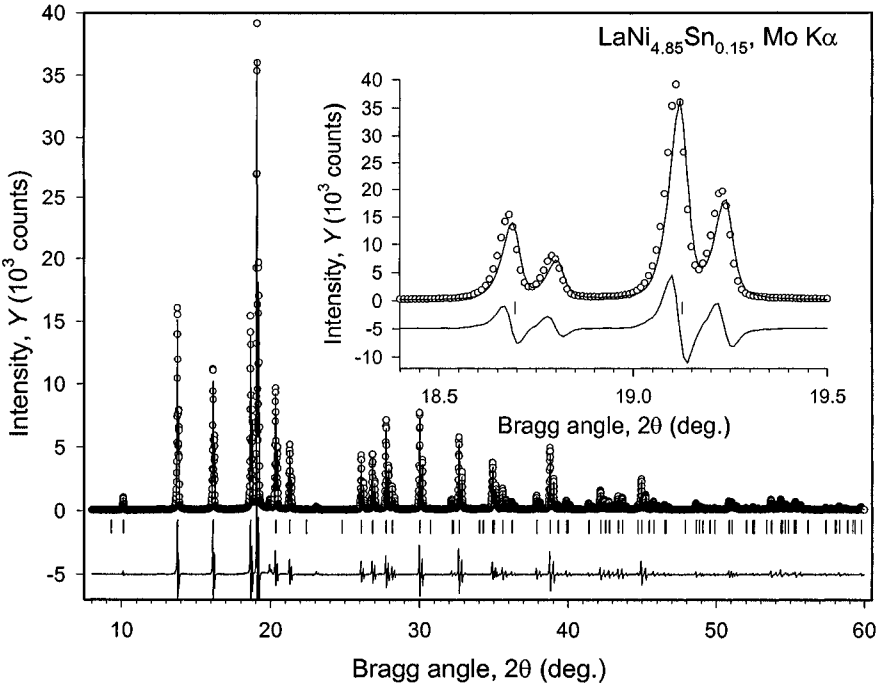


Figure 7.9. The observed (Mo Kα radiation) and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ after combined refinement of scale factors only. The inset shows the expanded view between 18.4 and 19.5° of 2θ to illustrate the inaccuracy of lattice parameters.

As expected, adding the contribution from the impurity phase (again as Le Bail's approximation) results in further reduction of the profile residuals, see row six in *Table 7.7*. The final model of this crystal structure, as determined using the combined Rietveld refinement in the two-phase approximation, is found in the data file **Ch7Ex01k.inp** on the CD. Structural parameters are listed in *Table 7.8*.

Table 7.8. Structural parameters of the major phase ($LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$), fully refined by the Rietveld technique using the combined powder diffraction data collected employing Cu Kα and Mo Kα radiations from the same specimen. The refined unit cell dimensions are: a = 5.04430(3), c = 4.01292(3) Å. The following restrictions are imposed by symmetry: $\beta_{13} = \beta_{23} = 0$.

Atom	Site	x	y	z	g	$10^4\beta_{11}$	$10^4\beta_{22}$	$10^4\beta_{33}$	$10^4\beta_{12}$
La	1(a)	0	0	0	1	141(1)	141(1)	252(3)	71(1)
Ni1	2(c)	1/3	2/3	0	1	205(2)	205(2)	151(4)	103(1)
Ni2	3(g)	1/2	0	1/2	0.956(2)	142(2)	117(3)	139(3)	59(1)
Sn	3(g)	1/2	0	1/2	0.044(2)	142(2)	117(3)	139(3)	59(1)

The resultant unit cell dimensions and structural parameters shown in *Table 7.8* are closer to those obtained in an independent Rietveld refinement using Mo Kα data (see *Table 7.6*). Furthermore, the population of the 3(g) site is slightly different from that obtained in both independent refinements. The resulting chemical composition of the major phase is $LaNi_{4.87(1)}Sn_{0.13(1)}$, which remains within two standard deviations from the alloy stoichiometry.

The Rietveld plots of both powder diffraction data sets are shown in *Figure 7.10* and *Figure 7.11*. Visual analysis of both figures indicates a good fit, which was expected from the low residuals (*Table 7.7*). The model of the crystal structure (*Table 7.8*) appears to be complete and makes both physical (reasonable atomic displacement parameters) and chemical sense [no overlapping atoms, the 3(g) sites are occupied simultaneously by atoms that have close atomic volumes (Ni and Sn), the chemical composition of the major phase established from x-ray data is nearly identical to the known composition of the alloy]. Therefore, the outcome of this crystal structure determination may be accepted as satisfactory.

The presence of an impurity phase in this specimen may also be accounted for by including its crystal structure into a "normal" Rietveld refinement process rather than as a "Le Bail's" phase. For the sake of illustration, this has been done and the set of fully refined parameters can be found in the data file **Ch7Ex01m.inp**. It is unfeasible to refine the chemical composition of the Ni-based impurity because of its low concentration in the sample. Thus, only the scale factor, unit cell dimensions and overall atomic displacement parameter have been refined for the impurity phase, while its chemical composition was assumed as $Ni_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$. All residuals remain practically identical to those shown in the last row of *Table 7.7*.

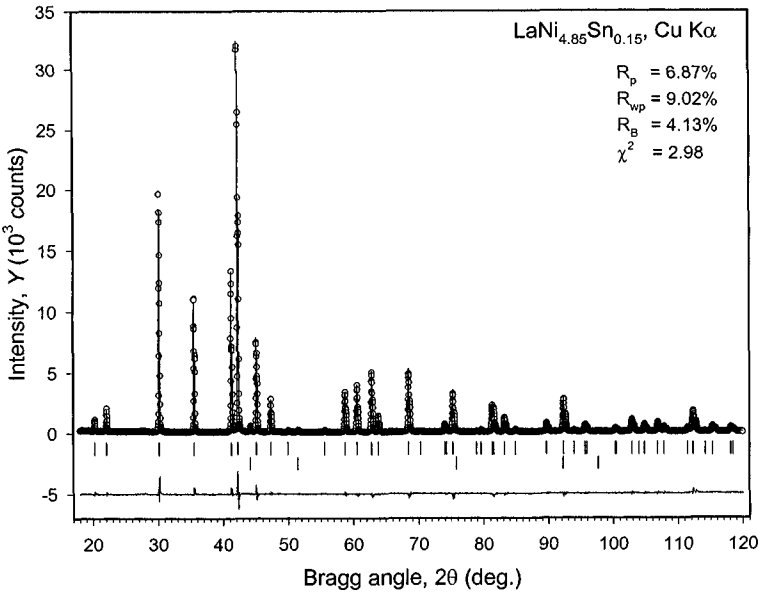


Figure 7.10. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ (Cu Kα radiation) after the completion of the combined Rietveld refinement.

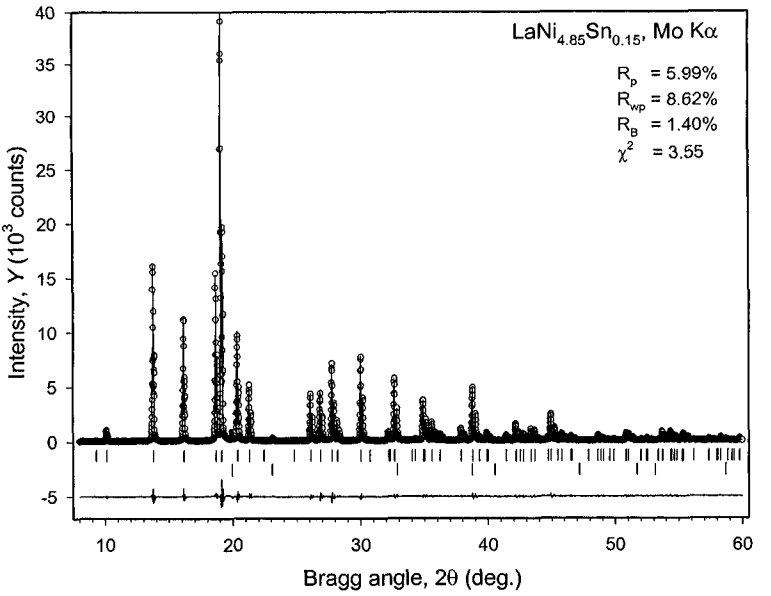


Figure 7.11. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ (Mo Kα radiation) after the completion of the combined Rietveld refinement.

As noted before (Chapter 4), Rietveld refinement offers an opportunity to determine the phase composition of the sample quantitatively. This information can be found in the general output file after Rietveld refinement; its extension is "out". The corresponding concentrations are as follows: the major $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$ phase makes 97.5(4) and the impurity $Ni_{0.97}Sn_{0.03}$ phase accounts for 2.5(3) per cent by weight of the alloy.

7.4 Rietveld refinement of $CeRhGe_3$[1]

This crystal structure was solved earlier (see sections 6.10 and 6.11), first using x-ray and then using neutron powder diffraction data. The x-ray data (Mo Kα radiation) were collected at room temperature, while the neutron scattering experiment (λ = 1.494 Å) was conducted at 200 K. Hence, combined Rietveld refinement is not feasible because of the differences in the lattice and structural parameters of the alloy due to thermal expansion,[2] and we will use the two sets of data independently.

7.4.1 Refinement using x-ray diffraction data

Initial parameters for Rietveld refinement were assumed as follows: background, peak shape, unit cell dimensions and zero shift as determined from Le Bail's full pattern decomposition (see section 6.10), and the model of the crystal structure from the *ab initio* solution in the space group I4mm *Table 6.21*.

Refinement of all free variables except the coordinates and displacement parameters of individual atoms, beginning with the scale factor (rows one through three in *Table 7.9*), results in low residuals, basically confirming the model of the crystal structure. When the coordinate parameters of atoms in the unit cell were included in the refinement (row four, *Table 7.9*), all residuals improve, especially R_B, which is lowered from 6.45 to 3.12%. Similar to the previous example, the quality of the experimental data is quite high, therefore, we easily refine individual isotropic and then individual anisotropic displacement parameters of all atoms.

Finally, as may be established by a trial-and-error approach, a small extinction correction further improves the agreement between the observed

[1] O. Zaharko, V.K. Pecharsky and K.A. Gschneidner, Jr., unpublished.

[2] Displacement parameters of atoms are also expected to be different as the temperature of the powder diffraction experiment varies. Furthermore, it is also feasible that atomic positions may change due to generally anisotropic thermal expansion of crystal lattices. These considerations are in addition to the most obvious cause (different lattice parameters) preventing combined refinement using powder diffraction data collected at different temperatures. In general, material may also be polymorphic but this is not the case here, as was established in Chapter 6, sections 6.10 and 6.11.

and calculated intensities, as shown in the last row of *Table 7.9*. Attempts to include preferred orientation assuming several possible preferred orientation axes (such as [100], [110], [001] and a few others) did not result in the improvement of the Rietveld fit, thus indicating that in this experiment preferred orientation effects are nonexistent within the accuracy of the powder diffraction data.

The refined model of the crystal structure can be found in the file **Ch7Ex02a.inp** on the CD and the experimental data are located in the data file **Ch7Ex02_MoKa.dat**. The plot of the observed and calculated intensities is shown in *Figure 7.12* and the fully refined structural parameters are listed in *Table 7.10*.

Table 7.9. The progress of Rietveld refinement of the crystal structure of $CeRhGe_3$ using x-ray powder diffraction data. Wavelengths used: $\lambda K\alpha_1 = 0.70932$ Å, $\lambda K\alpha_2 = 0.71361$ Å.

Refined parameters	R_p	R_{wp}	R_B	χ^2
Initial (profile from Le Bail, model from *Table 6.24*, overall $B = 0.5$ Å^2)	1468	1557	1526	3×10^5
Scale factor	8.87	11.46	7.05	15.03
Scale, all profile, *a* and *c*, overall displacement	8.25	10.91	6.45	13.66
All above plus coordinates of individual atoms[a]	5.88	8.04	3.12	7.43
All above plus individual isotropic displacement parameters	5.78	7.92	3.07	7.22
All above plus individual anisotropic displacement parameters[b]	5.75	7.86	3.00	7.11
All above plus extinction[c]	5.42	7.54	2.14	6.54

[a] In the space group I4mm the origin of coordinates along the *Z*-axis is not fixed by symmetry. Therefore, the *z*-coordinate of one atom in the unit cell must be excluded from the least squares at all times to avoid severe correlation problems. We choose the *z*-coordinate of Ce atom ($z = 0.000$) as the fixed coordinate parameter.

[b] All atoms in this crystal structure are located in special site positions. This introduces certain relationships between individual anisotropic displacement parameters: $\beta_{22} = \beta_{11}$ for the atoms in 2(a) sites (Ce, Rh and Ge1); $\beta_{12} = \beta_{13} = \beta_{23} = 0$ for all sites.

[c] Extinction parameter 0.00001 was used as the initial approximation. Extinction (see Eq. 2.86) may correlate with phase scale factor, therefore, it may be necessary to keep the scale factor fixed during the initial refinement of extinction.

Table 7.10. Structural parameters of $CeRhGe_3$, fully refined by the Rietveld technique employing powder diffraction data collected from a ground powder using Mo Kα radiation. The space group is I4mm. The unit cell dimensions are: $a = 4.39830(3)$, $c = 10.03259(8)$ Å. Some of the anisotropic displacement parameters are fixed by site symmetry: $\beta_{12} = \beta_{13} = \beta_{23} = 0$. All sites are fully occupied.

Atom	Site	*x*	*y*	*z*	$10^4\times\beta_{11}$	$10^4\times\beta_{22}$	$10^4\times\beta_{33}$
Ce	2(a)	0	0	0.0000[a]	111(2)	111(2)	16(1)
Rh	2(a)	0	0	0.6589(1)	48(3)	48(3)	20(1)
Ge1	2(a)	0	0	0.4209(1)	70(4)	70(4)	24(1)
Ge2	4(b)	1/2	0	0.2615(1)	160(5)	58(5)	26(1)

[a] This coordinate was fixed to determine the origin of coordinates.

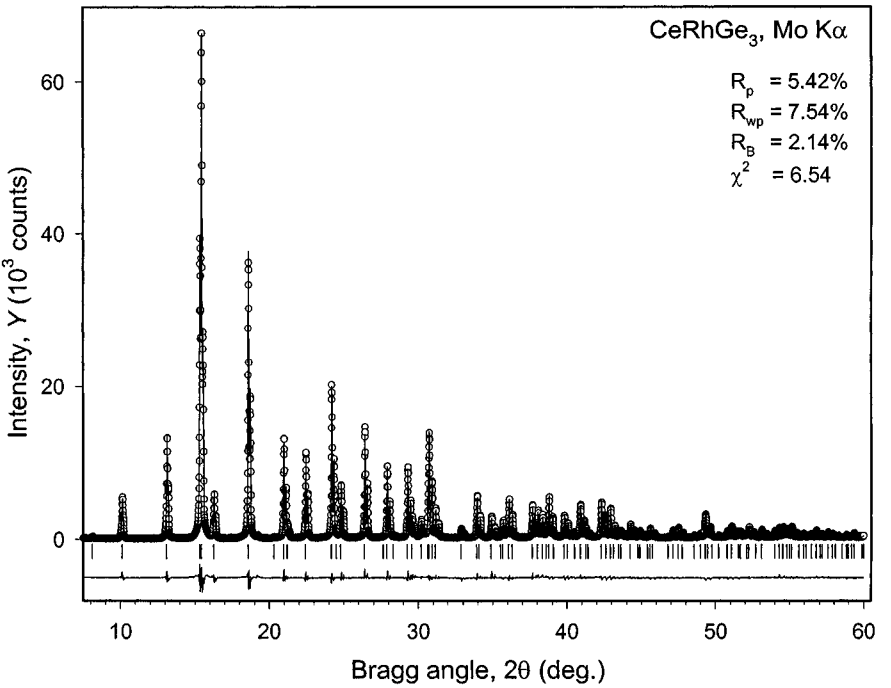


Figure 7.12. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $CeRhGe_3$ after the completion of Rietveld refinement. The data were collected from a ground $CeRhGe_3$ powder dusted on a flat sample holder using a rotating anode Rigaku TTRAX powder diffractometer in a step scan mode with a step $\Delta 2\theta = 0.01°$. All notations on the plot are identical to *Figure 7.2*.

It is easy to verify by the calculation of the Fourier map that no additional atoms are present in the unit cell of this material. All interatomic distances are normal. The crystal structure is visualized in *Figure 7.13*, from which it is easy to see that thermal ellipsoids of all atoms are reasonable.

When the final residuals obtained after the Rietveld refinement (*Table 7.9*) are compared with those obtained during Le Bail's full pattern decomposition (*Table 6.9*), the differences are small, which serves as another confirmation of the correctness of the structural model in the space group I4mm. In this regard, it is useful to illustrate the Rietveld refinement of a different model of the same crystal structure (see *Table 6.15*), which was constructed earlier in the higher symmetry space group – I4/mmm. This model was discarded based on high R_F, and also based on the presence of strong peaks on the Fourier map, which were too close to the atoms already located in the unit cell.

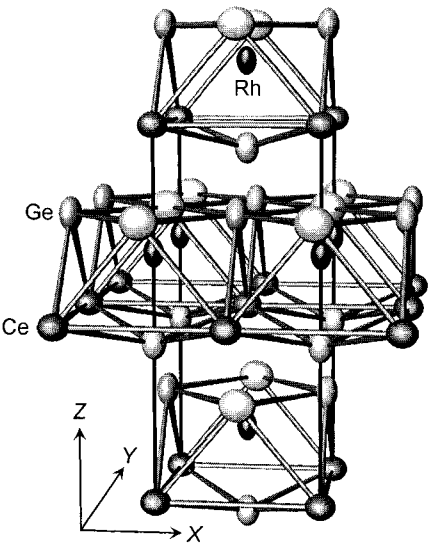


Figure 7.13. The crystal structure of $CeRhGe_3$ as determined from Rietveld refinement in the space group I4mm (see *Table 7.10* and *Figure 7.12*). Displacement ellipsoids are shown at 99% probability. See the footnote on page 634.

Beginning again with the background, peak shape and unit cell parameters along with the zero shift, determined during Le Bail's full pattern decomposition, we will attempt to perform Rietveld refinement of the crystal structure model shown in *Table 7.11*. The corresponding data file, **Ch7Ex02b.inp**, containing initial parameters for the Rietveld refinement using LHPM-Rietica is found on the CD. The observed and calculated intensities after the full profile least squares are plotted in *Figure 7.14*.

Visual analysis of *Figure 7.14* immediately indicates that the agreement between the observed and calculated intensity is poor. Furthermore, Rietveld refinement of this model of the crystal structure, during which the coordinates of atoms in the 4(e) site plus population of 4(d) and 4(e) sites were optimized together with the overall isotropic displacement parameter, results in the removal of Rh atoms from all sites: population of both sites by Rh becomes negative (see the data file **Ch7Ex02c.inp** on the CD).

Table 7.11. Coordinates of atoms in the unit cell of $CeRhGe_3$ as determined from x-ray powder diffraction data in the space group symmetry I4/mmm (earlier discarded as wrong, see *Table 6.15*).

Atom	Site	*x*	*y*	*z*
Ce	2(a)	0	0	0
0.25Rh+0.75Ge	4(d)	1/2	0	1/4
0.25Rh+0.75Ge	4(e)	0	0	0.363

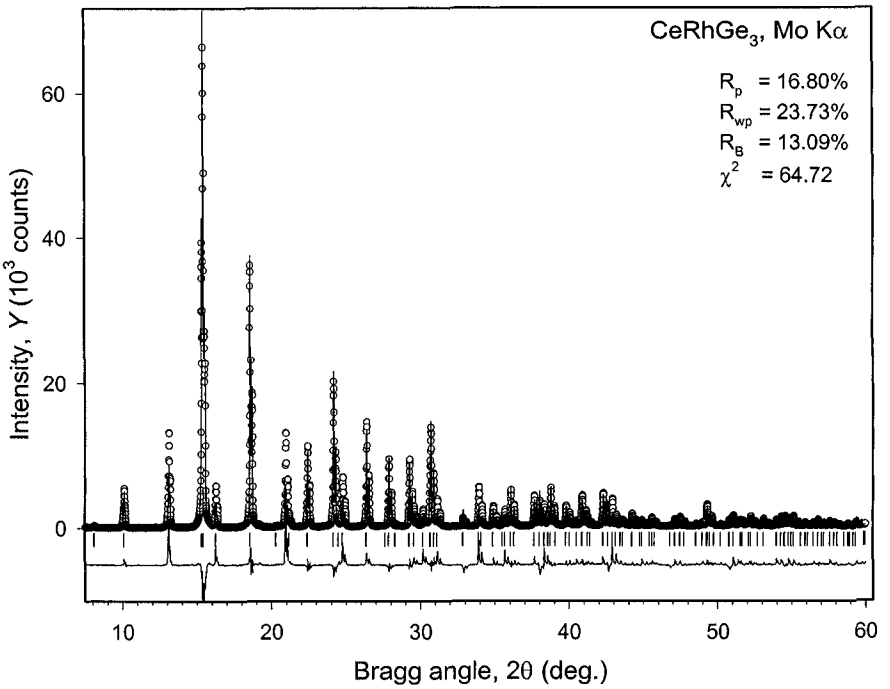


Figure 7.14. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $CeRhGe_3$ after Rietveld refinement of the model in the space group I4/mmm. Compare with *Figure 7.12.*

Hence, this model has no physical and chemical sense because Rh is indeed present in the material. Finally, all residuals (see *Figure 7.14*) are much higher when compared to those obtained in both the previous refinement (in the space group I4mm) and Le Bail's full pattern decomposition (see *Table 6.9*). Thus, Rietveld refinement of the model in the space group symmetry I4/mmm corroborates the conclusion made earlier about its inadequacy.

7.4.2 Refinement using neutron diffraction data

When we solved this crystal structure using neutron diffraction data, we found a model (*Table 6.28*) where the origin of coordinates was shifted with respect to that constructed from x-ray diffraction data (*Table 6.21* and *Table 7.10*). Here, we will first use the coordinates of atoms determined from x-ray data (this fully refined crystal structure is found in the data file **Ch7Ex03a.inp**) and then perform a refinement of the "original" model as established from a neutron diffraction experiment (data file **Ch7Ex03b.inp**).

The CD also contains the measured neutron powder diffraction pattern in the data file **Ch7Ex03_Neut.dat**.

Table 7.12 lists the residuals obtained at different stages of Rietveld refinement. After the determination of the scale factor, all residuals are quite low, and therefore, the completion of Rietveld refinement in this case presents no problems. The least squares refinement of both models of $CeRhGe_3$ converges to identical residuals (compare the two rows at the end of *Table 7.12*) thus confirming our earlier conclusion about their identity. The final parameters of the individual atoms are assembled in *Table 7.13*.

Table 7.12. The progress of Rietveld refinement of the crystal structure of $CeRhGe_3$ using neutron powder diffraction data[a] collected at T = 200 K. The wavelength used: λ = 1.494 Å.

Refined parameters	R_p	R_{wp}	R_B	χ^2
Initial (profile parameters from Le Bail, model from *Table 7.10*, overall B = 0.5 Å^2)	38.44	49.21	78.08	253.7
Scale factor	4.29	5.62	2.56	3.31
Scale, all profile, *a* and *c*, overall displacement	4.03	5.30	2.08	2.96
Scale, all profile, *a* and *c*, overall displacement plus coordinates of individual atoms and individual isotropic displacement parameters [b]	3.97	5.24	1.89	2.91
All, individual anisotropic displacement parameters [c]	3.91	5.20	1.69	2.85
Fully refined "original" model found during the *ab initio* crystal structure solution, *Table 6.28* [d]	3.91	5.20	1.69	2.85

[a] As was done earlier (see *Figure 6.18*), the region $35.2 < 2\theta < 39.1°$ was excluded from the refinement because it contains three additional peaks due to instrumental contribution.

[b] In the space group I4mm the origin of coordinates along the *Z*-axis is not fixed. Therefore, the *z*-coordinate of one atom in the unit cell must be excluded from least squares at all time. We choose the *z*-coordinate of the Ce atom (z = 0.000) as a fixed coordinate parameter.

[c] All atoms in this crystal structure are located in special site positions. This introduces certain relationships between anisotropic displacement parameters: $\beta_{22} = \beta_{11}$ for the atoms in 2(a) sites (Ce, Rh and Ge1); $\beta_{12} = \beta_{13} = \beta_{23} = 0$ for all sites.

[d] In this refinement the *z*-coordinate of the Ge1 atom (z = 0.000) was chosen as a fixed coordinate parameter to define the origin of coordinates.

Both models of the crystal structure are shown in *Figure 7.15*. It is easy to verify that thermal ellipsoids of individual atoms are identical in the two models, even though the β_{11} and β_{22} of Ge2 are switched, which is due to the different selection of the origin of coordinates. When compared to the results obtained at room temperature (*Table 7.10* and *Figure 7.13*), the individual displacement parameters of all atoms are reduced. This reduction is expected because thermal excitations in the crystal lattice are lowered when temperature decreases. Some differences in the anisotropy of Ge2 and Rh (compare *Figure 7.13* with *Figure 7.15*) may be associated with both the reduction of temperature and with the different sensitivity of x-rays and

neutrons: Ge has the lowest scattering ability for x-rays and it has the largest coherent scattering length for neutrons.[1]

Table 7.13. Structural parameters of $CeRhGe_3$, fully refined by Rietveld technique using neutron diffraction data. The space group is I4mm. The unit cell dimensions are: a = 4.39180(4), c = 10.0238(1) Å. Some of the anisotropic displacement parameters are fixed by symmetry: $\beta_{12} = \beta_{13} = \beta_{23} = 0$. All sites are fully occupied.

Atom	Site	x	y	z	$10^4 \times \beta_{11}$	$10^4 \times \beta_{22}$	$10^4 \times \beta_{33}$
Model 1							
Ce	2(a)	0	0	0.0000[a]	57(5)	57(5)	10(2)
Rh	2(a)	0	0	0.6598(3)	53(6)	53(6)	3(1)
Ge1	2(a)	0	0	0.4219(3)	43(4)	43(4)	12(1)
Ge2	4(b)	1/2	0	0.2630(3)	74(5)	41(4)	7(1)
Model 2							
Ce	2(a)	0	0	0.7630(3)	57(5)	57(5)	10(2)
Rh	2(a)	0	0	0.1033(2)	53(6)	53(6)	3(1)
Ge1	2(a)	0	0	0.3412(2)	43(4)	43(4)	12(1)
Ge2	4(b)	1/2	0	0.0000[a]	41(4)	74(5)	7(1)

[a] This coordinate was fixed to determine the origin of coordinates.

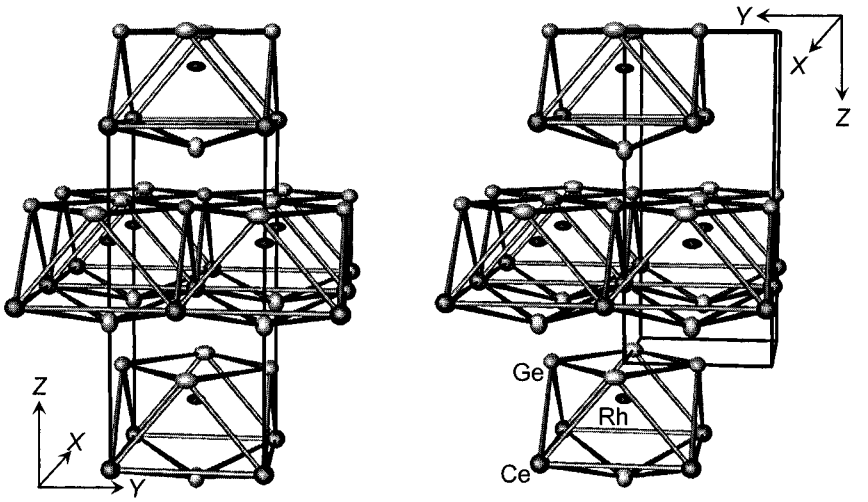


Figure 7.15. The two models of the crystal structure of $CeRhGe_3$ refined using neutron powder diffraction data collected at T = 200 K. The thermal displacement ellipsoids are shown at 99% probability. See *Figure 6.20* and relevant discussion explaining the choice of the origin of coordinates in the two drawings.

[1] Anisotropic parameters obtained employing neutron data, where scattering occurs on nuclei, are more reliable because in the x-ray diffraction, the anisotropy reflects stronger and potentially improperly accounted absorption/porosity effects in addition to a deformation of the electron density. Overall, atomic anisotropy obtained from powder diffraction data should be carefully analyzed, especially if preferred orientation is present.

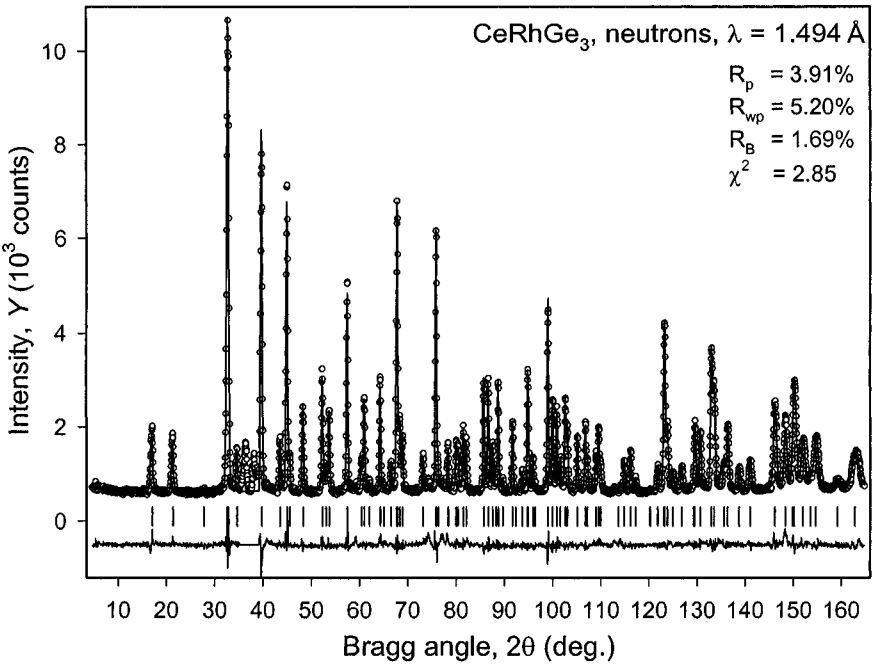


Figure 7.16. The observed and calculated neutron powder diffraction patterns of $CeRhGe_3$ after the completion of Rietveld refinement. The region $35.2 < 2\theta < 39.1°$ was excluded from the refinement. (Data courtesy of Dr. O. Zaharko.)

The Rietveld plot of the observed and calculated neutron diffraction patterns of $CeRhGe_3$ is shown in *Figure 7.16*. Given excellent residuals and both physical and chemical rationale of the refined model, we conclude that the results presented in *Table 7.13* are correct.

7.5 Rietveld refinement of Nd_5Si_4[1]

This is the most complex material of all substances considered so far. Furthermore, when we solved this crystal structure (see section 6.12), the resultant R_F was on the high side, even though the final Fourier map appeared to be clean indicating no additional atoms in the unit cell. Thus, it is especially important to complete Rietveld refinement of all structural parameters in this case to ensure the adequacy of the model.

The coordinates of individual atoms listed in *Table 6.34* were used as a starting point together with the background, peak shape, zero shift and lattice parameters determined from Le Bail's full pattern decomposition (file

[1] A.O. Pecharsky, K.A. Gschneidner, Jr., and V.K. Pecharsky, unpublished.

Ch7Ex04a.inp is found on the CD together with the experimental data, **Ch7Ex04_CuKa.dat**). The progress of the Rietveld refinement is illustrated in *Table 7.14*.

Table 7.14. The progress of Rietveld refinement of the crystal structure of Nd_5Si_4 using x-ray powder diffraction data. Wavelengths used: $\lambda K\alpha_1 = 1.54059$ Å, $\lambda K\alpha_2 = 1.54441$ Å.

Refined parameters	R_p	R_{wp}	R_B	χ^2
Initial (profile parameters from Le Bail, model from *Table 6.34*, overall $B = 0.5$ Å^2)	1×10^5	1×10^5	1×10^4	6×10^6
Scale factor	10.17	13.09	7.64	7.95
Scale, all profile, *a* and *c*, overall *B*	9.46	12.23	6.57	6.97
Scale, all profile, *a* and *c*, overall *B* plus coordinates of individual atoms [a]	7.12	9.23	4.04	3.98
All above plus preferred orientation, [001]	7.04	9.18	3.89	3.93
All, plus individual isotropic displacement parameters of Nd only (both Si atoms were constrained to have the same isotropic *B*)	7.01	9.12	3.68	3.89
All, plus individual anisotropic displacement parameters of Nd,[b] both Si atoms were constrained to have the same isotropic *B*	6.92	9.01	3.52	3.80

[a] The coordinates of Nd3 in the 4(a) site are constrained by symmetry: $y = x$.

[b] The individual anisotropic parameters of Nd3 in 4(a) site are constrained by symmetry: $\beta_{22} = \beta_{11}$; $\beta_{23} = -\beta_{13}$.

The initial model of the crystal structure results in acceptable residuals without refinement of coordinates and displacement parameters of individual atoms. When the coordinates of all atoms and the overall displacement parameter were included into the least squares, the residuals further improve (row four in *Table 7.14*). The biggest improvement is observed in the Bragg residual, R_B, which is expected because this figure of merit is mostly affected by the adequacy of the structural model and it is least affected by the inaccuracies in profile parameters.

Unlike in any of the examples considered earlier, a small preferred orientation contribution is evident in this powder diffraction pattern after including a relevant parameter (Eq. 2.79) into the refinement, as seen in row 5 in *Table 7.14*. An important issue to consider when refining preferred orientation is the direction of the texture axis. When the preferred orientation effects are strong, axis direction is usually easy to recognize from a simple analysis of the relationships between the observed and calculated intensities of groups of Bragg reflections with related indices. For example, if most or all Bragg reflections with indices (00*l*) have observed intensities much stronger (or weaker) than calculated, this suggests that the preferred orientation axis is [001] or [110], respectively, depending on the type of texture (see sections 2.10.6 and 3.5.2). When the preferred orientation effects are small, the only feasible way to determine the direction of the preferred

orientation axis in LHPM-Rietica is to refine the texture parameter with different texture axes beginning from its default value (τ = 1, i.e. no preferred orientation is present). The axis, which results in the lowest residuals, is selected as the most probable. In this example, the following directions were tested as potential texture axes: [001], [010], [011], [111], and [112]. The best result was obtained for the [001] direction.

Refinement of the individual isotropic parameters of all atoms yields a small negative *B* of Si1. It is unfeasible that Nd atoms are statistically mixed in the same sites with Si because their volumes are too different (~27 Å^3 for Nd versus ~7 Å^3 for Si). Given the density of the alloy, it is also impossible that all sites except this one are partially occupied. Therefore, the negative B_{Si1} is likely due to the fact that Si atoms have only a fraction of the scattering ability of Nd atoms, and individual displacement parameters of the former cannot be reliably determined from this experiment. Another possible reason is the non-ideality of the selected peak shape function, or other small but unaccounted systematic errors. One of these is an unknown polarization constant of the employed monochromator (see Eq. 2.69). Another possibility is a more complex preferred orientation. As a result, the isotropic displacement parameters of two independent sites occupied by Si were constrained to be identical; in a way, the Si atoms were refined in an "overall isotropic" approximation.

The Rietveld refinement was finalized by optimizing the individual anisotropic displacement parameters of three independent Nd atoms. The refinement converges, and the resulting residuals are only slightly higher when compared to those obtained during Le Bail's full pattern decomposition, thus confirming the model of the crystal structure. It is worth noting that when individual integrated intensities are re-determined at the end of Rietveld refinement in a usual way by prorating profile intensities proportionally to the calculated intensities of contributing Bragg peaks (Eq. 6.7), the resulting R_F = 2.03%. This value is much smaller when compared to that calculated earlier (Chapter 6) during the crystal structure solution when individual structure factors determined from the full pattern decomposition were employed. In fact, such a low value of R_F would be considered an excellent result in a single crystal diffraction experiment, especially because all 445 possible Bragg reflections were included into the calculation of R_F. The Fourier map calculated using the re-determined structure factors is clean, i.e. there is a sharp reduction of peak intensity after the last Si atom, which indicates that there are no additional atoms in the unit cell of Nd_5Si_4.

The refined parameters of individual atoms (fully refined profile and structural data are found on the CD in the file **Ch7Ex04b.inp**) are listed in *Table 7.15* and *Table 7.16*. The model of this crystal structure is shown in *Figure 7.17* together with the atomic displacement ellipsoids of Nd atoms.

The plot of the observed and calculated intensities is shown in *Figure 7.18*. Low residuals, combined with the normal interatomic distances indicate that the solution of this crystal structure is adequate.

Table 7.15. Coordinates of atoms in the crystal structure of Nd_5Si_4, fully refined by Rietveld technique using powder diffraction data collected from a ground powder employing Cu Kα radiation. The space group is $P4_12_12$. The unit cell dimensions are: a = 7.8714(1), c = 14.8117(3) Å. All sites are fully occupied.

Atom	Site	x	y	z
Nd1	8(b)	0.3687(2)	0.0104(2)	0.4530(1)
Nd2	8(b)	0.1292(2)	0.9844(2)	0.8742(1)
Nd3	4(a)	0.3115(2)	0.3115(2)	0
Si1	8(b)	0.4255(8)	0.2044(8)	0.8081(4)
Si2	8(b)	0.1632(8)	0.1911(8)	0.3079(3)

Table 7.16. Displacement parameters of atoms in the crystal structure of Nd_5Si_4.

Atom	Site	$10^4\times\beta_{11}$ or B	$10^4\times\beta_{22}$	$10^4\times\beta_{33}$	$10^4\times\beta_{12}$	$10^4\times\beta_{13}$	$10^4\times\beta_{23}$
Nd1	8(b)	53(4)	24(4)	7(1)	-18(2)	-11(1)	1(1)
Nd2	8(b)	15(3)	21(3)	10(1)	-3(3)	3(1)	2(1)
Nd3[a]	4(a)	19(3)	19(3)	10(1)	-3(3)	5(1)	-5(1)
Si1[b]	8(b)	0.18(7)					
Si2[b]	8(b)	0.18(7)					

[a] In this site the following relationships are imposed by symmetry: $\beta_{11} = \beta_{22}$ and $\beta_{23} = -\beta_{13}$.
[b] Common isotropic displacement parameter, listed as B.

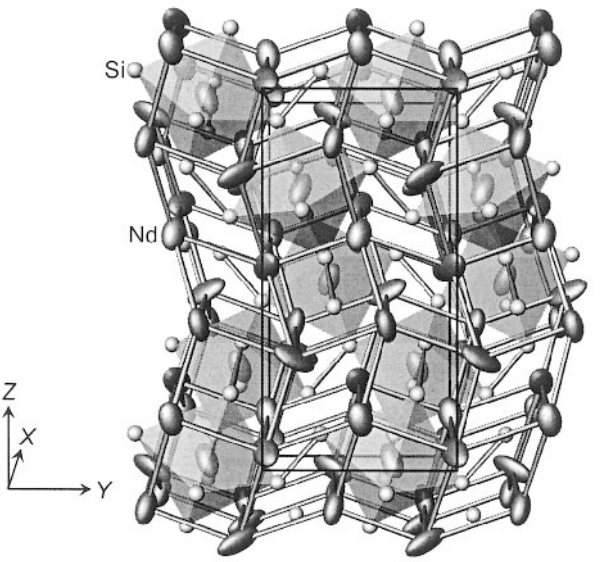


Figure 7.17. The model of the crystal structure of Nd_5Si_4 shown with displacement ellipsoids of Nd atoms at 99% probability as determined in the process of the Rietveld refinement. Sizeable displacement anisotropy of Nd atoms may be indicative of the presence of unidentified experimental errors (also see the footnote on page 634).

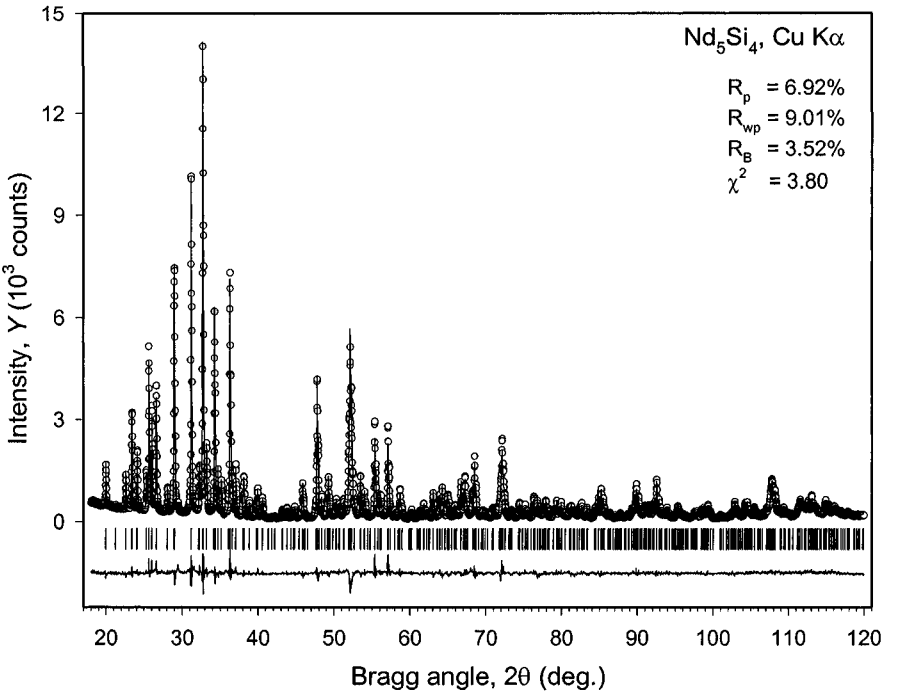


Figure 7.18. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of Nd_5Si_4 after the completion of Rietveld refinement. The data were collected from a ground Nd_5Si_4 powder dusted on a flat sample holder using a rotating anode Rigaku TTRAX powder diffractometer in a step scan mode with a step $\Delta 2\theta = 0.02°$.

7.6 Rietveld refinement using GSAS

The following five examples of completing the model of the crystal structure and Rietveld refinement are based on five materials discussed in sections 6.13 to 6.17. Therefore, in all cases the initial structural models will be employed exactly as they were derived in Chapter 6. When needed, the models will be completed by employing Fourier series calculation(s) using phase angles obtained after the initial models have been improved by using Rietveld refinement and the individual structure factors re-determined from the observed powder data after the refinement.[1]

All computations described in the following five sections have been performed using GSAS (General Structure Analysis System), one of the most advanced implementations of the Rietveld refinement approach

[1] Even if the model of the crystal structure appears complete, it is always a good idea to compute a complete or difference Fourier map to ensure that no atoms have been missed.

combined with a variety of computational crystallographic routines, which has been developed by A.C. Larson and R.B. Von Dreele.[1]

Computations in GSAS are controlled *via* a DOS-based text command interface, which may be difficult to manage for some Windows users that are addicted to the extensive use of a mouse. For those, we recommend a user-friendly graphic interface, EXPGUI, developed by B.H. Toby.[2] EXPGUI simplifies the work with GSAS considerably, although not all of the possibilities available with the native DOS-based interface are accessible. Both the GSAS and EXPGUI are freely available and can be downloaded along with the installation instructions, manuals and several examples.[3]

Structure refinements are described here in a way so that they can be repeated, to a certain extent, using LHPM-Rietica, FullProf, Rietan, and other computer codes mentioned in this book.[4] Some examples (relatively complex structures coupled with rather low quality diffraction patterns), however, may not be easily reproduced even when using the same version of the GSAS unless every step is followed exactly as described in this text.

One of the peculiarities of the GSAS is the use of the instrumental parameters file. The latter contains default values of peak shape parameters along with other instrumental and sample factors, including the wavelength, $K\alpha_2/K\alpha_1$ intensity ratio, default zero-shift or sample displacement corrections, etc. The instrumental parameters file can be created for a specific instrumental setup, e.g. a combination of divergence, Soller and receiving slits in a specific data collection geometry, and used as the default or starting values of profile parameters in the Rietveld refinement.[5]

We should emphasize that sometimes, not all profile parameters should or could be routinely refined due to the quality of a particular pattern and/or sample crystallinity. For example, *U*, *V*, and *W* parameters, which define the instrumental part of the FWHM as a function of Bragg angle, can be kept fixed assuming that their values in the instrumental parameters file were

[1] A.C. Larson and R.B. Von Dreele, General Structure Analysis System (GSAS), Los Alamos National Laboratory Report, LAUR 86-748 (2000). Although GSAS is suitable for treatment of both powder diffraction and single crystal data, in the context of this book we are chiefly concerned with its capabilities to processing powder data.

[2] B.H. Toby, EXPGUI, a graphical user interface for GSAS, J. Appl. Cryst. **34**, 210 (2001).

[3] GSAS may be downloaded from http://public.lanl.gov/gsas/ or *via* a link at http://www.ccp14.ac.uk. A convenient graphic user interface for GSAS, EXPGUI, may be downloaded from http://www.ncnr.nist.gov/programs/crystallography/ or *via* a link at http://www.ccp14.ac.uk.

[4] It may not be possible or the result may be far off from that considered here if approaches that are essential for the refinement are not implemented in the employed software.

[5] Other computer programs handle default settings in a similar way. In LHPM-Rietica, for example, these can be specified for a variety of diffractometers/experimental setups and then chosen to represent initial parameters of every data set, which is included in the processing.

thoroughly determined using a standard with a high degree of crystallinity, e.g. LaB_6 (NIST SRM-660 or 660a). Another example is when Gaussian and Lorentzian components of peak broadening, which correspond to grain size and strain contributions, respectively, correlate severely and cannot be refined simultaneously. The latter may be due to an insufficient quality of diffraction data, low resolution, or both. Then, only one of them should be refined because both produce similar broadening effects.

Overall, when initial parameters are relatively far from the correct values and especially in the presence of noticeable correlations between certain free variables, Rietveld refinement may be difficult to converge. When this happens, the calculated parameters' shifts are much greater than needed and the minimization diverges, or in other words, the refinement process moves the free variables away from a global minimum (e.g. see *Figure 6.3*, right). There are several ways of stabilizing the refinement and reducing the risk of the undesired divergence. One of them is numerical damping of the non-linear least squares by using the Levenberg-Marquardt technique,[1] which relies on a single damping parameter starting from unity (the latter corresponds to no damping). The Levenberg-Marquardt damping parameter is applied to the diagonal elements of the normal equation matrix thus preventing a divergence, which is due to a near zero determinant of the matrix caused by strong correlations between certain parameters. This approach has little, if any, effect on the uncorrelated variables.

Another way of avoiding the "out-of-control" least squares, is by applying a damping multiplier, $0 < d \leq 1$, to the calculated shifts for all or some of the refined variables, not necessarily to those that correlate. The damping multiplier in the GSAS is specified by using a numerical constant (D), which varies from 0 (default) to 9. The shifts (δx_i) are computed as $\delta x_i = \Delta x_i d = \Delta x_i(10\text{-}D)/10$, where Δx_i is the shift of the i^{th} free variable as determined from Eq. 6.10, and δx_i is the shift of the i^{th} free variable, which is added to the current value of x_i. Thus, d is 1 for $D = 0$ and 0.5 for $D = 5$. The latter constant was employed in the following five examples and applied to all free variables except for the scale factor and background parameters.[2]

[1] The damping technique, originally suggested by K. Levenberg [Q. Appl. Math. **2** 164 (1944)] and D.W. Marquardt [SIAM J. Appl. Math. **11**, 463 (1963)], has been broadly implemented in numerical analysis, e.g. see J.E. Dennis and R.B. Schnabel, Numerical methods for unconstrained optimization and non-linear equations, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ (1983).

[2] Examples considered in sections 7.3 to 7.5 did not require damping, yet LHPM-Rietica and other commonly available Rietveld refinement computer codes foresee either or both damping approaches described here. Applying damping cannot be deleterious even when it is unnecessary. It leads to more least squares cycles required to achieve convergence (global minimum) but simultaneously prevents accidental "out-of-control" least squares, thus enabling to use starting parameters, which are relatively far from correct values.

Both damping techniques stabilize Rietveld refinement but obviously require more least squares cycles for its completion. It is worth noting, that according to the GSAS default (which can be changed), the refinement process is considered converged to a global minimum when the maximum shift (Δx_i) observed among all free variables is less than $1/100^{th}$ of the corresponding standard deviation (σx_i), i.e. when $|\Delta x_i|/\sigma x_i < 0.01$, $i = 1, 2, \ldots p$ and p is the number of free variables.[1]

Structure and properties of both the metal oxides and their intercalates, which are used as examples in sections 7.7 to 7.11, result in high anisotropy of crystal shapes. Distinct, plate-like or needle-like shapes of particles (*Figure 6.23*, *Figure 6.26*, and *Figure 6.31*) cause a highly non-random distribution of particle orientations even after thorough grinding and screening. The state of the specimen often cannot be adequately described using a simple single-parameter preferred orientation model(s) and two preferred orientation axes or a spherical harmonics expansion should be employed. In parallel, the anisotropy of the particle shapes almost necessarily causes the anisotropy in the broadening of the diffraction peaks, which, in order to obtain a good fit, has to be accounted for as well.

Unless noted to the contrary, the initial values of peak shape parameters used in the following five examples, were obtained from a refinement using the experimental powder diffraction pattern of LaB_6 measured on a Scintag XDS2000 diffractometer employing Cu Kα radiation and a liquid nitrogen-cooled Ge(Li) solid-state detector at typical experimental settings. These are found on the CD in the file **Scintag.prm**. We note that all profile parameters employed in GSAS are in centidegrees (i.e. the corresponding values in degrees have been multiplied by 100). Thus, the following settings and initial parameters were used:

- The peak shape function was a Thompson modified pseudo-Voigt.[2] It is referred as No. 2 in GSAS (also see section 2.9.1 and relevant equations).
- Bragg peaks were extended in the range where their calculated intensity was greater or equal to 0.5% of the intensity at the peak maximum.
- The instrumental component of FWHM was given by $U = 0.7104$, $V = -0.9565$, $W = 1.7318$; $P = 0$.
- Isotropic peak broadening due to grain size and strain with $X = 2.2952$, $Y = 3.9551$, and $X_a = 0$ and $Y_a = 0$.
- Peak asymmetry $\alpha = 2.5471$.
- Porosity and absorption effects were initially accounted for by using the Suortti approach (see Eq. 2.76) with parameters $a_1 = 0.4$ and $a_2 = 0.4$.

[1] IUCr imposes the requirement $|\Delta x_i|/\sigma x_i \leq 0.05$ to ensure completeness of refinements based on single crystal data. In Rietveld fits, $|\Delta x_i|/\sigma x_i < 0.1$ are quite satisfactory.

[2] P. Thompson, D.E. Cox, and J.B. Hastings. Rietveld refinement of Debye-Scherrer synchrotron x-ray data from Al_2O_3, J. Appl. Cryst. **20**, 79 (1987).

These two parameters have a tendency to strong correlation, and they were refined only when the quality of the pattern was sufficiently high.

- The sample displacement parameter S_s calculated for each particular case from the displacement (s, in mm) obtained during unit cell refinement as: $S_s = -36000s/(\pi R)$ or $S_s = -144s/\pi$ for the goniometer radius R = 250 mm.
- Cu Kα radiation wavelengths used were 1.540562 and 1.544390 Å for Kα_1 and Kα_2 components, respectively.
- The initial value of the phase scale factor was always 1.[1]
- The initial background was set to a constant value of 100 counts or, in some difficult cases, fitted manually and kept fixed during initial refinement steps.
- Unless noted to the contrary, a 6-parameter shifted-Chebyshev function was employed to fit the background at later refinement stages.
- The initial atomic displacement parameters were always set to U_{iso} = 0.015 Å^2, which is equivalent to B_{iso} (= $8\pi^2 U_{iso}$) of ~1.2 Å^2.
- Fractional population factors in GSAS are treated as g's (see Eq. 7.8), while site multiplicities are automatically accounted for and cannot be changed. Site populations, however, can be refined when needed. For example, a population factor $g = 0.75$ for an A atom in a site with multiplicity 4 means that 75% of the site is occupied and that there are 3 A atoms in the unit cell. Obviously, the fractional population factor cannot be greater than unity or less than zero. When the refined value is out of the range $0 \leq g \leq 1$, this usually points to the incorrect assignments of atom types or incorrectly located atom(s).

The majority of experimental powder diffraction patterns in the following five examples were collected using a step scan data collection method on a Scintag XDS2000 system equipped with a Ge(Li) solid-state detector cooled with liquid nitrogen.

7.7 Completion of the model and Rietveld refinement of $NiMnO_2(OH)$[2]

This example shows how to deal with complex preferred orientation, and how to distinguish chemical elements with similar scattering factors (Ni, 28

[1] Phase scales are treated differently in different realizations of the Rietveld algorithm, e.g. in GSAS and in LHPM-Rietica. In the latter, the calculated absolute intensity is scaled (normalized) to match the observed relative intensity, i.e. the scale factor is applied exactly as shown in Eqs. 7.3 and 7.4. In the former, the observed relative intensity is scaled to match the calculated absolute scattered intensity. In other words, the scale factors in GSAS and LHPM-Rietica are related to one another as $K_{GSAS} = 1/K_{Rietica}$.

[2] R. Chen, P.Y. Zavalij, M.S. Whittingham, J.E. Greedan, N.P. Raju and M. Bieringer, The hydrothermal synthesis of the new manganese and vanadium oxides, $NiMnO_3H$, MAV_3O_7 and $MA_{0.75}V_4O_{10}{\cdot}0.67H_2O$ (MA = CH_3NH_3), J. Mater. Chem. **9**, 93 (1999).

electrons and Mn, 25 electrons) using x-ray powder data. Furthermore, in this section we will also see how easy the latter can be done when neutron diffraction data are available. The availability of the latter also illustrates how to locate the hydrogen atom(s) in the unit cell. Finally, some important geometrical aspects of the interpretation of the structural data will also be considered.

The experimental x-ray pattern was collected in the range from 5 to 100° 2θ with a 0.02° step and a counting time of 60 sec/step. The initial model of the crystal structure is listed in *Table 6.37*. Both independent metal atoms are treated as manganese (Mn1 and Mn2) and the hydrogen atom is missing in this model. Thus, our goal is to distinguish between Mn and Ni atoms, locate the H atom from the Fourier map(s), and obtain accurate positional, atomic displacement, and profile parameters.

Often, the initial stages of Rietveld refinement are both important and difficult because the initial values of both the structural and profile parameters may be far from the correct values. Hence, non-linear least squares may be less stable when compared to the same at the end of the refinement, i.e. when nearly all parameters are close to their accurate values. As mentioned above, variables should be refined in a proper order, usually starting from only a few most critical parameters and then adding other relevant variables, while continuously monitoring how previously refined parameters continue to change. Those that correlate or begin to diverge should be excluded from the refinement and, perhaps, constrained.

The following initial parameters were employed to begin this refinement:

- Default profile parameters from the instrumental parameter file **Scintag.prm** as described above in section 7.6.
- Sample shift, $S_s = 5.64$ to represent sample displacement $s = -0.123$ mm, which was obtained together with the unit cell dimensions during the lattice parameter refinement.
- Space group $Cmc2_1$ and unit cell dimensions $a = 2.8609$ Å, $b = 14.6482$ Å, $c = 5.2703$ Å, as determined earlier.
- Structure model from *Table 6.37* with overall isotropic displacement parameter $U_{iso} = 0.015$ Å^2.

The starting model of the crystal structure with all of the necessary parameters is found on the CD in files **Ch7Ex05a.exp**[1] and **Ch7Ex05a.cif**;[2] the experimental pattern is located in the file **Ch7Ex05_CuKa.raw**.[3]

[1] This is the main GSAS data file, which contains all structural, instrumental and other parameters needed for refinement.

[2] This is a Crystallographic Information File, which records all information in a standard format acceptable by the majority of crystallographic programs, and which is required by the majority of technical journals for publication of the structure determination results.

[3] This is the profile (histogram) file, which contains experimental powder pattern in a standard GSAS format. Note that this format is also suitable for LHPM-Rietica.

Initially, only the scale factor has been refined, resulting in the residuals shown in the second row in *Table 7.17*. The calculated pattern matches the observed data quite well, considering the unrefined model, as can be seen from *Figure 7.19*. The strong calculated Bragg reflections correspond to the strong observed peaks and the weak reflections to the low observed intensity peaks, which is a satisfactory confirmation of the initial model. The quite good initial approximation of both the unit cell dimensions and sample displacement are obvious from the inset in *Figure 7.19*.

Table 7.17. The progress of Rietveld refinement of the crystal structure of $NiMnO_2(OH)$ using x-ray powder diffraction data.

Refined parameters	R_p	R_{wp}	R_B	χ^2
Initial (CD: **Ch7Ex05_CuKa.raw**, **Ch7Ex05a.exp** and **Ch7Ex05a.cif**)	36.9	50.8	99.7	350
Scale factor only (*Figure 7.19*)	18.2	25.9	36.0	90.9
Scale, background, unit cell dimensions, grain size (*X*)	14.9	22.4	34.0	68.1
All of the above plus preferred orientation (PO) for [010] axis and then adding another PO for [100] axis	9.6	13.5	12.2	24.8
All of the above plus strain (*Y*) instead of *X*, PO1/PO2 ratio, asymmetry (α), coordinates of all atoms, U_{over} (*Figure 7.20*); (CD: **Ch7Ex05b.exp** and **Ch7Ex05b.cif**)	7.4	10.6	8.9	15.3
All of the above plus Mn2 was changed to Ni1 (5 cycles), then individual U_{iso} for Mn1 and Ni1	7.3	10.5	9.6	15.0
All of the above plus S_s, profile parameters, grain size, strain together with their anisotropy (X_a and Y_a)	5.9	8.0	6.8	8.75
Only scale, background, unit cell dimensions and absorption, a_1 and a_2, in the Suortti approximation	6.0	8.1	6.3	8.79
All of the above plus coordinates, U_{iso} for Mn1 and Ni1, U_{over} for O, PO[010], PO[100], *X*, X_a α.	6.0	8.0	6.7	8.77
All of the above plus *U*, *V*, *W*, *Y*, *Ya*. Final (x-ray only), see *Figure 7.21*	5.1	6.6	6.7	5.99
Combined final: x-ray	5.1	6.7	6.7	n/a
Combined final: neutrons	4.0	5.0	24.4	n/a
Combined final: total (*Figure 7.23*a and b, *Table 7.18*) (CD: **Ch7Ex05c.exp** and **Ch7Ex05c.cif**)	5.0	6.5	n/a	5.85

The subsequent refinement step included six background coefficients for a shifted-Chebyshev polynomial, unit cell dimensions and grain size parameter (*X*). Only a little improvement in the fit results. Next, the preferred orientation was refined using the March-Dollase approach (see section 2.10.6) implemented in GSAS. At first, the preferred orientation axis was chosen along the [010] direction. This direction is perpendicular to the metal-oxide layers (*Figure 6.25*), which are found in the structure and it coincides with the longest unit cell edge, *b*. The preferred orientation parameter, τ_{010}, was refined to τ_{010} = 0.80, which corresponds to the

preferred orientation magnitude of 2.73.[1] A second preferred orientation axis, [100], was added after the first, and this choice was based on the presence of metal oxide chains along the shortest unit cell edge, *a*. Both preferred orientation parameters were refined together with other variables previously included in the least squares, resulting in a substantial lowering of all residuals (row 4 in *Table 7.17*). The preferred orientation axes could be easily predicted in this structure by comparing the unit cell dimensions and simple geometrical analysis of the model. In many instances, the longest unit cell dimension (in this material the *b*-axis), which is perpendicular to the layers formed in the crystal structure, is also parallel to the shortest dimension of the plate-like crystallites.

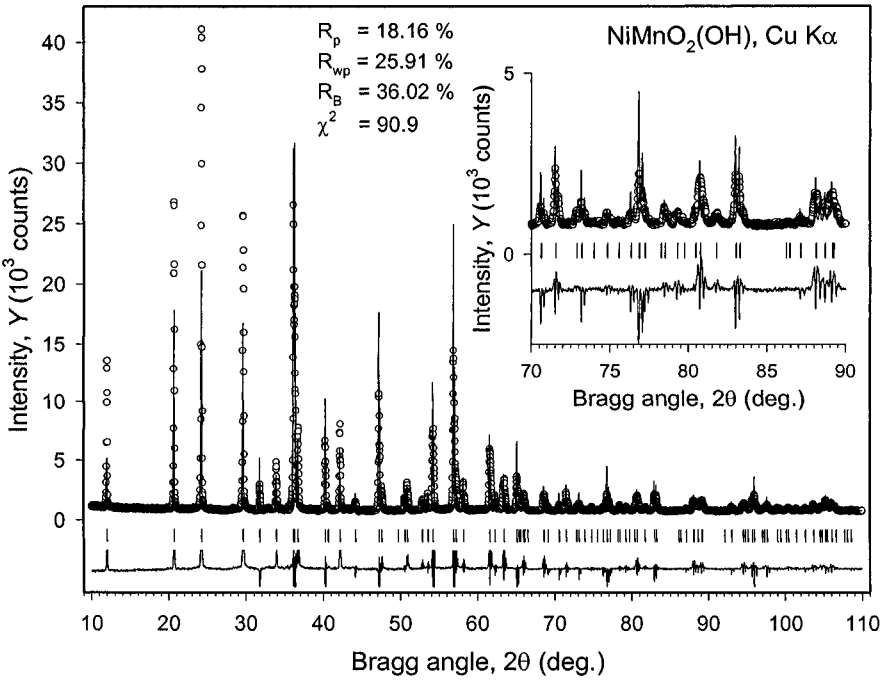


Figure 7.19. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $NiMnO_2(OH)$ after the initial Rietveld refinement with only the scale factor determined. The inset clarifies the range between 70 and 90° 2θ. The difference (Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc}) is shown using the same scale as both the observed and calculated data but the plot is truncated to fit within the range [-1500, 1500] for clarity.

[1] The magnitude of the preferred orientation is the ratio between the maximum and the minimum correction factors, which in this case, is the ratio between the correction factors for reflections whose reciprocal lattice vectors are parallel to $\mathbf{d}^*_{010}$ and those, which are perpendicular to $\mathbf{d}^*_{010}$, i.e. $T_{\parallel}/T_{\perp}$.

Similarly, the shortest unit cell dimension is usually parallel to the chain-like formations in the structure (if any) and, simultaneously, to the longest dimension of the needle-like crystallites. In $NiMnO_2(OH)$, the *a*-axis is much shorter than the two others: the needle-like crystallites are elongated along the [100] direction, with the additional preferred orientation axis [010] perpendicular to the flat sides of the needles (see the inset in *Figure 6.23*).

When the two preferred orientation axes are assumed, the ratio between them should be refined as well. This was done subsequently, together with the refinement of the coordinates of individual atoms, overall isotropic displacement parameter, U_{over}, and peak asymmetry, α. The resulting fit is substantially improved, as shown in *Figure 7.20*. It is clear, however, that there are still some differences between the observed and calculated intensities, as well as in the peak shapes (e.g. see the inset in *Figure 7.20*, where some calculated peaks appear too narrow when compared with the observed peak shapes).

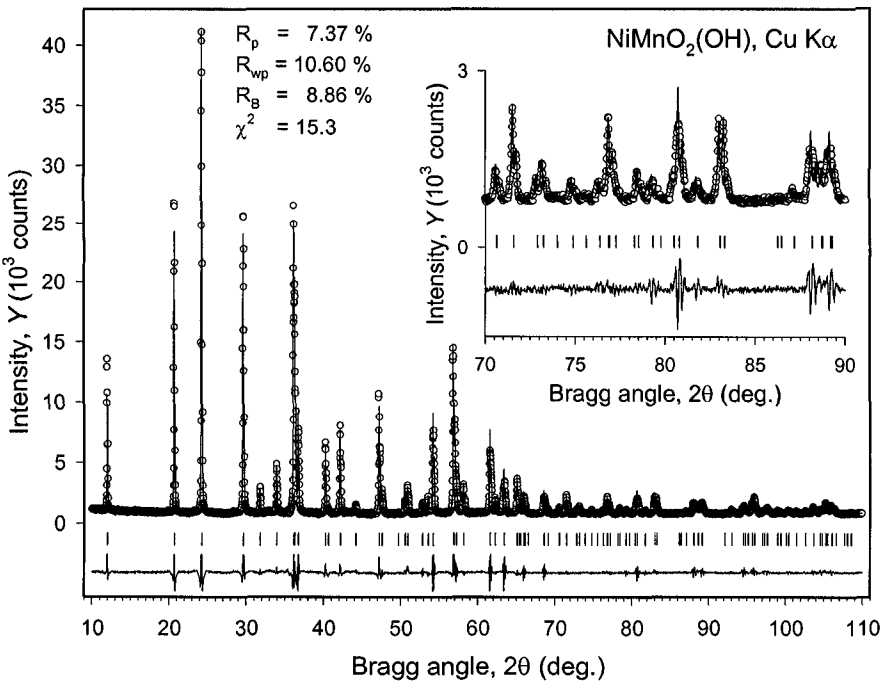


Figure 7.20. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $NiMnO_2(OH)$ after preferred orientation, coordinates of all atoms and the overall displacement parameter were refined in addition to the scale factor, unit cell dimensions, background, grain size and strain effects, and peak asymmetry. The insert clarifies the range between 70 and 90° 2θ.

The next structure determination step is to distinguish the Mn and Ni atoms in two positions, presently treated as manganese. There are several possible ways of accomplishing this task:

- Refining individual isotropic atomic displacement parameters with a larger value pointing to the lighter atom and a smaller or even negative displacement parameter indicating the heavier atom. This method works well in refinements using single crystal diffraction data or very precise powder data, and usually for chemical elements with substantial differences in the scattering ability (number of electrons), e.g. see section 7.3.3.
- Refining site population factors: this is similar to the previous approach but is a more appropriate way of testing for the scattering power of an atom because the multiplication of the atomic number of the element, currently present on a certain site, by its fractional occupation factor results in the approximate number of electrons in the element that should occupy the given site.
- Conducting the refinement using all possible combinations of the elements and then selecting the best model based on the resultant figures of merit. This approach may be time consuming if a large number of permutations are possible. However, in the case of $NiMnO_2(OH)$, only two possibilities exist: Mn1 is Mn and Mn2 is Ni, or Mn1 is Ni and Mn2 is Mn.
- Analyzing the geometry of the model. This approach is nearly always used in molecular compounds, even when single crystal data are available. The analysis involves prior knowledge of possible bond distances, angles, coordination polyhedra, etc.
- Employing information other than Cu Kα x-ray diffraction data, e.g. anomalous scattering near the K-absorption edge of one of the metals, neutron diffraction data (see below), and/or spectroscopic results.

Despite a variety of available methods, some of them may not always work well. In this case, the first three approaches based on x-ray diffraction data did not allow clear differentiation between Mn and Ni atoms because the differences between atomic displacement parameters, site populations and standard figures of merit were not statistically significant. However, quite different environments of the two independent metal atoms suggest that a geometrical analysis may be helpful.

Thus, the bond valence sum method,[1] which is used mainly to differentiate between the oxidation states of chemical elements rather than

[1] Bond valence sum is calculated using interatomic distances and empirical bond valence parameters tabulated for each type of the bond. The analysis was conducted using VaList software [A.S. Wills and I.D. Brown, VaList, CEA, France (1999)], available from ftp://ftp.ill.fr/pub/dif/valist/.

the elements themselves, was employed. The calculated bond valence sum should be as close as possible to the oxidation state for which it was calculated. In our model, the bond valence sum technique resulted in 2.93 for the first atom, treated as Mn^{3+}, and 1.96 for the second atom, assumed to be Ni^{2+}. The next closest possibility was 2.78 for Ni^{3+} in the first position and 2.61 for Mn^{3+} in the second metal site (see *Table 6.37*). Therefore, bond valence sum clearly reveals that the first metal (Mn1) is actually Mn, while the second atom (Mn2) is Ni. Furthermore, their oxidation states are 3+ and 2+ for Mn and Ni, respectively. The final chemical composition is, therefore, $Ni^{2+}Mn^{3+}O_2(OH)$, thus confirming the presence of a hydroxyl group in the compound. In $NiMnO_3$, both Mn and Ni atoms should have oxidation states 3+ to maintain charge balance. Hence, all subsequent refinement steps included Mn and Ni in proper sites and their atomic displacement parameters were refined independently.

Including both grain size and strain contributions to the full width at half maximum (X and Y) together with their anisotropic parts (X_a and Y_a) noticeably improves the fit (*Table 7.17*). Setting the porosity and absorption effects using the Suortti approach as free variables (the majority of other parameters were fixed to avoid correlations) changed the corresponding parameters from 0.40 and 0.40 to 0.32 and 0.51, respectively, without improvement of the figures of merit. Finally U, V, and W parameters, which represent the instrumental part of the FWHM, were refined until the full convergence was achieved. The visible improvement of the profile figures of merit points, perhaps, to the improper preset values of U, V, and W. We note also that X and X_a were kept fixed during the last few least squares cycles because of their strong correlation with Y and Y_a, and it was nonessential which pair was refined since we had no intent to analyze grain size distribution and micro strain effects. The resultant observed and calculated diffraction patterns are shown in *Figure 7.21*.

The results of the last refinement can be considered final if the location of a single independent hydrogen atom in the unit is not of concern.[1] Not surprisingly, it was impossible to locate hydrogen from the x-ray data unambiguously. Therefore, we will also employ neutron powder diffraction data collected on a powder diffractometer at the McMaster University nuclear reactor using thermal neutrons with $\lambda = 1.3920$ Å.

[1] Due to the low x-ray scattering ability of hydrogen atoms, their effect on the intensity of powder diffraction patterns measured using conventional x-ray sources is usually negligible, especially in the presence of relatively strongly scattering atoms, such as Mn and Ni. Therefore, the localization of hydrogen atoms from x-ray powder diffraction data usually presents a serious and often inexplicable problem. Hydrogen atoms positions are, however, important in crystallography because they reveal the nature of hydrogen bonds, which are often critical for understanding the stability of both inorganic and organic crystals.

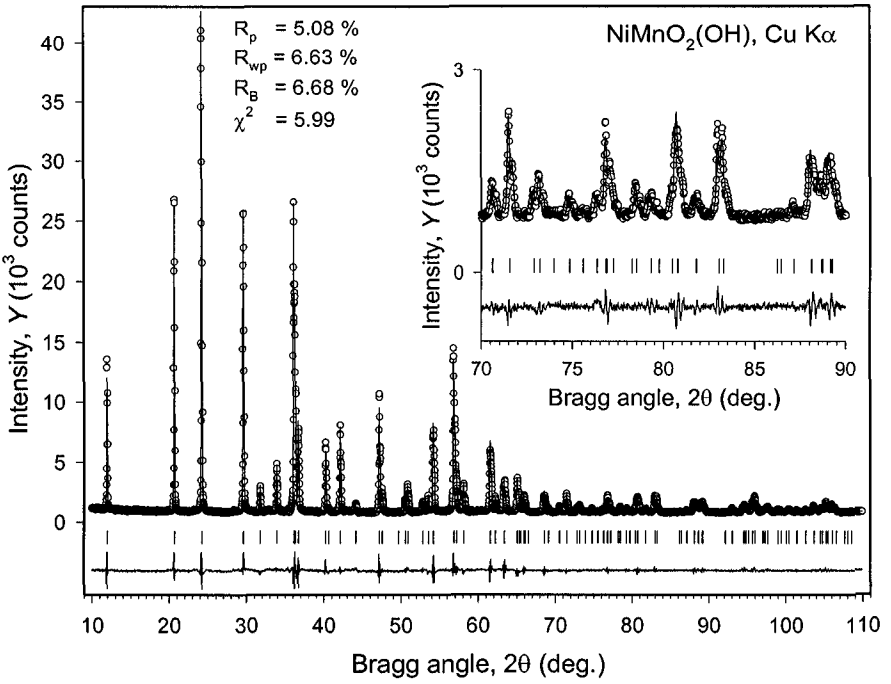


Figure 7.21. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $NiMnO_2(OH)$ after the completion of Rietveld refinement using only x-ray powder diffraction data (the hydrogen atom is still missing from the model). The inset clarifies the range between 70 and 90° 2θ.

It is worth noting that a normal sample containing hydrogen, and not its deuterium-substituted analogue, was employed in this experiment. The presence of ^1H instead of ^2H, causes a substantial diffuse scattering and significantly increases the background, but on the other hand, it assures that both the neutron and x-ray diffraction data were collected using exactly the same compound.

The availability of neutron diffraction data enables the combined x-ray and neutron Rietveld refinement.[1] The following neutron scattering lengths (b) were employed: b_{Mn} = -3.73, b_{Ni} = 10.3, b_O = 5.803 and b_H = -3.739 (all are in fm).[2] The negative values of the scattering lengths of Mn and H can be used to distinguish them from other elements easily. After several cycles of the refinement, a good agreement between the observed and calculated

[1] In order to carry out the combined refinement in GSAS, the neutron powder diffraction pattern (CD file **Ch7Ex05_Neut.raw**) should be added as the second histogram using the neutron instrumental parameter file (data file **Neutron.prm** is also located on the CD).

[2] GSAS employs neutron scattering lengths divided by 10, i.e. the units are 10^{-12} cm. Also note that the incoherent scattering length of ^1H is 25 fm, which is quite large.

patterns was achieved. This result decisively proves that the Mn and Ni positions were recognized accurately: their scattering factors have opposite signs and, when switched, the computed intensities will be quite different.

The difference Fourier map was calculated using the neutron data and it is shown in *Figure 7.22*a. The position of an H atom can be found as the deepest minimum on the map. Yet this minimum is only slightly deeper than other extremes, all of which could be considered as noise, which appears due to the relatively low accuracy of the experimental data. The confirmation of the H position was made by using chemical intuition considering the crystal structure model, especially because the geometry of the hydrogen bond O1-H···O3 is nearly ideal. Positions of all atoms in the model have been confirmed on the conventional Fourier map, which is shown in *Figure 7.22*b.

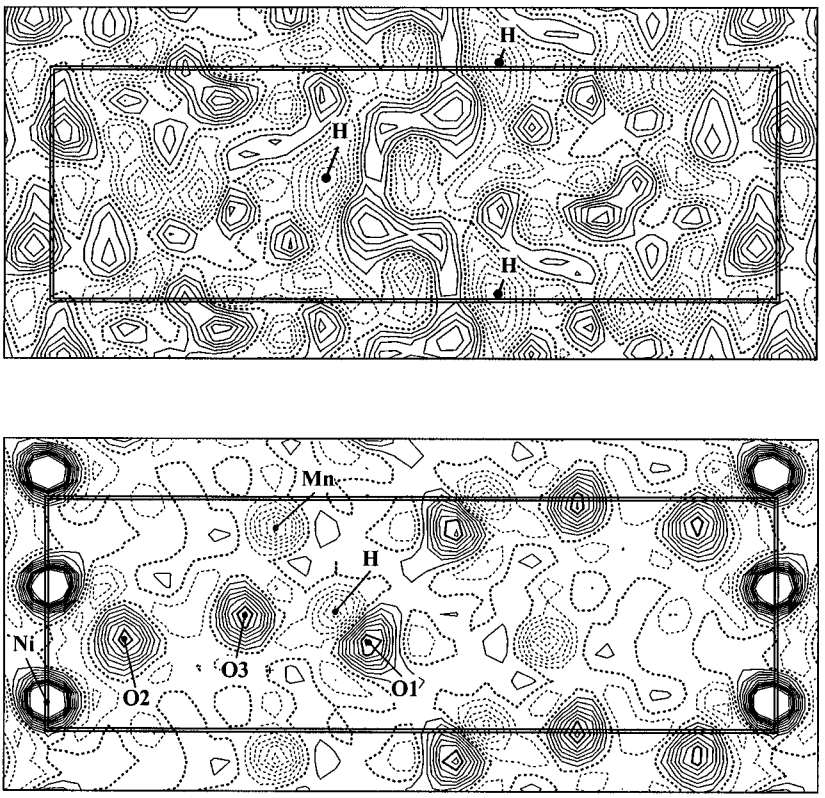


Figure 7.22. Distributions of the nuclear density in the unit cell of $NiMnO_2(OH)$ at $x = 0$: a) the difference Fourier map calculated using $|\Delta F| = |F_{obs}-F_{calc}|$ and phase angles calculated without H atom (ρ_{min} = -2.4 fm/Å^3, ρ_{max} = 2.4 fm/Å^3, $\Delta\rho$ = 0.4 fm/Å^3, ρ(H) = -2.4 fm/Å^3); b) the conventional Fourier map computed using $|F_{obs}|$ and phase angles calculated including the H atom (ρ_{min} = -12 fm/Å^3, ρ_{max} = 18 fm/Å^3 (high ρ on Ni atoms is not shown), $\Delta\rho$ = 2 fm/Å^3, ρ(H) = -10 fm/Å^3, ρ(Mn) = -12 fm/Å^3). Solid lines show positive values, thin dotted lines negative, and thick dotted lines indicate zero level.

The final Rietveld refinement, combining both neutron and x-ray powder diffraction data, was performed until the complete convergence was achieved, and the resulting observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns are illustrated in *Figure 7.23*. The refined parameters of the individual atoms are listed in *Table 7.18* and they can also be found on the CD in the files **Ch7Ex05c.exp** and **Ch7Ex05c.cif**. The agreement between the observed and calculated x-ray data (*Figure 7.23*b) is only slightly inferior to the one obtained when only x-ray data were included in the refinement (*Figure 7.21*), which is likely associated with the contribution from a rather high background noise present in the neutron pattern (*Figure 7.23*a) due to the incoherent scattering of hydrogen. The relatively large value of the Bragg residual, computed using neutron data, is also associated with the fairly low quality of the neutron diffraction data, in which the strongest peak-to-background ratio is less than 2.5 (also see relevant discussion in section 7.2.1).

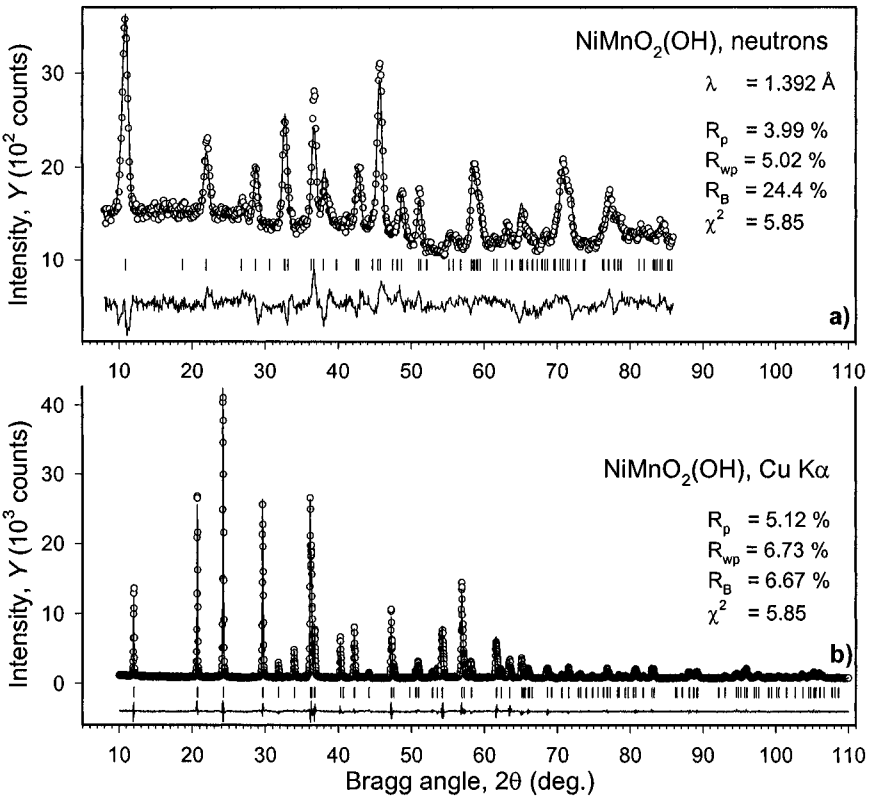


Figure 7.23. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $NiMnO_2(OH)$ after the completion of combined Rietveld refinement using neutron (a) and x-ray (b) powder diffraction data.

The population parameter of hydrogen has been refined to a value of 62(5) % and, therefore, the chemical composition of the material is $NiMnO_3H_\delta$, or $NiMnO_{3-\delta}(OH)_\delta$, where $\delta = 0.62(5)$. Hence, a fraction of the Mn atoms should be in the 4+ oxidation states. The latter was confirmed by the magnetic susceptibility measurements. The preferred orientation parameters, refined for both preferred orientation axes, i.e. [010] and [100], are 0.74 and 1.40, respectively, resulting in the texture factors ranging between 0.52 and 2.10, which corresponds to the preferred orientation magnitude of about 4.

It appears that all pieces of this crystallographic puzzle are now in place and they agree both with each other and with all available information. These are: the chemical composition and the oxidation states of the metal atoms; the crystal structure in general, including the distribution of Mn and Ni atoms, and the amount and positions of hydrogen atoms; geometry, which includes bond lengths, coordination polyhedra and hydrogen bonding; and basic magnetic properties, which confirm a mixture of Mn^{3+} and Mn^{4+} in the material. Thus, the fully determined and refined crystal structure of $NiMnO_{3-\delta}(OH)_\delta$ makes reasonable chemical and physical sense and its complete model is illustrated in *Figure 7.24*.

Table 7.18. Atomic parameters and interatomic distances (in Å) after the completion of the combined Rietveld refinement based on both the x-ray and neutron powder diffraction data collected from $NiMnO_2(OH)$ powder. The refined chemical composition is $NiMnO_{3-\delta}(OH)_\delta$ where $\delta = 0.62(5)$. The unit cell parameters are: $a = 2.86112(4)$, $b = 14.6516(1)$, $c = 5.27097(5)$ Å, $V = 220.959(7)$ Å^3, the space group is $Cmc2_1$.

Atom	Site	x	y	z	U_{iso} [a]	Bond distances, Å		
						Mn[b]	Ni[b]	H[b]
Mn	4(a)	0	0.30556(6)	0.3800[c]	0.0164(5)			
Ni	4(a)	1/2	0.4989(3)	0.618(2)	0.0159(4)			
O1	4(a)	0	0.4480(2)	0.876(4)	0.0124(8)		$2.07(1)_2$, $2.11(1)_2$	1.10(4)
O2	4(a)	1/2	0.3909(2)	0.382(3)	0.0124(8)	$1.900(2)_2$	2.01(1), 2.13(1)	
O3	4(a)	1/2	0.2308(3)	0.490(2)	0.0124(8)	$1.892(3)_2$, 2.126(7)		1.73(4)
H[d]	4(a)	0	0.387(3)	0.998(8)	0.0124(8)			

[a] Displacement parameters of oxygen and hydrogen atoms were refined in the overall isotropic approximation.

[b] The subscript after the distance shows how many times this bond occurs for this particular central atom.

[c] The z-coordinate of this atom was fixed to define the origin of coordinates along the Z-axis in this space group symmetry.

[d] The refined population parameter of the hydrogen atom is $g = 0.62(5)$. The hydrogen bond characteristic angle O1–H···O3 is 143(4)°.

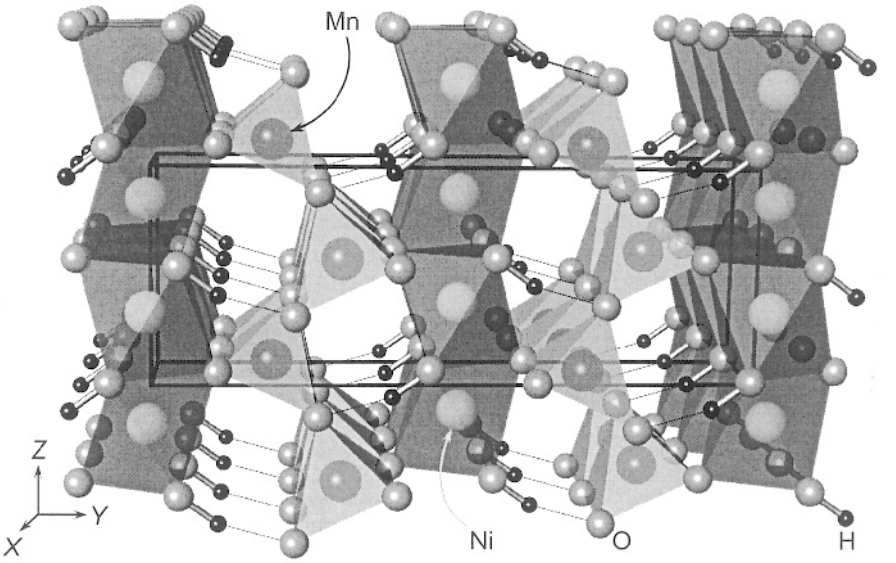


Figure 7.24. The model of the crystal structure of $NiMnO_{3-\delta}(OH)_{\delta}$. The covalent O1-H bonds are shown as cylinders, and the H···O3 hydrogen bonds are shown using thin lines.

7.8 Completion of the model and Rietveld refinement of *tma*V_3O_7[1]

This example illustrates the completion of the model and Rietveld refinement of a rather complex structure containing inorganic vanadium oxide layers (a total of ten independent V and O atoms) intercalated with tetramethylammonium (*tma*) ions (the latter has a total of 17 independent atoms: four carbon, one nitrogen, and 12 hydrogen) using conventional powder diffraction data. The diffraction data are of high, but far from the best, quality and they are affected by a strong and unavoidable preferred orientation present in the specimen. This example also provides some basic information about the so-called soft restraints,[2] which can be imposed on the known bond lengths and valence angles during the refinement to improve both the stability of the least squares and the reasonableness of the model.

[1] P.Y. Zavalij, T. Chirayil and M.S. Whittingham. Layered tetramethylammonium vanadium oxide $[N(CH_3)_4]V_3O_7$ by x-ray Rietveld refinement, Acta Cryst. **C53**, 879 (1997).

[2] A *constraint* is an exact mathematical relationship existing between two or more parameters; it completely eliminates one or more variables from the least-squares refinement. For example, $y = x$, and $B_{33} = B_{22} = B_{11}$, eliminate y, and B_{33} and B_{22}, respectively (also see Eq. 7.9). A *restraint* is additional information, which is subject to a probability distribution. For example chemically (but not symmetrically) identical bond lengths in tetramethylammonium: $\delta_{N\text{-}C1} = \delta_{N\text{-}C2} = \delta_{N\text{-}C3} = \delta_{N\text{-}C4} = 1.55 \pm 0.05$ Å.

The experimental pattern was collected with a 0.02° step from 7 to 50° 2θ and a counting time of 60 sec/step, and from 50 to 69° 2θ with a counting time of 90 sec/step. The high Bragg angle intensities were scaled to the 60 sec/step counting time for all calculations. The following initial parameters were used in the model completion and refinement:

- The initial model of the crystal structure was taken from *Table 6.40*.
- The default profile parameters were taken from the instrumental parameter file **Scintag.prm** (see section 7.6).
- The sample shift parameter $S_s = 8.94$ corresponds to the sample displacement s = -0.195 mm, which was determined together with the unit cell dimensions during the least squares refinement of lattice parameters.
- The space group is $P2_1/n$ and the unit cell dimensions are $a = 18.482$, $b = 6.5526$, $c = 8.4297$ Å, $\beta = 91.103°$, as determined earlier.
- The overall isotropic displacement parameter, $U_{iso} = 0.015$ Å^2.

The starting model is found on the CD in the files **Ch7Ex06a.exp** and **Ch7Ex06a.cif** together with all relevant structural parameters, and the experimental powder pattern is located in the file **Ch7Ex06_CuKa.raw**. Initially, only the scale factor and 6 coefficients for a shifted-Chebyshev polynomial approximation of the background were refined. The resulting residuals, which are shown in the second row of *Table 7.19*, are higher than one could expect for a nearly complete model (all non-hydrogen atoms were thought to be located). As can be seen from the inset in *Figure 7.25*, both the calculated intensities and peak shapes are far off from their observed values. The intensity mismatch may be associated, to a certain extent, with a considerable preferred orientation, which is expected from the highly anisotropic shapes of the crystallites (see the inset in *Figure 6.26*) and nearly guaranteed easy cleaving of the particles along the planes parallel to the vanadate layers expanded by the tetramethylammonium. Therefore, the subsequent refinement included the grain size broadening parameter (X) and the preferred orientation along the [100] axis, resulting in some improvement of the fit.

The next refinement step included the unit cell dimensions and peak asymmetry, noticeably lowering the residuals. At this point, the difference Fourier map was calculated, which revealed a potential missing atom. The coordinates of this peak were incorporated into the model as O8. This addition, together with the refinement of the coordinates and individual U_{iso} of all atoms, performed in order to perhaps detect erroneously positioned atoms (one of the eight oxygen atoms is obviously false), substantially improves the fit, lowering R_{wp} from ~30 to ~20 %. The analysis of individual U_{iso} (*Table 7.20*) shows that one of them is extremely high: $U_{iso} \cong 0.6$ Å^2 for O7. This atom has a short distance to V1 (0.78 Å) suggesting that its location

is wrong, and it was deleted at this point. The analysis of the geometry of the *tma* molecule indicated that the C2 atom (C8b in *Table 6.40*) is incorrect because it is completely displaced from the expected tetrahedron, which the four C atoms should form around the nitrogen. Therefore, C2 was deleted as well, which practically did not change the figures of merit. The missing carbon atom was found on the subsequent difference Fourier map as the strongest peak and was included into the model as the new C2. Another difference Fourier map revealed that C3 can be replaced with peak No. 8,[1] the latter, combined with C1, C2, and C4, makes a better tetrahedron around the nitrogen atom in the *tma* ion. These changes, followed by the refinement, and the subsequent release of additional profile parameters resulted in $R_{wp} \cong$ 17 % (*Figure 7.26*, data files on the CD: **Ch7Ex06b.exp** and **Ch7Ex06b.cif**).

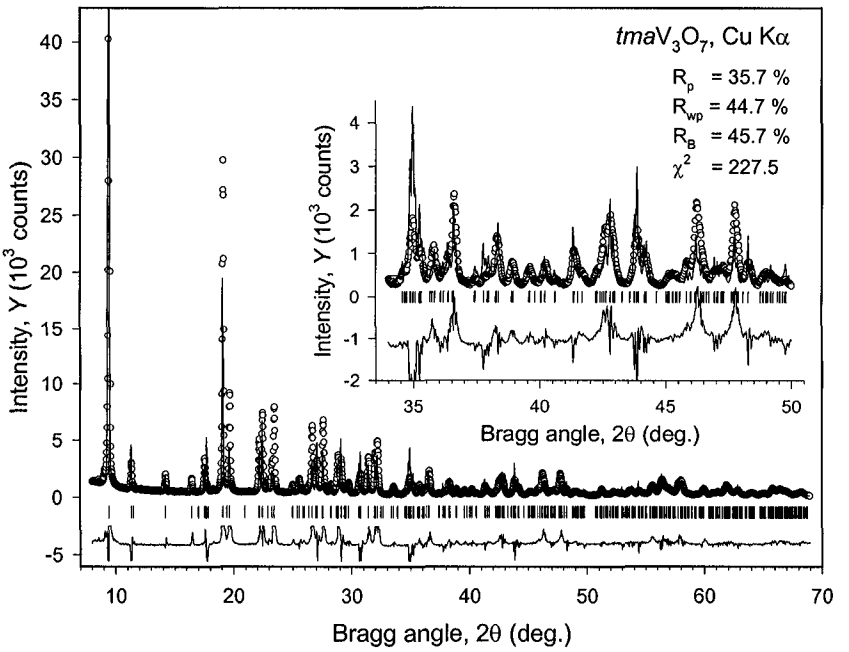


Figure 7.25. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of *tma*V_3O_7 after the initial Rietveld least squares with only the scale factor and shifted-Chebyshev polynomial background refined. The difference (Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc}) is shown using the same scale as both the observed and calculated data but the plot is truncated to fit within the range [-1500, 1500] for clarity. The ordinate is reduced to ~1/3 of the maximum intensity to better illustrate low intensity Bragg peaks. The inset clarifies the range between 34 and 50° 2θ.

[1] Other Fourier peaks either were too close to the already present atoms or made no chemical sense at all; all were treated as false peaks both caused by the limited resolution of the pattern and by the sizeable truncation of the Fourier summation ($2\theta_{max} = 69°$).

Table 7.19. The progress of Rietveld refinement of the crystal structure of *tma*V_3O_7 from x-ray powder diffraction data.

Refined parameters	R_p	R_{wp}	R_B	χ^2
Initial (CD: **Ch7Ex06_CuKa.raw**, **Ch7Ex06a.exp**, and **Ch7Ex06a.cif**)	60.7	68.6	99.4	535
Scale, shifted-Chebyshev polynomial background (*Figure 7.25*)	35.7	44.7	45.7	228
Plus grain broadening (*X*) and preferred orientation, PO, with texture axis [100]	33.0	41.7	41.6	198
Plus unit cell dimensions and asymmetry, α	22.9	30.2	35.0	104
Added O8; coordinates and U_{indiv} included, *Table 7.20*	15.2	19.7	20.3	45.1
Deleted O7 and C2	15.5	20.2	19.1	47.2
Added C2 and replaced C3 from a difference Fourier map (*Figure 7.26*) (CD: **Ch7Ex06b.exp** and **Ch7Ex06b.cif**)	13.3	17.7	15.6	36.5
Strain broadening (*Y*), asymmetry (α), and sample shift	13.2	17.1	13.9	33.4
Scale, background, and unit cell dimensions: first with porosity (absorption) a_1 and a_2; and then with PO [100], *X*, sample shift and overall U_{iso}	11.8	15.2	13.4	26.4
Excluded 8 to 12° 2θ; PO [010], then *Y*, α, X_a, Y_a	10.0	13.4	16.8	16.1
Plus coordinates of V and O	8.6	11.6	15.4	12.1
Plus coordinates of N and C	6.1	8.2	13.2	6.12
Plus PO axes ratio, individual U_{iso}(V), overall U_{iso}(O) and U_{iso} (N, C) (*Figure 7.27*) (CD: **Ch7Ex06c.exp** and **Ch7Ex06c.cif**)	4.7	6.3	11.9	3.59
Plus soft restraints on C–N distances and C–N–C angles (*Table 7.21*) (CD: **Ch7Ex06d.exp** and **Ch7Ex06d.cif**)	4.9	6.6	12.6	4.01

Table 7.20. Results of Rietveld refinement after adding O8 and refining coordinates and individual isotropic displacement parameters of all atoms in the model of the crystal structure of *tma*V_3O_7. R_{wp} = 19.7 %. The values highlighted in bold indicate problems in the model.

Atom	Site	*x*	*y*	*z*	U_{iso} [a]	Bond distances, Å			
						V1[b]	V2[b]	V3[b]	N1[b]
V1	4(e)	0.2954	0.1840	0.5117	0.039				
V2	4(e)	0.2278	0.6740	0.5781	0.017				
V3	4(e)	0.2837	-0.1077	0.2538	0.041				
O1	4(e)	0.2792	0.171	0.279	-0.038	1.98		1.84, 1.88	
O2	4(e)	0.2358	0.480	0.493	0.007	2.23	1.47	2.18	
O3	4(e)	0.3987	0.229	0.556	0.043	1.96			
O4	4(e)	0.3664	-0.203	0.254	0.078			1.65	
O5	4(e)	0.2686	-0.095	0.483	0.010	1.91	1.88	1.96	
O6	4(e)	0.2585	0.153	0.733	0.049	2.01	1.61		
O7	4(e)	0.2540	0.203	0.524	**0.600**	**0.78**			
O8	4(e)	0.3542	0.216	0.931	0.040		1.54		
N1	4(e)	0.5150	0.243	0.280	-0.011				
C1	4(e)	0.5554	0.305	0.407	-0.060				1.36
C2	4(e)	0.5643	0.286	0.128	-0.068				**1.61**
C3	4(e)	0.4928	0.415	0.217	0.015				1.31
C4	4(e)	0.5034	0.064	0.234	-0.057				1.25

[a] Individual isotropic displacement parameters vary considerably because the model is incompletely refined. The value, which is an order of magnitude larger than all others, indicates incorrectly positioned atom.

[b] This column lists the distances to the indicated atom in Å.

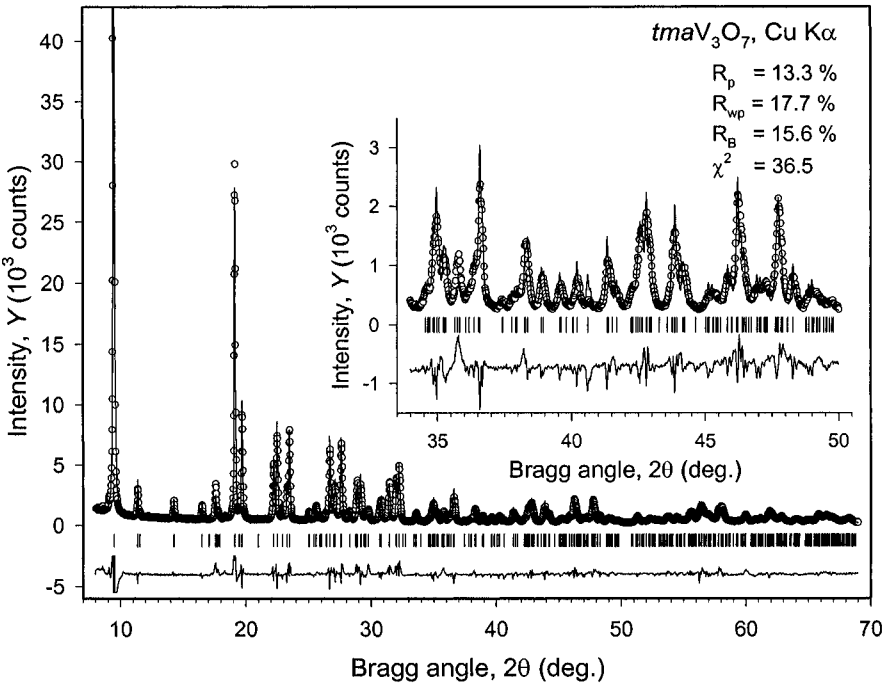


Figure 7.26. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of *tma*V_3O_7 after all non-hydrogen atoms are in place. The difference (Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc}) is shown using the same scale as both the observed and calculated data but the plot is truncated to fit within the range [-1500, 1500] for clarity. The ordinate is reduced to ~1/3 of the maximum intensity to better illustrate low intensity Bragg peaks. The inset clarifies the range between 34 and 50° 2θ.

Rietveld minimization continued by including porosity effects, which were refined with the majority of other parameters fixed and then released. The fit improves and R_{wp} is reduced to ~15 %. To this point, the refinement of the grain size and strain broadening effects and their anisotropy, as well as the coordinates of atoms in the organic molecule could not be easily conducted due to noticeable correlations: the resulting shifts of free least squares parameters were forcing the solution out of a global minimum.

One of the reasons for the instability of the least squares, is the presence of an extremely intense low Bragg angle peak ($2\theta \cong 9.5°$), which is strongly affected by various systematic errors, in addition to being much larger than all other reflections. The high intensity translates into the largest contribution of this peak into the least squares (see Eq. 7.2) and, therefore, strongly influences the refinement results. Hence, from this moment and through the end of the refinement, the low Bragg angle range below 12° 2θ was excluded from the least squares minimization. This decision noticeably stabilizes the

least squares, although it has little influence on all figures of merit, and the latter is actually quite unexpected.[1]

Next, a second preferred orientation axis, [010], was included into the minimization, which was based both on the model of the crystal structure (the orientation of chains in the vanadate layers) and on the observed shapes of the crystallites (the plates are elongated in one direction). The refinement was completed by subsequently releasing the coordinates of atoms forming an inorganic framework (the V and O atoms) and then organic molecule (the N and C atoms), after which the individual U_{iso} for the metal atoms (V1-V3) and overall U_{iso} for the oxygen atoms and the organic molecule (two different overall parameters) together with all profile parameters except for *U*, *V*, *W* and *P*. The resulting fit is quite good as shown in *Figure 7.27*.

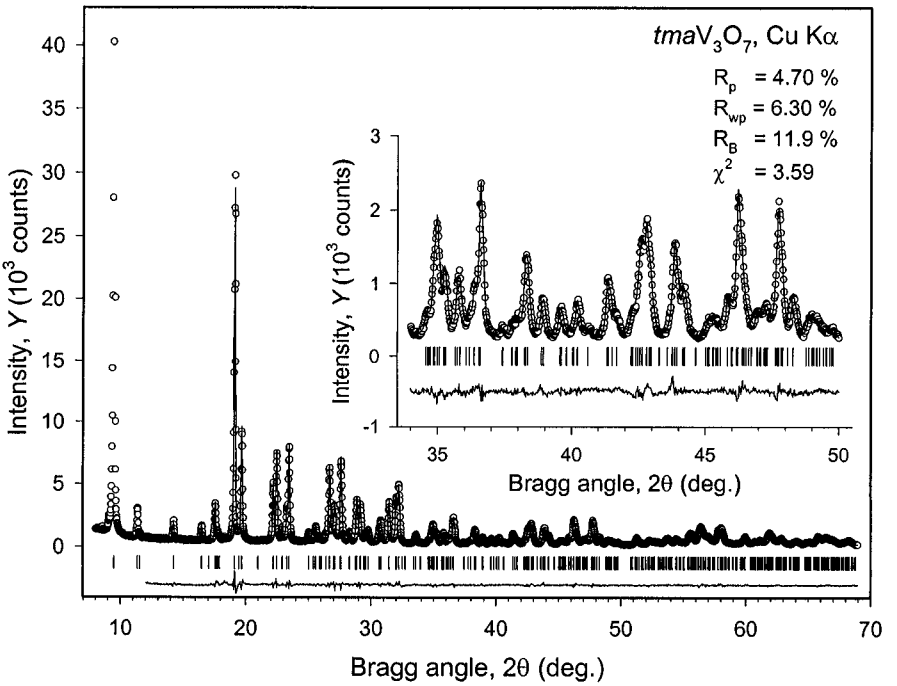


Figure 7.27. The final Rietveld plot of *tma*V_3O_7 data. Low Bragg angle range ($2\theta < 12°$) was excluded from the refinement because it contains the strongest peak (an order of magnitude stronger than all others), which is most affected by experimental errors and may strongly influence the refinement.

[1] Often, when a single and tremendously intense peak is present in the data, all residuals may become quite low when the fit of the strongest peak is excellent. Even though the remaining peaks may not be fitted well, their intensities have little effect on all figures of merit because the denominators in Eqs. 6.18 to 6.21 become defined by a few extremely large numbers.

Despite the reasonable fit between the observed and calculated intensities, the analysis of the interatomic distances and bond angles reveals that the geometry of the tetramethylammonium ion, though acceptable considering data quality, quantity,[1] and complexity, is slightly out of the expected range. The geometry was improved by using the so-called soft restraints,[2] which are realized in GSAS. The limits on the C–N bond lengths were set to 1.500 ± 0.015 Å and the values of C–N–C angles were restrained to 109.5 ± 1.5°. The weights for bonds and angles were manually selected as 4 and 6, respectively, after testing their influence on the least squares. Application of soft restraints slightly increases all residuals, as seen from a comparison of the two last rows in *Table 7.19* but it substantially improves the geometry of the organic molecule (*Table 7.21*). Before the soft-restrained refinement, the C–N bond lengths were in the 1.48 to 1.67 Å range with the average bond length 1.56 Å. The C–N–C angles varied from 100 to 127°, and the spread from the ideal tetrahedral angle was quite large. After the refinement with the soft restraints, the C–N bond lengths fall within the 1.50 to 1.55 Å range and bond angles are between 106 and 114°, both of which are acceptable. It is worth noting that instead of soft restraints, a rigid-body refinement of the *tma* molecule, whose geometry is well known, could also be employed (the rigid body approach is yet another method of geometrical restrictions, which is realized in GSAS).

The final Rietveld refinement yields a reasonable structural model (*Figure 7.28*), which fits nicely as a new member in the series of V_3O_7-based structures with vanadium oxide layers differing only by the orientations of the square pyramids and tetrahedra.[3] A specific feature of this refinement is a strong preferred orientation along two axes, [100] and [010], with parameters $\tau_{100} = 0.76$ and $\tau_{010} = 1.38$ in a 2 to 1 ratio. The preferred orientation multipliers range from 0.58 to 2.08, which results in a total magnitude of about 4, similar to the case described in the previous section.

[1] Due to the presence of the large number of lightly scattering atoms, intensity diffracted by this powder specimen becomes extremely low above $2\theta = 70°$ ($\sin\theta/\lambda < 0.37$ Å^{-1}). In a typical powder diffraction experiment, it is necessary to collect the data to $\sin\theta/\lambda \cong 0.5$ Å^{-1}, preferably to even higher values.

[2] Soft restraints set limits on the bond distances and/or angles, which are known and are desired to reach or keep during the least squares minimization. Soft restraints are not exact (see the footnote on page 654), and the specified geometry may never be achieved when distances and angles are set to non-realistic values. The influence of soft restraints, when compared to a straightforward profile fitting, is regulated by varying the so-called weight, which can be increased to force the geometry closer to the desired values. The latter generally considerably worsens the fit if actual bond angles and distances contradict diffraction data.

[3] P.Y. Zavalij, F. Zhang, and M.S. Whittingham, Crystal structure of layered *bis*(ethylenediamine)nickel hexavanadate as a new representative of the V_6O_{14} series. Acta Cryst. **B55**, 953 (1999).

Table 7.21. Parameters of atoms and interatomic distances (in Å) in the model of *tma*V_3O_7, fully refined using the Rietveld technique in the GSAS environment. The unit cell parameters are a = 18.4878(5), b = 6.5552(2), c = 8.4318(2) Å, β = 91.131(2)°, V = 1021.66(7) Å^3, the space group is $P2_1/n$. All crystallographic data are also found on the CD in the files **Ch7Ex06d.exp** and **Ch7Ex06d.cif**.

Atom	x	y	z	U_{iso}	Bond distances, Å			
					V1	V2	V3	N1
V1	0.2956(2)	0.1816(8)	0.5149(5)	0.027(2)				
V2	0.2228(2)	0.6793(8)	0.5781(4)	0.018(2)				
V3	0.2864(2)	-0.1121(6)	0.2487(5)	0.028(2)				
O1	0.2843(6)	0.178(2)	0.288(2)	0.014(1)	1.93(1)		1.93(1), 1.92(1)	
O2	0.2465(5)	0.436(2)	0.476(2)	0.014(1)	1.92(2)	1.87(1)	2.00(1)	
O3	0.3814(5)	0.213(2)	0.560(1)	0.014(1)	1.636(8)			
O4	0.3677(4)	-0.203(2)	0.234(1)	0.014(1)			1.624(9)	
O5	0.2702(5)	-0.106(2)	0.475(2)	0.014(1)	1.97(1)	1.88(1)	1.94(1)	
O6	0.2555(5)	0.164(2)	0.731(2)	0.014(1)	1.99(1)	1.65(1)		
O7	0.3627(6)	0.202(2)	0.928(1)	0.014(1)		1.59(1)		
N1	0.5287(4)	0.267(1)	0.254(1)	0.034(4)				
C1	0.5664(6)	0.287(2)	0.412(1)	0.034(4)				1.498(7)
C2	0.5849(6)	0.280(2)	0.125(2)	0.034(4)				1.519(7)
C3	0.4676(5)	0.427(2)	0.236(2)	0.034(4)				1.547(7)
C4	0.4927(6)	0.063(2)	0.245(2)	0.034(4)				1.495(7)

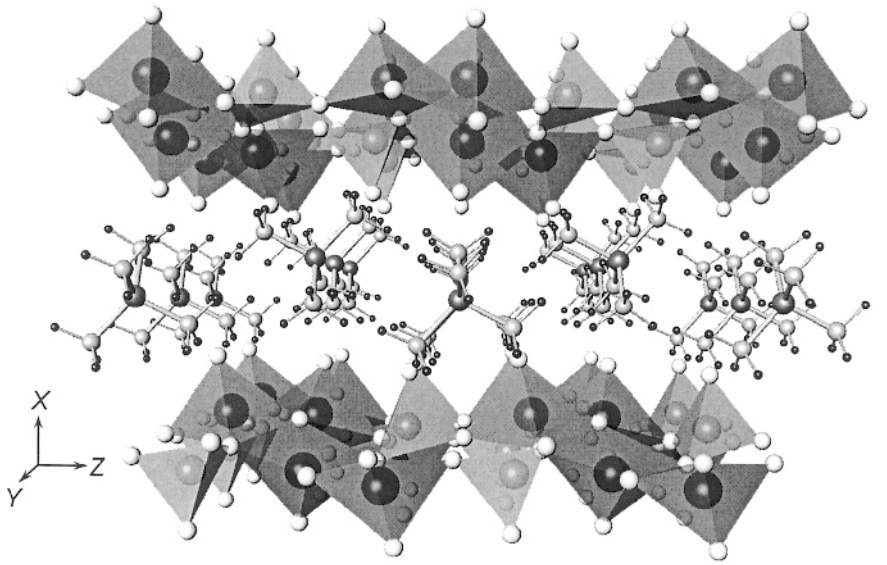


Figure 7.28. The fully refined model of the crystal structure of *tma*V_3O_7 showing the layered vanadium oxide framework and the intercalated *tma* ions. The V1 and V3 atoms (large dark spheres) are inside the dark grey [VO_5] square pyramids; the V2 atoms (large grey spheres) are inside the light grey [VO_4] tetrahedra. The N atoms are dark spheres, the C atoms are light grey spheres, and the H atoms are small black spheres. The H atoms positions were computed assuming the sp^3 hybridization of carbon and *trans*-configurations of methyl groups.

7.9 Rietveld refinement and completion of the $ma_2Mo_7O_{22}$ structure[1]

In this section, we will illustrate the Rietveld refinement of a complex molybdenum oxide-based layered structure containing 15 independent Mo and O atoms with an intercalated organic methyl ammonium ion (one N, one C and 6 H atoms) using conventional x-ray powder diffraction data. The model of the Mo_7O_{22} framework was obtained from the assumption that it is nearly identical to that found in the $Tl_2Mo_7O_{22}$ compound, as identified by a search of the ICSD database (section 6.15). Structure determination should be completed by locating the methyl ammonium ($CH_3NH_3^+$) ion from a difference Fourier map and refining all relevant parameters. When located in the unit cell, the N atom is clearly distinguished from carbon by much shorter distances the former makes with oxygen, because of N–H···O hydrogen bonding.

The experimental powder diffraction pattern was collected from 7 to 100° 2θ with a 0.02° step and a counting time varying from 30 sec/step at low Bragg angles to 60 sec/step at high angles, scaled after the data collection to a constant 30 sec/step counting time. The following parameters were used at the beginning of this refinement:

- The initial model of the structure (the molybdenum oxide layer) was taken from *Table 6.42*.
- The default profile parameters were taken from the instrumental parameter file **Scintag.prm** as described in section 7.6.
- The sample shift parameter $S_s = 4.49$ for the sample displacement s = -0.098 mm, was obtained together with the unit cell dimensions during lattice parameters refinement.
- The space group is C2/c and the unit cell dimensions are $a = 23.065$, $b = 5.5134$, $c = 19.561$ Å, $\beta = 122.93°$ as determined earlier.
- The overall isotropic atomic displacement parameter was assumed at $U_{iso} = 0.015$ Å^2.

The starting model with all necessary parameters is found on the CD in the files **Ch7Ex07a.exp** and **Ch7Ex07a.cif**, and the experimental pattern is in the file **Ch7Ex07_CuKa.raw**. Initially, only the phase scale factor and 6 coefficients of the shifted-Chebyshev polynomial to approximate the background were refined, resulting in relatively high residuals, which are listed in *Table 7.22*. The poor fit is mainly due to a mismatch between the observed and calculated intensities as can be seen in *Figure 7.29*.

[1] P.Y. Zavalij and M.S. Whittingham, The crystal structure of layered methylammonium molybdate $(CH_3NH_3)_2Mo_7O_{22}$ from X-ray powder data, Acta Cryst., **C53**, 1374 (1997)

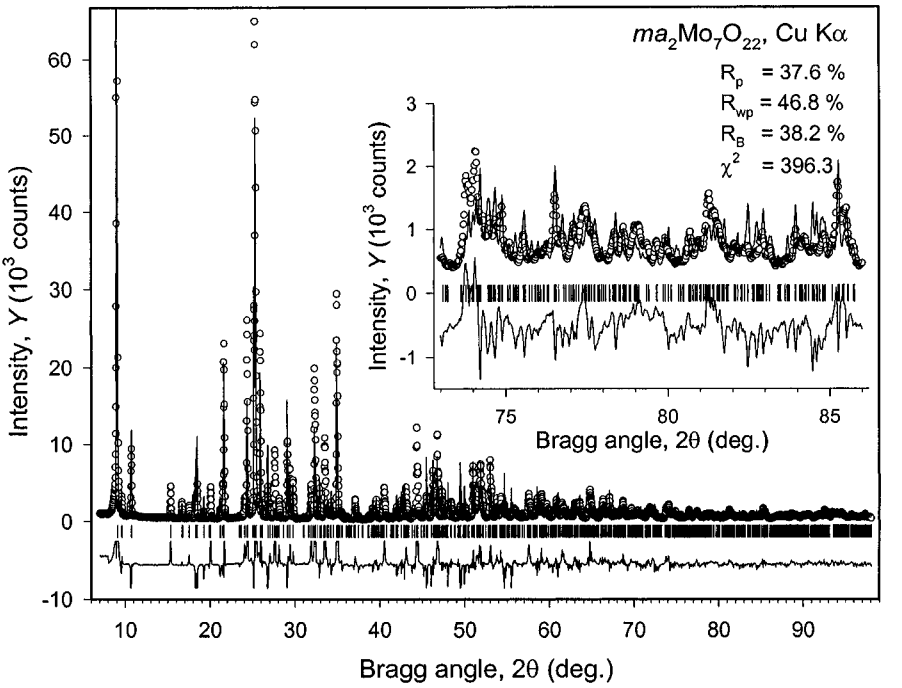


Figure 7.29. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $ma_2Mo_7O_{22}$ after the initial Rietveld least squares minimization with only the scale factor and the background refined. The difference (Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc}) is shown using the same scale as both the observed and calculated data but the plot is truncated to fit within the range [-3000, 3000] for clarity. The ordinate is reduced to ~1/4 of the maximum intensity to better illustrate low intensity Bragg peaks. The inset clarifies the range between 73 and 86° 2θ.

Table 7.22. The progress of Rietveld refinement of the crystal structure of $ma_2Mo_7O_{22}$ from x-ray powder diffraction data.

Refined parameters	R_p	R_{wp}	R_B	χ^2
Initial model from $Tl_2Mo_7O_{22}$ (Mo and O only) (CD: **Ch7Ex07a.exp** and **Ch7Ex07a.cif**)	93.3	93.5	98.8	1579
Scale and background (*Figure 7.29*)	37.6	46.8	38.2	396
Plus unit cell, *X*, and preferred orientation (PO) along [100]	34.2	43.1	36.9	335
Plus coordinates, U_{iso} and PO along [010]	19.4	25.6	15.2	120
Scale, background, PO, *X*, asymmetry (α), and porosity *a*1, *a*2	13.7	18.8	12.0	64.3
Scale, background, PO, *X*, α, coordinates, U_{iso} (*Figure 7.30*); (CD: **Ch7Ex07b.exp** and **Ch7Ex07b.cif**)	12.9	17.9	10.6	58.5
Same as above with the region 2θ < 15° excluded	10.5	14.5	11.8	31.8
Plus PO ratio and X_a	7.2	9.4	7.1	13.5
X, *Y*, α, sample shift, N1 and C1 located and added	5.4	7.4	5.9	8.3
All profile parameters *X*, *Y*, α, sample shift, X_a, Y_a, with fixed PO ratio (*Figure 7.31* and *Table 7.23*); (CD: **Ch7Ex07c.exp** and **Ch7Ex07c.cif**)	5.3	7.2	5.9	7.8

It is highly likely that the intensity mismatches are caused by a relatively crude initial structural model since the atomic coordinates were taken directly from the Tl-based structure, even without correcting for the lattice distortion along **a** (compare the unit cell dimensions of both materials in *Table 6.41*). Furthermore, a considerable preferred orientation could be expected because of yet another distinctly layered structure (see *Figure 6.30*). Therefore, the subsequent refinement included unit cell dimensions, grain size contribution to peak broadening (X) and preferred orientation (PO) parallel to the [100] direction, along which the Mo_7O_{22} layers are stacked. Some improvement of the fit has been observed as a result. Unlike in the two examples considered in sections 7.7 and 7.8, the preferred orientation is not as strong here, possibly due to a less severe cleaving of the particles during grinding.

A noticeable improvement, especially in the Bragg residual, occurs when the coordinates of all atoms have been refined together with the isotropic displacement parameters: individual for the Mo atoms and one parameter, common for all oxygen atoms. A second preferred orientation parameter along the [010] axis was added as well, but its effect on the improvement of the fit was quite small. A slightly negative overall isotropic displacement parameter, U_{iso} = -0.002(4) Å^2, for the O atoms likely indicates a contribution from the specimen porosity, which to a certain extent, also incorporates other unaccounted systematic errors, e.g. absorption and beam size exceeding the sample dimensions at low Bragg angles due to an improper selection of the divergence slit aperture. Therefore, the porosity effect was optimized in a subsequent refinement using two parameters (a_1 and a_2) in the Suortti approximation. The latter refinement was carried out after isotropic atomic displacement parameters were set to 0.015 Å^2 for all molybdenum and 0.020 Å^2 for all oxygen atoms, and all atomic parameters were kept fixed. The two porosity coefficients were refined to $a_1 = 0.31$ and $a_2 = 0.16$ starting from the initial 0.40 and 0.40, respectively, after which they were kept fixed through the end of the Rietveld refinement. Next, the individual atomic parameters were released and re-refined. This substantially improves the fit as shown in *Figure 7.30*.

Regardless of the considerable improvement, some mismatches between the observed and computed intensities remain. At this point, we are still missing one nitrogen and one carbon from the methyl ammonium ion, not counting six hydrogen atoms, which will be nearly impossible to locate from x-ray powder data (see section 7.7). Pinpointing the locations of carbon and nitrogen in the unit cell and their inclusion into the model should indeed improve the fit. However, another potentially deleterious effect on the overall fit is the presence of a large intensity peak at low Bragg angle ($2\theta \cong 9°$), in front of which there is a much smaller and broader impurity peak.

Hence, similar to the previous example, the range below 2θ = 15° was excluded from further refinement. It is certainly worthwhile to note that this exclusion eliminates ~400 points (~9 %) from the profile, which contains more than 4,600 data points total, but it leaves out only 3 (~0.3 %) of about 1000 possible Bragg reflections. As far as the structural model is of concern, such truncation of the experimental data is indeed valid, and is often employed in structure determination from powder diffraction. With this modification, followed by several least squares minimization steps, profile residuals decrease but R_B is slightly increased.

The subsequent Rietveld refinement of the preferred orientation ratio and anisotropic peak broadening, further improves the fit resulting in R_{wp} = 9.4 %. At this point, a difference Fourier map was computed and it produces two peaks, which are notably stronger than the others. Their geometry is a nearly ideal match with the two missing atoms – N and C – of the methyl ammonium ion. After including them into the model and completing the Rietveld refinement, the final fit (*Figure 7.31*) is quite satisfactory.

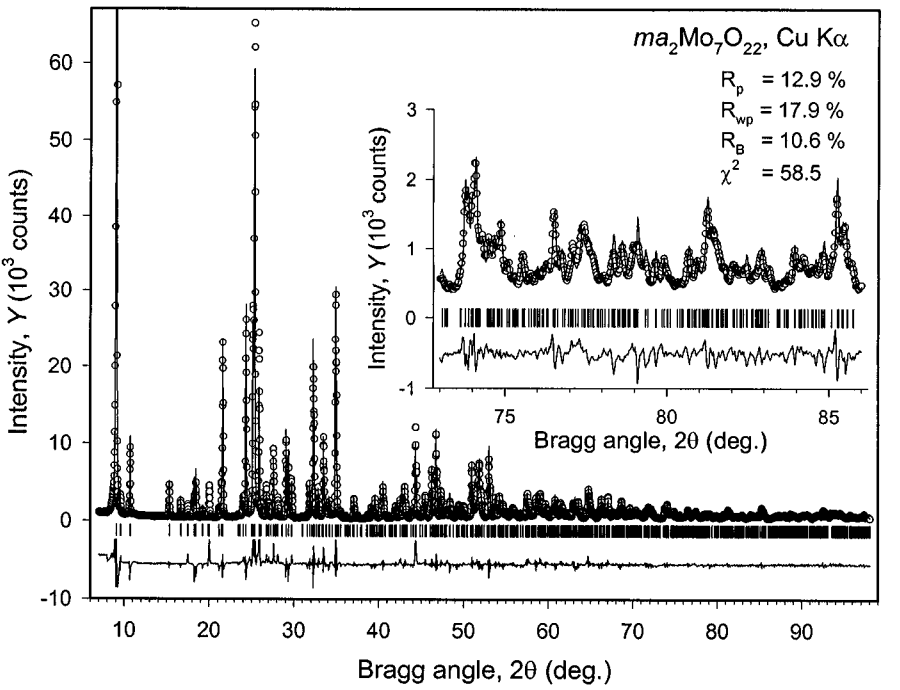


Figure 7.30. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $ma_2Mo_7O_{22}$ after preferred orientation, individual atomic parameters of the Mo and O atoms were refined together with some profile parameters and correction for porosity effects. The difference (Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc}) is shown using the same scale as both the observed and calculated data but the plot is truncated to fit within the range [-3000, 3000] for clarity. The inset clarifies the range between 73 and 86° 2θ.

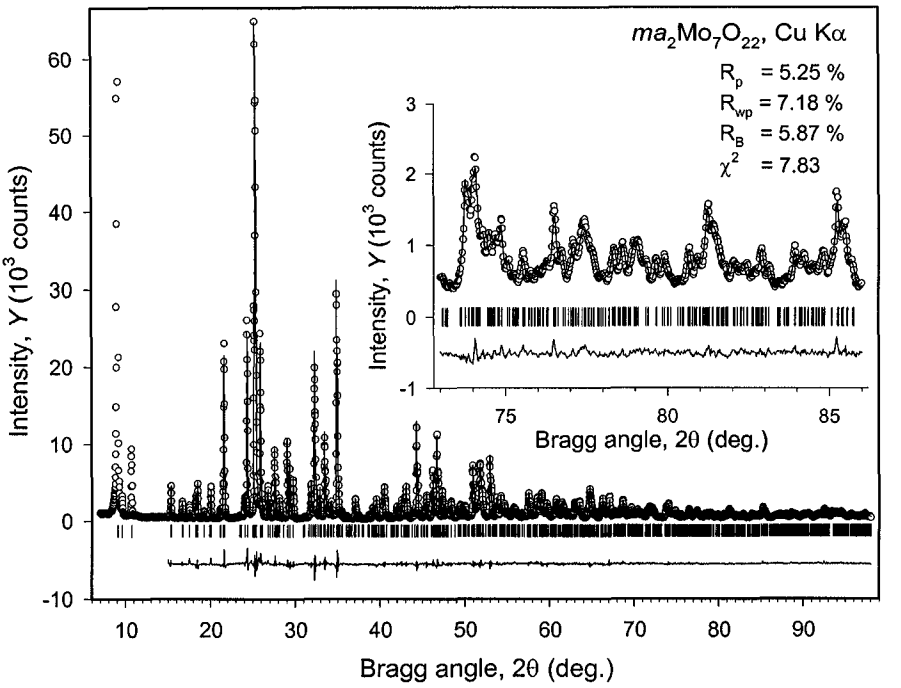


Figure 7.31. The final Rietveld plot of $ma_2Mo_7O_{22}$ data. Low Bragg angle range below 2θ = 15° was excluded from the final refinement because it contains an extremely strong peak (nearly an order of magnitude stronger that all other peaks), which is susceptible to all kinds of experimental errors and may strongly influence the least squares minimization.

Attempts to adjust other parameters, which can be potentially refined, do not lead to a statistically significant improvement of the fit, or they have a tendency to move the solution away from a global minimum, and/or the free variables out of an acceptable range. Certain combinations of simultaneously refined variables cause the least squares to diverge, despite an already good fit. For example, adding preferred orientation in a spherical harmonics approximation gives a minuscule additional correction of 1.006 and, therefore, does not improve the fit. When individual isotropic displacement parameters were refined for light atoms (O, C, and N), they were chaotic: from unexpectedly high to unphysical negative values, without lowering the residuals. When anisotropic displacement parameters of the heavy Mo atoms were refined, they too, were unphysical, resulting in the so-called open ellipsoids, or represented abnormally strong anisotropy – tremendously elongated or flattened ellipsoids. Thus, the fit shown in *Figure 7.31* may be considered final and the resulting model of the crystal structure is found in *Table 7.23* and on the CD in the files **Ch7Ex07c.exp** and **Ch7Ex07c.cif**.

Table 7.23. Final atomic parameters and interatomic distances (in Å) of $ma_2Mo_7O_{22}$ obtained from Rietveld refinement using GSAS. The refined unit cell parameters are: a = 23.0707(3), b = 5.51522(7), c = 19.5669(2) Å, β = 122.930(1)°, V = 2089.68(5) Å^3, space group C2/c. All crystallographic data can be also found on the CD in the files **Ch7Ex07c.exp** and **Ch7Ex07c.cif.**

Atom	x	y	z	U_{iso}	Bond distances, Å			
					Mo1	Mo2	Mo3	Mo4
Mo1	1/2	0.1231(7)	1/4	0.015(1)				
Mo2	0.4211(1)	0.0676(5)	0.4783(2)	0.015(1)				
Mo3	0.3912(1)	0.4777(6)	0.0970(1)	0.019(1)				
Mo4	0.0480(1)	0.1020(5)	0.1380(2)	0.014(1)				
O1	0.3381(7)	0.094(3)	0.4034(9)	0.014(1)		1.67(1)		
O2	0.1309(8)	0.157(3)	0.216(1)	0.014(1)				1.71(2)
O3	0.0663(7)	0.146(3)	0.454(1)	0.014(1)		1.98(2)	1.97(2)	2.26(1)
O4	0.4146(9)	0.161(3)	0.037(1)	0.014(1)		1.76(2)	2.33(2)	
O5	0.4087(7)	0.219(3)	0.168(1)	0.014(1)	$1.90(1)_2$		1.88(2)	
O6	0.0358(7)	0.382(3)	0.066(1)	0.014(1)		1.98(2), 1.76(2)		2.00(2)
O7	0.0224(6)	0.439(3)	0.201(1)	0.014(1)	$1.66(2)_2$			2.48(2)
O8	0.4961(7)	0.432(3)	0.319(1)	0.014(1)	$2.20(2)_2$		2.21(1)	1.89(2)
O9	0.4472(8)	0.379(3)	0.422(1)	0.014(1)		2.29(2)		1.74(2)
O10	0.1191(7)	0.198(3)	0.360(1)	0.014(1)			1.56(2)	
O11	0.3124(6)	0.425(3)	0.010(1)	0.014(1)			1.71(1)	
N1[a]	0.2855(8)	0.991(4)	0.153(1)	0.014(4)				
C1[b]	0.265(1)	0.143(4)	0.196(2)	0.014(4)				

[a] Hydrogen bond distances for N1 are: 2.97(3) Å to O5, 2.88(3) Å to O2, 2.85(3) Å to O10, and 2.76(2) Å to O11.

[b] C1 distances: 1.46(3) Å to N1, 3.31(4) Å to O2, 3.25(3) Å to O1, and 3.39(3) Å to O2.

The correctness of the crystal structure is doubtless because the Mo_7O_{22} layer is isotypical to both Tl- and Cs-based compounds (see *Table 6.41*). The nearly identical layer also exists in the intercalate, containing a larger organic molecule: $RMo_7O_{22}{\cdot}H_2O$, where R = 4,4'-bipyridinium $(H\text{-}NC_5H_4\text{-}C_5H_4N\text{-}H)^{2+}$.[1] The orientation of the methyl ammonium molecule (in other words, the recognition of the nitrogen and carbon atoms) is also convincing because the N atom is much closer to the O atoms than the C atom, which is due to the formation of strong N–H···O hydrogen bonds. The C–H···O interactions are much weaker, as follows from the comparison of bond lengths: 2.8 to 2.9 Å for N···O and 3.3 Å or more for the C···O distances. The C–N bond length, 1.46(3) Å, is within the expected range (compare to single crystal data for maV_3O_7, where the C–N bond length is 1.487(8) Å). Stacking of the layers with the intercalated methyl ammonium ions forming

[1] P.J. Zapf, R.C. Haushalter, and J. Zubieta. Crystal engineering of inorganic/organic composite solids: the structure-directing role of aromatic ammonium cations in the synthesis of the "step"-layered molybdenum oxide phase $[4,4'\text{-}H_2bpy][Mo_7O_{22}]{\cdot}H_2O$, Chem. Commun., 321 (1997)

N–H···O hydrogen bonds, which hold the layers together, is illustrated in *Figure 7.32*.

The peculiarity of this refinement is the relatively large unit cell with 17 non-hydrogen atoms in the asymmetric unit, resulting in 1035 possible independent Bragg reflections and a total of 75 free least squares variables, respectively. This example also illustrates that the location and the quality of the determination of light C and N atoms, forming a small organic molecule encapsulated between massive molybdenum oxide layers, is quite reliable, provided sufficient quality powder diffraction data are available. The preferred orientation in this case is less severe when compared to the two previous examples: $\tau_{100} = 0.690(3)$ and $\tau_{010} = 1.091(4)$ with an approximate 1:2 ratio, which corresponds to the correction range between 0.7 to 1.8, or to the preferred orientation magnitude of about 2.6. The latter value is still significant and it may be partially responsible for the unphysical anisotropic displacement parameters of the Mo atoms.

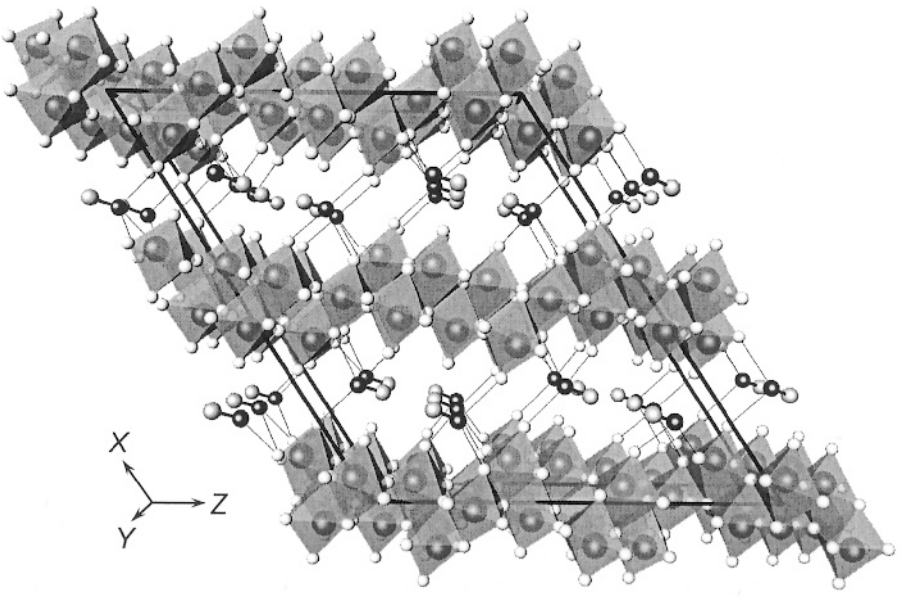


Figure 7.32. The crystal structure of $ma_2Mo_7O_{22}$ shown along the *Y*-axis in perspective view. The Mo atoms are depicted as large dark spheres located inside translucent octahedra formed by oxygen atoms (small light spheres). The N atoms are shown as small black spheres and the C atoms as small grey spheres. The N–[H]···O hydrogen bonds are shown using thin lines without hydrogen atoms. Unlike in the crystal structure of the $tmaV_3O_7$ (see section 7.8), the coordinates of hydrogen atoms cannot be easily computed because methylammonium ion can rotate around the C–N bond, although this rotation is restrained by the formation of N–H···O hydrogen bonds. Hydrogen atoms could not be located from a differential Fourier map because of the presence of the large amount of strongly scattering atoms (Mo) in the material.

7.10 Rietveld refinement of $Mn_7(OH)_3(VO_4)_4$[1]

Using this example and employing conventional x-ray powder data, we will illustrate Rietveld refinement of a medium complexity inorganic structure with 10 independent atoms occupying various sites in an acentric hexagonal space group symmetry. Several sites are occupied partially and therefore, we will learn how to perform a sensible refinement of the chemical composition. The refinement begins from the isostructural and fully ordered zinc-vanadate-sulfate crystal structure, as was established in the previous chapter (section 6.16). During the least squares minimization, partially vacant sites were identified and their populations were refined in the first approximation independently, and then with reasonable restrictions on chemical composition, until the complete convergence was achieved. The correctness of the crystal structure determination from powder data was later confirmed by single crystal diffraction work. This example also shows how some of the constraints, realized in GSAS, can be invoked.

The idealized chemical composition of the title compound when all sites are fully occupied is $Mn_7(OH)_3(VO_4)_4$. The experimental data were collected with a 0.01° step. In the range from 12 to 70° 2θ the counting time was 15 sec/step, and it was increased to 30 sec/step from 70 to 132° 2θ. In this way, it was possible to achieve better counting statistics at high Bragg angles, where the scattered intensity is significantly reduced, while simultaneously avoiding a potential for errors associated with, for example, continuously varying or different divergence slit apertures. The high Bragg angle range was scaled to a fixed counting time of 15 sec/step for all computations. The following parameters were used at the beginning of this refinement:

- The initial structural model was taken from $Zn_7(OH)_3(SO_4)(VO_4)_3$, which crystallizes in the same ($P6_3mc$) space group with a = 12.813 and c = 5.1425 Å, by replacing Zn with Mn and S with V, as was assumed in the previous chapter (*Table 6.44*).
- The default profile parameters were taken from the instrumental parameter data file **Scintag.prm**, as described above in section 7.6.
- The sample shift parameter S_s = 5.13 for the sample displacement s = -0.112 mm, which was obtained together with the unit cell dimensions at an earlier stage of the structure solution.
- The space group is $P6_3mc$ and the unit cell dimensions are a = 13.229 and c = 5.2553 Å, also determined earlier.
- The overall isotropic displacement parameter U_{iso} = 0.015 Å^2.

[1] F. Zhang, P.Y. Zavalij, M.S. Whittingham. Synthesis and characterization of a pipe-structure manganese vanadium oxide by hydrothermal reaction. J. Mater. Chem., **9**, 3137 (1999).

The initial structural model with all other relevant parameters is found on the CD in the files **Ch7Ex08a.exp** and **Ch7Ex08a.cif**, and the experimental data are in the file **Ch7Ex08_CuKa.raw**. Initially, only the phase scale factor and six coefficients of a shifted-Chebyshev polynomial to approximate the background were refined, which resulted in a reasonable fit as shown in *Figure 7.33*. The residuals, shown in *Table 7.24*, were quite low, especially taking into account that the model of the crystal structure has been adopted from a different compound, where the geometry is expected to be somewhat different (e.g. the SO_4 group is smaller than the VO_4 group). Combined with a potential for a preferred orientation in the specimen,[1] this causes obvious but not severe mismatches between the observed and calculated intensities (e.g. see the inset in *Figure 7.33*).

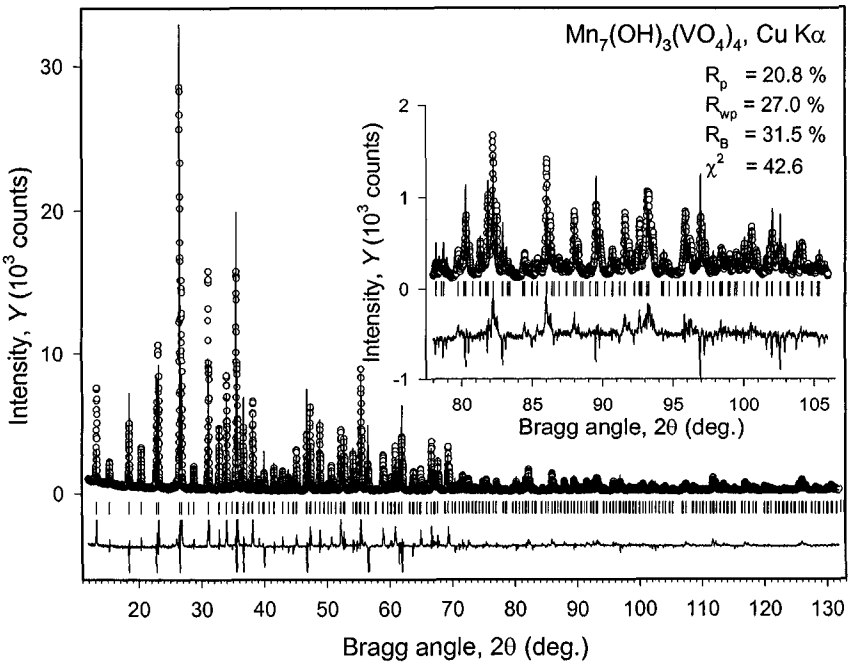


Figure 7.33. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $Mn_7(OH)_3(VO_4)_4$ after the initial Rietveld least squares minimization with only the scale factor and the background refined. The difference (Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc}) is shown using the same scale as both the observed and calculated data but the plot is truncated to fit within the range [-2000, 2000] for clarity. The inset clarifies the range between 78 and 106° 2θ.

[1] It is not expected to be significant because of the three-dimensional metal oxide framework (see *Figure 6.32*), and not a layered structure as was always the case in the three previous examples. Yet the obvious anisotropy of the crystallite shapes (see the inset in *Figure 6.31*) suggests that the possibility of a complex preferred orientation cannot be completely excluded.

Table 7.24. The progress of Rietveld refinement of $Mn_7(OH)_3(VO_4)_4$ from x-ray powder diffraction data.

Refined parameters	R_p	R_{wp}	R_B	χ^2
Initial (CD: **Ch7Ex08a.exp** and **Ch7Ex08a.cif)**	82.3	83.7	99.4	409
Phase scale and background (*Figure 7.33*)	20.8	27.0	31.5	42.6
Plus unit cell, grain size broadening (X), peak asymmetry (α) and preferred orientation (PO) along [001]	13.3	16.6	18.7	16.1
Plus coordinates and individual U_{iso} of all atoms	11.1	13.7	14.4	11.0
Overall U_{iso} (Mn and V), overall U_{iso} (O), population parameter (g) for Mn2, V2 and O6, (*Figure 7.34*). CD: **Ch7Ex08b.exp** and **Ch7Ex08b.cif**	11.0	13.8	14.3	11.1
Plus strain broadening, Y and Y_a and sample displacement	10.7	13.4	13.4	10.5
Porosity, a_1 and a_2, then coordinates of all atoms, overall U_{iso} (Mn, V) and overall U_{iso} (O); population parameters restricted as g(V2a) = g(O6) = 1 - g(V2b)	10.7	13.3	13.7	10.4
Plus W, X, Y, asymmetry, sample displacement, X_a, Y_a, spherical harmonics of 8th order (6 free variables), coordinates of all atoms	9.7	12.3	11.9	8.85
Plus 12 coefficients of the background, transmission error (*Figure 7.36*, *Table 7.25*); CD: **Ch7Ex08c.exp** and **Ch7Ex08c.cif**	9.0	11.7	10.7	7.98

The subsequent refinement included unit cell dimensions, grain size peak broadening (X), peak asymmetry (α) and preferred orientation along [001]. The latter is a typical preferred orientation axis to try first in both the hexagonal and tetragonal crystal systems. All parameters refined, result in the noticeable improvement of the fit, lowering the weighted profile residual by close to 10 % – from 27 to 16.6 %. Such a substantial change is, for the most part, caused by adjustments in three parameters: X from 0.023 to 0.044, asymmetry α from 0.025 to 0.010, and preferred orientation along the [001] axis, with the associated parameter changing from 1 to 1.25 (correction factors vary between 0.5 and 1.4, which corresponds to the preferred orientation magnitude of 2.8). The unit cell dimensions practically did not change.

Refining coordinates of all atoms except Mn2 and H1[1] and individual isotropic atomic displacement parameters results in little improvement of the

[1] The only potentially free variable in the coordinate triplet of Mn2 (z) was constrained to z = 0.8217 [this somewhat unusual value has been taken from the original paper on $Zn_7(OH)_3(SO_4)(VO_4)_3$] to maintain the fixed origin along the Z-axis. The origin of coordinates is not fixed in the space group $P6_3mc$ due to the absence of symmetry elements (planes or axes), perpendicular to Z, or centers of inversion. Thus, the z-coordinates (if none are fixed at a constant value) become severely correlated and the whole structure may be shifted by any translation along the Z-axis. A similar situation has already been discussed in the case of $CeRhGe_3$ (see section 7.4), where there are no symmetry elements fixing the origin of coordinates along the Z-axis in the space group symmetry I4mm. The coordinates of the H1 atom were constrained to be identical to those

fit, yet another 3% reduction has been achieved. All individual isotropic displacement parameters are positively defined but U_{iso} of Mn2, V2 and O6 were noticeably higher and increase continually, which points to possible vacancies in these positions.[1]

The deficiency, if any, makes sense from a structural point of view as well, because the suspected defect sites are located along the tunnels, which exist around the 6-fold and 3-fold axes, thus leaving the main framework intact. At this point, the overall U_{iso} were assigned separately to all metal and oxygen atoms and the occupancies of the three suspicious sites were refined (*Figure 7.34*).

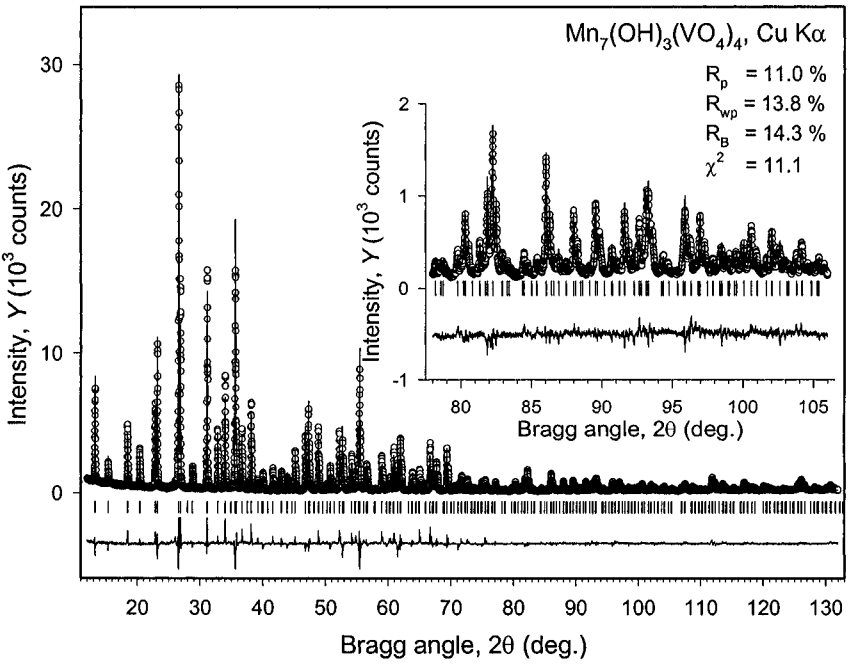


Figure 7.34. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $Mn_7(OH)_3(VO_4)_4$ after preferred orientation, individual atomic parameters and occupancies of Mn2, V2, and O6 were refined. The difference (Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc}) is truncated to fit within the range [-2000, 2000] for clarity. The inset clarifies the range between 73 and 106° 2θ.

---

determined in the original Zn-based structure because their refinement is unfeasible using the existing x-ray powder diffraction data due to the low scattering ability of a single-electron hydrogen atom (also see section 7.7).

[1] When sinθ/λ increases, both the atomic scattering functions and temperature factors decrease exponentially (see sections 2.11.4 and 2.11.3, respectively). Thus, the unreasonably high isotropic displacement parameters of selected atoms indicate that the scattering ability of the respective sites is reduced. In the title compound, the only reasonable explanation is that the suspected sites are partially occupied.

A difference Fourier map, calculated at this point, reveals an additional small electron density maximum in the tetrahedral cavity next to the partially occupied V2.[1] Thus, it is reasonable to assume that the V2 site splits into two independent partially occupied positions with the coordinates, which distribute V atoms in a random fashion in two adjacent tetrahedral positions rather than being simply vanadium-deficient. We label these two sites as V2a (corresponding to the former V2) and V2b (corresponding to the Fourier peak). Refinement of this model slightly improves the fit. Subsequently, additional profile parameters (Y, Y_a, and sample displacement) were included in the refinement, followed by a typical procedure of refining the porosity in the Suortti approximation with fixed atomic coordinates and U_{iso}, and then fixing the porosity parameters for the remainder of the refinement.

Obviously, the prohibitively short distance between V2a and V2b mandates that the following relationship holds:

$$g_{V2a} + g_{V2b} = 1, \text{ in general, } g_{V2a} + g_{V2b} \leq 1 \tag{7.11}$$

Furthermore, the analysis of the values of the occupation factors refined for V2a, V2b, and O6 point to the following relationship:

$$g_{V2a} = g_{O6} \tag{7.12}$$

These two relationships can be easily programmed in GSAS and in the majority of Rietveld software codes by using a constraint apparatus, which was briefly discussed above (see section 7.3.3 and Eq. 7.9). Since the constraints affect only the shifts that are determined during every least squares refinement cycle but not the values of the related parameters, the latter should be synchronized manually prior to imposing constraints. For example, in our case when the computed shift for g_{V2a} is 0.02, then the new values of the constrained parameters (Eqs. 7.9, 7.11 and 7.12) will be calculated as follows:

$$g_{V2a} = g_{V2a} + 0.02, \quad g_{V2b} = g_{V2b} - 0.02, \text{ and } g_{O6} = g_{O6} + 0.02 \tag{7.13}$$

If before the beginning of the constrained refinement, g_{V2a} is not equal to g_{O6}, e.g. they are 0.6 and 0.8, respectively, then after adding the shifts according to Eq. 7.13, the corresponding values will become 0.62 and 0.82. Thus, if needed, parameters constrained in this way should be matched

[1] This peak is characterized by a reasonable tetrahedral configuration created by the oxygen atoms, except that it is too close to the existing V2. Considering the deficiency of the V2 site, it is feasible that the structure contains two types of $[VO_4]$ tetrahedra distributed in the structure in a random fashion.

manually: in this example, both g_{V2a} and g_{O6} should be set to identical values and g_{V2a} and g_{V2b} should sum up to unity.[1]

The relationships between the occupancies in this crystal structure have both the chemical and physical sense. The V2 atom and the surrounding 4 oxygen atoms (three O4 and one O6) in a fully ordered structure create a chain shown in *Figure 7.35*a, where the occupied (grey) and empty (white) tetrahedra are alternated. Vanadium atoms can also occupy pairs of corner-sharing tetrahedra, thus forming a well-known V_2O_7 group (hatched in *Figure 7.35*b). When a "mistake" occurs and a vanadium atom "jumps" to the next empty site, the corner sharing pair of empty tetrahedra appears, in which the shared corner must be vacated because the corresponding oxygen atom is no longer bound to any vanadium atom. Therefore, vacancies on the O6 sites, constrained as shown in Eq. 7.12, should exist, as was confirmed by the independent refinement of g_{O6}.

The subsequent refinement included profile parameters X, Y, X_a, Y_a, peak asymmetry, sample displacement and transparency shift. Preferred orientation was switched from the March-Dollase to the 8th-order spherical harmonics expansion (6 variables total) and 12 coefficients of the shifted-Chebyshev polynomial background approximation were employed. A reasonably good fit, shown in *Figure 7.36*, was achieved as a result.

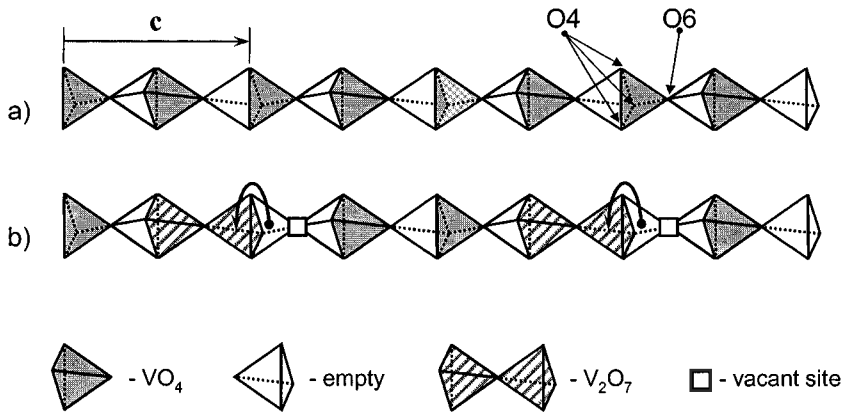


Figure 7.35. Chains of tetrahedra in the $Mn_7(OH)_3(VO_4)_4$ structure. The fully ordered chain (a) with the composition VO_4, where vanadium occupies every other tetrahedron (shaded) and the remaining are vacant (white). The disordered chain (b), where some vanadium atoms occupy pairs of neighboring tetrahedra, forming V_2O_7 groups (hatched), thus creating vacancies on the O6 site and resulting in the chemical composition $(VO_4)_{1-x}(V_2O_7)_{x/2}$.

[1] Another example of synchronizing constrained parameters can be given considering the coordinates of V1 and O2 – O5 atoms in this structure. All of them are located in the 6(c) sites, with the coordinates of the independent atom xxz. Hence, when entering the respective coordinate parameters it is necessary to ensure that $y = -x$.

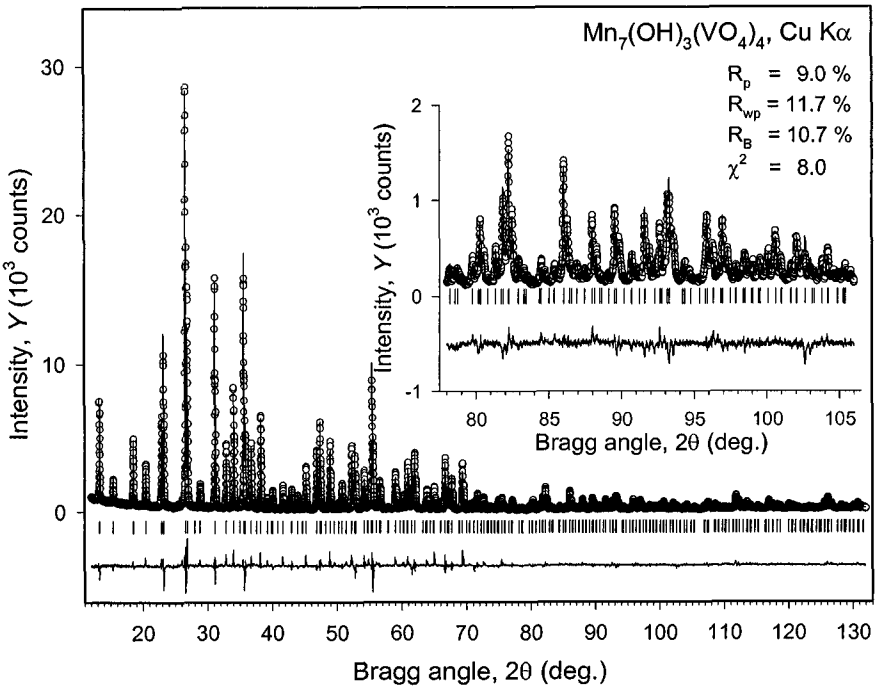


Figure 7.36. The final Rietveld plot of $Mn_7(OH)_3(VO_4)_4$ data. The inset clarifies the details between 78 and 106° 2θ.

The preferred orientation correction was accounted for in two ways during the refinement. First, the March-Dollase approach with one texture axis [001] resulted in τ = 1.247(2) and correction coefficients ranging from 0.52 to 1.39, which gives the preferred orientation magnitude of 2.70. Second, the 8th-order spherical harmonics expansion, which corresponds in this crystal system to six adjustable parameters (200, 400, 600, 606, 800, and 806) was attempted with the March-Dollase preferred orientation correction (i) left as is but fixed (i.e. the spherical harmonics were in addition to the March-Dollase model), or (ii) eliminated. Both ways result in practically an identical result except for the magnitudes of the coefficients. In the second case, the correction coefficients ranged from 0.61 to 1.54, which corresponds to the preferred orientation magnitude of 2.52.

The fully refined model of the crystal (coordinates, population and individual isotropic displacement parameters of atoms) and interatomic distances in the crystal structure of $Mn_7(OH)_3(VO_4)_4$ is found in *Table 7.25* and it is shown in *Figure 7.37* as the arrangement of the coordination polyhedra of the Mn and V atoms.

Table 7.25. The final atomic parameters[a,b] and interatomic distances (in Å) in the crystal structure of $Mn_7(OH)_3(VO_4)_4$ obtained from Rietveld refinement using GSAS. The fully refined unit cell parameters are: a = 13.2292(1), c = 5.25467(6) Å, V = 796.42(2) Å^3, the space group is $P6_3mc$. Full set of crystallographic data is also found on the CD in the files **Ch7Ex08c.exp** and **Ch7Ex08c.cif**.

Atom	Site	x	y	z	Bond distances, Å			
					Mn1	Mn2	V1	V2a
Mn1	12d	0.42649(8)	0.07921(8)	0.0061(8)				
Mn2	2a	0	0	0.8217[c]				
V1	6c	0.15041(6)	-0.15041(6)	0.031(1)				
V2a	2b	1/3	2/3	0.775(1)				
V2b	2b	1/3	2/3	0.497(5)				
O1	12d	0.0731(3)	0.3380(4)	0.863(1)	2.211(4), 2.191(5)		$1.602(5)_2$	
O2	6c	0.8108(3)	-0.8108(3)	0.811(2)	2.122(4)		1.720(7)	
O3	6c	0.5271(3)	-0.5271(3)	0.710(2)	2.178(6), 2.392(6)			
O4	6c	0.3987(2)	-0.3987(2)	0.638(2)	2.172(4)			$1.661(6)_3$
O5	6c	0.9199(3)	-0.9199(3)	0.586(2)		$2.214(7)_3$, $2.302(8)_3$	1.637(6)	
O6	2b	1/3	2/3	0.118(3)				1.81(2)
H1[d]	6c	0.433	-0.433	0.156				

[a] U_{iso} is 0.0145(2) Å^2 for metal atoms and 0.0140(8) Å^2 for O atoms.

[b] The population parameters are as follows: $g_{V2a} = g_{O6} = 0.819(4)$, $g_{V2b} = 0.181(4) = 1 - g_{V2a}$, $g_{Mn2} = 0.873(4) \cong (1-2/3g_{V2b})$. All other sites are fully occupied.

[c] This parameter was kept constant at all times to maintain a fixed origin of coordinates along the Z-axis. Although GSAS enables automatic fixation of the origin of coordinates, the refinement may become unstable, especially when the fit is far from the best.

[d] Taken from the Zn-based compound and kept constant during the refinement.

In addition to the already discussed vacancy relationships among V2a, V2b and O6 atoms, the refined deficiency of the Mn2 site is nearly equal to 2/3 of the vacancies observed on the V2b site. Although the experimentally established relationship is approximate, when obeyed exactly (i.e. when $g_{Mn2} = 1 - 2/3g_{V2b}$), the oxidation state of manganese in the Mn2 site is 3+, while it is 2+ for the Mn1 site. All things considered, the following expression describes the chemical composition of $Mn_7(OH)_3(VO_4)_4$:

$$Mn_6^{2+}Mn_{1-y}^{3+}(OH)_3(VO_4)_{4-x}(V_2O_7)_{1/2x}; \quad x = 0.181(4), \quad y \cong 2/3x$$

This formula has been confirmed from single crystal diffraction data (R_F = 2.2 %), which give x = 0.202(3).[1] The population of the Mn2 site is 0.792(4), slightly lower than expected 1 - 2/3x = 0.865. A small difference is acceptable because a tiny single crystal may not be representative of a large polycrystalline sample, especially in the case of occupational disorder.

[1] P. Zavalij, S. Luta, and M.S. Whittingham, unpublished.

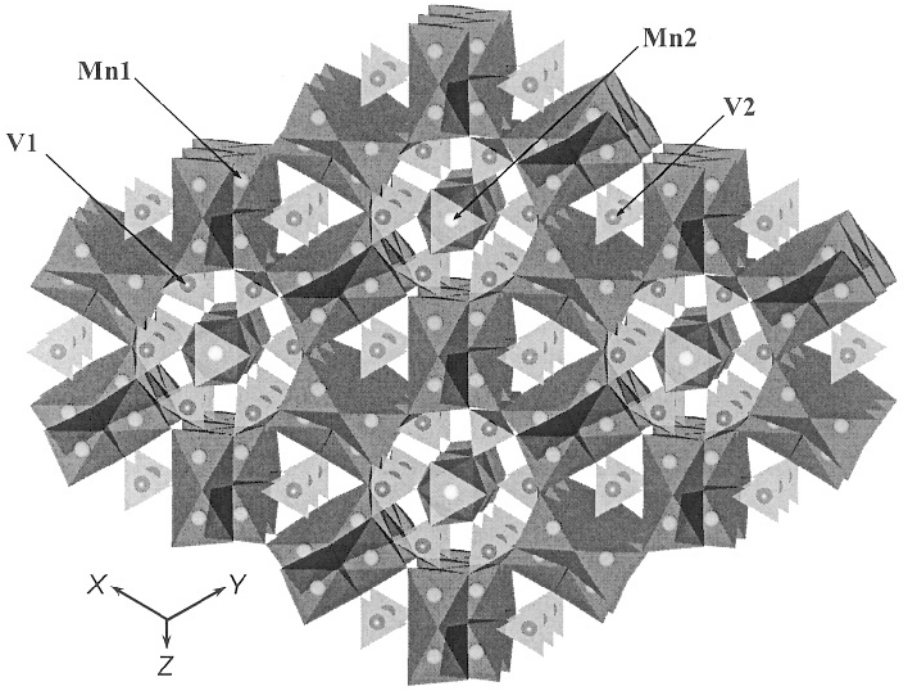


Figure 7.37. The model of the crystal structure of $Mn_{7-y}(OH)_3(VO_4)_{4-x}(V_2O_7)_{x/2}$ shown along the *Z*-axis. The Mn1 sites (Mn^{2+}) are shown as light spheres inside the dark grey [MnO_6] octahedra, the partially occupied Mn2 sites (Mn^{3+}) are shown as light spheres in the light grey [MnO_6] octahedra, both the V1 and V2 sites are shown as dark spheres inside the light grey [VO_4] tetrahedra. Hydrogen atoms from the hydroxyl groups are not shown in this figure.

7.11 Rietveld refinement of the monoclinic $FePO_4$[1]

As established in the previous chapter (section 6.17), the anhydrous iron phosphate has a relatively simple crystal structure, however, poor crystallinity of the powder results in broad peaks where full widths at half maximum vary from 0.2 to 0.5° when Mo Kα radiation is employed. Therefore, the resolution of the diffraction data is quite low, as was illustrated in *Figure 6.33*. There are only 6 atoms in the asymmetric unit but Rietveld refinement of the model is complicated by the inadequate quality of the diffraction data. The model, derived from a suspected analogy with the hydrated $FePO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$, cannot be completed based solely on the powder diffraction data due to problems with the experiment. Thus, Rietveld refinement considered in this section starts from the model improved by

[1] Y. Song, P.Y. Zavalij, M. Suzuki, and M.S. Whittingham, New iron(III) phosphate phases: Crystal structure and electrochemical and magnetic properties, Inorg. Chem. **41**, 5778 (2002).

geometry optimization using quantum chemical minimization of approximate coordinates of atoms, as was discussed in the previous chapter. Furthermore, data quality precludes an unrestrained refinement of even the optimized model, and similar to the example considered in section 7.8, soft restraints should be imposed on the geometry of the PO_4 groups. We will, therefore, take this opportunity to illustrate the role of soft restraint weighting in Rietveld refinement.

The experimental powder diffraction pattern was collected on a rotating anode Rigaku TTRAX powder diffractometer using monochromatized Mo Kα radiation from 5 to 50° 2θ in a step scan mode with a 0.01° step and counting time of 10 sec/step. The following parameters were employed at the beginning of this refinement:

- The initial structure model, derived and optimized in the previous chapter (*Table 6.47*).
- The default profile parameters from the instrumental parameter file **Rigaku.prm** obtained from the refinement of the LaB_6 standard as described in section 7.6.
- The sample shift parameter $S_s = 3.99$ for the sample displacement s = -0.087 mm obtained together with the unit cell dimensions at a stage of lattice parameters refinement.
- The space group $P2_1/n$ and the unit cell dimensions $a = 5.489$, $b = 7.493$, $c = 8.055$ Å, and $\beta = 95.81°$, determined earlier.
- The overall isotropic displacement parameter $U_{iso} = 0.015$ Å^2;

The initial model with all needed crystallographic parameters is found on the CD in the files **Ch7Ex09a.exp** and **Ch7Ex09a.cif**, and the experimental data are in the file **Ch7Ex09_MoKa.raw**. Only the range from 5 to 37.6° 2θ was used in all calculations.[1] The background was approximated manually with a straight line (i.e. two coefficients of a shifted-Chebyshev polynomial were employed in this approximation) since unambiguous automatic background determination was impossible at the beginning of the refinement due to heavily overlapped Bragg peaks. Only two data points (the first and the last in the range) were used for background estimation. The initial refinement of the phase scale factor resulted in $R_{wp} = 62.7\%$ (*Table 7.26*) and a quite poor fit, which showed that all calculated Bragg peaks were too narrow. Therefore, both peak broadening parameters, *X* and *Y*, were manually increased by a factor of 10, yielding an acceptable weighted profile residual of 35.6% and resulting in a tolerable fit as shown in *Figure 7.38*.

[1] This range of Bragg angles corresponds to a $2\theta_{max} \cong 89°$ when using Cu Kα radiation. The use of Mo Kα radiation in this case was justified by a large goniometer radius (285 mm) and therefore, potentially high resolution, and by the presence of the significant amount of Fe in the material (iron strongly absorbs Cu Kα radiation, see *Table 2.3*, and creates a substantial fluorescent background).

Table 7.26. The progress of Rietveld refinement of the crystal structure of anhydrous $FePO_4$ using low resolution x-ray powder diffraction data.

Refined parameters	R_p	R_{wp}	R_B	χ^2
Initial (CD: **Ch7Ex09a.exp** and **Ch7Ex09a.cif**)	75.2	77.2	98.6	1414.
Scale factor, linear background adjusted manually	57.4	62.7	67.4	933.
Peak broadening *X* and *Y* multiplied by 10 then phase scale (*Figure 7.38*)	29.4	35.6	32.6	301.
Plus two background coefficients, coordinates, PO_4 group soft-restrained with weight 4	13.3	16.8	22.6	67.6
Same but soft-restraints with weight increased to 10	11.1	13.8	13.8	46.2
Plus grain size broadening, *X*	8.5	11.1	10.7	30.1
Plus unit cell dimensions, PO [010], overall U_{iso} (*Figure 7.40*) (CD: **Ch7Ex09b.exp** and **Ch7Ex09b.cif**)	8.1	10.8	9.9	28.1
Plus strain broadening, *Y*, then asymmetry and sample displacement	7.3	9.7	6.2	22.7
Four coefficients of the background	6.5	8.6	4.1	17.9
X, *Y*, peak asymmetry, X_a, Y_a; (*Figure 7.41*, *Table 7.27*) (CD: **Ch7Ex09c.exp** and **Ch7Ex09c.cif**)	5.2	7.1	3.6	12.3

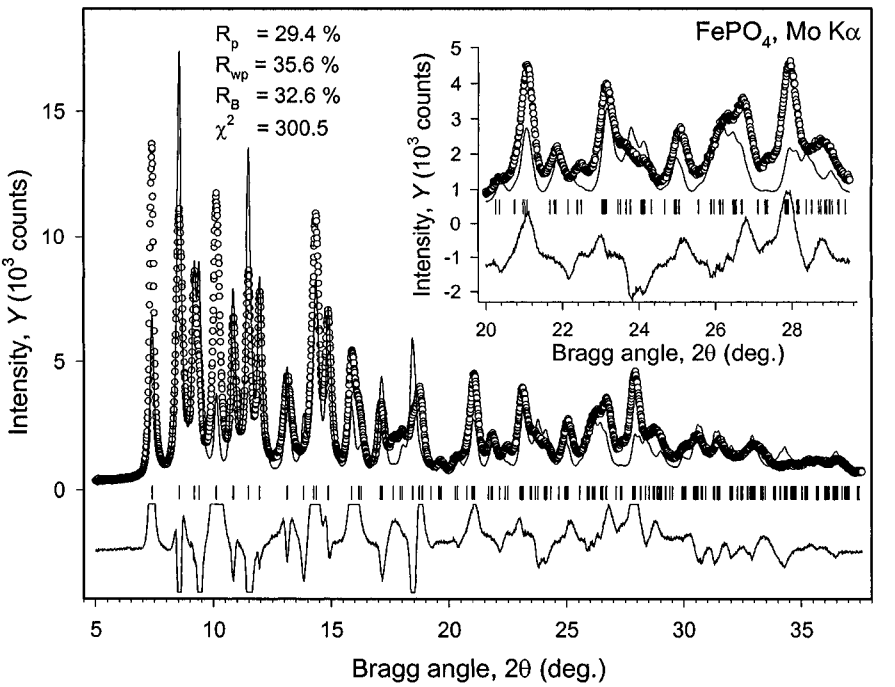


Figure 7.38. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of the anhydrous $FePO_4$ after the initial Rietveld least squares minimization with only the scale factor and linear background refined. The difference (Y_i^{obs} - Y_i^{calc}) is shown using the same scale as both the observed and calculated data but the plot is truncated to fit within the range [-2000, 2000] for clarity. The inset clarifies the range between 20 and ~29° 2θ.

Both the complexity and low resolution of the experimental data, coupled with the possibility of far from ideal coordinates of some or all atoms in the optimized model of the crystal structure[1] present an interesting dilemma in the selection of the next set of parameters for a subsequent Rietveld refinement. Although it is obvious that profile parameters require further improvement, it also appears that both the inadequacy of the initial fit and low resolution of the data may not allow their unequivocal refinement. On the other hand, atomic coordinates likely deviate significantly from their real values, which is easily seen in *Figure 7.38* indicating significant discrepancies between the observed and calculated intensities for many Bragg reflections.

Hence, the following refinement step included a linear background and coordinates of all atoms.[2] In anticipation of considerable problems with the least squares minimization and high probability of moving away from a global minimum, soft restraints were employed to restrain the well-known geometry of the phosphate group PO_4.[3] Its initial geometry, obtained as a result of quantum chemical optimization, was nearly perfect: the P–O distances vary between 1.52 and 1.54 Å, while the O–P–O angles were between 107.8 and 110.2°. The following restrains were imposed: the P–O distance of 1.53 ± 0.01 Å, and the O–P–O angles of 109.5 ± 2.0°; the weight was set to 4. The first five cycles of the refinement substantially improve the fit, lowering R_{wp} by more than 20 %, down to 16.8 %. This reduction, however, comes at the cost of worsening the PO_4 geometry: the P–O distances now range from 1.43 to 1.61 Å and the O–P–O angles vary from 103 to 117°. The Fe-O distances remain acceptable, and they range from 1.83 to 1.95 Å but one additional elongated Fe–O bond of 2.27 Å emerges.

In order to improve the geometry, the soft restraint weight factor was increased to 10, and several subsequent least squares cycles were conducted. The weighted residual further decreases and, most importantly, the geometry of the PO_4 group recovers. The correctness of this adjustment is demonstrated in *Figure 7.39*, which illustrates relative shifts of all atoms as functions of least squares cycle number. It is obvious, that setting the weight to 4 does little to stabilize the convergence, while increasing the weight to 10 results in a rapid reduction of the magnitudes of atomic displacements over a few refinement cycles.

[1] It is worthy of reminding one that the quantum chemical optimization of the geometry has been performed after Fe was substituted by Al.

[2] Positions (coordinates) of atoms in the unit cell are the strongest contributors into the computed integrated intensities of Bragg reflections assuming that preferred orientation effects are weak. For this powder, preferred orientation was expected (and later found) to be minor due to small particle sizes and predominantly isotropic particle shapes.

[3] A thorough reader should be able to verify the correctness of this statement by attempting Rietveld refinement without imposing soft restraints.

The subsequent refinement included unit cell dimensions, the grain size peak broadening parameter X, preferred orientation in the March-Dollase approximation with the texture axis [010],[1] and the overall isotropic displacement parameter U_{iso}, in addition to the linear background, phase scale and coordinates of individual atoms, which were still soft restrained with the weight set to 10.[2] The preferred orientation correction in this example is insignificant. The corresponding parameter ($\tau_{010} = 0.986$) results in a range of correction factors varying between 0.98 and 1.04 and therefore, it can be ignored. This refinement results in an obvious improvement of the geometry of the crystal structure. The P–O distances now range from 1.48 to 1.58 Å and the O–P–O angles are from 102 to 115° (see the file **Ch7Ex09b.cif**). The profile fit (*Figure 7.40*) is also improved, with the weighted residual lowering to 10.8%.

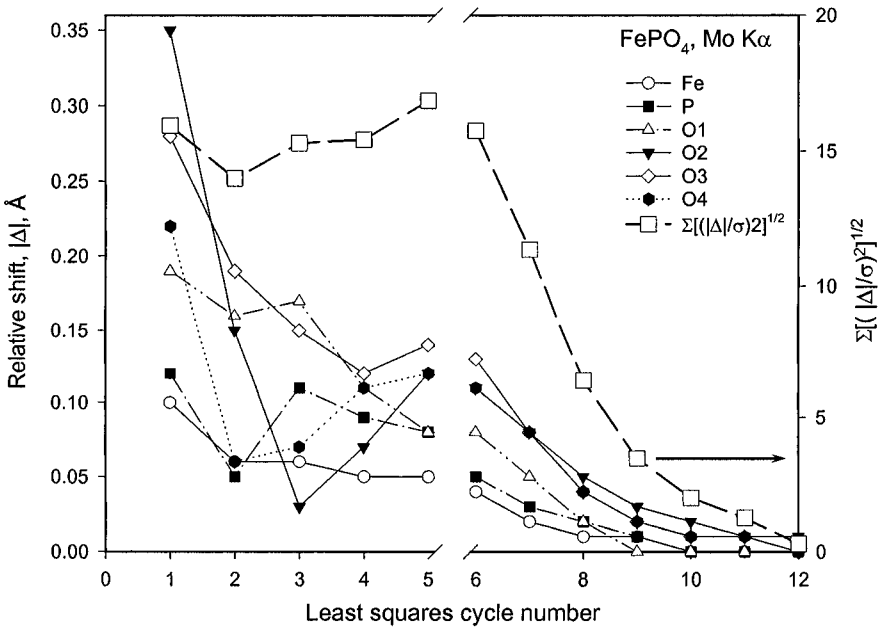


Figure 7.39. Relative shifts of individual atoms (left-hand scale) and average shift (Δ) to standard deviation (σ) ratio during the first 12 cycles of the least squares refinement of the coordinates of all atoms in the model of the crystal structure of the anhydrous monoclinic $FePO_4$. Both the P–O distances and O–P–O angles were soft restrained with the weight of 4 during the first five cycles. The weight was set to 10 beginning from cycle No. 6. The first five cycles indicate erratic shifts of P and O atoms. Beginning from the sixth cycle, the shifts of all atoms steadily decrease and approach zero after cycle No. 12.

[1] The axis was chosen after trying the three major crystallographic directions as potential preferred orientation axes.

[2] The same weight was maintained through the end of this Rietveld refinement.

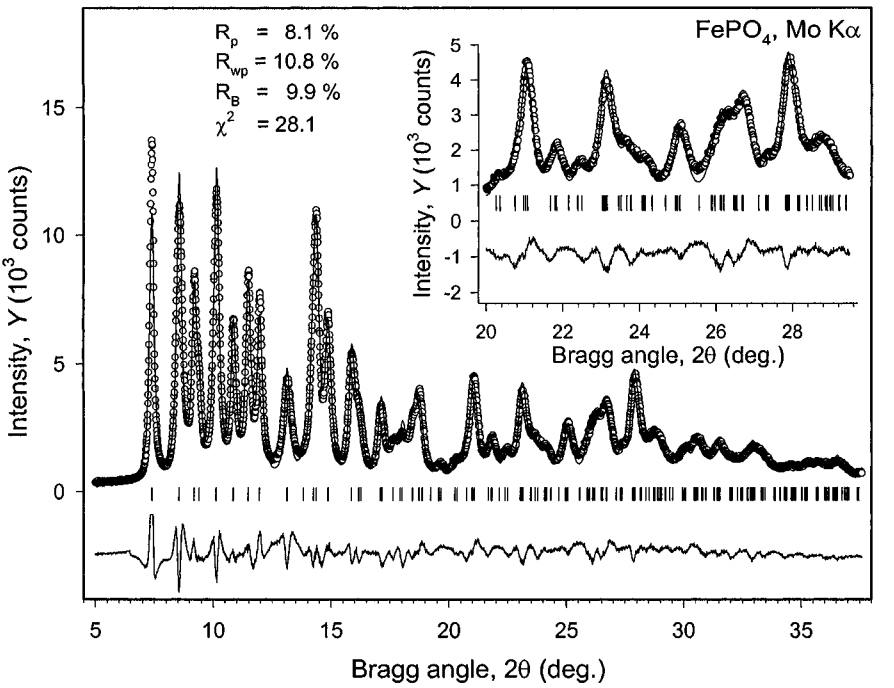


Figure 7.40. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of the anhydrous $FePO_4$ after the refinement of coordinates of all atoms soft restrained to match the ideal geometry of the PO_4 group with the weight set to 10 plus linear background, preferred orientation, grain size peak broadening parameter and unit cell dimensions. The inset clarifies the range between 20 and ~29° 2θ.

To further improve the fit, the following parameters were consequently included into the least squares minimization: strain peak broadening parameter *Y*, then peak asymmetry α, and sample displacement. At this point, a linear background was substituted by a fourth order shifted-Chebyshev polynomial and refined with all other profile parameters fixed. Finally, all relevant parameters were refined together. The convergence was achieved, and the final fit, which is illustrated in *Figure 7.41*, is quite satisfactory considering the poor resolution of the powder diffraction pattern.

The resultant structural parameters are listed in *Table 7.27*. The complete geometrical characteristics of this crystal structure are found on the CD in the file **Ch7Ex09c.cif**. The improvement of the PO_4 geometry is quite significant: the final P–O distances range from 1.49 to 1.57 Å with the average 1.54 Å; the O–P–O angles agree quite well and they range from 107.4 to 113.9°. The coordination of the Fe atom remains distorted and its polyhedron has been transformed from a tetrahedron (the result of the geometry optimization) into a trigonal bi-pyramid as shown in *Figure 7.42*a.

The latter is often observed in Fe(III) compounds. One of the Fe–O bonds remains elongated, and it is shown using dark lines extending across the octagonal tunnel in *Figure 7.42*b, which illustrates the distorted oxygen tetrahedra around the Fe atoms. *Figure 7.42*c highlights the presence of [FeO_5] trigonal bi-pyramids.

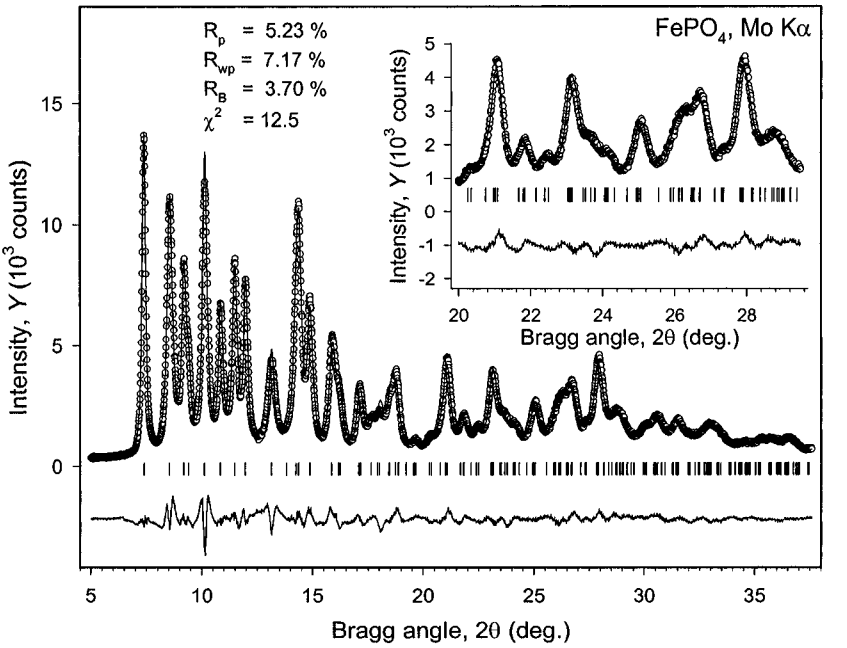


Figure 7.41. The final Rietveld plot of $FePO_4$ data. The inset clarifies the details between 20 and ~29° 2θ. The true background is quite difficult to determine due to heavily overlapped Bragg peaks, especially at 2θ > 20°.

Table 7.27. Atomic parameters[a] and interatomic distances (in Å) in the model of the crystal structure of the anhydrous monoclinic $FePO_4$ obtained from Rietveld refinement using GSAS. The unit cell dimensions are: a = 5.4856(6), b = 7.4882(8), c = 8.0626(9) Å, β = 95.694(8)°, V = 329.56(5) Å^3, space group $P2_1/n$. Full crystallographic data can be found on the CD in the files **Ch7Ex09c.exp** and **Ch7Ex09c.cif**.

Atom	Site	x	y	z	Bond distances, Å	
					Fe	P
Fe	4(e)	0.3891(5)	0.8060(4)	0.0585(3)		
P	4(e)	0.5878(9)	0.4539(5)	0.2680(6)		
O1	4(e)	0.471(1)	0.638(1)	0.225(1)	1.864(7)	1.544(6)
O2	4(e)	0.835(2)	0.464(1)	0.384(1)	1.944(8), 2.224(8)	1.569(7)
O3	4(e)	0.639(2)	0.362(1)	0.112(1)	1.857(8)	1.488(7)
O4	4(e)	0.402(2)	0.344(1)	0.362(1)	1.801(8)	1.565(7)

[a] Overall U_{iso} = 0.018(1) Å^2.

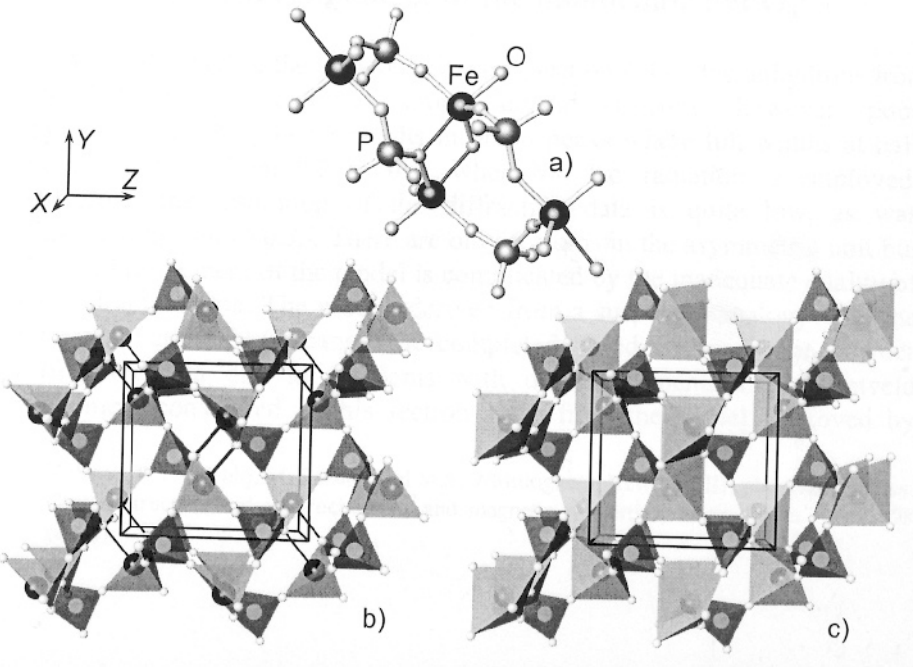


Figure 7.42. The crystal structure of the monoclinic anhydrous $FePO_4$ shown along the *X*-axis in various representations. The octagon of alternating Fe (black spheres) and P (grey spheres) atoms with weak Fe-O bonds (thin dark lines) stretching across the octagon (a). The packing of the distorted $[FeO_4]$ (light grey) and nearly ideal $[PO_4]$ (dark grey) tetrahedra (b). The packing of the stretched $[FeO_5]$ trigonal bi-pyramids (light grey) and $[PO_4]$ (dark grey) tetrahedra (c).

7.12 Rietveld refinement of Gd_5Ge_4, Gd_5Si_4 and $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$

Considering the results obtained in section 6.18, it appears that the three crystal structures are related to one another and that the closest to reality is the model of the germanide, Gd_5Ge_4 (*Figure 6.37*). Therefore, we will begin with illustrating its refinement, and then proceed with the second orthorhombic phase, Gd_5Si_4, even though it seems that the agreement between the observed and calculated diffraction data (*Figure 6.40*) was the poorest for the binary silicide. Finally, we will establish the details of the crystal structure of $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$, which appears to be a monoclinically distorted derivative of Gd_5Ge_4, as concluded earlier. In every case, we will employ all available experimental data, which were collected on a Rigaku TTRAX rotating anode powder diffractometer using Mo Kα radiation between 8.5 and 50° 2θ in a step scan mode with a step $\Delta 2\theta = 0.01°$ and a counting time of 15 sec/step. In this section, we will use LHPM-Rietica.

7.12.1 Gd_5Ge_4

The coordinates of atoms taken from *Table 6.48* along with the unit cell dimensions and all profile parameters determined from Le Bail's full pattern decomposition are found in the input file, **Ch7Ex10a.inp** for LHPM-Rietica, and the diffraction data are in the file **Ch7Ex10_MoKa.dat**, located on the CD. The progress of Rietveld refinement is illustrated in *Table 7.28*.

Table 7.28. The progress of Rietveld refinement of the crystal structure of Gd_5Ge_4 using x-ray powder diffraction data. Wavelengths used: $\lambda K\alpha_1 = 0.70932$ Å, $\lambda K\alpha_2 = 0.71361$ Å.

Refined parameters	R_p	R_{wp}	R_B	χ^2
Initial (profile parameters from Le Bail, model from *Table 6.48*, overall $B = 0.6$ Å^2)	3×10^4	3×10^4	3×10^4	2×10^8
Scale factor	11.54	14.65	9.53	43.17
Scale, *U*, *V*, *W*, η, asymmetry, *a*, *b*, *c*, sample displacement, overall displacement parameter	7.36	9.57	5.14	18.45
All as above plus coordinates of all atoms and background	5.85	7.90	3.38	12.62
All, plus individual isotropic displacement parameters and preferred orientation along [001][a]	5.70	7.69	3.25	12.01

[a] The selection of the preferred orientation axis direction was based on the lowest residuals after attempting to refine texture in the March-Dollase approximation along the three major crystallographic axes.

Refinement quickly converges to low residuals, thus confirming the correctness of the model of the crystal structure of this compound. Refined individual parameters of all atoms are listed in *Table 7.29*. When individual displacement parameters are refined in an anisotropic approximation, residuals can be lowered further, but the displacement ellipsoid of the Gd3 atom becomes unphysical and therefore, the refinement was completed using the isotropic approximation. Final values of all parameters can be found in the data file **Ch7Ex10b.inp** on the CD. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns are shown in *Figure 7.43*.

Table 7.29. Coordinates of atoms and individual isotropic displacement parameters in the crystal structure of Gd_5Ge_4. The space group is Pnma. The unit cell dimensions are: a = 7.6997(3), b = 14.8309(4), c = 7.7861(3) Å. All sites are fully occupied.

Atom	Site	*x*	*y*	*z*	*B* (Å^2)
Gd1	4(c)	0.2915(3)	1/4	-0.0008(3)	0.84(4)
Gd2	8(d)	-0.0236(2)	0.1004(1)	0.1793(2)	1.48(3)
Gd3	8(d)	0.3782(2)	0.8839(1)	0.1623(2)	0.97(3)
Ge1	4(c)	0.1754(5)	1/4	0.3653(6)	1.4(1)
Ge2	4(c)	0.9187(6)	1/4	0.8905(6)	1.1(1)
Ge3	8(d)	0.2189(4)	0.9544(2)	0.4710(4)	1.5(1)

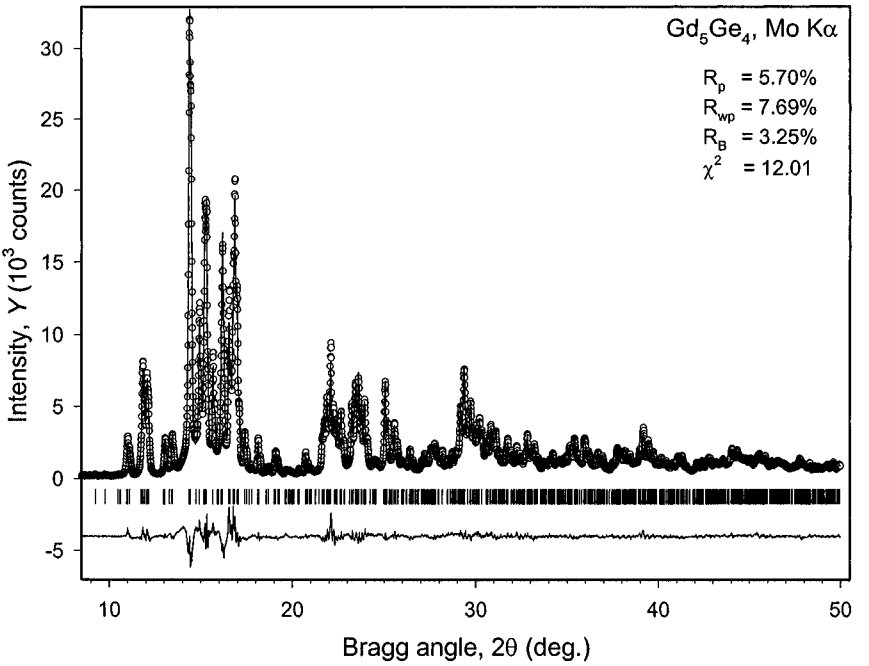


Figure 7.43. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of Gd_5Ge_4 after the completion of Rietveld refinement. A total of 809 independent Bragg reflections are possible in the examined range of Bragg angles.

The model of the crystal structure of the Gd_5Ge_4 after all parameters have been refined is shown in *Figure 7.44*. This structure is built from distinct slabs, formed by Gd and Ge atoms; the slabs are infinite along both the *X* and *Z* directions, but they are limited along the *Y* direction. In a way, this crystal structure is built from thin layers of tightly bound atoms stacked along the *Y*-direction, and the thickness of each layer (slab) is approximately 6 Å.

All interatomic distances are within normal limits and the Fourier map calculated after the completion of Rietveld refinement confirms that no additional atoms are present in the unit cell of this material. The refined coordinates of all atoms are nearly identical to those determined from a single crystal diffraction experiment for the Sm_5Ge_4 compound.[1] Thus, we conclude that the crystal structure of Gd_5Ge_4 is solved correctly and it belongs to the Sm_5Ge_4-type of crystal structure in which Gd atoms occupy Sm-positions and Ge atoms are distributed in the corresponding Ge-sites of the prototype.

[1] G.S. Smith, Q. Johnson, and A.G. Tharp, Crystal structure of Sm_5Ge_4, Acta Cryst. **22**, 269 (1967).

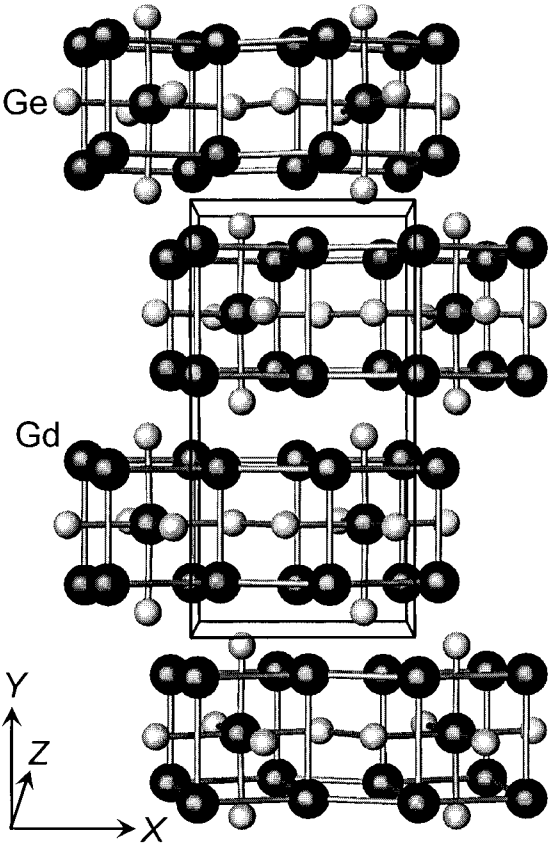


Figure 7.44. The model of the crystal structure of Gd_5Ge_4 as determined by Rietveld refinement. The slabs, which are infinite along *X* and *Z* and are limited to ~6 Å thickness along *Y*, are shown as bonded Gd and Ge atoms.

7.12.2 Gd_5Si_4

The coordinates of atoms taken from *Table 6.48* along with the unit cell dimensions and all profile parameters determined from Le Bail's full pattern decomposition are found in the input file, **Ch7Ex11a.inp** for LHPM-Rietica, and the diffraction data are in the file **Ch7Ex11_MoKa.dat** located on the CD. As already established in Chapter 6 (see *Figure 6.39* and *Figure 6.40* in section 6.18.2), this model of the crystal structure is feasible but far from complete, which was evidenced by poor agreement between the observed and calculated intensities. Thus, the Rietveld refinement strategy will be slightly different from the previous example as illustrated in *Table 7.30*.

Table 7.30. The progress of Rietveld refinement of the crystal structure of Gd_5Si_4 using x-ray powder diffraction data. Wavelengths used: $\lambda K\alpha_1 = 0.70932$ Å, $\lambda K\alpha_2 = 0.71361$ Å.

Refined parameters	R_p	R_{wp}	R_B	χ^2
Initial (profile parameters from Le Bail, model from *Table 6.48*, overall $B = 0.6$ Å^2)	2×10^4	2×10^4	2×10^4	1×10^8
Scale factor	34.52	42.89	27.01	460.1
Scale and coordinates of all Gd atoms	10.54	14.43	7.12	52.2
Scale and coordinates of all Gd and Si atoms	8.08	10.71	4.82	28.8
Scale, *U*, *V*, *W*, η, asymmetry, *a*, *b*, *c*, zero shift, background, coordinates of all atoms, overall displacement parameter	6.77	9.21	3.67	21.4
All, plus individual isotropic displacement parameters and preferred orientation along [001]	6.57	9.07	3.54	20.7
Pearson-VII: all profile, then unit cell, coordinate and overall displacement parameters, preferred orientation along [001] (parameters were released sequentially)	6.16	8.28	3.16	17.3
Pearson-VII: all, plus individual isotropic displacement parameters and preferred orientation along [001]	6.07	8.19	3.02	16.9
Pearson-VII: all, plus individual isotropic displacement parameters of Gd; Si constrained to be identical; preferred orientation along [001]	6.13	8.22	3.13	17.1

Refinement of the scale factor results in poor residuals, as shown in row two of *Table 7.30*. Considering *Figure 6.40*, which shows no systematic deviations between the observed and calculated intensities as a function of Bragg angle, it is easy to conclude that the coordinates of atoms in the unit cell of Gd_5Si_4 deviate significantly from those assumed as in the model of the Sm_5Ge_4-type structure. In the unit cell of Gd_5Si_4, the Gd atoms are the strongly scattering species, and the Si atoms are the weekly scattering kind. Furthermore, all profile and unit cell parameters have been determined quite precisely during the full pattern decomposition. Therefore, we first proceed with refining the coordinates of heavy atoms, and if the result is satisfactory, we then include the coordinates of light atoms.

The refinement of the coordinates of gadolinium atoms together with the scale factor results in a considerable improvement of all residuals (row 3 in *Table 7.30*), and as shown in *Figure 7.45*, the calculated pattern is now quite close to the measured profile. When the coordinates of the Si atoms were included in the least squares fit, further reduction of residuals is observed, thus indicating that the model of the crystal structure is nearly complete.

At this point, it is useful to calculate a Fourier map to verify that no other weakly scattering atoms (i.e. Si) have been missed. The electron density distribution has been calculated and it confirms that there are no additional atoms in the unit cell of Gd_5Si_4. Proceeding with the refinement of all relevant parameters in the order indicated in *Table 7.30*, the full profile least squares fit converges easily. Data file **Ch7Ex11b.inp** is found on the CD.

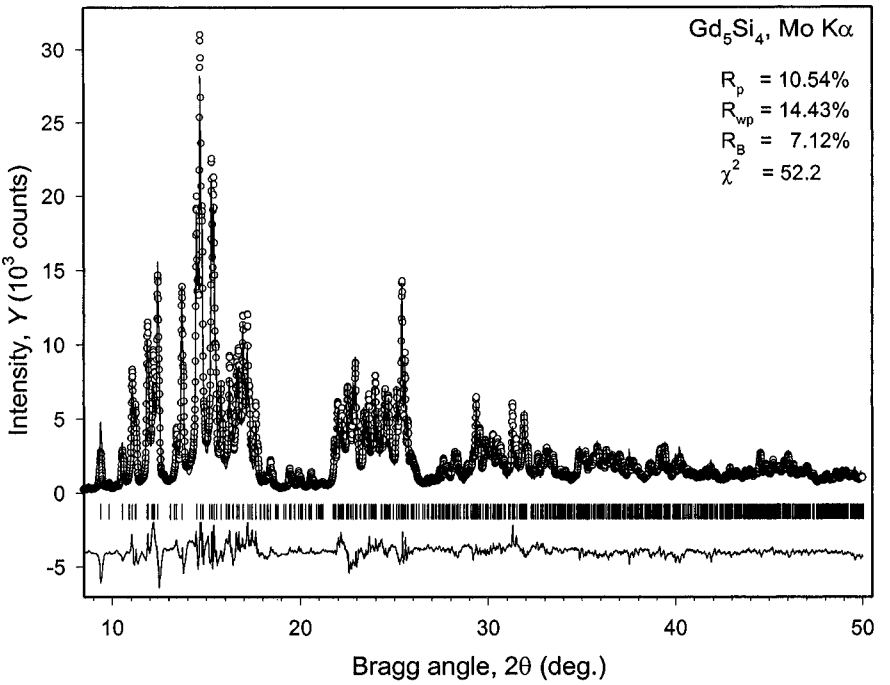


Figure 7.45. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of Gd_5Si_4 after only the coordinates of Gd atoms have been refined together with the phase scale factor. Compare this figure with *Figure 6.40* in Chapter 6.

The residuals are comparable to those obtained for Gd_5Ge_4. However, the displacement parameter of Si1 becomes negative, while the displacement parameter of Si3 is about twice that of other atoms, as shown in *Table 7.31*. It is unfeasible that some of the Gd atoms are mixed statistically with Si1 atoms because of the large difference in their atomic volumes. Refinement of the occupancy of the Si3 site does not result in any defects. As we already explained before, this experimental artifact may be the result of the low scattering ability of Si when compared to that of Gd, coupled with small but unaccounted experimental errors that could be present in the data (see section 7.5 describing the refinement of a related crystal structure of Nd_5Si_4).

Hence, we will continue the refinement and employ a different peak shape function. The use of the Pearson-VII function to represent peak shapes results in lower residuals (see rows 7 and 8 in *Table 7.30*). Nonetheless, individual isotropic parameters of Si1 atoms remain unphysical and we may conclude that this is due to the low scattering power of Si and other errors present in the measured powder diffraction pattern. The errors were likely introduced during sample preparation, as it is easy to overlook

inhomogeneities in the coverage of a flat sample holder with a powder when the specimen has been prepared by dusting. An additional argument, which supports the potential for problems with the specimen employed to collect powder diffraction data, follows from considering the physical properties of the silicide. According to Holtzberg *et al.*,[1] Gd_5Si_4 is ferromagnetic at room temperature (its Curie temperature is ~335 K). Thus, it is possible that an unusual preferred orientation has been introduced into the powder sample, even though the material is magnetically soft.

All things considered, the simplest solution is to refine the displacement parameters of Si atoms in a pseudo-overall isotropic approximation by constraining them to be identical, as is often done with light elements, such as C, N, and O (see sections 7.7 to 7.11). The resulting residuals (the last row in *Table 7.30*) are only slightly higher when compared to the refinement of the individual displacement parameters of all atoms. The final free variables in the crystal structure of Gd_5Si_4 are listed in *Table 7.32*. A small difference in the unit cell dimensions obtained using different peak shape functions is normal because peak asymmetry has been treated differently. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns after all parameters in the crystal structure of Gd_5Si_4 have been refined are shown in *Figure 7.46*.

Table 7.31. Coordinates of atoms and individual isotropic displacement parameters in the crystal structure of Gd_5Si_4 fully refined by Rietveld technique using the pseudo-Voigt peak shape function. The space group is Pnma. The unit cell dimensions are: a = 7.4896(4), b = 14.7544(8), c = 7.7519(4) Å. All sites are fully occupied.

Atom	Site	x	y	z	B (Å^2)
Gd1	4(c)	0.3539(4)	1/4	0.0099(3)	0.89(5)
Gd2	8(d)	0.0294(2)	0.0974(1)	0.1787(2)	1.18(3)
Gd3	8(d)	0.3159(2)	0.8780(1)	0.1837(2)	0.98(3)
Ge1	4(c)	0.244(1)	1/4	0.367(1)	-0.6(2)
Ge2	4(c)	0.990(2)	1/4	0.919(2)	1.0(3)
Ge3	8(d)	0.159(1)	0.9510(6)	0.490(1)	2.2(2)

Table 7.32. Coordinates of atoms and individual isotropic displacement parameters in the crystal structure of Gd_5Si_4 fully refined by Rietveld technique using the Pearson-VII peak shape function. The space group is Pnma. The unit cell dimensions are: a = 7.4877(2), b = 14.7496(5), c = 7.7497(2) Å. All sites are fully occupied.

Atom	Site	x	y	z	B (Å^2)
Gd1	4(c)	0.3544(2)	1/4	0.0102(3)	0.88(4)
Gd2	8(d)	0.0289(2)	0.0987(1)	0.1790(2)	1.14(3)
Gd3	8(d)	0.3159(2)	0.8778(1)	0.1839(2)	0.94(3)
Ge1	4(c)	0.246(1)	1/4	0.369(1)	0.9(1)
Ge2	4(c)	0.984(2)	1/4	0.912(2)	0.9(1)
Ge3	8(d)	0.158(1)	0.9518(5)	0.490(1)	0.9(1)

[1] F. Holtzberg, R.J. Gambino, and T.R. McGuire, New ferromagnetic 5:4 compounds in the rare earth silicon and germanium systems, J. Phys. Chem. Solids **28**, 2283 (1967).

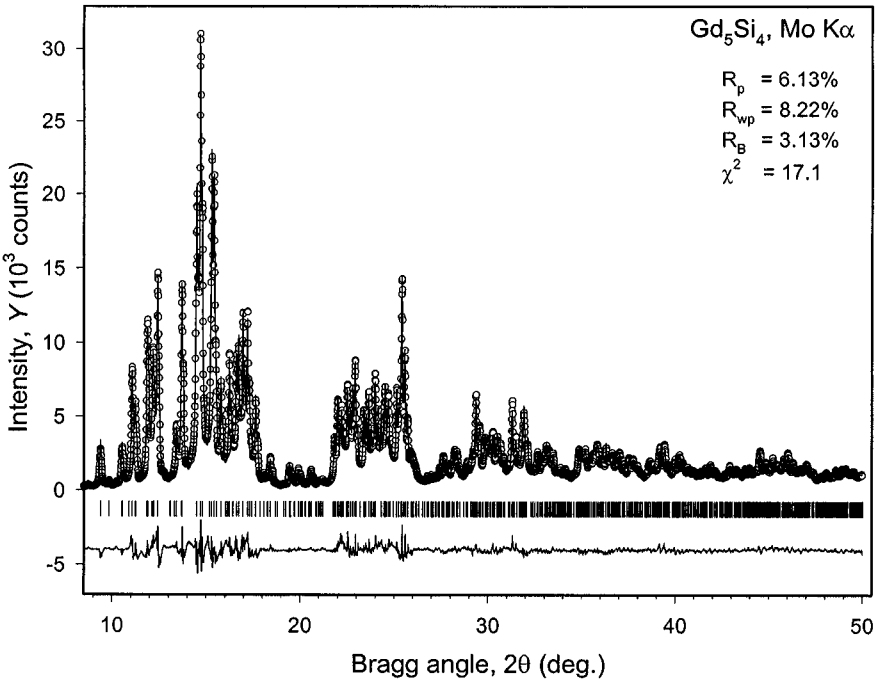


Figure 7.46. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of Gd_5Si_4 after the completion of the refinement using Pearson-VII peak shape function. A total of 808 independent Bragg reflections are possible in the examined range of Bragg angles.

When the coordinates of atoms listed in *Table 7.32* (data file **Ch7Ex11c.inp** is located on the CD) are compared to those from *Table 7.29*, the differences are obvious, especially in the values of the *x*-coordinates. It appears that all atoms are shifted along the *X*-direction when the Gd_5Ge_4 structure is compared with the Gd_5Si_4. The latter is shown in *Figure 7.47*, from which it is clear that Gd_5Si_4 is built from the slabs that are essentially the same as those found in Gd_5Ge_4 (*Figure 7.44*), except that Ge atoms are replaced with Si. The shifts along the *X*-direction result in short Si–Si distances (~2.76 Å), which are shown as bonded Si_2 pairs connecting the slabs in *Figure 7.47*. No Ge–Ge bonds are found between the slabs in the Gd_5Ge_4 structure, where the corresponding Ge–Ge distance exceeds 3.6 Å. This variation in the interatomic distances is much larger than the difference in the atomic radii of Si (1.17 Å) and Ge (1.23 Å). Thus, we conclude that the crystal structures of Gd_5Ge_4 and Gd_5Si_4 are closely related but different.[1]

[1] The distinct difference between the crystal structures of two materials has tremendous effect on their magnetic properties. The silicide is ferromagnetic below 335 K, while the germanide is antiferromagnetic below ~130 K [e.g. see V.K. Pecharsky and K.A. Gschneidner, Jr., $Gd_5(Si_xGe_{1-x})_4$: An extremum material, Adv. Mater. **13**, 683 (2001)].

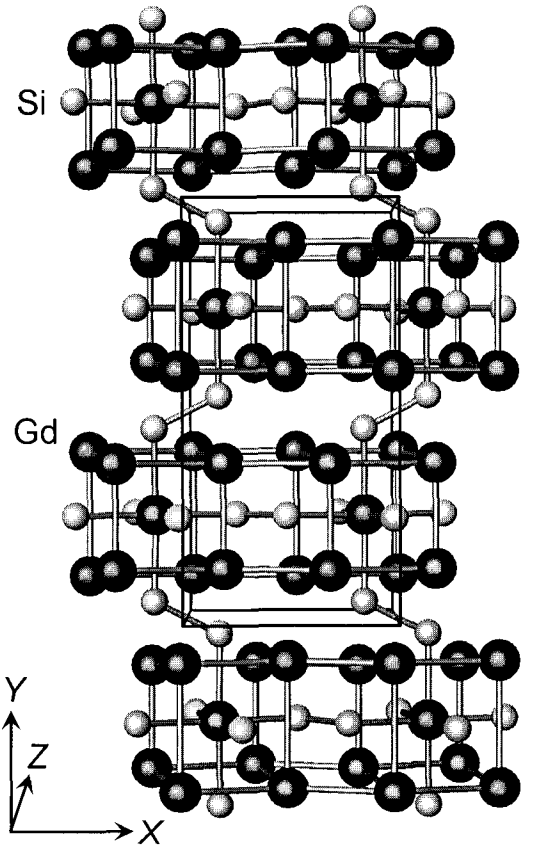


Figure 7.47. The model of the crystal structure of Gd_5Si_4 as determined by Rietveld refinement. The slabs, which are infinite along *X* and *Z* and limited along *Y* to ~6 Å, are shown as bonded Gd and Si atoms. The major difference between this structure and Gd_5Ge_4 (*Figure 7.44*) is the presence of short Si-Si interslab bonds (which are connected by grey lines) here, and the absence of short Ge-Ge bonds between the slabs in Gd_5Ge_4.

7.12.3 $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$

As a starting model, we will use the coordinates of atoms taken from *Table 6.49* together with the unit cell dimensions and all profile parameters determined from Le Bail's full pattern decomposition. They are found in the input file, **Ch7Ex12a.inp** for LHPM-Rietica. The powder diffraction data are located in the file **Ch7Ex12_MoKa.dat** on the CD. As already established in section 6.18.3 (see *Figure 6.43* in Chapter 6), this model of the crystal structure is also feasible but far from complete because the observed and calculated intensities do not match well. Thus, the refinement strategy will be similar to the previous example. The least squares fit here may

become complicated by the pseudosymmetry introduced when we derived the coordinates of atoms assuming a monoclinic distortion of the orthorhombic Gd_5Ge_4-type structure. The progress of Rietveld refinement is illustrated in *Table 7.33*.

Table 7.33. The progress of Rietveld refinement of the crystal structure of $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$ using x-ray powder diffraction data. Wavelengths used: $\lambda K\alpha_1 = 0.70932$ Å, $\lambda K\alpha_2 = 0.71361$ Å.

Refined parameters	R_p	R_{wp}	R_B	χ^2
Initial (profile parameters from Le Bail, model from *Table 6.49*, overall $B = 0.6$ Å^2)[a]	3×10^4	3×10^4	3×10^4	2×10^8
Scale factor[a]	19.5	25.2	15.0	131.4
Scale and coordinates of all Gd atoms[a]	9.19	11.9	6.85	29.4
Scale and coordinates of all Gd and Si/Ge atoms[a]	6.51	8.53	4.46	15.2
Scale, *U*, *V*, *W*, η, asymmetry, *a*, *b*, *c*, γ, sample displacement, background, coordinates of all atoms, overall displacement parameter, preferred orientation along [001][a]	5.14	6.82	2.72	9.78
All, plus individual isotropic displacement parameters of Gd atoms; Si/Ge atoms displacements in overall approximation; preferred orientation along [001][a]	5.10	6.76	2.67	9.61
All as above plus occupancies of Si/Ge sites[b]	5.04	6.69	2.61	9.43
All parameters together[b]	5.03	6.69	2.59	9.41

[a] Si and Ge atoms are distributed randomly and equally among four available crystallographic sites.

[b] Constrained to full occupancy, i.e. $g_{Si} + g_{Ge} = 100\%$.

The residuals steadily decrease when we include coordinates of Gd and then Si/Ge atoms into the least squares fit, followed by profile, lattice and displacement parameters as seen in rows 2 through 6 in *Table 7.33*. A Fourier map, calculated at this point, reveals no additional atoms in the unit cell. When compared to the two previously considered examples, an additional degree of freedom in the $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$ structure is the distribution of the Si and Ge atoms among the corresponding lattice sites. Thus, as the next step we will refine site occupancies constrained to full occupancy by Si/Ge (i.e. $g_{Ge} = 1 - g_{Si}$). Final refinement of all parameters converges to low residuals, indicating that the model of the crystal structure is correct and complete. The parameters of individual atoms in the crystal structure of $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$ are listed in *Table 7.34* and found in the file **Ch7Ex12b.inp**.

It is worth noting that the chemical composition of the material was not restricted in any other way except to maintain the full occupancy of all Si/Ge sites.[1] As follows from *Table 7.34*, the chemical composition of the powder is $Gd_5Si_{2.01(4)}Ge_{1.99(4)}$, which is a nearly ideal match to the nominal

[1] In some algorithms (e.g. GSAS), it is permissible to impose restrictions on chemical composition, if the latter is known, by setting and fixing the total number of atoms of a specific element in the unit cell during the refinement of population parameters.

composition of the as-prepared sample. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns are shown in *Figure 7.48*.

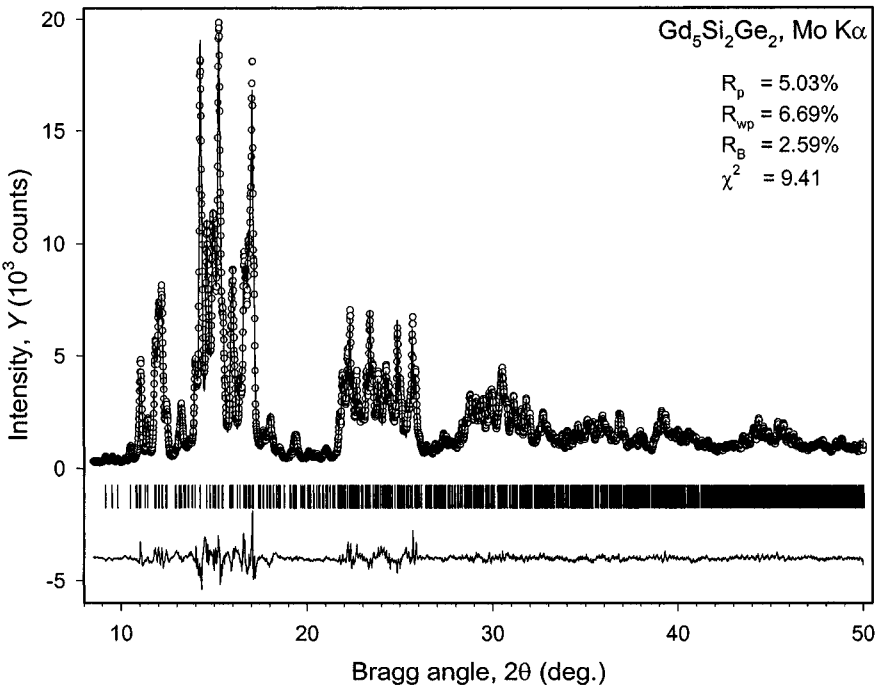


Figure 7.48. The observed and calculated powder diffraction patterns of $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$ after completion of Rietveld refinement. Compare this figure with *Figure 6.43* in section 6.18.3. A total of 1532 independent Bragg reflections are possible in the examined range.

Table 7.34. Atomic parameters in the crystal structure of $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$ fully refined by Rietveld technique using pseudo-Voigt peak shape function. The space group is $P112_1/a$. The unit cell dimensions are: $a = 7.5814(3)$, $b = 14.8039(6)$, $c = 7.7801(3)$ Å, $\gamma = 93.203(2)°$.

Atom	Site	*x*	*y*	*z*	*B* (Å^2)	*g* (%)
Gd1	4(e)	0.3258(4)	0.2485(2)	0.0045(3)	0.91(5)	100
Gd2	4(e)	-0.0048(3)	0.0989(2)	0.1778(4)	0.88(6)	100
Gd3	4(e)	0.0180(3)	0.4023(2)	0.1799(4)	1.20(6)	100
Gd4	4(e)	0.3583(3)	0.8812(2)	0.1665(3)	1.05(5)	100
Gd5	4(e)	0.3286(4)	0.6226(2)	0.1768(3)	0.64(5)	100
Si1 [a]	4(e)	0.211(1)	0.2496(5)	0.3706(8)	0.8(2)	42(1)
Si2 [a]	4(e)	0.958(1)	0.2511(6)	0.896(1)	0.3(2)	65(1)
Si3 [a]	4(e)	0.206(1)	0.9580(5)	0.470(1)	1.2(2)	44(1)
Si4 [a]	4(e)	0.156(1)	0.5413(5)	0.474(1)	1.5(2)	50(1)

[a] Ge atoms occupy the same site with identical coordinates and displacement parameter. The occupancy is $g_{Ge} = 100 - g_{Si}$ %. Population parameters were refined with the common displacement parameter of all Si and Ge atoms to avoid potential correlations.

The refined model of the crystal structure of $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$ is shown in *Figure 7.49*, from which it is clear that similar to both Gd_5Ge_4 and Gd_5Si_4, it is built from the same slabs. The $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$ structure is an intermediate between the two parent compounds because here pairs of the slabs (B and C) are connected by short (Si,Ge) – (Si,Ge) bonds, while no similar bonds exist between the next neighboring slabs (A to B and D to C). It is interesting to note that these small but distinct differences between the three closely related structures were established first from powder diffraction[1] and only

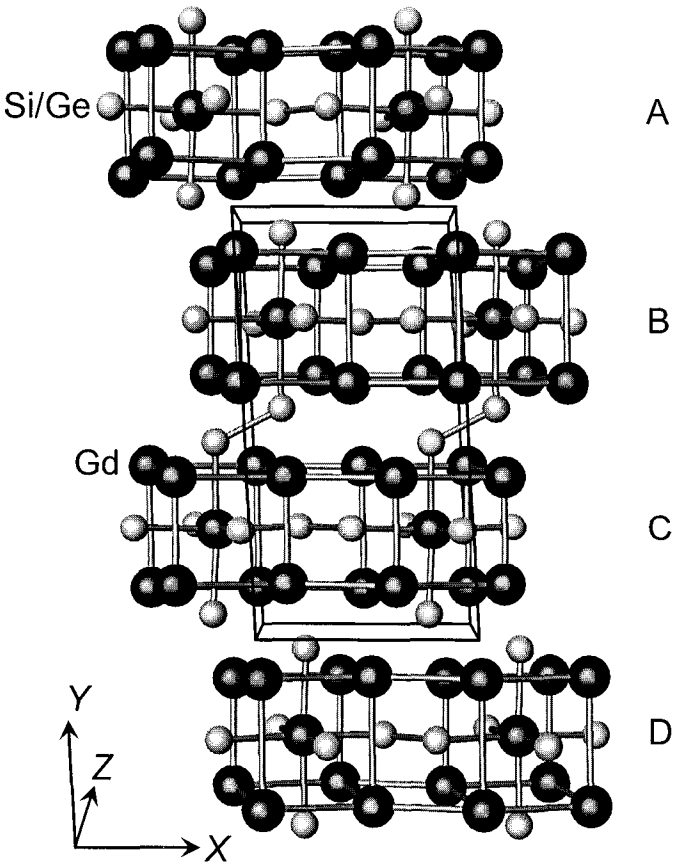


Figure 7.49. The model of the crystal structure of $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$ as determined by Rietveld refinement. The slabs, which are infinite along *X* and *Z* and limited along *Z* to ~6 Å are shown as bonded Gd and Si atoms. This structure is intermediate between Gd_5Ge_4 (*Figure 7.44*) and Gd_5Si_4 (*Figure 7.47*): only pairs of slabs, B and C, are connected with short (Si,Ge) – (Si,Ge) bonds, while no such bonds exist between the pairs (A and B and C and D).

[1] V.K. Pecharsky and K.A. Gschneidner, Jr., Phase relationships and crystallography in the pseudobinary system Gd_5Si_4-Gd_5Ge_4, J. Alloys Comp. **260**, 98 (1997).

later were confirmed by a single crystal diffraction experiment.[1] Indeed, the single crystal diffraction investigation was complicated by the inherent twinning of the monoclinic phase, which has no effect on the powder diffraction data.

The series of compounds existing in the pseudobinary $Gd_5(Si_xGe_{1-x})_4$ system is exceptionally interesting because of a distinct role the crystal structure plays in defining the magnetic properties of the alloys. As discussed by Pecharsky and Gschneidner,[2] all Gd_5Si_4-type phases undergo a second order paramagnetic to ferromagnetic transformation on cooling, which occurs without changing the crystal structure. However, both $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$- and Sm_5Ge_4-type phases order ferromagnetically simultaneously with a crystallographic phase change, during which the slabs move with respect to one another in a shear fashion, and all interslab bonds reappear as shown schematically in *Figure 7.50.*

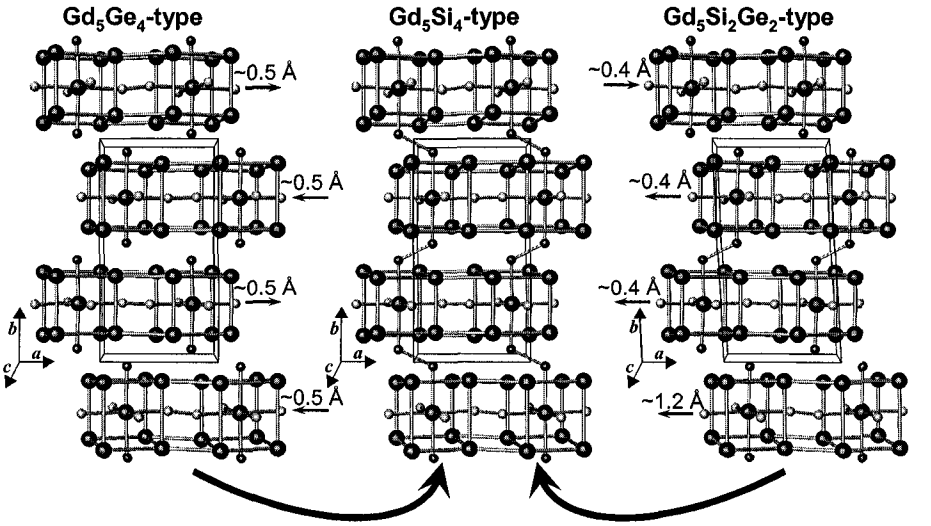


Figure 7.50. The nature of the crystallographic phase changes when the Gd_5Ge_4-type (left) or the $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$-type structures (right) transform into the Gd_5Si_4-type structure. Short black arrows indicate the directions and the numbers above the arrows the extent of the interslab shear.

[1] W. Choe, V.K. Pecharsky, A.O. Pecharsky, K.A. Gschneidner, Jr., V.G. Young, Jr., and G.J. Miller, Making and breaking covalent bonds across the magnetic transition in the giant magnetocaloric material $Gd_5(Si_2Ge_2)$, Phys. Rev. Lett. **84**, 4617 (2000).

[2] See V.K. Pecharsky and K.A. Gschneidner, Jr., $Gd_5(Si_xGe_{1-x})_4$: An extremum material, Adv. Mater. **13**, 683 (2001), and references therein.

The coupled magnetic-crystallographic ordering, therefore, becomes a first order transformation. In the ferromagnetic state only the Gd_5Si_4-type crystal structure is stable. It is also important to note that the crystallographic phase change as a function of temperature in this system was discovered first using powder diffraction data[1] and two years later, it was confirmed from a single crystal diffraction experiment by Choe *et al.* (see reference No. 1 in the footnote on page 696).

7.13 Epilogue

In the last three chapters of this book, we considered a number of practical examples of the structure determination from powder diffraction data. Their complexity ranged from quite simple structures, with no coordinate degrees of freedom in the unit cell and only a few Bragg reflections observed in the examined volume of reciprocal space (e.g. $LaNi_{4.85}Sn_{0.15}$) to rather complex inorganic and mixed inorganic/organic materials with numerous coordinate and population parameters and more than a thousand possible Bragg reflections (e.g. $ma_2Mo_7O_{22}$ and $Gd_5Si_2Ge_2$). Successful determination of all these structures was enabled by both the high quality of the experimental data and recent advancements in computational crystallography. Only one of the considered examples (the anhydrous monoclinic $FePO_4$) was based on relatively poor quality data, which was unavoidable due to the physical state of the material. The problems encountered in the latter case both during creating a model and Rietveld refinement, may indeed serve as a highlight of the importance of data quality in dependable structure determination from powder diffraction.

The fundamental simplicity of the powder diffraction experiment coupled with the sophistication of the available numerical data processing techniques and unsurpassed visual elegance, with which the results of the full profile refinement are represented, have transformed the powder diffraction technique into a modern and exceptionally important experimental tool in structure determination. Without a doubt, the powder method is poised to play a role in structure determinations with ever-increasing complexity. A recent example of the successful refinement of the sperm whale (*Physeter catodon*) metmyoglobin structure from synchrotron powder diffraction data is an excellent illustration of how far the technique has been already advanced.[2]

[1] L. Morellon, P.A. Algarabel, M.R. Ibarra, J. Blasco, B. Garcia-Landa, Z. Arnold, and F. Albertini, Magnetic-field-induced structural phase transition in $Gd_5(Si_{1.8}Ge_{2.2})$, Phys. Rev. B **58**, R14721 (1998).

[2] R.B. Von Dreele, Combined Rietveld and stereochemical restraint refinement of a protein crystal structure, J. Appl. Cryst. **32**, 1084 (1999).

Polycrystals have, and most certainly will continue to play a considerable role in future advancements in natural sciences and engineering. Thus, it is vitally important that structural details at the atomic resolution are known for every material, physical, chemical, mechanical, and other properties of which are under investigation. This will create a foundation for the future understanding of critical structure-property relationships, which in turn, will be an enabling step for a better understanding of both the nature and properties of materials and judicious design of advanced materials and devices, upon which we become so greatly dependent. We may only hope that this book provides the necessary background and helps to develop practical skills for many researchers, thus making them ready to take upon a challenging but a remarkably gratifying task – structure determination from powder diffraction data.

7.14 Additional reading

1. The Rietveld method. IUCr monographs on Crystallography 5, R.A. Young, Ed., International Union of Crystallography, Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (1993).

2. H.M. Rietveld, Line profiles of neutron powder-diffraction peaks for structure refinement, Acta Cryst. **22**, 151 (1967)

3. H.M. Rietveld, A profile refinement method for nuclear and magnetic structures, J. Appl. Cryst. **2**, 65 (1969).

4. A. K. Cheetham, Structure determination from powder diffraction data: an overview, in: Structure determination from powder diffraction data. IUCr monographs on Crystallography 13, W.I.F. David, K. Shankland, L.B. McCusker, and Ch. Baerlocher, Eds., Oxford University Press, Oxford, New York (2002).

5. Armel Le Bail's Web site dedicated to structure determination from powder data at http://pcb4122.univ-lemans.fr/sdpd/index.html.

7.15 Problems

Answers to all problems listed below are located in the file Chapter-7-Problem-Solutions.pdf on the CD accompanying this book.[1]

1. Complete structure determination and perform Rietveld refinement of the model of $SrSi_2$, which you solved in problem 6, Chapter 6. The experimental powder diffraction pattern is located on the CD in the file **Ch7Pr01_MoKa.dat**.

2. Complete the solution of the crystal structure and perform Rietveld refinement of the model of $LaNi_{11.4}Ge_{1.6}$ from problem 7, Chapter 6. The experimental powder diffraction pattern is located on the CD in the file **Ch7Pr02_CuKa.dat**.

3. Complete the solution of the crystal structure and perform Rietveld refinement of the model of $Hf_2Ni_3Si_4$ from problem 8 in Chapter 6. The experimental powder diffraction pattern is located on the CD in the file **Ch7Pr03_CuKa.dat**.

4. Perform Rietveld refinement of the hexamethylenetetramine, $C_6H_{12}N_4$, using the model established in problem 5, Chapter 6. The experimental powder diffraction pattern is located on the CD in the file **Ch7Pr04_CuKa.raw**.

5. Complete the solution of the crystal structure and perform Rietveld refinement of the model of vanadyl acetate, $VO(CH_3COO)_2$, using the model established in problem 9, Chapter 6. The experimental powder diffraction pattern is located on the CD in the file **Ch7Pr05_CuKa.raw**.

6. Complete the solution of the crystal structure and perform Rietveld refinement of the model of manganese oxide, MnO_2, which crystallizes in the space group $P4_2/mnm$ with $a = 4.41$, $c = 2.88$ Å. The gravimetric density of the material is $\rho = 5.10$ g/cm^3. Assume that manganese atoms occupy the site 2(a): 0,0,0. The experimental powder diffraction pattern is found on the CD in the file **Ch7Pr06_CuKa.raw**.

7. Solve the crystal structure and perform Rietveld refinement of the model of NaV_2O_5, which crystallizes in the space group Pmmn with $a = 11.317$, $b = 3.611$, $c = 4.807$ Å. It is known that V_2O_5 belongs to the same space group symmetry with the unit cell dimensions $a = 11.51$, $b = 3.564$, $c =$

[1] For problems 4 - 9 use instrumental parameters file **Scintag.prm** located on the CD.

4.368 Å. The coordinates of atoms in V_2O_5 are: V in 4(f): 0.10,1/4,0.90; O1 in 4(f): 0.10,1/4,0.53; O2 in 4(f): -0.07,1/4,~0.00; O3 in 2(a): 1/4,1/4,~0.00. The experimental powder diffraction pattern is found on the CD in the file **Ch7Pr07_CuKa.raw**.

8. Complete the solution of the crystal structure and perform Rietveld refinement of the model of tungsten oxide peroxide hydrate, $WO_2(O_2)(H_2O)$, which crystallizes in the space group symmetry $P2_1/n$ with $a = 12.07$, $b = 3.865$, $c = 7.36$ Å, $\beta = 102.9°$. The location of W has been found from a Patterson map and it has the coordinates $x = 0.680$, $y = 0.066$, $z = 0.364$. Note that W usually exhibits octahedral or square-pyramidal coordination (with the peroxide group, O-O, counted as one ligand). The experimental powder diffraction pattern is found on the CD in the file **Ch7Pr08_CuKa.raw**.

9. Locate the missing water molecule and perform Rietveld refinement of zinc vanadate ($Zn_3(OH)_2V_2O_7 \cdot 2H_2O$), which crystallizes in the space group $P\bar{3}m1$ with $a = 6.05$, $c = 7.19$ Å starting from the following model: Zn in 3(e): 1/2,0,0; V in 2(c): 0,0, z, $z = 0.25$, O1 in 2(d): 2/3,1/3,z, $z = 0.88$; O2 in 6(i): x,2x,z, $x = 0.15$, $z = 0.82$; O3 in 1(b): 0,0,1/2. The experimental powder diffraction pattern is found on the CD in the file **Ch7Pr09_CuKa.raw**. The data have been affected by a considerable sample displacement error: ~0.2 mm for a 250 mm goniometer radius.

Index